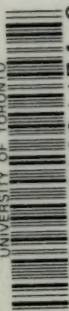
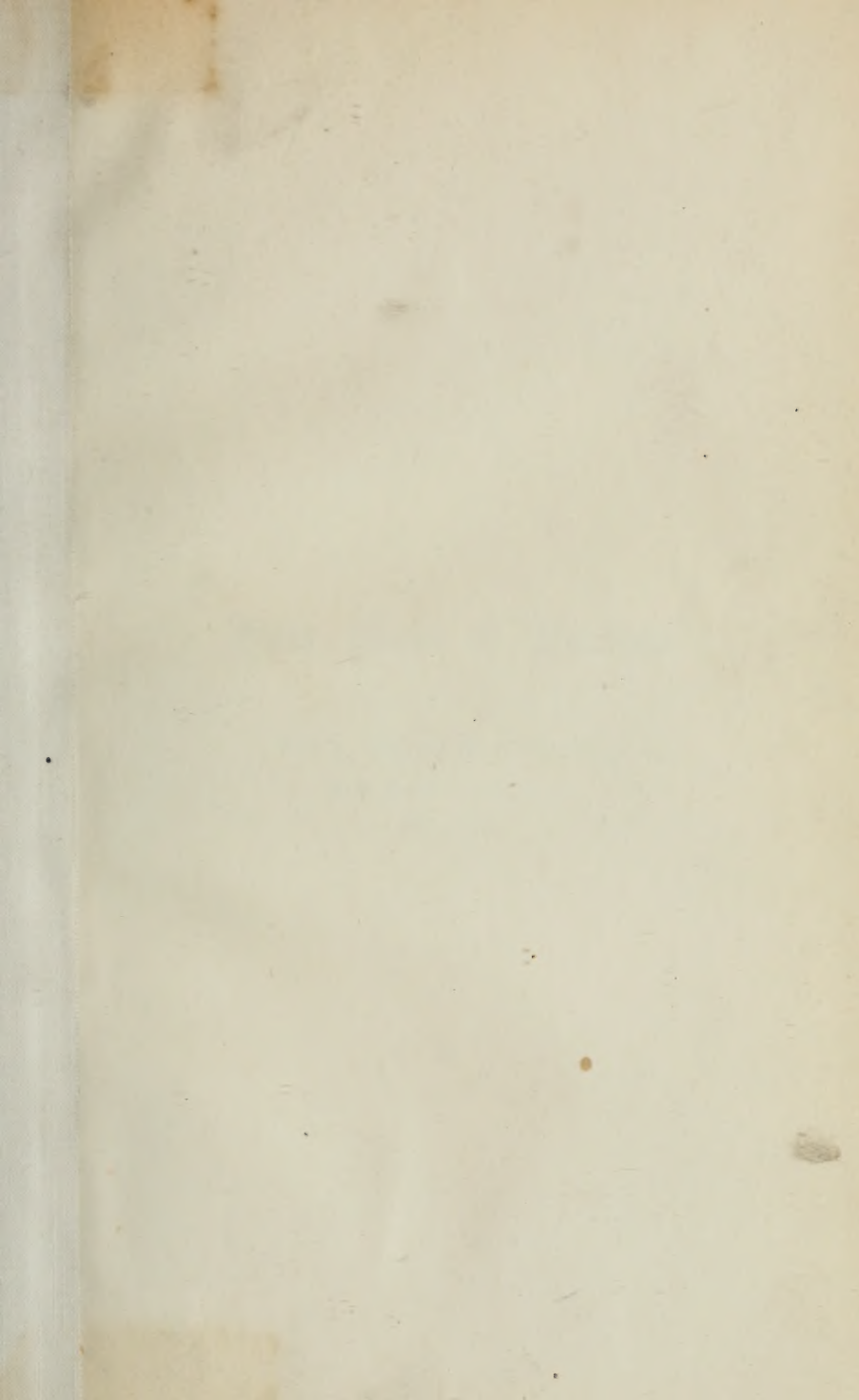
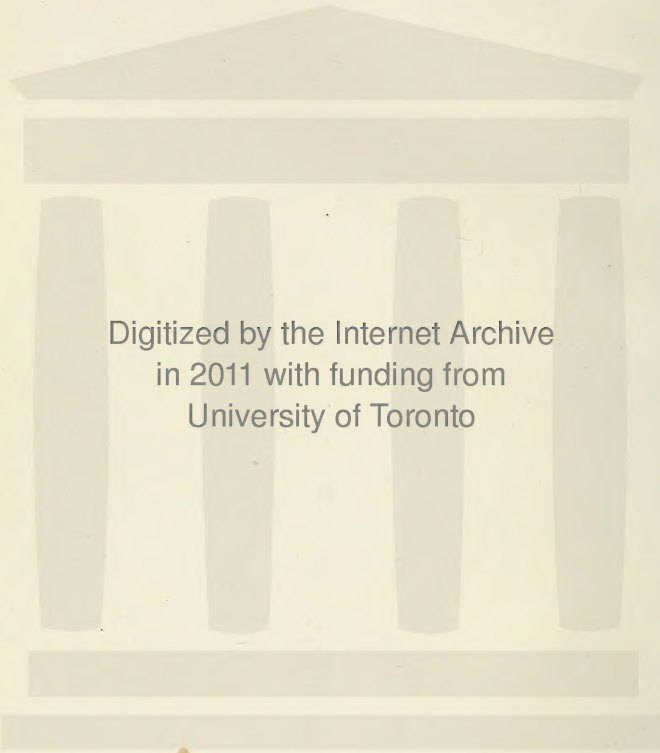


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 00361174 6





Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2011 with funding from
University of Toronto

Duke Huon of Burdeaux.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series, Nos. XLIII, L.

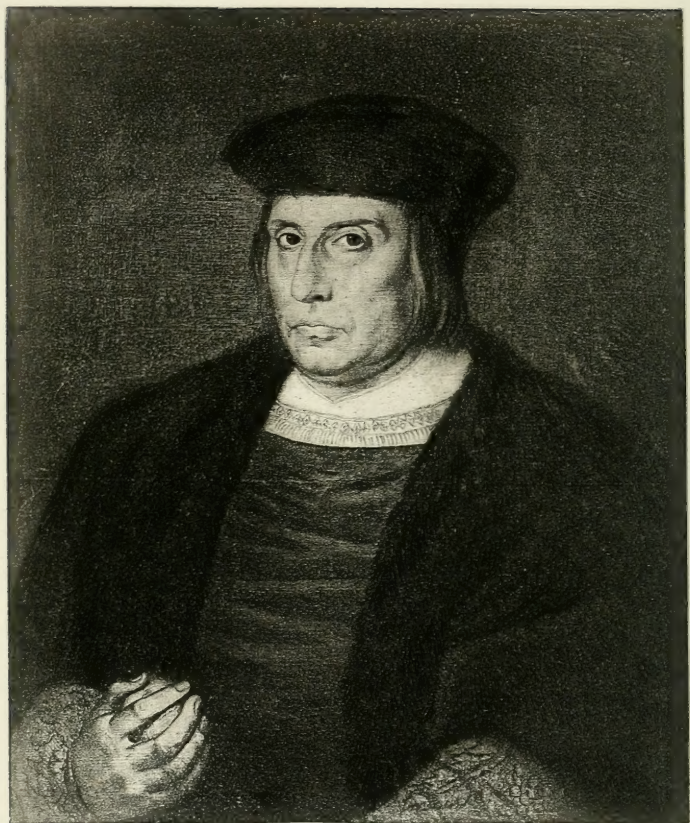
1884, 1887.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 5, UNTER DEN LINDEN.

NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.

PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

41, 43, 50



*Sir John Bourchier, Knight.
Second Baron Berners (1469-1533)
from a painting by Hans Holbein
now in the possession of the Hon. H. Lynechutt Wilson.*

Early English Text Society
[Publications]: Extra Series

THE

Nos. 41[^], 43[^], 50

ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

Pts. VIII, IX, XII

The Poë of

Duke Guen of Burdeux

done into English by

Sir John Bouchier, Lord Berners,

and printed by Wynkyn de Worde about 1534 A.D.

EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE COPY OF THE FIRST EDITION,

NOW IN THE POSSESSION OF THE EARL OF CRAWFORD AND BALCARRES,

with an Introduction,

BY

S. L. LEE, B.A.,

BALLIOL COLLEGE, OXFORD.

VOL. II.

38077
7/10/96

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXXIV, MDCCCLXXXVII.

PR

1119

E5

no. 41,
etc.

Extra Series,
XLIII, L.

R. CLAY AND SONS, CHAUCER PRESS, BUNGAY.

PREFATORY NOTE.

THE portrait which is prefixed to this volume will, I hope, prove of some general interest. As the work of Holbein, and a memorial of a first discoverer of the capacities of English prose, it deserves a very prominent position among portraits of English men of letters. The original painting is at Keythorpe Hall, Leicestershire. It has been reproduced here for the first time by the kind permission of its owner, the Hon. H. Tyrwhitt Wilson. Lord Berners is represented in the robes of the Chancellor of the Exchequer: he holds in his right hand a lemon to protect him (according to a contemporary belief) from the plague, to which his presence in the Exchequer Court frequently exposed him. The picture is described by Mr. Ralph Wornum in his edition of Horace Walpole's *Anecdotes of Painting* (i. 82), but Dr. Alfred Woltmann in his elaborate book on Holbein makes no mention of it. The present engraving is the work of Messrs. Dawson of the Typographic Etching Company.

I regret that I have been unable to complete the reprint of this romance in a second part. The tale of Huon's wife, Esclaramonde, and of the treacherous advances made towards her by the Emperor of Germany (*chapters lxxxvi—clvii*), is alone printed here. The concluding portions of Lord Berners' work, relating the wooing and marriage of Huon's daughter, Clariet, the repulsive trials to which Ide, Clariet's daughter, was subjected, and the early fortunes of Croisant, Ide's son (*chapters clviii—clxxxiv*), are reserved for a third part. For that part I am also preparing glossaries of the proper names, places, and obscure words, with appendices on the leading differences in the language of the first and third editions, and on

some of the more curious legends introduced into the story. Lovers of fairy lore may find much to interest them in the pages that follow. Huon's second journey to the East (pp. 361 *et seq.*), to obtain succour in behalf of his wife and child, involves him in more marvellous perils than any he met with in his earlier travels. The descriptions of Judas Iscariot (pp. 363-7) and of Cain are singular examples of the mediæval mythology that grew out of scriptural history. The account of the last days of Oberon (pp. 597-606) is, like many passages in the first part, worthy of notice in future commentaries on Shakespeare's *Midsummer Night's Dream*.

The length of this romance will doubtless deter all but a very few students from proceeding very far in its perusal. It must in fairness be admitted, too, that the plot works sluggishly, wanting in rapid energy, and abounding in detail, which the modern critic will denounce as superfluous. But such incidents as those to which I have drawn attention effectively relieve the story's prolixity, and the never unmelodious monotony of its language is at times broken, as I have shown before, by tones of the purest beauty. It is moreover in its bulk, as in all other respects, an excellent representative of the popular literature of sixteenth-century England. And let us remember that it is not in effect much longer than an ordinary three-volume novel of our own day, with which in an historical sense it invites comparison. It therefore behoves lovers of the fiction of the present age to treat *Huon of Burdeux*, its author, and those sixteenth-century readers who could eagerly devour its pages, sympathetically: for the judgment that we pass to-day on Lord Berners' book and its first enthusiastic patrons, assuredly awaits three centuries and a half hence whatever may survive of the light literature of our own time, and ourselves, who reward it with a golden homage.

I desire to take this, the first opportunity allowed me, of correcting a misstatement made by Mrs. T. H. Ward in the *Athenæum* (August 18th, 1883), to disprove an assertion of mine that appeared in the same journal five weeks earlier. Mrs. Ward there set among her "facts" the remark that "Lord Berners—unless Mr. Lee has some quite fresh information, in which case I must plead ignorance—

died on March 16th, 1532," and she proceeded to point out, that as I accepted March 10th, 1533, for the date of the completion of an important translation of Lord Berners—"the Golden Boke of Marke Aurelie"—I made "the translation finished nearly a year after the translator's death." If Mrs. Ward had done me the honour of turning to my record of the life of Lord Berners in the Introduction to Part I, published in January last, she might possibly have avoided the frequently repeated error into which she has here fallen. I showed there that notices of the death of Lord Berners in Mr. James Gairdner's *Papers of Henry VIII* (vol. vi, nos. 238 and 239) prove conclusively that, reckoning the new year, as is the modern custom, from the first of January, he died on March 16th, 1533. The makers of biographical dictionaries have, I know, antedated the event by one year in their forgetfulness of the well-known fact that with Lord Berners' contemporaries the twenty-fifth day of March was the first day of a new year. The mistake is one worth correcting permanently, and I hope to be able to do so in the article on Lord Berners that I am writing for Mr. Leslie Stephen's new *Dictionary of National Biography*. As for Lord Berners' relations to so-called Euphuism, which was the original subject of my brief controversy with Mrs. Ward, I am quite ready to admit that Dr. Landmann, in a work privately printed at Giessen in 1881, was the first, as Mrs. Ward has shown, to call attention to the important influence he exerted in the matter; but I do not imagine that Lord Berners' connexion with Euphuism is so thoroughly understood in England as to make such a re-statement of the facts as I intend to give in an appendix wholly a work of supererogation.

S. L. LEE.


26, Brondesbury Villas, London, N. W.

December 26, 1883.

Huon of Burdeux.

¶ Howe kynge Oberon deuysyd with his
 knyghtes in his cyte of Mommure in the
 4 fayrre of the dedes of Huon of Burdeux, &
 of that¹ sholde fall² after to hym.

Ca. .lxxxvi.

8  Han kynge Oberon was departyd fro
 Burdeux he came to his cyte of Mom-
 mure. Than³ he began sore to wepe.
 Than Gloryaunt demaundyd of hym
 why he made that sorow. 'Gloryauns,'

Oberon returns to
 Mommur and
 bewails the sad
 fate that is still
 in store for Huon.

12 quod Oberon, 'it is for the vnhappy Huon / he is alone,
 and I knowe well here after he shalbe betrayed, and
 all for Esclaramonde his wyfe / for though⁴ he haue or⁵
 this tyme sufferyd greate trauayle and myche trouble
 16 and pouerte / yet I knowe surely that he shall suffer
 more than euer he dyd, & he shal⁶ haue no socoure of
 any man lyuyng' / 'why, sir,' quod Gloryauns, 'how
 can that be? / for Huon is a grete lorde, & hath many
 20 frendes, and is the moost hardyest knyght now lyuyng /
 & he is at accorde with kynge Charlemayn, therfore he
 were a greate foole that wolde make hym any warre, &
 do hym any dyspleasure' / 'well,' quod Oberon, 'god
 24 ayde hym in all his affayres / for or⁵ it be longe he shall
 haue myche to do.' Thus Oberon entred in to his ryche
 palays, & sayd agayne, 'A, fre⁷ knyght Huon, I know
 well ye shalbe betrayed for the loue of your wyfe, who

Esclaramonde will
 cause him much
 suffering.

¹ which. ² happen. ³ and there. ⁴ that. ⁵ ere.

⁶ Fol. lxxv. back, col. 1. ⁷ deare.

is fayre and good, and yf ye take not good hede ye shall leue her and your selfe in grete *perell* of deth / and yf ye scape the deth, yet shall you suffer suche payne and pouerte that there is no clerke lyuyng so 4 sage that can put it in wrytyng.' 'Syr,' quod Gloryauns / 'me thynke this can not be, seynge the loue that is now betwene hym and Charlemayn.' 'Gloryauns,' quod Oberon, 'yet I say agayne to¹ you *that*, or² this 8 yere be passyd, Huon shalbe in such distres, and so hardely kept, that yf he had .x. realmes he wolde gyue them all to be out of that daunger that he shalbe in' / than Gloryauns was pensyue, and sayd / 'A, *sir*, for 12 goddes sake neuer leue Huon your frende in suche daunger / but rather socoure hym' / 'nay, surely,' quod Oberon, 'that wyll I not doo / syn³ I haue promysyd hym my dygnyte & londe; he shal not be aydyd 16 nor socouryd by me, for he shalbe closyd in suche a plase *that* I wolde not go thether for .x. of the best cytyes of the worlde.' Now let vs retourne to¹ Huon, beyng in his palays at Burdeux. 20

Nor will Oberon
aid him,

now that Huon
will one day bear
his crown.

¶ How Huon toke homage of his men & chastesyd his rebelles, & of .iii. pylgremes, by whom myche yll fell ⁴after, as ye shall here. Ca. lxxxvii. 24



After that kyng Charlemayn was departyd fro Burdeux & that Huon was retournyd, he assambled all his barons, to whom he made good chere, 28 and there they toke there londes & fees of hym & made there homage.

The lords of
Bordeaux do
homage to Huon.

Than he toke a .M. chosyn knyghtes with hym, & rode in his londes & tooke possessyon of townes & castelles, 32 & was obeyed in euery place except of one Named

¹ vnto.

² before.

³ seeing.

⁴ Fol. lxxv. back, col. 2.

- Angelers, who was cosyn germayne to Amaury, whom
 Huon had slayne before at Parys before themperour
 Charlemayn for y^e loue of Charlot / this Angelers was
 4 false & a traytoure, & he had a stronge castell with / in
 a¹ .iii. legges of Burdeux / he wolde not holde of Huon
 nor obey hym, tho he was his lege man / whan Huon
 saw that he wolde not holde of hym nor do hym
 8 homage, he was sore dyspleasyd, and made promyse that,
 yf that he mygth gette hym parforce, he wolde surely
 hange hym vp & ²as many as were in the castell.³ than
 Huon assaylled y^e castell, & they within defendyd
 12 them⁴ valyauntly / so that many were hurt and slayne
 of⁵ both partes / Huon was there .viii. dayes & coude
 not wyn y^e castell / than Huon ordenyd before the
 place a payre of galowes, & on⁶ y^e .ix. day he made a
 16 freshe assault by suche force⁷ that he wan y^e castell
 & entred parforce. Angelers was taken & .lx.⁸ men
 with hym, & they were al hangyd on y^e galowes. Than
 Huon gaue the castell to⁹ one of his knyghtes /¹⁰ than
 20 he departyd & went to the castell of Blay, where as he
 was receyued with gret ioy / and the fayre Esclaramonde
 was in her¹¹ palays at Burdeux well accompenyd with
 ladyes & dameselles / & as they were deunsynge to-
 24 gyther, there entred into y^e palays .iii. pylgremes who
 ryght humbly salutyd the lady Esclaramonde. ‘Syr,’
 quod y^e lady, ‘I pray you shew me out of what countre
 ye are come’ / ‘dame,’¹² quod one of them, ‘know for
 28 trouth that we are come fro Ierusalem, & haue made
 our offerynge to the holy sepulture. we haue sufferyd
 myche pouertie in oure iurnay, wherfore, lady, we
 requyre you humbly for the loue of our lorde Jesu
 32 Cryst to gyue vs sum meet.’ ‘Syr,’ quod she, ‘ye
 shall haue ynough’ / & than she commaundyd two of

Angelers, a
relative of the
Earl Amaury,

resists Huon's
authority.

Huon marches to
take his castle,

which falls after
nine days' siege.

Angelers and his
men are taken
and hanged.

Three pilgrims
visit
Esclaramonde at
Bordeaux.

They say they are
journeying from
the Holy Land.

¹ omitted.

² Fol. lxxi. col. 1.

³ with him.

⁴ selues.

⁵ ou.

⁶ vppon.

⁷ strength.

⁸ Fortie.

⁹ vnto.

¹⁰ and.

¹¹ the.

¹² Madame.

They are well
entertained,

but soon set out
for Vienna.

On their way they
meet Duke Raoul,
who was
hawking.

He is a traitor

and a mover of
war.

He welcomes the
pilgrims,

and asks how
they have fared.

her knyghtes to se¹ y^e pylgremes sholde haue meet and
drynke / & so they were set at y^e end of the hall, & a
table coueryd for them, & thereon brede & fleshe &
wyne / they were well serued. Than the duchess⁴
Esclaramonde went to vysyt them, & demaundyd where
they were borne & whether they wolde go. 'Dame,'²
quod they, 'we be all .iii. borne at Vyene, & thether we
wolde retourne' / 'syrs, god be your gyde,' quod the⁸
lady, & she gaue them .x. Florence, wherof they had
grete ioy & thankyd y^e duchess. ³Alas! that gyft was
yll employed,⁴ as ye shal here⁵ after. They departyd
& toke ther way, & trauayled so longe *that* on a twes-¹²
daye⁶ they aryued halfe a legge fro Vyene / & ther they
met duke Raoull, who was goynge a hawkyng / he
was a grete & pysssaunt lord of londes & seynoryes, &
hardy in dedes of armes. grete damage⁷ it was *that* he¹⁶
was such a traytoure, for a more subtylman coude not
be knowen / for all the dayes of his lyfe he was euer a
mouer of warre & stryfe & to do treason, without
hauynge regarde other to kynne or other / god con-²⁰
founded hym / for by hym & hys cause Huon sufferyd
so myche yll that it cannot be recountyd. This duke
Raoull was to mary / thus as he was in the feldes a
hawkyng, & .xx. knyghtes *with* hym, he met the sayd²⁴
thre pylgremes, & anone he knew them. Than he rode
to them & sayd, 'syrs, ye be welcom home' / they were
ioyfull, whan they saw the duke, there lord, salute them
so humbly, & for ioy therof they shewed hym such²⁸
newes *that* by y^e occasyon therof .xx. M knyghtes lost
after theyr lyues, & Raoull hymselfe receyued y^e deth /
& Huon had suche trouble that he had neuer none
suche before, as ye shal here⁵ after. Than the duke³²
sayd to the pylgremes / 'frendes, I pray you shew me
by what countrees ye haue passyd to com hether.'

¹ that.

² Madame.

³ but.

⁴ bestowed.

⁵ here.

⁶ Fol. lxvi. col. 2.

⁷ pittie.

- 'Syr,' *quod* they, 'we haue passyd by Fraunce, & fyrst we were at Burdeux, & there we founde y^e duches Esclaramonde, wyfe to Huon of Burdeux, of whom ye
- 4 haue herd so myche spekyng of.¹ she is so fayre & so well fourmyd,² so swete, pleasaunt, & gracyous as can be deuysyd. she is doughter to the admyrall Gaudys, whom Huon hath slayne, & taken her to his wyfe /
- 8 grete damage³ is it *that* Huon sholde haue suche a wyfe / for she were meter to be wyfe to a pusaunt kinge, for who so euer had suche a wyfe to lye by myght wel say *that* there were none lyke her in all y^e
- 12 worlde / wolde to our lorde god, *sir* / that she were your wyfe' / whan the duke herde that, he chaungyd coloure & greatly couertyd the lady in his herte / so *that* he was stryken with ⁴such ⁵sparke of that for the⁵
- 16 byrnyng loue that he had to the lady Esclaramonde,⁶ he promysed & sware that he wolde haue her, who so euer sayd the contrary, & sayd howe⁷ he wolde slee Huon, & than haue Esclaramonde to his wyfe. Thus
- 20 duke Raoull sware the deth of Huon /⁸ than he departyd fro the pylgremes. yll was employed⁹ the almes that Esclaramonde had gyuen them.

They tell him how Esclaramonde received them at Bordeaux, and how fair she is,

and how worthy to be the wife of a greater prince than Huon—even of Raoul himself.

The Duke swears that he will wed Esclaramonde.



- ¶ How duke Raoull of Austrych, by the
- 24 reporte of the pylgremes, was amourous of the fayre Esclaramonde / and of the tornay that was cryed,¹⁰ to thentent to haue slayne Huon.

Capitulo .lxxxviii.

¹ for. ² fauoured. ³ pittie.

⁴ Fol. lxi. back, col. 1. ⁵⁻⁵ violent and. ⁶ as.

⁷ that. ⁸ and. ⁹ bestowed. ¹⁰ proclaimed.



Duke Raoul announces his intention to visit his uncle the Emperor of Almayne, and secretly resolves to hold a great tournament, to which Huon is to be induced to come to meet his death.

A messenger is sent to the Emperor asking him to arrange the tournament at Mayence,

and he does as he is requested.

Raoul assembles his barons and makes them swear to compass the death of Huon,

Hus duke Raoull retournyd to the cyte of Vyen ryght pensyue, and sent for his preuey counsell, & than he commaundyd them to assamble as myche¹ 4 people as they coude, by cause he sayde that he wolde goo to his vncler themperour of Almayne / to whom he sent a secret message that he shold cause the tournay to be cryed² in 8 sum conuenient place, to thentent that the knyghtes of Almayne and of other countrees sholde assemble there. The false traytoure dyd it for a craft, to thentent that Huon by his prowes and hardenes sholde 12 come to that tournay. The messenger rode forth tyll³ he came to Strabrouge, where as he founde themperour, who was vncler to Raoull, for he was themperours brothers sonne / whan themperour herde the message he 16 was ioifull / ⁴whan he herd those⁴ newes fro his neuewe duke Raoull, whom he loued entyerly / and to do hym pleasure he sent to all londes vnder his obey-saunce, to all knyghtes and ⁵squyers suche as of custome 20 were wont to iust and tournay, desyrynge them to come at a day assygnyd to the cyte of Mayence, for there he wolde kepe open courte. ⁶themperour knewe not for what entent his neuewe Raoull had deuysyd that 24 tournay. Alas ! he dyd it⁷ to fynde⁸ place to slee Huon, to thentent to haue his wyfe Esclaramonde. Than duke Raoull on a day assembled his barons, speccially suche as he had parfyte trust in / he shewed them at 28 length⁹ y^e cause why he had assembled all that⁸ people / to go to the tournay. 'Therefore, syrs,¹⁰ I wyll that ye sware to me the deth of Huon of Burdeux / for I wyll that ye & I togyther¹¹ put ¹²to our payne¹² to slee hym / 32

¹ many. ² proclaimed. ³ vntill.

⁴⁻⁴ and not a little pleased to heare such.

⁵ Fol. lxvi. back, col. 2. ⁶ Now. ⁷ but. ⁸ the.

⁹ large. ¹⁰ quoth he. ¹¹ omitted.

¹²⁻¹² all our vttermost.

- & than I wyll wed his wyfe, of whom I am so amorous *that* I can not slepe nor take any rest' / y^e same tyme that they thus made promyse & sware y^e deth of
- 4 Huon, There was amonge them a varlet with duke Raoull who in his youghth had serued Huon of Burdeux / and¹ whan he vnderstode² yf Huon came to the tournay, howe³ he sholde be murderyd / as preuely as he coude /
- 8 he departyd fro Vyene, & neuer restyd tyll⁴ he came to the cite of Burdeux, where as he founde duke Huon in his palays *with* his lordes, who had been⁵ aduertesyd that there sholde be⁶ a great tournay at Mayence in
- 12 Almayne / and he deuysyd with his lordes⁷ to go thether. The same tyme thether came⁸ the varlet,⁸ who⁹ humbly salutyd duke Huon, who sayd to hym, 'frend, where hast thou ben so longe?' 'Syr,' quod the varlet,
- 16 'I come now fro Viene in Austrych, and¹⁰ duke Raoull who is lorde there¹¹ hathe cryed¹² a tournay in euery cowntre, and,¹³ syr, yf ye go thether ye shalbe slayne / for thys tournay is deuysyd for none other entent / for¹⁴
- 20 by cause it is¹⁵ well knowen that there can be no hye dedes of armes done in any place / but that ye wyll be¹⁶ at it. and whan they haue slayne you y^e duke Raoull wyll haue¹⁷ the duches your wyfe in mariage;
- 24 therefore, syr, for goddes sake aduyse you well that ye come not there, in as moch as ye loue your lyfe / for ye can not scape / there be a .xx. M men that hath sworne your deth; ¹⁸ yf ye enter in to the tornay ye can
- 28 neuer scape the deth / and I haue herde duke Raoull swere that when he hath slayne you he wyll kepe all your londes.' When duke Huon hadde herd the verlet / he sware by god and made¹⁹ promyse that
- 32 duke Raoull sholde derely by his fals treason. Then

and to aid him in his quest of Esclaramonde.

One of the Duke's servants had of old served Huon,

and goes to Bordeaux to warn him of the plot against his life.

Huon contemplates going to Mayence when the man arrives,

and reveals the danger which threatens his old master.

Huon swears to make Raoul own his treachery.

¹ now. ² that. ³ there. ⁴ vntill. ⁵ before.

⁶ held. ⁷ how. ⁸⁻⁸ after time. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ where.

¹¹ of. ¹² proclaymed. ¹³ but. ¹⁴ omitted. ¹⁵ too.

¹⁶ present. ¹⁷ Fol. lxvii. col. 1. ¹⁸ therefore.

¹⁹ a solemn.

Esclaramonde
begs her husband
not to go from
Bordeaux.

But Huon is deaf
to her entreaties,
and declares he
will set out at
once to slay the
traitor.

Esclaramonde
begs him to take
many armed men
with him,

and offers to go
with him herself.

the duches Esclaramonde kneled downe before Huon & sayd, '1A, syr,¹ I desyre you to forbere your goynge thyther at this tyme / for I haue herd often reputed² that this duke Raoull is pusant & hath grate londes, &³ 4 is nephew to themperour of Almayne / and also I haue herde saye that a falsen traytoure there is none lyuynge in this worlde.' 'Dame,'⁴ *quod* Huon, 'I haue well herd you / but by y^e lorde that fourmed me to his 8 ymage, thoughe I sholde lose halfe my londes I wyll go⁵ se y^e traytoure / what weneth⁶ he to abasshe me with his thretnynges? / yf I may mete hym in⁷ the tornay, or in any other place where so euer it be, though he 12 had with him .x. M men of armes, and that I had but alonely my swerde in my hande, I shall sle him what so euer sholde fall therof, and let oure lorde god do with me as it shall please hym; ⁸nor⁸ I shall neuer 16 haue ioye at my herte tyll I haue slayne hym.' When the duches herde Huon, how he wolde do none other wyse, & that she coulde not let him of his enterpryce, she was sorowfull, and sayde, 'Syr, syn⁹ it is your plea- 20 sure / reason it is that I muste be content / but yet, syr, I desyre you to take with you .x.M. men well armyd, to thentent *that* ye be not founde vnprouyded, so that yf ye be assayed¹⁰ ye may be of¹¹ pusaunce to 24 resyste your enemyes / & also⁸ that it ¹²may be youre pleasure that I may¹² go with you; & I wyll ¹³be armed with¹⁴ shelde ⁸& helme⁸ & swerde by my syde, & yf I may mete duke Raoul, I shall gyue hym suche a buffet 28 that I shall stryke hym from his horse, &¹⁵ I am so dyspleased with hym that there is no membre¹⁶ in me but that trembleth for angre /¹⁷ I shall neuer haue ioye at my herte tyll I be reuenged of hym.' When Huon 32

¹⁻¹ Deare Lord. ² repeated. ³ besides.

⁴ Madame. ⁵ to. ⁶ thinketh. ⁷ at. ⁸⁻⁸ omitted.

⁹ seeing. ¹⁰ yet. ¹¹ sufficient.

¹²⁻¹² will please you to suffer me to. ¹³ Fol. lxvii. col. 2.

¹⁴ my. ¹⁵ for. ¹⁶ ioynt. ¹⁷ and.

herde the duches his wyfe he was wel comforted, &
 began to laugh, & sayde, 'fayre ladye, I can¹ you grete
 thanke for your wordes, but ye are to farre gone *with*
 4 chylde to ryde armed; it is a seuen monethes past syn
 ye were fyrst *with* chylde' / then Huon made to be
 cryed² in all his londes that euery man sholde be redy
 to go *with* hym to the tornay at Mayence. The dukes
 8 entent was anone knowen through³ all the countre, so
 that it⁴ spred a brode that⁵ the brute therof came to the
 herynge of duke Raoull / and, when he herd that Huon
 wold come to the tornay, he was⁶ ioyfull therof / then
 12 he sware that he wolde go and se Esclaramonde in the
 guyse of a pylgreme /⁷ then he toke⁸ on a beggers gar-
 ment and⁹ a staffe & a wallet / he shewed his entent to
 them of his preuey counsell. they wold haue stopped
 16 his goynge, but they coude not / thus he appareled him
 selfe lyke a begger / and *with* an herbe rubbed so¹⁰ his
 face and handles that suche as hadde not sene hym¹¹
 appareled coude not haue knowen hym, he was so
 20 foule and blacke.¹² he desyred his men to kepe secret
 his enterpryce. Then he departyd fro Vyen, & neuer
 rested tyll he came to the cyte of Burdeux, and so wente
 to¹³ the palays &¹⁴ founde Huon amonge his barons,
 24 makynge grete chere and feest, for to¹⁵ hym was come
 dyuers lordes and knyghtes, deuysynge of the tornay
 that shold be holden at Mayence. Thus Raoull came
 before Huon, & desyred hym for the honoure of our
 28 lorde god to gyue hym some mete & almes. 'Frende,'
 quod Huon, 'thou shalt haue ynough / but I pray the
 tell me¹⁶ fro whens thou comest, and whyther thou wylt
 go, & of what countre thou arte of'¹⁷ / 'sir,' quod Raoul,
 32 'I am¹⁸ borne of the countre of Berry, but it is .xx. yere

Huon tells her
 that her health
 will not allow
 her to bear him
 company.

Proclamation is
 made throughout
 Bordeaux bidding
 all knights
 accompany Huon
 to Mayence.

Raoul hears of
 Huon's intention,

and disguising
 himself like a
 pilgrim, desires to
 visit
 Esclaramonde.

He leaves Vienna
 and arrives at
 Bordeaux.

He sees Huon
 among his barons,

and begs for
 sustenance.

¹ giue. ² proclaimed. ³ out. ⁴ being. ⁵ omitted.

⁶ not a little. ⁷ and. ⁸ putte. ⁹ tooke. ¹⁰ on.

¹¹ otherwise. ¹² then. ¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ where he.

¹⁵ Fol. lxvii. back. col. l.

¹⁶ was.

He tells a lying story of his pilgrimage and previous life.

passed syn I was there. when I departed thens I was but yonge, for yf I sawe ¹nowe before me ¹my father or mother, I shold not know them; &, syr, I come fro beyonde y^e see, where as I haue ben prysoner amonge 4 y^e sarazyns y^e space of .xiiii. yeres in a stronge castell, where I haue suffred moche dysease of hungre & colde, & at ²last I scaped by reason of a yonge man to whome I promysed, ³yf he coude brynge me to Acre in saue 8 garde, that I wolde then gyue hym twenty ducates of golde / the yong man was couetous to haue the money, and founde the meanes that he brought me to Acre, where as I founde a kynnesman of myn who payed the 12 yonge man ⁴that I ⁵promysyd ⁶hym / and also he gaue me .xv. ducates, the whiche I haue spent with comyng hyther.' 'Frende,' quod Huon, 'I praye to ⁶god to ayde the, for yf thou were not soo yll apparelled thou 16 sholdest seme a man of a hye lygnage / for it semeth to me, yf thou were wel armyd and wepened, and were in some bysenes, thou were lyke ynough to be fered.'

Huon receives him kindly.

¶ How after that duke Raoull had ben at 20 Burdeux in the guyse of a pylgreme to se the fayre lady Esclaramonde, he retournyd agayne to Vyen. Capitulo .lxxxix.

Raoul in his disguise dines with Huon and Esclaramonde.



Fter that Huon had longe deuyssed 24 with Raoull / he wasshed & sate downe to dyner, & the duches his wyfe by him / then Huon commaunded that at the ende of the table, ryght before 28 his table, Raoull the pylgreme to be set, & ⁷was well serued / but Raoull hadde lytell care other of mete ⁸or drynke, for his thought was of another

¹⁻¹ after mother. ² the. ³ that.

⁴ the money the which I had. ⁵ had. ⁶ vnto.

⁷ there he. ⁸ Fol. lxvii. back, col. 2.

mater wherupon he sore studyed / for before him he
 saw the noble duchess Esclaramonde, of whom he was
 so amorous that he coude not withdraw his eyen fro
 4 her / for the more he beheld her the more he was
 enbrased with¹ loue / he thought he neuer sawe before
 soo fayre a lady in all his lyfe / so that for the grete
 beaute that was in her / he chaunged often tymes his
 8 coloure, but it coude not be perceyued by cause he was
 so blacke & foule with rubbing of certeyn herbes / &
 he sayd to² him selfe / that who so euer had suche a
 lady to his wyfe myght wel make auaunt to be the
 12 happiest man of y^e worlde,³ that myght⁴ haue his
 pastyme with so fayre a lady / & sayd,⁵ by the lorde
 that fourmed him / though he sholde be dampned in
 hell for euer / he wold slee Huon & haue his wyfe in
 16 maryage, & all Huons londes to be his for euer. Alas,
 that it had not pleased our lord god that at that⁶ houre
 Huon might haue knowen the treason of Raoull / he
 sholde then haue bought it ful derely. When y^e
 20 traytour had eten and made good chere / Huon gaue
 hym⁷ gowne / shyrt / hosen & shoes / & money for
 his dyspence / Raoull toke it, he durst not refuse it,
 but thanked Huon / & so toke his leue & departed, he
 24 durst no lenger tary for fere of knowlege / & as soone
 as he coude he departed out of the towne / of his
 iourneys I wyll make no longe rehersall / but he
 laboured so longe that he aryued at Vien; then he
 28 went to his palays, where as he was well receyued of
 his lordes / & they laughed when they sawe hym in
 that apparell / then within a whyle after he made hym
 redy, & his men, who were a grete nombre, & so
 32 departyd fro Vyenn, & toke the way to Mayence.
 When his vncle, the emperoure of almayne, was aduer-
 tised of his comynge / he wente & met hym without

His love for the
fair lady grows
apace,

and he swears to
slay Huon and
make her his own
wife.

Huon, however,
gives him
clothing and
money,

and he journeys
back to Vienna.

Soon afterwards
he leaves Vienna
for Mayence.

¹ her.² within.³ euen he.⁴ but.⁵ swore.⁶ this.⁷ a.

His uncle, the
Emperor of
Germany,
welcomes him
warmly.

y^e towne to do hym the more honour, & when he saw hym he was ioyefull, & kyssed hym & sayd, 'fayre nephew, I am glad of your ¹comynge; I haue longe desyred to se you.' y^e good emperour knew nothyng⁴ of y^e treason *that* his nephew had purchased agaynst Huon of Burdeux / for yf he had knowen it / to haue dyed in the quarel he wolde neuer haue consented to *that* treason. thus hande in hande themperour & his ⁸ nephew Raoull entred *with* grete ioye *in* to y^e cyte of Mayence, where as they were hyghly receyued / grete ioy was made at theyr comynge; moch people were in the towne, come thyder to iust & tourney, and ¹² many other to beholde the tryumphe. Now let vs speke of Huon of Burdeux.

A tournament is
arranged.

¶ How duke Huon toke leue of the duches his wyfe, & how he aryued at Mayence & ¹⁶ went to the palays. Capitulo .lxxxx.

Huon leaves
Bordeaux for the
tournament at
Mayence.



¶ Hen Huon saw his tyme to departe fro Burdeux to go to y^e turney to ²Mayence, he made redy his trayn, & toke *with* ²⁰ him .x.M. men of armes for the garde of his parson of ³the best horse men in all his countre / then he toke his leue of y^e fayre Esclaramonde his wyfe, who began sore to wepe when she saw ²⁴ his departure / ryght swetly they kyssed togyther at theyr departyng / then he toke his hors & he & his company departed fro Burdeux / & rested not tyll⁴ he cam to Coleyn on y^e ryne, ther he taryed .ii. dayes to ²⁸ refresshe him, & on⁵ y^e .iii. day he armed him⁶ & called his company before him, & said, 'syrs, I wyl take leue of you al, for none of you shal go *with* me. be nothyng abasshed / for he *that* alwayes hath saued me ³²

He is strongly
guarded at his
departure,

bnt he leaves his
companions at
Cologne, and
proceeds alone.

¹ Fol. lxviii. col. 1.

² at.

³ Fol. lxviii. col. 2.

⁴ vtill.

⁵ vpon.

⁶ selfe.

out of all perelles wyll not forsake me at this tyme' /
 when his men herde him they had grete meruayle /
that he wolde take his vyage alone, & he said to¹ them,
 4 ' syrs, haue no doute of me *that*² I shal³ dye tyll⁴ myn
 houre be come' / they of Coleyn enquired nothyng of
 theyr estate, for as then there was no warre, & they
 byleued *that* they wolde go to the tourney / when his
 8 lordes saw he wold ⁵go alone,⁵ they were sory *that* he
 wold go to the tourney alone, and sayd one to another,
 ' we fere gretly he shall neuer retorne agayne / & we
 shall neuer haue suche another mayster agayne' / ' syrs,'
 12 *quod* Huon, ' ye shall not nede to take any sorowe
 for me / for certaynly I knowe well yf any peryllous
 besynes sholde come to me, *that* I shold be ayded by
 kyng Oberon' / but he neded not to haue sayd so, for
 16 when kyng Oberon departed fro him, he bad him not
 to trust vpon any ayde fro him, & therfore Huon was a
 fole, & yll aduysed to truste theron, or to vndertake so
 peryllous an enterpryce as he dyde, wherby he was in
 20 grete peryll of dethe, as ye shall here⁶ after.

Huon's men-at-
 arms marvel at
 his resolve.

Huon puts vain
 trust in king
 Oberon.

¶ When Huon was redy he lepte on⁷ his horse
 without any styrrop, clene armed as he was, & after
 stretched him so in his styrropes that y^e lethers
 24 streyned out thre fyngers; he was apusaunte knyght,
 armed or vnarmed, & gretly to be fered / he toke leue
 of his men & left them wepyng in y^e⁸ cite of Coleyn /
 then he rode towards y^e cite ⁹of Mayence; ¹⁰so longe
 28 he rode *that* he had a syght of the cyte, & then he sawe
 aboute in the medow many tentes & ryche paulyons,
 pyght vp with pomelles of fyne golde shynnyng agaynst
 the sonne / Huon behelde them well, & so passed forth
 32 & entred in to the cite, where as he sawe euery strete full
 of knyghtes & squyers abydyng¹¹ y^e daye of¹² turney

The knight rides
 on to Mayence,

¹ vnto. ² for. ³ not. ⁴ vntill. ⁵⁻⁵ thus depart.
⁶ here. ⁷ vpon. ⁸ that. ⁹ Fol. lxviii. back, col. 1.
¹⁰ and. ¹¹ there vntill. ¹² the.

and arrives at the palace where the Emperor and his nephew are staying.

Duke Raoul, he learns, is looking forward to marrying some great lady.

Huon knows of his design on his wife,

and enters the hall of the palace.

Huon passed forth tyl¹ he came to y^e palays, where as he founde themperour & his nephew raoul, whom Huon loued but lytel, as he shewyd wel shortly after, as ye shal here / when Huon was come before the palays he 4 sawe themperour & Raoull his nephew goynge vp y^e stayres, then Huon met with a gret almayn, & sayd to him, 'frende, I pray thee shew me what be yonder two prynces that goth vp y^e stayres, & that so moch 8 honour is done to them.' / 'sir,' quod he, 'y^e fyrst is themperour, & he that foloweth is his nephew, duke Raoull / he was sone to themperours brother / the turney that shall be made is done for the loue of him, & at his 12 request, & after the tourney he thynketh to mary a grete lady, whose name shall not be knowen tyll the turney be done' / when Huon herde that he blussched in the face for the gret yre that he was in, for he knew 16 wel that Raoull, if he coude fynde y^e meanes, ² he wyll² haue fro him his wyfe the fayre Esclaramonde / but he promysed in his mynde that fyrst he sholde derely by her / 'frende,' quod Huon, 'I desyre you³ do so 20 moche for me as to holde my horse tyl¹ I retorne agayne out of the hal, & that I haue spoken with y^e emperour & with his lordes / 'syr,' quod the squyer with a good wyll, 'I shall here holde your hors tyll¹ ye 24 come' / now god ayde Huon, for or⁴ he myght retourne he was in grete peryll of deth, as ye shall here.

¶ How Huon slew duke Raoul in the presence of themperour syttyng at his 28 table / and of the meruayles ⁵that he dyd, & how in the chase that was made after him he strake downe themperour and wanne his good horse. Capitulo lxxxxi. 32

¹ vntill. ²⁻³ would. ³ to. ⁴ ere.

⁵ Fol. lxviii. back, col. 2.



Uon, who was full of yre & dys-
 pleasure, went vp in to the palays &
 came in to y^e hall, where as he founde
 moche¹ peple; there was themperour,
 who had² wasshed his handes, &
 was set at the table / Huon preased

forth before the table with his swerde in his hande, &
 8 sayd, 'noble emperoure, I coniure the by y^e grete vertu
 deuyne, & by your³ parte of paradyce, &⁴ that your
 soule⁵ to be dampned yf case be that ye say not the
 trowth & gyue trewe iugement with out falshode, nor
 12 to spare to say the trowth for no man lyuyng, though
 he be your nere⁶ parent' / 'frende,' quod themperour,
 'say your pleasure, & I shall answeare you' / 'sir,'
 quod Huon, 'yf ye had⁷ weddyd a lady, & loue her
 16 derely, & that she be fayre / good / swete / & sage / &
 replete with all good vertues / & that ye knowe surely
 that she loueth you entyrelly as a good true wyfe ought
 to loue her lord & husbonde, & then a traytoure
 20 pryuely to purchase your dethe for loue of your wyfe /
 & yf by aduenture after ye fynde him in y^e felde /
 or in towne, medowe / or wood / in palays / or in hall,
 & that ye myght accomplysshe your thought & your
 24 desyre agaynst the same traytoure who dyd purchase
 the sayd treason agaynst you / I demaunde then of you
 yf ye wolde slee him or not?' / 'frende,' quod
 themperour, 'ye haue coniured me; I shall answeare you
 28 to the trouthe / not for y^e valewe of x cytes I wyll not
 lye /⁸ knowe for trowth yf I had a wyfe, such⁹ one as
 ye speke of / adorned with such fayre vertues,¹⁰ wherof
 there be many suche / how be it, yf I had suche one as
 32 ye resytle, & that I knewe surely that she loued me
 enterly / then¹¹ yf I knewe any man lyuyng that wolde

Huon lays his
 case before
 the Emperor,
 although he omits
 all names.

The Emperor
 declares that any
 traitor pursuing
 a wife who dearly
 loves, and is
 dearly loved by
 her husband, is
 worthy of death
 wheresoever he
 may be found.

¹ many. ² newly. ³ hopefull. ⁴ or. ⁵ is.
⁶ nearest. ⁷ haue. ⁸ therefore. ⁹ a. ¹⁰ and.

¹¹ Fol. lxxviii. col. 1 (this should be lxxix, lxxviii repeated).

purchase me suche a treason / though he were my nere
 parent, yf I myght fynde him, in what soeuer place it
 were ¹in¹, and though I shold be slayne in the quarell,
 there shold nother² chyrche,³ aultre, ¹nor crucyfyx¹ ⁴
 that sholde saue his lyfe / but that with my two handes
 I shold slee him; and also my herte sholde serue me
 further / that after I hadde slayne hym / I wolde
 drawe out his herte out of his body, and ete it for ⁸
 dyspyte.' When Huon herde the emperour, he sayd /
 'o, ryght noble and vertuous emperoure / iust and
 trewe iugement ye haue gyuen / the which I repeale
 not / but I shall shewe you what hath moued me to ¹²
 demaunde of you this iugement / yf suche a case sholde
 a⁴ fallen to⁵ you / and, syr, to y^e entent that ye shall
 know y^e trouth what hath me moued thus to do / ¹syr,¹
 ye may se here before you he that wolde do⁶ lyke case ¹⁶
 agaynst me, which is your neuewe Raoul / who hath
 purchased my deth lyke a cruell and a false traytoure,
 to the entent to haue Esclaramonde my wyfe, and all
 myne herytages / the iugement that ye haue gyuen is ²⁰
 iust and trewe / ye shall neuer be blamed in any
 courte / but ye shall therin be named a noble prynce /
 and therefore, syr, ⁷I haue founde⁷ so nere me ¹he¹ that
 purchaseth⁸ my dethe & shame / I sholde neuer be ²⁴
 worthy to appere in any prynces courte without I were
 reuenged of hym / and I had rather dye then to forbere
 him any lenger' / ther with he drew his swerde / ⁹when
 Raoull sawe the clerenes of the swerde he was a frayde, ²⁸
 bycause he was vnarmed / how be it, he thought that
 Huon wolde not haue ben so hardy as to do hym any
 hurte in the presence of his vncle the emperoure; but
 when he sawe that Huon dyde lyft vp his swerde to ³²
 stryke hym, he was in greate fere, and fledde to the
 Emperoure to saue his lyfe / but Huon parceyued hym

Huon then
 accuses Raoul of
 working evil
 against him and
 his wife,

and drawing his
 sword, cuts off
 Raoul's head.

¹⁻¹ omitted.

² be.

³ nor.

⁴ haue.

⁵ vnto.

⁶ in.

⁷⁻⁷ hauing found him,

⁸ for.

⁹ and.

- so quye¹kely that he strake hym with a reuerse² in
 suche wyse that he strake of his heed from his sholders,
 and the body fell downe before the Emperoure / and
 4 the heed fell on³ the table in the dysshe before the
 Emperoure, wherof he hadde great doloure / 'god gyue
 me good lucke,' quod Huon ; 'this traytoure shall neuer
 be amouours of my wyfe,⁴ I am sure ynough of hym.'
 8 The emperoure, who satte at the table, hadde grete
 sorowe at his herte when he sawe his neuewe deed
 before hym / then he cryed alowde and sayde, 'Syr,
 ye my barons, loke that this knyght scape you not ; I
 12 shall neuer ete nor drynke tyll⁵ I se hym hanged. I
 sholde haue greate sorowe at my herte yf he sholde
 escape.'

The Emperor is
 greatly grieved to
 see his nephew
 slain,

and bids his
 guards seize
 Huon.

- Huon vnderstode him wel, and fered hym but lytell /
 16 but with his swerde he layde on rounde aboute hym
 and strake of armes, handes, and legges, so that there
 was none so hardy that durst approche nere to hym ; he
 slewe so many that it was ferefull to beholde hym /
 20 within a shorte space he hadde slayne mo then eyght
 and twenty / and the emperoure was in suche fere that
 he wyst not how to saue himselfe for the grete
 meruayles that he sawe Huon doo / he doutet bycause
 24 he was vnarmed / and Huon cryed & sayd, 'traytours,
 I doute you nothyng.' then on all partyes Almayns
 & Bauiers assayled Huon / but he defended hym⁶ by
 suche force and puyssaunce, that by the murder that
 28 he made the bloode ranne vpon y^e pauement lyke a
 ryuer / Huon might haue taryed to longe, for the
 emperoure and his men wente and armed theym / and
 Huon, who sawe well that he coude not longe endure
 32 without⁷ paryll of dethe / strykyng with his swerde
 rounde aboute hym / he withdrewe backe downe the
 stayres of the palayes, and none durst approche nere

Huon is furious,
 and slays twenty-
 eight of the men
 who lay hands on
 him.

After much
 bloodshed, Huon
 makes his escape.

¹ Fol. lxxviii. col. 2.

² stroke.

³ vpon.

⁴ for now.

⁵ vntill.

⁶ himself.

⁷ great.

A cousin of
Raoul challenges
him on leaving
the palace.

They fight
together fiercely,

but the German
falls from his
saddle, and is
killed.

Huon is beset on
all sides,

and does marvels
with his sword.

him bycause they were vnarmed, and for feere of him.
Huon, by his hye prowes for al his ¹enemyes, came to²
his horse and mountyd on³ hym, and so yssued out /
and there was a knyght called Galeram, who was cosyn ⁴
germayn to duke Raoul, and he was clene armed and
mounted on a good horse / and he folowed Huon, and
sayde, ‘⁴horeson and thefe,⁴ thou hast slayn duke
Raoull, my cosyn; without *thou* tourne to² me I shall ⁸
stryke the behynde.’ When Huon herde hym he sware
he had rather dye then to refuse too tourne too² hym /
soo⁵ he tourned, and they couched theyr speres / and
mette so fyersly togider that they gaue eche other ¹²
meruaylous⁶ strokes / Galerames spere brake all to
peces / and Huon, who had employed all his force and
vertu, strake Galeram on³ the shelde with his spere /
the whiche was bygge and stronge / soo that Galeram ¹⁶
fell out of the⁷ sadle so rudely that in the fall he brake
his necke, and so lay deed on³ the erth; & Huon, who
thought he had not ben deed, returned agayne to hym /
but when he sawe that he stered not / he departed ²⁰
thense / but he taryed very longe / for he sawe well
he was closed in rounde aboute, and sawe wel without
god had pyte of hym he was not lyke to scape without
deth or taken prysoner / they cast on hym dartes and ²⁴
swerdes; one with a sharpe swerde cam to² hym and
gaue hym a grete stroke / but his ⁸harneys⁸ saued his
lyfe, for all the strokes that he⁹ receyued he neuer
remoued out of his sadell. Whan Huon saw in what ²⁸
daunger he was in¹⁰ / he called vpon oure¹¹ lorde god,
humbly prayenge hym to delyuer hym out of that
paryll / with his swerde he dyde meruayles / he slewe
and claue hedes to the brayne; ³² he semed rather a

¹ Fol. lxviii, back, col. 1. ² vnto. ³ vpon.

⁴⁻⁴ Abide, Villaine. ⁵ then. ⁶ great. ⁷ his.

⁸⁻⁸ good armour. ⁹ had. ¹⁰ omitted.

¹¹ the. ¹² that.

- spyryte of hell then a man, for he that had sene hym
 wolde haue sayde that he had ben noo mortall man / he
 sawe passe by hym a knyght of Almayne / called syr
 4 Ilans Sperguer / as he passed by / Huon gaue hym
 suche a stroke that he claue hym¹ to the gyrdell, wherof
 the Almaynes were so abasshed that none durst
 approche nere to hym, they fered him so² sore. Alas
 8 that his men at Coleyne had not knowen what case he
 was in / they were to³ farre of / Huon, who fared lyke
 a wykde boore; he layde on rounde aboute hym so that
 his swerde was all bloody of y^e men that he had slayne
 12 and maymed / they cast dartes at him, so that at last
 his horse was slayne vnder hym, wher of he was sorow-
 full; how be it, lyke a coragious knyght, with his
 swerde he⁴ foughte valyauntly with his enemyes /⁵ he
 16 sawe where the erle of Seyne com to hym to haue
 stryken hym with his swerde, but Huon mette with²
 hym so hastily that he had no layser to stryke hym,
 and Huon gaue hym suche a stroke that his helme
 20 coulde not saue his lyfe / for Huons swerde entred in
 to his brayne, and so fell downe deed amonge the horse
 fete / Huon, who was quykke and experte, toke the deed
 knyghtes horse and lept vpon hym / and when he sawe
 24 that he was new horsed agayne he was ioyfull, and
 then he was able to departe in the spyte of all² his
 enemies / but themperour, who had gret sorow at his
 herte for the deth of his newew Raoull, made grete
 28 haste after Huon with .x. thousande men with hym,
 and so came fro Mayence⁶ on the sporres, desyryng to
 ouertake Huon / and so rode on before his men, for his
 horse was so good that he wold rynne as fast as a
 32 byrde coude flye / in al y^e world there was no horse
 lyke to² hym / the emperoure on this horse folowed
 Huon / & as he rode he sawe all the waye deed men lye

He attacks his
enemies like a
wild boar,

but his horse
is killed under
him.

He soon obtains
another horse,

and rides away.

The Emperor
pursues with ten
thousand men,

and follows as
fast as a bird
flies.

¹ Fol. lxviii. back, col. 2. ² omitted. ³ so.

⁴ still. ⁵ and. ⁶ all.

Huon is
overtaken,

and the Emperor
vows his death.

The knight turns
to fight with his
enemy.

The Emperor is
stricken to earth,

and Huon, seizing
his swift horse,
takes to flight.

The Germans
find their
sovereign like to
die,

that Huon had slayne / he sporred his horse that anone
he ouer toke Huon, and sayd / 'thou traytoure, tourne
thy shelde towards me, or elles my spere shall go
through thy body, for y^e sorowe that lyeth at my herte 4
for loue of my neuewe, whom thou hast slayne, con-
strayneth me to make hast to be reuenged ¹vpon² thee,
nor I shal neuer haue ioy at my hert tyl³ I haue slayne
the / moche it greueth me that I am constrayned to 8
slee the with my spere, for I had rather hange the.'
When Huon herde themperour, who was so nere hym,
and saw howe he was mounted on so good a horse / he
called vpon our lorde god, and desyred hym of hys 12
grace to ayde hym to conquere that horse / and when
he sawe that the emperour was farre before his men /
he tourned his horse heed towards the emperoure,
and couched his spere / and the emperour came agaynst 16
hym lyke the tempest / and they mette togyder so
rudely that theyr sheldes⁴ were persed, so that the
emperours spere brake all to shyuers / and Huons spere,
which⁵ was⁶ rude and stronge,⁷ strake the emperour 20
with suche puyssaunce that he was stryken fro his
horse to the erth sore astonyed, so that he wyst not
where he was / and Huon, who had greate desyre to
haue the emperours horse, alyghtyd quykely fro his 24
owne horse, and toke the emperours horse and mounted
on hym, and was therof ryght ioyous / then he sayde
to hymselfe that he douted not them all / he strake the
good horse with the sporres, and founde hym quycke 28
and lyght vnder hym / then he lefte the emperoure
lyenge on the erth, and⁸ was not⁹ contente that he was
soo soone socoured / for yf the Almaynes hadde not
quykely come Huon had slayne him /¹⁰ when the 32
Almayns cam to theyr lord, and founde hym lyeng on

¹ Fol. lxi. col. 1. ² of. ³ vntill. ⁴ speares.

⁵ omitted. ⁶ so. ⁷ that he. ⁸ who.

⁹ a little. ¹⁰ but.

the erth, they beleued¹ he had ben deed / they began
 to make grete sorow, and the emperour, who was come but he revives,
 agayne to hym selfe, sayde / 'syrs, thanked be god I
 4 fele no hurte but I maye well ryde / but I haue grete
 sorowe at my herte that Huon hath thus ledde awaye and grieves for
the loss of his
horse.
 my good horse, and is scaped awaye, and also hathe
 slayne my two neuwes / but, syrs, I counsell you
 8 that none folowe hym, for it shall be but a loste² tyme
 for the good horse that is vnder hym, and he that is on
 hym is³ valyaunt in armes /⁴ he is gretely to be doutyd /
 therefore I counsell let vs retourne backe agayne / for
 12 we may lose more then we shall wyne / but by the
 grace of god, or⁵ it be thre monethes past, I shall
 assemble suche a nombre of men that the valays and
 mountaynes shall be full of men / then wyll I goo to
 16 the cyte of Burdeaux, and wyll not departe thens tyll I
 haue wonne it, and yf I may gette Huon I shall make
 hym dye of an yll⁶ deth, & shall take and wast all
 his londes.'

The Emperor
declares that
within three
months Bordeaux
will be in his
hands.

* * * * *

20 ¶ How Huon, after⁷ he was mounted on⁸ the
 emperours good horse, he aryued at Coleyne,
 where as⁹ he founde his men, and how he
 departyd thense / and of the emperoure
 24 who lay¹⁰ in a busschement¹⁰ in a wode,
 abydyng¹¹ to haue slayne Huon.

Capitulo .lxxxii. [= xcii.]

¹ verily. ² Fol. lxix. col. 2. ³ so. ⁴ that.
⁵ ere. ⁶ euill. ⁷ that. ⁸ vpon. ⁹ omitted.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ enambushed ¹¹ there.



A knight proposes
that an ambush
shall be prepared
in a little wood
near Cologne,

and that Huon be
there slain on his
journey.

The Emperor
rejoices in this
counsel,

and declares that
he, with ten
thousand men,
will carry out the
plan.

Hus as ye haue herde, Huon departed
with y^e emperours good horse and lefte
the emperour lyenge on the erth, who
commaunded his barons to retorne 4
backe & not to folowe Huon any
further / ther with there cam to the

emperour a knyght called Godun, he was borne at
Norembrege, & he sayde / 'syr, yf ye wyll beleue me 8
& do after my counsell ye shall do otherwyse / ye shall
retourne to Mayence this night & ordayne foure C¹ of
suche men as ye haue here / & sende them with in two
legees of Coleyn, on y^e hye way in to Fraunce, & there 12
ye shall fynde a lytell wood, ²and there lette them lye
³in a busschement³ tyll Huon passe by them / for I
knowe well he wyll go strayte to Coleyne this nyght, &
lodge in a frenche mans house that dwelleth there / 16
and in the mornynge surely he wyll departe thens and
so passe by the said busschement, so that it shall not be
possyble to saue hym selfe alone / but other he shalbe
slayne or taken.' When the emperoure herde Godun, 20
he sayde / 'syr, ye haue gyuen me good counsell, and
this is lykely to be done / but it were conuenient to
sende mo then foure thousande / for the grete desyre
that I haue to gete hym in to my handes constreyneth 24
me to cause hym to be taken, to the entent to be
reuenged of hym / therfore I wolde go myselfe and
take with me x thousande men, and shall goo and lye
in the place that ye haue apoynted / for I shall neuer 28
haue parfyte ioye at my herte as longe as Huon is
alyue / for he hath caused moch sorowe at my herte for
the deth of my two neuwes, whom so pyteously he
hath slayne. let vs take oure waye a⁴ two legees besyde 32
Coleyne, nerer we wyll not approche, too the entent
that our comynge be not knowen' / then he chase out

¹ Thousand. ² Fol. lxix. back, col. 1.

³⁻³ enambushed. ⁴ about.

.x. thousande of the moost valyauntes men in his company, & the rest he sent backe to Mayence. Thus the emperour rode forth and rode so longe that daye & nyghte / that an houre, or it was daye, he came to the said wode, & there layde his busschement.¹ And Huon rode² after he was departed fro themperour that late in the euenynge he came to Coleyne, wher as he was receyued of his men with grete ioie / then Gerames said, 'syr, I requyre you shewe vs of your aduentures' / then Huon shewed them euery thyng, & the maner how he had slayn duke Raoull, & how he departed fro Mayence, & how he was pursued / and how he wanne themperours good horse / then³ Gerames & all the other had gret ioie, and ⁴thanked god of his fayre aduenture, & had grete meruayle howe he scaped / but they knewe nothyng what the emperour was aboute to do, nor that he was in the woode abydyng⁵ for Huon / that nyght Huon and his company were at Coleyne makynge good chere / ⁶the nexte mornynge they herd masse⁷ / then they mounted on theyr horses and yssued out of the towne ; they were to y^e nombre of .xiii. M. hardy fyghtynge men. and, when they were out in the feldes, Huon, lyke a good man of warre, sayd / 'syrs, I desyre you let vs kepe togyther and ryde lyke men of warre, to the entent that we be not sodeynly taken ;' and so they dyde / the daye was fayre & clere ; they myght well be perceyued a farre off / as they were by the emperour of Almain, who lay ⁸in a busschement⁸ for Huon. the emperoure spyed them fyrst, and sayd to his company / 'syrs, yonder⁹ I se moche¹⁰ people comynge ¹¹to vs warde¹¹ / they seme¹² men well experte in armes ; neuer byleue me but they be frenche men, and he *that* is theyr

The Emperor reaches the little wood near Cologne, and lies in ambush.

Huon meets his companions again at Cologne,

and tells them his adventures.

The following morning Huon, with thirteen thousand men, leaves the city.

The Emperor sees them from afar approaching the wood,

¹ ambush. ² so. ³ wherat. ⁴ Fol. lxix. back, col. 2.

⁵ there. ⁶ and. ⁷ service. ⁸⁻⁸ enambushed.

⁹ a farre off. ¹⁰ many. ¹¹⁻¹¹ towarde vs.

¹² vnto me.

and marvels at
the number of
armed men.

He fears to do
battle with Huon
and his troops,

but urges his own
men to bear
themselves
bravely.

captayne is Huon of Burdeux / he is not come hyther
lyke a small parsonage, but he is hyghly accompanied
lyke a grete and a myghty prynce. I se well he is
valyaunt by that he hathe doone; he is so noble and ⁴
hardy that none may be compared to hym. ye haue
well sene howe *that* he all alone came in to my palayes,
and there slewe my neuewe duke Raoull, wher with my
herte is in grete dyspleasure / he is gretely to be ⁸
douted, for without god helpe vs we shall haue ynoughe
to doo with hym / wolde to god that he and I were at
accordement & agreed / for he is so noble and so
valyaunt that he fereth no man / ye haue well sene syn ¹²
he departed fro Mayence he hathe slayne mo then .xl.
of my men, and hath borne me to the erthe / and he
hath taken fro me my good horse, wherby he maye be
well assured *that* there is no man shall take hym yf he ¹⁶
¹be on ²his backe / how be it, we must set on ²hym,
for my herte shall neuer be in ease as long as he lyueth /
therefore, *sirs*, I desyre you euery man this day shewe
the loue that ye bere to ³me & the saue garde of youre ²⁰
lyues / for to flye away auayleth not / therfore, *sirs*,
set on togyther, and do so that we may haue the fyrst
crye.⁴



¶ Of the gret batayle within two legees of ²⁴
Coleyne bytwene the emperour of Almayn
& Huon of Burdeux, & of the trewes that
was taken bytwene them.

Ca. .lxxxiii. [= xciii.] ²⁸

¹ Fol. lxx. col. 1.

² vppon.

³ vnto.

⁴ aduantage.



4 Von, who rode before his barons
 deuysynge with olde Gerames, re-
 garded on his ryght hande towardes
 the lytel wood;¹ he sawe in the wood grete clerenesse by reason of
 the sonne shynynge on the helmes
 and on the spere poyntes, wherby he perceyued clerely²
 8 that ther was moch people hyden in the wood / he
 shewed them to ³Gerames and to his other company /
 and sayd, 'syrs, be in a suerte *that* without batayle we
 can not scape / here is themperour who lyeth in awayte
 12 for vs. I desyre you let vs do so that he shall haue no
 cause too make ony auaunt of vs / yonder ye may se
 them how they set them selfe in ordre to abyde vs,
 therefore let vs quickly set on them' / & soo they dyd
 16 in suche wyse that with⁴ rynnynge of theyr horses y^e
 erth trymbled, & the sonne lost his lyght by reason of
 the pouder that rose vp in to the ayre on⁵ both partes /
 Huon, who ranne before on his pusaunt horse / behelde
 20 Godun, who was formost of⁶ his company ; he ranne at
 hym with a strong spere, so that he ran hym clene
 through the body so that he fel downe deed⁷ to the
 erth / & with the same spere Huon met Crassyn
 24 polynger who bare themperours baner / Huon strake him
 so fyersly that he bare horse & man & baner al to the
 erth,⁸ wherof the almayns and Bauyers were sorowfull /
 Huon dyde soo moche or⁹ his spere was broken that he
 28 fyrst bare fyue to the erth so that they hadde no power
 after to releue them selfe / ther were many speres
 broken, and many a knyghte borne to the erth that¹
 there dyed among y^e hors fete / for the father coude
 32 not helpe the sone / nor the sone coude not helpe the
 father / and many an horse ranne a brode in the felde

Huon perceives
his foemen in the
wood,

and prepares his
army for battle.

Huon made the
first onset, and
slew many valiant
officers.

¹ and. ² plainly. ³ Fol. lxx. col. 2.
⁴ the very. ⁵ from. ⁶ in. ⁷ omitted.
⁸ ground. ⁹ ere.

The Earl Savary
works much
havoc among the
men of Bordeaux,

but Huon gives
him a fatal
wound.

Huon and the
Emperor meet on
the field of battle,

and bitterly
reproach each
other.

and theyr maysters lyeng deed in the bloode and myre.
Huon, who rode aboute in the batayle sleynge and
woundynge his enemyes, behelde on his ryghte syde
and sawe the erle Sauary sleynge many of them of 4
Burdeaux. 'A, good lorde,' quod Huon, 'yf yonder
knyght reygne longe / he shall do me grete damage.'
Then he rode to hym / & gaue hym suche a stroke
with his swerde so that he strake of his shulder and 8
arme so rudely that it fell vpon the erthe / so that for
the greate payne that the erle Sauary endured he fell
from his horse / ¹& there was slayne amonge the hors
feete, wherof themperour, who was therby, was² ryght 12
sorowfull when he saw another of his nephewes slayn /
& sayd, 'a, Huon, of god be thou cursed, syn *thou* hast
taken³ so many of my frendes ; I shall neuer haue ioye
in my hert tyl I haue the in my handes to hange the' / 16
'syr,' quod Huon, 'or⁴ ye haue taken me, ye are lyke to
lese mo of your frendes, & beware of your selfe *that* ye
come not in⁵ my handes / by youre nephewe Raoull ye
haue all this domage, who by his falsenes thoughte to 20
haue betrayed me & to haue had my wyfe / yf I haue
slayne your nephewes and your men, I haue done it in
defendyng myn owne body ; I say to you yf ye be not
wel ware of me I shall brynge you to that poynt that 24
it shall be harde for you to be caryed awaye in a lytter.'
'Huon,' quod the emperoure, 'the grete hate that I
haue to the for the dethe of my nephewes, ⁶wherby I⁶
fele suche⁷ doloure at my herte that I had rather dye 28
then that I sholde not be reuenged of the / therefore
beware⁸ of me, for I shall nother ete nor drynke tyll I
haue the other quycke or deed' / then they two wente
backe to take theyr course togyther / but or⁴ they met 32
y⁶ almayns came rynnynge thither for⁹ fere that they
hadde of lesynge of² theyr emperoure / and on the other

¹ Fol. lxx. back, col. 1.

⁵ to.

⁶⁻⁶ makes me.

² omitted.

⁷ much.

³ slaine.

⁸ thou.

⁴ ere.

⁹ the.

- parte came thyther y^e olde Gerames, who fought so
 fyersly that whom soo euer he strake with a full stroke
 hadde no nede of ony surgyon; and his company fayled
 4 not for theyr partes / and Huon with his good swerde
 opened the thycke prese, soo that the almayns¹ doutd
 hym. Huon with his noble chyualry caused his enemyes
 to recule backe halfe a bowe shotte / then there was a
 8 knyght of almayn sawe well that without some remedy
 were founde / the emperour & his company were lyke
 to be slayne; he went out of the batayle as preuely as
 coude, and ronne on y^e sporres & rested not ²tyll he cam
 12 to Coleyne / then³ incontynent he rode to the prouostes
 house, & founde him in his house newly come fro
 masse / then y^e knyght sayd to him / 'syr prouost, yf
 euer ye wyll se the emperour a lyue, cause the comons
 16 of this cyte to be armed, & come, & socoure themperour
 hastely / for when I cam from hym he had gret nede of
 ayde / ther is Huon of Burdeux, who hath slayn thre of
 his nephewes, & this other day he was lodged in this
 20 cite. the emperour knoweth well ye knewe nothyng
 therof / for Huon had lodged his men in the suburbes,
 & in other lytell houses, bycause he wolde not be
 perceyued / syr prouost, make hast in this besynes' /
 24 when the prouost herd what daunger themperoure was
 in, he sowned⁴ the watch belle & made to be cryed in
 euery strete that euery man that was able to bere her-
 neys⁵ sholde arme them / & to⁶ go out in to the felde
 28 to socoure themperoure, who was in grete daunger of
 his lyfe / when the burgesses of the towne herde that
 crye euery man armed them as well as they coude / some
 were harneysed behynde, & some in a Jacke all smoked,
 32 and with staues & other wepens / what a fote & a
 horse backe, there went out of y^e cyte a⁶.xx.M. men /
 yf ye had sene y^e horsemen, ye wolde haue laughed at

Old Gerames
 fights with
 youthful vigour.

A German, in
 fear for the
 Emperor's safety,

goes to the
 provost of
 Cologne, and begs
 him arm the
 burghers.

The watch bell
 at Cologne is
 sounded.

The burghers arm
 in haste and leave
 the city, twenty
 thousand strong.

¹ greatly. ² Fol. lxx. back, col. 2. ³ where.

⁴ sounded.

⁵ armes.

⁶ omitted.

Very rude is their equipment. them, for it semed they were set a¹ horse backe in dyspyte / there was neuer sene so rude ²& foule a sorte² / it was no meruayle / for they ³hadde not ben³ accustomed to ryde in harneys / the prouost rode⁴ ⁴ before, and exorted theym to do theyr deuours, so they toke the⁵ way to come to the batayle, where as Huon & his company dyde parte of theyr wylles. ⁶the emperour seyng that he began to lese his men and place, he rode ⁸ serchyng in the batayle for duke Huon / where as he founde by aduenture Huon, who had⁷ newly slayn⁸ the Emperoures seneschall. When that the Emperoure sawe hym slayne, he was ryght sorowful, & in⁹ grete ¹² rage, then¹⁰ cryed to ¹¹Huon, and said / 'thou knyghte that neuer arte satysfied to shedde the bloode of my men to abate my lgnage and force, I pray the turne thy shelde to¹² me, for yf thou knewest the grete hate that ¹⁶ I ¹³haue to¹³ the thou woldest neuer appere before me.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I ¹⁴haue grete¹⁴ meruayle that ye so sore hate me & haue taryed so long ¹⁵to be reuenged¹⁵ / therfore, ¹⁴sir,¹⁴ beware ¹⁴of me¹⁴ / for yf I may ¹⁶I ²⁰shal¹⁷ sende you after your nephewes, whom ye say that ye loue so wel' / they toke their cours with grete & rude speres / & so cam togyther lyke y^e tempest, & met so rudely that y^e buckles of theyr harneys¹⁸ al to brast;¹⁹ ²⁴ themproure spere brake all too peces / but Huons spere was bygge & rude²⁰ / ²¹he strake the emperour therwith¹⁴ by²² such pusaunce that the²³ spere ranne through his shoulder / so that themproure fell to the ²⁸ erth so rudely that with the fall he brake the bone of his thygh / wherby he was in suche doloure that he sowned / and when Huon sawe hym lye on the grounde

The Emperor, after losing nearly all his men in the battle, seeks out Huon, and challenges him.

The duel begins.

The Emperor is flung heavily to the earth, and lies in a swoon.

¹ on. ²⁻² a company. ³⁻³ were not. ⁴ went.
⁵ their. ⁶ and. ⁷ then. ⁸ by aduenture. ⁹ a. ¹⁰ he.
¹¹ Fol. lxxii. col. 1 (this should be lxxi, which is omitted).
¹² vnto. ¹³⁻¹³ beare. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ omitted. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ for reuenge.
¹⁶ can. ¹⁷ will. ¹⁸ Armour. ¹⁹ and. ²⁰ stronge.
²¹ and therewith. ²² with. ²³ his.

he cam to hym with his swerde in his hande, and
 had¹ slayne him yf he had not ben socoured / but
 there came so many almayns, that whether Huon wolde
 4 or not, they toke² and bare³ the emperoure³ out of the
 felde, & layde hym in the wode, &⁴ demaunded of him
 how he dyd / 'syr,' quod he, 'I am sore hurte / for
 my thygh is broken, wherby I endure⁵ as moch doloure
 8 as⁵ I can abyde / but⁶ I trust as for deth I shall scape
 by the grace of god⁶ / when they herde that they were⁷
 ioyfull / and said, 'syr, knowe for trouth⁸ youre men
 are sore abasshed⁹ / for they be so¹⁰ opprest by Huon
 12 and his men / that we fere all your men shal¹¹ be
 slayne / we shall¹¹ go agayne to the batayle & leue some
 with you to¹² kepe your body¹² / 'syr,'¹³ quod the
 emperour, ¹⁴'your force nor your defence can¹⁵ auayle
 16 you nothyng¹⁶ agaynste Huon / nor agaynst his men.
 But I shall shewe you what ye shall do /¹⁷ sende quickly
 to Huon and desyre¹⁸ of¹⁸ hym in my name to¹⁹ sease
²⁰ fyghtyng²⁰, and¹⁸ desyre hym¹⁸ that there maye be a
 20 truse hadde bytwene hym and me for the space of halfe
 a yere / ²¹in that space I trust²¹ to fynde some other
 treaty / ¹⁸so¹⁸ that he and I myghte be frendes / and yf he
 refuse this,²² I se none other remedy but that we shall
 24 be all slayne or taken, and then he wyll cause me to dye
 in some²³ pryson.' 'Syr,' quod his knyghtes, 'we shall
 doo your commaundement / but we fere sore that we
 shall not be herde.' 'Syr,' quod the emperoure, 'go
 28 to hym and do the best ye can.' Then they returned
 to y^e batayle, where as they founde there company redy

Huon would have
 slain the
 Emperor, had not
 the Germans come
 to his aid.

The Emperor
 bids his men beg
 of Huon a truce
 for half a year.

¹ would haue. ² the Emperour. ³⁻³ him.

⁴ then. ⁵⁻⁵ more greefe than.

⁶⁻⁶ but, as for death, I trust by the grace of god, I shall
 escape it.

⁷ all. ⁸ that. ⁹ discomfited. ¹⁰ sore. ¹¹ will.

¹²⁻¹² looke vnto your Maiestie. ¹³ Well. ¹⁴ but.

¹⁵ cannot. ¹⁶ anything. ¹⁷ ye shall. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ omitted.

¹⁹ Fol. lxxii. col. 2. ²⁰⁻²⁰ slaying of my men.

²¹⁻²¹ for within that time I hope. ²² then. ²³ noysome.

Messengers set
out to beg the
truce.

Huon willingly
accedes to the
request.

But, had he
continued the
murderous attack,
all his enemies
would have been
slain, and he
would have been
spared much
future trouble.

to fle away / for they were nere all slayne and taken /
the knyghtes fro themperoure came to Huon and desyred
hym in the name of the emperoure that he wolde sease
the batayle and ¹blowe the retreyte,¹ and they sholde² 4
do lykewyse in the same maner / and that there myght
be a ferme truse bytwene them for halfe a yere / and
in that season they trusted *that* some good wayes
sholde² be founde that the emperoure and he myght be 8
good frendes togyther. 'Syr,' quod Huon / 'if the
emperour your mayster hadde me in that daunger /
that³ he is in / he wolde not suffre me to scape a lyue
for all y^e golde in the worlde / how be it, I am content 12
that he haue truse for halfe a yere / the which I shall
surely kepe on my parte / and yf I be assayled I shall
defende me / and yf so be that he come to Burdeux to
assayle me / by the helpe of god and my good frendes, 16
I shal doo the best that I can / But yf he wyll haue
peace with me & pardon me his dyspleasure / for the
dethe of his nephewes, I shall be redy to make peace /
and I shal make amendes for all wronges, though I was 20
not the begynner.' Then Huon caused the retreyt to
be blowen,⁴ and in lykewyse so dyde the almayns
who had therof grete ioie; it came to them at a good
poynt / for or⁵ elles all hadde ben slayne or ⁶folye⁷ 24
when he had the ouer⁸ hande⁹ that he pursued not¹⁰
his chase, for then he myghte haue had an ende of
that warre, and nother shelde nor spere more broken /
where as after many a man was slayne, and was the 28
cause that the cyte of Burdeux was lost & the fayre
Esclaramond taken & sette in pryson in the cyte
of Mayence, and Huon suffred so moche payn and
trouble / that no mortall man can shewe it / thus as ye 32
haue herde Huon graunted the trefwes, and soo bothe

¹⁻¹ sound the treatie.

⁴ sounded.

⁷ foyled.

⁵ omitted.

⁸ vpper.

² would.

⁶ Fol. lxxii. back, col. 1.

⁹ now.

³ which.

¹⁰ still.

- partes withdrew / wherof themperour and his company
 were ryght ioyfull. Then Huon called his company /
 and shewed Gerames and his lordes how he had
 4 graunted trewes to the Emperour for halfe a yere / 'and
 therefore I charge you al not to breke the peace' / the
 Emperoure was glad when he herde it / for he knewe
 well that¹ he was² scaped a greate daunger. Then he
 8 charged all his men on payne of deth that they sholde
 not breke the trewes. 'And, syrs,' quod he, 'I pray
 you make redy a lytter that I myght³ be caryed to
 Coleyne / for the payne *that* I fele in my legge causeth
 12 all my body to trymble / and when I come there
 I wyll tary tyll I be hole.' 'Syr,' quod his lordes,
 'your commaundement shall be done' / then they layde
 the Emperoure in a lytter, sore complaynyng the losse
 16 and dethe of his nephewes and lordes that were slayne,
 and his legge greued hym sore. Then Huon said
 to Gerames, 'syr, thanked be god we haue vaynquysshed
 the Emperoure & slayne many of his men / therefore it
 20 is good that we now returne to Burdeux. I haue gret
 desyre to se my wyfe Esclaramonde / who thynkethe⁴
 longe for my comynge; I am sure she is sorowfull that
 I haue taryed thus⁵ long.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'yf ye
 24 haue grete desyre to returne, so hath all other of youre
seruantes; they wold gladly se theyr wyues and
 chyl dren, and some to⁶ se theyr louers.'

Huon tells his
 company how the
 truce is made.

The Emperor is
 borne in a litter
 to Cologne.

Huon longs to see
 Esclaramonde
 again.

- 7¶ How Huon graunted the trewes to the
 28 emperour, & how the prouost of Coleyne
 came and assayed Huon, not knowinge of
 ony peace taken.

Capitulo .lxxxiiii.⁸ [= xciv.]

¹ omitted. ² had. ³ may. ⁴ thinking. ⁵ so.
⁶ would. ⁷ Fol. lxxii. back, col. 2. ⁸ lxxxiiii in text.



Huon sees the
burghers of
Cologne ad-
vancing towards
him,

and suspects the
Emperor of
treachery.

The provost of
Cologne exhorts
the men to fight
well.

Hen Huon vnderstode y^e olde Gerames,
he hadde grete ioy / then he sounded
the trompettes with suche brute *that*
meruayle it was to here, and com- 4
maunded euery man to set forwarde
towards Burdeaux. Then he behelde on his ryght
hande and saw them of Coleyne comynge in¹ grete
nombre / they were well a² twenty thousande bur- 8
gesses and other / they came with baners dysplayde
redy to fyght. When Huon sawe them, he had grete
meruayle fro whens they sholde come so hastily. Then
he sayde to his men / 'syrs, I parceyue clerely we be 12
betrayde, for yf I had wold³ the Emperour nor his
men coude not haue scaped / he hath falsely betrayed
me, syn vnder y^e colour of ⁴trewes they⁵ to set newly
vpon me.' Thus Huon sayde by themperour without 16
cause, for he knew no thyng thereof, nor that any
socoures sholde haue come to hym. 'Syrs,' quod
Huon, 'lette vs rest here and tarye tyll they come
nerer to vs / than let vs sette on them with suche hast 20
that they shall not know what to do.' 'Syr,' quod
his men, 'haue no dought we shall not fayle you for
fere of any deth / we trust to slee so many that the
erth shalbe couered with the deed bodyes of your 24
enemyes' / Huon ordred his batayle, and the prouost of
Coleyne comfortyd his men, saynge, 'syrs, our em-
perour is dyscomfytyd by Huon and his men,⁶ who be
yonder abydyng before vs / they wene⁷ to departe in 28
saue garde / but they haue no power so to do / for the
moost parte of them are sore hurt, and there horses
sore trauaylled, wherfore they shall the sooner be
dyscomfytyd.' Than the prouost and his men ranne 32
quykely vpon Huon and his men / there began a feerse
bataylle, wherin many a valyaunt man lay on the erth

¹ a.

² nere.

³ pleased.

⁴ Fol. lxxiii. col. 1.

⁵ come.

⁶ companie.

⁷ thinke.

deed / and at the¹ fyrst brunt ther wer so many slayne The attack is
made, and the
fight begins.
 that y^{e2} felde was coueryd with deed & hurte³ men ;
 sum were ouerthrowen without any hurte,⁴ and yet
 4 they coude neuer asyse bycause of the⁵ prese of the
 horses that ranne⁶ ouer them. Huon, who was¹ full of
 yre bycause he⁷ thought that vnder the coloure of trewes
 he was assaylled / he ran⁸ at a knyght who had done
 8 ⁹gret damage⁹ among his men ; it was he *that* went to
 Coleyne for that socoures / and Huon strake hym clene
 throw the bodye with his spere, so that he fell downe
 deed to the erth. Than Huon cryed his crye to gader¹⁰
 12 his men togyther / he layde on the ryght syde and on
 the lyft / so that he cut of armes and legges, and rasyd
 helmes fro y^e hedes / he semyd rather a man of y^e fayrre
 than a mortall man. But he had myche to do / for his
 16 men, who had fought all y^e day, were sore trauaylled &
 very ; how ¹¹be it, they defendyd them selues ryght
 valyauntly, & they¹² slew so many of the comons of
 Coleyne *that* y^e blode ran on the grounde in grete
 20 streemes / and themperour, who was issued out of the The Emperor,
 wood in his lytter, whan he came in to the felde / he
 herde the brute & crye of the batayle, wherwith he hearing the noise,
is brought into
the field,
 was sore abashed. Than he demaundyd what noyse it
 24 myght be. 'Syr,' quod a knyght, 'it is the good
 prouost of Coleyne, who hath brought with him the
 commons of the citie of Coleyne to ayde and socoure
 you.' 'Syr,' quod themperour, 'and he shal derely and is very
wrathful with the
provost of
Cologne.
 28 aby¹³ it / how be it, I thynke he knoweth not of the
 trewes that we haue taken with Huon / for and¹⁴ I knew
that he was aduertesyd therof, I shode cause hym to
 dye an yll deth. Go to hym and commaunde hym that
 32 incontinēt he goo to Huon too make amendes for his

1 verie. 2 whole. 3 maimed. 4 at all.
 5 great. 6 did runne. 7 had. 8 fiercely.
 9-9 verie great hurt. 10 call. 11 Fol. lxxiii. col. 2.
 12 omitted. 13 buy. 14 if.

The provost
laments the losses
his men meet
with.

A knight, sent by
the Emperor, bids
him make amends
to Huon for
breaking the
truce.

The provost,
much abashed,
seeks out Huon,

and begs him
have mercy upon
him, for he knew
nought of the
truce.

trespas / and yf he wyll not do it I charge you incont-
tynent¹ sle hym.' Whan themperour had made his
commaundement to one of his knyghtes / he role as
fast as he myght to the prouost, who was ryght sorow- 4
full for that he hadde lost foure .M. of his comons, and
the knyght slayne that came to hym. Than themper-
ours knyght sayd, 'Syr prouost, ye haue done ryght
yll / syn² ye haue broken the trewes that was made 8
betwen hym and Huon / yf the emperour may gette
you ye shall neuer se fayre day more / without incont-
tynent ye go to Huon and dele so with hym that he
be content, so that no reproche be layde to the em- 12
perour' / whan the prouost and his company herde
themperours *commaundement*, they were sore abasshed,
and reculed backe. And the prouost, who was in grete
fere for that he had done / and desyrynge to accom- 16
plysshe themperours *commaundement*, strake his horse
with the sporres, and restyd not tyll he had founde out
duke Huon. Than he lyghtyd a fote, and toke his
sworde, and sayd, 'A, ryght noble and vertues prynce, I 20
³desyre the, in the honour of Jesu Cryst, haue pyte of⁴
me, and pardon me the iniurye *that* I haue done⁵ with-
out the knowlege or lycence of themperour, who wyll
cause me to dye a shamfull deth without ye pardone 24
me / for all I knew not of y^e trewes betwen you and
y^e emperour / for I thought he was⁶ deed / syr, that⁷ I
haue done was to thentent to rescue my ryghtfull lorde,
and therby I haue lost this day moo then .iiii. .M. 28
burgesses and comons of the cyte of Coleyne, and y^e
most parte of my best frendes, and therefore, syr, I pray
you haue pyte of⁴ me, elles themperour wyll sle me or
set me in perpetuall pryson.'

32

¹ to. ² seeing ³ Fol. lxxiii. back, col. 1. ⁴ on.
⁵ against you. ⁶ had beene. ⁷ which.

¶ How Huon aryued at Burdeux, and of the counsell of the rayre Esclaramonde his wyfe, the whiche he wolde not beleue nor

4 folow.

Capitulo lxxxv.



8 Han Huon vnderstode y^e prouost / he had gret pyte, & thought that he ought lyghtly¹ to pardon hym, seyng that that he had done was in a iust cause, syn² he was not aduertesyd of³

Huon has pity on the provost,

trewes taken betwen themperour and hym. Than Huon aproched to the prouost, and sayd, 'frende, aryse

12 vp, I pardon you; this trespas that ye haue done for your lorde is⁴ reasonable / syn ye knew no thyng of y^e trewes / ye haue done as a trew subyet ought to do to his lorde / I can not be angrye with you for it.'⁵ Than

and pardons him.

16 the prouost toke leue of Huon, & retournyd to themperour, who as than was nere to Coleyne /⁶ Huon rode forth towards burdeux, and so on a wednesday to⁷ dyner he entred in to Burdeux, where as he was

Huon rides to Bordeaux.

20 receyued⁸ with grete solempnyte of the Burgesses, & of all the clergie of y^e cyte. Than he alyghtyd at his palays, where as he was by the duches Esclaramonde well receyued with grete ioy, and she demaundyd of

Esclaramonde welcoms him warmly,

24 hym yf he were hole and in good poynt.⁹ 'Fayre ladye,' quod Huon, 'thanked be our lord god, I am in good helth.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'of your comynge I am ryght ioyous / & I desyre you to shew me of your

28 aduentures.' 'Dame,'¹⁰ quod Huon, 'know for trouthe I haue ben at Mayence, whereas I founde themperour, and with hym was duke Roaull his neuew, who had cryed¹¹ a tournay; & bycause he was aduertesyd of my 32 commynge, his entencyone was that yf he had founde me

and he relates to her his adventures.

¹ in reason. ² and that. ³ the. ⁴ but. ⁵ the same.

⁶ and. ⁷ about. ⁸ Fol. lxxiii. back, col. 2.

⁹ estate. ¹⁰ Madame. ¹¹ proclaimed.

Huon continues
his narration.

there, He was¹ concludyd with his men to haue slayne
me / but by the grace of god I haue done so myche, that
in the presence of themperour his vncle, and before²
all them that were there present, I strake of his hede / 4
bycause he made his auaunt that as soone as he had
slayne me he wolde haue you to his wyfe / & also² all
myn herytage / & whan I had slayne hym I departyd
in hast fro³ Mayence / and it was not longe after but 8
that themperour folowed me with all his men, mountyd
vp on the good horse that ye haue sene, who is so good
that I beleue surely there is not suche another in all²
the worlde / and themperour, who had grete desyre to 12
reuenge the deth of his neuwe duke Raoull, auaunsyd
hym selfe a bowe shote before his compagne, and cryed
after me with many iniurious wordes. And whan I
saw that he was far of fro his men I tournyd towards 16
hym, & ranne & bare hym to the erth / than I toke
the good horse and mountyd on hym, and lete myne
owne goo / and whan his men saw hym lyeng on the
erthe, they feryd lest he had been deed / they assem- 20
bled about hym, & tooke no hede to folow me, by cause
they knew well it was but a folye to folow me, ⁴syn⁵ I
was mountyd on themperours good horse. Thus I de-
partyd fro them, and went and lay all that nyght at 24
Coleyne, wher as I founde my men whom I had left
there whan I went to themperours courte all alone /
the next day I departyd / but I was not gone farre
out of Coleyne whan themperour and .x M. men met 28
me in the way, where as they had lyene in a lytell
wood in awayte for me. Than they ranne at me & at
my men / there was a grete batayle on both partes, and
many slayne & woundyd. But I dyd so myche by the 32
grace of god & my good company / that I ouercame
them, and I slew two of his neuwes, and I bare

¹ had.² omitted.³ to.⁴ Fol. lxxiii. col. 1.⁵ seeing.

themperour to the erth / and whan he sawe that the
 losse of the batayle ran on his syde, he sent to me
 than a messenger to haue trewes for halfe a yere /
 4 the whiche I grauntyd bycause I thought I had done
 hym dysplesure ynough as in sleynge of thre of his
 neuwes. Thus we departyd, & as I¹ retournyd I met
 y^e prouost of Coleyne, who brought with hym .xx. M.
 8 men to haue resued themperour, & so we fought
 togyther. But as soone as themperour was aduertysed
 therof / he sende & commaundyd hym that he sholde
 no more fyght with me. Than the prouost came to me
 12 & cryed me mercy for *that*² he had done, excusynge
 hym selfe *that* he knew nothyng of y^e trewes. Than
 we made to sounde the retrayte of both partes. ³Thus
 we departyd without any moo strokes gyuyng, wherof
 16 I thanke god *that* I am thus scapyd.' 'Syr,' quod
 Esclaramonde, 'ye ought to thanke god *that* he hathe
 sent you *that* grace / for I haue herde say that them-
 perour⁴ whom ye haue slayne his two neuwes is greate /
 20 puyssaunt / and a ryche prynce, ryght sage and experte
 in the warre, wherefore it is to be feeryd that he wyll
 not let the mater thus to rest.' 'Dame,'⁵ quod Huon,
 'I know well this that ye say is trew; I thynke well
 24 he be dys⁶pleasyd with me for y^e deth of his neuwes
 and many other of his kyn / thus, as I haue sayd, I
 iustyd with hym two tymes / & at the seconde tyme
 I strake hym to the erthe in such wyse that he brake
 28 his thyne, so that he was constreynyd to be borne⁷ in a
 lytter / and it hath ben shewed⁸ me syn / that y^e losse
 of his good horse greuyth hym more than the losse
 of all⁹ his men. Lady, to shew you the paretles and
 32 aduentures that I haue founde¹⁰ syn I departyd fro
 you, it sholde¹¹ be to longe to shew you. But surely I

Esclaramonde
 fears that the
 Emperor will
 pursue the strife.

Huon knows that
 the Emperor is
 sore distressed
 by his escape

and the loss of
 his own horse,

¹ he. ² which. ³ and. ⁴ of. ⁵ Madame.

⁶ Fol. lxxiii. col. 2. ⁷ thence. ⁸ told.

⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ had. ¹¹ would.

and he has heard
how the Emperor
has vowed to
destroy the city of
Bordeaux.

Esclaramonde
says that her
brother will lead
a hundred
thousand men
to his assistance.

He has been a
christian for five
years past.

She desires Huon
to visit him,

thynke as soone as the trewes be¹ expyryd, but² that³
themperour with all his puyssaunce wyll come and
besege me here in Burdeux, for it hath ben shewed
me of trouthe that³ themperour hath so made his oth⁴
and promyse / and hath sworne by his crowne imperyall
that he wyll not departe hense tyll he haue taken and
dystroyed this⁴ cyte.' 'Syr,' quod Esclaramonde, 'yf
ye wyll beleue me / ye shall⁵ well resyte⁵ this, and I⁸
shall tell you how / ye know well I haue a brother
called kynge Salybraunt, who is kynge of Bougye, the
whiche extendyth on the one syde nere too Mombrant,
and on the other syde nere to Trypoley in Barbarye /¹²
he may lede in batayle a .C.M. men / and, syr, surely
he is a good crysten man,² how be it, ther be⁶ but few
that knoweth it /⁷ this .v. yere he hathe surely⁷ beleued
on Jesu Cryst / and, syr, yf ye wyll go to hym, and¹⁶
desyre his ayde by the same token *that*, whan ye were
prisoner in Babylone, I dyscoueryd the secretnes⁸ of
my mynde to hym, and shewed hym of y^e loue betwen
you and me / and how ye sholde⁹ lede me in to Fraunce,²⁰
wherof he was ioyfull, and desyred me affectuously
that I sholde doo so myche to you / that we myght
come and se hym in his owne realme. But the aduen-
ture fell so that our departynge was¹⁰ other wyse than²⁴
we had deuysyd / he was there & saw how my father
was slayne, & all suche¹¹ as were with hym / than for
fere he ranne away, & dyd hyde hym in a garden
behynd the palays, and there taryed tyll it was nyght /²⁸
and than he stalle away, and went in to his owne
realme / there shall ye fynde hym yf ye wyll goo
thyther / I know surely¹² he wyll make you¹³ good
chere / and wyll not refuse¹⁴ to¹⁵ socoure you, ¹⁶the³²

¹ is. ² omitted. ³ then. ⁴ the. ⁵⁻⁵ resist.

⁶ are. ⁷⁻⁷ verily he hath. ⁸ secrets. ⁹ would.

¹⁰ fell. ¹¹ Fol. lxxiii. back, col. 1. ¹² that.

¹³ exceeding great. ¹⁴ for. ¹⁵ ayde and.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ for hee will bee so exceeding puisaunt and mightie.

whiche shalbe so grete and puyssaunt¹⁶ that he wyll
 brynge with hym moo than a .C. M. sarazyns / &,¹ syr,
 I wolde counsell² you to take³ with you a⁴ .v. or .vi.
 4 prestes⁵ furnysshid with oyle and creme / for, as soone
 as he hath his men oute of his owne countre, he wyll
 cause them to be crystenyd, and suche as wyll not he
 wyll cause them to dye an yll deth. Syr, I requyre
 8 you beleue my counsell at this tyme / for ye know
 well⁶ out of Fraunce ye⁷ get no socoure / for yf sum
 wolde they dare not, for dought of kyng Charlemayne;
 the hate *that* he hath to you is not yet quenched for
 12 the deth of his sonne Charlote, he wyll neuer forget it⁸ /
 and, syr, yf ye go not to my brother for socoure ye may
 happe to repent it, and peraduenture it may be to late /
 and do as he doth that closyth⁹ the stable dore whan
 16 the horse is stollen.' Thus the fayre¹⁰ esclaramonde
 exortyd duke Huon her husbonde, whom she loued
 entyerly.

and to take with
 him priests to
 christen his men,
 who are still
 Saracens.

Huon can expect
 no aid from
 France.

¶ How Huon had grete ioye for the byrth of
 20 Claryet his doughter. Capitulo .lxxxxvi.

11 **W**han Huon had well herd his wyfe he
 sayd, 'my ryght dere lady and com-
 panyon, ryght well I know the grete
 24 loue that ye bere to me, the whiche
 hathe constreynyd you to say thus,
 wherof I thanke you. ¹² By the lorde that on y^e crosse
 dyed¹³ to redeme humayne lynage, I wyll go to no place
 28 nor sende for any socoures / tyll¹⁴ I se them befor my
 cyte, and that I haue cause to purchase¹⁵ for socoures,
 nor tyll¹⁴ I fele the strokes of y^e Almayns and bauyers
 that they can gyue whan they be out of there owne

Huon thanks his
 wife for her good
 counsel, but

refuses to set out
 for the East
 before Bordeaux
 is in positive
 danger.

¹ also. ² and aduise. ³ along. ⁴ some. ⁵ well.

⁶ that. ⁷ shall. ⁸ omitted. ⁹ shutteth. ¹⁰ Ladie.

¹¹ Fol. lxxiii. back, col. 2. ¹² But. ¹³ for.

¹⁴ vntill, ¹⁵ labour.

He would be
reproached for
departing now.

Esclaramonde
presses her
husband to
obtain men from
her brother before
the Emperor
arrives,

and tells him
her fear of the
Germans.

Esclaramonde
becomes a
mother.

countrie / nor as longe as my shyld is hole¹ fyrste, I
thynke they shall fele the sharpnes of my spere hede
and good sworde /² by goddes grace I shall not abandone
you nor leue my cyte and good burgesses /³ it myght 4
greatly be layde to my reproche, yf I sholde thus goo
away.' 'A, syr,' quod Esclaramonde, 'ye may well
know that this that I haue sayd is for the fere that I
haue of you / for I haue ben well aduertesyd that 8
themperour sore hateth you, and not without cause, for
his neuewes and lordes that ye haue slayn, and ther-
fore, *sir*, yf ye wyll beleue me ye shall ⁴haue men to
defende you brought hyther by the kynge my brother / 12
so that whan the emperour is come in to your londe, it
shall lye in you other to make peace or warre at your
wyll / reason it were that ye made hym sum amendes
for the hurtes that ye haue done to⁵ hym / and on the 16
other parte, yf he wyll haue no peace / than it shall lye
in you to make hym suche warre so that he shall not
departe without your agrement and to his great losse.
syr, the fere that I haue to lese you constreyneth me 20
thus to say / I haue herd often tymes sayd / that the
entre into warre is large / but the issuynge out ther of
is very straye / nor ther is no warre but it causeth
pouerte. But syn⁶ it is your pleasure not to beleue me, 24
it is reason *that* I must be content that your pleasure
be fulfilled.' Than they entred in to other deuyses /
⁷gret ioye and feest was made in the palayes at Burdeux
betwene Huon and the lordes of the countrie. at last 28
the fayre Esclaramond, who was grete with chylde, fell
vpon trauelynge, and she prayed to god ⁸and to oure
ladye for ayde & helpe. she was in her chambre,
whereas she⁸ sufferyd gret payne / wher of Huon had 32
grete pyte whan he herd ther of / for ⁹there was grete

¹ and sound. ² and yet. ³ for. ⁴ Fol. lxxv. col. 1.

⁵ vnto. ⁶ seeing. ⁷ and. ⁸⁻⁸ for helpe. and.

⁹⁻⁹ the loue betwene them was exceeding great.

lone between them⁹ / at last y^e ladye was brought to bed
of a fayre doughter / wher of Huon thanked god / than
entred in to the ladyes chambre a greate nombre of the
4 ladyes of the fayrre / & came to Esclaramondys bed
and sayd, 'Lady, ye ought well to thanke god / for ye
haue brought forth y^e ¹moost¹ fayrest and best creature
that as now is in the worlde, and to whom oure lord
8 god hath grauntyd moost graces at her byrth / for
²more fayrer / nor more sage / nor courteys² hath not
be borne this .C. yeres past / for she shall haue such
desteney and happe³ in this worlde / that of the realme
12 of Arogon she shalbe quene crownyd, and she shall soo
gouverne her selfe that she ⁴shalbe⁵ a seint in paradise.
At Tortouse ther is the chyrche where ¹as yet¹ she is
honouryd / the whiche is foundyd in her name, and is
16 namyd saynt Clare.' Esclaramounde was ioyfull of the
wordes of these ladyes of the fayrre. ⁶grete ioy⁷ was
made ⁸in the chambre⁸ for the byrth of this chylde /
who was gretly regardyd of the ladyes of the fayry, and
20 they sayd eche to other that this chylde was the fayrest
creature of ⁹the world / they toke this chylde eche after
other and blyssyd it thre times, and than¹⁰ layde it
doun and departyd sodenly so that no man wist
24 where they were become, wherof all the ladyes & other
hed grete meruayle. This tydynges was brought to
Huon, he was ryght ioyefull, and sayd / 'A, syr¹¹ kynge
Oberon, I beleue surely that as yet ye haue not forgotten
28 me. Now I dought no thyng themperour nor all his
puyssaunce syn¹² ye haue remembraunce of me.' Than
Huon cam in to the hall, and thyder his doughter was
brought to¹³ hym to se / he toke her in his armes and
32 shewed her to his lordes, who were¹⁴ ioyfull to se her.

Ladies of
fairylond attend
the birth of her
daughter,

and declare her to
be the fairest and
best creature born
in a hundred
years.

The fairies thrice
bless the child.

Huon thinks
that king Oberon
is still mindful of
him.

1-1 omitted.

2-2 a more faire, modest, wise, and courteous. ³ fortune.

⁴ Fol. lxxv. col. 2. ⁵ accounted of as if she were.

⁶ and. ⁷ and feasting. ⁸⁻⁸ euerywhere. ⁹ in all.

¹⁰ they. ¹¹ worthy. ¹² seeing. ¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ very.

The babe is
christened
Clariette.

Than she was borne to chyrche and with grete solemp-
nyte crystenyd / and named Claryet, because she was
soo fayre and clere to beholde. Than she was brought
to the duches, who had of her gret ioy / whan the 4
duches had kept her chambre a moneth, than she was
chyrchyd, wher of all the courte was ioyfull, and such
feest was made that yf I sholde shew you the ryches
and noblesse that was there shewed, it sholde be ouer 8
longe to reherse. Therefore I¹ leue spekyng therof at
this tyme tyll² another season.

¶ Howe themperour assembled a grete hoste
and came to Burdeux. Capitulo .lxxxxvii. 12



3 E haue well⁴ herde here before the
maner & cause why this warre was
mouyd betwene y^e emperour of Al-
mayne & Huon, duke of Burdeux, the 16
whiche, after the trewes was expyryd,
and that the emperour was hole of his thygh that Huon
had broken, he publysshyd the warre⁵ / and sent ouer
all his empyre / that euery duke / erle / baron / 20
knyght / and squyer shold com to hym, and sowdeours
fro all partes, and that within a moneth they to be at
the cyte of Mayence, to thentent too make warre vpon
Huon of Burdeux / this commaundement was pub- 24
lysshed / and suche delygence was made that by the
day apoyntyng euery man was com to the cyte of
Mayence, and lodgyd in the cyte and in paulyons about
the cyte / there were assembled no than .lx. M.⁶ men, 28
well aparelyd⁷ for the warre. whan this emperoure,
who was named Tyrrey, saw them he was⁸ ioyfull / &
sore thretened Huon, and made promyse before⁹ all his
barons that he wolde neuer retourne in to his owne 32

The Emperor of
Germany
assembles his
men at Mayence

to make war upon
Huon.

Sixty thousand
men are collected
together.

¹ will. ² vntill. ³ Fol. lxxv. back, col. 1.
⁴ at large. ⁵ againe. ⁶ and all. ⁷ appointed.
 ⁸ verie. ⁹ to.

countrie tyll he had fyrst slayne Huon, who had done hym so great damage. Than he commaundyd his constables & marshalles to be redy to departe the next 4 day, & to take the way towards Coleyne with al his artylerye and caryage, the which was done. The next day themperour entred in to the felde and so rode towards Coleyne / and whan themperour was within a 8 legge than there met with hym the olde Sauary hys brother, who was father to duke Raoull, slayne by Huon. whan these two brethern met togyther there was great ioy made.¹

They prepare to march to Cologne.

On the way the Emperor, whose name was Thierry, met his brother Savary, father of duke Raoul.

12 ¶ But than duke Sauary began to wepe, & sayd to his brother themperoure, 'Syr, of your cominge I am ryght ioyfull. But when the pyteous deth of my dere beloued sonn your newew Raoull cometh to my mynde / 16 there is no membre on me / but for doloure ²and dyspleasure trymbleth / nor I can neuer haue parfyte ioy at my herte as longe as he that hath done me thys dyspleasure ³be alyue.'³ This duke Sauary was a noble 20 man / but betwene hym and his sonne Raoull was great dyfference, for this ⁴duke Raoull was the untrewest traytoure that euer lyued : the which ylnes⁵ procedyd by y^e duches his mother / who was doughter to 24 Hurdowyn of Fraunce, the moost untrewest and falsest traytour that as than lyued in the worlde / whan themperour herde his brother speke the water⁶ fell ⁷out of⁷ his eyen, & ⁸embracyd hym, and sayd, 'My ryght dere 28 brother, your doloure⁹ dyspleaseth me / for your doloure is myne,¹⁰ therof I wyll haue my¹¹ parte / and yf ye haue ⁹ioy my parte shal¹² be therin. But it is not possyble for vs / to haue hym agayne for whom we make this 32 sorowe' / god ayde Huon fro his enemyes, for they greatly desyryd his deth; yet often tymes they that

Duke Savary weeps for the loss of his son.

He is not an untrue traitor, like duke Raoul.

The Emperor consoles his brother.

¹ betwene them. ² Fol. lxxv. back, col. 2. ³⁻³ liueth.

⁴ the. ⁵ wickedness. ⁶ tears. ⁷⁻⁷ from. ⁸ he.

⁹ much. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ a. ¹² likewise.

The army is well
received in
Cologne.

It was a great
host with long
lines of artillery,

and passed over
the Rhone into
the country of
Bordeaux.

desyre another mans deth auounseth there owne. Thus,
as ye haue herde, themperour and duke Sauary entred
in to the cyte of Coleyne, where as they were reseyued
with great ioy / and so rode to y^e palayes : ¹there they ⁴
souppyd. I wyl make no longe rehersall of y^e good
chere that they made there. Than after soupper they
went to there rest, and the next mornynge rose and
herde masse,² and tooke a soppe in wyne,¹ Than departyd ⁸
out of Coleyne. It was a goodly host to beholde, they
& theyr caryage / &³ artelyrey strechyd foure legges of
lenght. Thus they all had sworne y^e deth of Huon /
they passyd by hye Borgoyne and by Dolpheurey,⁴ and ¹²
so passyd the ryuer of Rone, and so in to the countre
of Burdeux. Nowe I wyl leue spekyng of them tyll
another season.

⁵¶ How themperoure Tyrrey of Almayne ¹⁶
beseged the cyte of Burdeux / and howe
Huon made hym redy to fyght with his
enemyes. Capitulo .lxxxxviii.



Huon orders all
his men to be
ready in armes,
and to come to
Bordeaux, when
he heard of the
Emperor's
protest.

The town is well
fortified and
furnished with
food and guns.

Hus ye haue well⁶ herde here before ²⁰
the deuises that the duches Esclara-
mond had made to her husbonde
Huon; who as soone as she was
chyrched, Huon sent his commaunde- ²⁴
ment throw al his countre euery man
to be redy in armes and to come to Burdeux, bycause
he was aduertysed of y^e cominge of his enemyes / the
messengers made such delygence that in⁷ .xv. dayes ²⁸
after euery man was come to Burdeux / and the⁸ duke
Huon reseyued them with great ioy. Than he repayryd
the cyte and the toures and walles, and it was well
furnysshed with vytaylles and artelery, as in suche a ³²

¹ and. ² seruice. ³ their. ⁴ Dolphinne.
⁵ Fol. lxxvi. col. 1. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ within. ⁸ there.

case it¹ aparteynyd. ²At that tyme y^e cyte of Burdeux was not so strong as it is now / whan duke Huon saw his cyte so well garnyshed with men and vytaylle /
⁴he was ryght ioyfull. ³Than he called to hym the olde Gerames, & sayd / 'my ryght dere frende, ye se well this warre ⁴that is aparent betwene themperour and me, & nowe we be well aduertysed of his comynge, who is
⁸redye to come with all his host to besege this oure cyte / & therefore, my hertye⁵ frende, who hath aydyd me in so many besynesses, I pray you counsell and ayde me now; for⁶ all the condute of my warre / I wyll"
¹²ye haue the charge, & that ye wyll comforte my men ⁸to do⁸ well, so that of vs there be none ⁹yil songe⁹ made, and that our enemyes haue no cause to prayse y^e warre that they haue agaynst vs / nor that whan they
¹⁶be retournyd in to there countres that they make not there anauntes amonge theyr wenches and¹⁰ louers.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'I thanke you of the honoure and gret trust that ye haue in me / how be it, ye haue
²⁰many other more sage and hardy than I am, too whom this¹¹ charge sholde better aperteyne than to me. But, sir, as for me, I shall so aquyte me that I trust I shall not be reprehendyd.' Thus, as ye haue herde, Huon
²⁴made his deuyses amonge all his barons / and made all his ordynaunces for the defence of the cyte and the maner of theyr yssues,¹² and apoyntyd men for theyr rescue in reculynge. And themperour was entred in to
²⁸the countre of Burdeux with a ¹³grete puyssaunce,¹³ byrnynge and dystroyenge the countre, wher of the poore peple were sore abasshed, bycause they neuer had warre before / ³thus themperour neuer restyd
³²exilynge¹⁴ & dystroyenge the countre tyll they came

Huon begs the aid of Gerames in the conduct of the war.

Gerames, in spite of his age,

promises to do all he can.

The Emperor. burns and destroys all the country he passes through,

¹ well. ² for. ³ and. ⁴ Fol. lxxvi. col. 2.

⁵ dere. ⁶ in. ⁷ that. ⁸⁻⁹ omitted.

⁹⁻⁹ euill report. ¹⁰ their. ¹¹ great. ¹² issuing.

¹³⁻¹³ mightie armie. ¹⁴ wasting.

until he arrives
before the city of
Bordeaux,
and there
encamps.

Huon prepares his
men for a sortie.

Twenty thousand
are ordered to
follow him.

Esclaramonde
prays for their
safety.

before the cite of Burdeux and theyr he pyght vp his tentes and paulyons / and themperoure lay on the waye ledyng to Parys / on the other parte duke Sauarey, father to Raoull, was lodgyd by themperours marshalles / 4 so that all the cyte was closyd rownde aboute. Huon, who was within the cyte, behelde theyr countenaunces and maner of theyr lodgyng. He commaundyd that all his men sholde be redy to yssue out vpon ¹there 8 enemyes / the whiche they dyd. Than Huon armed hym ²rychely / and mountyd vpon his good horse, the whiche was the emperours / and sware that, or ³he returnyed agayne, he wolde shew his enemyes what 12 they of Burdeux coude do / whan he was mountyd on his good horse he cam in to the cyte, and founde the old Gerames redy aparelyd and ⁴all his company. Than he ordaynyd ⁵.v. M. men to kepe the cyte, & 16 .xx. M. ⁶to go with hym / thus duke Huon made his ordenaunces. ye may well know ⁷that the sorow was great that Esclaramonde made for the duke her husbonde / she was ryght sage. ⁸she feryd to lese hym, 20 bycause she knew hym so aduenturus / and that his enemyes were of so grete nombre / ⁹ryght peteously wepyng she made her prayers to our ¹⁰lorde god deuoutly that he wolde kepe, and defende Huon, her 24 husbonde, & all hys men fro daunger & losse, & to sende hym peace. ¹¹

¶ Of the grete batayle that was before Burdeux, where as Huon had grete losse & the 28 olde Gerames taken. Capitulo .lxxxxix.

¹ Fol. lxxvi. back, col. 1.

² selfe verie. ³ ere.

⁴ with. ⁵ appoynted.

⁶ men. ⁷ imagine.

⁸ wise. ⁹ but. ¹⁰ the.

¹¹ with his enemies.

1 Thus, as he haue herde, Burdeux was be-
 seged by themperour of² hye Almaynes,
 & by his brother the duke Sauary, with
 4 a grete nombre of men. Than Huon
 yssuyd out, and whan he was past the
 porte, he made haste, to thentent to surpree his
 enemyes, for at that tyme themperour was set at dyner.
 8 Than Huon & his company all at ones dasht in amonge
 the tentes and paulyons / and bet them downe to y^e
 erthe, so that they that were within were sore³ abasshed,
 for they had⁴ thought⁵ that Huon durst neuer a⁶
 12 yssued out of the cyte agaynst hym, and the great
 nombre that he was of. Huon layde on rounde aboute
 hym so that who so euer met with hym had no nede of
⁷ leche⁷ craft. Also the olde Gerames dyd meruaylles,
 16 and so dyd the Burdeloys. many a ryche tent and
 paulyon was beten downe⁴ to y^e erthe,⁸ and they within
 slayne and all to hewyn. ⁹Huon, who was mountyd on
 his¹⁰ good horse, met with⁴ a knyght of themperours
 20 house, and he gaue hym suche a stroke with his sword
 that he claue his hede to the teth / and than¹¹ strake
 another that his hede / helme & al, flew to the erth. they
 that sawe that stroke was sore abasshed. Themperoures
 24 men assembled together by heepes. But by the hye¹²
 prowess of Huon anone they were agayne departyd /
¹³he was so doughtyd and feryd that none was so hardy
 to aproche nere⁴ to⁴ hym. The crye and noyce mountyd
 28 so hye that the emperour, who was⁴ as than⁴ at⁴ hys⁴
 dyner, whan he herde the¹⁴ crye he rose fro the table,
 and demaundyd what noyse it was. 'Syr,' quod a
 knyght, who was fled and sore hurt / 'sir, know for
 32 trouth that your enemye Huon is issuyd oute of Bur-

Huon and his
company take the
besiegers by
surprise,

and fight with
vigour.

The tents were
beaten down, and
their inmates
slain.

The Emperour is
roused from
dinner,

and learns the
cause of the
disturbance that
he hears from
afar.

1 Fol. lxxvi. back. col. 2. 2 the. 3 much.
 4 omitted. 5 verily. 6 haue. 7-7 a leches.
 8 ground. 9 and. 10 a. 11 he.
 12 mightie. 13 for. 14 them.

The Emperor
arms himself,
and orders his
men to the onset.

He promises that
Huon's wife and
land shall be
given to the
warrior who slays
the knight.

There is much
rivalry for the
promised gifts.

deux, and hathe done so myche¹ that he hathe slayne
a quarter of ²all² your hoost, and without that ye doo
rescue your men³ shortely, your losse is lyke to be ryght⁴
grete, ⁵for I haue sene Huon your enemy mountyd ⁴
vpon your good hors, wheron he doth gret meruaylles /
for there is none *that* meteth ²with² hym but ²*that*²
⁶is slayne, he is so cruell and hardy.' whan themperour
herde the knyght he swet for displeasure; ⁷incontynent ⁸
he armed hym / and issued out of his tent and mountyd
on his horse / and founde his men redy. Than he saw
Huon mountyd on his good horse / than⁸ he sayd to
his men, 'Syrs, I requyre you at this tyme put to your ¹²
paynes that I may be reuengyd of myne enemye, who
before my face yonder sleeth⁹ my men. he is so
valyaunt that whom so euer he stryketh with a full
stroke is but deed / gret damage it was whan he slew ¹⁶
my neuew.¹⁰ who so euer can delyuer hym to me
quycke or deed shalbe my frende for euer, and I shall¹¹
shew hym y^e courtesy / that Esclaramond, who is so
fayre, I shall gyue her to¹² hym in maryage, & all the ²⁰
countrie¹³ of Burdeux.'

¶ Than suche as herde his promyse made them
redy for ¹⁴couytes¹⁴ of that gyft. But sum hastyd so
myche to acomplysh themperours wyll that it was to ²⁴
late after for them to repent. It is a¹⁵ saynge that
an yll haste is not good / sum hastyd so sore¹⁶ that
after¹⁷ bought it full¹⁸ dere, as ye shall¹⁹ here. after
these wordes spoken by the emperour, suche as desyryed ²⁸
to accomplyshe his wyll ran in all togyther in to the
batayle agaynst the Burdeloys / there was grete occy-
syon²⁰ on both partes. Huon, who had grete desyre in
his hert to slee his enemyes / dyd so myche by hys ³²

¹ hurt. ²⁻² omitted. ³ verie. ⁴ exceeding.

⁵ Fol. lxxvii. col. l. ⁶ he. ⁷ and. ⁸ whereon.

⁹ killeth. ¹⁰ nephewes. ¹¹ will. ¹² vnto. ¹³ Court.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ the couetousness. ¹⁵ an old. ¹⁶ much.

¹⁷ afterwarδες. ¹⁸ too. ¹⁹ heare. ²⁰ slaughter made.

proves that he reculyd his enemyes to theyr tentes /
 & it had been yll with them, &¹ duke Sauary had not
 rescued them / he with his grete proves made them to
 4 recouer agayne the felde / ²there was a sore batayle on
 both partes. The olde Gerames that day slewe many a
 man. But he aduenturyd hym selfe so far forth
 amonge his enemyes / that his horse was slayne vnder
 8 hym / so *that* he was ³constreynyd to fall to the erth /
 and there⁴ he was taken & led to themperours tent, and
 gret fetters set⁵ on⁶ his legges. Alas that Huon had
 not knowen therof; if he had, he shold not haue ben
 12 led away without grete losse. But he was in y^e batayle
 doying merueilles in armes. he helde his sworde in his
 hande tayntyd with blood and braynes of men that he
 had slayne / there was none so hardy that durst aproch
 16 nere to⁷ hym / he cryed⁸ 'Burdeux' to draw his men
 togyther / and dashct in to y^e greatest prease, & strake
 on al partes in suche wyse that his enemyes⁸ gaue hym
 place, for none durst abyde his strokes / ⁹the prease
 20 was so grete of the men of duke Sauareys that he had
 gret payne to breke in among them. he fought so
that he semyd rather a man of the fayrre or a speryt
 than a mortall man / euery man had grete meruayle of
 24 the proves that he shewed¹⁰ & his company. Than cam
 agaynst hym y^e olde duke Sauary, with a byrnyng
 desyre too be reuenged for the deth of his son Raoull;
 and Huon parseyued hym well, and made suche hast
 28 that the duke had no leyser to gyue the fyrst stroke /
 for Huon gaue hym suche a stroke with his sworde
that he cut clene of a quarter of his shyld, & y^e stroke
 gleynt¹¹ to the horse necke by suche vertue that it strake
 32 of clene the horse hede / so that there by the duke fell
 to the erth / and yf he hadde not ben well socouryd he

but Huon is as
mighty as ever.

Old Gerames also
fights with
strength,

although his
horse is killed
under him,
and he is taken
prisoner.

Huon is to be
found wherever
the fight is
hottest.

His prowess is
marvellous.

He unhorses at
one blow Duke
Sauary, who
desires vengeance
for his son's
death.

¹ if. ² and. ³ Fol. lxxvii. col. 2. ⁴ then.
⁵ clapt. ⁶ vpon. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ still. ⁹ Now.
¹⁰ shewed *after* company. ¹¹ glyded.

He would have
been slain, had
he not been
succoured by his
men.

had been slayne / but there came to hym so many men,
that whether Huon wolde or not he was socouryd / and
mountyd vpon a new horse / whan Huon sawe that he
was scapyd, he called vpon our lorde god, and sayd, 4
'A, good lorde, yf I tary here longe I se well that my
force shall but lytell profyte me, for there be .xx.
agaynst one.' Than he called certen of his lordes that

Huon perceives
that his men are
outnumbered,

were aboute hym, & sayd, 'Syr, I perseyue well our 8
force can not longe contynew¹ / therfore it is better²
departe betymes than to ³tary to longe.' 'Syr,' quod
they, 'as it shall please you' / ⁴than they tournyd them
towards Burdeux a soft pace / and Huon dyd / as the 12
sheparde doth go behynde his shepe / so wente he with
his sworde in his hande / defending his company fro
his enemyes, ⁵sorowfull & angry for the losse that he

and retires to
Bordeaux.

had that day, for in the mornynge whan he departyd 16
from Burdeux he had a .xx. M. of good fyghtinge men,
& at his retourne he saw well he had not past⁶ .iiii. M.,
wherwith he was sore displeasyd / & often tymes by
the way turnyd & returnyd to his enemyes. At last he 20

Sixteen thousand
of his soldiers
were left dead
upon the field.

met with a knyght named Jozerane, & gaue hym suche
a stroke *that* he fell downe deed to y^e erth, wherof
themperour Tyrrey was sore dyspleasyd / for he was his
cosyn germaine; & after⁷ he slew other .iiii. knyghtes 24
of Almayne. Than he returnyd agayne after hys men,
& so led them forth⁸ as the sheparde doth his shepe /
& often tymes tournyd & retournyd vpon his enemyes,
so *that* there was none so hardy *that* durst aprouche nere 28
hym / *therwith* thyther came themperour ryche-ly armed
with y^e⁹ armes imperyall,¹⁰ mountyd vpon a puyssaunt
horse. Than he cryed, 'on forth, my barons / take
hede *that* this traytoure Huon scape not away / yf I 32
maye haue hym in my handes / all the golde in the

While retreating,
Huon kills a
cousin of the
Emperor, and
four German
knights.

The Emperor
with his barons
attacks him,

¹ endure. ² to. ³ Fol. lxxvii. back, col. 1. ⁴ so.
⁵ right. ⁶ aboue. ⁷ that. ⁸ still.
⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ and.

- worlde shall not redeme hym fro hanginge.' Huon,
 who herd the emperour, sayd, 'A, false olde lepar,¹
 thou lvest falsly, I was neuer traytour.' Than them-
 4 perour ranne at Huon, & strake hym on the shyld, and
 strake it clene throwe, and the spere brake all to peces.
 And Huon with his sworde strake themperour on the
 helme, so that the serkell set with stone & perle was
 8 betten to the erth. ²yf the horse had not swaruyd,
 themperour had neuer³ scapyd alyue; neuertheles, the
 stroke lyght so on his shulder *that* y^e sword persyd the and is sore
wounded by
Huon.
 mayle and gaue hym a depe wounde; & forther, y^e
 12 sworde dissendyd to y^e arson⁴ of the sadell, so *that* the
 hors ⁵ was stryken nye a soulder in two peces / ²so
 that⁶ themperour & the horse fell downe⁷ togyther ⁸to
 y^e erth³ / so *that* &⁹ he had not ben rescued by y^e
 16 Almayns he had ben slayn. Huon was sorie when he
 saw the Emperour so scapyd with his life; than he
 tournyd and rode towardes Burdeaux after his men, who
 tarryed still for hym, and Huon dyd so myche by hys
 20 prowes *that* for all themperour & his men he entred in
 to his cyte of Burdeux. But as than he knew not *that*
 the olde Gerames was taken prisoner. ¹⁰Thus, as ye
 haue herd, duke Huon entred in to Burdeux *with*
 24 .iiii. M. men, of whome y^e moost parte were sore hurte /
 he rode to the palays & there alyghtyd. Than he lokyd
 aboute hym, & was sore abasshed when he saw not
 Gerames by hym / *than* he demaundyd yf any man He is saddened
to hear of
Gerames' fate,
 28 knew where he was. 'Syr,' quod a knyght named
 Gallerance, 'knew for trouthe¹¹ he is taken prysoner, &
 is in the handes of your enemyes / for to haue aydyd
 hym I was woundyd in thre places, & nerehande
 32 slayne. I employed my force to haue socouryd hym,
 but I coude fynde no remedy' / whan Huon herd that /

¹ dotard.² and.³ not.⁴ bow.⁵ Fol. lxxvii. back, col. 2.⁶ the.⁷ to the ground.⁸⁻⁸ omitted.⁹ if.¹⁰ so.¹¹ that.

and piteous is his
sorrow.

Huon tells his
wife the sad
tidings.

She begs him
seek succour from
her brother,

but he declares he
will not abandon
the city.

he prasyd gretly Gerames force & vertue, & gretly compleynynd & sayd, 'alas that I had not knowen of his takynge, or¹ I had² returnyd I wolde soner haue dyed / but at the leest I wold haue taken sum man suffeycent ⁴ to a³ redemyd hym agayne out of daunger.' A pyteous⁴ thynge it was to here duke Huon what sorow he made for his frende Gerames / but his compleyntes coude not auayle hym / his lordes sayd, 'syr, ⁵with goddes grace⁵ 8 ye shal haue hym agayne saue & alyue.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'it shall be a grete aduenture without they put hym to deth.' Than Huon mountyd vp to the palays, where as he met Esclaramond his wyfe / whom ¹² he kyssyd & embraced many tymes. 'Syr,' quod y^e lady, 'I pray you shew me of your newes.' 'Lady,' quod Huon, 'they be but pore & dolowrus, for of .xx. M. men *that* I had with me ⁶out of this cyte, I haue ¹⁶ brought home alyue but .iiii. M., and yet the moost parte of them is⁷ sore woundyd / and besyde that,² the olde Gerames is taken prisoner, who hath suffred before this tyme so many paynes & trauaylles for my sake.' 'A,⁸ ²⁰ syr,' quod y^e lady, sore wepynge / 'I had rather ye had beleued me, and that ye had gone and sought for socoure of my brother / who wolde not a³ faylled you / he⁹ wolde a³ come with you with so myche people and ²⁴ puyssaunce that themperour sholde not a³ durst to³ abyden you.' 'Dame,'¹⁰ quod Huon, 'speke no more therof / for the losse of as myche as .x. cytyes be in valure I wolde not haue gone thether nor too none ²⁸ other parte for any socoure, nor yet wyll not tyll I se me sorer¹¹ oppressyd than I am as yet / I myght well be reputyd for a coward and recreaunt thus to abandone my cyte / I had rather be dysmembred in to peces ³² than for fere I sholde leue you / it sholde¹² be gretly to

¹ ere. ² omitted. ³ haue. ⁴ lamentable.


⁵⁻⁵ by the grace of god. ⁶ Fol. lxxviii. col. 1. ⁷ be.

⁸ Alas. ⁹ but. ¹⁰ Madame. ¹¹ more. ¹² would.

my reproche in the courtes of hye prynces, and whan I
 com there to be markyd with the fynger for that grete
 defaulte.' 'Syr,' *quod* Esclaramonde, 'your pleasure is
 4 myne, syn¹ ye wyll haue it so / but I am ryght sorye²
 for the olde Gerames, who is prysoner in y^e tentes of
 your enemyes / who hath suffred for your sake many
 grete paynes & pouertyes. I cannot be but sory whan
 8 I remembre hym.' 'Dame,'³ *quod* Huon, 'as yet
 Gerames is not deed. I hope, by the grace of our lorde
 god, *that* we shall haue hym agayne alyue.' 'Syr,'
quod she, 'I pray to god¹ it may be so.' Now let vs
 12 leue spekyng of Huon, and speke of themperour, who
 lay sore hurt on the erth.

Huon hopes to
 rescue Gerames.

¶ How themperour reasyd vp a payre of
 galowes to hang vp the olde Gerames and
 16 all the Burdeloys that were taken prysoners.
 Capitulo .C.

4
 20  E haue well⁵ herde here before re-
 countyd how Huon entred in to Bur-
 deux after he hadde betten downe
 themperour Tyrrey, whom he left
 lyenge on⁶ y^e erth, and had ben slayne
 and⁷ his men had not quyckely rescued hym. ⁸his
 24 men were sorowfull,⁹ they feryd he had ben deed, &
 vnasyd his helme, & was ryght ioyfull whan they
 founde hym alyue. Than they demaundyd & sayd,
 'sir, we desyre you shew vs what case ye fele yourself
 28 in.' 'Syr,' *quod* he, 'I am sore hurt, wherby I fele
 gret payne; this enemye Huon hath brought me in this
 case. I was foolyshly counselled whan I cam hyther to
 seke for hym, for yf I had taryed styl at Mayence, I

The Germans
 find the Emperor
 sorely wounded,

and he regrets
 his departure
 from Mayence.

¹ that.

² sorowful.

³ Madame.

⁴ Fol. lxxviii. col. 2.

⁵ alreedy.

⁶ vpon.

⁷ if.

⁸ now.

⁹ for.

beleue to do me displeasure he wolde haue come
 thether / syrs, I praye you bere me in to my tent *that*
 my wounde may be serchyd' / than he was borne in to
 his tent & vnarmed / & layd on¹ his bed, & he sownyd **4**
 thryse for paine of his hurt. And whan he cam to
 hym selfe, & his woundes² serchyd by his surgyons /
 he demaundyd where y^e knyghtes of Burdeux were *that*
 were taken in y^e batayle, & commaundyd³ *that* they **8**
 sholde be brought to his presence / Gerames was
 brought before hym, who was gret & puyssaunt, with a
 berde as whyte as snow ; he was a fayre olde knyght to
 beholde / his vysage playne & smylunge, he semyd to **12**
 be a man of hye affayres / whan y^e emperour saw hym /
 he sayd, '*thou* old catyue, shew me what *thou* art /
 beware,⁴ shewe me the trouth' / '*sir,*' quod Gerames,
 'know well *that* for fere of any deth I wyll⁵ not spare **16**
 to say y^e trouthe / syn ye wyl⁶ know what I am, I am
 named Gerames, & am Huons seruauant, whom I loue
 naturally, & also I am his parent,⁷ wherby I haue y^e
 more cause to loue hym / & I haue slayne dyuers of **20**
 your men.' 'Well,' quod the emperour, 'I repute the
 for a foole to gyue me thys knowlege / for, by the
 grace of ⁸our lord Jesu Cryst,⁸ tomorow erlye, or⁹ I ete
 or ¹⁰drynke, thou shalt be drawen and hangyd / and **24**
 .lx. of thy company *that* were taken with *thee* in the
 batayle.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'of this *that* y^e shew me
 I can¹¹ you no thanke for it / but I hope, by the ayde
 of ¹²our lorde¹² Jesu Cryst, that I shall do you ¹²yet¹² **28**
 more damage or⁹ I dye.' 'A, velayne,' quod themperour,
 'gret meruayle I haue of the that thus before me ¹³&
 my barons¹² thou dost vse¹³ thretnynges / and yet thou
 seest ¹²clerely¹² how thou art my prysoner, and that it **32**

His wound
causes him much
dolour.

The knights
taken in battle
are ordered into
his presence.

Gerames comes
before him and
tells his condition.

The Emperor bids
him be hanged
early the next
morning, with
sixty of his
company.

Gerames defies his
captor.

¹ vpon. ² were. ³ demaunded. ⁴ and.
⁵ shall. ⁶ needs. ⁷ kinsman. ⁸⁻⁸ God. ⁹ ere.
¹⁰ Fol. lxxviii. back, col. 1. ¹¹ giue. ¹²⁻¹² omitted.
¹³ these.

- lyeth in me to put the to what deth it please me /
 know for trouthe, &¹ it were not so late of y^e day as it
 is, I wolde not suffer the to lyue one houre. But or² I
 4 slepe I shall cause ³gybettes and ³galowes to be made
 where as thou and thy company shalbe hanged / and I
 shall cause the to be hangyd so nere to the cyte / that
 yf Huon be so nere a kynne to the as thou sayest, he
 8 wyll shew how well he loueth the / he maye haue grete
 doloure whan before his iyen he shall se his cosyn and
 his men hanged / and than after⁴ I wyll assayle the
 cyte / and take it parforce, so that than Huon in any
 12 wyse shall not scape out of my handes, & so to be
 hanged with other / and the fayre Esclaramonde shalbe
 brynt or condempnyd to pryson / and than I wyll
 byrne all the cyte and dystroy it clene.' 'Syr,' quod
 16 Gerames, 'ye may say your pleasure, but in the
 doynge is all the mater' / ⁵whan themperour saw *that*
 Gerames doughtyd not the deth, he was sore abasshed.
 Than he commaundyd incontynent galowes to be reysyd
 20 vp so gret to hange theron the .lx.⁶ prysoners, and to
 be set on a lytell rocke nere to the cyte of Burdeux,
 to thentent that Huon and his men myght se them
 playne / therby to abasshe them / the whiche was
 24 done / so the mater restyd tyll⁷ the next day in the
 mornynge. And whan it was day Huon within y^e cyte
 rose and came to hys palays, and regardyd out at the
 wyndowes to se and beholde the ⁸host of his enemyes /
 28 and as he stode he spyed the new galowes stondynge
 on y^e rocke. Than he callyd his lordes, and sayd /
 'Syr, neuer beleue / but yonder galowes that I se new
 reysyd is for none other entent but⁹ to hang theron
 32 my men *that* be taken, & my¹⁰ frende Gerames, wherof
 I am¹¹ sorowfull. Therefore, syrs, quykely make you redy

Directions for
 setting up the
 gallows near the
 city are straight-
 way given.

The Emperor
 vows to destroy
 Huon and his
 wife, and to burn
 Bordeaux.

The gallows
 are set up,

and Huon spies
 them from his
 palace.

He points them
 out to his lords,

¹ if. ² ere. ³⁻³ a. ⁴ wardes. ⁵ &.
⁶ fortie. ⁷ vntill. ⁸ Fol. lxxviii. back, col. 2.
⁹ for. ¹⁰ good. ¹¹ verie.

and urges them
to follow him to
the rescue.

and mount on¹ your horses / for or² they be hangyd
we wyll proue our selfe against them / loke ³to the host
warde³ & se whan they be commynge ⁴to y^e galowes
warde⁴ / & whan ye se them be redy on horsbacke, & ⁴
y^e gate open, *that* we may issue out all at ones / & let
vs neuer thynke to returne tyll⁵ we haue rescued our
men / for I thynke⁶ neuer to returne *in* to this cyte tyll⁵
I haue delyueryd them out of y^e handes of our enemyes.' ⁸
Than they armed them a⁷ vii. M. by tale of good men
of armes, well horsyd, redy at y^e gate to departe whan
tyme cam. Now we wyl leue spekinge of Huon / &
speke of themperour. 12

Seven thousand
men are armed.

¶ How Huon issued out of Burdeux & rescued
the old Gerames and his company, whom
themperour wolde haue hanged.

Capt. .Ci. 16

The condemned
knights are tied
together in
couples on the
following day.



⁸ Hemperour, who had grete desyre that
Gerames & his company were hanged /
caused them to be brought forth by
couples, one fast tyed to another, and ²⁰
Gerames⁹ the formest / who then ryght
tenderly began to wepe when he saw
hymselfe in that case / 'A, good lord,' quod he, 'I
requyre the haue mercy on our soules, & kepe & ²⁴
defende my good lord duke Huon / who by y^e com-
maundement of kyng Oberon shold gyue me his duchy,
and he to haue kyng Oberons dygnyte of y^e fayre after
foure yere passed / I can not say what fortune wyl fal / ²⁸
but I may wel say *that* I shall neuer come to greter
honour / yet I am comforted in that I am so olde ¹⁰&
hoore;¹⁰ it is good reason that I be content to haue lyued

Gerames weeps,
and prays to God
to have mercy on
their souls.

¹ vppon. ² ere. ³⁻³ towards the Hoaste.
⁴⁻⁴ toward the gallowes. ⁵ vntill. ⁶ purpose. ⁷ aboute.
⁸ Fol. lxxix. col. 1. ⁹ was. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ omitted.

so longe / it is now ¹good¹ tyme that I departe out of
 this worlde.' Then themperour called to ²hym a
 knyght / & sayd, 'sir Othon, I wyl that incontynent ye
 4 take thre .M. men, & take these prysoners & hange them
 vp all vpon the galowes that were made yester nyght
 late / & if it be so that Huon yssue out, loke that ye
 quyte your selfe valyauntly / & yf ye³ nede of ony
 8 ayde, take my horne and blowe it, for I haue redy a
 poynted .x. M. men to socoure you yf nede be' / when
 Othon herde themperour he was ryght sory to haue that
 4^{commission}⁴ / for in his youth he was brought vp in
 12 the house of duke Seunyn, father to Huon, & som what
 he was of his kyn, but as then he had slayne a man,
 wherfore he fled fro Burdeux, & came & serued them-
 perour at Mayence / wherfore he was ⁵wo and ⁵sorowfull
 16 to haue that commysyon. Then he sayd to themperour,
 'syr, me thynke ye do yll to cause them to dye so
 hastily, better it were to abyde to se what ende your
 warre wyl come vnto / and also yf it fortune that any of
 20 your lordes to be taken here after / for one of theym ye
 myght recouer hym agayne / and yf ye slee theym / and⁶
 yf ony of ⁷youre barons happe to be taken, they shall
 dye of lyke deth / and therfore, syr, yf ye wyl byleue
 24 me ye shall forbere sleynge of them at this tyme / and,
 syr, yf ye wyll gyue me lysence / I shall doo so moche to
 duke Huon / that for the offence that he hath done to²
 you he shall make⁸ amendes at youre⁹ pleasure, and he
 28 shal go to² some holy pylgrymage to praye for the soules
 of your nephewes and other of youre lordes that he hathe
 slayne / and he to haue with hym two hondred men
 in theyr shyrtes, and so to go to the holy sepulture at
 32 his owne charge and coste / and he to holde of you all
 his londes, and to doo you homage.' Then the lordes

The Emperor bids
 Sir Otho direct
 the hanging, with
 three thousand
 men.

Sir Otho was of
 distant kin to
 Huon, and
 regrets such a
 commission.

He pleads with
 the Emperor for
 delay,

and promises that
 Huon will make
 him amends for
 the death of his
 nephews.

¹⁻¹ omitted. ² vnto. ³ haue. ⁴⁻⁴ euill office.

⁵⁻⁵ right. ⁶ then. ⁷ Fol. lxxix. col. 2. ⁸ you.

⁹ owne.

The Emperor's
lords approve
Sir Otho's
counsel;

but the Emperor
bursts into a rage,

and swears all
who plead for a
respite of the
lives of Huon's
men shall die
forthwith.

Otho is again
ordered to
despatch Gerames
and the rest,

and he departs
to work the
Emperor's will.

that were there present all with one voyce said to¹ the
emperour, 'Syr, the counsell that syr Othon hath gyuen¹
you is worthy to be byleued; we al agree ther to, and
desyre you so to doo,'² when the emperoure herde theym⁴
he was sorowfull and sore dyspleased. 'Syr,' quod
Othon, 'ye may surely knowe yf ye hange any of them
that be taken / yf Huon happe to take any of your men,
he shal neuer scape vnhangyd and drawen.' When the⁸
emperour hadde herde Othon speke he was soo troubled,
& angry that it semed by his face that for³ pure yre³
he was nye⁴ in a rage, and sayd / 'beholde, syrs, this
foole, who wolde let me to take vengeance on them¹²
that so sore hath troubled me / he hath herde me or⁵
this tyme swere and make solempne promyse that I
wold neuer returne in to my countre tyll I hadde
hanged and drawen Huon of Burdeux / for, by the¹⁶
lorde that made me to his semylytude, I knowe noo
man this day, though he were neuer so nere a kynne to
me, excepte myne owne brother / but I shal make hym
to be slayne yf he speke any more to me for respytynge²⁰
of theyr lyues / nor I shall neuer loue hym / for I
make a vowe to oure lorde god that I wyll neuer
returne in to my countre tyll⁶ I haue taken⁷ this cite
parforce.' 'Syr,' quod Othon, 'syn⁸ it is your pleasure,²⁴
I shall speke no more therof / but I byleue it wyll be
longe here after or⁹ ye fynde ony *that* wyll be glad to
do youre pleasure.' 'Othon,' quod themperour / 'dys-
patch the mater and reuenge me vpon the old Gerames²⁸
and vpon all his company' / 'syr,' quod Othon, 'it is
conuenyent that I doo it, syn⁸ it is your pleasure' / then
without ony more wordes he departed & toke Gerames
& the other prysoners, and wente with them towardses³²
the galowes. Gerames went before with the halter

¹ vnto.

⁵ ere.

² but.

⁶ vntill.

⁸ seeing.

³⁻³ verie anger.

⁷ Fol. lxxix, back, col. 1.

⁹ before.

⁴ neerehand.

- aboute his necke, sore wepyng, and all his company
 after hym; so at the last they came to the place of
 execucion / then¹ y^e ladders were set vp / ²then the
 4 hangman came to³ Gerames, & sayd / 'come on, thou
 olde dottarde, *thou* hast lyued longe ynough / thou
 shalt no more se hym whom thou louest so well / but²
 I hope shortly he shall bere the company wauynge in
 8 the wynde' / when Gerames herde hym / he behelde
 hym fyersly, and sayd, 'A, thou vnhappy vyllayne, yf
 one of my handis were lose *thou* sholdest neuer se fayre
 day more / how arte thou so hardy to say or to thinke
 12 so ⁴vyllayn wordes⁴ of the best and moost valyauntes
 knyght that is now lyuyng?' / then Othon came to
 them / and ⁵herde how the hangman⁵ reuiled Gerames /
 & ⁶sayd, 'a, *thou* ⁷false rybaude,⁷ thynkest thou not that
 16 this knyght hathe ynough to suffre / though thou doest
 not reuyle him? / yf thou⁸ were in that poynt⁹ *that* they
 be in, and they in the cyte of Burdeux, thou woldest
 soone repente thy¹⁰ wordes' / & therwith he lyfte vp a
 20 staffe that he had in his hande, and strake the hang
 man ther with that he fell downe to the erthe, and¹¹
 sayd, 'A, thou false thefe, do thyne offyce, and speke no
 wordes' / then¹² the hangman durst speke no more,¹³
 24 then he toke Gerames by y^e halter *that* was aboute his
 necke, & so mounted vpon the ladder, and Gerames
 after hym / who¹⁴ made pyteous complayntes for Huon
 his good lorde / the same tyme that Gerames mounted
 28 vpon the fyrst steppe of the ladder, they *within* the
 cyte vpon the walles perceyued it, & sawe clerely¹⁵ *that*
 without the prysoners were shortly¹⁶ rescued / theyr
 lyues were lost. then they sayd to Huon / 'syr, yf ye
 32 tary any lenger your men shall be all hanged, for

The hangman
 rudely accosts
 the old Gerames.

Otho reproaches
 the fellow with
 his wickedness,

and strikes him
 sorely.

Gerames mounts
 the ladder with a
 halter about his
 neck.

Huon's lords
 perceive him
 from the city
 walls,

¹ where. ² and. ³ vnto. ⁴⁻⁴ villainous a word.

⁵⁻⁵ hearing the hangman how he. ⁶ he.

⁷⁻⁷ base slaue. ⁸ thyselfe. ⁹ case. ¹⁰ saucie.

¹¹ then he. ¹² whereupon. ¹³ but.

¹⁴ Fol. lxxix. back, col. 2. ¹⁵ evidently. ¹⁶ speedily.

and Huon
recognizes his old
friend in direst
peril.

He bids his lords
follow him to the
rescue,

and seven
thousand fighting
men issue from
the city gates.

Huon slays the
hangman at one
blow.

Gerames leaves
the ladder.

A fierce battle
takes place.

yonder we se one of them is mountyd vpon the ladder,
who hath a berd as whyte as¹ snow.' when Huon herd
that he was sore dyspleased, & sayd / 'a, good lord, I
knowe suerly² it is my true frende Gerames whom⁴ 4
they wolde fyrst put to dethe / therefore, syrs,³ quickly
let vs yssu out at the gate / for, yf Gerames be not
quyckly⁴ socoured, the traytours wyll put hym to deth ;
but, yf² I may come tyme ynough, it⁵ shall be derely⁸ 8
solde to them therwith.' ⁶Huon, with .vii. M. fyght-
ynge men yssued out at the gate so fyersly *that* the
erthe semed to synke⁷ vnder them / theyr horses
made such brute⁸ / and so within a shorte space by a¹²
preuy⁹ way they cam to the place where as the galowes
were¹⁰ / Huon was the fyrst that aryued there / ¹¹he
aduysed¹¹ well the hangman that sholde haue hanged
Gerames / he¹² gaue hym suche a stroke with his spere ¹⁶
that he ran hym ¹³clene¹³ through, so that he fell of¹⁴
the ladder ¹³starke¹³ deed ; so was Gerames reuenged of
the inurye that he had done to hym before. then Huon
sayd, 'Gerames, come¹⁵ of the ladder and arme you in ²⁰
some harneys¹⁶ of them *that* shall be here slayne' /
Gerames thanked our lorde god & cam downe the
ladder, and then thyder came Huons company, who
untyed all the other prysoners / then ¹³there¹³ began a ²⁴
sore batayle / the Almaynes wolde not flye / ¹⁷Huon¹⁷
cryed to them, & said, 'ye false traytours, youre dethes
is¹⁸ Jugged ; dere shall be solde to you the offence that ye
haue done to ¹⁹me when ye wolde slee thus my men with ²⁸
so vylayne²⁰ a dethe / better it had ben for you to haue
ben at Mayence ²¹hyden in the lappes of your wench²²
and louers.' when they vnderstode Huon, anone they

¹ the. ² that. ³ I requyre you. ⁴ presently.
⁵ his perill. ⁶ Hereupon. ⁷ groane. ⁸ a thundering.
⁹ secret. ¹⁰ stood. ¹¹⁻¹¹ and he marked. ¹² and.
¹³⁻¹³ omitted. ¹⁴ from. ¹⁵ downe. ¹⁶ armour.
¹⁷⁻¹⁷ the which Huon seeing. ¹⁸ are. ¹⁹ vnto.
²⁰ villainous. ²¹ Fol. lxxx. col. 1. ²² mothers.

- knewe hym, wherof they were sore abasshed / then
 Huon mette with a knyght of Almayn, and ranne hym
 clene through, and so he serued thre other / then he
 4 drewe his swerde wher with he dyd grete meruayles /
 for or¹ he seased he slewe .xiiii. and also his men dyd
 meruaylles in armes / so that within a shorte space the
 Almaynes were dyscomfyted, so that none scaped a
 8 waye a lyue excepte syr Othon, who valyauntly de-
 fended hymselfe / but, when he sawe *that* his force
 wolde not helpe hym, he yelded hym selfe to Huon,
 and gaue hym his swerde, and cryed hym mercy, and
 12 sayde / 'syr, I requyre² you slee me not, but haue
 pyte of³ me / for⁴ I promyse you faythfully that
 agaynste my wyll I came hyther, but I was forced so
 to do by the emperour; and, fyrst, I desyred respyte
 16 ⁵for them, ⁶so moche that the emperour was sore dys-
 pleased with me. I entreated for a peace to haue ben
 had⁷ bytwene you and hym, but my wordes coude not
 profyte.⁸ syr, I am your kynsman, and was brought
 20 vp in duke Seuyne, your faders house, and there I
 serued a mayster who dyd bete me, and when I felte my
 selfe stronge and of age, I was dyspleased that he dyde
 bete me⁹ without¹⁰ cause / ⁴I slew hym and fledde
 24 away, and came to Mayence, & euer syn I haue serued
 the emperoure who is come hyther to besyege you.'
 'Frende,' quod Huon, 'fere not your deth, but I pray
 you fro hens forth ayde and serue me as ye ought to do
 28 to your carnall¹¹ frende' / 'syr,' quod Othon, 'god
 shame me yf I do *the* contrary / but I shall serue you
 truly as longe as lyfe is in my body' / then Huon came
 to y^e fote of y^e ladder, where as he founde Gerames as
 32 then not vntyed / Huon kyssed and embrased hym
 oftentymes, and sayd, 'ryght dere frende, I am ryght

Huon fights with
his customary
vigour.

Of all the
Germans there,
only Sir Otho
escaped alive.

He begs Huon
have mercy upon
him.

He claims kinship
with him.

Huon promises
him pardon if he
will join him for
the future.

Sir Otho consents
to serve Huon for
all time.

¹ ere. ² beseech. ³ on. ⁴ and. ⁵⁻⁶ omitted.

⁶ In. ⁷ made. ⁸ preuaile. ⁹ so.

¹⁰ a. ¹¹ louing.

Huon congratulates Gerames on his escape,

and bids all the prisoners, whom he frees, to arm themselves with the weapons of the Germans he has slain.

A second band of Germans attack the French while retiring to Bordeaux.

They turn about and give battle.

Huon spares none within his reach.

Sir Otho fights nobly.

glad at my herte when I se you ¹hole of body' / then he wente to the other, and lossed them, and vnbounde theyr eyen, and sayd, 'Syr, arme ²you all ² with the harneys of them that be deed / for a man that is armed hath ³ ⁴ aduantage afore ⁴ other that be not so ⁵ / it was nedeful for them to be armed, god defende them from yll ⁶ / for anone after they had so meruaylous a rencounter that they had neuer ⁷ none suche ⁷ before / for the other .x. 8 thousande men came to reuenge them *that* were deed / they wente ⁸ to haue come tyme ynoughe / but they fayled, for they came to late / for ⁹ Huon had taken of all them theyr truage. When Huon saw that he had ¹² done that ¹⁰ he came for / he returned hym towardes the cyte / but he was soo pursued that he was nere surprysed and stopped fro entrynge in to the cyte / when Huon saw his enemyes comyng he cryed a hye ¹¹ to his ¹⁶ men, ¹² and sayde, ¹² 'Syr, let vs turne vpon them that cometh ¹³ to vs warde ¹³ / to y^e entent that they shall not make theyr auauantes that they haue caused vs to flye away before them' / then he and all his men returned ²⁰ agaynst theyr enemyes with a ¹⁴ valyaunt corage / ¹⁵ at that metyng many speres were broken on bothe partes, & many a knyght borne to the erth / that had neuer ³ power after to releue theym selfe / there was suche ²⁴ occysyon ¹⁶ on both partyes that pyte it was to se it ¹⁷ / ¹⁵ grete meruayle it was to se Huon how he bett downe his enemies, and claue helmes and rased them fro the hedes of *his* enemyes. he delte in suche wyse that ²⁸ none ¹⁸ Almayne durst abyde his strokes, he was so douted and fered; he made the thycke prese to breke a sonder and flye away before him; and by him was syr Othon, who that dyd many a noble dede ³²

¹ Fol. lxxx. col. 2.

²⁻² yourselfes.

³ the. ⁴ of.

⁵ armed.

⁶ euill.

⁷⁻⁷ the like.

⁸ hoped.

⁹ omitted.

¹⁰ which.

¹¹ aloud.

¹²⁻¹² saying.

¹³⁻¹³ toward vs.

¹⁴ most.

¹⁵ and.

¹⁶ a slaughter.

¹⁷ them.

¹⁸ no.

of armes / for next Huon aboue all other that day he
bare the pryce / fynally, Huon and Othon and his other
men dyd so moche that the Almayns were chasyd to
4 theyr tentes, & many slayne¹ in the chase and sore hurte
so that they neuer rode on horse backe after / some
tyme it fortuneth *that* it is foly to aduenture to moche
forward / and to late to repent ofter² / I say this for
8 Huon and his company, who were gone so moche for-
warde that in great daunger they returned to the cyte /
for y^e almayns, who were thyrti thousande men redy
before theyr tentes / when they sawe Huon & his men
12 chase theyr company, they set forth agaynst Huon.
³When Huon sawe them / he sayd to⁴ his men / ' syrs,
it is good that we ⁵recole to⁵ our cyte / for yonder I
se comyng mo then thyrti thousande almayns as fast
16 as they can' / ⁶when Huons company sawe them, they
douted gretely, and not without cause / for they had
ben before at two grete skyrmysshes, wherby they and
theyr horses were wery and sore trauayled, the whiche
20 was no meruayle / ⁶by the counsell of Huon they
returnyd a fause galop towards the cyte / and y^e
Almayns were at theyr backe, and chased them so
quickly that more then fye Hundred Almaynes entred
24 in to the cyte with them of Burdeux / but they that
kept the gates that daye were sage⁷ and dyscrete, for as
soone as they perceyued that Huon and his company
were entred / and with them a⁸ fyue hondred of theyr
28 enemyes / they wolde kepe theyr gates no lenger open,
for fere that theyr enemyes shold haue entred with to
grete a nombre, so⁹ for hast they cut a sonder the corde
that helde vp the purcoloys, the whiche fell downe by
32 suche force that it fell on¹⁰ the horse of an Almayn that
was vnder,¹¹ the whiche horse was cut clene a sonder,

The Germans are
chased back to
their tents.

A third band of
Germans now
threaten Huon's
company.

His men, wearied
with the two
skirmishes, grow
faint-hearted.

They gallop back
to Bordeaux with
the Germans in
pursuit,
and five hundred
enter the city
before the gates
are closed,

but the French
have arrived in
safety.

¹ Fol. lxxx. back, col. 1.

² afterward.

³ and.

⁴ unto.

⁵⁻⁵ recoil into.

⁶ so.

⁷ wise.

⁸ aboute.

⁹ that.

¹⁰ vpon.

¹¹ it.

The Germans
retire to their
tents.

Huon orders the
five hundred of
them who have
entered the city
to be slain
forthwith.
They pray for
mercy.

Gerames supports
their prayer,

and Huon yields
to him.

Huon bids them
be all unarmed

and sent to
divers houses on
parole.

soo that the man and the fore parte of the horse fell
within the gate, and the hynder parte of the horse fell
without / wherof y^e Almaines that folowed after were
sorowfull and angry that they had not come thyder 4
soner / then they returned to theyr tentes, complayn-
ynge for the grete losse and¹ damage that they had²
that daye by the hye prowess of Huon & his men / and
also they that were entred in to the cyte were sore 8
abashed when they saw themself closed³ within the
cyte. When Huon perceyued it, he had grete meruayle /
that they were soo entred in amonge his men / for he
knewe not therof, and yet he⁴ was the last that entred / 12
then he sayde, 'A, ye false traytours, ye shall al dye an
yll deth' / ⁵then he sayd to his men, 'syr, slee them
all' / then incontynente they alyghted and kneled
downe before Huon, and requyred hym to haue mercy, 16
& pyte of theym / as to saue theyr lyues / 'and put vs
in pryson / ⁶we be all men of a noble lygnage / & it
maye so be that by vs ye may haue peace with the em-
perour.' Then Gerames sayd to Huon / 'syr, I requyre 20
you to haue pyte of them, and put them not to deth,
for so it may be that by them ye may haue peace.'⁷
'Frende,' quod Huon, 'I am content to do at your
pleasure as ye wyll haue me do' / then he commaunded 24
they sholde al be vnarmed / then they al made promyse
to Huon not to departe without lycence / 'Gerames,'
quod Huon, 'I wyll that these prysoners be brought vp
in to the borow & there departed,⁸ and set in⁹ dyuers 28
houses that be sure, and let them haue all thynges
necessary for theyr lyuyng' / then Gerames delyuered
theym to the keypyng of suche as he trusted / and so
eche of them was kepte in a courtouse pryson. Now 32

¹ Fol. lxxx. back, col. 2. ² sustained. ³ enclosed.

⁴ himselfe. ⁵ and. ⁶ quoth they.

⁷ with the Emperour. ⁸ parted. ⁹ to.

let vs leue to speke of Huon and of his prysoners, and
¹speke of¹ the emperoure.

¶ Howe the Emperoure assayled the cyte of
4 Burdeux two tymes, where as he lost many
of his men. Capitulo .C.ii.

8 **A**S ye haue herle here before how
Huon chased his enemyes to theyr
tentes / and how it was tyme for
hym to returne to his cyte, & how
he was so pursued by the Almayns
that more then fyue hondred of them
12 entred in to y^e cyte, and were closed with in it, and
the resydue returned to theyr tentes sorowfull & angry
for y^e grete losse that they had. ²When they were
returned y^e Emperoure demaunded what tydynges, &
16 how they had sped / & yf they had³ taken Huon
quyeke or deed. ‘Syr,’ *quod* a knyght, ‘it is folye for
you to speke thus / for Huon is no man so lyghtly to
be taken / for the .lx.⁴ men that ye sent to haue ben
20 hanged be rescued by Huon, and the thre .M. men
that ye sent with them are all slayne, & dyuers other
sore hurt,⁵ in peryll of dethe, and besyde that, fyue .C.
men of y^e best of your frendes are entred in to
24 Burdeux / for we so hastily pursued Huon & his men /
that entrynge in to the cyte fyue .C. of our men entred
in to the cyte, entermeddled with Huons men, & theyr
they be inclosed in⁶ / therfore, sir, we alow⁷ &
28 counsel you that ye agree with Huon / ⁸yf ye do not
ye shall lose⁹ youre men / for Huon is so fell & cruell /
that he wyll¹⁰ hange vp your men as ye had thought too
haue done his, of whom one of them was his cosyn /

When the
Germans returned
to their tents, the
Emperor inquired
of their fortunes.

They tell him of
the rescue of their
prisoners,
and of the prowess
of Huon.

They advise him
to make peace
with Huon.

¹⁻¹ returne to, ² so. ³ not. ⁴ fiftie. ⁵ and.
⁶ within. ⁷ aduise. ⁸ for. ⁹ all.
¹⁰ Fol. lxxxi. col. 2.

The Emperor will
not listen to their
counsel.

He bids all his
host assemble,
and sends to his
brothers for
further aid.

Huon perceives
by its noise the
attacking force
approach the city.

The Germans set
ladders against
the walls, but the
French overturn
them.

ye may do as it please you.' when themperour herd
his barons what counsell they gaue hym, he was¹
sorowfull, and sayd, 'syrs, ye do me grete wronge to
requyre me to make ony peace with Huon / syn ye ⁴
knowe well what othe & promys I haue made *that* I
wyll neuer be at peace with hym / and to y^e entent
that ye shal speke no more therof / knowe for trouthe
that tho² .x.M. of my nexte³ frendes were taken by ⁸
Huon, I wolde rather suffre them to ⁴be slayne of⁴ a
shamefull deth then to agree to any peace with Huon
tyll I haue slayne hym / and his cyte ⁵brynt⁵ &
dystroyed.' 'Syr,' quod they, 'syn⁶ it is youre plesure ¹²
ye may do as ye thynke best.' 'Syr,' quod the
emperour, 'I wyll that ye assemble all myn hoost, and
sende to my broder that he brynge all his men / and
then with all our puyssaunce⁷ assayle the cyte / and ¹⁶
that none be so hardy⁸ to recule backe tyl⁹ y^e cyte
be taken' / this was proclaymed through the hoost / &
euery man¹⁰ redy to assayle the cyte; and y^e chefe
captayne was duke Sauarey, who brought all his men ²⁰
in good ordre to the dykes, well furnysshed with
ladders & other necessary thynges parteynyng to
assaulte. The same tyme Huon and his men were
vnarmed and goynge to dyner / ²⁴when he herde the ²⁴
noyse and crye without / he toke a sop in wyne, and
armyd hym and all his men / and euery man went
to the walles to theyr defenses / and Huon and ¹²the¹²
olde Gerames / Othon / and Barnarde, a valyaunt knyght, ²⁸
mountyd on the toure ouer y^e gate, and the Almayns
on euery parte entred in to the dykes, and raysed vp
many a¹³ ladder to the wall; and¹¹ they with in caste¹⁴
downe ¹²agayne theyr ladders, so that they that were ³²
on them fell downe in to the dykes,¹² soo that they had

¹ verie.² if.³ neerest.⁴⁻⁴ die.⁵⁻⁵ he burnt.⁶ seeing.⁷ we will.⁸ as.⁹ vntill.¹⁰ was.¹¹ but.¹²⁻¹² omitted.¹³ scaling.¹⁴ them.

- no power to releue vp agayn / for there was caste
 downe on them erthe and ¹tymbre & stones, ²so *that*
 they coude not aryse² / fyerse was y^e assaulte *that* y^e
- 4 Almayns made, & they *within* made goodly³ defence,
 for ²they slewe *with* bowes & crosbowes / *that* pyte it
 was to see the deed & hurt men *that* lay on the erth² /
 Huon & Gerames shotte so with theyr crosbowes /
- 8 that at euery shotte they slew some man, or sore
 wounded hym / ⁴longe enduryd this assault / so that
 fynally the Almayns were constrayned to recule back a
 bowe shotte / whereof they *within* were⁵ ioyfull. Then
- 12 themperour Tyrrey, beyng sorowful and full of yre⁶ /
 came to his men, & rebuked them shamefully / *com-*
maundyng them that incontynent they shold returne
 agayn to assayle the cyte / sayenge *that* ²yf they wolde
- 16 quykely assayle y^e cyte agayne² they sholde not fayle
 to winne it. Then the Almayns, to please theyr lorde,
 returned in gret hast *with* theyr ladders & pyrkes / &
 came in to the dykes / where as then there was no
- 20 water, & reysed⁷ vp ²theyr ladders² to y^e walles / but
 they were no soner vp / but they *within* bete them
 downe agayne / ⁸so *that* they *that* were vpon them
 were⁸ in daunger of theyr liues / for they ²*within*² caste
- 24 downe tymbre & ²stones & fagottes, with fyre & hote
 oyle & leade⁹ / so *that* y^e assaylauntes were fayne
 parforce to recule¹⁰ backe / & they *within* shot arrowes
 so thicke / *that* it semed lyke snow. themperour was
- 28 sore dyspleased, & duke Sauarey / when they saw none
 other remedy. many were slayne and sore hurt / ¹¹
 themperour & Sauarey his broder, seyng *that* they
 coude nothyng profyite, sowned y^e retrayt / & so
- 32 returned to theyr tentes, sore dyspleased for y^e gret
 losse *that* they had / ¹²they lost *that* daye mo then

Both besiegers
and besieged fight
valourously,

but the Germans
at length retire.

The Emperor is
wroth with his
men,

and they return
to the attack.

But a second time
they are repulsed,

and the retreat is
sounded.

¹ Fol. lxxx. back, col. 1.

²⁻² omitted.

³ noble.

⁴ and.

⁵ very.

⁶ rage.

⁷ them.

⁸⁻⁸ and put them.

⁹ vpon.

¹⁰ recoile.

¹¹ and.

¹² for.

Two thousand
Germans were
slain and three
thousand
wounded.

The Duke Savary,
the Emperor's
brother, thinks
the city
impregnable,

but the Emperor
resolves to
continue the
siege.

Huon thanks God
for his success,

and bids his men
be wary in the
future,

but his losses
have been very
heavy.

.ii. M. men lyenge deed in y^e felde & in y^e dykes / &
mo then .iii. M. sore hurt / then duke sauary sayd to
themperour / 'sir, methynke it is but foly to assayle
thes cite / it is stronge & wel furnysshed with men & 4
good knyghtes to defende it / wherfore we may wel
perceyue that with out gret damage we can not wynne
it / without it be ¹by famyne / ²he that is lorde therof
is hardy & cruell / & to be fered & douted / for he is 8
experte in armes / wherfore it is impossible to take y^e
cyte perforce.' When themperour vnderstode him, he
was right sorowful, & made agayn new promys not to
departe thens / tyll³ he had Huon at his plesure. Huon, 12
who lytel set by y^e thretnynges of themperour, went in
to his palais, & sayd to his men / 'syrs, we ought
gretely to thanke god for y^e defence of our cyte / many
Almayns be slayne & hurte / I doute them nothyng / 16
for our cyte is stronge / or⁴ it be lost it wyll cost many
men theyr lyues / I desyre you all take good hede that
we be not begyled.' 'Syr,' quod they, 'we shall take
good hede therof / as well for you as for y^e sauegarde 20
of our lyues.' Thus Huon & his men deuyssed togyder /
how be it, they were sore apayred⁵ / for at y^e beginnyng
they were a⁶ .xx. M. men / & then they were not
past⁷ .vi. M. Now let vs leue spekyng of them & 24
speke of themperour, who was ryght sorowful for his
losse.



¶ Howe Huon sent Habourey his messenger
to themperour to requyre peace / & of his 28
answere. Ca. Ciii.

¹ Fol. lxxxi. back, col. 2.
⁴ and before.

⁵ greued.

² for.

⁶ about.

³ vntill.

⁷ aboue.



4 **W**hen themperour had herd duke Saucrey
 his broder speke / he made a solempne
 othe / *that* what so euer fortune sholde
 fall / he wolde not departe thens,
 wynter nor somer, tyll he had won y^e
 cyte / then he sent for his rerebande / as farre as his
 empyre stretched, commaundyng euery man to come to
 8 him, all excuses layde a parte / & so they dyd / ¹of
 theyr commynge by the way I make no mencyon, but
 so longe they traauyled *that* they came *with* in a leege
 of Burdeux.² When themperour knew therof he had
 12 gret ioye, & mounted on his horse with other lordes with
 him / & rode ³& met them, & spake to them, & made
 them good chere. Thus his force encreased, & Huons
 minysshed ⁴ dayly / often tymes Huon ⁵wolde yssue⁵
 16 out on ⁶his hors called Amphage / and made dayly
 many grete skyrmysshes / *somm* tyme he wan / &
 some tyme he lost / he slewe many Almayns / so *that*
 they all fered him / for there was none *that* durst
 20 abyde him / his hors was so delyuer⁷ *that* none durst
 aprouche nere hym without he were slayne / & Huons
 men ⁸dyd acquyte⁸ them valyauntly / so *that* yf they
 lost at one tyme / they wanne .iii. tymes for it / but
 24 theyr force coude not longe endure / ⁹theyr enemies
 were so many & they so fewe, for² they had made so
 many issues ¹⁰out¹⁰ *that* they had lost many of theyr
 company / for of .xx.M. they were lefte but .v.C.¹¹ /
 28 & a .C. archers / and a .C. crosbowes to kepe theyr
 towne with all ¹⁰/ wherof Huon was ¹⁰ryght¹⁰ sorowfull /
¹when he sawe that he had but .v. C. men / he called
 to hym Gerames / Othon / Barnarde / & Richar,
 32 ¹²they were all of his kynne and he sayd to them¹² /
 'syrs, I se ¹⁰well¹⁰ *that* euery daye we do minyssh¹³ /

The Emperor
summons new
forces.

From the furthest
parts of his
empire do they
come.

Meanwhile
Huon's forces are
diminishing,

but the Germans
are much afraid
of him.

He makes
skirmishes daily,
and if he loses
once, he wins
thrice;

but his men
dwindle rapidly to
five hundred.

Huon calls his
chief lords
together,

¹ Now. ² and. ³ Fol. lxxxii. col. 1. ⁴ diminished.
⁵⁻⁵ issued. ⁶ vpon. ⁷ cruell. ⁸⁻⁸ quit. ⁹ for.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ men. ¹²⁻¹² saying. ¹³ diminish.

and advises that a messenger be sent to sue for peace.

Harbourey is despatched on the embassy,

and Huon bids him promise all possible reparation to the Emperor.

Harbourey departs, and arrives at the Emperor's tent.

He delivers Huon's message.

wherefore ¹at length¹ we can not² endure agaynst the emperoures force / therfore I thynke that it were good / that we sente to themperour to knowe yf he wyll here spekyng of ony peace.' 'Syr,' quod they, 'we thynke ⁴your aduyse ryght good / ³it were good too knowe yf he wyll agree therto or not' / then Huon called Habourey his messenger, and commaunded him that incontynent he sholde go to the emperour, & say vnto ⁸hym 'that yf it be his pleasure to here spekyng of any peace, I shall⁴ condyscende therto / and too make hym amendes at his pleasure / for y^e wronge and damage that I haue done⁵ him and my⁶ men. Also shewe ¹²hym how⁷ I wyll become his man, and do hym homage for all the landes that I haue / the whiche I was wonte to holde of the kyng of Fraunce / but syn⁸ I haue no socoure fro hym / I am dry⁹uen parforce to purchase ¹⁶for my profite in some other place / & besyde that, shewe hym / that the v. C. prysoners that I haue of his men / I shall deliuer them quyte without any ransome payenge / & also when lent cometh / I & a C. knyghtes ²⁰with me at my coste and charge / shall passe the see and go to y^e holy sepulture / to pray for the soules of his neuwes that I haue slayn / & for all other as hath ben slayne by occasyon of this warre.' 'Syr,' quod the ²⁴messenger, 'I am redy to fulfyll your commaundement, what so euer fall ther of' / and so¹⁰ departed, & went to themperours host, and entred in to the ryche tent / and then he kneled downe before themperour, & sayde, ²⁸'The puyssaunt¹¹ god, who on a¹² crosse dyed to saue all humayne lygnage,¹³ kepe & defende from all yll / themperoure & all his barony. syr, duke Huon of Burdeux sendeth to you salutacion and good amyte, ³²requyrynge you, in the honour of ¹⁴our lorde Iesu cryst,¹⁴

1-1 omitted.

2 long.

3 and.

4 quoth he.

5 vnto.

6 his.

7 that.

8 seeing.

9 Fol. lxxxii. col. 2.

10 hee.

11 almightie.

12 the.

13 kinde.

14-14 god.

that he may haue peace with you / by *that* he will
 become your lege man / & do you homage, & holde his
 landes of you / and wyl delyuer quyte y^e.v. C. men of
 4 yours that he hath in pryson in the cyte / & more ouer,
 he offereth hymself and a .C. knyghtes to passe the see
 this nexte lent and to go to the holy sepulture to pray
 to our lorde god for the soules of your neuwes that be
 8 deed, & for other *that* by hym and¹ his meanes hath
 ben slayn in this warre / syr, yf it well² please you
 this to do / ye shall do a gret almes dede / for lyfe can
 not be had agayne to them that be deed.' When
 12 themperour Tyrrey had well herd Habourey, y^e
 messenger / he became as reed as a bronde of fyre / and
 regarded the messenger fyersly, and sayd, 'A voyde
 my syght, thou fals gloton³ / but *that* I doute to be
 16 reprov'd, I shold cause *thee* to be hewen⁴ al to⁴ peces,
 but a messenger oughte not to be touched for any
 wordes that he can speke / but saye to thy lord / *that*
 by him & by his cause⁵ I haue⁶ had slayne⁷ mo then
 20 xx.M. men, besyde my thre neuwes and my yonger
 brother ; but by that⁸ lorde *that* dyed on a⁸ crosse to
 redeme vs all, I wyll neuer haue peace with hym tyll I
 haue hym at my pleasure / nor neuer retorne agayne
 24 hider to me nor none other vpon any such message.'
 When Habourey the messenger herde the emperour,
 he was in grete fere, and wolde gladly he had ben in
 Burdeux / then he departed without any mo wordes⁴
 28 spekyng, and rested not tyll he came to Burdeux / ⁹he
 wente to the palays, where as he founde duke Huon /
 then he sayd, 'Syr, I haue ben with themperour / and
 shewed hym at length¹⁰ all youre message / but his
 32 answeere wyll not serue to your demaunde / for he sayd
 to me / that he wyl haue no peace with you tyl he haue

The Emperor
 rages against the
 envoy,
 and threatens
 him.

He refuses to
 make peace,

and Harbourey
 takes his leave.

He repeats to
 Huon the
 Emperor's
 answer.

¹ by. ² omitted. ³ varlet. ⁴⁻⁴ in. ⁵ meanes.

⁶ Fol. lxxxii. back, col. 1. ⁷⁻⁷ lost. ⁸ the.

⁹ where. ¹⁰ full.

you at *his* pleasure / to do with you what he wyl / and thus I departed from hym, and lefte hym syttyng at his table at dyner.'

¶ Howe Huon yesued out of Burdeux & came 4 to the tentes & fought with themperour.

Cap. C.iii.

Huon is sore displeased,

and gives order for a sudden sortie.



¹ Hen Huon vnderstode y^e messenger he was full of yre and dyspleasure, and 8 sayd / 'syrs, I commaunde you al in hast go and arme you / for, or² euer y^e Almayns be rysyn fro theyr dyneres, and armed I shall make them so sorowfull that they 12 shall curse the houre that euer they were borne / for I had rather dye then to leue them in this poynt, for I wyl go serue them of theyr fyrst messe.' then euery man armed hym / and Huon lept on³ his good horse 16 *Amphage* / then he toke⁴ leue of the fayre *Esclaramonde* hys wyfe, an so departed out of Burdeux with his company, and rode towardses themperours tentes / the same tyme themperour was rysyn fro his table / and he 20 had ordeyned .iii. hondred men on horse backe to kepe y^e tentes whyles he was at dyner / then Huon and his company came so quickly that he was amonge them, or² they perceyued any thyng, & he cryed 'Burdeux,' & 24 strake a knyghte *with* his spere clene through the body, so *that* he fell deed to the erth / then he ran at a nother and *serued* him in lyke wyse, & so he slew iiij or⁵ his spere brake / then he drew his swerde 28 & bette downe men & horses / & brake the thyckest presse, so *that* euery man gaue hym way / and Gerames / Othon / Barnarde / & Rycher,⁶ & all his company dyde meruayles in armes / ⁷so moche they 32

The Germans are dining, and do not perceive the approach of the French.

Huon and his companions fight wildly, and hew down their foemen.

¹ Fol. lxxxii. back, col. 2. ² ere. ³ vpon. ⁴ his.

⁵ before. ⁶ Rychard. always so written in 1601 ed.

⁷ a.d.

- dyd that *within* a shorte space the thre .C. Almayns that were set to kepe y^e tentes were all slayne / then Huon & his company entred in amonge y^e tentes & 4 paunlyons;¹ they bete downe² tentes, & suche as they met were slayne / then y^e almayns on all partes armed them / & the emperour sowned his trompettes, & armed him / he was so sorowful & angry *with* y^e trauel & 8 domage he was put to by Huon / *that* he enraged & was nere out of his wyt / for nyght & day he coulede take no rest. When he was armed, he mounted on his horse, & xx .M. Almayns *with* him, & they all sware the 12 deth³ of Huon / whom god defende, for, yf he longe taryed there, he sholde be in daunger of his lyfe / but he was wyse and sage⁴ in feates of armes;⁵ he loked towardes the emperours tente and sawe wel twenty 16 thousande men redy to come vpon hym / then he sayd to his men / 'syr, it is tyme that we recule⁶ to oure cyte / we may wel now go *without* blame / ⁷we may noo lenger tary here without grete daunger' / 'syr,' 20 quod Gerames, 'we be redy to do your commaundement' / then they toke the way to returne to the cyte / but the emperour, who desyred gretly the deth of Huon, he and his men pursued Huon as faste as theyr horses 24 wolde⁸ go / and when the emperour was nere to Huon, he sayd, 'A, thou fals traytoure, so many tymes *thou* haste troubled & angred me that lenger I wyll not suffre the to lyue / turne towarde me, for with the 28 I wyll iust, or elles I shall slee the flyenge / I hadde rather⁹ dye then not to take of the vengeaunce for the hurtes that thou haste done to me' / when Huon herde how the emperour called him traytour, he was sore 32 dyspleased, & turned his horse towarde the emperour, and sayd, 'A, false olde churle, where as thou sayest I am a traytoure / I shall shewe the how thou lyst

The guards about the tents are all slain,

and the Frenchmen make havoc among them.

The Emperor is well-nigh distracted.

With twenty thousand men he moves to the attack.

Huon orders his men to retreat.

The Emperor pursues them, and, coming up with Huon, insults him loudly.

Huon turns to do battle with him,

¹ where.

² the.

³ Fol. lxxxiii. col. 1.

⁴ discreet.

⁵ and.

⁶ retire.

⁷ for.

⁸ could.

⁹ to.

and the Emperor
narrowly escapes
death.

Huon would have
cut off his head,
but the Germans
rescue their
sovereign.

The Emperor is
filled with a
longing for
vengeance.

falsely' / then they ranne eche at other *with* theyr
speres in theyr restes, so that they met so rudely and
strake eche other on theyr sheldes by suche force *that*
theyr sheldes brast¹ a sonder / themperoure was a 4
puyssaunt prynce, so *that* his spere brast¹ all to peces /
but Huons spere was stronge & helde, wherwith he gaue
the emperoure suche a stroke *that* shelde nor haubert
coulede not warraunt hym, but *that* y^e spere entred in to 8
themperours syde / so that yf he had not swarued
a syde, he had not scaped y^e2 deth / *that* stroke was so
sore that themperour fell to y^e erth in such wyse *that*
nere hande he hadde broken his necke *with* y^e fal, & so 12
lay in a swone. Huon, seyng thempour lyenge on y^e
erth, ³ in grete yre⁴ & dyspleasure⁵ desyred to haue
slayne themperour / then he drewe out his good²
swerde, & turned to ⁶him to haue stryken⁶ of his heed / 16
the whiche he had done, yf he had not ben quykely²
rescued / but the Almaynes fro all partes cam thither /
so that they rescued themperour fro deth, and set hym
on a hors with moche payne / then he thanked our 20
lorde god *that* he was so⁷ scaped, and made auowe
to god *that* he wolde neuer more fyght *with* Huon
hande to hande / but he wolde pursue hym to the deth,
yf he coude. 24



¶ How Huon made another issue out of
Burdeux, and toke away al the bestes that
were in the pasturs without the towne
pertaynyng to themperours hoost. 28
Cap. C.v.

¹ burst.

² omitted.

³ Fol. lxxxiii. col. 2.

⁴ rage.

⁵ he.

⁶⁻⁶ strike.

⁷ well.



4 When Huon saw that he coude do no
 more at *that* tyme, and *that* y^e Almayns
 encreased in grete nombre to haue
 assayled hym / then he sporred his
 good horse Amphage, who made suche
 lepes that it semed he had flowen in the ayre / he had
 his swerde in his hande, and strake therwith so gret
 8 strokes that none durst approche nere hym / thus he
 rode after his men and led them towardes the cyte as
 y^e shepherde doth his shepe, for as soone as his
 enemies approached nere hym, he shewed theym his
 12 shelde and spere poynt / and as he rode there came
 a yonge knyght named Gerard / ryghte hardy and
 valyaunt in armes; he was bastarde sone to the
 emperoure / who desyred greatly to wynne honoure
 16 and prayse / he sawe Huon on his good horse, and
 sawe¹ that no man durst approche nere² him / ³cam
 after him & cryed, 'A, thou fals traytour, to flye awaye⁴
 shall not auayle ⁵the, for I brynge thy delthe in the
 20 poynt of my spere, with y^e whiche I shall slee the
 fleyng without thou turne to me, for or⁶ thou scape
 me I shall cause the to be hanged in the syght of them
 within Burdeaux' / when Huon vnderstode the knyght,
 24 and saw the grete hate and yre⁷ that he was in, and
 herynge howe he called hym traytoure / he thought
 and sayd to hymselfe / that he had rather dye then he
 that had sayd these wordes shold ⁸departe⁸ without
 28 felynge the sharpenesse of his spere / the whiche he
 couched in the rest and sporred his horse, who ranne
 lyke the thonder / ⁹he gaue the knyght suche an
 horryble stroke / that¹⁰ his shelde nor¹¹ armure coude
 32 saue his lyfe / for his spere persed through bothe his
 sydes, and³ was clene borne ouer his hors croupe starke

Huon flees from
the enemy at a
flying pace.

Gerard, a bastard
son of the
Emperor, pursues
and defies him.

Huon turns again
and rushes upon
him, so that he
kills him.

¹ likewise.

² vnto.

³ hee.

⁴ it.

⁵ Fol. lxxxiii. back, col. 1.

⁶ ere.

⁷ rage.

⁸⁻⁸ haue departed.

⁹ and.

¹⁰ neither.

¹¹ his.

deed / 'go thy waye,' *quod* Huon, 'thou shalte neuer
 haue power to do any man dyspleasure¹ more' / ²then
 he drewe his swerde, wherwith he delte suche dys-
 syplyne among the Almayns that all fled before hym. 4
 Gerames / Othon / and Bernarde & Rychar employed
 theyr forces and vertues ryght valyauntly / but the
 Almayns dyd so moche that Huon lost parte of his
 men, and the rest he ledde with him / oftentymes he 8
 turned and returned agaynst his enemyes / but what so
 euer force or prowes he shewed, yf he had not in hast
 gone away / he nor neuer³ one of his men hadde scaped
 without deth / for mo then .xxx. M. Almayns were 12
 nere hym, and all they⁴ desyred his deth / but god
 dyd hym that grace / that he and the small nombre that
 he had lefte entred with hym in to the cyte, and y^e
 gates⁵ closed / and themperour in grete dyspleasure 16
 retourned to his tent / and by the waye he founde his
 bastarde sone deed / for whcm he made suche sorowe
 that his lordes nor his broder coude not apease hym ;
 and so he caused hym to be borne to the tentes, 20
 and was gretely complayned of all the barons / ⁶for he
 was lyke to haue ben a⁷ noble man. And Huon went
 to his palayes, where he founde the fayre Esclaramoude,
 who demaunded how he dyde. 'Ryght well, lady,' 24
quod Huon ; 'thanked be god I am returned in saue
 garde, but I haue lost many of my men ;' and therwith
 he wepte, and the lady comforted hym as moche as she
 myghte / then themperour, beynge in his hoost, 28
 knowynge for trouth that Huon had but a small
 company in the cyte and *that* he thought he coude do
 hym but small damage fro thensforth / dyslodged and
 cam and lay nerer to y^e cyte, and dressed vp his engyns 32
 and montons⁸ to breke the walles, and made euery daye

All the Germans
 flee before him in
 fear.

But he loses many
 men at every
 onset,

and is in great
 peril.

He was fighting
 with thirty
 thousand
 Germans,

but he returns at
 length to the city
 in safety.

Huon begins to
 despair of his
 fortune.

The Emperor
 moves his host
 nearer to the
 walls,

¹ any. ² and. ³ a. ⁴ those. ⁵ were.⁶ Fol. lxxxiii. back, col. 2. ⁷ verie.⁸ mountains.

betynge¹ at the walles ; and they within defended them
 valyauntly² with theyr crosbowes ; many men, bothe
 within and without, were slayne / this syege endured
 4 fro the begynaynge of August vnto³ Easter after /
 wherof Huon was sore dyspleased, and⁴ complayned for
 the losse of his noble barons / and⁵ men that he had
 lost. Also he sawe his tours and gates sore⁶ beaten,
 8 and his enemyes⁷ before his⁸ cyte / and loked for no
 socours fro any parte / and⁹ he had with hym¹⁰ but¹⁰
 thre hondred knyghtes and a hondred men to kepe the
 cyte with all / then he called Esclaramonde his wyfe,
 12 and sayd, ' Dame,¹¹ I knowe well ye endure trouble and
 dyspleasure ynough / and therefore I pray you & ye can
 gyue me any good counsell, gyue it me¹² / for the yre¹³
 & dysplesure *that* I haue at my herte troubleth so myne
 16 vnderstandynge that I can not tell what to do / &¹² on
 y^e other parte I se my cyte besyged & my men slayn,
 nor I can gete¹⁴ none apoyntment¹⁴ with themperour,
 who¹⁵ is so¹⁶ sore dysplesed with me *that* I can neuer
 20 haue his loue / he hath slayne my men, wherof I am so
 sorowfull *that* my herte nere fayleth me' / 'sir,' quod
 Esclaramonde, ' ye do grete wronge to say these wordes
 before me or¹⁷ to complayn your domages / if ye wold a¹⁸
 24 beleued me¹⁹ ye had gone to my brother for socoure,
 who wold haue come with you & brought²¹ such²²
 nombre of men that themperour durst not¹⁸ abyden
 you, & also to haue made ther by my brother a crysten
 28 man, for he hath byleued in our lorde god this seuen
 yere past' / 'dame,'²³ quod Huon, 'all that ye say
 myght well haue ben,²⁴ but I had leuer²⁵ haue lost thre

and assaults the
city more
violently than
before.

From August to
Easter does the
siege continue.

Only three
hundred men are
now with Huon,

and he, not
knowing what to
do, asks
Esclaramonde to
give him counsel.

She repeats her
advice that he
should go to her
brother for aid.

¹ battering.

² for.

³ to the.

⁴ verie much.

⁵ other good.

⁶ so.

⁷ lying.

⁸ the.

⁹ that.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ not alone.

¹¹ Madame.

¹² now.

¹³ rage.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ no agreement.

¹⁵ for he is.

¹⁶ omitted.

¹⁷ in this sort.

¹⁸ haue.

¹⁹ then.

²⁰ Fol. lxxxiii. col. 1.

²¹ you.

²² a.

²³ Madame.

²⁴ done.

²⁵ rather.

Huon still
hesitates to
abandon his wife
and friends in so
great a danger,

but he knows, if
he has no succour,
his city and
himself and his
men will fall into
the Emperor's
hands.

He therefore
determines to
seek out his
brother-in-law.

Esclaramonde
fears that the city
must fall in his
absence,

but nevertheless
bids him depart
at once.

Huon tells her of
a device whereby
the town may be
victualled.

such cytes as this is¹ then to haue lefte you, & my lordes,
& good burgesses, whom I loue so faythfully. yf I
had but a .M. knightes to defende my cyte / with an
yll wyll I shall² departe fro you, for I am ³in certayne³ 4
that yf I go and seke for socours I shall haue payne
ynough, & ye that shall abyde here are lyke to haue
more.⁴ I know wel *that* themperour, who⁵ hateth vs,⁶
setteth all his entent to haue vs / & yf he take you, ye 8
shall be in grete paryll / & yf I tary here with you, &
go for no socour / *this* cyte wyl be taken &⁷ famissed /
& both you, & I⁸ distroyed / for themperour, who
loueth vs but⁹ lytell, and not with out a cause, yf he 12
may take me I shall dye of¹ a shamefull dethe / it is
no mervayle though¹⁰ he be displeased with me / for I
haue slayn his sones & neuwes, & many of his best
frendes; yf he maye take me I shall haue no pyte 16
shewed to¹ me / & I know well with out I haue some
socours myne ende is at hande / wherfore, dame,¹¹ I
thynke it best that I go to your brother for socours /
for I¹² haue taryed ouer long' / 'syr,' *quod* Esclaramond, 20
'ye speke it¹³ very late / for now ye know well that all
our brede and wyne / and flesshe / & fysshe / begyn to
fayle vs, and all¹⁴ other vytales / wherfore it shall¹⁵ not
be longe after your departure but that this cyte shall¹⁶ 24
be taken and dystroyed / and the men within slayne /
and I ledde in to grete mysery / yet for all *that* I wold
not counseyle you to abyde here / but I pray you make
hast to departe.' When Huon herde her, he began to 28
wepe / and abasshed¹⁷ his chere to the erth, and studyed¹⁸
a lytell, and¹⁹ sayd, 'Dame,¹¹ I thynke vpon ²⁰one
thyng / the whiche to you shall¹⁶ be ryght ¹profytable /
wherby ye shall haue vytaile ynoughe to lyue by¹ an 32

¹ omitted. ² should. ³⁻³ assured. ⁴ for. ⁵ so.
⁶ as he. ⁷ or. ⁸ be. ⁹ a. ¹⁰ if. ¹¹ Madame.
¹² see that I. ¹³ of this. ¹⁴ our. ¹⁵ cannot.
¹⁶ will. ¹⁷ abashing. ¹⁸ studying. ¹⁹ he.
²⁰ Fol. lxxxi. col. 2.

- hole yere.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'of that I thanke god, yf it
 may so come to passe.' 'Dame,'¹ quod Huon, 'I shall
 tell you how this cyte may be reuytayled without² grete
 4 losse of any men / trewe it is³ here without in the
 medowe there are two hondred men set there by the
 Emperoure to kepe y^e beestes pertaynyng to his hoost,
 the whiche are without nombre / what in beefferes /
 8 keen / and hogges / and mo then x thousande shepe /
 the⁴ whiche beestes⁵ by the grace of Iesu, or⁵ I slepe I and these he will
 wyll brynge them⁴ in to this cyte / and than ye may slee bring into the
 them and powder theym in salte, soo that ye shall haue city.
 12 no famyn for a hole yere.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'I pray to⁶
 god ye may brynge it⁷ to passe.' thus they taryed tyll⁸
 souper tyme / and after when it was nyght / & that
 they thought that they of y^e hoost were a slepe / and
 16 sawe *that* the wether was troublous⁹ as they wolde
 desyre it, he armed hym and all his men / he¹⁰ set men
 at the gate to defende hym at his reculyng.¹¹ Then he
 mounted on¹² his good horse / then¹⁰ he opened the gate,
 20 and yssued out as preuely as he myght / and tooke the
 way to the medowe and came thyder / and Huon then
 cryed, and sayd / 'a, ye vyllaynes, this pasturage is
 myn / I come to chalenge it / in an yll¹³ houre ye put
 24 your beestes here to pasture; ye shall make me
 amendes / for¹⁴ the beestes that I fynde here in my
 pasture I wyll goo and pounce theym / and yf the
 emperoure wyll haue theym he must bye them and
 28 make amendes for theyr forfeit, & ye that be the
 keepers shall derely a bye it.'

The Emperor
has much cattle
for his host.

and these he will
bring into the
city.

Huon arms his
men for the
adventure,
and leaves the
city by night.

He challenges the
keepers of the
cattle to surrender
them to him.

¹ Madame. ² any. ³ that. ⁴ omitted. ⁵⁻⁶ ere.
⁶ vnto. ⁷ well. ⁸ vntill. ⁹ enen. ¹⁰ and.
¹¹ recoiling. ¹² vppon. ¹³ euill. ¹⁴ all.

They prepare to
fight,

but Huon slays
very many of
them forthwith.

He and his
companions kill
all the two
hundred keepers,
save one, who
escapes to warn
the Emperor.

The Emperor
rushes forth with
his men, but the
cattle had already
entered the city.

Huon and his
men turn upon
the Germans who
were in pursuit
of them,

and kills many of
them with his
own hand.



1 **W**hen the keepers herd Huon speke they
had grete fere / ²they thought to haue
gon and taken theyr horses, & ³to haue
defended them selfe, but Huon & his 4
company gaue them no layser so to
doo / then ⁴Huon with his spere strake one starke
deed, & after he slew y^e seconde / ⁵the thyrd / &
fourth / & so slewe many as long as his spere helde; 8
then he set his hande on his swerde, wherwith he claue
a sonder helmes and sheldes and bette downe men on
euery syde, & Gerames / Othon / & Rycher / dyd ⁶
valyauntly. ²so moche dyd Huon and his men within a 12
shorte space that the two hondred men *that* kept the
beestes were all slayne except one, who scaped & ran to
themperours hoost; then ⁷he shewed themperour how
Huon & his men were yssued out of the cyte, and that 16
all the keepers of the beestes were all ⁸slayne, and
y^e beestes taken and dryuen in to y^e cyte / when
themperoure herde these tydynges he was ryght
sorowfull, and armed hym & his men, & lept on theyr 20
horses & ranne towards the cyte to stoppe Huon fro
entrynge in to y^e cyte / but or ⁹they came thyder al y^e
beestes were entred in to y^e cyte / & ¹⁰when Huon saw
themperour comynge, he sayde to ¹¹his men, 'syrs, 24
I requyre you let vs turne vpon oure enemyes who
cometh after vs / for I wold fayne shewe them how
men that cometh fro foraging can rynne with theyr
speres.' then they turned agaynst the Almayns so that 28
eche of them bare a man to the erth, & they drew
theyr swerdes / & slew men rounde aboute them / and
Huon vpon his good hors Amphage held his swerde in his
hande all ¹²be sprent ¹²with y^e bloode of his enemyes, 32
wherwith he cutte of armes, legges, & handes / he was

¹ Fol. lxxxiii. back, col. 1. ² and. ³ so. ⁴ for.
⁵ then. ⁶ verie. ⁷ where. ⁸ omitted. ⁹ before.
¹⁰ Now. ¹¹ vnto. ¹²⁻¹² to be sprinkled.

more douted then the deuyll / for by his prowes he dyd
 so moche that his enemyes fled before hym and made
 hym ¹way, so that in ²the spyte² of al the Almayns,
 4 after that he and his men had slayne foure M. of his
 enemyes / he entred into the cite with all the pray of
 his beestes / wherwith themperour & his men that
 folowed were sore dyspleased for the losse that they
 8 had,³ & for that Huon was so seaped fro theyr handes /
 and *that* he had taken away there beestes and slayne
 his men / thus as ye haue herde Huon entred into the
 cyte of Burdeux *with* all his praye.

Four thousand
men lie dead on
the field.

The Emperor is
sore distressed.

12 ¶ How Huon of Burdeux made hym redy to
 go to seke for some socours, & of the sorowe
 that the duches his wyfe made. Ca. c.vi.

16 **A**fter that Huon was entred in to the
 cyte, he wente to his palays, & there
 founde the duches Esclaramonde,
 who vn�ased his helme & clypped &
 kyssed him, & said, '*sir*, I pray you,
 20 how haue ye done?' 'fayre lady,'
 quod he, 'we haue slayn many an Almayn, & haue
 brought away y^e pray / for in ⁴all the emperours host
 we haue not left nother porke / kyne / nor moton : we
 24 haue broughte all into this citye, thanked be god / so
 now I shall leue you in more suertye in myne absence /
 for ye haue nowe wytayle ynoughe for a hole yere.
 Nowe I wyll go to your brother / & yf I fynde that
 28 he wyl be chrystened, I shall bryng hym with me / yf
 not, I shall defye hym and slee hym without he wyll
 beleue on Iesu chryste, what so euer fortune fall.'
 'Syr,' quod Esclarmonde, sore wepynge, 'haue no
 32 dought⁵ / for it is more then .vii. yeres syns he desyred

Huon tells
Esclaramonde of
the success of the
adventure.

He will depart at
once on his
mission to her
brother,
but if he will not
be converted, he
will slay him.

¹ Fol. lxxxiii. back, col. 2. ²⁻² despite. ³ receiued.

⁴ Fol. lxxxv. col. 1. ⁵ of that.

to be chrystenyd, wherfore, syr, I requyre you loue my brother' / 'dame,'¹ quod Huon, 'I shall do your pleasure' / then he called to hym hys preuy frendes, and sayd / 'syrs, ye knowe wel what daunger and parell we 4 be in: and by-cause in all thyngys nedefull² oughte to be made prouysyon with delygens / this citey is now well prouyded of vytayle, wherfore ye shal not nede to make enye issuinge out without ye se³ a³ great adwantage: and as for assawlt, yf ye defende it well it is inpreyngnable for our enemyes to wyn it⁴ / yf ye be to yeld it vp, beware what ye do / for the great hate *that* the emperour hathe agaynst vs paraduenture wyl con- 12 strayne hym to breke his promys: yf ye be taken by force, or by this meanes, ye shall all dye myserably, & my wyfe⁵ muredred³ vp³ in pryson, or elles myserably to fynyshe her dayes / and my lytell doughter, Claryet, 16 whome I loue so derely,⁶ shalbe lost, and my citey destroyed and brought to vtter ruyn / wherfore I commaunde⁷ vnto you my wyfe & my doughter and all the rest⁸ tyl my⁸ returne agayne, the whiche shalbe shortely 20 yf I may / and I shall brynge with me suche socoure that ye shall al be ioiFULL therof' / 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'god gyue grace to sende you agayne in sauegard / ye knowe wel¹⁰ ye leue vs in great pouerte and fere, wher- 24 fore we al desyre you not to forget vs,' and therwith they al wepte / then Huon sayd, 'I praye you make no suche sorowe for my departynge: for¹¹ knowe the busynesse that causeth me to departe: for without I go for 28 some socoure ye know well we ar but dede / &, Gerames, I gyue you the kepyng of my wyfe and chyld / ye ar bounde to serue me trewely / for in you I haue my parfyght trust.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'haue ye no 32

Huon calls his friends together, and informs them of his purpose.

He bids them remain quietly within the city in his absence,

and warns them of their danger.

He entrusts to them the keeping of his wife and daughter.

Gerames and his companions weep on hearing Huon's words,

¹ Madame. ² there. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ but.

⁵ bee. ⁶ shee. ⁷ commend. ⁸⁻⁸ vntill I.

⁹ Fol. lxxxv. col. 2. ¹⁰ that.

¹¹ yee.

doughte but *that* as longe as I haue lyfe in my body, I
shal not fayle them in lyfe nor dethe.'

but Gerames
promises to
protect
Escaramonde and
Clariet, so long as
he lives.

¶ When Huon hard Gerames say so, he began sore
4 to wepe / and the fayre lady Escaramonde be gan to
make suche sorowe that¹ pety it was to see:² she
wrange hyr handes and tare hyr here, and made suche
cryes³ that euery man had pety of hyr / ⁴they comforted
8 hyr as moche as they myght: she had great cause to
wepe and to be sorowfull / for ⁵or euer⁵ Huon returned
to Burdeaux she and all they that were with her suf-
feryd so moche payne and pouerte that to shewe it wold
12 cause a harde harte to wepe for petye. And after that
Huon had thus spoke to his companye, he entered in
to his chapell, & was confessyd of the bysshop of the
cyte, ⁶and was hoselyd.⁶ Then the bysshop gaue to
16 Huon a stoole that was halowed and of great vertue, &
sayde, 'syr, I requyre you, for y^e loue of our lorde Iesu
chryst / kepe well this stoole, for such an owre maye
falle that it wyl stand you in good stede.' Huon ryght
20 humbly toke it, and thankyd the bysshope. It dyd
hym good seruyse after⁷ / for on a daye as he passed
he / ⁸had therof so great nede that he wolde not a for-
borne it for .xiiii. good cities, as ye shall here⁹ after.


Escaramonde is
sorely grieved
when Huon takes
leave of her.

Huon is confessed
by the bishop of
the city,
who gives him a
hallowed stool,

which should
stand him in
good stead.

24 ¶ How Huon departed fro the cytye of Bur-
deaux, and sayled tyl¹⁰ he came into the
hye see, & had manye great fortunes.

Ca. .cvii.

28  Hen Huon had taken the halowed
stoole, he delyuered it to his chapleine,
who was a wyse man and of a holy
lyfe, and commaundyd hym to kepe it
32 well. Then he toke .v. knyghtes to

Huon takes with
him five knyghts,

¹ great. ² her. ³ out-cries. ⁴ yet. ⁵⁻⁵ before.

⁶⁻⁶ and receiued the Sacrament. ⁷ afterward.

⁸ Fol. lxxxv. back, col. l. ⁹ more heereafter. ¹⁰ vntill.

and a chaplain
and a clerk.

Huon finally bids
his wife farewell
amid her tears.

He and his
company embark
in a ship moored
on the Garonne,
and sail away.

Huon weeps at
the thought of
having left his
wife and
daughter.

The ship enters
the high sea.

haue with hym, and his chappleyne and a clarke to
serue hym. Then Huon went to his wyfe, and kyssyd
her at hys departynge, and she fell in a swoune in his
armys, & Huon sore wepynge releuyd her, and sayd / 4
'fayre ladye, I requyre you forbere makynge of this
sorow.' 'A,¹ syr,' quod she, 'well I ought to be dolent,²
syn ye le,³ue me me besegyde with them that desyrethe
your dethe' / 'dame,'⁴ quod Huon, 'dyscomfort you 8
not / for by the grace of god I shall make a shorte
retourne.' Then he clypped and kyssed her, recom-
maundyng her to our lorde Iesu chryst. Then Huon
and suche as were appoynted to go with hym departed 12
out of the palays, and went to a backe posterne vpon
the ryuer of Geround, where there was a shyp redy and
rychely garnyshyd with all thynges conueniente /
then⁵ Huon clene⁶ armyd & his men enterid into the 16
shyp & had no hors with them / when Huon departed,
he delyuered his good hors to the kepyng of syr Bar-
narde his cosyn / and toke his leue of Gerames and of
all his other companye / and so lyfte⁷ vp sayle, and 20
so⁸ or⁹ it was day in the mornynge he was more then .ii.
leges fro Burdeaux. Then Huon regarded y^e citey, and
sore wepynge dyd recommaunde it to our lorde Iesu
chryste, humblye requyryng hym to haue in his saue- 24
garde his citey / wyfe / and chylde, & al other that
were within it. Thus duke Huon sayled a long the
ryuer of Gerounde, petyously complaynyng for his wyfe,
the fayre Esclaramounde, & for his fayre doughter, 28
Claryet / whom he coude not forget / for he had so great
dought to lese them that when he rememberyd them
he wepte. ¹⁰So long they sayled¹⁰ that they enteryd
in to the hyghe see / ¹¹he had good cause to wepe and 32
to make¹² sorow : for he neuer entered agayne in to

¹ good. ² sorrowfull. ³ Fol. lxxxv. back, col. 2.

⁴ Madame. ⁵ there. ⁶ being. ⁷ hoysed. ⁸ so omitted.

⁹ ere. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ They sayled so long. ¹¹ and. ¹² great.

Burdeaux tyll¹ the emperour had taken it, who hated duke Huon mortally. Huon beyng in his shyp thought in hymself, that² his harte gaue hym or³ he
 4 returned to the cytye of Burdeaux, that⁴ the cytye shuld be taken and his wyfe⁵ led away / wherefore⁶ he determyned in his corage, that if it so / ⁷fortuned, and if euer he returned agayn, what so euer ende came therof,
 8 he wolde sle the emperoure Thyrry, & that castell nor towne shulde not saue hym. There was a notable knyght with Huon who sayd :⁸ 'syr, leue your musyng and set⁹ your hope¹⁰ in god. he shall ayde you &
 12 socoure you in all your affayres¹¹ / he shall¹² helpe your wyfe and kepe your cytye tyll¹ ye returne / discomforte your selfe no further.¹³ thynke of god / and praye to¹⁴ hym to geue you the grace to accomplyshe your vyage /
 16 the whiche I hope ye shall¹⁵ do¹⁵ yf ye thus do' / when Huon harde hym he was¹⁶ confortyd, and thanked the knyght : and so sayled forth the tyll¹ they were far on¹⁷ the see & loste theyr ryght way / for the shyp turned
 20 on the ryght hand and loste the waye that they shulde haue sayled / and sayld in to places not knowen to enye of the maryners / wherof the patron was sore abashed in hym selfe, without makynge eny knowleg
 24 therof / ²so longe they sayled with wynd and wether that they aryued at a porte where as they founde many botes / then¹⁸ they caste theyr ancre and went a lond to refresshe them¹⁹ / then Huon called to hym the mayster
 28 of the shyp and demaundyd of hym yf he coud sayle to y^e realme of Aufamie / 'syr,' quod y^e mayster, 'I was neuer there nor I haue no wyll²⁰ to go thether / it were a folye for me to take on¹⁷ me to sayle thether,

Huon fears that the Emperour will take the city while he is away.

A knight offers him consolation.

They sail onwards and lose their way.

They arrive at a port, where they find many boats.

¹ vntill. ² and. ³ that before. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ the faire Escleremond. ⁶ therefore. ⁷ Fol. lxxxvi. col. 1.

⁸ vnto him. ⁹ put. ¹⁰ trust. ¹¹ enterpryzes.

¹² will. ¹³ but. ¹⁴ vnto. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ not faile of.

¹⁶ much. ¹⁷ vppon. ¹⁸ there. ¹⁹ themselues.

²⁰ minde.

The pilot of the vessel does not know in what direction to sail,

and a new pilot is sought and found,

He warns Huon that the voyage to Aufamie, the realm of his brother-in-law, is long and perilous.

Huon is sad at the thought that a whole year must pass ere he can return to Bordeaux.

Huon and his company move into a new ship.

syn¹ I had neuer no knowlege to sayle by that straynge see. But I counsayle you² here in this porte where as ye ar now to hyer a nother patron that can brynge you thether.' 'frende,' quod Huon, 'I praye you to⁴ do so moche as to gette me one' / 'syr,' quod he, 'I shall do that³ I can' / then he and Huon serchyd fro shyppe to shyppe and fro bote to bote to get a pelot / at laste they⁴ came to an aunsyent man / who sayd that⁸ he coude well brynge them thether / and sayd how he had bene there before that tyme. 'Frend,' quod Huon, 'yf ye wyll bringe me to the realme of Aufamie I shall geue you gold and syluer plente' / 'syr,' quod the olde¹² patron, 'I shall do your pleasure / but, syr, one⁵ I say to you / knowe for trouthe the vyage is⁶ ryghte perelous & dangerous⁶ to passe and a⁷ long vyage.⁸ it wyll be halfe a yeere or⁹ ye can com thether / and besyde¹⁶ that we muste pas by a perelous Goulfe / the whiche is reputed to be one of the mouthes of hel / for¹⁰ if by aduenture by¹¹ fortune of the wynde that we be blowen nere to¹² it we shal neuer departe / but be loste for²⁰ euer.' when Huon hard the pylot, he began to wepe and complayne for hys wyfe and his dere doughter whome he had lefte in the citey of Burdeaux in great dought¹³ to be taken. For he saw well then² he coud²⁴ not returne¹⁴ of a hole yere with eny socours / how be it, he lefte not his vyage / then he commaundyd his seruantis to dyscharge all his baggage and vytayles out of the one shyp in to the other /¹⁵ when the new shyp²⁸ with y^e new patron was redy in all thynges Huon entered into it. Then the newe patron demaunded of the olde maryner the cause why thei came thether and fro whense they came. 'Syr,' quod he, 'trew it is we³²

¹ seeing. ² that. ³ what. ⁴ Fol. lxxxvi. col. 2.
⁵ thing. ⁶⁻⁶ very daungerous for. ⁷ verie. ⁸ for.
⁹ ere. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ or. ¹² vnto. ¹³ daunger.
¹⁴ for the space. ¹⁵ and.

- came fro the citee of Burdeaux / the whiche stondethe
 vpon a notable ryuer, and when we were entered in to
 the see / a sore wynde rose vpon vs in suche wyse that
 4 we were constrained to abandon our shype to the wynde,
 and wether, and fortune of the see / the whiche hathe
 brought vs hether' / 'frend,' quod the new patron /
 'as sone as ye were out of the ryuer of Gerounde, yf ye
 8 had turned your ¹sterne towards the sirode,² ye hadde
 neuer comen hether, and within a moneth ye shulde
 haue com to the realme of Aufamie, where as now ye
 be³ far of' / when Huon vnderstode the cause of theyr
 12 comynge thether, he was ryght sorowfull and sore dys-
 pleased yf he coude haue amendyd it. But his dys-
 pleasure coude not ayde⁴ him : but rather hynder hym /
 therfore he let it pas, and so toke leue of hys fyrst
 16 patron, and lyfte vp theyr ancers and sayles : and when
 they were in the see the wynde arose / and encreased
 more and more ⁵in suche wyse that they were more
 then⁵ .vi. wekys that y^e wynde chaungyd not, so that
 20 yf god had sufferyd the wynd to haue continued one
 monethe or .vi. wekys lenger, they had com to the
 place where as they wolde haue bene. But or⁶ they
 came there, they sufferyd moche payne / for there rose
 24 vpon them suche a wynde⁷ that they were forsed to
 auayle theyr sayles. The heuen waxed darke, the mone
 was couerid / the tourment was great and maruaylous,⁸
 the waues of the se were of a great heyghte and orryble⁹
 28 to beholde / whereby, whether they wolde or not, they
 were constreyned to go as the wynde wolde lede them /
 theyr fortune was so¹⁰ terryble / that there was neuer
 sene suche a¹¹ storme before / wherof Huon and his men
 32 and his patron were ¹²sore abasshed,¹² and speccially the

The old mariner
tells the new
pilot of the
previous voyage,

and the latter
shows how their
old ship came to
stray from the
right course.

Huon sets forth
again in his new
ship,

and encounters
mighty storms.

¹ Fol. lxxxvi. back, col. 1. ² sea roade. ³ verie.

⁴ helpe. ⁵⁻⁵ for the space of. ⁶ ere. ⁷ and tempest.

⁸ dangerous. ⁹ terrible. ¹⁰ great and.

¹¹ mightie. ¹²⁻¹² greatly afraide.

The pilot is
sorely discomfited,

and knows not
whither he is
going.

At length the sun
appears,

and the winds
abate.

The ship goes
with the wind,
as none knows in
what direction to
guide her.

patron more then Huon was / he was sore dyscom-
forted / and peteouslye he called on our lorde Iesu
chryste / requyrnge hym to bryng them to a good
porte / there was nother maryner nor patron but *that*¹ 4
were sore abasshyd,² nor they wyste not where they
were. They were in this tourmente³ the space of .x.
dayes, In¹ the whiche tyme they neuer saw the ⁴clere-
nes of the sonne : for the darkenesse that was there as 8
then / the which⁵ greatly anoyed⁶ them. And when
it came to the xi day, and that the tourment and wynd
began to abate and the see⁷ pesable and styll / where
with⁸ Huon and his companye were well comforted : 12
the heuen clered vp and the⁹ sonne cast out his rayes
alonge vpon the see / then¹⁰ when the master¹¹ sawe
the fortune of the see, and the great tourment began to
sease, he caused one of the maryners to mounte vp into 16
the toppe to se yf he myght se¹² any lond / but he coude
se none, wherof the patron was sore¹³ abasshyed & sayd
how¹⁴ he knew not ¹⁵wher¹⁵ he was, for he neuer sayld
in that¹⁶ partyes / and sayd to Huon, 'syr, it is fyfty 20
yeres syn¹⁴ I fyrste vsed the see / but yet I neuer sayled
in these partyes, wherof I haue great maruayle' / when
Huon harde that he was sore dyspleasyd and sayd /
'syr, let vs take the aduantage of the wynde and let 24
our shyppe dryue vnder the conducte of our lord Iesu
chryst. I hope that our lorde god wyll not suffer vs
to be pershysshed in this se.' 'Syr,' quod the patron,
'I¹⁷ agre well to your sayinge, and so let vs do' / then 28
they turned theyr helme and toke the wynd in to theyr
ful sayle / the wynde was good and fresshe and the see¹⁸
meke & pesable / so that within a shorte tyme¹⁹ they
had sayled a great iourney. Then Huon called on²⁰ our 32

¹ all. ² afraide. ³ for. ⁴ Fol. lxxxvi. back, col. 2.

⁵ did verie. ⁶ annoy. ⁷ waxed. ⁸ therewith.

⁹ glorious. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ of the shippe. ¹² discrie.

¹³ greatly. ¹⁴ that. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ in what country.

¹⁶ those. ¹⁷ do. ¹⁸ very. ¹⁹ space. ²⁰ vppon.


lord god and helde vp his handes towardes the¹ heuen,
 & sayd / ²very god, who in this ³worlde transetory
 woldeste³ wochesaue to be borne in the wombe of a
 4 maid, and after ⁴here reigned⁴ .xxxii. yeres, and then
⁵reseyuyd⁵ dethe and passyon vpon a frydaye / and after
⁶rose⁶ from dethe to lyfe and wente into hell and drewe
 out ¹the¹ sowles / out of ¹the¹ paynes infernall⁷ / syr,¹
 8 ⁸as I beleue that this is trewe, I requyre the to haue
 petye and compassyon of⁹ vs & gyue vs grace ¹⁰to scape
 safely¹⁰ out of this perelous see / and to kepe and saue
 my ryght dere¹¹ wyfe Esclaramonde & my chylde : and
 12 my noble lordes whome I haue lefte in Burdeaux in
 great perell of theyr lyues, and gyue me that¹² grace
 that I may brynge with me suche socours and ayde that
 thereby to¹³ brynge them out of the daunger that they
 16 be in.'

Huon puts his
trust in Christ.

¶ How Huon aryued on the perelous Goulfe,
 wher as he spake with Iudas, and howe he
 aryued at the porte of the Adamant.

20

Ca. .Cviii.

24  Hen Huon had made his prayers to
 god / he behelde in to the see and sawe
 a farre of / lyke a great pese of can-
 was / and therby he harde as ¹⁴great a
 noyse as thoughe there had ben a
 thowsande smethes and a thowsande carpenters and a
 thowsande great rynnynge riuers to gether,¹⁵ betynge
 28 and labourynge.¹⁶ ¹⁷ Huon, who harde this great noyse :
 hadde great fere therof, so that he wyste not what to do,

Huon looks
ahead.

He hears a
thunderous roar,

and grows fearful.

¹ omitted. ² Thou. ³⁻³ transitorie world diddest.

⁴⁻⁴ afterwards diddest raigne heere vpon earth.

⁵⁻⁵ didst suffer. ⁶⁻⁶ that didst rise. ⁷ Even so.

⁸ Fol. lxxxvii. col. 1. ⁹ vppon.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ that we may safely escape. ¹¹ and louing. ¹² the.

¹³ I may. ¹⁴ Fol. lxxxvii. col. 2. ¹⁵ all.

¹⁶ (tabourynge in original.) ¹⁷ to gether.

The ship
approaches the
gulf, that forms
one of the gates of
hell.

The pilot fears
that they will not
pass that way in
safety.

Huon addresses
his wife,

and prepares
himself for death.

The ship goes
nearer to the
perilous waters.

and so were al tho¹ that were in his companye / the
patron commaunded a maryner to mounte vp into the
toppe² to se what thyng it was that made all that
noyse / and so he dyd,³ and behelde that waye / and at ⁴
last he parseyued the daungerous Goulfe, wherof he had
harde often tymes spoken ⁴of⁴ / wherof⁵ he had suche
fere that nere hand he had fallen downe into the see /
he came downe and sayd to⁶ the patron, 'Syr, we be al ⁸
in the way to be lost, for we be nere one of the Goulfes
of hel' / wherof Huon and the patron and all other had
suche fere that they⁷ trymbelyd. 'Syr,' quod the
patron, 'knowe for trougthe it is inpossyble to scape ¹²
out of this perelous Gulfe / for all y^e sees and waters
and ryuers there assemblethe to gether / and perforce
we muste passe that waye' / when Huon harde that,⁸
he began petyously to complayne and sayd / 'a, swete⁹ ¹⁶
wyfe Esclaramonde, I se nowe clerely that our lous
must departe / the beaute and y^e bounte that is in you
I can not forget. Alas! I shall neuer se you.¹⁰ I
praye to our lorde Iesu christ to gyue you that grace to ²⁰
be agreyde withe the emperoure Therry to the entente
that in peas and reste ye maye vse the resedewe of your
lyfe / for as for me I shall neuer brynge you eny socours
or ayde.' Then he studyed a season and then sayd,¹¹ ²⁴
'good lorde, I thanke the, syn it pleaseth the that I
shall pas out of this worlde, I humbely requyre the to
receyue my sowle into thyne han¹²/des. as for the¹³
body and lyfe I care lytell for / synne¹⁴ it pleaseth the ²⁸
that I sha^l thus ende my dayes.'¹⁵ Then Huon lefte
his wepyng and the wynde seasyd and the sayle
abated: yet neuer the lesse, the shyppe styll went
forthe a lone in such wyse as thoughe it had flowen on ³²

¹ those. ² of the mast. ³ and looked round about him.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted. ⁵ and thereof. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ all.

⁸ then. ⁹ and louing. ¹⁰ more. ¹¹ againe.

¹² Fol. lxxxvii. back, col. 1. ¹³ my. ¹⁴ seeing.

¹⁵ and depart this life.

y^e see / 'Syr,' quod the mayster,¹ 'ye maye se clerely²
 that we nede not to trawaile our selfe to gyde our
 shyppe / for the Goulfe that is so nere vs drawethe the
 4 shyp to³ hym in suche haste as ye maye see. ⁴Anone
 ye shall se that we shall tounble therin' / 'mayster,'
 quod Huon, 'it is conuenyente⁵ that we abyde the
 aduenture and fortune of the see, such as our lorde god
 8 wyll sende. lette vs truste in hym, and desyre hym
 that his pleasure be fulfylled: ⁴more I can not ⁶saye,
 for agaynste hym we can not⁶ stryue.' Then Huons
 chapelayne confessen them one after another.⁴ Then
 12 incontynent the great noyse seasyd. For⁷ they came
 thether at a good poynte / for the⁸ same tyme as they⁹
 fortune was y^e gulfe was full and playne / so that a
 shyppe myght pas ouer it without daunger as well as
 16 in a nother place of the see / ⁴when the patron sawe
 that, he sayde to Huon, 'Syr, we oughte greatly to
 thanke our lorde god / for we ar nowe come at suche
 a tyme that the Goulfe is full and playne, so that we
 20 maye passe ouer suerly *with* oute any daunger' / when
 Huon harde *that*, he was ryght Ioyfull and all wepyng
 he knelyd downe and so dyd all the compayne, and
 dewoutly they thanked our lord god that he had sent
 24 them that⁹ grace. Then Huon rose vp and saw besyde
 hym a great pese of canwasse. And the waues of the
 see / betynge agaynste it *with* great vyolence / wherof
 he hadde great marueyle. For the waues of the see
 28 bet ¹⁰so sore agaynste the clothe and with so great
 vyolens: that they reculed backe / & for all the
 betynge of the see agaynste the canuas yet it brake not.
 Then Huon harde a woyse cryenge on hye, ¹¹petuously¹¹
 32 complaynyng, saynge, 'O, very god, in an yll oure I
 was borne when I solde the pusuant god who ded me

The gulf draws
her towards the
danger.

Happily the gulf
was very full, so
that ships might
pass near it in
safety.

Huon and his
company kneel
and thank God
for their
salvation.

A piece of canvas
is seen above the
waves,

and a piteous
voice is heard,
complaining of
much evil
fortune.

¹ of the shippe.

² evidently.

³ vnto.

⁴ and.

⁵ now.

⁶⁻⁶ omitted.

⁷ But.

⁸ verie.

⁹ good.

¹⁰ Fol. lxxxvii. back, col. 2.

¹¹⁻¹¹ and pitifully.

It tells how
Jesus was sinfully
sold for thirty
pence,

and how he who
did the deed was
blinded by the
devil.

The pilot asks
who it is that
makes the pitiful
complaint,

but no answer is
vouchsafed.

Then Huon
repeats the
question.

that grace¹ as to take me as one of hys dyceyple &
apostelles / and for the goodnes that he dyd me I ren-
deryd hym an yll² rewarde for the dewyll: the enemye
of all humayne lynage enteryd into my body, y^e whiche ⁴
was ful of synne / and exortyd me to selle my god &
good lorde / for .xxx. pens of money that was then
corante in the countre of Iudee / and, vnhappy that I
was, yf I had trusted in his great marce all the trespas ⁸
that I had done had bene forgeuen me. But pryde and
mysbeleue and wanhope³ that was in me with the
deuyll: who blyndyd myne vnderstondynge,⁴ wolde
not suffer me to haue enye hope of grace or pardon for ¹²
my trespas. For of my synne I neuer had repentaunce.
And the deuyll doughtynge to haue loste me put me in
to dysparasyon, wherby I loste ⁵goddes grace.⁵ For yf
I wolde haue axed marcy of my lord god he wolde ¹⁶
haue pardoned me of all the trespas that I had com-
mytted agaynst hym. Alas!⁶ caytyue that I am, fro
hense shall I neuer departe.⁷ ¶ when the mayster of
the shyppe harde this voyce / he demaunded of hym ²⁰
and sayd / 'what arte thou that thus peteously com-
playnethe? I commaunde the to shewe me ⁸yf⁸ there
be any man leuyng in this worlde that can ayde and
socoure the, and caste the out of the⁹ payne that thou arte ²⁴
in: ' when the voice hard hym, he spake no mo wordes
nor gaue¹⁰ none answee.¹¹ Then Huon ¹²awaunsed
hymselfe to the bourde of the shyppe,¹³ desyrous to know
what thyng it was that made that peteous¹⁴ complaynte, ²⁸
and sayde, 'Thou that so sore doste complayne,¹⁵ I con-
iure the in the name of our lorde Iesu chryste and by
all his powre, and by the gloryous¹⁶ vyrgyn saynt Mary

¹ fauour. ² euill. ³ false hope. ⁴ and.

⁵⁻⁵ the grace of god. ⁶ poore.

⁷ but alwaies to remaine in this torment and paine.

⁸⁻⁸ and whether. ⁹ torment and. ¹⁰ made.

¹¹ at all. ¹² Fol. lxxxviii. col. 1. ¹³ being. ¹⁴ pitifull.

¹⁵ and mourne. ¹⁶ blessed.

his mother / and by all the sayntes & holy aungelles
and arcangelles: that are in y^e realme of paradyse /
and by all that euer god ¹made¹ in heuen and in erthe /
4 that thou answeere and shewe me what man thou arte,
and who hathe put the here² / and wherfore thou art
here: and wether thou mayste come to vs or not: &
what is thy name: and why that this canwas is here
8 set / wherfore it seruethe: ³and yf euer it may be put
fro the.³ And also shew me yf euer thou shalte
departe⁴ hens or not.

¶ When this wyse had harde Huon coniure hym
12 in such wyse, it answered hym shortely and sayde:

‘O thou mortall man that haste coniured me so sore: The reply comes
that it is Judas
Iscariot who is
speaking.
and ⁵a⁵ desyryd⁶ to know my name, I shall shewe ⁷the;
know⁷ for sartayne that my name is Iudas, & ⁸am the ⁹

16 same man that solde¹⁰ Iesu Chryste to the Iues for
.xxx. pens than beyng corante¹¹ in the countree of
Iudee / & deliueryd into theyr handes my ryght dere
lorde and mayster, who so moche ¹²honoure had done to¹²

20 me, as to ¹³holde me *with* hym¹³ as one of his apostelles,
and by a false and faynte loun I kyssed hym on the
mouthe⁶ to shewe the Iues wiche he¹⁴ was. And after

I saw hym beten and yll intretyd as ye may here¹⁵ in
24 the holy scripatures & Ewangelystes: who ¹⁶of his
passyon hathe made mensyon¹⁶ / and when I sawe how

I had betrayed my mayster, I was sorowfull¹⁷ and sore
dyspleasyd¹⁸ but I neuer durst cry hym marcy / wh[e]rein

28 I dyd¹⁹ great foly / for he was so petuous²⁰ and full
of marcy,²¹ yf I had cryed hym marcy he wolde²² afor-
geven me / but the dewyll, whiche is ennemye to all

He recites how
he grieved to see
his Master injured
after he had
betrayed Him,

but dared not ask
Him for mercy.

¹⁻¹ hath made and created. ² in this miserie.

²⁻³ omitted. ⁴ from. ⁵⁻⁵ also hast. ⁶ for.

⁷⁻⁷ vnto the. ⁸ I. ⁹ selfe. ¹⁰ our lord. ¹¹ money.

¹²⁻¹² honoured. ¹³⁻¹³ account. ¹⁴ he be *in original*.

¹⁵ read. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ therein haue made mention of his passion.

¹⁷ at my hart. ¹⁸ Fol. lxxxviii. col. 2. ¹⁹ commit.

²⁰ pitifull. ²¹ that. ²² haue.

He strangled
himself upon a
tree,

and his soul was
set in this place
to remain there
for ever.

Tormented unto
death, Judas
cannot die.

The canvas, on
which he lies, was
given him by God
to save him from
the wind on the
right side,
because he once
gave away such a
canvas in charity
for the love of
God.

Huon advises
Judas to ask for
God's mercy even
yet.

vmayne creatures, wold not suffre me to do it. But I went
and strangelyd and hangyd my selfe on a tree.¹ when
I was dede my sowle was taken and set in the plase
where as ye see me now : and here I shall be² for euer **4**
in tourmente and ³in³ payne / for neuer shall I departe
from hens : for nowe it is to late to call for grace, for ⁴y^e
dome⁴ is geuen vpon me : wherfore I do and muste suffer
this tourmen & payne : ⁵for all the waters and ryuers of **8**
y^e world doth assemble together here, there⁶ as I am in
this Goulse / wher I am so⁷ beten and tourmented by
the great waues and course of the great ryuers. Thus
I am tourmented and can not⁸ dye, nor neuer come out **12**
of this tourmente nor payne / this Canwas that ye de-
maunde wherto it ⁹dothe serue,⁹ and whye¹⁰ it is here
set, know for¹¹ trouthe, that on a day I gaue it for the
loue of god / nor I neuer gaue after eny thyng for goddes **16**
sake, as longe as I leuyde / and therfore when I was
set here, our lorde god wolde *that* the good dede that I
had done in geuyng this canvas for his sake, shulde
not be vnrewardyd : therfor our lorde god wold that **20**
this Canwas shulde be set on my ryght syde, to the
entente¹² to saue me from the wynde, and from the
great waues of the see that¹³ cometh so boysteously a
gaynst me / as ye haue sene how they bete agaynste **24**
this Canwas / I had no grace to aske marcy of our
lorde god for my trespas, the deuyll was so great withe
me / wherfore let euery man take ensaple by me, and
aske marcy while he haue space.¹ ¹⁴Thus I haue **28**
shewed you all my dede.¹⁵ 'Iudas,' quod Huon, 'I
belyue yf that *thou* wilte yet crye to god for marcy he
wyll haue marcy and pety of¹⁶ the.' 'Nay, nay,' quod
Iudas, 'to praye can not awayle me, for I am dampned **32**

¹ and. ² remaine. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴⁻⁴ iudgement.
⁵ continually. ⁶ heere euen. ⁷ sore. ⁸ by no meanes.
⁹⁻⁹ serueth. ¹⁰ wherefore. ¹¹ a. ¹² for. ¹³ here
¹⁴ Fol. lxxxviii. back, col. 1. ¹⁵ state. ¹⁶ on.

- for euer / and yf ye wyll beleue me be ware,¹ tary not
 here to long, for yf ye do ye shall neuer departe hense
 for the Goulfe, ²the² whiche is nowe full and playne,
 4 it wyll not reste³ long but *that* y^e see wyll issue out, &
 all the ryuers with in it / ye were happy that ye came
 at the owre that ye dyd. For anone the waters wyll
 Issue out with suche a bowndaunce / that the waues
 8 that wyll ryse shall seme lyke hye mountaynes: it is
 more then two hondred yeres synne there passyn any
 shyppe this way / but that men, shyppe and all, were
 swalowed in to the Goulfe / wherfore, Huon, I counsaile
 12 the that incontynente thou departe hense / without
 thou wylte be lost for euer; it is tyme that thou depart
 hens whyles the Goulfe is full / it will not longe rest,
 but that the waters wyll Issue out with suche brute
 16 and noyse, that yf ye be .xv. leges of ye shall well here
 the tourmente that it wyll make. If ye had comen but
 halfe an owre soner then y^e dyd ye had neuer scaped
 the daunger therof.’
- 20 ¶ When Huon vnderstode Iudas, he hadde great
 maruayle / he¹ Ioyned his handys towarde the heuen:
 thankynge god of the grace that he had sente hym /
 Then Huon desyred y^e patron that they myght departe
 24 thense in hast. ‘Syr,’ quod he, ‘it shall be done.’ Then
 they drewe vp theyr sayles, and so departyd / they hade
 not sayled a leege but that they sawe a farre of great
 brondis of fyre brynnyng⁴ Issuyng out of y^e Goulfe so
 28 longe and so hye that they had nere hande come to
⁵theyr shyppe. And the waues that Issued out of y^e
 Goulfe were as hye as mountaynes, and they aproched
 so nere⁶ theyr shyppe that they ⁷were nye⁷ perysshyd for
 32 theyr shyppe was nere hand full of water, so that they
 had moche to do to lade out the water, and were fayne

Judas declares
 that he is for ever
 damned,

and urges Huon,
 as he loves life,
 to hasten away
 from the perilous
 gulf.

The pilot hurries
 the ship away,
 and sees behind
 him burning fires
 issuing from
 the gulf.

¹ and. ²⁻² omitted. ³ continue. ⁴ burning.

⁵ Fol. lxxxviii. back, col. 2. ⁶ vnto.

⁷⁻⁷ had like to haue.

At a great pace
they passed on,
for the water
drove them
onwards.

No land is in
sight for many
weeks.

At length a high
rock with a thick
wood,
and a white
house upon it, is
seen afar off.

They sail in that
direction,

to abate theyr sayle. For¹ the water that Issuyd out
of the Goulfe draue them so rudely² that a byrde coude
fleye no faster then they wente. In that case they
were a monethe, and durste neuer hoise vp sayle / 4
³Thus they draue a grete season without seyght⁴ of
any londe / then Huon called vpon god, and sayde /
'A, verey god, I hadde rather haue taryed styll in myne
own countre, and haue taken suche fortune as it shulde / 8
a⁵ pleased the to sende me: then here to be loste in
this straunge see. A, lady Esclaramond, I pray to⁶
god⁷ kepe you and Claryet, my doughter / ⁸I thynke I
shal neuer se you more.' Thus Huon complayned 12
saylyng in the see in fere of his lyfe.¹ Thus they were
in the daunger of this Goulfe .v. wekys, and neuer
coude se londe, wher of they were in great fere / often
times they prayed to our lorde to haue petye of them. 16
Then Huon desyred the patron to mounte vp to y^e
maste / to se yf he myght se any londe.¹ The patron,
who greatly desyryd so to do, anone he mounted vp
and regardyd on all partyes to se yf he myght spye any 20
londe. at last he sawe afarre of an hye rocke / and on
y^e heyght therof they sawe a thicke wode, and at the
enter of the wode he sawe a lytell howse / wherof he
thankyd god, and descendyd downe and shewyd Huon 24
what he had sene, and sayde / 'syr, yonder, a far of,
I haue sene a great rocke, & on y^e heyght therof a
great thycke wode, & therin I haue sene a lytel house,
or hermy⁹tage; the howse is whyght, I can not tel 28
what yt is³ / by the grace of god or¹⁰ yt be nyght we
shall take⁷ londe there and refresshe vs¹¹ / when Huon
hard that he was ryght ioyfull, and thankyd god. Then
they drewe to that parte, and had good wynde and a 32
fresshe / wenyng to haue come thether the same

¹ and. ² swiftly. ³ but. ⁴ seeing. ⁵ haue.
⁶ vnto. ⁷ to. ⁸ for. ⁹ Fol. lxxxix. col. 1.
¹⁰ ere. ¹¹ our selves.

- nyght, but they sayled .iiii. dayes and .iiii. nyghtes,
 and coude come no nerer to the woode then they were
 before, wherof they had marueyle / it semed to them
 4 euer that the wode and the howse rose vp hygher and
 hygher / ¹ then they could not tell whether they went /
 yf they had knowen they wold not haue gone thether
 for all the golde of ² the worlde / for yf god had not
 8 had petye of them they were all lykely to haue ben
 lost / for the plase that they sawe a farre of was a
 castell, and therin closyd the rock of the Adamant :
 the which castell was daungerous to aproche / for yf
 12 enye shyppe come nere it and haue any Iron nayles
 within it, and ³ a shyppe come within the syght therof,
 the Adamant wyll drawe the shyppe to ⁴ hym. And
 therefore in those partyes the shyppes that sayleth by
 16 that see ar made and pynned with wooden nayles, and
 without any maner of Iron, otherwyse they be loste
 and perysshyd. For the propertye of the Adamant is
 to drawe Iron to hym / thus Huon and his company
 20 were there the space of .vi. dayes, goynge and saylynge
 about the rocke of the castell of the Adamant. But
 yf they had had a good wynde the fyrst daye, they had
 aryued euen at the whyghte howse, that they sawe
 24 fyrste in the woode / the which was the fayrest and most
 rycheeste howse in y^e worlde, within the whiche was so
 much golde and rychesse that no man leuinge ⁵ coude
 esteme the value therof / for the pyllers within that
 28 howse were of Cassedony / and the walles and towres of
 whyghte Alablaster. There was neuer dyscryued
 in[s]crypture nor hystory the beauty of such a castell as
 this was, for whenne the sonne cast his rayes on it it
 32 semyd a far of to be of fyne christal, it was so clere
 shynynge. In this castell was nother man nor woman :
 but dede mennes bones lyenge at the gate of this

but it seems 'to
 recede before
 them.

They little knew
 that they were
 approaching the
 rock of the
 Adamant, which
 is very dangerous.

It draws towards
 it all ships with
 iron nails in it.

Therefore ships
 sailing in that sea
 should be made
 with wooden
 nails.

The white house
 or castle, how-
 ever, is full of
 fine gold,
 and very beauti-
 fully wrought.

But only dead
 men's bones lie
 within it.

¹ and.² in.³ that.⁴ vnto.⁵ Fol. lxxxix. col. 2.

castell / at the porte there lay many shyppes, so that
theyr mastes semyd a far of to be a great foreste.

¶ How Huon deuyسد withe his patron in
regardyng of the castell of the Adamant. 4

Ca. .C.ix.



The castle is
impregnable.

His castell was set on a rocke of the
Adamant stone: for¹ the eest to the
weest was not so stronge a castell / 8
for yf al the worlde had come before
it, and men *within* to defend it, coude
neuer be won by eny mortall men:

The thick wood
which the
mariners thought
they saw from
afar, was made of
the masts of ships
attracted by the
Adamant, and
wrecked.

the forest that² semyd to them a far of were y^e mastes 12
of ³the³ shyppes that had bene there aryued by con-
straynte of the Adamant / but for all y^e shyppes that
were there / there was no ⁴leuyng man / but⁴ there
lay ³the³ bones of them⁵ that had dyed by famyne 16
& rage / Huon and his company had great maruayle /
for when they aproched nere to y^e castell, they were
forsyd to stryke sayle / for the Adamant drewe the
shypp so sore *that*, yf they had not quickly stricken 20
theyr sayle, the⁶ shypp had broken all to peses, &
they all⁷ drowned in the see. The shypp wente
so faste that it was maruayle⁸ to consider it.⁹ Then
the patron of the shyp, who was wyse & sage,¹⁰ 24
knew anone how ¹¹they were nere to the castell of the
Adamant, because theyr shypp went so fast without
sayle thetherward / faster then yf they had had a full
wynd in all theyr sayles / nor⁹ they coude not tourne 28
theyr shypp no¹² way fro that part,¹³ they wold gladly
haue returned ³yf they had coude,³ but it wold not be

Huon's ship
strikes her sails,

but she
approaches the
rock at a swift
pace, and the
sailors cannot
turn her course
aside.

¹ from. ² so. ³ ³ omitted.

⁴⁻⁴ man lying therein. yet. ⁵ men. ⁶ their.

⁷ been. ⁸ maruailous. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ discreet.

¹¹ Fol. lxxxix. back, col. 1. ¹² any. ¹³ for.

bycause the Adamant drew ¹so sore the Iron¹ to hym
 by nature; when the patron sawe that clerely² they
 shold³ aryue there, he began peteously to wepe,⁴ and
 4 sayde to Huon / 'syr, our lorde god hathe created vs in
 this worlde to lyue and to dye / and there is none but
 5 that⁵ muste passe the passage of this, and bycause we
 knowe suerly that no creature can scape that / wher-
 8 fore⁶ we ought to be contente with that⁷ can be none
 otherwyse / syr I say this that ⁸dethe to abyde, we
 must be comforted, for here⁵ we muste all dye' / when
 Huon harde the patron, he had great maruayle, and
 12 sayde / 'patron, I praye you shewe me the cause why
 ye say thus? / in this castell that we se before vs, is⁸
 there⁹ Sarasyns within it, or spyrytes of hell that hathe
 sworne our dethe / suerly I dought them not, make good
 16 chere, be nothyng abashed, take ¹⁰corage in you,¹⁰
 for by the ayde of our lorde Iesu chryst, and by the
 forse of myne armes and good sword, if ther be eny
 man within the castell that wyll resyste agaynste vs, I
 20 assure you I shall sone delyuer¹¹ hym. Anone ye shall
 se what I can do / I neuer saw in all my lyfe so fayre
 a castell / I cannot tell yf¹² they within wyll defend vs
 the entre in to the porte¹³; yf they wyll haue any
 24 trybute of me, I shall gladly pay it, so they demaund
 no thyng elles / and yf I se¹⁴ they wyll demaunde eny
 thyng elles,¹⁵ I shall shewe them how my sword can
 cut¹⁶ / for I had ¹⁷rather¹⁸ dye then in any prynces
 28 courte it shulde be layde to my reproche¹⁹ that for eny
 man I shulde recule²⁰ backe one fote, for fere or dought
 of⁹ deth / for I wyll neuer be taken alyue, therby to
 dye in pryson' / 'syr,' quod the patron, 'your forse

The pilot warns
Huon that he
must now be
prepared to die.

The knight does
not understand
the sailor's words,

and longs to
attack the little
castle.

He promises to
fight with any
that hold it to the
death, if they bar
his entrance.

1-1 the yron so sore. 2 needes. 3 must. 4 lament.

5-5 omitted. 6 therefore. 7 which. 8 are.

9 any. 10-10 good courage and ioy. 11 you from.

12 whether. 13 or not. 14 that. 15 of mee.

16 answeare it. 17 Fol. lxxxix. back, col. 2. 18 to.

19 and shame. 20 retire.

The pilot replies
that human
prowess is of no
avail,

and tells him of
the fatal rock.

Huon is filled
with grief, and
weeps piteously.

He prays to God
to receive his soul
into paradise,

and to save his
wife and child.

His ship enters
the port about the
rocks,
and breaks many
rotten vessels
fixed to the
Adamant stone,
as she runs in
among them.

and great prowes can nothyng profyghte¹ you / for yf
ye² were as strong & as great as euer was Sampson / it
shuld no thyng awauntage you ; I shall shewe you the
cause wye / the castell that ye se yonder before you is ⁴
the most fayrest and stron[g]este castell of³ the worlde /
it is set and compassed⁴ a bought with a rocke of
Adamantis stones / the whiche naturally drawethe⁵ to⁶
it all maner of Iron / as ye maye well se by our shyppes ⁸
that gothe so faste with out any sayle : the Adamant
drawethe⁵ it bycause of the ancrs and nayles that be
in our shyppes / the woode that semethe to be a forest
ar the mastes of suche shyppes as hath there aryued,⁷ ¹²
drawne thether by the Adamant.⁷

¶ When Huon vnderstode the patron, he was⁸
sorowfull, and no maruayle / then peteously he com-
playned for his wyfe &⁹ his child / for he saw wel¹⁰ he ¹⁶
coud not scape the deth, nor neuer depart¹¹ thens. then
he wepte peteously, and sayd, ¹² 'a, very god,¹² who in
this worlde haste fourmyd me / I require thy grase /
that this¹³ pouer synner that I am, enclyned to all ²⁰
myssefortunes, that it maye please the to reseue my
sowle into paradyse ; as for my lyfe¹⁴ none accounte
therof. But I praye the, good lorde, to saue my wyfe
and chylde, whome I haue lefte in daunger of deth, or ²⁴
elles ¹⁵ wylayne pryson.' ¹⁵ And with thos wordes the
shypentered in to the porte with such a force & pusaunce
that it ran ¹⁶ In amonge the other shyppes, so that yf
the shype had not ben stronge, and y^e other shyppes ²⁸
rotten, Huons shype had bene broken all to peses / ⁹ it
ranne vnder the water .iii. or .iiii. of the other old
shippes / ¹⁷ when Huon sawe that hys shyppe was not

¹ auaille. ² we. ³ in all. ⁴ round.

⁵ doth draw. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ and are. ⁸ right. ⁹ for.

¹⁰ that. ¹¹ from. ¹²⁻¹² ah, good Lord. ¹³ thus.

¹⁴ I make. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ in shamefull imprisonment.

¹⁶ Fol. lxxxx. col. 1.

¹⁷ ¹⁷ and was not broken, thanked be almightie God.

broken he thanked god.¹⁷ Than he loked into the
 hauen, and sawe so many shyppes that he had¹ maruayle
 therof / and he was sore² abasshed in that he sawe
 4 nother man ³nor³ woman ⁴sterynge abrode. Also he
⁵regardyd⁵ the castell, the which was so fayre and riche
 that there was none suche in⁶ the worlde. Then he
 thought to sende thether one of his companye⁷ to knowe
 8 what people were with in the castell / he sawe well⁸
 there was no waye to enter / but by a strayte waye of
 C.C.C. and .lxxx. greses of heyght: y^e way was so
 strayte⁹ that no man but one at ones coude mounte vp
 12 the greses,¹⁰ he had great maruayle¹¹ when he sawe no
 man comynge fro the castel. Then he called one of his
 knyghtes, and sayde, 'Syr Arnolde, I wyll¹² that ye go
 vp to this castell to see what people be within,¹³ other¹⁴
 16 sarasyns or paynymes; knowe who is lorde there,¹⁵ and
 saye howe⁸ I greatly desyre to be aqueynted withe
 hym; yf ye can do so moch that I myght¹⁶ be aqueynted
 withe hym: then I & my men wyll mount vp to gether
 20 tyll¹⁷ some good aduenture fall: for I haue hope in
¹⁸god yet¹⁸ we shall skape this daunger.' 'Syr,' quod
 Arnolde, 'I shall do¹⁹ your pleasure'¹⁹ / then he departed,
 and went fro one shyppes to another tyll¹⁷ he came to the
 24 londe / ²⁰then he went to the rocke and founde the greses²¹
 and mounted vp. But or²² he came to the castell gate
 he rested hymselfe .iii. tymes,²⁰ when he came to the
 gate he rested hym he was so very: and beheld the
 28 gate, the ²³whiche semyd to²⁴ hym meruelusly fayre;²⁵
 then he began to crye and calle to the entent that some
 man shuld come²⁰ to speke with hym; ²⁰when he saw

No man or
 woman is visible.

The approach to
 the castle is by
 three hundred
 and eighty steep
 narrow steps.

Huon bids Sir
 Arnold, a knight,
 climb up to the
 castle and bring
 word what
 people live there.

Sir Arnold
 departs,
 and mounts up
 the steps.

The gate of the
 castle is
 marvellously fair.

He calls out for a
 man to speak
 with,

¹ great. ² dismayed and. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ nor Child.

⁵⁻⁵ looked about him and beheld. ⁶ throughout all.

⁷ for. ⁸ that. ⁹ and narrow. ¹⁰ degrees.

¹¹ & was sore troubled in mind. ¹² and command.

¹³ it. ¹⁴ either. ¹⁵ of. ¹⁶ maye. ¹⁷ vntill

¹⁸⁻¹⁸ our lord that. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ as you haue commaunded me.

²⁰ and. ²¹ degrees. ²² before. ²³ Fol. lxxxx. col. 2.

²⁴ vnto. ²⁵ and rich.

but no one replies *that* none dyd speke, he stode & harkened yf any parson were comynge to open the gate; but none apered / ¹then he knockyd and called a gayn, & sayd, 'porter *that* art within, com and open the gate, *that* ² 4 cursed be thou of god.' this Arnolde had a good occupacion to crye ³ and call, for within was nother man nor ⁴ woman ⁵ that wold open the gate / when he saw that he was nye ⁶graged for ⁶ dyspleasure / & loked ⁸ downe vnder the gate to knowe yf he myght se ⁷ other man or woman to speke to ⁸ / then he ⁹loked on the ryght hand of the hal dore, ⁹ and there he saw an orryble serpent / the whiche kept the castell and ¹² palays / it was a marueylous great serpent / heyer then any hors, his eyen lyke .ii. torches brynnyng ¹⁰ / when Arnolde saw hym he was ¹¹ sorowful and sore dyspleasyde, and when the serpent harde y^e knockyng ¹⁶ and ¹² noyse at the gate, brayenge & cryenge, he came ¹³ to the gate warde ¹³ / ¹when Arnold saw the serpent ¹⁴ aprochyng to the gate, he fled a way in so great hast *that* he had ⁴ nere hand ¹⁵ fallen ¹⁵ downe the steyres: ²⁰ he rested not tyl ¹⁶ he come to y^e shyp wher ¹⁷ Huon was, & sayde, 'syr, I haue bene aboue at the gate of the castell, and cried and knocked therat more then the space of an owre: but there was nother man nor ⁴ 24 woman ⁵ *that* dyd apere, & when I saw *that* I leyde me downe to loke vnder the gate, to know yf I myght se other man or woman to speke vnto / but I coud neuer se eny creature / but a great and a orryble serpent, ²⁸ hygher then a great hors, with eyen redder then fyer, with maruelous great talons and tayle / there was neuer man saw a fowler fygure of a best.' ¹⁸ 'alas,' quod

for neither man
nor woman is
within.

On the right of
the hall door he
sees a serpent
higher than a
horse, with eyes
gleaming like
torches.

The noise of Sir
Arnold's shouting
rouses the
serpent;
it approaches the
gate.
The knight is
filled with alarm,
and hurries back
to the ship.

He tells Huon of
the horrible
serpent.

¹ and. ² or elles. ³ knocke. ⁴ omitted.
⁵ nor Child. ⁶⁻⁶ angry with. ⁷ espie. ⁸ vnto.
⁹⁻⁹ turned him round about. ¹⁰ burning. ¹¹ right.
¹² great. ¹³⁻¹³ towarde the gate. ¹⁴ with great furie.
¹⁵⁻¹⁵ (with verie feare) fell. ¹⁶ vntill. ¹⁷ whereas.
¹⁸ Fol. lxxx. back, col. 1.

Huon, 'nowe I see well¹ we be all but dede / for we
 haue no thyng to ete nor drynke, wherfore we shal
 dye for famyne and rage. But yf I maye enter in to
 4 the castell, I shall gyue that sarpent suche a stroke that
 he shall neuer more hurte enye man leuyng. Alas,
 what haue I sayde, my hardynesse nor² prowes¹ nor a
 wauntyng¹ can not helpe me / for I se well that I and
 8 all you muste dye, for it is impossible for vs to departe³
 hencs.' Than the patron sayd to Huon, sore wepyng,
 'syr, it behoueth vs to depart⁴ our wytayle: yf ye
 wyll sustayne the ryght & customes of the see / when
 12 men comethe to suche a case that there is no remedye
 to gette any fresshe vytayle / then it is a reason that
 the lorde and capetayne⁵ haue the one halfe to his parte
 and the other parte egally to be delyuered⁶ amonge his
 16 men.' 'Mayster,' quod Huon, 'ye maye do your
 pleasure, do as ye shall thinke best.' Then the patron
 caused al theyr vytayles to be brought forth, and then
 it was deuyded / the patron was a wyse man / when
 20 Huon saw that, he began to wepe, he dyd eate but lytell
 at euery meale by cause his vytayle sholde endure the
 lenger / howbeit all that but lytell awayled, for or⁷ .xv.
 dayes were passyd / all theyr vytayles were expyred⁸
 24 excepte Huons parte of the whiche he gaue euery man
 parte, & kepte for hym selfe no more then other men
 had. And as they were in this daunger they saw a
 galyot⁹ wherin were .xxx. men, sarasyns, ¹and¹ theues
 28 and pyraottes of the see / they came and aryuede nere
 to the shyppe where as Huon was in / not knowynge
 what plase they were in / when they aryued it was in a
 darke nyght / they hadde¹⁰ meruayle of Huons shyppe
 32 wherein they sawe great lyght / ¹¹ ¹²then they sayd one
 to another / 'it is happye for vs that we haue founde

Huon complains
 that his men have
 nought to eat or
 drink.

He longs to fight
 with the serpent.

The pilot advises
 the men to divide
 such food as is
 still left them.

One half should
 be given to their
 lord and captain,
 and the rest
 equally divided
 among them-
 selves.

Huon bids him do
 as he thinks fit.

After fifteen days
 the men's food is
 all consumed,

and Huon divides
 with them his
 own portion.

A pirate ship
 comes alongside
 of Huon's vessel,
 and threatens it.

¹ omitted. ² my. ³ from. ⁴ part. ⁵ to,

⁶ deided. ⁷ before. ⁸ spent. ⁹ galley.

¹⁰ great. ¹¹ and. ¹² Fol. lxxxx. back, col. 2.

here this fayre shyppe / it can not be but it is rych
and full of goodes: they shall not scape vs: but it
shalbe owrs, for therin ar but fewe men to defende the
shyppe.'

4

¶ Howe a galey withe sarasyns came and
assayled Huon, who were all slayne, and
also all Huons men; and how Huon went
to the castel of the Adamant & slewe the 8
great serpent, and of the merueilles that he
founde there.

Ca. .cx.



Hen Huon sawe the galey aryue, and
goynge to his shyppe he had great 12
maruayle what men they were / then
he alyghtyd a torche & toke it in his
hande, and came a borde on the shyppe,

Huon joyfully
welcomes the
men in the
galley,

and sayd / 'syrs of this galy, ye ar wel aryued here; 16
¹ye be welcome; ¹we haue great ioy of your companye' /
when the sarasyns hard Huon, they ¹well¹ perseyuyd by
his language that he and his company were chrysten
men / then eche of them behelde other smyllynge for 20
ioye / one of them turned his speche and spake good
spanysshe, and sayde to Huon / 'felowe, it is no nede
for vs to hyde what we be: al we that thou seest here
be sarasyns, and ye be chrystened / wherfore we wyl 24
haue all the rychesse that is yn your shyppe / and
besyde that, all your hedes shall be streken of and your
bodys cast into the see.' 'Paynym,' quod Huon, 'or²
thou haste our shyp at thy commaundement, fyrste 28
thou shalte bye it derely.' Then Huon cryyd to his
men that they sholde arme themselfe to defend them
fro the paynymes / ³the which they dyd dylygently.
And Huon, who was redy armed, and by that tyme the 32

but they, speak-
ing in Spanish,
declare them-
selves Saracens,

and threaten
Huon and his
company with
death.

Huon bids his
companions arm
themselves,

¹ ¹ omitted.

² ere.

³ Fol. lxxxxi. col. 1.

Sarasyns were enteryd into the shyp. Huon was redy
 before them with his sworde in his handes, wherwith
 he stroke the fyrst that he met withall in such wyse
 4 that his hede flew fro his shulders. Then he strake
 another and claue hym to the throte / and so the
 thyrde and the fourthe were shortely slayne / he layd
 on so rounde a boughthe hym that his enemyes were
 8 afrayed to beholde hym. Then the chefe mayster of y^e
 theues came and rebuked his men bycause they had
 sufferyd Huon to do them so moche hurte and damage /
 he approchid to Huon to haue stryken hym / but Huon,
 12 who was lyght and expert in dedes of armes, awoydyd
 his stroke, and strake the Sarasyn with a reuerse that his
 hede flewe fro the body a great waye of. Then Huon
 cryed 'Burdeaux' / to reioyse his men and to geue them
 16 corage. Also Arnolde, who had sene the serpente in
 the castell, dyd marueylles, & bet downe his enemyes,
 wherof Huon ¹toke great pleasure.¹ And there was a
 great myghty Sarasyn / who cam behi[n]d this knyght
 20 Arnold as he fought with a nother Sarasyn, and he
 gaue Arnolde with an axe such a great stroke *that* he
 claue his hede to the tethe / whereof Huon was ryght
 sorowfull, and sayd he had rather dye then the deth of
 24 Arnolde shulde not be reuenged. Then he aprochyd²
 to the same paynyme and lyfte³ vp is sword with
 bothe his handes, ⁴and⁴ he stroke the sarasyn on the
 shulder that y^e sworde entered in to the breste. And
 28 the patron of Huons shyppe vnarmyd came to⁵ the
 batayle with a great staffe in his handes, wherwith he
 layd on y^e sarasyns in suche wyse that suche as he
 stroke ⁶ne ⁷dyd⁶ after no sorgyon. Then a Sarasyn
 32 aduised hym, and came and gaue the patron suche
 a stroke with a sword on the hede *that* his hede

and fights
 himself with
 his wonted
 boldness.

He slays the
 captain of the
 ship;

and cheers on his
 men.

But Arnold, the
 knight who had
 seen the serpent
 in the castle, is
 killed,
 and Huon swears
 vengeance upon
 his murderer.

The captain of
 Huon's ship is
 likewise slain.

1-1 had great ioy. 2 neere vnto. 3 lifting.

4-4 omitted. 5 into. 6-6 needed.

7 Fol. lxxxix. col. 2.

At length Huon
has only four
men left alive
with him, while
seven Saracens
are still unin-
jured.

Nevertheless, all
the Saracens are
at length slain,

and Huon's
knights seize the
victuals in their
ship.

For seven months
they live upon
them,
and then food
fails them.

Huon tells his
companions that
death alone lies
before them all.

was clouen to the brayne, wherwith Huon was ryghte sorowfull.¹ But it was not long or² he reuengyd his dethe / for he strake the sarasyn suche a stroke *that* he claue hym to the brest / ³ when the patrons seruauentes ⁴ sawe⁴ theyr mayster⁵ slayne, they⁶ made great sorowe / and disarmyd as they were, they came⁷ to the batayle with great staues in theyr handys / and fought with them fersly. But y^e sarasyns who were⁶ armyd had ⁸ anone slayne them all, wherof Huon was sory,⁸ for he had then with hym lefte a lyue no mo but .iiii. men of defence. And the Sarasyns, who in y^e begynnynge were .xxx., were all slayne excepte .vii. parsones / they⁹ ¹² feryd Huon / for they saw wel none coude endure agaynste his strokys / then they fled out of Huons shyp and enteryd in to theyr owne galey. But Huon and his .iii. knyghtes that were with hym folowed them ¹⁶ and ¹⁰ slew them all, and caste them into the see. Then Huon and the .iii. knyghtes that were with hym toke all y^e flesshe / bread / and wyne that was in the galey and bare it into theyr shyp, wherby they leuyd more ²⁰ then .vii. monethes. And then when theyr vytales began to fayle them¹¹ they were¹² sorowful / they had no vitayle to leue by longe, and yet they dyd ete but lytell; so they became¹³ pale & lene for¹⁴ famyne / ²⁴ peteously Huon complayned and sayd / 'O ye, my ¹⁵ryghte¹⁵ dere and trewe frendis, who for my loue haue left your londes, your wyues, and chyl dren. Now I perseyue ye must nedys dey for the rage of famyne: ²⁸ alas,¹⁶ catyue that I am, I shal not long lyue after you: ' great petye it was to here the complayntes *that* ¹⁷ Huon made, who sawe ¹⁵ his men dye before his face / and also

¹ and sore displeased. ² before. ³ and. ⁴ that.

⁵ was. ⁶ all. ⁷ and entred into.

⁸ right sorrowfull and angry. ⁹ greatly.

¹⁰ so fast that they. ¹¹ then. ¹² right. ¹³ beganne to be.

¹⁴ through. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ omitted. ¹⁶ poor.

¹⁷ Fol. lxxxxi. back, col. 1.

he saw¹⁵ that he must folowe the same daunce. Then
 he sayde, 'a, lady Escaramonde, I shall neuer see you
 more; I praye our lord god that he wyll comferte you
 4 in all your affayres / as for me,¹ it is impossyble to lyue
 .iiii. dayes lenger.' After that he hade made this
 petyous² complaynte he behelde his³ .iii. knyghtes, who
 renderyd vp theyr sowles and dyed for⁴ hunger. The
 8 petefull complayntes then that⁵ he made was petye to
 here / he hade no hope to be aydyd by any man
 mortall,⁶ wherfore he knewe suerly⁷ he coude not lyue
⁸past .iiii.⁸ dayes lenger. Then all wepyng he wente fro
 12 his knyghtes that lay⁹ dede and wente to the bourd of
 his shyp and lokyd in to y^e see yf he coude¹⁰ spye any
 maner of shyp comynge thether. For he thoughte that
 yf any shyp came thether of the sarasins, he wolde
 16 haue some vytales or elles to dye in the quarel / thus
 Huon was there ¹¹all¹¹ alone without¹² companye.¹³

¶ When Huon saw *that* no maner of shyp was
 comynge thether, he was¹⁴ sorowfull. Then he turned
 20 hym and regardyd the castell, the which semyd to¹⁵
 hym maruaylously fayre and great, and sayd / 'a, good
 lorde, how cane it be that this fayre and rych castell
 shuld be voyde without man or woman; I haue great
 24 maruayle of *that* syr Arnolde shewyd me / for he
 shewyde me *that* within the castell was nother man nor
 woman, and howe that there shulde be a great serpente.
 I cannot tell yf¹⁶ it be trewe or not, and¹⁷ whether he
 28 spake it for fere / but by the grace of god, thoughe I
 shulde¹⁸ dye in the quarell, I wyll knowe the trouth /
 for I were as good to dye by the¹⁹ serpent as to dye for
 hunger' / then he ²⁰toke his sworde and dyd²¹ on his

He prays to God
to protect his
wife.

The four knights
die of hunger.

Huon looks out in
vain for a passing
vessel.

He surveys the
castle on the rock
again,

and resolves to
visit it,
although he may
die in the
endeavour.

1 poore soule. 2 pitifull. 3 the. 4 through.

5 that then. 6 mortall man. 7 that. 8-9 aboute twoo.

9 there. 10 might. 11-11 omitted. 12 any.

13 sore weeping and almost dead through famine. 14 right.

15 vnto. 16 whether. 17 or. 18 shall.

19 horrible. 20 Fol. lxxxix. back, col. 2. 21 put.

He mounts the steps, and reaches the fair castle.

He admires the alabaster and the fine gold of which it is built.

But on examining the curiously-wrought gate, he sees an inscription saying that the castle is only to be entered by the worthiest of all knights,

for the serpent can overthrow all of small prowess :

but on the right side of the gate hangs a purse with a key within it.

Huon trusts in God to aid him.

helme, & toke his shelde, and dyd so moche withe goynge fro shyp to shyp tyll¹ he came to the² loude. And then with moche payne he mounted vp the degrees / and so came to ³y^e gate of ³y^e castell / ⁴then he sate downe 4 and rested hym / & beheld the fayre castel ; he thought he neuer saw no⁵ suche before, for the walles and toures were of fyne alabaster clere shynnyng, and the towres rychely coueryd with fyne golde of Arabe ; 8 when the sun cast his rayes⁶ ther on⁷ it caste so great⁸ lyght *that* it gaue lyght⁸ far of / ⁴when he had longe behelde it⁹ he saw the gate, the whiche was fayre and rych, that great beaute it was to behold it : for the .ii. 12 leuys of the gate were coueryd *with* fyne gold intermedelyd with other rych oueragis. And on his ryght syde he saw by the gate a wyndowe, and ouer the same there was wryten in letters of golde, saynge : Let any 16 man be ware how he entereth in to this castel, without he be the worthiest knyght of all other, or elles it were foly to assaye it. For he shall fynde there such aduenture / ¹⁰yf his body were harder than a stethy of 20 stele yet he shuld be but dede and loste without he be of *that* pusaunce to resyste agaynste the great serpente, & vanquesshe hym / many men haue assayed that neuer coude spede / & he that wyll enter in to the 24 castell beholde a lytell purse *that* hangeth on the ryght hand of the gate, where he shall fynde y^e keye for to open the gate / *when* Huon had red the writynge, he began sore to muse in hym selfe, and said, ¹¹'very god,¹¹ 28 syn thou haste sauyd me from so many parelles in tyme paste, I humbly requyre the at this tyme to ayde¹² me ; and to geue me y^e grace that I maye vanquesshe this orryble serpent & brynge hym to the deth / ¹³for I had 32

¹ vntill. ² gate of the. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ and.

⁵ none. ⁶ and speares. ⁷ thereuppon.


⁸ a. ⁹ at his pleasure. ¹⁰ as. ¹¹⁻¹¹ good Lord.

¹² and succour. ¹³ Fol. lxxxii. col. 1.

rather dye in fyghtyng lyke a valyaunte knyght /
 then to dye for famyne.' Then Huon rose vp and went
 to the purse, & toke out the keye and opened the gate
 4 and enteryd, and closyd the gate agayne after hym.

He finds the key,
 and passes
 through the gate.

¶ How Huon of Burdeux fought with the
 orryble serpent, and slew hym, within the
 castell of the Adamant. Ca. .cxi.

- 8  Hen Huon was enterid into the castell,
 he sawe before the hall dore the
 orrible serpent, who was resyn vp:
 his skyn was of dyuers colours, and it
 12 was so barde that no Iron nor steele
 coude enter in to it / when Huon saw the best so great
 he doughtyd hymselfe, and callyd vpon Iesu Chryst
 requirynge hym to haue petye vpon hym & to geue hym
 16 that¹ grace to sle that dredefull best / when the beest
 sawe Huon, he had great marucyle / for he had bene
 there a longe space that neuer man came there /
 he strechyd² out his clawes and cast his tayle round
 20 about hym, and came hastely agaynst Huon / who,
 when he sawe the beest aproche nere to hym, he made
 the sygne of y^e crosse on³ his forhede, recommaundyng
 hymselfe to god; with his sworde in his hande and his
 24 sheld before hym and he fersly marchyd towards the
 serpent / he was so hydeous and ferfull to behold *that*
 the beest semyd rather an enemye of hel then any other
 beest / his body was marueylous great, with an vglye
 28 hede *with* .ii. eyen bygger then .ii. basyns ful of
 brynnyng⁴ fyre / when he cam nere to⁵ Huon he lyfte
 vp one of his pawes thynkyng to haue drawen downe
 Huon to the erth / he strake on³ Huons shyld by⁶
 32 such force that he pullyd it fro his sholder / lether nor

The horrible
 serpent is before
 the door of the
 hall.

Huon doubts
 his power to
 resist it.

The serpent
 advances towards
 him,

and Huon
 prepares to meet
 him.

The beest pulls
 his shield from
 his shoulder,

¹ the. ² Fol. lxxxii. col. 2. ³ vpon. ⁴ burning.

⁵ vnto. ⁶ with.

and his sword
cannot hurt it.

buckyll coude not resyst it / & then with his teth &
nayles he tare the shyld all to peses / Huon, who was
lyger and light, lept by the syde of the serpent and
gaue hym a great stroke with hys sworde on¹ the ere, 4
that he thought to haue clouen asonder his hede. But
he coude do it no more hurte then yf he had streken
on¹ a stethy / so *that* his sword reboundyd agayne /
wherof Huon was² sorowfull, and sayd / 'a, good lord, 8
now I se well that my dayes ar at an end: A,³ lady
Esclaramonde, I praye our lord god to saue you & my
doughter Claryet / for this daye ye shall lese me.'
Then he auaisyd hym to the serpent, and gaue hym a 12
great stroke on¹ the haunche be hynde / & yf he dyd
but lytell with his fyrst stroke he dyd lesse hurt with
that stroke / for he coude in no wyse cut through y^e
serpentis skyn: wherfore he was in great fere; and 16
4the serpent, when he felte hymselfe stryken, cast his
tayle rounde about Huon by⁵ suche forse that Huon⁶
ouerthrew⁷ to y^e erthe and⁸ quykely releuyd agayne.

Huon sees a spear
by the gate with a
broad head,
and seizes it with
both hands.

Then he saw by the gate a great square spere with 20
a sharpe, brode hede / 9then he put vp his sworde
and toke the spere in bothe his handys, and came¹⁰
agaynste y^e serpent, who came and encounteryd hym
withe open mouthe to haue swallowed Huon / but Huon, 24
who was stronge and lyght, toke the spere and layde it
on his arme, & saw the serpent with his mouth open /
he strake the spere into the mouth of the serpent
so depe that with the hede of y^e spere he cut his hart 28
a sonder / when the serpente felte hymselfe hurte to the
dethe, he caste out a terryble crye, so that all the
palays¹¹ sowned,⁹ so that the noyse myght be harde a
leage of. Thus the orryble serpente was slayne / when 32
Huon sawe that he was dede, he knelyd downe & lyfte

The serpent
opens his mouth
to attack Huon,
but the knight
thrusts the spear
down its throat,
and reaches its
heart.

¹ vpon. ² right. ³ faire. ⁴ Fol. lxxxiii. back, col. 1.
⁵ with. ⁶ he. ⁷ Huon. ⁸ hee. ⁹ and.
¹⁰ with all his force and strength. ¹¹ place.

- vp his handys to the heuen, thankyng our lorde god
 of¹ his grace. Then he rose and wente to the serpent,
 and regardyd² hym, for he was hedyous and ferfull to
 4 beholde / he was .xviii. fote longe; when Huon had
 well regardyd² hym he went and sate downe to rest
 hym³ by the hall dore³ / for he was so wery and faynt
 with the blud that he had lost, and with swete, that he
 8 had moche payne to draw his breth / the whiche was
 no maruayle, for he had nother eten nor dronken of all
 that daye / when he had well restyd hym then he rose
 vp desyryng⁴ to know whether any man or woman
 12 were within y^e castell or not, to speke vnto them / he
 enteryd into the hall, the whiche he marueylously
 regardyd: it was so fayre and ryche to beholde that
 there is no clarke in the worlde can dyscryue the beaute
 16 &⁵ rychesse therof; the ryche chambers that were on
 the syde of the hall were al composyd and made
 of whyght marbyll polysshed / the postes were coueryd
 with fyne golde / at the ende of the hall there was a
 20 chameney, wherof the two pillers that susteynyd the
 mantell tree were of fyne Iaspar / and the mantell was
 of a ryche Calsedony / and the Lyntell was made of
 fyne Emeradis traylyd with a wyng of fyne golde / and
 24 the Grapys of fine Saphers. This chemeny was so ryche
 that none such coude be founde. And all the pyllers
 in the hall were of⁶ a⁶ red Calsedony / ⁷the pament⁸
 was of fyne Ambre.
 28 ¶ when Huon had well aduysyd² this hall, he
 lokyd towardys the chaumbers, and ouer the dorys of
 euery chaumber was written in letters of gold, the
 which shewyd where the keyes were of euery chambre.
 32 Huon, who coude well rede the letters / and vnderstonde
 it / he founde a purse wherin were the keyes of euery

When the serpent
was slain, Huon
kneels down and
thanks God for
His grace.

Huon is faint
with hunger,

and goes through
the castle in
search of man or
woman.

The hall is
constructed of
precious metal
and rich stones.

Inscriptions
over the doors of
the chambers
leading from the
hall tell Huon
where the keys of
each may be
found.

¹ for.

² behelde.

³⁻³ before to rest him.

⁴ as desirous.

⁵ Fol. lxxxxii. back. col. 2.

⁶⁻⁶ omitte*d*.

⁷ and.

⁸ pavement.

He enters one of
them,
and wonders at
its rich furniture.

He opens the
door of another
chamber,

and finds great
quantity of
jewels and gold.

A third chamber
is still more
richly equipped,

and in it are
presses filled with
gowns of fine
gold and rich
mantles of sable.

chambre, all of fyne gold; he toke one of the keyes
and opened one of the chambres¹ / and enteryd into
²it.² Then he lokyd all aboughte the chambre / and
sawe it garnysshed and hangyd with the moste ryche³ste 4
clothes that euer were sene / the benches & bedstedes
were all of whyght Iuory, so ryche³ly entraylyd &
wrought and garnysshed with presyous stonys / that no
mannes tonge coude dyscryue the beaute and rychesse 8
therof / all was made by enchaument. This palays
was³ great and large, and well garnysshyd with
chambres. ¶ When Huon had well regardyd⁴ this
chambre he was⁵ abasshed that he coude nother se man 12
nor woman. Then he lokid ouer ⁶the dore of another
chambre,⁶ where there was also ⁷wryten in letters of
golde⁸ as there⁹ was¹⁰ ouer the fyrst dore. Then Huon
toke the key and openyd the¹¹ dore, and enteryd in to 16
that chambre¹² / and there he founde great quantyte of
gold & rychesse and¹³ iouelles, with¹⁴ precyous stones,
that great beaute it was¹⁵ to beholde / 'a, good lord,' quod
Huon, 'I wolde¹⁶ haue byleuyd that in all the world 20
there had ¹⁷not¹⁷ bene so moch ryches as I se here' ¹⁸ /
then anone he sawe a nother chambre, and toke the
key & enteryd,¹⁹ & for all the ryches that he ²⁰had sene²⁰
before, there he found moch more / there were presses 24
made of fyne Iuory²¹ ryche³ly wrought & entayled, so
that there was no beast nor byrd but there it was²²
wrought; in the whiche presses were gownes and robes
of ²³fyne golde, and ²³ryche mantelles furred with 28
sabyls, and all other thynges²⁴ apartaynyng to the aparel
of mankynde / and the beddys so rychly coueryd *that*

¹ doores. ²⁻² the chamber. ³ exceeding.

⁴ beheld. ⁵ greatly. ⁶⁻⁶ another chamber doore.

⁷ Fol. lxxxiii. col. l. ⁸ according. ⁹ it. ¹⁰ written.

¹¹ another. ¹² also. ¹³ rich. ¹⁴ other most.

¹⁵ for. ¹⁶ neuer. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ omitted.

¹⁸ present before me. ¹⁹ therin. ²⁰⁻²⁰ sawe. ²¹ very.

²² most cunningly. ²³ most. ²⁴ the which were.

- it ¹coude not¹ be dyscryuyd² / thys chambre was so
 fayre and rych that Huon coude not³ be satysfyed
 with regardyng⁴ therof / ther were wyndows⁵ rychely
 4 glasyd openynge vpon a gardeyne side, the whiche⁶
 was so fayre and so well garnysshyd with flowres⁷
 swete smellynge, and⁸ al maner of trees chargyd with
 frewtis so good & so delysious to ete / ⁹so⁹ that the
 8 smelle of them wold haue satysfyed a mannes apetyte.
 Huon, who sawe this fayre gardyn, desyred greatly to
 enter into it to gather some of the¹⁰ frute / he lokyd
 ouer the dore and founde the ¹¹key, and went to the
 12 purse and toke the key, and¹¹ openyd the dore, and
 enteryd¹² into y^e gardeyne and gatheryd of the frute at
 his pleasure, & dyd ete therof, for he had¹³ great
 apetyte¹⁴ to ete / he thought the frute maruaylous
 16 good. yf I wolde shew or dyscryue the beaute of this
 gardayn, ¹⁵it shuld¹⁶ be ouer long to resyte, there wer so
 many sondry frutys so fayre and so swete of smellyng,
 that a syke man of any infyrmyte shuld¹⁶ sone
 20 ¹⁷reouer¹⁷ helth. Also there were herbys and flowres so
 swete¹⁸ that all the gardayne semyd¹⁹ full of balme /
 when Huon had bene there a good space and had well
 eten of the frute at his pleasure / he returnyd in to the
 24 chambre that he came fro, and then²⁰ vnarmyd hym
 and dyd²¹ of all his clothes, & toke out of y^e presse
 a fyne shyrt and dobelet / hosyd and shone / gowne /
 cote and cappe / such as he wold chose / for there was
 28 no man to saye hym naye / when he was thus newly
 areyed,²² there coude not be founde a more goodlyer
 man / acordynge as the cronycle saythe / I byleue he

Glass windows
from it open upon
a garden filled
with fair flowers,

and trees,
and fruits.

Huon enters the
garden, and eats
the fruit.

The beauty of the
spot cannot be
described.

Huon returns to
the chamber,

and takes from
the presses some
rich clothes.

¹ ¹ was impossible to. ² by anie mortall man.

³ neuer. ⁴ beholding and viewing. ⁵ very. ⁶ garden.

⁷ most precious. ⁸ of. ⁹⁻⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ that.

¹¹⁻¹¹ purse with the key therin, and then he. ¹² went.

¹³ a. ¹⁴ desire. ¹⁵ Fol. lxxxxiii. col. 2. ¹⁶ would.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ haue recouered his. ¹⁸ and delightfvl. ¹⁹ to be.

²⁰ he. ²¹ putte. ²² arriued.

But he seeks in
vain for any
human being.

Eight days he
farries in the
castle, eating of
the fruits alone,
and he grows
feeble and faint.

He prays to God
to have mercy on
his wife and
child.

was borne by the fayrey / as then there coude not be
founde so goodly a man leuyng / when he was thus
apareylyd he went fro chambre to chambre / alwayes
harkenenge yf¹ he myght² here the voyse other of man ⁴
or woman / but as long as he was³ there he coud here
no thyng, wherof he was ⁴sory⁴; there he was⁵ viii.
dayes without etyng of any thyng sauyn of y^e frutis
of the gardayne / wherby he waxed febyll and faynt, ⁸
the which was no meruayle, for he had bene there .viii.
dayes without etyng other brede or flesshe / he was so
febyll *that* he thought he coude not longe endure there
without dethe. Then he prayed⁶ our lorde god to ¹²
comforte⁷ hym out of that daunger; ⁸petyously he
complaynyd for his wyfe and chylde, saynge: 'A, my
dere wyfe, god⁹ socoure you in all your affayres / for ye
shall neuer haue¹⁰ socoure¹¹ of me¹² / for I tary but for ¹⁶
the oure of ¹³ dethe, the whyche is¹⁴ nere¹⁵ aprochyng
to me / for I am so sore¹⁶ beten with famyne *that*
I haue moche¹⁷ payne to sustayne myselfe.' Thus Huon
was .viii. dayes in the castell of the Adamant / euery ²⁰
day etyng of the frutys of the gardayne / and at
nyght he lay euer in the best bed in the chambre.
Nowe let vs leue spekyng of hym, and let vs retourne¹⁸
to the duchesse Esclaramonde, who was besegyed within ²⁴
y^e citey of Burdeaux, where as she was in great
dyspleasure, and not without a cause / for she sufferyd
moche payne and trobyll.

¹ whether. ² coud. ³ continued.

⁴⁻⁴ right sorrowfull. ⁵ continued. ⁶ vnto.

⁷ and strengthen. ⁸ most. ⁹ ayde and. ¹⁰ any.

¹¹ and ayde. ¹² more. ¹³ my. ¹⁴ nowe.

¹⁵ at hand. ¹⁶ and grievously.

¹⁷ Fol. lxxxxiii. back, col. 1. ¹⁸ turne.

¶ How after that Huon was departyd fro
 Burdeaux the Emperour made dyuers
 assaultys to the cety / but he coude not
 4 wyn yt for the defence of the good cheualry
 that was in¹ yt / and of the busschement²
 that was layd by the counsell of duke
 Sauary, wherby the citye was taken &
 8 wonne. Ca. .cxii.



12 e haue harde before howe duke Huon
 departyd from his citye of Burdeux,
 where as he lefte the duches his wyfe /
 who was in great displeasure when she
 sawe the departyng of her husbond.

Esclaramonde
 was sorely
 grieved by her
 husband's
 departure.

She greatly complaynid and sayd : 'a, my ryght dere
 lord, your departyng ought greatly to greue me. I
 16 fere ye shall not come in tyme to socour and to bryng
 me out of³ daunger that I am in / for it is impossible
 for vs long to endure agaynst this emperour. Alas ! I
 haue more sorowe for my doughter then for my selfe :
 20 and I am sorowful for my lordis and knyghtis who for
 the loue of you and me are in parell of theyr lyues. It
 had bene better for vs to haue taryed⁴ styll in Babylon
 then to come hether to suffer all this tourmentis /
 24 paynes / and pouertyes / and at laste paynfull dethe' /
 with sayenge of these wordes y^e duches she⁵ fell in a
 traunce amonge her lordys. Then Gerames releuyd her
 and sayd / 'lady,⁵ dyscomforte you nothyng,⁶ but take
 28 good corage and comforte your men, who hathe great
 desyre to defende this citye for the sauegarde of their
 owne bodyes and lyues / thus to make sorow ye can
 wyn no thyng therby, but lese more to more : haue
 32 no dought that Huon your husbonde wyll leue you at

She regrets that
 she ever left
 Babylon.

Gerames
 endeavours to
 console her.

¹ with in. ² ambushment. ³ the.

⁴ Fol. lxxxxiii. back, col. 2. ⁵ omitted. ⁶ not.

this poynte. he is gone to your brother for socoure /
 he wyll not long tary / and he wyll brynge you suche
 socoure that y^e emperour nor the Almayns shall haue
 no leysour to graunt hym the vycory.' Thus Gerames 4
 comfortyd the duches, who was glade¹ to here Gerames.
 Thus as they deuysed to gether, the Emperoure, who
 was aduerteynsyd of Huons departyng and howe he was
 gone for socoure / he assembelyd his counseyle in to 8
 his tent, and there he shewyd and declaryd the great
 losses that he had sufferyd as wel of the dethe of his
 nepheus as of other of his frendis and kynne / and the
 great damage that by Huon he had sufferyd, and sayde / 12
 'syrs, all this ye knowe well / his aquayntaunce hathe
 cost vs derely. Ye haue all harde how he is departyd
 to seke for socours / but I can not tell to what parte he
 is gone. As for the realme of fraunce, I know well he 16
 shall haue no socoure there / for as it hathe bene
 shewyd me of late / that the ryght noble and vycory-
 ous prynce Charlemayne is dede / who louyd Huon but
 lytell by cause of his sone Charlot whome Huon slewe / 20
 and Charlemayne hathe lefte be ²hynde hym but one
 sone namyd Lowis, who is but of a yonge age:³ I
 beleue yf he were of full age that he wolde rather come
 to socour me then Huon, who slewe Charlote his bro- 24
 ther / therfore it canne be none other wyse but that he
 is gone in to some far countre for socours; therefore I
 thynke it best that in the mene tyme, or⁴ he retourne /
 that on all sides let vs contynually assaile the citey / 28
 and let euery man do theyr payne to be reuengyd for
 the dethe of theyr frendys whiche are⁵ slayne by them
 within the citey.' ¶ when the lordis harde the emper-
 oure, all with one woyses answeryd and sayd, 'Syr, the 32
 reason that⁶ ye haue shewyd vnto vs is to be keppe and
 done / and we shall go arme vs and make vs redy, to

On hearing of
 Huon's setting
 out for succour,
 the Emperor
 addresses his
 barons, in
 council
 assembled;

he does not
 know whither
 Huon has gone.

Although
 Charlemagne is
 dead, and Lewis,
 who is young,
 reigns in his
 stead,
 Huon cannot
 hope for aid from
 that quarter.

It is clear, says
 the Emperor, that
 the knight has
 gone on a long
 journey for
 succour, and that
 it is their part
 to assail and
 take the city
 before his return.

All his host is of
 his opinion.

¹ for.

² Fol. lxxxiii. col. 1.

³ and.

⁴ ere.

⁵ heere.

⁶ which.

the entente to come to your entencyon, the whiche is¹
 reasonable.' Then they sownyd theyr hornes and
 busyns, and euery man² armyd hym³ / and came with
 4 ⁴standarde⁴ dysplayde to assaile the citey, and they
 that were within as well as they coude they defendyd
 the citey: they⁵ without reryd vp ladders agaynste the
 wallys ⁶by great⁶ strengthe / but they⁵ withe in dyd
 8 bette them downe into the dykis, and then they cast
 vpon them hote lede and boylynge oyle / and quycke
 Lyme / and great stonis, & fagottis brynnynge,⁷ so
 that they that⁸ were downe in the dykes had no powre⁹
 12 to releue¹⁰ agayne; but there myserably dyed vnder the
 ladders. There was on bothe partyes¹¹ great shotyng
 with crosebowes and slyngyng of stonys, so thycke
 that it semyd¹² snowe fleyng in the ayre / marueyle it
 16 was to regarde¹³ the olde Gerames / how he exortyd his
 company to do wel / and also the duches Esclaramonde,
 with her doughter in her armes, cryeng to¹⁴ her men and
¹⁵said, ' ye, my dere lordys and knyghtys, fyght lustely :
 20 put¹⁶ to your payne⁹ to defend your bodyes and your
 lyues / your wyues and¹⁷ chyl dren / to the entente that
 the Almayns make not theyr ¹⁸auaunte of the¹⁸ wynn-
 ynge of this¹⁹ noble citey by ²⁰assaulte / the whyche is
 24 so goodly and ryche / for, syrs, I knowe well ye shall
 not ²¹be in this payne²¹ no longe season / for duke Huon,
 your ryghtfull lorde, shall²² shortly²³ sucoure vs all.'
 Then²⁴ the noble barons, knyghtis, and burgesses /
 28 herynge the²⁵ comforte of the noble²⁶ lady the duches
 Esclaramonde, with a maruaylous²⁷ corage²⁸ they came to

A fierce assault
 upon Bordeaux is
 forthwith
 prepared,
 but the defenders
 of the city make
 a fierce resistance.

Gerames and
 Esclaramonde
 exhort Huon's
 men to fight
 lustily.

Very valiant is
 their defence,

¹ verie good and. ² speedily. ³ selfe.
⁴⁻⁴ Ensigne displayde. ⁵ which were. ⁶⁻⁶ with mighte.
⁷ burning. ⁸ which. ⁹ for. ¹⁰ themselues.
¹¹ exceeding. ¹² like vnto. ¹³ beholde. ¹⁴ vnto.
¹⁵ Fol. lxxxiii. col. 2. ¹⁶ but. ¹⁷ your.
¹⁸⁻¹⁸ bragges and vauntes of theyr. ¹⁹ most. ²⁰ theyr.
²¹⁻²¹ abide this trouble for. ²² will. ²³ ayde and.
²⁴ all. ²⁵ exceeding great. ²⁶ and vertuous.
²⁷ great. ²⁸ and valour.

and the Germans
are forced to
retire.

The Emperor
invites his men to
give him advice
as to whether he
shall continue the
siege longer.

The Emperor's
brother, duke
Savary, urges the
Germans to
persist in their
endeavour,

but declares it
necessary to
capture Gerames.

the¹ defences / and dyd² so valyauntly that theyr
enemyes were fayne³ to recule⁴ backe with great losse
& damage / wherof the emperour and his lordys were
ryghte sorowfull / and they within the citey ryght 4
ioyous⁵ of the⁶ victory that god had geuen them that
day. Then euery man ⁷drew to theyr⁷ logyng and
made great ioy / and the emperoure and his men with-
drew⁸ in great dysp[l]easeure for theyr⁹ losse. ¶ when 8
y^e emperour was vnarmyd, and had refresshed hymself,¹⁰
Then he sayd to his lordis / 'syrs, we haue ben a longe
season before this citey and haue had¹¹ many losses :
therfore, syrs, I requyre you to counseyle me what is 12
best to do / this citey, is stronge & wel furnysshed *with*
knyghtis and men to defende it / by vs it wyl neuer be
wone, *without* vytaylis fayle them / but I thinke they
haue but small store of vytayle : therfore I desyre you 16
to shewe me your aduyses whether we shall departe fro
this citey *without* more doynge, or elles abyde here vpon
suche fortune as god wyll send vs' / when y^e emperour
had sayd as moch as¹² pleasyd him,¹³ then the duke 20
Sauary, his brother, rose vp & said / 'syr, me thynke yf
I may be byleuyd, ¹⁴that this citey can not long endure :
and y^e cause why I shall shew you / ye know well that
Huon theyr lorde is gone to seke for socours / on the 24
other syde, they *with* in the citey haue but fewe men
and but yll furnysshyd of vytayles / within the citey
there is an olde knyghte who is a valyant and a hardy
knyght / and therfore it were profytable to study howe 28
he myghte be taken, or elles slayne / this shulde greatly
aunaunce your enterpryse / of the whyche ye can not
fayle yf ye wyll byleue my counseyle, as I shal shew
you. Trewe it is this day we haue had grete losse and 32

¹ theyr. ² behaued themselves. ³ forced. ⁴ retyre.
⁵ ioyfull. ⁶ great. ⁷⁻⁷ went vnto his. ⁸ themselues.
⁹ his. ¹⁰ selfe. ¹¹ sustained. ¹² he. ¹³ omitted.
¹⁴ Fol. lxxxxiiii. back, col. 1.

receyuyd great damage, wherof they within ar Ioyfull /
 wherfore it were good to sende sartayne motouns and
 beestys in the nyght tyme *with* a fewe kepars: sende
 4 them into the medowe nere to¹ the citey / and I am
 sure² when the olde knyght knowe therof, the whiche
 he shall knowe by the wachmen on the toures and
 walles / then incontynent he wyll issue out with suche
 8 power as he hath to take the bestes & to bryng them
 into the citey. And to the entente that they shall
 neuer retourne agayne into the citey incontynente or³
 the mone ⁴dothe⁴ aryse, sende a goo[d] nombre of
 12 befes / and motons to the medowe. Then haue redy
 armyd .x. thousande men, and send them to the lytell
 mountayne, where as the galowes were⁵ reysyd / and
 when they parseyue that they within the citey be
 16 issuyd out to feche the praye / then let the .x. thou-
 sande men drawe nere to the gate of the citey / to the
 entent that they without shall not enter agayne, but
 to theyr great losse. And yf ye wyll thus do, I put no
 20 dought but that or⁶ it be mydnyght they shall be all
 taken or slayne / and the mater may so come to pas
 that⁷ ye shall enter into the citey at your pleasure.
 ¶ Thus I haue shewed you as I thynke best / yf any man
 24 knowe any better waye, let hym speke / Then euery
 man regarlyd the Emperoure and seyde, 'syr, the
 counsayle that duke Sauary your brother ⁴hathe geuyn
 you we thynke all⁴ that a more noble counsayle coude⁸
 28 not be geuyn to any prynce.' when the emperoure
 vnderstode the counsayle of his brother duke Sauary,
 and that all his lordys dyd alowe y^e same / he was
 ryght Ioyfull, and sayde² it shuld so be⁹ done. Then
 32 he callyd his marshall and commaundyd that it shulde
 be done¹⁰ as his brother had deuysid it before / the

He suggests a
 device to induce
 Gerames to put
 himself in peril.
 Herds of cattle
 should be sent
 under the city's
 wall,

and when
 Gerames and his
 men issue out to
 seize them, a
 large force of
 Germans should
 be set in ambush
 to seize or slay
 them.

All the Germans
 approve duke
 Savary's counsel,

and the Emperor
 gives directions
 for putting it
 into effect.

¹ vnto. ² that. ³ ere. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted. ⁵ is.

⁶ before. ⁷ Fol. lxxxiii. back, col. 2. ⁸ can.

⁹ bee so. ¹⁰ according.

The night is dark, and the men of Bordeaux are in great danger.

whiche was done¹ dylygently, and sente² .xl.³ men with .vi. hondred motons and two hondred beestes nere to⁴ the citey / and⁵ layde theyr enbusschement of .x. thousande men by the lytell mountayne. It was⁴ darke nyght, & the mone was not rysyn / wherby they within coude not parsayue them / the whiche turnyd to theyr great losse and damage / for all those that issuyd out of the citey of Burdeaux were slayn and⁸ taken, as ye shall here after.⁶

¶ Of the dethe of the olde Gerames and of the takynge of the citey of Burdeaux, and of commonynge⁷ of the duches with the¹² Emperoure, & of the delyuerynge⁸ of the Castell to the Emperoure. Ca. .cxiii.



After their success over the Germans, Gerames called his men together, and thanked God for their victory.

He advised another night attack upon the enemy,

⁹ e haue hard here before how the Emperoure assayld the citey of Burdeaux, ¹⁶ and of the great losse that he receyuyd¹⁰ / wherof Gerames and they within the citey were ryght ioyous,¹¹ and made great feast, and thonkyd our lord god. Then ²⁰ after supper Gerames callyd all the knyghtes and other together and sayde, 'Syr, ye haue sene this daye the great assaulte that the Emperoure and his men hathe made to this cytye / but, thonkid be god, the losse is ²⁴ retorned to them / for there are dede and woundyd a great nombre of them / and many of them are sore weryed ¹² of trauaylynge,¹² & thynkethe nowe to reste themselfe / and nowe is theyr owre that they be sette ²⁸ at supper, and custumably they sytte euer longe at theyr table / far lenger then frenche men dothe / wherfore I wold thynke beste that incontynente without de-

¹ verie. ² with him. ³ fiftie. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ then.

⁶ hereafter. ⁷ the comming. ⁸ vp.

⁹ Fol. lxxxxv. col. 1. ¹⁰ sustained. ¹¹ ioyfull.

¹²⁻¹² with trauaile.

- laye ¹to arme vs all ¹ and to ² issue out of the citey and
go to theyr tentys and arayse them / and then let vs do
there as good ³knyghtys ought to do, to the entente
4 that good songes maye be made of vs. And that the
Almaynes haue no cause to say but that we be as
good men as they be.' 'Syr,' quod Othon and Bar-
narde, 'we be redy thus to do.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames,
8 'let vs make hast, that we may retourne agayne or ⁴
the mone rysethe.' Then they armyd themselfe. Alas,
what an yll aduenture came to them that ⁵ nyght / for
y^e moste parte of tho that issuyd out were taken and
12 slayne. A, good lorde, what a losse fell to the good ²
citey of Burdeaux. A, noble lady Esclaramonde / ye
may wel wepe and complayne. ⁶your dayes of ⁷ sorowe
and ² payne and doloure aprocheth nere, wherby ye ar
16 lyke to bere such dyseases and pouertye that no man
lyuyng canne recounthe it / nor ye shall neuer issue out
of that daunger and sorowe ⁸ tyll ye be delueryd by
the good duke Huon your husbnde / when Gerames
20 and his companye were redy, they moun tyd on theyr
horses / they ⁹ issuyd out at the gate as preuely as they
coude / so *that* they were not parseyuyd by them that
were set to watche for them, nor they hard not when
24 they were in the felde / they rode a fawse galope to
the tentys, y^e which they myght well se clerely by the
lyghte that were in the tentys / when they came nere,
they dassed theyr sporys to theyr horses and cryed
28 'Burdeaux' / and strake and cut asonder the cordys
and stayes so *that* many tentis fell to the erth / & suche
as came out were slayne / great noyse & cry began to
ryse in the host, & euery man ran to theyr harnase ¹⁰ /
32 and Gerames & his companye slew many of theyr
enemyes, and made them to fle before them / it was

so that their
valiant deeds
might be
remembered in
song.

All agree with
Gerames,

and preparations
are made, but
ill fortune is
awaiting their
sortie.

Huon's men
approach the
German tents,

and dash upon
them.

¹⁻¹ we should arme ourselues.

² omitted.

³ Fol. lxxxv. col. 2.

⁴ ere.

⁵ at.

⁶ all.

⁷ for.

⁸ trouble.

⁹ and.

¹⁰ armour.

dreful to beholde the damage that they dyd there. But
 fynally the losse fell ¹vpon them / for the Emperoure
 and all his men were redy / when Gerames sawe howe
 all the hoost was mouyd / then he sayd to his com- 4
 panye, 'Syr, it is tyme to recule² backe / for we maye
 tary here to longe / yonder cometh the emperoure with
 a ³great pusaunce³ to close vs in / it is nede⁴ for vs to
 make hast that we may go⁵ in sauetye.' Then all to 8
 gether in one company⁶ retournyd, and went the way
 towards Burdeaux. But they had not gone fare or⁷
 that they were ouertaken by the almaynes / and they
 layde on on all partyes with theyr speris and swordys.⁸ 12
 Then Gerames turnyd hym to an almayne / and with
 his spere ranne hym clene through / and in drawynge
 out his spere he fell downe dede to the erth / and then⁹
 strake another, whome also he slew. He dyd such 16
 dedes of armys that or⁷ his spere brake he slewe .v. of
 his enemyes / wherof the Almayns were sore abasshid.
 He brake the prese in suche wyse *that* none durst
 aproche nere¹⁰ hym / ryght wel dyd Othon and Bar- 20
 narde and such as was¹¹ with them.¹² But then the duke
 Sauary, who with .x. thousande men laye in the busshe-
 mente nere to¹⁰ the citey / when he¹³ hard the¹⁴ noyse
 and crye, he¹⁵ thought wel¹⁵ that they within the citey 24
 were Issuyd out / when Gerames and his companye
 sawe how they were enclosyd bothe before and behynde,
 they were sore abasshed. ¶ when Gerames saw that
 theyr forse and proues¹⁶ coud not auayle them, but *that* 28
 other they must be taken or slayn, Then swetely¹⁷ he
 callyd vpon our lorde Iesu chryste / requyrnge hym
 to saue¹⁸ his good lorde, duke Huon of Burdeux, and the
 duches Esclaramond his wyfe. Then he cryed to his 32

But the Emperor
and his host are
ready to meet
them,

and Gerames
advises a retreat.

The Germans
overtake them
in vast numbers.

Gerames works
mighty havoc
among them,

but his forces are
surrounded on
every side.

Gerames calls
upon Jesus Christ
for aid,

¹ Fol. lxxxxv. back, col. 1. ² retire. ³⁻³ mightie armie.

⁴ needfull.

⁵ away.

⁶ they.

⁷ ere.

⁸ swords & spears.

⁹ he.

¹⁰ vnto.

¹¹ were.

¹² him.

¹³ had heard.

¹⁴ great.

¹⁵⁻¹⁵ supposed.

¹⁶ powers.

¹⁷ earnestly.

¹⁸ and defend.

- companye, & sayd, 'Syr, I pray you hartely at this
 tyme¹ shewe forth the your prouesses, and ²do so² that
 this emperoure & Almaynes haue no cause to make
 4 theyr auauntes that they haue founde vs as men dys-
 mayde,³ and⁴ let vs shew them how our swordys can
 cut.' Then all together ⁵set on⁵ theyr enemyes in suche
 wyse that at the fyrste brounte the Almaynes were
 8 constrayned to recule⁶ abacke. Gerames dyd such
 dedys that none durste aproche nere hym. Then the
 duke Sauary weth .x. thousande men came vpon them
 sodaynely / the whiche was none egall partye / and
 12 also the emperoure with his great batayle came also
 vpon⁷ Gerames and his company, who had gotten them-
 selues in to the subbarbes of the cyte and a great⁸ wall
 behynde them at theyr backes, where as they stode⁹ at
 16 a baye agaynste the almaynes / ¹⁰for as the wyld bore
 doth kepe a baye agaynst the mastyues and bayynge
 houndes, so dyd they of Burdeaux agaynst the almayns.¹⁰
 Gerames was in the myddys of them, and vnder¹¹ his
 20 helme aperyd his long whyght berde / and y^e emperour
 who had great shame that so fewe men in nombre shuld
 kepe a baye ¹⁰in that moner¹⁰ agaynste his pusaunce¹²
 & do to¹³ his men so great damage / he parseyuyd where
 24 the olde Gerames was / who had often tymys slayne
 manye of his men and done hym suche damagys *that*
 he thought he coulde neuer ¹⁴have amendys¹⁴ therof suffy-
 cyent / and thought that yf he shuld haue scapyd them
 28 a lyue / that he wolde do hym moch more hurte and
 dyspleasure¹⁵ after / and sayd to hymselfe that he had
 rather dye incontinent then he shulde not as then be
 reuengyd vpon hym / & therewith incontinently he

and urges on his
men to show all
their prowess.

At their first
charge, the
Germans recoil;

and Gerames'
men set them-
selves before the
walls of the city
and fight like
wild boars at
bay.

The Emperor
vows that
Gerames shall
die,

¹ Fol. lxxxv. back, col. 2.

²⁻² behaue your selues so valiantly.

³ amazed.

⁴ but.

⁵⁻⁵ they assayed.

⁶ retyre.

⁷ old.

⁸ mightie.

⁹ did stand.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ omitted.

¹¹ vnderneath.

¹² hignessee.

¹³ vnto.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ be reuenged.

¹⁵ damage.

and running upon
him, kills him.

The men of
Bordeaux had
good cause to
weep for the loss
of their leader,

and soon all
his companions
except one knight,
Barnard, are
slain.

Barnard was
nearly as brave
as Huon,
and he is mounted
on the swift horse
Amphage.

He alone returns
to Bordeaux,

and tells the
burgesses the evil
fate of all his
company.

couchyd his spere / and ranne at¹ Gerames on the one
syde or² he was ware, so that ³the emperour ran hym
clene thorowe y^e body / so ⁴this⁴ ientyll knyght Gerames
fell to the erthe and dyed incontynente. great damage 4
fell that daye to Huon of Burdeaux / for he loste the
treweste and best frynde that he had. Alas, for that
petuous iourney that fell that daye to them of Bur-
deaux. They had good cause⁵ to wepe / alas, good 8
duches Esclaramond, what losse haue ye receyuyd to
lese hym who was your chefe comforte and refuge /
ye myght haue called hym more then father. A, ryght
noble lady / there neuer came to you a greater mys- 12
chefe than ye haue by the dethe of Gerames / who
lyeth dede⁶ among his enemyes / when the Almaynes
sawe that Gerames was dede / then they fought so *that*
within a short space all they⁷ of Burdeaux were slayne 16
and not one scapyd alyue / excepte Barnarde, who was
on y^e pusaunt hors Amphage : for the gambaudes and
worke *that* he made, none⁸ Almayne durste aproche
nere hym / for Barnard nexte⁹ Huon was the moste 20
valyaunt knyght of his body that was as then leuyng /
for when the almaynes sawe hym on¹⁰ that horse / they
chasyd hym no further, then¹¹ they wente to theyr
tentes, and Barnarde seysyd not tyll he came to⁹ the 24
gate of the citey / the whiche was openyd / when he
was enteryd and the gate agayne closyd¹² / the burgesses
and comunaltie sawe how Barnarde came in all alone /
they demaundyd of hym and sayd / ‘syr, where is 28
your capetayne, the olde Gerames?’ Then sore
wepyng he shewyd them at length the petuous and
dolorous aduenture, y^e whiche, when they hard that,¹³
they made suche cryes and wepyng that petye it was⁵ 32
to here and to se them / the brute and noyse was so

¹ old. ² ere. ³ Fol. lxxxvi. col. 1. ⁴⁻⁴ that the.

⁵ for. ⁶ euen now. ⁷ them. ⁸ not an. ⁹ vnto.

¹⁰ vpon. ¹¹ but. ¹² closed againe. ¹³ omitted.

greate and lowde, that the ¹ lady Esclaramond harde it /
 wherof² she ³ had maruayle³ and was⁴ in great fere /
 Therwith syr Barnarde enteryd in to⁵ the castel gate
 4 and so mountyd into the hall, where as he founde the
 duches Esclaramonde / who was sore abasshyde when
 she sawe syr Barnarde come alone / who shewyd her
 the great losse that she had receyuid⁶ that day / wher
 8 with for inward sorow she fell downe in a swouze, and
 so lay a longe space as thoughe she had bene dede.
 Then the ladyes and damoysselles sore wepyng releuyd
 her / then she cast out a great crye, wryngynge her
 12 handes and terynge her here, and sayde, 'A, Huon, my
 ryght dere lorde, this day ye haue loste your moste
 sorowfull and dolorous wyfe and welbelouyd doughter.'
 ¶ Then⁷ ladyes and damoysselles & other wyues who
 16 had loste theyr husbondys / fathers / and bretherne
 came in to the castell and made suche cryes and sorowes
 that the noyse therof was harde into the emperours
 hoste without / and it was shewed the emperour that
 20 y^e noyse and brute that was made within the citey and
 castell was for the losse they had receyuyd that daye.
 And then they sayde it shulde be good that the nexte
 mornynge euery man shulde be redy to go and assaile
 24 the citey, and sayde that yf euer they shulde⁸ wyne
 it the owre then was comen. ¶ when the emperour⁹
 harde that reason, he sayde that the aduyce was very
 good / and¹⁰ he wolde it shuld so be done / he gaue the
 28 charg ther of to his constable and marshalles. thus¹¹
 the nexte mornynge the¹² host was redy, & the emper-
 oure commaundyd to set forward / and so¹³ they came
 before the citey garnysshed with all thynges nedefull
 32 and necessarye for assawlte / then¹⁴ they ¹⁵ marched

Esclaramonde is
sore distressed at
his sad news,

and swoons as
though she were
dead.

Loud are the
lamentations of
the women
throughout the
city.

The Emperor
resolves to enter
Bordeaux on the
following day.

¹ Fol. lxxxxvi. col. 2. ² whereat. ³⁻³ maruailed.

⁴ stood. ⁵ at. ⁶ sustained. ⁷ the. ⁸ would.

⁹ had. ¹⁰ that. ¹¹ & so. ¹² his. ¹³ then.

¹⁴ and.

¹⁵ Fol. lxxxxvi. back, col. 1.

Only merchants
and burgesses
remained to
defend the city,

and Bordeaux
falls before its
assailants.

The Emperor
and all his men
make entry
within the walls,

but he forbids
his men to
violate the
women, or the
churches.

Little injury is
done to the noble
city.

forwarde and aproched the cytye / and when they came
there they gaue a great crye, and enteryd into the dykys
and reryd vp theyr ladders to the walles in dyuers
places / so that they that were within were sore 4
abasshyde¹ / For *within* were but burgesses and mar-
chauntys, who coude lytel skylle of ²the² warre / how be
it, they mountyd vpon the walles to ³defend³ theyr
citye. But the citye was so sore assayld on all partyes / 8
that the defendauntys wyste not where to make resyst-
ence / the shot of them without flewe so thycke that
none within durste appere vpon the walles, wherby
they enterid perforce into the citye and slewe as many 12
as they met withall in theyr enterying. And then they
went to⁴ the gate and openyd it / so that the emperour
and all his lordys enteryd into the citye. Then euery
man wente abrode in the stretis to take presoners and 16
to spoyle mennes houses. ¶ when the emperour sawe
how he was lorde of the citye / he ⁵made it to be
cryed⁵ in euere strete that no man ²shulde be so hardy²
on payne of dethe / ⁶to vyolat⁶ any woman, or deflowre 20
any mayd / nor to breke any church, nor to set any
hous a fyre / and also all suche as were in any church
for sauegarde / that they shulde go at theyr pleasure
without any trouble or daunger⁷ of body or goodys / 24
⁸the emperour, who was a wyse prince, thought in hym
selfe that great damage and petye it shulde⁹ be to dys-
troy and put to ruyne such a noble¹⁰ citye / so stronge
and so² well furnysshed with burgesses & marchauntes. 28
When suche as were fled vnto strong places for refuge
vnderstode y^e emperours commaundement, euery man &
woman retourned to theyr owne houses, so that there
was but lytell damage ¹¹done / and that was by them 32

¹ afraid. ²⁻² omitted. ³⁻³ and defended. ⁴ vnto.

⁵⁻⁵ caused it to be proclaimed. ⁶⁻⁶ should wronge.

⁷ either. ⁸ for. ⁹ would. ¹⁰ famous.

¹¹ Fol. lxxxvi, back, col. 2.

that enteryd fyrst. ¶ when the lady Esclaramond
 sawe howe the cite was taken / ye may be sure she
 1 had great dolour,¹ for fyrste she sawe her cite taken
 4 by ²her enemyes,² and her selfe closed within the castel
 yll furnysshed with wytayles / and moche people with
 her / wher by she sawe clerely without god dyd ayde
 her that her dethe aprochyd nere. Then piteously she
 8 complayned to god and sayd, 'Very god, on whome I
 beleue fermely, and for whos sake I haue lefte my fyrste
 mysbeleue & forsake my parentis and frendys to take
 to my husbonde a chrysten man / to y^e entent to reseue
 12 thy law / syr,³ I requyre the of thy grace to haue petye
 of me, pouer, desolate creature / and to kepe & defende
 my dere chyde⁴ from all yll encomberaunce / for yf it
 be thy pleasure to saue my chyld I am content to abyde
 16 such⁵ fortune as⁶ it shall please the to send me, and
 besyde that, I requyre thy grace to saue and kepe Huon
 my dere lorde and husbonde.' Then all wepynge, she
 called to⁷ her syr Barnard, and sayd, 'ryght dere frend,
 20 I can take no counsaile now but of you / ye se well
 how our dethes aprocheth / and how⁸ it is impossyble
 for vs to kepe and defende this castell agaynste the
 emperoure, who hathe won the cite, and I dought yf
 24 he enter into this castell parforse, we shall be the fyrste
 that shall receyue dethe / and by cause I see wel I
 cannot scape from hense, I require you, my dere
 frende, and by the trouth that ye bere to⁷ Huon, my
 28 lord and yours, *that* incontynent ye take my dere
 doughter Claryet, whome I holde here in myne armes /
 and fynde some meanes that ye maye departe out of
 this cite, and bere hyr strayght to the abbey of Clune,
 32 the ⁹which is in Borgoyne / and delyuer her into the
 kepynge of the abbot there. and recommaunde me to⁷

Esclaramond
 fears that, unless
 God aid her, she
 will surely die.

Piteously she
 prays to Heaven
 for help.

She petitions for
 the life of her
 child.

Calling Barnard
 to her, she begs
 him protect
 Clariet,

and bear her to a
 neighbouring
 abbey.

¹-¹ was ryght sorrowfyll. ²-² the enemye. ³ O God.
⁴ children. ⁵ what. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ that.
⁹ Fol. lxxxvii. col. 1.

Barnard sees that
his strength is
now of no avail,

and promises
to fulfil
Esclaramonde's
bidding.

The Emperor
and his army
come before the
castle.
Esclaramonde
desires to speak
with the
Emperor,

and urges him to
have mercy upon
her.

hym. he is vncle to my husbnde Huon, great vncle
to my chyld.' 'Lady,' quod Barnard, 'I know well yf
I be taken here I shall be¹ slayn. Howe be it, yf I
coude se or knowe that my abydyng here coude ayde ⁴
or socour you, bothe for myne honour and for the loue
of my² lorde³ Huon, I wolde neuer depart hense fro
you / but my resystence and force is but of small
valeur / and by cause I wolde serue you as I am bound ⁸
to do / I am redy aparayled⁴ to take on⁵ me that
aduenture as to bere your chyld awaye and to set her
in sauegard by the grace of ⁶god.'⁶ when the duches
vnderstode Barnarde, she was well comfortyd / and as ¹²
for her selfe, she regardyd nother her lyf nor dethe /
when she knewe that her chylde shulde be sauyn.
Then she delyueryd her chylde to⁷ Barnarde / to the
entent that in the nyght time he shuld issu out. Then ¹⁶
the emperour and his lordis came before the castel.
when the duches knewe that / she came to the gate,
and at a wyndowe she desyryd to speke with y^e
emperoure / who was there redy present, and sayde / ²⁰
'dame,⁸ say what ye wyll to me at your pleasure' /
⁹when she sawe the emperour, she sayd / 'syr, I knowe
well ye are the hede and chefe¹⁰ of all crystendome,¹¹ &
noblest / wherby ye ar bounde to defend and kepe from ²⁴
yll all noble men & women / I that am the doughter of
an hye and myghty emperoure / and that for y^e loue
of¹² Iesu chryst haue forsaken myne owne false byleue /
to byleue on⁵ y^e christen faythe / syr, I requyre ¹³you¹³ ²⁸
haue pety¹⁴ of me and of all thos that be here with me,
as⁹ to respyte our lyues / and to put fro¹⁵ all rancoure,
& malyce, and pardon them ¹⁶that no thyng had to do

¹ vtterly. ² good. ³ and Maister. ⁴ furnished.

⁵ vpon. ⁶⁻⁶ our Lord and Sauour Iesus Christ.

⁷ vnto. ⁸ Madame. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ cheefest.

¹¹ the christened. ¹² my good Lord and Sauoure.

¹³⁻¹³ (for his sake that made and created you) to.

¹⁴ and compassion. ¹⁵ you. ¹⁶ Fol. lxxxxvii. col. 2.

with the begynnyng of this warre' / when the emperor¹ harde the resonable request of this lady, he cast fro hym all the mortall hate that he had to² her and to
4 them that were within with her. Then he, mouyd with pety and compassyon of the noble lady, answerid and sayd / 'dame,³ for the loue of our lord Iesu chryst I repele fro me all my dyspleasure / so that ye render
8 to² me this castell and to put it vnder myne obeysance to vse it at my pleasure / & to yelde your body as my presoner, and all tho that be within, and thus ye shall haue all your lyues sauyd.' 'Syr,' quod the duchesse,
12 'laude and prayes be⁴ to our lorde god⁵ for this grace that ye shewe vnto me and to my companye.' Then the emperor wente backe, and made expresse commaundement thurgh the out the citee / that no man
16 shulde be so hardy as to do any hurte or iniury to any maner of parson within the citee; but to suffer euery man to abyde in theyr owne howses peasybly without pyllynge⁶ / wherof the burgesses and comunalte of the
20 citee were ryght ioyefull. Thus, as ye haue harde, the citee of Burdeaux was taken by the emperor who was chosyn in Almayne, & comyttyd by the emperor Charlemayn tyll⁷ his sone Loys shulde be of full age
24 and able to kepe⁸ the empyre.

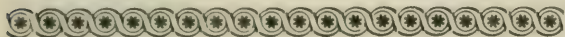
The Emperor
feels pity for her,

and promises
her protection,
if she yield the
castle to him,

and herself as
prisoner.

The Emperor
orders no man
to be injured,

and suffers all to remain in their houses, which none are to pillage.



¶ How the duches Esclaramond deliueyrd
her doughter Clariet to Barnarde to bere
to² the abbot of Cluny / of whome the
28 abbot was ioyfull. Ca. C.xxiiii [= Cxiv].

¹ had. ² vnto. ³ Madamo. ⁴ giuen.
⁵ Iesus Christ. ⁶ killinge. ⁷ vntill. ⁸ rule.
 CHARL. ROM. VIII. D D

1



e haue harde the peteous² taking of the
citye of Burdeaux, and of y^e trete and
apoyntment that the duches Esclara-
monde had made with the emperour / 4
³when she had made her apoyntment /

Esclaramonde
tells her com-
panions of the
conditions of the
surrender of the
town.

she went to⁴ her company peteously wepyng / and
shewyd them all the maner of her tretye, wherof euery
parsone was glad that theyr lyues shulde be sauyd / 8
but they made grat sorow for that the duches shuld be
come a presoner / ³then she callyd Barnard, and sayd,
'Syr, when it is nyght issue out by the posterne with
my doughter Claryet, and bere her to⁴ y^e abbot of 12
Cluney, who is her great vncl.' 'Dame,'⁵ quod he,
'be ⁶in suerty that⁶ I shall not reste .ii. nyghtis in one
place tyll⁷ I haue delyueryd your doughter to⁴ y^e⁸
abbot of Cluney her great vncl.' Then Barnarde toke 16
leue of the duches, who kyste her doughter at her
departynge⁹ / There was a posterne that openyd into
the feldis ; ³it was so small that Barnarde was fayne to
lede his horse in his hande / the nyght was darke,¹⁰ and 20
Barnarde¹⁰ knew ¹¹well the wayes¹² / mountyd on his
horse / and¹³ the chylde in his armys / and so rod
forthe and passyd the laundes of Burdeaux, and was
neuer sene by any¹⁴ man tyll⁷ the nexte day / he rode 24
so all y^e nyght that his horse was wery. And when he
sawe that he was past al daungers, and scapyd all
perelles / then he rode at hys ease for loue of the
chylde / and he complaynyd greatly for the good horse 28
Amphage that Huon had lefte in his kepyng ;¹⁵ but he
durste not take that horse with hym for fere that

Her daughter she
entrusts to
Barnard ;

who promises to
deliver her to the
abbot of Cluney,
her great uncle.

All night Barnard
rides to fulfil his
promise.

He was not
mounted on
Huon's swift
horse, Amphage,

¹ Fol. lxxxxvii. back. col. 1. ² pitifull. ³ &.

⁴ vnto. ⁵ Madame.

⁶⁻⁶ of good cheere and by the grace of our Lord and
Sauour Jesus Christ. ⁷ vntill. ⁸ good.

⁹ sore weeping and pitifully complayning. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ but he.

¹¹ Fol. lxxxxvii. back. col. 2. ¹² & afterwards he.

¹³ with. ¹⁴ mortall. ¹⁵ vntill his returne.

he shulde haue delt the worse with the lady Esclara-
 monde / y^e which had bene trewe / for the emperour
 louyd so wel the horse,¹ that he desyryd more to haue
 4 agayne the horse² then³ to win the citey / and therefore
 Barnarde durste not take the horse with hym. So
 longe Barnarde rode that he ariuyd at Monglew, the
 which is callyd Lyon, on the ryuer of Rone / and fro
 8 thens he rode to Mascon, and fro thence he restyd not
 tyll he cam to the abbey of Cluney. ⁴Then he alyghtyd,
 and desyryd to speke with the abbot.⁵ when the abbot
 sawe Barnarde with a chylde in his armes, he had⁶
 12 manuaile therof / ⁵when Barnard saw the abbot al
 wepyng,⁷ salutyd hym, and sayd / ‘syr, the ryght
 desolat duches of Burdeux / your nese, wyfe to⁸ the
 duke Huon of Burdeux your nephue, hathe sent here
 16 to⁸ you her doughter Claryet.’ Then the good abbot
 embracyd hym, and toke the chylde and kyssed it mo
 then .xx. timys / and demaundyd why he brought the
 chylde to⁸ hym / ‘syr,’ quod Barnarde, ‘the citey of
 20 Burdeaux hathe bene besegyed by y^e emperoure of
 Almayne / and so straytly kepte that it was nere hand
 fanysshed / manye knyghtis that were within ar
 slayne / so that Huon your nephue, by the counsayll
 24 ⁹of the duches his wyfe, & consent of all his company,
 is departyd out of Burdeaux to seke socoure of the
 kynge of Amphamie, brother to⁸ Esclaramond, Htons
 wyfe / and so it is a longe tyme syn he departyd, & we
 28 neuer coude here any¹⁰ word of hym / and thus he lefte
 vs in Burdeaux, and our chefe capytayne was y^e old
 Gerames, your cosyn, who was brother to the good
 prouost Guyer / & so it was ¹¹on¹¹ a nyght we issuyd out
 32 and rode to y^e emperours tentys and slew many of our

for the Emperor
longed to have
him again for
himself.

He reaches
Cluny, and
visiting the
abbot, delivers
Esclaramonde's
message.

Barnard relates
the disasters that
have befallen
Bordeaux and its
duke.

¹ the horse so well. ² agayne *after* horse. ³ for.

⁴ &. ⁵ and. ⁶ great. ⁷ hee. ⁸ vnto.

⁹ Fol. lxxxviii. col. 1. ¹⁰ any *omitted*.

¹¹⁻¹¹ that vpon.

enemyes, and when we sawe¹ tyme, we returnyd towardis
 our citey / but by some spye we were parseyuyd when
 we issuid out, wherby the emperoure, knowynge therof,
 sende duke Sauary his brother with .x.M. men to lye **4**
 in a busment nere to y^e citey / so that when we had
 thought to haue enteryd into the cytye, duke Sauary
 was before vs *with* .x.M. men / ther we fought a long
 space / but fynally the olde Gerames and his companye **8**
 were all slayne, none scapyd but my selfe, and that was
 by reason of my horse / so I enteryd into the citey,
 where as there was made great sorowe / and the nexte
 daye the emperour with great assaulte van y^e citey and **12**
 cam to the castel, where as the duches was, who saw
 well she could not longe holde the castell ; she made her
 tretye to saue her body and her companye, and so they
 ar all presoners / or² she delyueryd vp y^e castell she **16**
 delyueryd me her doughter, and so I issuyd out at a
 posterne preuely and was not parsayuyd / therfore, syr,
 your nephue³ hathe sent you her doughter to the
 entente that for the loue of her father and of her ye **20**
 wold kepe and norryshe her tyll her father, duke Huon,
 be⁴ retournyd.' when the abbot vnderstode Barnarde
 he began to wepe, & ⁵toke the chyld in his armys, and
 kyssyd her oftentimes, and sayde, 'my dere chyld, yf **24**
 it please our lorde god I shall be to you bothe father
 and mother, and shall norryshe you tyll⁶ ye be great /
 and then mary you to⁷ some pusaunte⁸ prynce / in
 whome it shall lye to conquere agayne⁹ your herytage / **28**
 londys / and sygnoryes / for I haue here in this¹⁰ house
 suche treasure that it is suffeycent to conquere y^e¹¹ hole
 empyre.' Then the abbot sente for a noble lady of the
 countre, and a nouryse, and delyueryd⁷ them the chyld¹² **32**

The abbot takes
the child in his
arms,

and promises to
nourish and tend
her carefully.


She is given to a
noble lady of the
country to nurse
her.

¹ our. ² before. ³ neece. ⁴ were.
⁵ Fol. lxxxxviii. col 2. ⁶ vntill. ⁷ vnto.
⁸ mightie. ⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ my.
¹¹ a. ¹² for.

to kepe and to nourysshē / for a fayred ¹ nor better
furnysshid¹ of her age was neuer sene. Then the
abbot sayd to Barnard / 'syr, ye shall abyde here styll
4 with me tyll² this chyldē be of age, or elles her father³
retournyd.' Now let vs leue to speke of this yonge
chyldē Claryet, and of the abbot / and retourne to
speke of the delerours company that were in the castell
8 of the noble citye of Burdeaux.

Barnard is
invited to remain
with the abbot.

¶ How the duches Esclaramond yeldyd vp
the castell to the emperour / and how she
and her companye were ⁴led to pryson⁴ in
12 the citye of Magence. Ca. Cxv.

 e haue wel hard here before that after
the departynge of Barnard fro the
castell in Burdeaux with Claryet, Huons
doughter / how the emperour had made
a trefte with the duches Esclaramonde
for the delyueraunce of the castell / the whyche passyd ;
and on the next mornynge the duches spake with the
20 emperour, who with all his men were⁵ there redy before
the place abydynge to haue the delyueraunce of the
castell. And ⁶when he sawe the duches at a wyndowe
ouer the gate, he sayd, 'dame,⁷ I wyll that the promys
24 that ye made me yester day ye vpholde,⁸ or elles I wyl
do⁹ as I thynke best.' 'Syr,' quod the duches, 'I am
redy to fulfill my promys, so that y^e promes me agayne
that my body, and al ladyes and damoysselles and other
28 to¹⁰ be sauyd, & not towchyd by no vyllayny, nor
none¹¹ yll done to¹² our bodyes.' 'Dame,'⁷ quod the
emperour, 'all this that ye ¹³saye¹³ I promyse to
vpholde;⁸ but you and all suche as be with you shall be

The Emperour's
men assemble
before the castle,
awaiting its
deliverance.

Esclaramonde,
speaking from a
wyndow, promises
to uphold the
treaty she has
made with the
conquerors,

1-1 creature. 2 vntill. 3 he. 4-4 prisoners.
6 was. 6 Fol. lxxxxviii. back, col. l. 7 Madame.
8 performe. 9 according. 10 shall. 11 no.
12 vnto. 13-13 require heere.

and offers herself
a prisoner.

The castle-gate is
opened,
and the Emperor
and his lords
enter within it.

Esclaramonde
and all within the
castle are sent as
prisoners to
Mayence,

and she herself
is thrown into a
deep dungeon.

The Emperor
orders all the
men of Bordeaux
to do homage to
him.

Thirteen days
later he seizes
some neighbour-
ing provinces.

my prysoners.' 'Syr,' quod the duchess, 'my lyfe and
my body and all suche as be here with me, I put them
into¹ the sauegarde of god and of you.' Then she
descendyd downe & come into the hall, where as she 4
founde her petuous² company makynge great sorow eche
to other, for they knewe not yf³ euer they shulde mete
agayne.⁴ Then the duches commaundyd to open the
gate, the whiche was done.⁵ Then the emperoure and 8
all his lordys enteryd into the castell / but he wolde
not go in to the hall tyl he had all the ladies and other
brought out / to the entent that they shulde make no
request to hym, & he ordayned a .M. knyghtes of the 12
most aunsyentys men of his hoste / ⁶then he delyueryd
the duches and vi. ladyes with her, and all the other
prysoners, as well they that were within the castell as
other that had ben taken before at dyuers skyrmysshes / 16
he⁶ sent them straye to the citey of Magence / and set
them all in pryson in towres and other places / but y^e
duches was put all alone in a stronge towre, within the
whiche there was a depe dongeon / and therin she was 20
set, out of the whiche she neuer issued tyll⁷ she was
delyueryd by Huon her husbonde. Then the emperour,
⁸beynge in the castell of Bordeaux, sente ouer all y^e
countrie that all such as were alyue shuld come and do 24
theyr homage to⁹ hym and take theyr londys of hym /
y^e whiche they dyd.¹⁰ Then he made his prouostis and
offycers to do iustyce both in the citey and countrie ;
and after that the emperour had bene there .viii. dayes 28
he went out of the citey and rode and toke possessyon
of Blames and of Gerounde, and set there his offycers /
⁶when he had full possessyon of all the countrie he lefte
kepers in the countrie / and so retournyd to the citey of 32

¹ in. ² omitted. ³ where. ⁴ or not.

⁵ immediately. ⁶ and. ⁷ vntill.

⁸ Fol. lxxxxviii. back, col. 2. ⁹ vnto.

¹⁰ according to his commaundement.

Magens, where as he was receyuyd with great ioye.¹
 Now let vs leue to speak of y^e emperour Thyrry / and
 speke of duke Huon of Burdeaux, beyng in the castell
 4 of the Adamante in great pouerte and famine.

¶ How there aryud at the castell of the
 adamant a shyp full of sarasyns, wherein
 was the bysshop of Melayne / and how
 8 Huon causyd them to be chrystenyd; and
 then he brought them into the castell,
 where as they founde great plente of vytayle.

Ca. C.xvii [= Cxvi].

12 E haue hard here before how Huon was
 in the castell of the Adamant in great
 pouerte and famyne, where as he had
 been .X. dayes without mete and
 16 drynke excepte Appelles / and frute



Huon grows
 feeble in the
 castle of
 Adamant, for
 lack of strong
 sustenance.

that grewe in the gardayne / wher by he became so
 febyl and ²so voyde² that he had scant³ powre to
 sustayne hymselfe on⁴ his fete / he founde there ryches
 20 ynowe, golde and syluer, aparell & iouelles, and ryche
 beddynge / so that he wantyd no thyng excepte vytayll /
 and as he ⁵walkyd in the chambre where as the trespere
 lay, he beheld an arch vaultyd, rychly peyntyd with
 24 gold and asure, vnder the which stode a ryche chayre,
 and ther in a coushyn of clothe of gold borderid with
 perlis and presyous stonys; Huon, who was wery of
 walkynge, sate downe in the chayre to reste hym.

He discovers a
 rich arch, under
 which stood a
 chair with a
 golden cushion,
 and there he sits
 down to rest.

28 Then he began sore to muse, castynge down his loke to
 the erthe, and by reason that his longe mantell had
 swepte the powder awaye fro the pauement, there
 aperyd letters of golde wretten on the pament; ⁶he red
 32 then / ⁶the tenoure of them was, who so euer rede

Upon the pave-
 ment at his feet
 he perceives
 letters of gold,

¹ and triumph.²⁻² weake.³ scarce.⁴ vppon.⁵ Fol. lxxxxix, col. 1.⁶ and.

and thence learns
that underneath
the pavement is a
cellar filled with
all kinds of food.

But only such as
are free from sin
shall enter the
cellar alive.

Huon prays to
God for aid.

On the side of the
chair he finds a
key of gold,
with an inscrip-
tion written upon
it.

With the key he
opens a little
wicket leading to
the cellar.

Within all is as
clear as mid-day,

and Huon sees a
great oven.

And near the
oven are ten
fairies—all young
men—who were
making bread.

thes letter shall fynd that vnder this pauement there is
a seller with vytayle, bothe brede, flesche, and wyne /
and of all sondry metys for man or woman to ete of /
but the letters sayd, that who so euer¹ enter into this 4
seller, without he be with out dedly synne, as sone as
he toucheth any of the mete, sodaynly he shall dye.
when Huon had red al the letters he had great maruayle
and fere, and thoughte in hym selfe that when he 8
departyd fro Burdeaux, he was confessyd or² his prest
dyed / and syn that tyme he coude not remembre any
thyng that he had comytted that shuld be dedely
syn, ³then he made his prayers to our lorde god 12
deuoutly, sore wepyng / and when he had endyd his
prayers as he knelyd on⁴ his knees before the chayre,
he saw hanginge on⁴ the syde of the chayre a lytell
keye of golde; he toke it⁵ in his hande & began to 16
muse on the wrytyng that sayd / 'who so euer enter
in to this castell, thoughe they be valyaunt & wyse /
⁶noble knyghtys, yet they shal not knowe well what to
do' / then he sayd to⁷ hym selfe / 'rather then I shulde 20
dye for famine, it were better to dye shortely then
longe to ⁸langushhe.'⁸ Then Hu⁹on recommaundid
hymselfe to the ayde and helpe of¹⁰ god, and toke the
key and openyd a lytell wycket and drewe the dore to⁷ 24
hym. Then he regardyd¹¹ into the seller, the whiche
was as clere as thoughe the sonne in the myddes of the
day had enterid in at .x.¹² wyndowes / ¹³he went downe
a¹⁴ .vii. score grefes, then he lokyd¹⁵ on the ryght syde¹⁶ 28
and sawe a great ouen with .ii. mouthes, the whiche
caste out a great clernes / then he saw nere therto .x.
fayre yonge men, they were all of the Fayry, .iiii. of
them had¹⁷ made the past for bred / and .ii. delyueryd 32

¹ should.

² before.

³ and.

⁴ vppon.

⁵ vp.

⁶ or.

⁷ vnto.

⁸⁻⁸

endure in this hunger and thirst.

⁹ Fol. lxxxxix, col. 2.

¹⁰ almightie.

¹¹ looked downe.

¹² the.

¹³ and so.

¹⁴ about.

¹⁵ regarded.

¹⁶ hand.

¹⁷ omitted.

- the louys to other .ii., & they dyd set them downe on¹
 a ryche clothe of sylke / then the other .ii. men toke
 the louys and deliuerid them to² one man by .iii. louys
 4 atones / and he dyd set them into the ouen to bake /
 and at the other mouth of the ouen ther was a man
 that drewe out the whyght lous and pastes, & before
 hym there was a nother yonge man that reseuyd them
 8 and put them into baskettis³ rychely payntyd. when
 Huon had aduysed them, he had great maruayle, and
 came and salutyd them, sayenge / 'syr, I praye to⁴ Huon accosts
 god⁵ saue you & all your companye' / ⁶when they hard them,
 12 Huon speke, they gaue⁷ no maner of answeere, but
 beheld eche other / ⁸when Huon saw that none of them
 wold make hym any answeere / he was sore abasshyd / ⁹
 how be it he sayd / 'syrs, ye that be here, I coniure Huon speaks to
 16 you in the name of the father,⁹ sone, and⁹ holy gost / them in the name
 & of the ¹⁰blessyd vyrgyn Mari his mother and of of all the
 all sayntys¹⁰ / angellis and arkeangellys, and of all inhabitants of
 the courte selestyall / that ye answeere me to that I do heaven.
 20 demaunde.'¹¹ Then they all sessyd¹² theyr laboure and
 busynes and behelde Huon, and rubbyd of the paste
 & mele¹² of theyr handis and fyngers / then⁶ the mayster
¹³of them behelde Huon, and sayd / 'frende, ye do vs One of the fairies
 24 great wrong to coniure vs / we wyll that ye¹⁴ knowe yf reproves Huon
 ye were other Sarasyn or paynym ye shuld neuer for his speech;
 depart¹² hense without dethe / your trouthe and noblenes
 hath preseruyd you / ye ought greatly to thanke god /
 28 I knowe wel ye haue great hunger, for it is .x. dayes
 syn ye dyd other ete or drynke any thyng excepte
 alonely of the frute that ye haue¹⁰ founde in the
 gardayne / the which as yet is not rype and redy to ete.
 32 Therefore, Huon, fayre syr, I knowe well¹⁵ ye haue great

¹ vpon. ² vnto. ³ which were. ⁴ our lord.

⁵ to.

⁶ and.

⁷ vnto hym.

⁸ and greatly troubled in his mind. ⁹ and of the.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ omitted.

¹¹ of you.

¹² from.

¹³ Fol. lxxxxix. back, col. 1.

¹⁴ well.

¹⁵ that.

but he offers him
food and drink
in an inner
chamber, richly
furnished.

As long as Huon
remains in the
castle, he shall
have any manner
of food and wine
he may desire.

Huon demands
what people they
are that inhabit
this place,

but the fairy is
wrathful at the
question.

He tells Huon,
however, that the
castle was built
by Oberon's
father, Julius
Cæsar,

hunger / ¹therefore, yf ye wyl drynke or ete, enter into
yonder ryche chambre the which ye se open / where ye
shal fynd the table redy set,² and the pottys of syluer
and the wessell of golde borderyd with precyous stonys ⁴
and perle / and the basyns of golde, with¹ ewers with
water to wasshe your handys / then³ syt⁴ downe at the
table and there ye shall fynde metis and drynkis such
as ye wyll wysshe for, and as longe as ye wyl tary here ⁸
in this castell, ye shall haue euery daye lyke seruys or
better yf ye lyst / for any mete that ye wyl wysshe for
ye shal haue it at your desyre,⁵ and of wyne in lyke
wyse two tymys in⁶ the day, without ye wyl fast. But, ¹²
syr, I requyre you of one thinge : that fro henseforth ye
do not coniure me nor none of my company / and then
ye shall haue euery thyng at your desyre.' 'syr,' quod
Huon, 'for henseforthe I shall not speke to⁷ you / so ¹⁶
that by the coniuracyon that I haue coniuryd you, ye
wyll shewe me what people ye be that abyde thus⁸ in
this castell, and what ye call this castell, and who is
lorde therof / and by whome al the ryches that is here ²⁰
within is kept? I wyll go ete some mete, and then I
praye you shewe⁹ me.' Then they answeyrd Hu¹⁰on
ryght fersly, and sayd / 'and,¹¹ thou false and vntrewe,¹²
for to demaund any suche thyng of vs / at this tyme I ²⁴
shall shew you / but afterwarde / by me nor by none
other of my company ye shall neuer here worde
spoken.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'therof¹³ I am sory,⁴ and
I hartely desyre you yet yf here after I speke to⁷ you ²⁸
alone that ye wyll answere me.' 'Naye, suerly,' quod
he, 'that wyll I neuer do / but I shall shewe you that
I haue promysyd,¹⁴ syn ye wyll¹⁴ knowe it. Syr, knowe
for trouthe that Iulius Cesar, father to the¹⁵ noble kyng ³²

¹ and. ² and the cloth layd. ³ and there. ⁴ you.
⁵ pleasure. ⁶ of. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ heere. ⁹ it vnto me.
¹⁰ Fol. lxxxix. back, col. 2. ¹¹ Ah. ¹² knight.
¹³ the request. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ seeing you are so desirous to.
¹⁵ good and.

- Oberon, causyd this castell to be made by crafte of the fayry / the whiche castell can not be greuyd no take parforce / so it fortunel that¹ on² a daye that Iulius
- 4 Ceser, after he had vanquesshed y^e great pompey / he came into Alexandre to Tholomeus kyng of Egypt, and dysecomfytyd hym and toke fro hym all his londis to gyue it to³ his syster, the fayre Cleopatre, who was
- 8 quene of that londe, and after she maryed Marcus Antonius / and after that Iulius Ceser had this done to refresshe hym / he come hether withe the quene of the preuy Isle / and broughte her the same nyght into this
- 12 castel / and there were .iiii. kyngys of the lynage of Tholomeus, who when they knew that Ceser was in this castell / they made an army, and with many shypmys and galys they came, and laid sege before this
- 16 castell / and laye at the sege a longe space and coude not hurte it of the value of a⁴ peny / so long they lay here that they were sore dyspleasyd therewith / and so they thought to depart home into theyr owne countrees /
- 20 but by reason that theyr shypmes were naylyd with Iron naylis they coude not departe⁵ hence. For the Adamante stone, that by nature drawethe⁶ the Iron to³ hym / and so they laye here so longe that they all dyed
- 24 miserablye for famyne and rage / for no shyppe can depart⁵ hens without it be pynnyd with nayles of woode and not of Iron. And where as ye demaunde fro whence comythe the treasure that is here within this
- 28 castell / knowe for a truthe that it was the ryches that these thre kyngys lefte in theyr shypmys when they were dede⁷ / the which treasure, after that they were ded, Cesar causyd it to be brought into this castell /
- 32 and or⁸ he dyed he delyueryd vnto me the keypyng of this castell and treasure. And I and .xl. other of my felawes are here condempnyd by the fayrey to abyde

and that no force
can harm it.
After Cesar
defeated Pompey,
he came to
Alexandria, and,
having conquered
Ptolemy, the king
of Egypt, gave
his lands to his
sister Cleopatra,
who wedded
Mark Antony.

Thence he came
to the castle
with the lady of
the secret isle.
Three kings of
Ptolemy's family
besieged him
here,

but they could
do him no hurt.

And their ships
were drawn to the
Adamant rock,
because of the
iron nails,
and the besiegers,
being unable to
depart, died of
famine.

The riches in the
castle were left
in the Egyptian
ships,
and were brought
within the walls
after the death of
all who sailed in
them.

¹ omitted.² vppon.³ vnto.⁴ one.⁵ from.⁶ Fol. c. col. 1.⁷ dyed.⁸ before.

Forty-one men
are condemned to
abide in the castle
till the world's
end.

After Cæsar's
murder at Rome,
Oberon swore
never to visit the
castle again.

The fairy
speaker's name
is Gloriadas,
and the castle is
called the
Adamant.

After Huon had
eaten and drank,
he came to a
chamber door,

and having found
the key, he
entered.

It is made of
crystal painted
with gold and
azure.
All the battles of
Troy and
Alexander's deeds
are portrayed
there.

The floor is
covered with
sweetly-scented
flowers,
and singing-birds
fly about the
room.

here to¹ the ende of the worlde. And² when that
tydynges came to the knowlege of³ kynge Oberon that
his father, Iulius Cesar, was slayne and murderyd
within the senat of Rome by them whome he trustyd⁴
well / kynge Oberon toke suche dyspleasure that he
made promyse and assurement that he wolde neuer
come here more / & no more he hath done, for he
thought yf he shuld haue comen hether⁴ he shulde⁸
haue dyed for sorow, for the great loue that he had
vnto his father Iulius Ceser. And syn ye wyll knowe
my name, I am callyd Gloriadas, and this castell
is callyd the Adamante. Nowe I haue shewyd you the¹²
trouthe of your demaund, and one thyng I saye to¹ you,
ye shall neuer departe⁵ hens as longe as you leue,
without ye flye in the ayre as a byrde dothe flye.⁶

¶ when Huon vnderstode hym he was ryght¹⁶
sorowfull. And so after he hadde well eten and
dronken at his owne pleasure, he toke his leue and
departid, and⁷ came to¹ a dore of a chambre, and sawe
letters of gold wryten ouer the dore, wherby he had²⁰
knowlege where the key was / he toke it and openyd
the dore and enteryd into the chambre, and saw how⁸
all the chambre was made of Chrystall payntyd rychely
with gold and Asure. And there was porturyd⁹ all the²⁴
bataylys of Troye and all the dedys of Alexander.
And on¹⁰ the pauement was sprede a brode Roses and¹¹
flowres, and herbys, swete smellynge aboue all other
sauorys of the worlde, and in the chaumbre there were²⁸
dyuers byrdys flyenge about¹¹ the chaumbre,¹¹ syngynge
so maruaylous swetely that¹² ioie it was to here them.
The rychesse and¹³ beaulty of that chaumbre can¹⁴ not
be dyscryuyd. Huon had maruaylous great pleasure to³²

¹ vnto. ² Nowe. ³ the noble. ⁴ again, that.

⁵ from. ⁶ nowe I haue shewed you your desire.

⁷ Fol. c. col. 2. ⁸ that. ⁹ portraiture of the.

¹⁰ vppon. ¹¹ omitted. ¹² great. ¹³ and melodie.

¹⁴ could.

beholde it / ¹there he sawe a table set full of mete / The rarest food
is spread upon a
table,
 and therby stode great pottys of gold garnysshyd with
 precyous stonys full of wyne / there was no mete in the
 4 world but that there it was redy / Huon had good and Huon eats of
it.
 apetyte to ete, for he hadde eten but lytell before / by
 reason of the talkynge that he had withe Gloriadas.
¹Then two yenge men broughte hym a basyn of golde A gold basin is
brought him by
two young men
to wash his
hands.
 8 broderyd with perles to wasshe his handys / & a nother
 brought hym a towell to wype his handys. Then Huon
 sate downe at a ryche table, the whiche was broderyd
 with prsyous stonis / the clothe that laye vpon the
 12 table was of sylke ryehely wroughte / Huon dyd ete his
 mete, for he had good apetyte therto / a goodlye yonge
 man caruyd vnto² hym, and another bare his cuppe /
 Many folkes there was to ³do all y^e³ seruyse that All the services
he may require
are done for him
by youths,
to whom he
speaks without
reply from them.
 16 myghte be done⁴ vnto any creature leuyng in y^e
 worlde / and he spake to⁵ them, but none wold answer⁶
 one word, ⁷wherwith he ⁸had great dyspleasure; ⁸but
 when he saw there was none other remedy he⁹ let it pas
 20 and forgat it, bycause of the swete melody that the
 byrdys made. oftentymes he wysshyd for¹⁰ Esclaramond
 his wyfe, ⁴and for his doughter Clariet, and for Gerames /
 Barnard / and Rycharde, and his other companye that
 24 he lefte at Burdeaux: thus Huon was seruyd in the
 castell of the adamant / when he had dynyd the
 seruauantis toke vp y^e table and brought hym water & a
 towel to wasshe his handis / then he rose¹¹ fro the table
 28 and went¹² into the seller, where as he saw euery
 thyng as he had sene before / he salutyd them in
 passynge forby,¹³ but they made none answer / so he
 cam to⁵ the greses and mountyd vp / and then wente
 32 and sportyd hym fro chambre to chambre / and then

¹ and. ² for. ³⁻³ haue done. ⁴ omitted.⁵ vnto. ⁶ him. ⁷ Fol. c. back, col. 1.⁸⁻⁸ was angrie and sore displeased. ⁹ did.¹⁰ his wife the faire.¹¹ vp.¹² downe.¹³ by.

At length he
 leaves the
 beautiful
 chamber,

and returns to
the garden above.
When he is
hungry again,
he goes again to
the cellar, and
the fool is ready
for him as before.
Although he is
angry because
none will speak
with him, his
health recovers,

and he wishes
himself at
Bordeaux
battling with
his enemies.

At length he sees
a Spanish ship
approaching the
port.

into the gardayne, wherin he toke great pleasure; and
when the tyme came¹ to ete he retournyd in to the
seller, and so into the chambre wher as he found euery
thyng redy as he had done before / but he was sore² 4
displeasyd that they that seruyd hym wold not speke
no word / thus he³ was there a hole moneth / and toke
suche pleasure there that he recoueryd his helth and
strengthe and beautye / greatly he was anyoyed *that* 8
there was no man there that wold speke one worde to⁴
hym / oftentymes he wysshyd hymselfe at Burdeaux
with a .C.M. men of⁵ armis to gyue batayle to⁴ y^e
emperour who had done hym so moche damage. And 12
on⁶ a daye as Huon walkyd in the hall saynge⁷ his
prayers, he lokyd out at a wyndow into the see / and he
saw a far of a⁸ shyp with full sayle comynge⁹ to a ryue
at that porte / and they were .iiii. score marchauntys 16
all of Spayne / ¹⁰they knew not what port they
aryuyd¹¹ at.

¹² ¶ How Huon saw a shyp aryue at the port
of the¹³ Adamant. Ca. C.xvii. 20

Huon fears for
the safety of the
ship,



but it dashes in
among the old
rotten ships,
and is unhurt.

Hen Huon saw this shyppe arryue at
the porte he greatly complaynyd for
them, and sayd / 'a, good lord, what
asorte of good marchauntis haue here 24
bene lost / yf they of yonder shyppe
knewe therof they wolde not arryue here by theyr
wylles' / and so then he sawe the shyppe com in with
such a force, and it dassed in so sore amonge the 28
other olde shypys, that the shyppe was nere¹⁴ perysshed.
But the other vesselles¹⁵ / were so old that they were

¹ for. ² and greatly. ³ Huon. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ at.

⁶ vpon. ⁷ of. ⁸ a a in text.

⁹ comynge before with full. ¹⁰ and.

¹¹ did arriue. ¹² Fol. c. back, col. 2. ¹³ Castle of the.

¹⁴ haude. ¹⁵ shippes.

- rotten, so that ther by the new shyppe was sauȝd who
 had bene .xx. dayes in tourment in¹ the see / so that
 the men that were within it were so² sore trauayld and
 4 faynte for famyne, that they were scante³ able to sus-
 tayne themselfe on⁴ theyr fete. ¶ When Huon sawe
 them aryue all wepyng he complaynyd for them, for
 he sawe well they were all lost, and that they shulde
 8 neuer departe⁵ thense / when the shyppe was a ryuyd,
 the marchauntis within it callyd vpon Mahound to
 ayde⁶ them / and the mayster of the shyppe stode vp
 and wente ⁷on londe,⁷ and lokyd towardis the castell
 12 and sawe Huon where he stode lenyng in a wyndowe,
 wherof they had great ioye, thynkyng that they were
 arruyd at a good port / supposyng that he that they
 sawe there before them had bene the lorde of the
 16 castell / by cause he was so marueylous rychely
 aparayld.⁸ Then they salutyd Huon in the name of
 Mahounde theyr god. ¶ When Huon hard that he
 knew suerlye that they were Sarasyns, and he⁹ coude
 20 very wel ¹⁰speke the spanyssh language, answeyrd to the
 mayster and said / 'frendis, ye that be here aryuyd /
 shewe me¹¹ the trouthe fro whence ye ar come, and what
 ye be / for be you⁹ sure as longe as ye lyue ye shall
 24 neuer depart⁵ hense / and without ye haue vytayles
 brought with you, ye are ¹²here yll aryuyd.¹² Then the
 mayster trymbelyng, sayd / 'syr, know for trouthe⁹ I am
 of¹³ Spayne, and of ¹⁴the citey of Luysarne, and that¹⁵
 28 that ¹⁶be here¹⁶ with me ar al marchauntis of Portyngale
 and come fro the citey of Acre, and there we chargyd
 our shyp with marchaundyse / & we had¹⁷ good wynd
 till¹⁸ we were passyd the stratis of Marrocke, and that

The new vessel
had met with
rough weather,

and the men were
exhausted from
want of food.

They see Huon
at a window of
the castle,

and salute him
in the name of
Mahomet.

Huon asks
whence they
come.

The master of the
ship replies that
they are Moors of
Spain, travelling
home from Acre,

¹ on. ² omitted. ³ scarce. ⁴ vppon. ⁵ from.

⁶ and to succour. ⁷⁻⁷ a shoare. ⁸ and. ⁹ that.

¹⁰ Fol. ci. col. 1. ¹¹ (I pray you).

¹²⁻¹² all arrived at an unfortunate place.

¹³ the country. ¹⁴ dwelling in. ¹⁵ they.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ are come hether. ¹⁷ a maruaylous. ¹⁸ vntill.

who have been
driven from their
course.

In their storm-
tossed wanderings
they had rescued
the bishop of
Lisbon and his
chaplain from
shipwreck, who
are on board.

The ship is
without food,
and all on board
are starving.

we were nere to our owne countre / ¹then a tourment
and a tempest¹ toke vs & draue vs of fro² our owne
countre, ³the whiche³ tempest hath ⁴enduryd this⁴.xx.
dayes / ⁵so that perforce⁵ we were feyne⁶ to abandon ⁴
our shyp to the⁷ see and wynd,⁸ as the shyp wold go
at a venture, and⁹ at last ¹⁰we aryuyd¹⁰ by a great rocke,
and there we cast ancre ; and whyles¹¹ we laye there we
founde on¹¹ the rocke¹² y^e bysshop of Lysbone, and ¹³his 8
chapelayne¹³ with hym, who came thether dryuynge on¹⁴
a mast of a shyp that had bene perysshed, and⁹ all¹⁵ his
company were¹⁶ by ¹⁷the fortune of the¹⁷ see. Then the
byssshop and his chapelayne ¹⁸prayed me humbly¹⁸ to ¹²
saue theyr lyues, and to take them in to my shyp, and¹⁹
I had ²⁰pitye of²⁰ them, and ²¹delyueryd them fro the
daunger,²¹ & toke them in to my shyp, and gaue them
mete²² and other thynges suche as I had, for they had ¹⁶
bene²³ dede by famyne and ²⁴I had not ²⁵geuen them
mete²⁵ / and yet I thynke²⁶ they wyll be dede for famyne
or it be to morowe at nyght / for²⁶ I haue no more
vytaylor, nother for my selfe nor for such as be within ²⁰
my shyp / thus, syr, I haue ²⁷answeryd to your
demaunde / and therefore, ²⁸syr, I requyre²⁸ you, in
the honour of god & of mahound, to shew me to
whom this castell doth apartayne, and who is lorde ²⁴

¹⁻¹ and then suddenly a great tempest arose and.

² the coast of. ³⁻³ a great distance, and this.

⁴⁻⁴ continued these. ⁵⁻⁵ past, so extremely that.

⁶ perforce. ⁷ raging of the. ⁸ euen. ⁹ but,

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ by good fortune we chaunced to.

¹¹⁻¹¹ presently after the we were arriued there we went vp
into. ¹² and there we founde.

¹³⁻¹³ one of his chaplains. ¹⁴ vpon. ¹⁵ the rest of.

¹⁶ drowned. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ misfortune at.

¹⁸⁻¹⁸ humbly prayed me to haue pite vpon them and.

¹⁹ whereuppon. ²⁰⁻²⁰ compassion on.

²¹⁻²¹ (as one verie glad and willing to deliuer them from
that daunger), I. ²² and drinke. ²³ almost.

²⁴ yf. ²⁵⁻²⁵ succoured them.

²⁶⁻²⁶ that they will not liue vntill to-morrow at night, for
truly. ²⁷ Fol. ci. col. 2. ²⁸⁻²⁸ I desire.

therof, and what is the name therof, and of this porte
 where as we be aryuyd.' 'Frende,' quod Huon, Huon informs
 the master that
 the castle is hated
 by Saracens
 'know for trouthe this castell and porte is the place
 4 in the world most hatyd and doughtyd of paynmys
 and Sarasyns, and I shall shewe you the cause why /
 this castell is set on a rocke of Adamante stonys,
 so that yf any shyp¹ come hether by aduventure²
 8 can neuer departe³ agayne. For the Adamant is of
 that nature that it drawethe all wayes to⁴ hym the
 Iron / and therefore any shyp that is naylyd or haue in
 it any Iron, and by hap⁵ come nere this port, by force²
 12 shall be constraynyd here to aryue.' when the mar-
 chaunt hard Huon / he began sore to wepe, and⁶ so dyd
 all the other and sayd / 'syr, we are sore⁷ abasshyd of
 this⁸ that ye haue sayde.' 'Frende,' quod Huon, 'all
 16 that I have sayd is of trouth; but, syrs, yf ye wyll
 byleue me, and to⁹ take on¹⁰ you chrystendome,
 and byleue on the faythe of Jesu chryste, and byleue
 farmely in hym, you and all suche as be in your
 20 shyppe I shall brynge you into suche a place where as
 ye shall haue mete and drynke at your pleasure / and
 apparell as ryche as ye shall demaunde / & then
 I shall shewe you so moche golde and rychesse
 24 that ye shall be satysfyed with the beholdynge therof.
 Therefore yf ye wyll byleue on¹¹ god¹² ye shall haue
 all this that I haue sayd before, or elles ye shall
 all dye of rage,¹³ of famyne myserably.' ¶ when
 28 the patron¹⁴ harde Huon, he sayde, 'syr, knowe for
 trouthe it is¹⁵ vii yeres paste syn I¹⁶ beleuyd fyrste
 of¹⁶ the faythe of our lorde¹⁷ Jesu chryst, and, ¹⁸syr, I
 thanke you of the curteysy that ye¹⁹ offer¹⁹ me; & fro

because of the
 power of the
 adamant on
 which it is
 built.

The newcomers
 are sorely
 distressed,

but Huon
 promises
 to bring them
 safely out of
 danger if they
 will be converted
 to Christianity.

The master of the
 ship is willing to
 embrace the
 Christian
 religion.

¹ chance to. ² it. ³ from hence. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ chaunce.

⁶ lament and. ⁷ dismayed and. ⁸ these words.

⁹ omitted.

¹⁰ vpon.

¹¹ vppon.

¹² and of his sonne Iesus Christ. ¹³ and. ¹⁴ had well.

¹⁵ about.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ beleued vpon.

¹⁷ and Sauour.

¹⁸ Fol. ci. back, col. 1.

¹⁹⁻¹⁹ haue shewed vnto.

Huon bids him
order his
company to
follow his
example.

All are ready to
comply with
their master's
command.

The bishop of
Lisbon and his
chaplain ascend
the steps leading
to the castle.

hensforthe I submyt me to the sauegarde of¹ god and
of his² mother, the blessyd vyrgyn Mary, & to them I
commende my sowle.² when Huon hard that he was
ryght ioyfull, and sayd, 'frind, go to thy shyp, and 4
moue³ all thy company to byleue on⁴ Jesu chryste /
and shewe them what parell⁵ they be in nowe / and
what welthe they shall haue yf they byleue⁶ on god⁶ /
and also shewe them what pleasure they shall fynde in 8
this plase / and yf they wyll not thou mayst wel say
that they are come to theyr laste ende shortely / and
the .ii. men that thou hast sauyd cause them to com
hether to⁷ me' / 'syr,' quod the patron, 'I shall sende 12
them to⁷ you' / then he departyd and enteryd in to his
shyp / and there he shewyd his company all *that* he
had harde of Huon, and⁸ was commaundyd to shewe⁹
them / when the marchantis, who were¹⁰ paynyns,¹¹ 16
harde theyr patron¹² in what case & parell they were
in / they answeyrd all¹³ how¹⁴ they were redy all¹⁵ to
do his pleasure, and to receyue chrystendome, wherof the
patron was ryght ioyfull.¹⁶ Then the patron sent for y^e 20
bysshop and his nephue, who was his chaplayn, &
sayd / 'syrs, in the castell there is a lord who wyll¹⁷
that ye¹⁸ incontynent go¹⁹ a lond, and go to speke with
hym.' when the bysshop harde the patron he rose vp 24
with moch payne from fayntenes, by reason of famyne,
and sayd how¹⁴ he wolde gladly fulfyll his commaunde-
ment. Then he and his chapelayne departyd out of
the shyp, and came to the stayres, and mountyd vp to 28
the castell / but they were fayn to reste them by the
waye dyuers tymys²⁰; when they came to⁷ the gate they

¹ almightie. ²⁻² sonne Iesus Christ. ³ remoue.

⁴ vppon. ⁵ and daunger.

⁶⁻⁶ vppon almightie god & of his sonne Iesus Christ.

⁷ vnto. ⁸ what he. ⁹ say vnto. ¹⁰ all. ¹¹ had.

¹² declare. ¹³ all answered. ¹⁴ that. ¹⁵ readie.

¹⁶ to heare them say so. ¹⁷ prayeth you. ¹⁸ omitted.

¹⁹ wil come. ²⁰ and.

marueyld greatly of the great beaute and ryche warke
 that they sawe there¹ / so they² came to³ Huon, who
 taryed for them at the hall dore. when they came
 4 nere to³ hym they humbly salutyd hym. 'Syr,' quod
 Huon, 'god saue you,¹ I praye you shewe me the
 trouthe of what countre be ye of.' 'Syr,' quod the
 bysshop, ⁴'syn it please you⁴ to knowe I shall shew you
 8 the trouthe / syr, I was borne in the citeye of Burdeaux,
 and am bysshop therof, & haue bene this .xx. yere /
 and a deuosyon toke me to go a pylgremage to the holy
 sepulture / but god wold not suffer vs so to do; for
 12 when we were departyd fro Lysbone, a great wynde &
 tourment rose vpon our shyppe / the whiche was fayre
 and ryche, and well furnysshyd with marchauntis / &
 so by fortune our shyp ran againste a rocke, so that
 16 our shyp brast⁵ all to pecys / ⁶so that⁶ all our company
 were there⁷ drownyd, excepte myselfe and my chape-
 layne, who is my nephue, and so⁷ we .ii. sauyd our
 selues on⁸ y^e maste of our shyp, flotyng on⁸ the see /
 20 and⁷ so⁹ by the grace of god / the shyp that is here
 beneth aryuyd by fortune at the porte nere to³ the
 rocke, and I prayed hym in the honour of god¹⁰ to saue
 our lyues / and the patron had petye¹¹ of vs, & toke vs
 24 in to his shyp, and dyd as¹² moch for vs as thoughe we
 had bene his bretherne / syr, thus I haue shewyd you
 owre aduenture. And, syr, I requyre ye pardon me in
 that I so¹³ sore regarde¹³ you / but, syr,⁷ I shall shewe¹⁴
 28 the cause whye I do it / me thynke I see before me y^e
 good duke Seunyn of Burdeaux, who swetely nouryshed
 me in my youthe: ye greatly resemble to³ hym, and
 he¹⁵ set me to scole to¹⁶ Parys, and then he sente me

Huon questions
 them as to their
 history.

The bishop replies
 that he was born
 at Bordeaux,
 and for twenty
 years was bishop
 of the city.

He and his
 chaplain left
 Lisbon on a
 pilgrimage,
 and were wrecked
 at sea.

The Saracens
 who are in the
 ship below
 rescued them.

The bishop notes
 the resemblance
 of Huon to Duke
 Sevin of
 Bordeaux,
 who was his
 benefactor in his
 youth;

¹ and. ² Fol. ci. back, col. 2. ³ vnto.
⁴⁻⁴ seeing it is your pleasure. ⁵ burst. ⁶ and there.
⁷ omitted. ⁸ vppon. ⁹ that.
¹⁰ and of his sonne Iesus Christ. ¹¹ and compassion.
¹² so, ¹³⁻¹³ stearnly behold. ¹⁴ you (quoth he).
¹⁵ ge in text. ¹⁶ at.

through the
duke's good
offices he obtained
the see of Milan.

The bishop knows
Huon's features,
but he does not
recognize him to
be his benefactor's
son.

He relates how
his father was
brother to the
abbot of Cluny,
who brought
Huon up.

Huon embraces
the bishop as his
cousin,
and declares his
name.

to Rome, to¹ our holy father the pope of Rome, to
whome I was a kyne, and he dyd me moch good, and²
gaue me the bysshoprych of Myllayne. duke Se³uen is
dede / ⁴& he had .ii. sones, the eldest callyd Huon, & ⁴
the other Gerrarde / Huon was sent for to paris by kyng
Charlemayne, & by the way there fel to¹ hym a mar-
ueylous adventure, for he slewe the kynges sone Charlot
in his own defen[ce] not knowynge that it was the ⁸
kyngys sone, wherfore the kyng banysshed hym⁵ the
realme of Fraunce, and sent him to the Admerall
Gaudys in Babylon to do his message, and afterwarde
he returnyd into Fraunce. And syn he hath had great ¹²
warre with the emperoure of Almayne / more I can not
saye, and I am⁶ sory that I know not where he is
becum, for my father, who was brother to y^e⁷ abbote of
Cluney, longe agone norryshed Huon vp in his youth ¹⁶
or⁸ his father duke Seuyn dyed / my father dyd teche
him, wherfore I haue great sorowe⁹ at myne harte that
I knowe not where he is becom synne the peas was
made¹⁰ betwene hym and the kyng of fraunce.' when ²⁰
Huon vnderstode¹¹ the bysshop,¹² his blud changyd, and
embrasyng hym swetely,¹³ sayd / 'Syr, ye are my
cosyn : I am Huon who passed the see and went to the
admyrall Gaudys, and I¹⁴ slew hym, and led away ²⁴
with me his doughter, the fayre Esclaramonde / who
was maryed to¹ me by¹⁵ the pope / and I haue left her
in the cyte of Bourdeaux in great pouerte,¹⁶ besegyed by
the emperour of Almayne / I byleue suerly¹⁷ she is ²⁸
taken by this tyme.' when the bysshop hard Huon he
began sore to wepe / and Huon embrasyd and kyssed
hym, and sayd, 'cosyn, ye ar happy to fynde me
here / ¹⁸elles shortly ye had been dede' / 'syr,' quod he, ³²

¹ vnto. ² hee. ³ Fol. cii. col. 1. ⁴ God be with him.

⁵ out of. ⁶ right. ⁷ good. ⁸ before.

⁹ and greefe. ¹⁰ and concluded. ¹¹ had well heard.

¹² and vnderstode him. ¹³ he. ¹⁴ I omitted.

¹⁵ our holy Father. ¹⁶ and miserie. ¹⁷ that. ¹⁸ or.

'I ought greatly to thanke god therof. But, syr, I
 requyre you¹ gyue me som mete / for I am so sore
²famysshyd *that* I can scant² sustayne my selfe on³
 4 my fete.' ⁴'Cosyn,' quod Huon, 'by the grace of god
 I shall brynge you to suche a place where as ye shall
 haue mete and drynke at your wysshe.'⁵ Then Huon
 toke him by the hand and brought him into the palays
 8 and thurgh the chambres / the bysshop was⁶ abashed
 to se y^e great⁷ ryches that he saw there. Then they
 went downe into the seller / the bysshope beheld the
 maner of euery thyng, and had⁸ maruayle that none of
 12 them that he saw there wolde not speke any word /
 he passed by them with Huon, and salutyd them / then
 he enteryd into the ryche chambre / where as the table
 was redy, and seruantis to gyue them water, and they
 16 all .iiii. sate downe / ⁹then Huon sayde to the bysshop,
 'cosyn, I coniure you by the sacramente that ye haue
 reseuyd / that ye nor your chapelayne be so hardy¹⁰ to
 ete one morsell of mete yf any of you be in any dedly
 20 syn / yf ye be incontynent, confesse you to your chape-
 layne, and he to¹¹ you; for yf ye do otherwyse ye shal
 no soner ete one morsell but incontynent ye shall dye.
 ¶ when the bysshop¹² vnderstode Huon he had
 24 great maruayle, and sayd / 'cosyn, by the grace of god I
 fele my selfe in good estate¹³ to abyde dethe¹⁴: when I
 departed fro rome, Both I and my nephu were confessed
 and assoyled ¹⁵of the pope¹⁵ of all our synnes / and syn
 28 we enteryd in to the see we haue done¹⁶ no synne.'
 Then Huon sayd, 'cosyn, syn¹⁷ ye be bothe in this case
 ye maye ete and drynke at your pleasure' / and so they

The bishop begs
Huon to give him
food.

Huon leads him
to the castle
cellar,

and warns him
and his chaplain
not to eat of the
rich food there
spread before
them unless
they are free from
deadly sin.

The bishop
declares himself
and his chaplain
free from sin.

¹ to.

²⁻³ punished with hunger and thirst, that I am neere hand
famished and can scarce.

³ vpon. ⁴ Fol. cii. col. 2.

⁵ pleasure, and such as you will wish for. ⁶ greatly.

⁷ omitted. ⁸ great. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ as. ¹¹ vnto.

¹² had well heard and. ¹³ not. ¹⁴ for.

¹⁵⁻¹⁵ before and assoyled. ¹⁶ committed. ¹⁷ seeing that.

They eat and
drink at their
pleasure.

They marvel at
the sumptuous
furniture of the
room,

and at its sweet
odours and
sounds.

Huon, after the
meal, bids the
bishop go down
to the ship and
baptize the crew.

Elinas, the master
of the ship, had
converted all the
Saracens but ten.

dyde / ¹they had nede therof / they all thre were
rychely seruyd : they had euery thyng as they wyssshyd
for / the bysshoppe and his nepheue dyd ete and drynke,
and they were greatly ²abasshyd of the great rychesse ⁴
that they sawe there / & they were rauysshyd with
the swete syngynge of the byrdys, and y^e herbes &
flowres that were there spred abrode smellynge so
swetely that they thought themselues in Paradyse / and ⁸
they had great maruayle to se the seruauztis to serue
them so pesably, but they wold neuer speke one worde /
they wold gladly a demaundyd the cause why / but
Huon had expresly chargyd them³ they shulde make ¹²
none inquiry. Thus passyd theyr dyner in great
ioye / & so⁴ wasshyd theyr handys and rose vp ; ⁵then⁵
the bysshop & his chapelayne sayd grase deuoutly.
Then Huon toke the bysshop by y^e hand, and sayde / ¹⁶
'cosyn, ⁶go we⁶ vp in to the palays, and then ye shal
go downe to⁷ your shyp / and shew them without they
wyll dye incontynent / let them be chrystenyd, and
dresse vp tubbes with water of the see / and halowe ²⁰
you it, and chrysten them therin / and I shall come
after you with my sworde and clene armyd / to the
entent that yf they refuse thus to do, I shall stryke of
theyr hedys.' 'Syr,' quod the bysshop, 'I shal do ²⁴
your pleasure.' Then Huon armyd hym,⁸ and wente
after the bysshop and his nepheue downe to the shyp⁹ ;
when they came there they founde Elinas the mayster
of them, who had prechyde so moche to¹⁰ the Sarasyns ²⁸
that he had conuerted them all excepte tenne. they
bare hym in hand that they were glade to be chrystenyd /
but theyr thoughtys was¹¹ otherwyse / for they .x. had
concludyd in theyr corages not to renounce y^e lawe of ³²

¹ for.

² Fol. cii. back, col. 1.

³ that.

⁴ then.

⁵⁻⁵ from the Table and.

⁶⁻⁶ we will go.

⁷ into.

⁸ selfe.

⁹ and.

¹⁰ vnto.

¹¹ were.

macomet¹ for to byleue on² Iesu Chryst / but they were content to be chrystenyd, to thentent that they wold not dye there for famyne. when Huon and the bysshop
 4 was come to³ them the bysshop⁴ sayd, ‘Syr, I requyre you all shew me your entencyon that yf with a good hart not coloured ye wyll be come chrystenid, and byleue on the lawe of⁵ Iesu chryst, & leue the false and
 8 detestable law of mahounde, the which is no thyng worth.’ ‘syr,’ quod they al, ‘shortely delyuer vs, for we⁶ rage for famyne, the which so sore ouer presseth vs,⁶ that we can no lenger endure nor suffer it’ / ⁷when
 12 Huon⁸ hard them he lawdyd⁹ our lorde god, and had great ioye therof; then⁷ the bysshoppe and his chape- layne confessyd them al and assoyld them,¹⁰ and in two great vesselles he¹¹ chrystenyd them all. Then they all
 16 cryed vpon Huon, and sayd / ‘syr, for the loue of our lorde god, get¹² vs some mete / ‘syr,’ quod Huon, ‘ye shall haue incontynente ynow so that ye shall be satysfyed.’ Then Huon and the bysshop & his chapeleyne
 20 all .iii. went into the castell, and chargyd in¹³ theyr neckes mete ynowe & brought it to¹⁴ the shyp / and causyd all the marchauntis to syt down / then⁷ the mete was set before them / & the wyne powryd out in
 24 to cuppes / amonge other sate the .x. Sarasyns, who had rescuyd¹⁵ chrystendome fayntly and falsely / and at y^e fyrst morsell that they dyd put into theyr mowthes sodaynely they dyed: the other marchauntis, when they
 28 saw that, they were greatly abasshyd, and regardyd eche other, and durst not aproche to towche y^e mete, for they¹⁶ went all to haue¹⁶ dyed / ‘syr,’ quod Huon,

Their hunger is, however, so great that they consent to baptism, without believing in Christianity.

After all are baptized they cry out for food.

Meat and wine are set before them in the castle,

but the ten who had received the rite falsely, died on tasting the first morsel.

The rest of the converts fear to eat, lest they die also,

¹ Mahomet. ² vpon. ³ vnto. ⁴ Fol. cii. back, col. 2.

⁵ God the Father, and of his Son our Lord and Sauour.

⁶⁻⁶ be so hungrie and thirstie, that we are almost famished, the which ouerpresses vs so much.

⁷ and. ⁸ had well. ⁹ humbly thanked.

¹⁰ of all their sinnes. ¹¹ omitted. ¹² giue.

¹³ vpon. ¹⁴ into. ¹⁵ the.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ had thought that they would have all.

but Huon
reassures them.

After the meal
the men carry
up the merchan-
dise in their ship
into the castle.

They are de-
lighted with the
fair aspect of the
garden and the
rooms of the
castle.

A happy time
they spend in
their new abode,

be not dismayde of¹ this; for these .x. men *that* are dede dyd baptyse them selues but alonely to saue theyr lyues, & to haue mete / and not with² good harte,³ nor for the loue of⁴ god / therfore be not afrayde, ete and 4 drynke at your ease / for ye shall want none⁵ / when the other marchauntys vnderstode by Huon how *that* ⁶they that dyed were no trew chrysten men they were⁷ abasshyd / and so fell to theyr mete & drynke / ⁸when 8 they had eten & dronken at theyr pleasure they rose and toke all the ryches that was⁹ in the shyp, and caryed it vp into the castell / ⁸when they came there they had great ioy and pleasure to beholde the halles 12 and rych chambres that were there: so moch gold and¹⁰ syluer and other ryches they sawe there *that* they had therof great maruayle. Then they behelde the rych beddys and chambres aparylyd wheras they 16 myght reeste them. ⁸Then they saw the fayre gardayne so pleasaunt and dylectable¹¹ to beholde / ¹²the more they regardyd it the fayrer it semed to¹³ them / the plase was of lenthe and brede a bowe shote & more. 20 And when the owre cam for sopper / *then* Huon led them down into the seller, and after into the¹⁴ chambre where as there was mete and drynke plente / and after supper they went agayne into y^e palays, and laye in 24 the ryche beddys that they founde there redy, and in the mornynge the bysshope and his chapelayne sange¹⁵ masse before Huon and all the other that were there present / and when they wolde ete they wente to the 28 plase acustomyd, & there they founde alwayes redy euery thyng that they desyryd¹⁶ / in the day tyme they wold be in y^e gardayne to sporte them / oftentymes the bysshop prechyd to¹³ to them and confessyd them.¹⁷ 32

¹ nor abashed at. ² a. ³ conscience. ⁴ almightie.

⁵ nothing, but haue all thynges at your wish.

⁶ Fol. ciii. col. 1.

⁷ greatly.

⁸ and.

⁹ were.

¹⁰ ayd in text.

¹¹ delightfull.

¹² that.

¹³ vnto.

¹⁴ rich.


¹⁵ did sing.

¹⁶ or wisht for.

¹⁷ of all their sinnes.

Thus they were there¹ together the space of a moneth,
 in great pleasure and solas. But who so euer had ioye
 Huon had none, for his abydyng there greatly anoyed²
 4 hym / ³ oftentymes he wolde complayne for his wyfe⁴ but Huon
 Esclaramonde, and for his doughter Claryet, and sayde, grieues for his
 'Dame,⁵ as oftentymys⁶ as I remembre what daunger I wife and
 7 haue lefte you in my harte nere departeth out of my daughter.
 8 body / a cursyd emperour, thou causethe me to suffer
 moch yll when I thynke that by this tyme thou haste
 taked my citey / my wyfe / and my chylde, and set
 them in thy preson / I wold yf it were the pleasure of
 12 our lorde god that they were here with me. Then
 I wolde neuer departe⁸ hens : and no more I shal do
 without it by the grace of god / A, syr,⁹ kynge Oberon, He prays for
 ye haue gyuen me your¹⁰ realme of the fayry ; yf it their safety,
 16 might be your pleasure now¹¹ to socoure me as to and begs Oberon
 delyuer me⁸ hense, and to ayde me to dystroy this to aid him against
 emperoure who hathe done me so moche yll.' ¹² the German
 emperor.

¶ How Huon was borne by a gryffon out of
 20 the castell of the Adamant, and how he
 slewe the gryffon and v other yonge gryf-
 fons / and of the fountayne / of the fayre
 gardayne / & of the frute of the tree nere
 24 to the fountayne. Ca. C.xx.

28  Hus as ye haue harde Huon past¹³ the
 tyme in the castel of the Adamant, and
 on¹⁴ a daye he lenyd and lokyd out at a
 wyndowe into the see warde / and he saw
 a farre of a great byrde come flynge¹⁵

Huon perceives
 a great bird

¹ all. ² greened. ³ for. ⁴ the faire Ladie.
⁵ Madame. ⁶ often. ⁷ Fol. ciii. col. 2. ⁸ from.
⁹ noble. ¹⁰ the. ¹¹ so much.
¹² for euer were I bound to your Mightiness. ¹³ away.
¹⁴ vppon. ¹⁵ feyng in text.

flying towards
the castle,

which alights
on a ship near
the rock of
adamant.

With its talons
it seizes one of
the ten Saracens
who lately died,
but who were
still whole and
sound.

The bird, which
is a griffin, carries
the man up into
the air like a
hawk bearing a
pigeon.

Afar off Huon sees
a crystal rock,
whither the bird
flies,
and he longs to
visit it.

He thinks that
the griffin will
return the next
day for more
prey, and that,
arming himself
securely and
lying among the
dead men, he
might be carried
away by the
griffin.

He resolves to
wait, however,
to see if the bird
returns again.

thetherwarde / this byrd or fowle was bygger then any
hors in the worlde / wherof he had great maruayle.
Then he saw where it cam to the same porte, and
lyghtyd in¹ the maste of a great shyp, and sawe how 4
for² the weyght of the fowle the mast had nere hand
broke asonder. Then after he sawe the fowle a lyght
downe into the shyp; and toke with his talantys one
of the .x. men ³that⁴ dyed bycause they wolde not 8
bileue fermely on¹ god⁵ / they coud not putrefye, but
lay styll in the shype all hole and sounde; then the
fowle⁶ lyfte hym vp into the ayre and caryed him
awaye as lyghtly as a hauke wold carry a pegyon. 12
Huon, who saw this, had great maruayle, and behelde
the Gryffon whiche way he dyd flye; and as far of as
he myght se he sawe to his semylytude a great rocke
as whyght to the syght as Crystall / ⁷then he sayd to 16
hymselfe⁸ 'wold to god ⁹I were there, I thynke it be
some place inhabytable⁷;' then he thought to¹⁰ hym-
selfe to com thether agayne the next daye to se yf the
Gryffon wolde come agayne to fech his praye: yf he dyd 20
he thought yf he wolde be out of that¹¹ castell, the
gryffon myght bere hym armyd so¹² suerly that he
shuld do hym no hurte with his talantis / thinkynge to
lye downe armyd with his sword in his hande amonge 24
the dede men / and when the Gryffon had brought
him wher his yonge byrdes were / then to fyght with
the Gryffon / yet he thought or¹³ he wolde thus do he
wolde agayne se yf the Gryffon cam and held the same 28
way as he dyd before / for he thought suerly yf he
retournyd to the same plase it muste nedys be some
londe / for he thought⁹ it¹⁴ impossyble to get out of
that castell by any other maner of wayes. Then Huon 32

¹ vpon.

² with.

³ Fol. ciii. back, col. 1.

⁴ that that *in text*.

⁵ and of his sonne Iesu Christ.

⁶ fowle *in text*.

⁷ and.

⁸ I.

⁹ that.

¹⁰ within.

¹¹ the.

¹² as.

¹³ before.

¹⁴ were a thing.

retournyd to the gardayne to the bysshop and to¹ the
 other companye, and made no semblaunce of that he
 had thought to do;² then he talked with them of
 4 dyuerse maters. And when the tyme came they went
 to ete and drynke as they had bene acustomyd to do
 before. when nyght came and that Huon was in his
 bedde he lay and studyed of the conuayaunce of the
 8 gryffon / desyrynge greatly for the daylight ³to go and
 se yf the Gryffon returnyd to feche his⁴ praye / when
 day came, Huon rose and harde mas,⁵ then he went to
 the wyndowe and lokyd there so longe that at the laste
 12 he sawe a farre of where the Gryffon came flyynge fro the
 same place as he⁶ hadde done the day before / and came
 and sate downe on⁷ the same maste, beholdynge the dede
 men that laye vnder hym,⁴ whiche of them he⁶ myght
 16 take to his⁴ pray / Huon beheld hym⁴ and sawe howe
 he⁶ was a crewell fowle. His⁴ becke⁸ was maruayl-
 ously greate / his⁴ eyen as great as a basyn, and more
 redder than the mouthe of a fornays / and his⁴ talantys
 20 so great and so longe that ferfull it was to beholde
 hym⁴ / and then at last he⁶ alyghtyd downe into the
 shyp and toke one of the dede men⁹ in his⁴ talantis,
 and so mountyd into the ayre / and flewe the same
 24 way as he⁶ dyd the day before. Huon behelde hym¹⁰
 well, and sawe howe¹¹ he⁶ flewe to the whyght rocke.
 This rocke was callyd the rocke of Alexander / for
 when Alexander passyd the desertys of Inde, and
 28 wente to speke with the trees of the sonne / and of the
 mone / he came to¹ y^e same rocke, and at his returne
 he baynyd¹² hym in a fountayne nere to the rocke, and
 there he taryed a sartayne space and sawe there many
 32 thynges. Now let vs leue spekyng of this rocke and
 retourne to¹ Huon / who fyxed his corage / that he

He says no word
 of his plan to his
 companions.

The next day the
 griffin returns
 and seizes another
 corpse.

Huon notices that
 the bird is very
 horrible to look
 upon.

It flies away to
 the crystal rock,
 which is called
 the rock of
 Alexander,

because Alexander
 once stayed there,

¹ vnto. ² and. ³ Fol. ciii. back, col. 2. ⁴ her.

⁵ seruice and.

⁶ she.

⁷ vpon.

⁸ necke.

⁹ bodies.

¹⁰ the Griffen.

¹¹ that.

¹² bathed.

determinyd to be borne thens by the Gryffon, and sayde to¹ hymselfe that he had rather aduenture dethe then to abyde any lenger there / for he hadde so² great desire to se his wyfe and his child that he put fro hym 4 all fere of dethe.

Huon reveals his plan to the bishop and his company, who are very dolorous on hearing him.

The bishop declares that Huon seeks his own death.

Huon replies that his anxious fears for his wife and daughter well-nigh kill him.

Huon is resolved to carry out his device, and is confessed by the bishop.

¶ when Huon sawe that the Gryffon was gone with his³ praye, he went to the⁴ bysshop and⁵ his company, and shewyd⁵ them all that he had sene and thought to 8 do.⁶ when they⁷ harde Huon they began greatly⁸ to wepe, and wrange theyr handys, and⁹ tare theyr here, makyng the greatest sorowe¹⁰ of¹¹ the worlde, and cryed out and sayd / ‘a, cosyn,’ quod the bysshop, 12 ‘by y^e grace of god ye shall neuer take on¹² you suche a folye / ye ought not to seke for¹³ your owne dethe soner then it is the pleasure of god that your owre be come ; syr, for goddes sake forsake vs not / but tary 16 here with vs.’ ‘Frendys,’ quod Huon,¹⁴ ‘I remembre the daunger that I lefte my wyfe, and my chylde, and my citey, and lordis, and burgesses, and comunaltye¹¹ / my harte is so scrowfull¹⁵ therof,¹⁶ that that it nere 20 hande sleeth me / ye shall abyde here in the sauegarde of our lord god / and I wyll take the aduenture that god wyll sende me, and I praye you¹⁷ speke no more to⁵ me in this mater.’¹⁸ when they saw¹⁹ they coude not 24 tourne Huon fro his enterpryse, the sorow that they made no man can declare / that nyght they passid in great sorowe and doloure / tyl²⁰ the next mornynge that Huon arose. Then he came to the bysshope, and 28 was confessyd and receyuyd²¹ his maker²¹ / then he dynyd wel with his companye / ⁶then after²² he went & armyd hym²³ in dobyll armure and with mayle on¹² his

¹ within. ² a. ³ her. ⁴ Fol. C.iii. col. 1.

⁵ vnto. ⁶ and. ⁷ all had. ⁸ pitifully. ⁹ did.

¹⁰ and greefe. ¹¹ in. ¹² vppon. ¹³ omitted.

¹⁴ when. ¹⁵ and so agreeued. ¹⁶ thereat. ¹⁷ to.

¹⁸ for, by the grace of god I will venture it. ¹⁹ that.

²⁰ vntill. ²¹⁻²¹ at his hand. ²² dinuer. ²³ himselfe.

leggyis, and helme on¹ his hede, and gyrte his sword
 abought hym, and when he was rely, and sawe² it was
 tyme to departe, he toke his leue of the bysshoppe and
 4 of all the other, and commaundyd³ them ⁴to⁴ god.
 when the good bysshoppe saw his departure he made
 great sorowe, and so dyde all the other / but none of
 them durste speke any more to⁵ hym / the bysshoppe
 8 embrasyd hym at his departynge, and sayde, 'cosyn,
 in⁶ the ⁷sauegarde of ⁸our lorde⁸ Iesu chryste I
 commende you, and that he may of his grace preserue
 you fro all your enemyes.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'the
 12 great desyre that I haue to ayde and socoure her
 whome I lefte in great pouertye and dought of her lyfe
 constraynethe me thus to departe / for yf I go not by
 this m[ea]nes I must euer abyde here, and then ⁹shall
 16 I false her my promyse / and I wyll kepe my faythe
 and⁹ promys. Thus I recommend you to⁵ god.'¹⁰
 Then he departyd fro them and passyd out of the gate,
 and went downe the stayres and went in to the shyppe,
 20 and then he lokyd into the see and sawe where the
 gryffon was comynge / ¹⁰when he parseyued that he laye
 downe amonge the ded men withe his sword nakyd in
 his hande, and helde it on¹¹ his thye by cause it shulde
 24 not fall in⁶ the see; and as sone as he was layd
 grouelynge¹² a monge the dede men, the Gryffon came
 and ¹³restyd on a¹³ shyp maste as he¹⁴ was acustomyd
 to do / and he¹⁴ was so heuy¹⁵ that the mast ¹⁶bent nye¹⁶
 28 asonder. when Huon saw that, he was in great fere,
 and callyd vp on our lorde Iesu chryste for ayde and

He arms himself
 fully in strong
 armour,
 and takes leave of
 his companions.

Huon passes out
 of the gate of the
 castle, and down
 the steps, and into
 the ship.

The griffin
 approaches,
 and Huon lies
 down among the
 dead men with
 his sword drawn.

He trembles
 for fear,

1 vpon. 2 that. 3 commended.

4-4 all into the sauegarde of almightie. 5 vnto.

6 to. 7 Fol. C.iiii. col. 2.

8-8 almightie god and of his Sonne our Lord and Sauour.

9-9 I shall breake my promise vnto her, but by the grace
 of god I will kepe my faithfull.

10 and. 11 vpon. 12 crewling.

13-13 alighted vpon the. 14 she. 15 and so great.

16-16 was neere haud broken.

but the griffin
seizes him,
and its claws
pierce his armour.

Huon suffers great
pain,
and prays to God
for help.

The griffin bears
him to the white
rock, and, laying
him down, goes
to a fountain to
drink.

Huon rises,
and sees a forest
at hand.

The griffin swoops
down upon him to
devour him,
and Huon pre-
pares to defend
himself.

socoure, and to saue hym fro y^e fell¹ Gryffon / & the
Gryffon, lokinge for his² pray, saw where Huon lay
armyd / wherby he semyd more greater then any of
the other dede men / the Gryffon desyryd to haue hym 4
to his² nest to gyue hym to³ his² yonge byrdis / ⁴so he⁴
cam downe into the shyppe and toke Huon in his²
clees, and straynyd hym so faste by bothe sydes *that* his
clees enteryd into the flesshe for all his harnays,⁵ so 8
that the blode issued out, and Huon was in that
dystresse that all his body trymbelyd, & petuously he
callyd vpon our lorde god for ayde⁶ / but he durst not
stere for any payne that he felt,⁷ the Gryffon⁸ bare hym 12
so hye and so far that in lesse then thre owres he⁹ bare
hym to y^e whyght rocke / and there layde hym downe,
and for trauayle that the gryffon had he¹⁰ flewe downe
the rocke to a fountayne to drynke / the whiche 16
fountayne was of such great vertue that the bountye
therof coude not be descryuyd / and Huon, who lay
on¹¹ the rocke was sore wery for faynt, for the blude
that he had loste / ¹²thought in¹³ hymselfe that yf euer 20
he wolde scape fro that daunger it was tyme for hym¹⁴
to shewe then¹⁵ his prowes / then he rose vp and lokyd
rounde about hym / and sawe howe¹⁶ there was nere
hym a fayre foreste / then he prayed³ our lorde god to 24
ayd⁶ hym to depart¹⁷ thens in sauegard, and that
he myght ones¹⁸ retourne into his owne countre to se
hys wyfe and chylde, whome he so well lound, then anone
he sawe y^e gryffon / who had sene Huon ryse vp; then 28
she came withe her mouthe open to haue deuowryd
Huon, who¹⁹ was repenissed with hye prowes,¹ came
agaynste the Gryffon who had her pawes redy open to
haue grypyd Huon / ¹⁹who was light and quyeke, gaue 32

¹ cruel. ² her. ³ vnto. ⁴⁻⁴ and then she.
⁵ armour. ⁶ and succour. ⁷ Fol. C.iiii. back, col. 1.
⁸ did. ⁹ she did. ¹⁰ she. ¹¹ vpon. ¹² he.
¹³ within. ¹⁴ then. ¹⁵ omitted. ¹⁶ that.
¹⁷ from. ¹⁸ againe. ¹⁹ but he.

- the Gryffon suche a stroke with his sworde that he
 strake of one of his¹ fete by the ioynte, and so the
 gryffon fell to the erth and gaue suche a crye that the
 4 yonge Gryffons, beyng in theyr neste in the foreste,
 harde the crye and knewe wel that it was the voys of
 theyr mother / father had they none, for he was slayne
 but a lytell before by a kynge of perce with his
 8 archers / bycause the Gryffon had slayne the kyngys
 horse for mete for his yong.² Thus when they hard
 the crye of theyr mother they rose vp in to the ayre,
 they were .v. in noumbre; they came all atons with
 12 open wyngis vpon Huon / ³when he ⁴sawe them⁵ all .v.
 comynge on⁶ hym he had great fere / he strake the
 fyrste on⁶ the necke⁷ that he strake of the hede clene
 fro the body. Then the seconde seysyd Huon by the
 16 mayle, that yf he had not stryken of his¹ legge he had
 borne hym vp into the ayre / but Huon gaue hym
 suche a stroke that the legge hangyd styll at the lap of
 his⁸ mayle, then³ he toke it of with his hande and
 20 caste it to the erthe / and with another stroke he slewe
 that Gryffon / ³Then came the thyrd and gaue Huon
 suche a buffet with his wyngis that made Huon to
 knele downe on⁶ one of his knees / Then Huon strake
 24 that Gryffon suche a stroke on the wyng / that it fell
 clene fro the body. And the fourthe he strake of his
 legges / and with another⁹ stroke of his hed, and also
 then he slewe the other with the one wyng / then
 28 came the fyfthe Gryffon, who was bygger then any of
 the other Gryffons / ³then Huon strake at hym, and
 the Gryffon resyd¹⁰ vp his fete and spredde abrode his
 wyngis, and gaue Huon suche a recountre that the noble
 32 knyghte was stryken to the erthe; when Huon felte
 hymselfe hurte and laye on⁶ the erthe, he callyd vp on

He strikes off
 one of the
 griffin's feet,
 and its cry of
 pain rouses the
 young griffins
 in their nest.

Five in number,
 they attack Huon,

but he with great
 prowess slays
 them all one
 after another.

¹ her. ² ones. ³ and. ⁴ Fol. C.iiii. back, col. 2.

⁵ omitted.

⁶ vpon.

⁷ in such sort,

⁸ the.

⁹ stroake.

¹⁰ reared.

god for ayd¹ / for he thought² he shuld neuer haue
 rysen more / & wysshyd hym selfe at that tyme that he
 had taried styl in the castell of the Adamante with his
 company, who for sorowe that they had when Huon 4
 went into the shyppe / they durst not abyde the
 comyng of the gryffon / but went and dyd hyde them
 selues in the castell. And Huon, who was sore
 woundyd withe thys fyfte gryffon, rose vp as well as 8
 he myghte / and came to the Gryffon, who was redy to
 dystroye hym with his becke and naylys. Then Huon,
 lyke a vertuous³ hardyde knyghte⁴ toke corage, and
 lyft vp his sword with bothe his handys, and strake the 12
 Gryffon such a stroke on⁵ the hede that he claue it to
 the braynes, so the Gryffon fell downe dede to the
 erthe.

¶ Howe Huon foughte with the great gryffon 16
 & slew her. C. cxxi.



Hen Huon saw that he had slayne the
 .v. yonge gryffons he thonkyd oure
 lorde god for the grase that he had 20
 sent hym as to ouercome suche .v.
 terryble beastis.⁶ then he sate downe
 to reste hym, and layd his sword by hym, thynkyng
 7 then to be in a suerty⁷ / but it was not longe but that 24
 the great Gryffon, who had brought hym fro the
 castel,⁸ came on⁵ hym with thre fete, and betyng
 with his wyngis / ⁹ when she saw her yonge¹⁰ slayne, she cast
 out a great cry so that all the valey range therof / when 28
 Huon sawe her comyng he was in great fere, for he was
 sore wery with trauayle and losse of blode that it was
 payne to sustayne hymselfe / howbeit he sawe well¹¹ it

The old griffin,
 who was the
 mother of the
 birds that Huon
 had slain, flies
 at the knight,
 who is weak from
 loss of blood and
 the heavy strife.

¹ and succour.

² that.

³ and a.

⁴ Fol. C.v. col. 1.

⁵ vpon.

⁶ foules.

⁷⁻⁷ that they had beene all slaine.

⁸ of the Adamant.

⁹ and.

¹⁰ ones.

¹¹ that.

was¹ nede to defende hymselfe / ²then he came to the
 Gryffon to haue stryken her, but he coude not, the
 gryffon was so nere hym betyngge with her wyngis so
⁴fersly that Huon fell to the erthe, and his sworde fell
 out of his handys, wherof he had great fere / for he
 thought hymselfe in al hys lyfe neuer³ so nere dethe
 as he was then / he callyd then ryght petuously for
⁸ayde⁴ of our lorde Iesu chryste / and the Gryffon⁵ bet
 hym merueylusly with her beke / wyngis / and talouns /
 but the doble⁶ cotys of mayle that he had on were ⁷so
 strong that the gryffon coude not breke them / but yf
¹²the gryffon had not lost before one of ⁸his fete,⁸ and
 loste so moche blod as he⁹ had done, Huon coude neuer
 a seapyd without dethe / the Gryffon so sore defowlyd
 and bet hym that he coude not ¹⁰ryse vp.¹¹ Then he
¹⁶rememberyd hym selfe how¹² he had by his syde a
 rych knyfe, the whyche he brought¹³ fro the castell of
 the Adamant / he drew it out and ther with strake the
 Gryffon on¹⁴ the brest .vi. great strokys, euery stroke as
²⁰depe as the knyfe wold go / and as his hap¹⁵ was this
 knyfe was of ¹⁶two fote longe,¹⁷ and therwith y^e Gryffon
 fell downed / then Huon arose and dyde¹⁸ of his helme,
 and lyfte vp his handis to¹⁹ the¹⁷ heuen & thankyd²⁰
²⁴god of his vycory / ²he was²¹ sore trauaylyd and sore¹⁷
 chargyd with blod and swete / ¹²he dyd¹⁸ of his helme,
 and behelde rounde aboutt hym, and coude se no
 thyngge to trowble hym; when he had taryed there a
²⁸sartayne tyme he rose vp & lokyd downe the rocke,
 then² he sawe a fountayne in a fayre medowe / then he
 went downe and came thether / then² he sawe the
 fountayne so fayre and clere *that* he had great maruayle

Huon fears that
 he shall be kiled
 by the monster.

Huon draws a
 knife that he had
 brought with him
 from the castle,
 and strikes the
 bird six times in
 the brest, so that
 it died.

Huon is weary
 with the fight,

and happily finds
 a clear fountain
 at hand.

¹ great. ² and. ³ neuer *after* himselfe.
⁴ and succour. ⁵ did. ⁶ noble. ⁷ Fol. C.v. col. 2.
⁸⁻⁹ her Legges. ⁹ she. ¹⁰ in no wise. ¹¹ againe.
¹² that. ¹³ with him. ¹⁴ vpon. ¹⁵ fortune.
¹⁶ length. ¹⁷ omitted. ¹⁸ put. ¹⁹ vnto.
²⁰ our lord. ²¹ so.

White jasper with
flowers of fine
gold and azure
forms its
masonry,

and at its bottom
is gravel of
precious stones.

Huon drinks the
water.

All his wounds
heal at the first
draught,

for the fountain
was the fountain
of youth, which
cures all
infirmities.

Huon bathes in
the fountain.

At its side grew
an apple-tree,

and Huon tastes
its fruit.

Beyond he sees an
orchard,

therof / he sawe the masonrye¹ therof ryche, all of
whight Iasper wroughte rychely with flowers of fyne
golde and Asure / ²when he sawe the water so fayre he
hade great desyre to drynke therof / then he dyd of 4
one of his dobyll armure to be the more lyghter, and so
aprochyd to³ the fountayne / and sawe the grauell in
the botome all of presyous stones / ²then he dyde⁴ of
his helme and dranke of the water his fyll, and he had 8
no soner dronke therof but incontynent he was hole of
all his woundys, and as fresshe and lusty as he was
when he came fro the castell of the Ada⁵mant, wherof
he⁶ thankyd our lorde⁷ Iesu chryste. This fountayne 12
was callyd the fountayne of youth, the whiche was of
suche vertue that what so euer sykenes a man or
woman had, yf they baynyd them in the streme of that
fountayne they shulde be hole of all infyrmytyes. 16
Then Huon vnarmyd hym and dyd⁴ of all his clothes,
and bathyd hymselfe in the streme to put away the
blode and swete that his body was colouryd with all /
²when he was clene wasshyd, then he armyd hym⁸ 20
agayne with one of his harnes,⁹ and lefte¹⁰ the other /
by this fountayne there grewe an appell tree chargyd
with leuys and frute / the fayreste that myght be
founde / when Huon sawe the tree chargyd with so 24
fayre frute he rose on¹¹ his fete and aprochyd to³ the
tree,¹² and toke therof a fayre apple and a great, & dyd
ete therof his fyll, for the apple was great / ²he
thoughte¹³ he neuer dyd ete before of suche a frute / 28
'a, good lorde,' quod he, 'I ought greatly to laude &
prayse the, synne¹⁴ thou haste¹⁵ replenysshyd me this
day with such a fountayne and suche frute.' Then he
lokid on¹¹ his ryght hande and sawe a great orcheyarde 32

¹ workemanship.

² and.

³ vnto.

⁴ put.

⁵ Fol. C.v. back, col. 1.

⁶ most humbly.

⁷ and Saviour.

⁸ selfe.

⁹ armours.

¹⁰ off.

¹¹ vypon.

¹² tre in text.

¹³ that.

¹⁴ seeing.

¹⁵ thus.

full of trees, berynge good frute of dyuers sortys, *that*
 great beaute it was to beholde them. This gardayne
 was so fayre that it semyd rather a paradise then a
 4 thyng terrestriall. For out of this gardayne there
 issuyd suche a smell and odoure *that* Huon thought
 that all the bawme and spycery of¹ the worlde coude
 not cast out so swete a smell. 'A, good lorde,' quod
 8 Huon, 'what place is this that I am in / for yf the
 Gryffon had not bene here I wold haue thought² I had
 bene in paradise / good lorde,³ ayde and socoure me
 4so⁴ that I be not loste nor dede.'

which cast forth
 so sweet an odour
 that Huon thinks
 that all the balm
 and spices of the
 world could not
 excel its sweet-
 ness.

12 ⁵¶ How an aungell aperyd to⁶ Huon and
 commaundyd hym to gather thre apples of
 the tree by the fountayne, and no more;
 and how the aungell shewyd hym tidinges
 16 of his wyfe⁷ Esclaramonde, and of his
 doughter Clariet / and shewed hym the
 waye that he shulde go⁸ thens. Ca. C.xxii.



20 Hus as ye haue harde Huon deuysyd
 by hymselfe at the fountayne, then he
 went agayne to the tre, and sayd
 howe² he wolde ete of that frute, and
 gatheryd therof as moche as shulde
 24 suffyce hym for .vi. dayes / and in
 that space he trustyd to come to some place where as
 he shulde haue mete suffycyente. Thus as he was
 goynge to⁹ the tre warde,¹⁰ sodaynely there aperyd to⁶
 28 hym a lyght shynynge, that he thought he was
 rauysshed in the¹⁰ heuen amonge the aungellys / ther-
 with he harde a voyse angelicall, that sayde / 'Huon,

Huon declares
 that he will
 gather enough
 fruit to serve him
 for six days;

but suddenly an
 angel appears to
 him,

¹ in. ² that. ³ God, I pray thee to.

⁴⁻⁴ in all mine affaires and enterprizes, and at this time.

⁶ Fol. C.v. back, col 2. ⁹ vnto. ⁷ the faire. ⁸ from.

⁹ towards. ¹⁰ omitted.

and bids him
gather no more
than three
apples.

The fruit is the
fruit of youth:

it can cause a
man of eighty
years to become
as one of thirty.

Huon promises to
obey the angel's
will implicitly,

and begs for
news of his wife
and child.

The angel recites
the story of the
fall of Bordeaux.

knowe for trouthe that our lorde god commaundythe
the not to be so hardy as to gather anye more frute of
that tre / excepte thre apples, the which god is well
content that thou shalte gather, and no more / here 4
after they shal serue the wel / so that thou do kepe
them clenely & worthely as they ought to be kepte / it
shall not be longe or¹ thou shalte haue great nede of
them / the frute of this tree is callyd the frute of 8
youth / it hathe suche vertue that yf a man of .iiii.
score or of a .c. yerys of age do ete therof, he shall
become agayne as yonge as he was at the age of .xxx.
²yeres. In yonder gardayne thou mayst go and 12
gather of the frute there³ at thy pleasure, and ete
what thou lyst. But ete no more of this tre⁴ that
thou haste eten of,⁵ therefore beware⁶ gather no more
therof excepte the sayde thre appelles / knowe for 16
trouthe⁷ yf thou breke my commaundemente / the
frute shall be derely sold to⁸ the.' 'Syr,' quod Huon,
'lawde and prayse be⁹ to our lorde god my creature,
when he shewethe his grace to⁸ me that am so pouer a 20
synner, and that he wyll thus vyset me / I shall neuer
consent to breke his commaundemente, I had rather
dye.¹⁰ My body and my sowle I recomende to⁸ his
good grace. But thou, the frende¹¹ of god, I requyre 24
the shewe me howe dothe my wyfe Esclaramonde and
Claryet my doughter, whome I haue lefte in my citee
of Burdeux, besegyd by the Emperoure Therry of
Almayne; I haue great fere *that* they be famysshyd 28
within the citee, and my lordis and companye that
I lefte there with her slayne and dede.' 'Frynde,'
quod the voyse, 'know for sartayne that the citee of
Burdeux is taken, and all thy men dede or taken, and 32
thy wyfe in pryson in the great toure of Magence,

¹ ere. ² Fol. C.vi. col. 1. ³ there *after* gather.

⁴ omitted. ⁵ and. ⁶ I charge thee. ⁷ that.

⁸ vnto. ⁹ giuen. ¹⁰ then so to doe. ¹¹ Messenger.

where as the emperoure Therry kepeth her straytly, &
thy doughter Claryet is at Cluny in y^e abbey, wher as
she is wel seruyd / and the abbot, who hathe alwayes
4 louyd the, he hathe her in his kepyng / and she is as
well cherysyd there¹ as sho were his proper² doughter.
‘Syr,’ quod Huon, ‘and whye was she brought thether?’
‘Huon,’ quod the voice, ‘knowe well that Barnarde thy
8 cosyne garmayne brought her thether.’ ‘Frynde,’ quod
Huon, ‘I praye you³ shewe me yf Gerames / ⁴Othon /
& Rychard⁴ be alyue or not?’ ‘Frend,’ quod y^e voyce,
‘at y^e takyng of y^e ⁵citye they were slayne by the
12 Emperour.’ when Huon⁶ harde those petyfull tydyngis
he began tenderly to wepe, complaynyng for⁷ Esclara-
monde his wyfe and for the dethe of⁸ olde Gerames, and
sayd, ‘frynde, I requyre you³ shewe me yf euer I shall
16 scape, consyderyng that I am here closyd in with the
see, the which goethe rounde a boughte this rocke / and
I se no waye to go out there of / Gladly I wolde knowe
yf euer I shall retourne into my countre to se my wyfe
20 & doughter, who ar in great⁹ daunger.’ ‘Huon,’ quod
the voyce / ‘comforte thy selfe / then¹⁰ shalt thou¹¹ see¹²
ageyne thy wyfe esclaramond, and thy chylde¹³ Claryet,
and thy good citye of Burdeaux / but or¹⁴ thou¹⁵ come
24 there thou shalte suffer moche payne and be in great
fere¹⁶ / the emperour Tharry hathe conqueryd all thy
countre and Geronnell is vnder his obeysaunce with the
citye of Burdeaux.’ Then Huon sware and made
28 promyse that yf our lorde Iesu chryst wyll¹⁷ gyue hym
that³ grace that he maye¹⁸ retourne into his² countre,
that suerly he wolde sle the emperoure Tharry, what so
euer ende come therof. ‘Messenger of god, I requyre
32 you³ shewe me by what maner of waye I maye passe

Huon weeps over
the death of
Gerames,

and asks whether
he may escape
from the rock
whereon he
stands.

The angel replies
that he shall only
rejoin his wife
and child after
he has suffered
more ill fortune.

¹ euen. ² owne. ³ to. ⁴⁻⁴ Richard and Othon.

⁵ Fol. C.vi. col. 2. ⁶ had well. ⁷ the faire. ⁸ the.

⁹ feare and. ¹⁰ thou. ¹¹ omitted. ¹² them.

¹³ Daughter. ¹⁴ ere. ¹⁵ shalt. ¹⁶ and danger.

¹⁷ would. ¹⁸ might.

The angel bids
Huon gather
three apples,

and follow a path
leading to some
clear water,

where a ship
awaits him.

He is to let the
ship go what
course it will.

The angel
departs,
bidding Huon
be faithful to
Jesus Christ.

out of this rocke?' 'Huon,' quod the voyse, 'go to
the sayde tree and gather the thre apples as I haue
sayde to¹ the before, and kepe them well and clenly /
for thou shalte hereafter haue so moche profyghte by 4
them that at the ende thou shalte come to¹ thy desyre
and wyll, and shalte be out of thy great payne,
troubyll, & thoughte. Take this lytell pathe that thou
seeste here vpon thy ryghte hande, and so go thou 8
downe to¹ the fote of the rocke, and then² thou shalte
fynde a fayre clere water, & theron³ a fayre shyppe,
enter in to it;⁴ ⁵fyrst go into the gardayne and gather
frute to serue the as long as thou shalt be in the shype / 12
then lose⁶ the shyppe fro the chayne that it is tyed by /
and let the shyppe go whether as it wyll tyll⁷ it come
to the porte where as thou shalte aryue. But be thou
sure or⁸ thou come there *thou* shalt be in as great fere 16
as euer thou wert in all ⁹thy lyfe dayes,⁹ nor thou wert
neuer in so great parell / I commaunde the¹⁰ to the saue-
garde of our lorde Iesu chryste, I go my waye and leue
the here.' Then Huon knelyd downe and held vp his 20
handis, and sayd, 'a, the¹¹ very messenger of god, I
requyre the haue me recommaundyd to¹ my creature' /
'Huon,' quod the voyce, 'be of good comforte, for as
long as thou arte trewe and faythefull thou shalt haue 24
ayde and socoure of our lorde¹² Iesu Chryst, and shalt
attayne to thy desyres / but or¹³ thou come therto thou
shalt suffer moche payne and fere. But after, as I
haue sayde, thou shalte haue welthe ynoughe and 28
exalte all thy fryndys.' Huon was glad of that the
voyce had sayd to¹ hym / but he was in great dyspleasur
in that his wyfe¹⁴ Esclaramond was prysoner in the
citty of Magene, and of the dethe of Gerames and of 32

¹ vnto. ² there. ³ therevpon. ⁴ but.

⁵ Fol. C.vi. back, col. 1. ⁶ vnloose. ⁷ vntill.

⁸ before. ⁹⁻⁹ the dayes of thy life. ¹⁰ in. ¹¹ thou.

¹² and Sauour. ¹³ ere. ¹⁴ the faire.

other his lordis and seruauntys / and sayd to hymselfe,
 'yf he¹ maye the emperoure shall derely abyge that
 bargayne.' Then Huon went to the gardayne and
 4 gatheryd frute to bere into the shyppe. ²Then he wente
 to the fountayne, where as the tree of youthe was therby /
 and then³ by the commaundement of the Aungell he
 gatheryd thre apples / and trussyd them sauely ; and
 8 then he dranke of the fountayne at his pleasure. Then
 he departyd and toke the litell pathe, the whiche was
 betwene the gardayne and the streme that ⁴issuyd out
 of the fountayne / the whyche streme ran and fell into
 12 the great ryuer where as the shyppe laye ; and when he
 was enteryd into this streme he sawe y^e goodlyest
 presyous stonys that euer he sawe, they were so fayre
 and so rych that the value⁵ coude not be estemyd, the
 16 grauell of the streme that issuyd out of the fountayne
 were all precyous stonys, and they cast such lyght that
 al the mountayne and rocke dyd shyne therof, wherof
 Huon had great maruayle. Also he sawe the shyppe
 20 so fayre that he was therof ⁶abasshyd / the ryuer ioynyd
 to the ryche gardayne where as Huon had gatheryd
 fryte of .xiiii. sortys, the which he put into the
 shyppe / ²then recommaundyng hymselfe to our lord⁷
 24 Iesu chryst he enteryd in to the shyppe, and vntyed
 the shyppe fro the chayne, then the shyp departyd fro
 that porte / this ryuer was callyd Dyplayre. Thus the
 shyp went as faste as thoughe a byrde had flowen.
 28 ²Thus as ye haue harde Huon saylyd al alonge in this
 shyp on⁸ the ryuer of Dyplayre / ryght desyrous to
 brynge out of danger his wyfe the fayre⁹ Esclaramond.

Huon gathers the
three apples.

He follows the
path, which runs
by a stream full of
precious stones.

At the end of it
he sees a richly-
garuished ship,

and enters
within it.

The ship passes
very rapidly
down a great
river, called
Dyplare.

¹ I. ² and. ³ there. ⁴ Fol. C.vi. back, col. 2.

⁶ of them. ⁶ greatly dismayed and. ⁷ and Sauour.

⁸ vppon. ⁹ Ladie.

¶ Howe Huon of Burdeaux sayld in a ryche
shyp, and of the perelous goulfe that he
passed by, and how he aryued at the porte
of the great citey of Thauris in¹ Perse. 4

Ca. Cxxiii.

Huon's ship
was richly
bedecked with
gold and ivory.



A cabin within it
was roofed with
gold and
precious stones,
which shone
brightly through
the night.

Huon sailed alone
between rocks,

and saw no town
nor human being.

After three days'
journeying,
the rocks ahead
appear to close
above him and
form a dark
passage.

Huon enters the
passage, where all
is black.
The wind rises,
and the air
grows cold.

Hus as ye haue hard was Huon² on
this rych ryuer in his shyp, the
whiche was broderyd with whyght 8
Iuory & nayld with nayles of fyne
gold / & the fore castell of whyght
crystal medelyd with rych cassydony,
& therin a chambre, the selynge³ with sterres of gold 12
& presyous⁴ stones / the whiche gaue suche clerenesse
in the darke nyght as thoughe it hadde bene fayre day /
and the bed that Huon laye on² / there is no humayne
tonge can esteme the valewe therof / therin lay Huon 16
euery nyghte, and in the daye⁵ abroad in the shyppe /
it was noyfull⁶ to hym for that he was alone without
company / & sayld euery daye betwene two rockys
without syght of any towne or vyllage, or⁷ man or 20
woman / when he had bene in this shyppe thre dayes
and thre nyghtis he behelde before hym and sawe howe
y^e two rockis began to draw together and to⁷ couer the
ryuer, and it semyd to⁸ his syght that the shyppe 24
shulde enter into a darkenes; howbeit, the ryuer euer
styll kepte his brede / but the nerer he came y^e darker
the passage semyd; and when the shyppe came nere⁸ it
she went so fast that Huon thoughte⁹ no byrde in the 28
worlde coud flye so fast / ¹⁰then it began to be sore
blacke and darke, and y^e wynde rose, and ¹¹hayld so ex-
tremely that he thought the shyppe shulde ¹²perysse¹² /
and Huon was so colde that he wyst not how to get 32

¹ of. ² vppon. ³ wrought. ⁴ Fol. cvii. col. 1.
⁵ came. ⁶ yrkesome. ⁷ omitted. ⁸ vnto. ⁹ that.
¹⁰ and. ¹¹ it. ¹²⁻¹² haue perished.

- any hete. Then he hard petuous¹ voyces spekyng
 dyuers languages, cursyng the tyme that euer they
 were borne. Then he harde thonder and saw lyghtenyng
 4 so often / that certaynely he thoughte to² be perysshed
 and ³lost.³ Thus Huon was in this shyppe in great
 fere of lesyng of his lyfe / ⁴when he was hungerid
 then he dyd ete of the frute that he had brought
 8 thether / then agayne he was comfortyd in that the
 aungel had sayd to⁵ hym that he shuld se againe his
 wyfe⁶ & his doughter Claryet. when he had bene in
 this case the space of thre dayes he sate downe on⁷ the
 12 see bourde of the shyppe / ⁴then he harde suche a brute
 so great and so hor^rryble that yf the thonder had fallen
 fro the heuen, and that all the ryuers of⁹ the world had
 fallen downe fro the rockes / ¹⁰coud not haue made so
 16 hydeouse anyse / as the tempest made¹¹ of the Goulfe
 the whiche is betwene the see of perse and y^e great
 see occyan: it was neuer hard that euer any shyp or
 galey scapyd that way without perysshynge / when
 20 Huon saw hymselfe in that daunger deuoutely he
 callyd to⁷ our lorde god, and sayde / 'a, ¹²very god,¹²
 nowe I see and parseyue that without ¹³reouer¹³ I am
 loste and come to my end / but syn¹⁴ it is your pleasure
 24 and wyl that I shall perysshe, here I requyre¹⁵ your
 benyuolent grace to accept my sowle in to your¹⁶
 handys.' Huon had no soner spoken those wordys
 but a wynde arose with so great a tempest that ¹⁷Huon
 28 went¹⁷ then suerly to haue bene ¹⁸lost.¹⁸ Then he sawe
 comyng agaynst hym great barres of Iron red hote, that
 fell downe fro ¹⁹aloft¹⁹ in to the ryuer before Huon,
 in suche wyse²⁰ that when they fell into the water, by

Voices are heard
cursing their
ill fortune,

and Huon despairs
of his life.

For three days
all is unchanged,

but at length a
thunderous noise
is heard of
falling waters.

Huon believes
his end to be
near,
and prays to God
for aid.

A great tempest
arises,

and great bars of
red-hot iron
approach the
ship,

¹ pitifull. ² haue bene.

³⁻³ and neuer to haue escaped out of that danger. ⁴ and.

⁶ vnto. ⁶ Escleremond. ⁷ yppon. ⁸ Fol. cvii. col. 2.

⁹ in. ¹⁰ they. ¹¹ made after Goulfe.

¹²⁻¹² good lord. ¹³⁻¹³ thy ayd and succour. ¹⁴ seeing.

¹⁵ beseech. ¹⁶ fauourable. ¹⁷ hee thought.

¹⁸⁻¹⁸ cast away. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ on high. ²⁰ sorte.

but they fall
hissing into the
river, and do not
touch the vessel.

reason of the hete of the barres, trowbelyd so the water
that ferfull it was to beholde.¹ Thus was² Huon a
great space / or³ he coude passe the Goulfe, the whiche
was so perelous / and the shyppe wente so sore by force ⁴
of the wynde / so that the shyppe wente out of the
myddes of the streme, and so⁴ was nere to the lond so
that the shyppe⁵ coude go no further.

The ship runs
aground in five
feet of water.

¶ when Huon sawe and parsayuyd that the shyppe ⁸
was vpon the grounde, he thought then suerly to haue
bene drownyd. Then he toke an ancre and put it into
the water to knowe how manye fote the water was of
deppenesse. Then⁶ ⁷he founde it but v. fote. Then ¹²
he toke one of his ancrs and caste it a londe⁸ & then
drewe by the corde tyll⁹ the shyppe came nere to the
banke syde / then he Issued out of the shyppe and
lepte a londe / ⁶then he saw sodaynely a bought hym a ¹⁶
great clerenes wherof he was¹⁰ abasshed, and wyst not
what to thynke / then he sawe before hym¹¹ all the
grauell in the water were medelyd¹² with presyous
stones / ⁶when Huon sawe that / he toke a scope and ²⁰
cast into the shyppe so moche of those presyous stonys
that it gaue as great a light as thoughe .x. torchys hade
bene brynnynge / so moch of this grauell Huon dyd
cast into the shyppe that he was very of laboure / and ²⁴
when he saw the shyp suffyciently chargyd / then he

Huon draws the
ship to land,
and leaps out.

He finds the
gravel to be of
precious stones,
and casts some of
them into his
ship;

they shine as
brightly as ten
torches.

Huon launches
his vessel again,

and travels on in
mid stream as
quickly as a
bird.

He has no food

enteryd agayne and drewe vp the ancre, and traueyld
so sore that he broughte agayne the shyppe into the
myddis of the streme, then the shyppe went so faste ²⁸
that a byrd coud not haue folowid it. Thus he was .x.
dayes or¹³ he coude passe that Goulfe / ⁶thus day and
nyght he saylid, and¹⁴ great fere and sore opressyd for
¹⁵famyne,¹⁵ for he had no thyng to ete¹⁶ but frewte, so ³²

¹ it. ² was after Huon. ³ before. ⁴ omitted.
⁵ was grounded and. ⁶ And. ⁷ Fol. cvii. back, col. 1.
⁸ shoare. ⁹ untill. ¹⁰ greatly dismayed and. ¹¹ that.
¹² mingled. ¹³ before. ¹⁴ with.
¹⁵⁻¹⁵ through hunger and thirst. ¹⁶ nor drinke.

that therby he was waxed so feble *that* he coulde scant¹
 sustayne hymselfe on² his fete / and on² the .xi. daye
 at the sonne rysynge he sawe apere the clerenes of the
 4 day lyght, and then he was out of the darkenes
 & enteryd into the see of perse, the whiche was so
 plesaut and peasable that great pleasure it was to
 beholde it / ³then y^e son rose and spred abrode his
 8 stremis⁴ vpon the see, wherof Huon was so ioyfull / as
 thoughe he had neuer felt payne nor fere. Then a fare
 of before hym⁵ he sawe apere a⁶ great citey / and in
 the hauen ther of there were so many shyppes and
 12 galyes *that* theyr mastys semyd to be a great⁷ forest,
 wherof Huon had such ioy at his harte that he knelid
 downe lyftyng vp his handis to⁸ the⁹ heuen,¹⁰ thank-
 yng our lorde god that he hadde sauyd hym fro this
 16 perelous Goulfe. This citey was called y^e great citey
 of Thauris in Perse / and¹¹ lorde therof was a pusaunte
 admyrall / who had made to be cryed¹² and puplysshed /
 that all maner of marchauntys by londe or by see that
 20 wolde come to his citey shulde haue free goynge and
 free comynge without let or disturbaunce other in the¹³
 bodyes or goodys, whether they were chrysten men or
 Sarasyns / so that yf they lost the worthe of a peny
 24 they shuld haue agayne .iiii. ¹⁴for it¹⁴ / and the same
 tyme that Huon came and aryuyd at that porte was the
 daye of theyr free feaste / wherfore there was so
 moche people of dyuers landys that they coude not
 28 well be nomberyd / when Huon was come into the
 porte he caste his ancre nere to⁸ the land¹⁵ syde, and
 was ryght ioyfull when he saw¹⁶ that he was on² the
 ferme londe. ³Then he had great desyre to know in

but the fruit he
 had gathered at
 the angel's
 behest.

At length the
 perilous gulf is
 passed and the
 sea of Persia
 entered.

A great city comes
 into sight afar off,
 with a large
 harbour full of
 ships.

It was the city
 of Tauris in
 Persia,

and the admiral
 of the city
 allowed ships of
 all countries to
 tarry in his port.

Huon casts
 anchor, and
 lands.

¹ scarce. ² vpon. ³ and. ⁴ and spheares.

⁵ appear before him *after* sawe. ⁶ faire.

⁷ Fol. cvii. back, col. 2. ⁸ vnto. ⁹ omitted.

¹⁰ and humbly. ¹¹ the. ¹² proclaimed. ¹³ their.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ times the value thereof. ¹⁵ banke.

¹⁶ himself.

what plase he was aryued in.¹ Now ²leue we² speking
of ³Huon tyll tyme shall be to retourne therto³ agayne.

¶ Howe syr Barnarde departyd fro the abbey
of Cluny and went to seke for Huon his ⁴
cosyn, whom he founde at the porte of the
great citey of Thauris. Ca. C.xxiii.

Barnard de-
livered Huon's
daughter Clariet
to the good abbot
of Cluny,

and tarried with
him eight days.

The faithful
knight laments
the misfortunes
of his lord and
his lord's wife.



⁴ e haue hard here before how after the
taking of Burdeaux, Barnard, who was 8
cosyn to⁵ Huon, had borne Clariet,
Huons chylde, in to Burgoyne, and
delyueryd her to be kepte with y^e
good abbot of Cluny. After that Barnarde had taryed ¹²
there the space of .viii. dayes he was wery⁶ there, and
on⁷ a daye he sayd to⁵ the abbot, 'A, Syr, I wold at
the takinge of Burdeaux I had bene slayne with my
cosyn Gerames, for when I remembre my good lord ¹⁶
Huon, my hart fayleth me in suche wyse that it is
great payne for me to bere the sorowe that I endure /
and after⁸ when I remembre the duches Esclaramonde
his wyfe, who endurethe suche mesery that it is petye ²⁰
to thynke therof, dowbeleth ⁹my sorowe.⁹ Alas, what
shall Huon say yf he retourne and fynd his citey
taken, his men taken and dystroyed / and his wyfe in
prysone in great ¹⁰myserye and pouertye;¹⁰ I fere me¹¹ ²⁴
he shall¹² dye for sorowe. Alas, I se all that I haue
is loste for the loue of Hu¹³on my lorde / for the whiche
I care lytel for, yf he be in sauetye alyue, and that he
may retourne agayne / & I am in great dyspleasure ²⁸

¹ and whether he was arriued at a good Port or no.

²⁻² now lette vs leaue.

³⁻³ the good duke Huon vntill wee haue occasion to
retourne vnto him.

⁴ Fol. cviii. col. 1.

⁵ vnto.

⁶ with being.

⁷ vpon.

⁸ afterward.

⁹⁻⁹ the sorowe and grefe that I haue at my heart.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ pouertie and miserie.

¹¹ that.

¹² wyll.

¹³ Fol. cviii. col. 2.

- that we can here no newes of hym neuer¹ syn he
departyd fro Burdeaux / I shall neuer rest as longe as I
lyue tyll² I haue founde hym, or harde som sartayne
4 newes of him' / 'cosyn,' quod the abbot / 'yf ye wyll
enter into this enquest ye shuld do me great pleasure,
and for the great desyre that I haue had that ye shuld
do³ this vyage, I wyll gyue you a thousande florences
8 towards youre Iorneye.' 'Syr,' quod Barnarde, 'I
thanke you.' Then the abbot delyueryd hym the
money, and Barnarde made hym redy to departe the
nexte daye / and so he dyd, and toke leue of the abbot
12 and departyd, & rested not tyll² he came to Venys /
wher as he founde Galeyes redy to go to the holy
sepulture, wherof he was⁴ ioyful; and so sayld forth
tyll² they came to porte Iaffe, where as he wente a
16 londe⁵ with other pylgremes / and euer as he passyd
by the other portis he euer-demaundyd for Huon / but
he coude neuer fynde any man that coude shewe to⁶
hym any maner of newes of hym. ⁷Then he departyd
20 fro⁸ porte Iaffe and wente to⁶ Ierusalem, where as he
taryed .viii. dayes. Then when he had done his
pylgrymage he toke forthe his iourney vnto Kayre in
Babylone / and when he came to Gasere, whiche
24 standethe at the enterynge of the desartys, he met with
many merchauntes who were goynge to the fre feast
which was holden in the great citey of Thauris. Then
he thought to demaunde of them whether so moche
28 people were goyng, and al in one companye / and he
spake to⁶ a marchauzt of Geanes, & demandid of hym
whether ⁹so moche people wente together in one
companye / for they were to the nombre of .vi. score
32 marchantis chrysten¹⁰ and hethen. ¹¹Then the marchante
sayde / 'syr, as me thynke by you ye are of the

He longs to know
the fate of Huon.

The abbot
encourages
Barnard to seek
out his lord.

Barnard sets out
and reaches Jaffa,

and travelling
to other ports,
makes inquiry of
Huon in vain.

At Jerusalem he
tarries eight days,

and visits Cairo
in Babylon.

At Gazir he finds
many merchants
setting out for
Tauris.

¹ omitted. ² vntill. ³ goe. ⁴ right. ⁵ shoare.

⁶ vnto. ⁷ and. ⁸ the. ⁹ Fol. cviii. back, col. 1.

¹⁰ men. ¹¹ hee.

A free feast,
Barnard learns
from a Genoese
merchant, is to
be given at Tauris
to all comers by
land or sea,
Christian or
Saracen.

Barnard is
induced to set out
for Tauris.

For eight days
Barnard makes
fruitless search
for Huon in the
city of Tauris.

One day, how-
ever, a very rich
ship in the
harbour attracts
his attention.

countre of Fraunce, I shall shewe you whether we go;
syr, within this .viii. dayes the fre feste shalbe at the
great citey of Thauris, wher as ther shall come a great
nombre of marchantys as well chrysten¹ as Sarasyns, 4
as well by londe as by see / & there is no thyng
in this mortal world but there ye shall fynde it / and
here of al maner of newes / fro all the partyes of y^e
worlde. Now I haue shewyd you whether we are 8
goynge, I praye you shewe me whether ye wolde go
and whome ye do seke for?' 'Syr,' quod Barnarde,
'know for trouthe I am of the realme of Fraunce, and
I do seke for a knyghte who is lorde of Burdeaux, who² 12
is callyd Huon, and it is long syn I departyd out of my
countre, & I coude neuer here any thyng of his lyfe
nor dethe.' 'Syr,' quod the Genouoys, 'yf euer ye
shall here of hym / yf ye wyll beleue me ye shall go 16
with vs in to the realme of Perce to the fre feste at the
citey of Thaurys.' 'Syr,' quod Barnarde, 'in a good
owre I haue met with you / I shall not leue your
company tyll³ ye come there, to se yf god wyll send 20
me so good a⁴ fortune to fynde hym that I seke for.'
Then the marchauntis depart⁵ and rode⁶ to gether
tyll³ they came to⁷ the⁸ citey of Thauris / and
when they were logyd / they went a boughte theyr 24
marchandyse where as they lyst / thus Barnarde was
viii. dayes in the citey goynge here & there, euer
enquyrynge newes for that he sought for; and on⁹ a
daye he went downe to the porte to⁷ the see syde 28
where as many shyppes¹⁰ laye at ancre, & ¹¹as he lokyd
abought he saw nere to the see-syde a lytell proper
vessell marueylusly fayre / and the nerer he came¹² the
fayrer and rycher it semid / for he saw great clerenes 32
and shynynge within it by reason of the ryche stonys

¹ men. ² and. ³ vntill. ⁴ omitted. ⁵ departed.

⁶ all. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ great. ⁹ vpon.

¹⁰ and Galleys. ¹¹ Fol. cviii. back, col. 2. ¹² vnto it.

- that were there,¹ wherof he had great maruayle, and specially bycause he saw within the shyppe but one man clene armyd / he wyste not what to thynke / but
- 4 he thought² he was chrystenyd; then he aprochyd³ to the shyp and saluted Huon, and sayd / 'syr, god gyue you good aduenture, for me thynke ye be a chrysten man' / 'frend,' quod Huon, 'god saue the.
- 8 Me thynke by thy speche that thou werte borne in the good countre of Fraunce, by reason² thou spekest frenche, for I haue great ioy when I here that language spoken / and frynde I requyre the⁴ shew me where
- 12 thou wert borne and what thou sekyste for here?' 'Syr,' quod Barnarde, 'syn⁵ ye wyll knowe of my busynes, I shall shew you as he *that* is ryght sorowefull and heuy, and lytell shall ye wyn therby when ye do
- 16 know it; but syn⁵ it is your pleasure, I shall shew you the trouthe. Syr, I was borne in the good citeye of Burdeaux / where as I haue left my howse and herytage / to seke for my good lorde, sumtyme lorde of
- 20 the same citeye / and he was callyd duke Huon, who went fro Burdeaux to seke for some socours whylles the citeye was besegyed / & so it is my lord Huon retournyd not, nor it can not be knowen where he is becom, and
- 24 bycause the citeye at his departynge was besegyed by the emperour of almayne, and the citeye but yll furnysshyd with vitayle to mayntayne it longe; and also it was so sore beten with engyns that y^e emperour wan the
- 28 citeye parforce / & slew all those that my lorde Huon had lefte ⁶there excepte .iii.c., the whiche were taken presoners by the emperoure and led into the citeye of Magence, with the noble duchesse Esclaramonde,
- 32 wyfe to⁷ my⁸ lorde Huon, and she is kepte in a straye prison, where as she vseth⁹ her dayes myserably, wherof

Within it is one knight, whom he salutes, although he knows him not to be Huon himself.

Huon at once recognizes the speaker to be a Frenchman, but does not perceive who he is.

Barnard, at Huon's request, relates the causes of his journeying.

He recites the fall of Bordenaux.

¹ therein. ² that. ³ neere. ⁴ to. ⁵ seeing.

⁶ Fol. cix. col. 1. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ good.

⁹ spendeth.

Huon recognizes Barnard, but sorrow overwhelms him so that he cannot speak to him.

He weeps as he thinks of Barnard's faithful service.

Barnard, still failing to recognize Huon, asks him if he has heard news of his lord,

my harte is in suche sorowe¹ that when I remembre² it my hart fayleth me³ / when Huon had well harde³ Barnarde he knewe hym wel; but he had no powre to speke any word to⁴ hym, his harte was so full of⁴ sorowe¹ for that his cosyn Barnarde had shewyd hym, and y^e chefe⁵ sorowe was for the trowbyl of his wyfe⁶ Esclaramonde, who was in⁷ parell of deth. Thus Huon was a great space and coude speke no word for sorow,¹ 8 and wyste not what to do. ⁸Also he sawe hys cosy[n]⁹ Barnarde, who had taken great payne to serche for hym / wherby¹⁰ he had suche petye that the terys fell fro his eyen. ¶ when Barnarde behelde¹¹ that the 12 knyght gaue hym none answey / & saw vnder the ventayle of his helme the terys of water fell downe fro his eyen, he was therof so¹² abasshid that he wyst not what to saye. Then he sayd, 'syr, me thyn[k]e¹³ ye ar 16 a chrysten man / and bycause I se and parseyue in you that ye ar a man that hathe bene in many placys and cuntrees, therefore I desyre you to shewe me yf ye harde euer any maner of spekinge of my¹⁴ lorde Huon duke of 20 Burdeaux / whome I haue sought for in many cuntres, bothe by londe and by se, & I coud neuer here any sartayne tydynges of him, wherof I am ryght sorry / for yf I canne here no worde of hym by you I wyll 24 neuer hope more to haue any knowlege of hym / for¹⁵ I thynke I shulde¹⁶ haue some knowlege by you yf he be aliue / for yf I knowe no thyng by you I wyll neuer ¹⁷seke hym further / but I wyll go into som¹⁸ 28 deserte to⁴ some solytary place, and there to do penaunce and to praye to⁴ god for my good lorde Huon, and to pardon me of all my¹⁹ offences / and I requyre you in

¹ and greefe. ²⁻² them. it neere hand slayeth my heart.

³ and vnderstood. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ cheefest of his.

⁶ the faire Lady. ⁷ great. ⁸ and. ⁹ cosynd in text.

¹⁰ whereof. ¹¹ saw. ¹² dismayed and.

¹³ thynde in text. ¹⁴ good. ¹⁵ omitted. ¹⁶ shall.

¹⁷ Fol. cix. col. 2. ¹⁸ a. ¹⁹ sinnes and.

- the name of our lorde¹ Iesu chryst² shew me what ye be, and where ye were borne, and fro whence ye come, *that* hath brought in your shyppe so great rychesse /
- 4 for I knowe sartaynly that in all Fraunce can not be founde the value of so great a³ ryches. Nor the pusaunte Charlemagne coude neuer assemble together suche a³ ryches as ye haue in your shyppe.' when
- 8 Huon harde Barnarde, he sayde / 'frend, I haue great maruayle of that I here you saye / for in my shyppe I know nother golde nor syluer nor none other thyng but my body and myne armure.' 'Syr,' quod Barnarde,
- 12 'beware what ye saye / for y^e riches that I see in your shyp, yf ye wyll selle it ye maye fylle agayne your shyppe with money ; if ye wyll byleue me the treasure and ryches that ye haue brought in your shyppe, the
- 16 valor therof can not be estemyd' / when Huon harde that he had great maruayle, and was ryght ioyful / then he lokyd downe into the botome of the shyppe and sawe the ryche stonys there lyyng amonge y^e
- 20 grauell, the whiche he neuer toke hede therof⁴ before / for when he dyd caste it in to hys shyp he thought all had bene but grauell to balayse his shyp withal that it myght sayle the more suerlyer. Then Barnarde sayde,
- 24 'syr, I pray you hyde it not fro me / wher haue ye had this great treasure, and in what countre ? all the stonys that be there I knowe the vertue of them all / for syn I came out of my cuntre I was a hole yere with y^e
- 28 beste lapidary and knower of stones that was in all the⁵ world / and he taught me his scyens ; syr, suerly the place wheras ye had them in is of great dygnite.'
- Frend,' quod Huon, 'I shall shew you the trowth /
- 32 fortune brought me by the goulfe of Perse, where as I sufferyd moche payne & troubyll / but thankyd be god / I scapyd fro that hard aduenture, the force of the

and what is his
own name,
and whence he
came to Tauris.

He marvels at the
riches in Huon's
ship.

Huon had not
before perceived
that the gravel
he had cast into
his ship for
ballast was all of
precious stones.

Barnard
anxiously in-
quires the place
where they were
obtained.

Huon relates
his recent
wanderings.

¹ and sauour. ² to. ³ omitted. ⁴ of.

⁵ Fol. cix. back, col. 1.

wynd that cam out of the Goulfe draue my shyppe out
 of the streme / to the lande / and when I sawe I was so
 nere the londe I went out of the shyp, and toke a
 scopet & ther with¹ dyd cast in of the grauell² by the 4
 see syde to balayse ther-with³ my shyppe / not knowinge
 that any presyous stonys had bene amonge the grauell ;
 and when I thought I had caste in suffycient I enteryd
 agayne into my shyppe, and so sayld forthe more 8
 suerlyer then I dyd before / there I had these stonys
 that be in this shyp, the whiche ye say be of so great
 value.' 'Syr,' quod Barnard, 'I pray you wherfore
 serueth yonder fote of a great fowle or beast that I se 12
 hang yonder in your shyp, I can not tel whether it be
 of a fowle or of a dragon / for it is a ferfull thyng to
 beholde.' 'Frynde,' quod Huon, 'anone I shall shewe
 you / but fyrste I praye you shewe me what vertue & 16
 bounte ar in these stonys the whiche ye haue so moche
 praysyd / and also to shewe me to⁴ whome this noble
 citey partaynethe?' 'Syr,' quod Barnard, 'this citey
 is callyd Thauris, wherof is lorde a ryche admyrall, who 20
 is lord of all Perce and of Mede, who when he shall
 be aduerteysyd of your comynge hether, he wyll haue of
 you trybute as he hathe of other marchauntis / and as
 for your stonys, two of them that I se yonder, and yf ye 24
 gyue them for your trybute he shall be well contente /
 and, syr, I shall ayde you in youre mar⁵chandyse to the
 best of my powre / the admyrall is a noble man in his
 lawe, and of great credence.' 'Frend,' quod Huon, 28
 'I thanke you for the curtesy that ye shew me / but,
 syr, I praye you shew me the stones that be of⁶ moche
 vertue, I wold haue the best layde aparte fro the
 other.' when Barnard harde howe Huon desyryd hym 32
 to shewe the vertue of the stonys / then specyally
 he shewyd Huon .vi. stonys, and he drewe them out

Barnard perceives
 in the ship the
 foot of a great
 beast,
 and asks how it
 came there.

And he
 replies to Huon's
 questions as to
 the name and
 government of the
 citey wherat
 they tarry.

Barnard points
 out to Huon the
 precious stones of

¹ 1. ² that lay. ³ therwith *after* shyppe.

⁴ unto. ⁵ Fol. cix. back, col. 2. ⁶ so.

fro the reste and layd them vpon Huons shyld, and so
 chase out .xxx. other / and shewyd them all to¹ Huon,
 and sayd, 'syr, these .xxx. stonys that I haue layd on²
 4 your shyld ar of so great value that there is nother
 kyng nor emperoure that can paye the value of them,
 and specyally of .v. of them.'³ when Huon harde that
 he was ioyful. Then he wold no lenger hyde hymselfe
 8 fro Barnarde, and also bycause of the great hete that he
 was in he dyd⁴ of his helme / the whiche he kepte on
 all that season bycause he wold fyrst know of Barnarde
 some tydyngys or he wold be knowen to¹ hym / for he
 12 knewe⁵ Barnard well ynoughe at his fyrste comynge
 to¹ hym.

greatest value in
 his ship.

After Barnard
 had sorted the
 stones, Huon
 takes off his
 helmet,
 and reveals
 himself.

¶ How Huon of Burdeaux and Barnarde his
 cosyne knowlegyd themselues eche to other
 16 & shewyd⁶ theyr aduenture. Ca. C.xxv.

When Barnarde sawe Huon do⁴ of his
 helme he becam as ruddy as a rose,
 and was so rauysshyd that be wiste
 20 not what to saye or thynke, and sayde,
 'syr, I can not say trewly what ye
 be / ⁷but ye resemble so⁸ lyke Huon, whom I seke for
 that I can not tel whether ye be he or not.' 'Cosyn,'
 24 quod Huon, 'come hether to¹ me and embrace me. I
 am he whome ye do seke for, / so they embracyd eche
 other in suche wyse that of a longe space they coude
 not speke one to another / at laste Huon sayd, 'my
 28 ryght dere cosyn, I praye you shewe¹ me all the newes
 that ye knowe of Burdeaux syn my departynge.' 'Syr,'
 quod Barnard, 'I shall shew you that I wolde fayne
 knowe my selfe, but fyrst, syr, I praye you shew¹ me
 32 the aduentures that ye haue had syn my⁹ departynge

Barnard recog-
 nizes Huon when
 he removes his
 helmet.

Huon inquires
 anxiously for
 news from
 Bordeaux.

Barnard begs
 first to know

¹ vnto.

² vppon.

³ and.

⁴ put.

⁵ his coozen.

⁶ the discourse of.

⁷ Fol. cx. col. 1.

⁸ much.

⁹ your.

Huon's adventures in the East,

and the knight relates them.

fro Burdeaux.' 'Cosyn,' quod Huon, 'yf I wolde¹ shewe you all the adventures and fortunes that I haue had syn my departynge fro you, it shulde² be ouer long to shew³ it / but breuely I shal declare it⁴ / when ⁴ I was in⁵ the see a⁶ tempest rose vpon vs, the whiche enduryd⁷ y^e space of .x. dayes with out sease⁸ / and then Huon shewed hym howe he was in the Goulfe / and what perel he was in there, & how he spake withe ⁸ Iudas; and howe he aryuyd at the castell of the Adamant, and how his company there dyed for⁹ famyne; and howe he enteryd into the castell and slewe the serpente, and shewyd hym of the beaute and ¹² adventures that were in the castell / and howe he was borne to¹⁰ a rocke by a gryffon / and how he slew the .v. yonge gryffons, and after¹¹ y^e great gryffon whose fote was in the shyp, the whiche he shewyd to¹⁰ syr ¹⁶ Barnarde, and declaryd¹² of the fountayne and gardayne, and tree of youth; and of the shyppe, the whiche they were in / and howe he founde it by the ryuer / and how by the voyce of the aungell he enteryd into the ²⁰ shyppe / and after¹¹ he shewyd what⁶ payn and parell he sufferyd in passynge the ¹³ gulfe of Perse, and how he was parforce dreuyn a londe,¹⁴ and there he cast in y^e stonys, thynkyng it had bene but¹⁵ grauell / and ²⁴ how he was as then come and aryued at the great cite of Tauris in Perce.

Barnard declares his joy at Huon's safety after all his perils.

¶ when Barnarde had well harde¹⁶ Huon, he enbracyd hym and sayd, 'a ryght¹⁷ vertuous knyght to ²⁸ whome in prowes and hardynes none can be comparyd / of your comynge I ought to be ioyfull, &¹⁸ thanke¹⁹ god of the grace that he hathe sent you' / 'cosyn,²⁰ quod

¹ should. ² would. ³ rehearse. ⁴ vnto you
⁵ vpon. ⁶ great. ⁷ continued. ⁸ ceasing. ⁹ by.
¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ afterward. ¹² discoursyd.
¹³ Fol. cx. col. 2. ¹⁴ shoare. ¹⁵ omitted.
¹⁶ and vnderstood. ¹⁷ deare and. ¹⁸ I. ¹⁹ oure lord.
²⁰ syr.

Huon, 'I ought greatly to thanke our lorde Iesu
 Chryst, in *that* I se you in¹ helthe; and nowe I praye
 you² shew me wat hathe fallen in the countre of
 4 Burdeaux syn I departyd³ thence.' Then Barnarde, all
 wepyng, shewyd hym euery thyng as it had fallen, and
 shewed to⁴ Huon the maner how y^e good citeye of
 Burdeaux was taken, and of the dethe of⁵ Gerames
 8 and his company / and of the takynge of the⁶ duches⁷
 Esclaramond,⁸ how the emperour held her in pryson
 in the cytye of Magence in great pouerty and
 mysery; and of his doughter Claryet, how he had
 12 brought her to⁴ the abbey of Cluny, and set her in
 kepyng there with the abbot her cosyn. ¶ when
 Huon⁹ vnderstode barnarde, he made great sorowe,¹⁰ &
 sayd, yf god wold ayde¹¹ hym he wolde cause the
 16 emperour to dye an yll¹² dethe / 'syr,' quod Barnarde,
 'wyll you apease yourselfe; yf ye haue trust in our
 lorde god, desyre his¹³ ayde and socoure, and let the
 whele of fortune ryn / and yf ye do thus, and take it
 20 a¹⁴ worth anythyng that is fallen vnto you ye shall
 not fayle, but ye shall com to⁴ your desyre, / thus with
 such wordys Barnard apaysyd Huon his cosyn / ⁸thus
¹⁵they deuysyd together of dyuers thyngis / 'cosyn,'
 24 quod Huon, 'I praye you shew me the vertue of thes
 presyous stonys that ye haue layde aparte¹⁶ / 'syr,'
 quod Barnarde, 'the .v. that lyethe¹⁷ by themself
 hathe great vertu / this stone is of suche¹⁸ vertue that
 28 he that bereth it vpon hym can not be poysonyd /
 also it is of suche dygnyte¹⁹ that who so euer do bere
 it may go & come thrughe fyre without felyng of any
 hete thoughe he were in a ²⁰brennyng²⁰ ouen / also yf

Barnard tells the
 story of the fall of
 Bordeaux.

Huon grieues
 over his wife's
 disasters.

Barnard consoles
 him with assur-
 ances that the
 Lord will help
 him.

Barnard tells of
 the virtues of the
 precious stones
 in the boat,
 and how one
 renders its owner
 invulnerable.

¹ good. ² to. ³ from. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ the old.
⁶ noble. ⁷ the faire. ⁸ and. ⁹ had well.
¹⁰ in his heart. ¹¹ and helpe. ¹² euill. ¹³ of him.
¹⁴ in. ¹⁵ Fol. cx. back, col. 1. ¹⁶ aside from the other.
¹⁷ there. ¹⁸ great. ¹⁹ and woorth.
²⁰⁻²⁰ hot burning.

This one Huon
takes for himself.

Barnard tells
of the virtue of
another that
preserves its
owner from all
discomfort and
from old age.

The second stone
Huon also takes.

Barnard tells of
the virtue of a
third stone,
possessing other
marvellous
powers,

and of a fourth
which has, among
its many virtues,
that of making
him who holds it
invisible.

a man fell in¹ the water hauynge this stone abought
hym² can not synke nor drowne / syr, this is y^e vertue
of this fyrst stone.' Then Huon toke it and kepte it
for hym selfe.³ Then Barnard toke vp a nother & 4
sayde / 'syr, here is a nother stone of suche vertue /
that a man berynge it abought hym can haue no⁴
hunger / no⁵ thruste / nor cold, nor shal not wax elder
by semynge nother in body nor vysage / but he shal 8
euer apere⁶ of the age of .xxx. yerys, nor fastynge
shall not enpayre hym' / then Huon toke that stone
and put it in¹ his bagge, and sayde⁷ he wolde kepe y^e⁷
stone for hymselfe / 'well,' quod Barnard, 'syr, here 12
is another of suche bounte and vertue that he that
bereth it can not be hurte in armys, nor vanquesshyd
by his enemyes, and yf any of his kyn were blynde
and touche⁸ his eyen with this stone incontynente he 16
shall se agayne / and yf the stone be shewyd to⁹ a
mans eyen he shall incontynent be blynd, and yf a
man be woundyd¹⁰ tourne this stone in the wounde,
and incontynent he shol be hole' / when Huon hard 20
that he was¹¹ ioyfull, and sayd that he wolde kepe wel
that stone / 'syr,' quod Barnarde, 'here is a nother, the
whiche hathe so great vertue, that yf a man or woman be
neuer so syke, shewe them⁸ this stone, and inconty¹²nent 24
they shall be hole of any maner of maladye / and
also yf a man were closyd in pryson in chaynes and
feters, handys and fete,¹⁰ touch them with this stone
and the chaynis shal breke / and also yf a¹³ man haue 28
any cause to be pledyd in any court before any Iuge,
be his mater ryghtful or wrongfull, he shal wyn his
cause, whether it be for londis or goodys, and also yf a
man haue this stone in his hande and close it, he shall 32
be inuysyble, and may go wher as he lyst, and shal not

¹ to. ² he. ³ and. ⁴ neither. ⁵ omitted.
⁶ seeme to be. ⁷ that. ⁸ but. ⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ doe but.
¹¹ right. ¹² Fol. cx. back, col. 2. ¹³ any.

be sene. As ye shal se the profe' / for as he had the
stone in his hande he closyd it, and incontynent he
was inuysyble so that Huon coude not se hym, wherof
4 he was not content, for he feryd lest¹ he had lost his
cosyn Barnard for euer, and sayd / 'a, good lord, thou
hast geuyn me the grace to fynde my cosyn Barnarde /
who shulde haue kept me company tyll² I had retournyd
8 into myne owne countre, and now I se well¹ I haue
lost hym' / when Barnarde harde Huon, he laughed,
and Huon who hard hym / gropyd all about with
his armes abroad / tyll² at laste he embrasyd hym, and
12 helde hym fast / and when Barnard felte that he openyd
his hand, and then Huon sawe hym agayne, wherof he
was³ ioyfull / and blyssyd hym at the vertue of that
stone, and toke it and layd it vp amonge the other in
16 his bagge, and sayde how he wolde kepe that stone⁴ for
specyallye.⁴ Thus Barnarde dyd chose out the stonys
one fro another / & there were so many good stonys
that the value of them coud not be estemyd / then he
20 tournyd vp the botom of the grauell to seke out the
best / and⁵ there⁵ amonge other he dyd chose out a
carbuncle / the whiche cast out suche a lyght as
thoughe two torches had bene lyght / Barnarde toke
24⁶ it and delyueryd it to⁷ Huon, and sayde / 'syr, be⁸
sure⁹ who so euer bere this stone vpon hym / may go
dry fetyd vpon the water as sure as thoughe he were in
a vessell / and also yf a man go in the darke nyght he
28 shall see as well as thoughe he had the lyght of. vi.
torches / and yf a man be in batayle, haugynge this
stone on¹⁰ hym,¹¹ can not be ouer come nor hurte, nor
his horse wery nor faynte, nor hurte, nor woundyd, /
32 when Huon hard that he smyld, and toke the stone

To prove its
power, Barnard
renders himself
invisible to Huon.

Huon thinks he
has lost Barnard
for ever,

but to Huon's joy,
Barnard becomes
visible once more,
and Huon keeps
the wondrous
stone.

There are so
many more
stones, that
Barnard finds it
no easy matter
to value them
rightly.
He chooses out a
carbuncle that
shines with the
light of six
torches,
and gives it to
Huon.

¹ that. ² vntill. ³ right.

⁴⁻⁴ especially, because it was of such a woonderfull great
vertue.

⁵⁻⁶ omitted.

⁶ Fol. cxi. col. 1.

⁷ vnto.

⁸ you.

⁹ that.

¹⁰ about.

¹¹ he.

Saracen merchants come to them, and marvel greatly at their rich ship.

They ask to be allowed to buy some of the precious stones,

but Huon will sell none till the next day.

The news of the ship's arrival is spread through the city, and the admiral comes to behold it.

He salutes Huon and Barnard, and demands the customary tribute.

and put it¹ amonge the other. Thus as they were deusynge together there came to² them dyuers marchauntys, Sarasyns, who with great maruayle behelde this lytell shyp³ they sawe it so fayre and rych, and so⁴ wel garnyssed with precyous stonys / that they thought al the marchaundyse that was there in the hauen was not⁴ to the⁴ halfe⁵ valewe⁶ of that they saw there; then⁷ they aprochyd to² the shyp and salutid Huon, and⁸ sayd / 'syr, is it your pleasure to sell vs any of your stonys / we are here dyuers marchauntys that wyl be glad to bye of them⁸' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'as for me as this day I wyll sell none tyll⁹ to morowe in the 12 mornynge,¹⁰ / therwith the marchauntys helde theyr peas and spake no more; but there cam so many Sarasyns and paynmys to beholde the shyppe, that maruayle it was to be hold them; so that y^e newes 16 therof spred abrode in the citey / & the admyrall was aduertysed therof / who incontynente, accompanied with his lordys, came to the porte syde wher as this shyppe laye at⁴ an⁴ ancre. 20

¶ when he¹¹ was come thether he behelde the shyppe, the whiche he thought fayre¹² and ryche; and how that there was neuer kynge nor emperour that euer sawe¹³ any such, and it shone so clere by reason of the 24 stonys, that the Admyrall and all such as were with hym thought it had bene the sonne shynynge in the myddys of the day / then he aprochyd to² the shyp and founde there Huon and Barnarde: the admyrall 28 salutyd them, and sayde / 'syr, it aperethe wel¹⁴ ye be chrysten men / it is conuenient that ye paye me the tribute that is coustomyd to be payed in this citey' /

¹ into his bagge amonge the other. ² vnto. ³ and.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted. ⁵ the. ⁶ and woorth.

⁷ then then *in text*. ⁸ if yee please. ⁹ vntill.

¹⁰ and then if it plase yee, you shall haue of them.

¹¹ the Admirall. ¹² Fol. cxi. col. 2. ¹³ behelde.

¹⁴ that.

'syr,' quod Huon, 'it is¹ reason and ryght that we
 paye you as we ought to do / syr, here be² two stonys
 the whiche I gyue you, and I desyre you to take them
 4 a³ worthe' / the Admyrall toke the stonys and behelde
 them well, and sayd / 'frynde, nowe ye maye go and
 come into this cite to make your marchaundise at
 your pleasure to your most profyght⁴ / for the gyfte
 8 that ye haue geuen me is to me more agreable⁵ then yf
 ye had geuen me y^e value of .iiii. of the beste cityes of⁶
 this countre' / ryght ioyfull was the admyral for he
 knewe well the vertue of the stones : one was of suche
 12 valure⁷ that the berer therof coude not be poysonyd
 nor no³ treason coude not be done nor purpensyd,⁸
 comynge in the presence of hym that berethe this stone
 but incontynente the doer shuld fall¹⁰ dede / and the
 16 second¹¹ stone had that vertue and dygnyte that the
 berer therof coul neuer be perysshid by fyre nor
 water / nor dystroyed by Iron, for thoughe he were all a
 daye¹² in a brynnynge¹² furnays he shuld not lese one
 20 here of his hede / nor perysshe in the see. 'frende,'
 quod the admyrall, 'the courtesye that ye haue done to¹³
 me¹⁴ shall be¹⁵ rewardyd, I wyll¹⁶ that throughe out
 my realme, as well of Perse as of Mede,¹⁷ ye shall¹⁸ go
 24 at your pleasure to sell your marchaundyse ; and no man
 shall lette nor trouble you / but one thyng I wolde
 desyre of you to shewe me what aduenture hathe
 brought you hether / and of whens ye be, and of what
 28 countre / and in what place ye haue found thes stones
 wherof ye haue so great plente / howe be it I vnder-
 stonde your language, wherby I knowe¹⁷ ye be frenche-
 men / longe agoe I was in fraunce, and dwelte there,

Huon gives him
two of the
precious stones.

The admiral is
much pleased,
as he knows the
virtues of the
stones, which can
preserve their
owner from many
perils;
he gives the
travellers per-
mission to enter
the city.

He promises to
protect them in
his own realm
as well as in that
of Persia and
Media,

and asks what
strange adventure
brought them
hither.

The admiral
knows their
language,

¹ good. ² is. ³ in. ⁴ and gaine. ⁵ acceptable.

⁶ in all. ⁷ bountie and dignitie. ⁸ no no *in text*.

⁹ purposed. ¹⁰ downe. ¹¹ other.

¹²⁻¹² burning in a hot oven or. ¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ this day.

¹⁵ well. ¹⁶ and commaund. ¹⁷ that.

¹⁸ Fol. cxi. back, col. 1.

for he has served
in Charlemagne's
court.

and seruyd in the courte of kyng Charlemayne / &
was neuer knowen / I¹ haue² maruayle where ye haue
founde so many goodly stones / it is nere³ a .C. yerys
syn I was gyrted with a sworde ; but I neuer saw so 4
ryche stones here before.

¶ How the admerall of Perce dyd great
honoure to⁴ Huon of Burdeaux, and led
hym into his palays, where as he was 8
receyuyd withe great ioye and myrth.⁵

Ca. C.xxvi.

As the admiral
seemed to be a
man of nobleness,
truth, and
freedom, Huon
tells him at
length all his
adventures.



He tells him his
name and the
place of his
birth,
how he departed
thence two years
back, and how
since that time
he has suffered
much pain and
poverty,
and how he set
out with seven
knights, his
chaplain, and a
clerk.

Contrary winds
came upon them
in their journey-
ing on the high
seas,

¶ Hen Huon of Burdeaux⁷ vnderstode
the Admerall, he regardyd hym moch / 12
bycause he was a fayre old man, and
semyd to be a noble man, ¹said, 'syr,
bycause I knowe and se aparaunte in
you great noblenes, trouthe, and fredome, I shall shewe 16
you at lengthe all myne aduentures without hydyng of
ony thyng fro you. Syr, know for trouthe my name is
Huon, and I am⁸ borne of⁹ the countre of Fraunce in a
city namyd Burdeaux ; and I departed¹⁰ thence about 20
two yerys past, synne the whiche tyme I haue sufferyd
moche payne and pouerte. ¶ when I departyd¹⁰ thens,
I hadde with me .vii. knyghtys and my chapelayne and
a clarke to serue hym, and we toke our shyppe at 24
Burdeaux, and we saylyd downe the ryuer tyll¹¹ we
come in the mayne see / then the wynde rose ¹²con-
trarye to¹² vs, and so contynuyd a longe space, so that
our patron knew not where he was / ¹so at the last we 28
came to a porte, where¹³ we founde many shyppes of
stran[ge] countres / and there we gote vs a newe
patron ; and as shortely as we myghte, we wente forthe

¹ and. ² great. ³ hand. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ triumph.

⁶ Fol. cxi. back, col. 2. ⁷ had well heard and. ⁸ was.

⁹ in. ¹⁰ from. ¹¹ vntill. ¹²⁻¹² against. ¹³ as.

on our Iourney. But when we were comyn agayne
 into the hye see, a¹ tempest arose so great² that we³
 nere hand all perysshid / this tempeste enduryd .x.
 4 dayes, so that we were fayne to abandone oure shyppe
 to the wynde. And on⁴ the .xi. daye, we aryuyd on⁵
 the perelous Gulfe, wher as we founde Iudas, who
 betrayed our lorde⁶ Iesu christ: we were then in suche
 8 fere that we lokid for nothyng but when we shulde
 perysshe and end our lyfe. But god alwayes his
 seruautis and suche at⁷ byleueth in [h]is⁸ holy lawe⁹
 wyll euer kepe and preserue them / he sent vs a wynde y^e
 12 which¹⁰ draue vs fro that perelous Goulfe, and brought
 vs to¹¹ the castell of the Adamant / and there he shewyd
 the admyrall at lenthe the beautye of that castell, and
 howe there aryuyd a shyppe with Sarasyns, who were
 16 robbers¹² of the see, and howe they fought together, and
 also he shew[ed] hym all y^e aduentures of the castell
 that he had there, as well of his men that dyed for¹³
 famyn as of them that be lefte there, & also he shewyd¹⁴
 20 how he came by vetayles. And also he shewed howe
 he departyd¹⁵ thence, and was borne awaye by the
 Gryffon, and howe he strake of one of his¹⁶ legges when
 he fought with hym,¹⁶ after the gryffon had set hym
 24 on⁴ the rocke, the whiche legge he shewyd to¹¹ the
 admyrad[ll] wherof he had¹⁷ great maruayle.¹⁸ Then
 also he shewyd hym howe he fought with the .v. yong
 Gryffons, and slewe them / and also of the olde
 28 Gryffon / and also of the fountayne wherin he baynyd
 himselfe, and of the fayre gardayn, and of the tree of
 youth that stode by the fountayne: and of the vertu of
 the frute therof / and howe he dyd gather therof,¹⁹ and

and a storm arose
 lasting for ten
 days.

On the eleventh
 day they arrived
 in the perilous
 Gulf, where they
 saw Judas,
 and were like
 to end their
 lives;

then God in his
 goodness sent a
 fair wind, which
 drove them
 thence to the
 castle of
 Adamant.
 Huon describes
 to the admiral
 the beauty of the
 castle,
 and shows all
 the adventures
 that he and his
 men met there.

Then he tells how
 he departed, and
 was borne away
 by the griffin
 to a rock,
 and how in
 fighting with the
 beast he struck
 off one of its legs,
 and this leg he
 showed to the
 admiral.
 He then tells how
 he fought with
 the five young
 griffins and slew
 them,
 and of the
 fountain and the
 fair garden,
 and of the tree
 of youth by the
 fountain.
 He, knowing its
 virtue, gathered
 some of the fruit,

¹ great. ² omitted. ³ were. ⁴ vpon. ⁵ at.

⁶ and sauour. ⁷ as. ⁸ *gis in text.*

⁹ and keepe his commaundements. ¹⁰ Fol. cxii. col. 1.

¹¹ vnto. ¹² Pirats. ¹³ by. ¹⁴ discoursed.

¹⁵ from. ¹⁶ her. ¹⁷ wonderfull. ¹⁸ and.

¹⁹ of the same.

but was forbidden
to take more by
an angel sent
from God.

However, what
he had already
eaten and drunk,
healed the
wounds given
him by the
griffin.

The angel com-
manded him to
gather three of
the apples,
and showed him
the way from the
rock.

In a fair river
under the side of
the rock, he
found the ship
they were now in,
and a wind drove
his ship faster
than a bird.

He passed by the
Persian Gulf,
and suffered
torments there
for ten days,
and was thence
driven to the
land where he
found the
precious stones.
He did not then
know their value,
but took them
to balance his
ship.

The admiral
marvels greatly
at Huon's
adventures;
he has never
heard the like
before.

more wolde haue done but that he was defendyd¹ so
to do by an aungell sent fro god / but before I was
commaundyd² the contrary, I dyd ete³ both of the
frute and dranke of ye water of the fountayne, wherby⁴
I was⁴ incontynente⁵ all⁶ hole of⁶ the great woundes
that the Gryffon had geuen me.⁷ And, syr,' quod
Huon, 'knowe for trouthe that of this tree I gatheryd
.iii. apples, by the commaundemente of the aungell, and⁸
haue kept them suerly / then the aungell shewyd me
the waye howe I shulde go fro that rocke, and vnder
y^e rocke syde I founde a⁸ fayre ryuer, and there I
founde this shyppe that we be nowe in, and enteryd¹²
into it. Then there⁹ came a wynde¹⁰ and draue my
shyppe so faste that a byrde coude not ouertake¹¹ it.
Then he shewyd¹² vnto the Admyrall how he passyd
by the goulfe of Perse, & what tourmentis he sufferyd¹⁶
there, and howe he was there .x. dayes, and how he was
dreuen to the londe,¹³ wher as he founde those precyous
stones,¹⁴ wenyng to hym it were¹⁴ nothyng but grauell,
and¹⁵ he purposyd nothyng elles but to balays¹⁶ therwith²⁰
his shyppe, that y^e shyp myyht sayle the more suerlyer /
and he sayd, 'syr, god, on¹⁷ hom I¹⁸ byleue, so aydyd¹⁹
me that I am scaped²⁰ thence in sauegarde.'

¶ when the admerall²¹ vnderstode Huon / he²⁴
²²maruaylyd greatly,²² for he neuer hard before of so
great²³ maruayles,²³ and was sore²⁴ abasshyd, and sayd,
'Frynde, I haue great maruayle of *that* I haue harde you
say, for it is nere hand .vi. score yere syn I came fyrst²⁸
in to this worlde / and I neuer harde that euer any man

¹ forbidden. ² to. ³ ete *after* both. ⁴ whole.

⁵ of. ⁶⁻⁸ omitted. ⁷ when I slewe them. ⁸ great.

⁹ Fol. cxii. col. 2. ¹⁰ [quoth he]. ¹¹ haue ouertaken.

¹² discoursed. ¹³ shoare.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ and he thought it had bene. ¹⁵ that.

¹⁶ ther therwith *in text*. ¹⁷ vpon. ¹⁸ stedfastly.

¹⁹ and socoured. ²⁰ from. ²¹ had well heard and.

²²⁻²² had great maruaile. ²³⁻²³ and wonderfull aduentures.

²⁴ dismayed and.

scaped alýue out of the Goulfe of Perse / therfore ye
 maye well saye that the god on¹ whome ye do² byleue
 hathe shewyd that he louis you well, when he hathe
 4 sayd you out of that perelous Goulfe, your god is
 pusaunt, and louethe³ moche them that byleueth
 on hym,³ he is false⁴ that byleueth not on⁵ his law /⁶
 when he hath sayd⁷ you out of .ii. suche Gulfes, and
 8 also fro the castell of the Adamant, fro whence none
 can departe, nor neuer dyd, nor I thynke neuer shall :
 and also hathe sufferyd you to slee the Gryffons /
 suerly ye ought to loue hym that hath geuen you that
 12 grace / & fro⁸ the great maruayles that he hathe done
 to⁹ you, I wyl be chrystenyd & receyue your lawe /
 but I fere me yf my lordis and men knewe therof they
 wold sle me shortelye, for agaynste them all /¹⁰ I can not
 16 resyste' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'to the entent that ye
 shuld haue the fermer byleue in our lorde¹¹ god¹¹ Iesu
 chryste, I haue .iii. apples, the whiche hathe such
 vertue in them that yf ye wyl byleue in our lorde
 20¹¹ god¹¹ Iesu chryste, I shall gyue you one of them, the
 whiche ye shall ete, and incontynent after ye haue
 eten it, ye shal become yonge agayne of the age of .xxx.
 yerys, and ye shall be as fayre & as lusty as ye were
 24 when ye were of *that* age / there is not so olde a man
 nor so crokyd, yf he ete of this frute¹² and byleue
 farmely¹³ in our lorde Iesu chryst / but he shall
 become¹⁴ as lusty as he was of .xxx. yerys.¹⁵ 'Frend,'
 28 quod the admyrall, 'yf it be so that by the¹² etynge of
 this apple, I shal becom¹⁶ yong agayne¹⁶ as I was
¹⁷ of y^e age of¹⁷ .xxx. yerys,¹⁵ what so euer come of me

Huon's escape
 proves his trust
 in God, and God's
 love for him.

In awe of this
 testimony of
 God's love and
 power, the
 admiral wishes to
 be christened,
 but fears his
 lords and men
 would slay him
 if they knew of it.
 Huon answers
 that he will give
 him one of his
 three apples,
 and if he eats it
 believing firmly
 in our Lord God
 Jesus, he will
 straightway
 become young
 again—of the age
 of thirty years.

¹ vppon. ² stedfastly.

³⁻⁸ all men that stedfastly and vnfaignedly beleene in his
 holy lawes, and keepe his commaundements and.

⁴ and vntrue. ⁵ in. ⁶ but hee loueth you well.

⁷ deliuered. ⁸ for. ⁹ vnto.

¹⁰ Fol. cxii. back, col. l. ¹¹⁻¹¹ and sauour.

¹² omitted. ¹³ and vnfaignedly. ¹⁴ yong and as.

¹⁵ of age. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ as yong and as lusty. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ at.

The admiral
consents,
and hopes to
persuade all his
realm to believe
the same.

To this end Huon
bids him eat
the apple in the
presence of his
lords and men.

The admiral takes
Huon's advice,
and hand in hand
they go out of the
ship.

Barnard was left
to keep the ship,
which was visited
by many people.

The admiral led
Huon to his
palace.
In their walk
through the city
they were
regarded with
great interest by
men of all
nations.
The admiral
made a great
feast in Huon's
honour.

I wyll be chrystenyd and byleue in y^e law of Iesu
chryst, the fere of dethe shall not let me to do it, for to
longe I haue byleuyd in this false lawe¹ and detestable
of Macomet / for yf I had² sene nor harde no more 4
then ye haue shewyd,³ I ought yet⁴ to byleue in your
lawe / and I shall do so moche that I truste I shall
cause all my realme to byleue in the same' / 'syr,'
quod Huon, 'and ye do as ye saye, ye shall be sauyd, 8
and I shall geue you the apple / the whiche ye shal etc
in the presence of al your lordis & men. And when
they shall se you wax agayne yonge,⁵ knowe for trouthe
y^e maruayle therof shall cause them to byleue of⁶ Iesu 12
chryst, and to renounce theyr false ⁷macomettis⁷
lawe⁸ / 'frend,' quod the admyrall, 'I byleue well
as⁹ ye saye / and I shall vse my selfe after your
aduyse' / then the admyrall toke Huon by the hande 16
& wente together out of the shyp; and Huon lefte
Barnard there to kepe it / moch¹⁰ people was come
thether to se the shyp, and ¹¹also for the great maruayles
that they had harde fallen to¹² Huon; ¹³they behelde 20
Huon and had great maruayle of y^e honour that y^e
admyrall made to¹² hym / for he led hym styll by
the hand tyll¹⁴ he came to his palays; as they passed
thruh the citey they were greatly regarded of men of 24
sondry nasyons / for Huon was so fayre¹⁵ a knyght¹⁶
that none coude be founde as then *that* myght ¹⁷com-
pare with hym in beaute¹⁷; when Huon was come to
the palays¹⁸ the admyrall made huon¹⁹ great fest and 28
chere, and the tables were set vp, & they sate downe to

¹ lawe *after* detestable. ² neither. ³ vnto me.

⁴ yet *after* byleue. ⁵ yonge *before* agayne.

⁶ in our Lord. ⁷⁻⁷ and detestable. ⁸ of Mahomet.

⁹ that which. ¹⁰ many. ¹¹ Fol. cxii. back, col. 2.

¹² vnto. ¹³ and. ¹⁴ vntill.

¹⁵ in his visage, and so valiaunt. ¹⁶ in stature.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ bee compared vnto him.

¹⁸ whereas hee was honourably receiued with great ioy.

¹⁹ him.

diner; of theyr seruyse and metis I wyll make no
 longe rehersayle. ¹when diner was done, the admyrall
 commaundyd carpenters to make a great scaffold of
 4 tymbre before y^e palays / y^e which was coueryd with
 ryche clothes of gold and sylke, & thether was brought
 a rych standarde of golde with other thyngys; ² then he
 commaundid throughout the citye that all hys³ barons
 8 of his realme that were come thether to⁴ his fre feste,
that they shulde all come to⁴ hym at an owre apointyd,
 the which they dyd; there cam so many straungers
 and other that there were mo assemblyd together then
 12 a .C. & .l.M. men. when they were all there together,
 then y^e admyrall, holdyng Huon by the hand, mounted
 vpon y^e rych stage, & dyuers other great lordis with
 hym; ² when they were there the admyrall stode vp
 16 and sayde with a hye voyce to⁴ the lordys and to
 the people / 'syrs, ye that be com hether by my
 commaundement, know for trouth / the great loue that
 I haue had to⁴ you and haue / moueth me to saye and
 20 to shew you the waye how that I and all you may
 come to eternal saluacyon, for yf we dye in this case
 that we be in, we shall all⁵ be dampnyd and loste by
 the false and detestable ⁶way that you and I do hold /
 24 therfore I counsayle and praye you for the loue that ye
 haue longe borne vnto me, that ye wyl leue⁷ the lawe
 of Macomyte and byleue in⁸ our sayour and redemer,
 Iesu chryst, who is worthy and holly, as ye maye se by
 28 the euydente myracles that he hathe shewyd for his
 pouer knyght that ye se here by me.' then the admyrall
 shewyd to⁴ the people all the maruaylous aduentures
 that had fallen to⁴ Huon / that is to saye, how he had
 32 bene at the castel of the Adamante, and how the
 Gryffon bare⁹ hym¹⁰ thence, whome he slewe, and

Carpenters were
 commanded to
 make a scaffold
 of timber in front
 of the palace,
 and to decorate
 it with cloth of
 gold and silk.
 By command,
 at the hour ap-
 pointed, all the
 admiral's barons
 came there, and
 many strangers
 and others
 besides.

The admiral,
 holding Huon
 by the hand,
 mounted upon
 the stage,
 and tells the lords
 and people in a
 loud voice that he
 is going to show
 them how they
 may come to
 eternal salvation,

by leaving the
 law of Mahomet
 and believing in
 Jesus Christ,
 whose worthiness
 and holiness is
 proved by the
 miracles he has
 worked for Huon.

The admiral
 then shows the
 people all the
 marvellous ad-
 ventures of Huon,

¹ but. ² and. ³ Lordes and. ⁴ vnto.
⁵ all *after* be. ⁶ Fol. cxiii. col. 1. ⁷ with me.
⁸ the Law of. ⁹ did beare. ¹⁰ from.

and how
such things could
not have been
without the aid
of Jesus Christ.

He then tells how
if he firmly
believe in Christ,
the apple of
Huon's gift will
make him young
again.

The people
answer that if
they see proof of
this, they also
will be christened,

but that of such a
miracle they had
never heard.

.v. of y^e yonge Gryffons; and also of the fountayne
and gardayne, and of the freute of the tree of youthe,
and howe he had passyd the two Gulfes where as he
had taken y^e ryche stonys that he had brou[g]ht¹ 4
thether / the whiche thyngis coude not haue bene
without the ayde² of our lorde³ Iesu chryste, and also
he shall shewe before you euydente myracles that Iesu
chryst shall do for me yf I wyll take his lawe / for he 8
seyth to⁴ me that if I wyll byleue on⁵ his god, he wyll
make me to ete of such a holy frute, by the which I
shall become agayne but of the age of .xxx. yerys, and
as lusty as I was then⁶ / & therfore, syrs, yf Iesu 12
chryst wyll do this for me I wyll be chrystenyd' /
then all the people answeyrd and sayd / 'syr, yf this
that ye haue sayd come to profe, we⁷ al be⁸ content to
be chrystenyd, and to byleue on⁹ y^e lawe of Iesu 16
chryst, and to leue the law that we haue long kept /
but we ar hard of byleue that this shall be / for
yf it be so, there was neuer harde of suche a¹⁰ myracle.'

¶ How the emperour, by reason of the apple 20
that Huon gaue hym¹¹ to eete, he became
of the age of .xxx. yerys / wherby he and
all the people of perce and Mede were
chrystenyd, and of the great honoure that 24
the admyrall made to⁴ Huon. Ca. C.xxvii.

Huon, right
ioyful to learn
that all the lords
and people were
willing to believe
in Jesus Christ,



Hen Huon¹² vnderstode y^e lordis &¹³
people how they were al¹⁴ content to
leue tneyr law and to byleue of⁹ Iesu 28
chryst, he was ryght ioyfull, & thankyd
god with all his harte / then Huon

¹ broulht in text.

² vnto.

⁵ in.

² and helpe.

³ and Sauour.

⁶ at that time.

⁷ shall.

⁸ all after be.

⁹ vppon.

¹⁰ wonderfull.

¹¹ Fol. cxiii. col. 2.

¹² hadde well heard and.

¹³ the.

¹⁴ omitted.

- sayde to¹ the admyrall / 'syr, ete of the appyll that I
 haue geuyn¹ you / and then y^e people that be here
 assemblyd shall see what grace our lord god shall
 4 send you.' The admyrall toke the apple and began to
 ete therof / and as he dyd ete he began to chaung
 coloure / his here and his berde, y^e which were whyght,
 began to chaunge and waxed yelowe / or² the apple was
 8 clene eten, he was clene chaungyd, & his beautye and
 strenthe as he was when he was but of .xxx. yerys of
 age. Then generally all the people that were there
 with one voyce cryed & requyryd to be chrystenyd,
 12 wherof the admyrall and Huon were ryght ioyfull,
 bycause they saw the good wyll of the people was to
 receyue chrystendome / when the admyrall felte hym-
 selfe agayne yonge³ the ioye that he had at his harte
 16 can⁴ not be declaryd, the people also were ryghte
 ioyfull / the admyrall, who was a goodly prynce, toke
 Huon by the hande and sayde / 'my ryght dere freynde,
 blyssyd be the owre *that* ye came hether for me and
 20 my people, ye haue brought vs into the way of
 saluasyon and delyueryd vs out of darkenes, therefore I
 wyl fro hensforth *that* in all my realme ye shall haue
 your parte as wel as ⁵my selfe, and I wyl⁶ ye be so
 24 obeyed' / then he enbracyd and kyssed Huon mo then
 .x. tymys, seyenge / 'frynde, blessyd be the our that
 euer ye were borne, and happy was that woman that
 bare you in her body' / the paynyns and Sarasyns that
 28 were there, seyng the great beaute that the admyrall
 was of / and also the⁷ great myracle that they had
 sene, sayde one to another, how they neuer had hard of
 suche a myracle, and how that fro thenceforth they
 32 that wold byleue on⁸ mahound were acursyd &
 vnhappy / for they sayde⁹ his byleue / his lawe /¹⁰ his

tells the admiral
to eat the apple.

As he ate, his
white hair and
beard waxed
yellow, and when
he had finished,
he was in beauty
and strength as a
man of thirty
years.

Then all the
people cried out
that they wished
to be christened,
whereof the
admiral and Huon
were right joyful.

The admiral
offers Huon a
share of his
realm,

and embraces him
ten times.

Having seen the
miracle,

the people declare
that all who
believe in
Mahomet are
accursed and

¹ vnto.

² before.

³ and lusty.

⁴ could.

⁵ Fol. cxiii. back, col. 1.

⁶ and commaund that.

⁷ woonderfull.

⁸ vppon.

⁹ that.

¹⁰ and.

unhappy,
and they desire
to embrace the
religion of
Christendom.

A bishop of
Greene, who was
in the city as
Ambassador from
Constantine the
Noble, offered to
christen the
admiral and his
people.

Forty great
vessels of clear
water were
brought,
the bishop hal-
lowed them,
and baptized the
admiral and
named him Huon.
Afterwards all the
lords and people
were christened,
and then, the
admiral leading
Huon, returned to
his palace.
There was great
joy and feasting
in the city that
day,
especially among
the Christian
merchants there,
and fifteen priests
with them, who
had helped the
bishop to christen
the people.

The admiral tells
Huon he ought to
render thanks to
our lord Jesus
Christ, that
through him
Persia and Media
have been
brought to the
Christian faith,

doctryne / was of no valour / then they cryed with a
hye voyce, 'O ryght noble and pusant admyrall /
desyre that noble man that is there with you, that he
wyll cause vs to haue¹ chrystendome.' And as then in ⁴
the citey there was a bysshop of Grece who was come
thether in bassade² to the admyrall fro the emperour of
³constantyne the noble,³ who, herynge the wyll⁴ of the
people, was ryght ioyfull / and he cam to⁵ the admyrall ⁸
and to Huon, and sayde / 'syr, it shal be no daunger for
you to be chrystenyd / for, syr, I am here redy to do
it.' Then incontynent there was brought forthe .xl
great vesselles full of clere water / the bysshop dyd ¹²
halow them, and crystenyd the admyrall and gaue⁶
hym ⁷to name⁷ Huon, bycause Huon was his godfather.
Then after⁸ all the lordis & people were chrystenyd and
receyuyd the law of our ⁹lorde⁹ Iesu Chryste. when ¹⁶
they were all chrystenyd, the admyrall with great
tryhumphe¹⁰ retournyd to⁵ his palays ledyng Huon by
the hande.¹¹ great ioye and feast¹² was made that day
in the citey / and spesyally of the chrysten marchauntis ²⁰
that were there, amonge the which there ¹³was a ¹³.xv.
prestes, and they all aydyd the bys¹⁴shop to chrysten
the people / the nombre can¹⁵ not be declaryd of the
men, women and, chyldren that reseuyd that daye ²⁴
chrystendome / the admyrall beynge in his palays
makynge great ioy and fest¹² to¹⁶ y^e noble duke Huon
of burdeaux, sayd to⁵ hym / 'frynde, well ye ought to
render thankynges to our lorde Iesu chryste, syn¹⁷ by ²⁸
you these two realmes, that is to saye, Perce and Mede,
are reducyd and brought to⁵ the chrysten faythe and
law, and I wyll¹⁸ ye knowe that ye maye well saye that

¹ receiue. ² ambassage. ³⁻³ Constantinople.

⁴ and desire. ⁵ vnto. ⁶ named. ⁷⁻⁷ omitted.

⁸ afterward. ⁹⁻⁹ Sauour and Redeemer. ¹⁰ and ioy.

¹¹ and. ¹² feasting. ¹³⁻¹³ were about.

¹⁴ Fol. cxliii. back, col. 2. ¹⁵ could. ¹⁶ with.

¹⁷ seeing. ¹⁸ that.


in these two realmes ye maye commaunde¹ at your pleasure without fyndyng any parson to do or say to y^e contrary of your wyl and pleasure / and to the
 4 entent that ye shall suerly byleue what great loue² I bere vnto you, I wyl that myne all only doughter ye shall haue to your wyfe, so that ye be not bound to³ none other; syr, know for trouthe the great desyre
 8 that I haue to haue you tary styll here with me mouethe me thus to do / I haue none other eyre but my doughter / wherby after my deth ye shal be lord and heyre of the realmes⁴ that I holde / and in the
 12 meane season I wyl that the moyte of the reuenewe of thes realmes⁴ shall be yours, for your company pleaseth me so well⁵ that I wolde neuer haue you to departe⁶ hens.'

and that he may demand aught that he pleases;

to prove the great love he bears him, the admiral offers Huon his daughter in marriage, provided he has not already a wife.

The lady is the admiral's only child, and on his death the marriage would make Huon lord of the realms; meanwhile, the admiral offers him half the revenues of his kingdom.

16 ¶ Of the complayntis that Huon made to³ the admerall of Perse on⁷ the emperour of almayne / and of the socours that the admyrall promysyd to³ Huon. Ca. C.xxviii.

20  Hen Huon⁸ vnderstode y^e admyral, he sayd, 'syr, knowe for trouthe *that* it is .iiii. yerys past syn I was maryed to³ a noble lady who passeth in beaute
 24 al other *that* be alyue in thes dayes, & when⁹ I remember her all my body and harte trymblethe for sorowe / when I thynke of the trowble / dyspleasure / and pouerte that she is in / & therefore,
 28 syr, I thanke you of the great honoure and curtesye that of youre bountye ye do¹⁰ offer me.' 'I praye to³ god that he may rewarde you, Huon,' quod the admyrall; 'syn¹¹ it is so *that* ye haue a wyfe, I hold

Huon replies, that four years past he was married to a noble lady of surpassing beauty, that when he remembers her it is with great sorrow, for she is now in trouble and poverty,

and thanks the admiral for the great honour he offers him.

¹ anything. ² and affection. ³ vnto.
⁴ and Dominions. ⁵ entirely. ⁶ from. ⁷ vppon.
⁸ had well. ⁹ Fol. cxliii. col. 1. ¹⁰ omitted.
¹¹ seeing.

The admiral
demands of Huon
why his wife is in
such distress,
and what
Christian prince
is so bold as to
trouble him.
Huon tells how
he left his city of
Bordeaux be-
sieged by the
Emperor of
Germany,
who had taken
the city,
and cast his wife
into prison.

The admiral bids
Huon take
comfort;

he will come to
his aid, and make
war on the
Emperor with all
his forces,

and oblige him
to make full
restitution.

But Huon desires
not to shed
Christian blood,

but to visit the
holy sepulchre,
and then, on
returning to his
own country, to
rescue his wife
from danger.

His wife was the
daughter of
Gaudys, the
admiral of
Babylon and
Egypt.

you well excusyd. But I praye you shew¹ me for what
cause youre wyfe is in suche case / or what chrysten
prynce is so hardy² to troubyll you or³ do you any
dyspleasure?' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'when I came out of ⁴
my countree I lefte my citey of Burdeaux besegyd by
the emperour of Almayne / who hath taken my citey
and slayne my men, and some⁴ kepethe in saruage, and
my wyfe set⁵ in pryson, and there kept in great ⁸
pouertye and mysery / the whiche when I remembre,
sorowe⁶ so⁷ grypethe my harte, that all my membres⁸
trymbelythe for⁹ dyspleasure' / 'Huon,' quod the
admyral, 'I praye you³ leue your sorowe and dys- ¹²
pleasure and cast it fro you, and take Ioye and comforte /
for by the holy lawe that I haue reseuyd, I shall so
ayde and socoure you, that the emperoure who hath
done¹ you so many dyspleasures, I shall make hym ¹⁶
suche warre, that whether he wyl or not,¹⁰ the damage
and losse that ye haue had,¹¹ I shall constrayne hym to
make full restytucion / for I shal lede with me in your
company such nombre of people, that all the valeys and ²⁰
mountaynes shall be coueryd withe people.'¹² 'Syr,'
quod Huon, 'of the curtesye & socours that ye offer me
I humblye thanke you / but yf it please our lorde¹³
Iesu Chryste, who hathe aydyd me out of many ²⁴
paresles / I hope he wyll so ayde me that I shall not
nede to make¹⁴ warre and¹⁵ to dystroye ¹⁶the chrysten
blode / but, syr, fyrste I wyll¹⁷ go to the holy sepulture /
& then I wyll retourne into my countre / and do what ²⁸
I can to get my wyfe out of daunger and of¹⁵ the
payne that she is in / syr, the wyfe that I haue
weddyd was doughter to the admyrall Gaudys who
helde as then Babylon and all the realme of Egypte.' ³²
Then Huon shewyd hym all the mater howe he came

¹ vnto. ² as. ³ to. ⁴ hee. ⁵ put.

⁶ and greefe. ⁷ sore. ⁸ and ioynts. ⁹ with.

¹⁰ for. ¹¹ and receiued. ¹² them. ¹³ and Sauour.

¹⁴ any. ¹⁵ omitted. ¹⁶ Fol. cxiii. col. 2. ¹⁷ shall.

by the fayre Esclaramonde / wherof the admyrall was
sore abasshydde for the great maruaylles that he¹ hard
Huon declare, and so were al other that harde it,
4 and sayde one to another, that without that² Huon
had bene welbelouyd with³ our lord Iesu chryst, he
coud neuer haue scapyd the deth with one of the leste
aduentures that he had shewyd vnto the admerall.
8 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'the Emperoure of almayne hath
taken my citey and my wyfe, and destroyed my men /
and hathe taken in to his handys all my lordys and
sygnoryes / but by the grace of god I shall do so
12 moche to get them agayne / and yf I can not attayne
therto, then I shall retourne agayne to⁴ you to haue
your socoure and ayde.' 'Huon,' quod the admerall,
'put all melancoly fro you / for yf ye gyue me know-
16 lege that ye canne not haue your wyl of this Emperour /
I shall brynge you people innumerable / that all
chrystendome shal trymble for fere of you / and I²
shall render to⁴ you your wyfe and all your londis,⁵
20 and your men that be in pryson or in saruage, &
I shall put the Emperour into your handis to do with
hym youre pleasure, elles I shall not leue in all his
lande neyther citey nor towne standynge vpon the
24 erthe.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'of this I thanke you
hartely / but, syr, I muste worke another waye fyrste /
for⁶ when I scapyd fro the goulfe of Perce I promysyd
to⁴ god, that or⁷ I went into m[y]ne⁸ owne countre to
28 go and vyset the holy sepulture in Ierusalem, and to
make warre vpon the sarasyns, or⁷ I made any warre
vpon any chrysten men / but, syr, yf I may get of the
emperour by fayre speche my londe and my wyfe,
32 I shall serue hym with good⁹ harte; for as long as I
leue, I shall make no war against any chrysten man yf

Huon relates how
he came by
the fair
Esclaramonde,
and all who heard
it marvelled
greatly.

If Huon cannot
regain his city,
wife, lords and
seignories taken
by the Emperor
of Germany, he
will ask succour
of the admiral.

Then will the
admiral make all
Christendom
tremble for fear
of Huon; he will
regain for him
his wife, and
lands, and men,
and deliver the
Emperor into his
hands, or he will
leave neither city
nor town stand-
ing in the
Emperor's land.

Huon has
promised God
before returning
home, to visit the
holy sepulchre,
and to make war
upon the
Saracens.

He hopes to
recover his land
and wife from the
Emperor by fair
speech,

¹ hadde. ² omitted. ³ of. ⁴ vnto.

⁵ and Signiories. ⁶ Fol. cxliii. back, col. 1. ⁷ before.

⁸ mone in text. ⁹ all my.

for if right can be shown him he desires to make no war against Christian man. The admiral will go with Huon to the holy sepulchre, and take with him 50,000 men to make war on the Saracens.

Huon tells the admiral how this good deed will cause him to be crowned in the empire of heaven.

I may haue ryght and reason shewyd to¹ me' / 'syr,' quod the admerall, 'of this that ye say I can² you good thanke / but by the grace of god I shall go with you the vyage to the holy sepulture, and take with me⁴ 1.M. men to make warre agaynst the paynyns and sarasyns suche as byleuethe not in god, and I shall put to my payne with all my powre to exalte and encrease the law of Iesu chryste.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'ye haue 8 sayd nobeyle; yf ye do thus³ great grace and glory parpetuall ye shall deserue / wherby ye shalbe crownyd aboue in the imperyall heueyn.' Now leue we to speke of this mater.

12

¶ How the admerall of Perse assembelyd moche people, and he & Huon, with all his armye, toke the see and came to the port before the citey of Angory, whereas they 16 founde a great nombre of paynyns & sarasyns redy to defende the porte.

Ca. C.xxix.

The admiral sends orders through Fersia for the men of war to make ready, and appoints the day on which they are to embark for the Holy Land.

All come at the time assigned. Meanwhile, Huon and Barnard oftentimes visit the city of Tauris,



After that the admerall and Huon had 20 deuysid to gether of many thyngys / the admerall sent out his letters and brefes commaundyngethrough^{4 5} Perse, and made⁶ men of warre to be redy; 24 and gaue them a day to be redy to go with hym, sertefyenge them that his nauy of shyppes shulde be redy for the transportynge of hym and of⁷ them / the whiche was done, and euery man 28 came at the day that was assyngnyd. in the mean season Huon and Barnard wente often tymys together and vysytyd the citey of Thauris, where as moche

¹ vnto.² giue.³ thus do.⁴ out.⁵ Fol. cxiii. back, col. 2.⁶⁻⁶ and Media.⁷ omitted.

honoure was made to¹ them / wherof Huon and Barnard oftentymys thankyd god of the good adventure that he had sente them. Thus as ye haue
 4 harde the admeral of Perce assemblyd² great nombre of people, and made hym redy & enteryd into his shyp, and all other in to dyuers shypys, and shyppyd theyr armure and horsys;³ Huon, who desyryd to ples
 8 the admyrall, toke hys owne lytell shyp and dyschargyd it, and toke all the presyous stonys & dyd put them into another shyp, the whiche y^e admyrall had delyueryd to serue hym.³ then he sayd to¹ the admyrall,
 12 'syr, I know well⁴ the lytell shyppe that I came in hether is not to serue in the warre, & therefore, syr, as it is, I do gyue it¹ you' / wherof the admyraH had great ioye, for in al the worlde ther was none such
 16 of beautye nor of ryches. Then Huon gaue the admyrall a busshell of the stones, and to¹ the lordys together, and they thankyd Huon of his curtesye and larges / of all the stones he kepte to his owne vse but
 20 .iii.C., and gaue awaye all the resydewe. Then he enterid into the shyp that was apoyntyed for hym / and then euery man enteryd in to theyr shypys, the whiche were well furnysshyd and vytaylyd⁵ / then y^e
 24 admyrall toke⁶ leue of his doughter, ⁷&⁷ ⁸weyed vp ances and lyft⁹ vp the saylys, and they had suche good wynde that a ¹⁰none they were far fro the porte ; a goodly syght it was to behold the nauy / for at theyr
 28 departyng, they made such noyse with trompettys ¹¹and tabours¹¹ & hornes that all the see range¹² therof / great ioye¹³ had Huon & Barnarde of the grace that god hadde sent them / so longe they saylyd with¹⁴ wynde
 32 and sayle, that they enteryd in to the great see or

where much honour is shown them.

Huon, to please the admiral, discharged his own little ship, took out of it all the precious stones, and put them into another ship, which the admiral gave him.

To the great joy of the admiral, Huon gives him his beautiful boat. To the admiral and the lords Huon gives a bushel of the precious stones, keeping for his own use but three hundred. He entered the ship appointed for him ; all the rest likewise embark.

The admiral takes leave of his daughter ; the anchors are weighed, the sails spread, and a fair wind drives them quickly from the port. The departure of the ships was a goodly sight.

¹ vnto. ² a. ³ and. ⁴ that. ⁵ for the wars.
⁶ his. ⁷⁻⁷ who pitifully wept at her Father's departing.
⁸ then they. ⁹ hoysed. ¹⁰ Fol. cxv. col. 1.
¹¹⁻¹¹ Drummes. ¹² did ring. ¹³ and gladnesse.
¹⁴ good.

They enter the Caspian Sea, and see afar off the city of Angore. Its admiral was powerful and rich, and, seeing from one of the towers of his palace, so vast a navy advancing, wondered greatly. He knew the Persian ships by their banners, but he saw in the forecastles banners of white with red crosses.

He gives orders that every man in the city should arm and prevent the Christians from landing. The noise and confusion in the city was so great that the admiral of Persia and Huon, and all with them, could hear it.

The admiral sees they will meet great resistance at their landing. Huon enquires what people possess the city.

Caspys, & then they saw a fare of a¹ cetye stondyng by the see syd, callyd the citeye of Angore, wherin there was² an admyral ryght pusaunt and ryche / and the same tyme he was in one of the³ towres of his palays, 4⁴ when he sawe ⁵so⁵ pusaunt a⁶ nauey come saylynge⁷ towardis his citeye / he had great maruayle /⁸ for he knewe well the shyppis were of Perce by the penons and baners that he sawe wayynge in⁹ the shyppys, and 8 on⁹ the other parte he saw in y^e toppes and forecastelles baners stondynge, all of whyght, and therin red crosses / then he sayd to¹⁰ his lordis that were about hym / ‘syrs, I am greatly¹¹ abasshyd what 12 meanethe yonder great flete: syn¹² this citeye was won by Reyngnalte of Mountaban / there came neuer chrysten man here / and I haue more maruayle to se the baners and arme of Perce y^e which thes chrysten men 16 do bere in⁹ theyr shyppis’ / then he¹³ went downe and puplysshyd in the citeye that euery man shuld arme them and go to the port to defend¹⁴ that the chrysten men shulde not londe there / then the crye and larum 20 began in the citeye so great and orryble, withe the noyse of ¹⁵hornes and busyns, trompettis and tabours¹⁵ / so that the noyse of them range vpon the see, so that the Admyral of Perse, and Huon, and such as were on⁹ 24 the see myght well here them / Then the admyrall sayd to¹⁰ Huon / ‘syr, I se¹⁶ well¹⁷ at ¹⁸our londynge we shall haue great batayle and resystence’ / ‘syr,’ quod Huon, ‘I pray you what people be they that haue that 28 citeye in gydynge, and who is lorde therof?’ ‘Syr,’ quod the admyrall, ‘knowe for trouthe¹⁷ this citeye is

¹ faire. ² dwelt. ³ his. ⁴ and.

⁵⁻⁵ and perceiued such a. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ so fast.

⁸ and was sore dismayed and abashed. ⁹ vppon.

¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ dismayed and. ¹² seeing.

¹³ the Admirall. ¹⁴ it.

¹⁵⁻¹⁵ Trumpets and Drummes, Hornes, and Basons.

¹⁶ and perceiue. ¹⁷ that. ¹⁸ Fol. cxv. col. 2.

great and well peopled / they byleue not in god / and
 a¹.xx. yeris passyd, this cite was wonne by a lorde
 Fraunce callyd Reyngnalte of Mountaban, and he
 4 made it to be chr[y]stenyd; and then at¹.viii. yeris
 after, it was wonne agayne vpon the² chrysten men by
 the admyrallis son: the which admyral was lord
 therof when it was won. And nowe agayne they be all
 8 paynymys and Sarasyns as ye maye se vpon the see
 syde, they ar redy to abyde for vs and to defende theyr
 porte.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'we ought greatly to thanke
 our lorde Iesu chryst of this fayre aduenture / when we
 12 se before vs the enemyes of our chrysten faythe / & by
 the grace of³ Iesu⁴ this daye we shall do so moche that
 the cite and the inhabytauntis therin shal be in our
 handys to vse them at our pleasure' / 'syr,' quod the
 16 admyral /⁵ 'god⁶ gyue⁷ grace that it may so be⁸ / great
 grace our lorde god shall do to⁹ vs, yf we maye wyne
 this cite.' Then the admyrall causyd his men to be
 armyd /¹⁰ then they sawe halfe a lege fro the cite a
 20 porte or hauyn / the which was not kept nor defendyd,
 bycause the admyral of Angory wold not Issue out
 farof fro his cite, tyll¹¹ he sawe what countenaunce
 the chrysten men wolde make. Then the admyrall of
 24 Perce and Huon auausyd them selfe so forwarde, that
 they caste out they[r] ancores and launcyd out theyr
 botys well garnysshyd with men, archars and crosbowes,
 so that they londyd at this porte¹² without any daunger.
 28 Then the shypys drewe to the londe & ¹³ vnshyppyd
 theyr armure and horses, & so euery man londyd
 excepte suche as were sygnd¹⁴ to kepe the shyppes /
¹⁰ then euery man lept¹⁵ on¹⁶ theyr horses and ordaynyd
 32 .iii. batayles / the fyrste was led by duke² Huon, and

The city, says the
 admiral of Persia,
 is great and
 inhabited by
 unbelievers;
 twenty years past
 it was taken by a
 lord of France
 and made
 Christian,
 but eight years
 after it was again
 won by Saracens.

The admiral and
 Huon determine
 to take the city
 and use it at
 their pleasure.

The men are
 armed,
 and half a league
 from the city they
 see a haven
 undefended.

Here they land
 without danger,

leaving some to
 guard the ships.
 They are arranged
 in three divisions,
 the first led by
 duke Huon with
 20,000 men;

¹ about. ² omitted. ³ our Lord and Sauour.

⁴ Christ. ⁵ I beseech almighty. ⁶ to. ⁷ vs the.

⁸ be so. ⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ vntill.

¹² in sauegard &. ¹³ Fol. cxv. back, col. 1. ¹⁴ assigned.

¹⁵ mounted. ¹⁶ vpon.

the second by a
great lord of
Persia, marshal
of the host;
the third by the
admiral of Persia
himself,
who rode from
rank to rank,
admonishing his
men to do their
duty valiantly.

with hym. xx.M. men of hault and hie corage; the second was led by a great lorde of Perce, who was marshall of the hoste / the thyrd, gydyd the admyrall of Perce / who rode fro ranke to ranke, admonesshyng 4 his men to do theyr deuours¹ valyauntly; then a soft pase they drew in batayle towardses the citeye.

¶ How the admerall & Huon toke the porte and fought with the admyrall of Angorie, 8 and discomfytyd hym, and toke the citeye / and how after² Huon went in to the desertys of Abillant to serche aduentures.

Ca. C.xxx. 12

When the admiral
of Angore saw
that the
Christians had
landed,



Hen the admyrall of Angore saw and parsayuyd that the chrysten men had taken londe, and were re³dy to geue bataile, and were comynge towardys 16 the citeye, he ordaynyd and rengyd

he divided his
men into four
parties.

his bataylis, & deuydyd them in⁴.iiii. partys, and set them to be led and gydid by such as he thought best; then he auauncyd forwarde and was to the nombre of 20 l.M. men / when these .ii. hostis saw eche other, there was none of them but that feryd the dethe / the day was fayre & clere, & so they aprochyd, and al at a frusshe⁵ of⁶ both partyes dasshed together in suche 24 wyse, that by reason of the powder & dust that rose⁷ by theyr horses, the sonne that was fayre and bright waxed darke, and the shote of⁶ bothe partyes flew so faste and as thicke as thoughe it had snowed / at theyr 28 fyrste metynge, many sperys were broken, and many a knyght borne to the erthe, so that they could neuer releue⁸ after, but laye on the ground amonge the horse fete, and there dyed in doloure / there were manye 32

The two hosts
met together with
such force that
the bright sun
waxed dark,

and many a
knight was killed
under the horses'
feet.

¹ endeauours.

² afterward.

³ Fol. cxv. back, col. 2.

⁴ to.

⁵ rush.

⁶ on.

⁷ did rise.

⁸ be releued.

horses rynnynge abrode traylynge theyr brydels after
 them, and theyr maysters lyeng¹ in the blude & ² myre /
 great slaughter there was made on ³ bothe partyes / and
 4 Huon, who went brekinge y^e great presses, where as he
 slewe so many paynims that euey man feryd hym, he
 sawe where the admyrall of Angoryes nephue was who
 had slayne a christen knyghte / ⁴ they ran eche at other
 8 so freslye,⁵ that the paynym brake his spere vpon
 Huon; and Huon faylyd hym not, but gaue hym so
 marueylous⁶ a stroke that his spere passed thurgh his
 body, and so⁷ fell⁸ to the erth and dyed / then Huon
 12 ran at another and gaue hym suche a⁹ stroke that
¹⁰ he persyd¹⁰ thurgh his shyld and body / and with
 drawynge out of the spere, he fell to the erth, and neuer
 relyuyd after / and so the .iiii. and .iiii.¹¹ he saruyd in
 16 lyke maner, and ¹² dyd so¹³ that he slew .viii. or ¹⁴ his
 spere brake,⁴ then he drewe out his good¹⁵ sword / &
 therewith he dyd suche dedes that it was ferefull to
 beholde hym / he cutte legges and armes, and rassyd of
 20 helmes so that none of his enemyes durste aproche
 nere¹⁶ hym / but they fledde before hym. as y^e byrde
 dothe before the hauke, he brake asonder the thyke
 presses; he dyd so to be feryde that his enymyes left
 24 hym / for he neuer stroke¹⁷ man with a full stroke but
 he¹⁸ was slayne. Also with hym was Barnarde his
 cosyn, who euer folowyd hym & dyd merueylous in
 armes, for he was a sharp and an eger knyght. ¹⁹ Also
 28 the admyrall of Angory enforsyd hym selfe to do
 damage to ¹⁶ y^e christen men / he sawe were the admyrall
 of perce was sleynge of his men / and came and ranne
 at hym; and the admyrall of perce sawe hym &

Huon encounters
 the nephew of the
 admiral of
 Angore,

and slays him.

After Huon had
 slain eight of the
 paynims, his spear
 broke,
 but he did
 fearful deeds
 with his good
 sword.

Barnard followed
 Huon, and
 worked marvels
 in the fight.

The admiral of
 Angore attacked
 the admiral of
 Persia;

¹ dead vpon the erthe. ² in the. ³ vpon. ⁴ and.

⁵ so fiercely *after* ran. ⁶ and so great. ⁷ he.

⁸ downe. ⁹ maruailous. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ it passed. ¹¹ more.

¹² Fol. cxvi. col. 1. ¹³ valiantly behaue himselfe.

¹⁴ before. ¹⁵ omitted. ¹⁶ vnto. ¹⁷ any.

¹⁸ that receiued it. ¹⁹ And.

each bore the
other to earth,

but they were
separated by their
men.

The force of the
Saracens was so
great that the
admiral of Persia
could not re-
mount, and was
obliged to fight
on foot.

He was rescued
by Huon and
Barnard.

Huon kills the
admiral of
Angore,

encounteryd with hym by such force¹ that eche of
them bare² oder to the erth / then q[u]yely they
releuyd them³ with theyr swerdes in there handes,
wyllynge eche⁴ of them to slee⁵ other / y^e whiche had 4
bene done in dede, &⁶ there men had not come and
socouryd them / but theder came so many of⁷ bothe
partyes that the .ii. admyralles had no power on⁸ them
to towche² other ; weth great force came theder Paynmys 8
and Sarasyns so *that* the cristen men coude not
remount vp agayne the admyral of Perce / but was
fayne to fyght a fote / and had bene in great iopardy⁹
and⁶ Huon and Barnarde had not come and rescuyd 12
hym ; they came theder hastely when they harde the
showtynge and cryenge that was made aboute the
admyral of Perce / and they brake a brode¹⁰ the great
prese of the paynmys. And when they sawe Huon 16
aproche nere¹¹ them they were sore afrayde / ¹²they
knewe hym ¹³well, and departyd,¹⁴ and sperclyd¹⁵ a
brode, and durste not abyde / and Huon, seynge y^e
admyrall of Perce a fote amonge his enymyes with his 20
swerde valyauntly defendyng hymselfe, whiche shulde
but lytyl auaylyd yf he had not bene quickly socowryd /
¹²when Huon sawe hym he sayd : ‘O ryght pusaunte
Admyral, haue no doute’ / then Huon toke a spere out 24
of the handes of a paynyme whome he had slayne / and
there with he ranne at y^e admyral of Angory, and gaue¹⁶
so horryble¹⁷ a stroke *that* the spere passyd thorowe his
body more then a fote / and so¹⁸ fell downe dedde 28
amonge his men / wher of y^e Paynmys were sore¹⁹
abasshyde when they sawe theyr lorde lye dedde on²⁰
the erth ; ¹²then Huon quickly toke the admyralles

¹ and puissance. ² the. ³ selues. ⁴ both.

⁵ each. ⁶ if. ⁷ on. ⁸ one of. ⁹ and danger.

¹⁰ asunder. ¹¹ vnto. ¹² and. ¹³ Fol. cxvi. col. 2.

¹⁴ parted. ¹⁵ spread. ¹⁶ him. ¹⁷ and so vehement.

¹⁸ hee. ¹⁹ dismayed and. ²⁰ vpon.

horse by the rayne¹ and came to² the admyral of Perce, and mounts the
 where as he was fyghtynge a fote / and sayd, 'syr, admiral of Persia
³lepe on³ this horse, for the paynyns and Sarasyns on his riderless
 4 descomfyed' / 'Syr,' quod the admyrall, 'blyssed be horse.
 the oure that⁴ ye were borne / for by your excellent
 prowes I am sawyde and all myn hoste, and haue⁵ ouer
 come myn enemyes, / then the Admyrall mountyde on⁶
 8 y^e good horse, wherof he was ioyful; and so he and
 Huon and Barnarde delte suche strokes among the
 Sarasyns / that they were constrayned to fle and turne
 there backes / ⁷then they were chassyd by such force
 12 that they enteryd in to the citey one with a noder / they re-entered
 then the christen men slewe the paynymes and Sarasyns, the city with the
 men, women, and chyldrene, that⁸ pyte it was to se Christians in
 them lye dedde on⁶ heppes in y^e stretes / so that the pursuit,
 16 bloode of them that were slayne, ranne in the strettes to and the Saracen
 the horse pastours; fynally by the hey prowes of Huon men, women, and
 and by the pusaunce of the admyrall of Perce, the children were
 paynyns and Sara⁹syns were discomfyted in the citey killed by the
 20 of Angory. when the sleynge was sessyd, and that the Christians.
 admyrall and Huon sawe how they had ouercome theyr
 enemyes / they sessyd sleynge of the pepyll / ⁷they
 wente in to the temples, tours, & palysses, where in
 24 many paynyns & Sarasyns were withdrawen / they Those who had
 were take to vertue,¹⁰ promysynge to saue theyr lyues hidden in the
 yf they wolde leue the¹¹ law of Macomyte and byleue temples and
 in¹² Iesu chryst / and so many were chrystenyd, and palaces, Huon and
 28 such as wold not were slayne / when the admyrall and Barnard saved
 Huon sawe that the citey was become chrystenyd / if they consented
 then th[e]y sette theyr offciers, prouostis, and baylyes to be christened,
 to gouerne the citey, and with them .ii.M. persons but if they
 32 kepe y^e citey. Thus they taryed ther¹³ .viii. dayes, refused, they
 were slain.
 The victors set
 officers over
 the city, and,
 having tarried
 there eight days,

¹ of the bridle. ² vnto. ³⁻³ mount vpon. ⁴ euer.

⁶ vanquished and. ⁶ vpon. ⁷ and. ⁸ great.

⁹ Fol. cxvi. back, col. 1. ¹⁰ mercie.

¹¹ false and detestable. ¹² our Sauour and Redeemer.

¹³ by the space of.

made ready to depart.

They set forth, leave the Caspian Sea, enter the Euphrates river, and thence pass into the great sea.

They coast the desert of Abylante in bright weather and a fresh wind.

Huon and the admiral talk over their adventures, and praise God for their success.

The admiral has great desire to see the Holy City.

Huon hopes to reach it, but the chief object of his voyage is the destruction of all unbelievers.

The travellers meet with no adventure for eight days.

Huon laments the fate of Esclaramonde.

¹then they made redy to depart, and trussyd & newe wyttelyd theyr shyppes / ¹then they enteryd in to theyr shyppes,² trompetes, and³ busyns, & tabours made⁴ noyes,¹ the mareners weyed vp theyr ancrs and ⁴hyssed vp theyr sayles, & sayled so longe that⁵ they were out of⁶ great see of caspus, and enteryd in to the great floude of eufrates / the whiche dissendeth in to the great see / when they were passed the ryuer / they ⁸costydde the desertis of abylande / the sesone was fayr and clere, and the wynde freshe. Thus⁷ they sayled by this great see, the admyrall and Huon stode at the borde syde of theyr shyppe and deuysed⁸ of ¹²theyr aduentures, & laudyde⁹ god of his grace¹⁰ that he had done to ¹¹them. ‘Huon,’ quod the admyrall, ‘great desyre I haue¹² to se the holy citeye wher our lord god was crucifyede and layed in sepulture.’ ‘syr,’ ¹⁶quod Huon, ‘by y^e grace of god we shall ryght well¹³ come theder, & I hope he shall do¹¹ vs¹⁴ greater grace¹⁵ as to ayede vs to conquare and to ¹⁶dystroye them¹⁷ in our way that byleueth not on our holy law / for *that* is ²⁰the chef¹⁸ entent of our vyage.’ Thus they deuysed togydder the space of .viii. dayes withoute fyndynge of any aduenture ;¹ so on¹⁹ an euennyng Huon all alone stode lenynge ouer the shyppe bord / beholding the ²⁴see, y^e which was playne and peasable, then he remembrede y^e duches Esclaramonde his wyfe / therewith the teres fel²⁰ downe his vysage, & sayd, ‘a, ryght noble lady, when I remembre in²¹ what²² danger I left you in, ²⁸and in what pouerte & mysery ye be in,²³ I haue no²⁴ membre but *that* trymblyth for the dysplesure that I

¹ and. ² and the. ³ omitted. ⁴ great. ⁵ vntill.

⁶ the. ⁷ as. ⁸ demysed in text. ⁹ praysed.

¹⁰ for. ¹¹ vnto. ¹² I haue after admyrall.

¹³ and shortly. ¹⁴ farre. ¹⁵ yet.

¹⁶ Fol. cxvi. back, col. 2. ¹⁷ all those. ¹⁸ cheefest.

¹⁹ vppon. ²⁰ ran tenderly. ²¹ omitted. ²² peril and.

²³ nowe. ²⁴ ioynt nor.

am in, and for fere left y^e false emperoure cause you to
 dye or¹ my retoure,' then he begane to make great
 sorwe² / then³ Barnarde, who was not farre fro hym,
 4 sayd / 'A, syr, ye know well that in all the fortunes
 and aduentures that hath come to⁴ you god hathe
 ayeded you and sende⁵ you fro the peryll of deth /
 therfore take⁶ comfort to yourself, and laude and pryse
 8 god for that he sendeth⁴ you / and doute not yf ye
 haue perfyte hope and trust in hym he wyll ayed and
 comfort you / ⁷he neuer forgeteth them *that* with good
 harte serueth hym.' Thus with suche wordes Barnard
 12 comforted Huon / ⁷then the admyral came and lent
 downe by Huon / and deuysede togyder of⁸ dyuers⁹
 thynges / the same tyme there rose vp a wynd and a¹⁰
 tempeste so great and so horryble that the sayles were
 16 broke in dyuers places, & some mastes brake and flewe
 ouer the bordes of the shyppe / the see begane to be
 wode¹¹ and furyous / so that euery man though[t] to
 haue bene peresshyde : the fortune of this tempest was
 20 so horryble /¹² euery man / deuoutly called vpon our
 lorde god to saue them fro that¹³ perryll.¹⁴ 'syr,' quod
 Huon, 'I pray ¹⁵you shewe me what countre is yonder
that I se before me, we were happy and¹⁶ we myght
 24 aryue there and cast our ancrs vnder the rocke that I
 se ther' / 'syr,' quod y^e Admyrall, 'we be aryued at an
 yll¹⁷ port, for we be nere to the deserts of abylande;
 on¹⁸ yonder mountayne that ye se is conuersant an
 28 enemy, who hath causyd many a shyppe and vesseyll
 to be drowned in this see, wherby we be all in great
 aduenture¹⁹ to be lost / for none can aproche to this
 rocke / but *that* he is slayne & stranglyd²⁰ by the

Barnard consoles
him.

There suddenly
rose up a great
tempest;
the sails and
masts were
broken in diuers
places.

Huon demands
the name of the
country he sees
before him.

It is an evil port,
inhabited by an
enemy who slays
and strangles all
who approach.

¹ ere. ² and greefe. ³ but. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ saued.

⁶ good. ⁷ and. ⁸ about. ⁹ and sundrie.

¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ rough. ¹² as. ¹³ the.

¹⁴ and danger that they were in. ¹⁵ Fol. cxvii. col. 1.

¹⁶ fortunate if. ¹⁷ euil. ¹⁸ vppon. ¹⁹ daunger.

²⁰ slayne *after* strangled.

Every man is
much afraid,
and the admiral is
anxious to
withdraw from
the place.

Huon must have
speech of this
enemy;
if he displeases
him he will strike
off his head.
The admiral
declares that
500 Huons could
not resist him.

Huon is
determined to
visit him;

the admiral tries
to dissuade him,
but in vain.

Barnard wishes to
go with Huon;

enemy that ys there, / then euery man was in great
fere, and the Admyrall sayd to¹ y^e mareners / 'syrs, I
pray you if it may be let vs draw out of this quarter' /
'Syr,' quod Huon, 'me thynke ye are to sore² abasshyd / 4
for by that lorde that made me to his semblaunce,
I shall neuer haue ioye in³ my harte tyll⁴ I know why
that enemy causethe them to perysshe⁵ *that* pas⁵ this
waye / I shall neuer rest tyll⁴ I haue spoken with 8
hym, and yf he do any thyng contrary to my pleasure,
I shall stryke of his hede.' 'Huon,' quod the admyral,
'I haue great maruayle of that ye do saye / for yf there
were .v.C. suche as ye be / within an owre ye shulde 12
all be dede and strangelyd.' 'Syr,' quod Huon,
'dought not⁶ that / for thoughe I shuld dye in the
quarrell, I wyll go se hym and know the cause why he
letteth or troubelethe this passage / or⁷ it be .iii. dayes 16
to an ende I shall go and speke with hym⁸ what
soeuer fortune.'⁸ 'Syr,' quod the admyrall, 'in you it
is to do your owne wyll: ⁹syn it pleseth you I must
be content / but yf ye wold beleue me ye shuld not 20
take on¹⁰ you that vyage.'¹¹ 'Syr,' quod Huon, all
smylynge, 'I haue my hope¹² in¹³ god¹⁴ and in y^e vyrgyn
Mary his mother,¹⁴ who hathe¹⁵ hether vnto¹⁵ sauyd
me,¹⁶ and so I hope they¹⁷ wyll do¹⁸ yette / for it is a 24
comune prouerbe sayde,¹⁷ whome that¹⁴ god wyll ayde¹⁹
no man can hurte.' 'Syr,' quod the admyrall, 'I praye
to¹ our lorde god to defende you fro all yll / and²⁰
gyue you²¹ grace to retourne agayne in sauegarde' / 28
'syr,' quod Huon, 'I thanke you.'²² Then Barnarde
rose vp & sayd, 'dere cosyn, I requyre you²⁰ let me go

¹ vnto. ² dismayed and. ³ at. ⁴ vntill.
⁵⁻⁵ so fast. ⁶ you. ⁷ before.

⁸⁻⁸ what fortune soeuer commeth therof. ⁹ for.

¹⁰ vpon. ¹¹ and enterprize. ¹² and trust.

¹³ almightie. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ omitted. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ heretofore.

¹⁶ from death. ¹⁷ he. ¹⁸ Fol. cxvii. col. 2.

¹⁹ and succour. ²⁰ to. ²¹ the. ²² heartily.

- with you' / ¹ then the admyrall sayd / 'syr, I desyre
 you² be contente that I and Barnarde maye keep
 you company, and we shall haue with vs for y^e more
 4 sauegard of our parsones .CCCC. hardy knyghtys' /
 'syr,' quod Huon, 'by goddys grace I wyll go alone,
 none shall go with me but my selfe and Iesu Chryste,
 and his blyssyd mother, in whose sauegard I comyt
 8 my selfe' / when Barnard hard that he had great
 sorowe at his harte, and so had the admyrall, when
 they sawe³ they coude not tourne hym⁴ fro his⁵
 vyage.⁶ Then Huon armyd hym⁷ and toke leue of the
 12 admyrall and of the other lordys, and of Barnard, who
 made great sorow for his cosyn Huon, who all alone
 wold go in to the desertes⁸; when Huon had taken his
 leue, he was sette a londe,⁹ and made the syngne of
 16 the¹⁰ crosse on¹¹ his breste. Then he mountyd vpon the
 mountayne, but or¹² he was the halfe waye / a great
 wynde arose on¹¹ the see / so that the tempeste was
 great and orryble / ¹³so that¹³ the cordys and cables
 20 of the shypys with the admyrall brast asonder / ¹so
 that¹⁴ parforce they were fayne to take the see and sayle
 at aduenture as wynde and wether wolde serue them /
¹⁵so that parforce¹⁵ they were cast out of that great
 24 se, wherof the admyrall and Barnarde, and all the other
 lordys had great fere, and greatly complayned for
 Huon, who alone without company was mountid on¹¹
 the moun¹⁶teyne; and as he was goynge he lokyd
 28 downe into the see / and saw the marueylous tempest
 that was in the see, so that of .CC. shypes that he
 had left there with the admyral, he coude then se no
 more but .ii. together, for al the rest were separate one
 32 fro another in great peryll¹⁷ / then he began¹⁸ to wepe

the admiral will
 also accompany
 him with 400
 brave knights.

But Huon desires
 to go alone;

Barnard and the
 admiral are much
 grieved.

Huon arms
 himself,
 takes leave of his
 comrades,
 and is set ashore.

When he was
 half way up the
 mountain, a storm
 arose, which
 forced the
 admiral to sail as
 the wind would.

The ships are
 cast about on the
 great sea, and
 all have great
 fear for Huon.

Huon sees the
 storm, and how
 all the ships were
 scattered.

¹ and. ² to. ³ that. ⁴ Huon. ⁵ dangerous.

⁶ and enterprize. ⁷ self. ⁸ to seke adventures.

⁹ shoare. ¹⁰ a. ¹¹ vpon. ¹² ere. ¹³⁻¹³ whereby.

¹⁴ omitted. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ whereuppon.

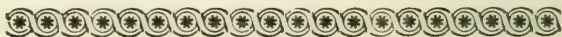
¹⁶ Fol. cxvii. back, col. 1. ¹⁷ and danger. ¹⁸ pitifully.

He began to weep
for his wife
Esclaramonde,
whom he thought
never more to
see.

He prayed to God
to aid him in his
need,

to cause Barnard
to reach a haven
in safety,
and to allow
Huon to see his
friends again.

and complayne for his wyfe¹ Esclaramonde, whome he
thought then neuer more² to se, bycause he was in that
deserte, and saw the shyppes dreuyn fro the londe in
great fere of lesyng. Then he knelyd downe and held ⁴
vp his handys to³ y^{e4} heuen, requyryng our lorde god
of his petye and grace to ayde and to gyue hym
comforte so⁴ that he myght scape⁵ thence alyue / and
to saue the shyppes and to bringe them agayne in ⁸
sauegard to the place fro whence they departyd. Then
petuously⁶ he complaynyd for his wyfe and doughter,
& sayde, 'a, ryght noble lady Esclaramonde, when I
remembre the paynes, and dolours, and pouerties, that ¹²
by my cause ye suffer and haue sufferyd / all my body
sweteth for⁷ payne & doloure / Alas, I had thought in
short space to haue ayded and socuryd you / but now I
se well⁸ our departynge is come for euermore / in yonder ¹⁶
perelous see, I se my cosyn Barnard and dyuers other
lordys, that by my cause are in the way of pardyssyon
without god to⁹ ayde¹⁰ them, whom I humbly requyre
to sende them that grace that they may aryue at ²⁰
some¹¹ porte, and that I may ones¹² see them agayne to
the entente that I may fyght agaynste the paynymys
and sarasyns in exaltynge the law of Iesu chryst.'
Thus Huon of Burdeaux made his prayers to our lorde ²⁴
Iesu chryste.



¹³¶ How Huon wente so long in this deserte
that he founde Cayine and spake with hym
a longe season, and howe he begylid ²⁸
Cayine and departid. Ca. cxxxi.

¹ the faire. ² more *after* se. ³ vnto. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ from. ⁶ greuously. ⁷ by. ⁸ that. ⁹ doe.

¹⁰ and succour. ¹¹ good. ¹² once *after* them.

¹³ Fol. cxvii. back, col. 2.



4 After that Huon had thus made his
 prayers to¹ our lorde god, he rose vp
 & blyssyd him with y^e synigne of y^e
 crosse recommaundyng hym selfe
 to¹ our lorde god, & so² came to the
 heyght³ of the mountayne; ⁴ when
 he was there al his body trymbelyd with traueyle, so
 8 that he was⁵ faynte, and feble. Then he lokyd all⁶
 about, ⁷ and sawe in a fayre medow a clere fountayne,
 thether he went to refresshe and to reste hym / then he
 layde hym down on⁸ the gras to refresshe hym or⁹ he
 12 wolde drynke, he was so hote / and when he was well
 colyd he came to the fountayne and dranke¹⁰ a lytyll
 and wasshyd his handys and fase / ¹¹ then he went
 further into the foreste and coude fynde nother towne
 16 nor castell, gardayne, nor trees with frute, wherof he
 was¹² sorowfull, ¹³ and so serchyd all day to fynde som
 man or woman, but all was in vayne / & when he saw
 that the sonne went to rest and coude fynd no creature,
 20 he was sore anoyed¹⁴ / he chose out a tree & there¹⁵ layd
 hy[m]¹⁶ downe & slepte; & in the mornyng when he
 saw the sonne ryse, and that his beamys spred abroad
 on⁸ the erthe / then² he arose and blessyd hym / and so
 24 wente forth in to the deserte and found nother man
 nor woman / beste nor byrde, wherwith ¹⁷ he was sore
 dyspleasunt¹⁷ / deuoutly he callyd vpon our lorde god
¹⁸ Iesu chryst, and on his blessyd mother the vyrgyn
 28 Mary, ¹⁸ prayenge them¹⁹ to haue in theyr²⁰ ²¹ tuisson²²
 his body and sowle / and that he myght yet ones see
 his wyfe²³ and ²⁴ chylde.²⁴ He went so long in this

On reaching the top of the mountain, Huon was faint, and fell down.

He refreshed himself at a clear fountain, and,

going further into the forest, could find neither town, castle, gardens, neither were there men nor women.

He was sore annoyed, and laid him down to sleep under a tree.

At sunrise he arose and went into the desert, but met neither man nor woman, beast nor bird. He called on our Lord Jesus Christ and the Virgin Mary to let him see once again his wife and child.

1 vnto. 2 omitted. 3 toppe. 4 but. 5 verie.
 6 round. 7 him. 8 vpon. 9 before. 10 thereof.

11 and. 12 right. 13 and sore displeased.

14 discomforted. 15 vnder. 16 hyd in text.

17-18 being sorowfull and angrie. 18-18 omitted.

19 him. 20 his. 21 Fol. cxviii. col. 1. 22 and keeping.

23 the faire Escleremond. 24-24 Clariet his Daughter.

At last he reached
a plain, where he
saw a tun of oak
bound with iron,
which rolled
about in the
circuit of the
plain,

and beside it,
lying on the
ground, a great
mallet of iron.

As the tun passed
by him, he heard
a piteous voice
within com-
plaining.

He approaches
near,
and asks who lies
within it.

No answer comes
forth.

Huon conjures
the voice to reply
to him.

He who is in the
tun replies that
Cain is there who
slew his brother,

deserte that at last he cam to a playne of a¹ .iii. bowe
shote large, and in y^e myddes therof he sawe a tonne
made of the hart of oke, bound all abought with
bandys of Iron / and it euer¹ tournyd and rollyd in the 4
playne, and neuer passyd out of the cyrcuyte of the
playne / and besyde the tonne he saw where there lay
on² the grounde a great mall of Iron / great maruayle
Huon had³ when he saw this tonne thus⁴ rolle abought 8
without sease lyke a tempeste, and as it passyd by
hym⁵ he hard a petuous⁶ woice within the tonne sore
complaynynge, and when he had hard it .ii. or .iii.
tymys he aprochyd nere to the toune, and sayd, 'thou 12
that art in this tonne / speke to⁷ me & shew me what
thou art or what thyng thou nedyst⁸ of, and why *thou*
art put there' / Then when he that was in this⁹ tonne
harde Huon,¹⁰ restyd styl & spake no word.¹¹ when 16
Huon sawe that it wold not speke, ¹⁰sayd / 'what so
euer thou art, I coniure y^e by hym that creatyd all the
worlde, and by his sone our lorde Iesu chryst, whom he
sent downe to suffer dethe and passy[on] on the tre of 20
the crosse to redeme his frendys, who by the synne of
Adam and Eue were in lymbo, and by his glorious
resurreccyon, and by his aungels and archangels,
Cherubyns and Seraphyns, and by all his holy sayntys, 24
I coniure *thee* to shewe me what thou arte, & why¹²
thou art set here in this tonne?' when he that was
within the tonne hard how sore he was coniuryd,
he answeyrd and sayde / 'thou that hast coniuryd me, 28
thou doeste great yll¹³ to cause me to shew the y^e
trouthe / knowe suerly that I haue to name Cayme,
and sone I was to⁷ Adam & Eue,¹⁴ and am he that
slew my brother Abel by false and cursid enuy that I 32

¹ omitted. ² vpon. ³ had *after* maruayle.

⁴ thus *after* abought. ⁵ Huon. ⁶ pitifull. ⁷ vnto.

⁸ hast neede. ⁹ the. ¹⁰ he. ¹¹ he.

¹² and for what cause. ¹³ euill. ¹⁴ Fol. cxviii. col. 2.

had to¹ hym, bycause his oblacyons and dymes that he
made to¹ god were exaltid, and the fume therof went
vpwarde to heuyn / and tho² that I made the fume
4 wente downe warde / and when I sawe that, I slewe &
mourderyd my brother Abell, wherfore, and for the
great syn that I haue commyttyd, I am dampnyd to
be and to suffer this merterdome with in this tonne
8 wherin I am closyd brynnynge³ and with serpentys,
and todys here within deuouryth⁴ me, and yet I can
not dye / and here I shall be vnto⁵ the day of Iuge-
mente, and then my payne shall be doubelyd / Nowe
12 haue I shewyd the thy demaund, wherfore I repute the
but a fole / when thou art so hardy⁶ to enter into this
deserte where as neuer man enteryd and departyd
without dethe / for knowe for trouthe⁷ hether repayreth
16 .ii. enemyes, fendys of hel, who shall sle the and bere
thy sowle into hell without thou wylt do as I shall
shewe the' / 'frende,' quod Huon, 'I pray the shewe
me what it is that thou spekest of, or what thyng
20 thou wylte that I shulde do, and I shall⁸ do it to the
entent that I may departe⁹ hense / there is no thyng
in the worlde but I shall do it for the, so thou shewe
me the way how I maye departe⁹ hens' / 'frende,' quod
24 Cayme, 'I shall shew the what thou shalt do: thou
shalte take this malle of iron that thou seest there
& stryke therwith so long vpon this tonne tyl⁵ thou
breke¹⁰ it, to the entent that I myght¹¹ issue out / &
28 when I am delyueryd I shall set y^e in sauegard in
Ierusalem or in fraunce, or in what contre¹² thou wylte
wysshe / yf thou do this that I haue sayd, & delyuer
me fro this tourment, I shal set y^e whersoever thou
32 wylt be, in any lond¹³ chrysten or hethen / and yf thou

and is therefore
condemned to
suffer this
martyrdome until
the day of
Judgment.

None depart from
this desert alive,

for it is inhabited
by two fiends of
hell, who will slay
Huon unless he
does as Cain
shows him.

Huon will do
whatever Cain
asks him, if
only he will show
him how to
depart thence.

Cain tells Huon
to take the iron
mallet and strike
upon the tun till
he break it.

Cain will then be
delivered,
and will set Huon
in whatever
country he may
wish.

¹ vnto. ² those. ³ burning. ⁴ deuouring.

⁵ vntill. ⁶ as. ⁷ that. ⁸ will. ⁹ from.

¹⁰ hast broken. ¹¹ may. ¹² soeuer.

¹³ Fol. cxviii. back, col. 1.

Huon refuses to set Cain free until he has told him the way hence; then he promises so to do.

Cain tells Huon to descend the mountain, to enter a ship, and pretend to the one man he will find in it that he is Cain himself, ready to destroy Christian men;

do not this that I haue sayd, or¹ it be nyght I shall cause the to dye with great tormentes, for anone thou shalt se come heder .ii. deuyls of hell, fowyll and howdeous to behold, and they shall strangle the & bere 4 thy sowle into hell.' 2 'O, verye god,'² *quod* Huon, 'humbely I requyre³ the to saue me fro this tourmente / Cayme,' *quod* Huon, 'thou spekyste⁴ fayre and sayeste as thou lyste, but I wyll not delyuer the out of this 8 tonne tyll⁵ fyrst thou shewe me how I may departe hence' / then Cayme sayd, 'yf thou wylt promyse me by thy faythe and by thy parte of paradyse to delyuer me out of this tonne / I shall shewe the the maner 12 howe thou shalte scape fro hense.' 'Cayme,' *quod* Huon, 'haue no dought, and that I promyse the to kepe my faythe / so thou shew me the maner how I may depart out of this deserte, I shal delyuer the out 16 of thy tourmente.' Then Cayme sayd / 'thou shalte go by this lytyll pathe that thou seest here by on⁶ thy ryghte hande / the whiche shall brynge the straye to the see syde, the whiche is not far⁶ hense / ⁸then go 20 downe the mountayne where as thou shalt fynde a shyp, and therin but one man / but or thou⁹ enter into the shyppe, blysse the thre tymys, for he that thou shalte fynde there is a fende of hell / and shewe¹⁰ hym 24 howe thou art Cayme scapyd out of the rollynge tonne, and byd hym to pas the ouer; and saye howe¹¹ thou wylte go and dystroye¹² the chrysten men that be in the worlde & brynge theyr sowlys into hell / and 28 when he hereth the say thus, he wyll pas the ouer in sauetye / for it is longe synne that he hathe taryed for me / by cause he thynkethe I shulde scape out of this tonne. But thou must take with the this mall ¹³of 32

¹ before. ²⁻² Ah, good Lorde. ³ and beseech.

⁴ mee. ⁵ vntill. ⁶ from. ⁷ vpon. ⁸ and.

⁹ doest. ¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ that. ¹² slay all.

¹³ Fol. cxviii. back, col. 2.

- Iron on¹ thy necke to the entente that he shall the
better bylene the.² ¶ 'Cayme,' quod Huon, 'I pray
the is this of trouth that thou hast sayd?' / 'frend,'
4 quod Cayme, 'I lye neuer a worde. Nowe I praye the
synne³ I haue shewed the maner howe thou mayst
scape / take this mall of Iron and breke asonder this
tonne that I am in / that I maye be delyueryd'⁴ /
8 'Cayme,' quod Huon, 'I praye the⁵ shewe me who is
he that dyd put the into this tonne, & what is his
name?' / 'syr,' quod Cayme, 'knowe for trouth that
god of heuen set me here bycause I had dyspleasyd
12 hym for sleynge of my brother Abell, wherfore I haue
sufferyd so moche payne and sorowe that more I
can not endure / and therefore yet agayne I praye the⁵
delyuer me⁶ hense' / 'Cayme,' quod Huon, 'god
16 forbode that I shulye delyuer the syn³ our lorde god
haue set the there / know for trouth thou shalte neuer
departe⁶ thense without⁷ it be by his commaunde-
mente / for there shalte thou be euer for me / I had
20 rather be pariuryd then to fordo⁸ that thyng that⁹
god wyll haue done to punysse the for the ylles¹⁰ that
thou haste done / I knowe well as for the yll¹¹ that I
haue done as in brekinge of my promyse to the,
24 god wyll lyghtly pardone me for it / abyde thou there
with thy cursyd synnes / for as¹² by me thou shalte
haue none other ayde.'

he is to fasten the
iron mallet on his
neck, that the man
shall the better
believe him.
Huon is doubtful
if this is true;
but Cain never
lies.

Huon enquires
who put Cain into
the tun,

and learns that
God of Heaven
set him there.

Therefore Huon
will not release
him;

Cain shall not
depart thence
except by the
commandment of
the Lord.

Huon feels sure
he will be
pardoned for
thus breaking
his promise.

- ¶ How Huon departid fro Caym and passed
28 the see in a veseyle gydyd by the deuyll,
who byleuid it had bene Cayme / and
Huon aryuyd at a citey callid Colanders,
where as he found the admiral of perse

¹ vpon. ² and surely he will then passe the ouer.
³ seeing. ⁴ out of this paine and torment. ⁵ to.
⁶ from. ⁷ excepte. ⁸ vndoe. ⁹ which. ¹⁰ euils.
 ¹¹ euil. ¹² sure.

¹and Barnarde his cosyn, who had layd
sege to the citey. Ca. Cxxxii.



Cain calls Huon
traitor and liar.

Huon retorts;

Cain has well
deserved his
suffering, and
shall shortly have
more pain and
sorrow.

Cain complains
that Huon has
subtly deceived
him,

but owns that had
Huon delivered
him, he would
have strangled
the knight.

Hen Cayme² vnderstode Huon, he sayd,
'A, thou false traytoure, by whome I 4
am begyld and mockyd / thou arte
not worthy to be byleuyd in any
thyng that thou sayeste, thou lyste
worse than a dogge.' 'O thou false pariuryd traytoure, 8
thou hast yll kept thy promys, thou art not worthy to
be byleuyd, Cayme,' quod Huon, 'other good getteste
thou none of me / for thou arte not worthy to be harde,
when thou haste slayne thy dere brother by false enuy 12
and cursyd treason wherof thou arte ful / go thy waye,
traytoure, to moche yll³ can not be done⁴ the / be
contente with the tonne that thou arte in / thou
nedyste not fere of any fresshyng nor of more 16
fourtheryng for me, well hast thou deseruyd it, but
within short tyme thou shalte haue worse payne and
sorowe.' 'A, traytoure,' quod Cayme, 'and false lyer,
thou hast loste thy parte of paradyse.' 'Thou lyste,' 20
quod Huon / 'to⁴ the, ought to be kepte nother faythe
nor promys, bycause thou haste slayne Abell thy
brother, wherfore thou arte now ponysshid, and well
hast thou deseruyd it' / 'A, false lyer,' quod Cayme, 24
'suptlylly thou haste deseyuyd⁵ me by thy false wordys
and subtyltyes / I see well thou shalte⁶ go⁷ hense and
leue me styll in this payne.' 'sartaynely,' quod Huon,
'that I promysed the was but to begyle the / for as by 28
me thou shalt not come out without he commaunde it
that set the here' / 'well, Huon,' quod cayme, 'knowe
for sertayne that in all thy lyfe thou were neuer better
counseyld, for yf thou haddest delyuerde me out in 32
contynente I ⁸wolde haue strangled the.' 'A, false

¹ Fol. cxix. col. 1. ² had well. ³ euill. ⁴ vnto.
⁵ and mocked. ⁶ wilt. ⁷ from. ⁸ Fol. cxix. col. 2.

fende,' quod Huon, 'yet thou hast no repentaunce of thyne yll¹ that thou hast done / I wyll go my waye, and thou shalt abyde here styll² for euer in³ payne & 4 tormente' / there with Huon departyd and toke the mall on⁴ his neke and enteryd in to the letyll waye that Cayme had shewyd⁵ hym.

Huon departed the way Cain had shown him.

¶ Now we wyll leue spekyng of Huon and speke 8 of the admyrall of Perce and of his armye on⁴ the see. On⁴ the seconde day the tempest sessyd and the see⁶ calme and fayre / then the shyppes drew agayne togyder as it pleysede god, and aryuyd at a noble citey, 12 the whiche was as then in armanye called colanders, a great and a fayre citey / but after it was dystroyd by the noble duke ogyer y^e danoyse, he went in to ynde / the admyrall⁷ greatly compleyned for Huon 16 whom they had so lost / they though neuer to se hym more, and Barnarde his cosyn made suche sorowe that³ pyte it was to se hym; y^e Admyrall and all his lordes wepte⁸ sore⁹ for Huon, they thought ne[u]er¹⁰ to se hym 20 agayne. But he that oure lorde Iesu chryste wyll haue sauyd can not peryse, for Huon the same tyme came downe the mountayne to come to⁵ the porte where as the vesseyll laye and the deuyll with in it / when Huon 24 sawe the vesseyll and the fende with in it, who was so howdeous and horryble to regarde¹¹ that it was maruayle to se; he semyd well to be the deuyll of hell, his hede was as great as an oxe hede / his eyne more 28 redder then .ii. brynyng¹² coles, his tethe greate and longe, and as rought as a beyre, he caste fyre and smoke oute of his gorge lyke a forneyse, ¹³it was no meruayl though Huon doutyd hym / for when he saw 32 him so fowle, he had great fere / and so lent hymselfe

To return to the Admiral of Persia, the tempest ceased on the second day, when the ships arrived at a city called Colanders.

The admiral laments the loss of Huon greatly: he and Barnard fear never to see him again.

But at that very time Huon was coming down to the ship with the devil in it, of which Cain had warned him; the fiend was hideous to look upon.

Huon had great fear,

¹ euill. ² for euer after tormente. ³ great.
⁴ vppon. ⁵ vnto. ⁶ waxed. ⁷ and his companye.
⁸ and pitifully compleyned. ⁹ sore before wepte.
¹⁰ nener in text. ¹¹ beholde. ¹² burning.
¹³ Fol. cxix. back, col. 1.

and made the sign
of the cross.

The enemy did
not perceive the
sign.

Huon entreats
God to counsel
him how to deal
with the fiend;

if he remains in
the ship Huon
will surely be
slain.

If Huon escapes
from this ad-
venture, he will go
to the Holy
Sepulchre and
make war on the
Saracens.

Then Huon takes
heart,

and calls on the
fiend to give him
passage over the
sea.

The fiend refuses
to let him go
farther, and will
certainly slay
him and bear his
soul to hell.

Huon, in no way
abashed, says he
is Cain;

to a roke the better to beholde hym / ¹then he blyssed
hym with the synge of the crosse, recommaundyng
hymselfe to the saue garde of our lord ²Iesu chryst² /
it fortunede so the same tyme that y^e enemy sawe hym ⁴
not. 'A, ³very god,'³ quod Huon, 'I praye and
requyre the humbly to conseyll me in what maner
I shuld trust in this fowle fende who is fereful to
beholde, I haue merueyll how I myght be aquentyd ⁸
with hym, wheder I myght trust to be in the shyppe
with hym / sertaynly I haue great dought that he wyll
cast me in to the see or elles slee me on the other syde
of, y^e se I wote not what to do / for I most be fayne to ¹²
trust hym, or elles⁴ retourne in to the deserte, where
as I shall dey ⁵for rage,⁵ and neuer to⁶ se wyfe nor
chylde. But syn⁷ it is thus I shal aduenture myselfe
with hym / and yf I may escape fro this aduenture, ¹⁶
I shall go to the holy sepulture wher as our lorde Iesu
chryst was quycke and dedde / and then I shal make
warre vpon the Sarasyns' / then duke Huon toke on⁸
hym herte and corage, and with y^e mal on⁸ his neke he ²⁰
marchyd forth fersly / then he callyd the enemy and
sayd / 'O thou that kepest this wessell and passage,
passe me in contynente ouer this see and sette me
a londe on⁸ the other syde' / when the deuyll sawe ²⁴
Huon with the mal on⁸ his neke and spekyng so
fersly, he sayd, 'what arte thou, wheder wylt thou go,
or what dost thou seke for here, or how art *thou* so
bolde to come heder, thou shalt neuer go ferther. But ²⁸
I shal cast the in the see or strangell the, and then
bere thy soule in to hell.'

⁹¶ when Huon hard hym, he began to trymble, but
he was no thinge abasshyd / for yf he had fayntyd or ³²
taryed to haue made answeere he had incontynent be¹⁰

¹ and. ²⁻² god, but. ³⁻³ good Lord. ⁴ to.
⁵⁻⁵ with famine. ⁶ more. ⁷ seeing. ⁸ vpon.
⁹ Fol. cxix, back, col. 2. ¹⁰ beene.

dystroyed and slayne / but lyke a hardy knyght ful of
 great prowes, & ferme in the fayth of Iesu chryst, sayd /
 'hold thy pease, thou fole / for I am Cayme for whome
 4 thou hast taryed here so longe / I came ryght¹ now out
 of the rollynge tonne vpon the mountayne: hast the
 and passe me ouer this arme of the see / for I shall
 fynd nother man nor woman / that byleneth on² Iesu
 8 chryst but I shall sle hym to the entent that hell maye
 be fyllyd with theyr sowles' / when the fende harde
 Huon say so he had great ioye, and sayde / 'Cayme,
 whye haste thou made me tary here so longe as I haue
 12 done, I am ioyfull of thy comynge / for I could neuer
 haue departyd out of this place without thou haddest
 bene delyuerid out of the tonne, therefore, Cayme, come
 on thy waye, enter into this shyppe³ / and I shal
 16 brynge the where as thou wylte be / gladly I wyll passe
 the ouer the see to the entente that thou shuldest sle
 chrysten men and Sarasyns / to haue theyr sowles into
 hell' / Then Huon enteryd into the shyppe com-
 20 maundyng⁴ hymselfe to our lorde Iesu chryste: and
 sayd, 'quyckly passe me ouer' / or⁵ Huon thought
 that he had bene gone but .ii. legys, he was ouer on the
 other syde, wherof Huon had great maruayle that he
 24 was so sone ouer, and thankyd our lorde god that he
 was out of that daunger: then he toke leue of the
 enemy, and sayd, 'farewell, I wyll retourne agayn
 shortely, within these thre dayes thou shalte here
 28 tydynges of me' / ⁶then the fende answeyrd shortely
 and sayde, 'Cayme, go thy waye quyckely, & hast the
⁷to the entent that when thou retournyst into hell, thou
 shalte haue good chere of our maysters, who greatly
 32 desyreth thy comynge' / then Huon departyd quyckely /
 he thought euer the deuyl had folowed hym / ⁸then
 Huon⁸ went so longe that he aprochyd to a citey

the fiend must
 give him passage,
 and then will
 Cain slay all
 Christians.

The fiend joyfully
 invites Cain to
 enter the ship:

he will gladly
 take him over
 the sea.

Very quickly the
 ship arrives at
 the land on the
 other side of the
 sea,
 and Huon thanks
 God for his
 deliverance.
 He takes leave of
 the fiend,
 promising to
 return in three
 days.

Huon departed
 quickly, and
 approached the
 city of Colanders,

¹ euen.² in.³ presently.⁴ recommending.⁵ Before.⁶ and.⁷ Fol. cxx. col. 1.⁸⁻⁸ and he.

and in the evening entered it with the mallet on his neck.

The Saracens marvelled to see him come alone on foot, and armed,

and demanded of him who he was.

He is Cain, come to destroy all who believe in the law of Jesus Christ.

That night the paynims feasted Huon and welcomed him joyfully,

because the day before the admiral of Persia had laid siege to the city.

callyd Colanders / glad was Huon when he had loste the syghte of the ¹spryghte¹ / and in the euyunnyge he enteryd into the citey of colanders with the mall on² his necke / the paynims and Sarasyns³ within the ⁴ citey had great maruayle when he cam alone afote clene armyd into the citey / and amonge other there was one demaundid of hym what he was and why he wente so alone armyd / then Huon answeryd hym ⁸ fersly to abasshe hym therwith, and sayd, 'I am Cayme who by myne ylnes slew Abell my brother, wherwith god was angry with me / but or⁴ it be longe tyme I shall take suche vengauunce that as many men, ¹² or women, or chyl dren, as I fynd byleuyng in the lawe of Iesu chryst, I shall dystroy them all in such wyse that the paynims and Sarasyns shal haue no dought for any yll⁵ that they shall do to⁶ them / for I ¹⁶ shall dystroye and sle them all, nother sparynge olde nor yong' / when the paynims harde that they were ⁷ioyfull / and that nyght saruyd well⁸ Huon and made hym great feste, bycause they trustyd that he shulde ²⁰ dystroye all chrystendome, and sayd amonge them selues that he was as then⁹ welcom thether bycause the citey was besegyed the day before by the admyrall of Perce / thus Huon had great ioye & feaste made to⁶ ²⁴ hym ; and after supper he was broughte to¹⁰ a¹¹ ryche chambre wherin he laye and slept¹² tyll¹³ the nexte mornynge.

¶ ¹⁴ How Huon¹⁵ had great ioye when he sawe ²⁸ the admyrall of Perce before Colanders where he foughte with the Sarasyns.

Ca. C.xxxiii.

¹⁻¹ euill Spirit. ² vpon. ³ that were. ⁴ before.
⁵ euill. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ right. ⁸ well after Huon.
⁹ as then after that. ¹⁰ into. ¹¹ faire and.
¹² soundly. ¹³ vntill. ¹⁴ Fol. cxx. col. 2.
¹⁵ of Bourdeaux.



4 After that y^e admyral of Perce had
 lefte Huon in the deserte of abylaunt
 & how he had a great storme on¹ y^e
 see, & at y^e² last there shyppes
 assemblyd togyder & aryued at the
 porte before the ceyte of colanders,
 in the whiche cyete huon was³ in / who was ryght
 8 ioyous when he knewe that y^e admyrall was come
 theder to laye sege to the cete, and the admerall⁴ was
 sorowfull bycause they had lost huon, and speseyally
 barnard hys cosyn, for he though neuer to haue seen
 12 hym agayne. But he had shortly tydynges of hym as
 ye shal here after / when the admerall was aryuyd at
 y^e porte, they armyd them⁵ and ordeyned there men
 as well as they myght to assayll the ceyte of colanders.
 16 They issuyd out of there shyppys & came marchyng
 towards the ceyte, and made a great assault / ⁶then y^e
 paynymys⁷ armyd them on all sydes and went to the
 defences / then the chatelyne⁸ of y^e toune came to
 20 huon, and sayd, 'come on forth, cayme, it is tyme for
 you to shewe what ye can do / for here with out ar the²
 cristene men assaylynge the ceyte / I pray you spare
 them not,⁹ we haue great trust in you' / 'syrs,' quod
 24 huon, 'syn¹⁰ I am in this ceyte ye nedde not to fere
 any parson, anone ye shall se what I can do' / 'cayme,'
 quod the capetayne, 'I pray you go on before, and we
 shall folowe you' / 'well,' quod huon, 'with this mall
 28 I shall astone them all' / the paynymes had great ioy
 of his wordes, wenyng surely it had bene cayme /
 then huon¹¹ armyd hym / and he hadde a good horse
 brought to¹² hym, where vpon he mountyd / then he
 32 and the paynymys Issuyd out of the citey and found as
 then the admyrall of Perse and all his company redy

The admiral of Persia had arrived at the city of Colanders where Huon was,

although the admiral and Barnard were lamenting that never again would they see him.

The admiral orders his men to assault the city.

The paynimys, fully armed, went to the defences,

and the captain calls on Huon to show what he can do.

Huon is to go before, and the rest will follow; Huon will destroy the enemy with his mallet.

Huon, armed and well mounted, went out of the city, and found the men of the Admiral of Persia ranged in order of battle.

¹ vpon. ² omitted. ³ now. ⁴ and his companie.

⁵ themselues. ⁶ and. ⁷ and Sarazins. ⁸ Capitaine.

⁹ for. ¹⁰ seeing. ¹¹ Fol. cxx. back, col. 1. ¹² vnto.


Huon takes no part in the fight, because he had been so kindly welcomed in the city.

He thanks God that once again he beholds the admiral and Barnard, and hopes, with the Lord's aid, to see his wife and child.

rengyd¹ in batayle. And when he sawe *that* the Sarasyns were issuyd out, he set on² them fersly, and Huon, who was ioyfull of the aduenture that was fallen to him, he stepte out aparte to behold the batayle, and wolde not medyll bycause he had bene so well reseyuyd and feastyd in the citey by them of the towne. And he well parsayuid that the assaultes were of the realme of Perce, and how the admyrall & his cosyn Barnard³ were there / wherof he hadde suche ioye that he wepte for gladnes, and thankyd god of y^e good fortune that he had sent hym, and sayd: ³‘O very god, ye ought³ greatly to be laudyd,⁴ for ye⁵ neuer fayle⁶ them at 12 tyme of nede *that* serueth you⁷ / now I may well saye that with your grasyous ayde yet I shall ones⁸ se my wyfe & my chylde’ / thus Huon sayd to himselve beholdynge bothe batayles fyghtynge. 16

¶ Howe the citey of Colanders was taken by the admyrall of perce after he had wounne the batayle, and of the great ioye that was made to⁹ Huon when he was knowen by 20 the admeral of Perse and by his cosyn Barnarde. Ca. C.xxxiiii.

The admiral set on his enemies; the slaughter on both sides was great. The men of the city were worsted, and were forced to grant the victory to their enemies.

¹⁰  Hen the admyrall of Perce sawe and parseuyuyd *that* they of the towne 24 were issuyd out, he marched forthe his batayles and set on¹¹ his enemyes / there was great slauter¹² on both parties. But at the last they of the citey had the 28 worse, for the chrysten men were of a greater nombre then the paynymys¹³ that were issuyd out, wherfore

¹ arriued. ² vpon. ³⁻³ Ah, good Lord, thou oughtest.
⁴ praysed. ⁵ thou. ⁶ faylest. ⁷ thee. ⁸ more.
⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ Fol. cxx. back, col. 2. ¹¹ vpon.
¹² made. ¹³ and Sarazins.

- they were constraynyd to graunt the vycory to theyr
 enemyes / the paynymes ¹tourned theyr backes¹ and
 fled towardes theyr cite / & the admyrall and Barnarde
 4 with theyr company chasyd them ²and slew them,²
that it was pety to se it / fynally the admyrall opressyd
 them so sore, that he enteryd in to the cite with
 them, and Barnarde & his company / and slewe and bet
 8 downe the Sarasyns, that maruayle it was to see / the
 blud that ran in³ the stretys / when the admyrall sawe
 how⁴ he had the vycory / then he commaundyd to
 seece the² sleyng / and that all suche as wold byleue
 12 ⁵on god Iesu chryst,⁶ theyr lyues shuld be sauyd and
 theyr goodes / and so all such as wold not be christenid
 shuld be slayn incontynent and none sparyd, the
 which was done / many⁷ receyuyd chrystendome, and
 16 such⁸ as wold not were⁹ slayne / thus as this cite was
 taken; then Huon, who¹⁰ enterid into the cite with
 the admyralles men, came to the palays, where as
 he sawe the admyrall and all the barons, & Barnarde
 20 his cosyn / Huon had styl his malle in¹¹ his necke /
¹²when he came into the hal he dyd¹³ of his helme and
 salutyd the admyrall & all the other that were there;
 when the admyrall and his lordys sawe Huon, the¹⁴ ioye
 24 that they had no man¹⁵ can tel. 'O ryght¹⁶ vertuous
 knyght,' quod the admyrall, 'your comynge doth so
 reioys me that I can not tell whether I dreme or not,
 ye ar moche bounde to¹⁷ god that he hathe geuen you
 28 y^e grace to saue you fro perell /, then the admyrall /
 enbracyd Huon; and ye may well knowe that Barnarde,
 his cosyn, had great ioye, & so had all the other /
¹²then the admyrall sayd to¹⁷ Huon, 'syr, I pray you
 32 shew me what aduentures ye have had syn ye departyd

The paynims fled
 to the cite,
 pursued by the
 admiral and
 Barnard, who at
 length enter the
 cite.

Seeing he had the
 victory, the
 admiral orders
 the slaughter to
 cease,
 and promises to
 spare all who will
 be baptized.

Many accepted
 Christianity,
 those who would
 not were slain,
 and thus was the
 cite taken.

Huon comes to
 the palace, and
 salutes the
 admiral and all
 the others;
 their great joy
 no man can
 describe.

The admiral
 cannot tell if it be
 a dream or not;

he embraces
 Huon.

The admiral asks
 of Huon his
 adventures,

¹⁻¹ retired.

²⁻² omitted.

³ through.

⁴ that.

⁵ Fol. cxxi. col. 1.

⁶⁻⁶ in our Lorde God.

⁷ of them.

⁸ as many.

⁹ receiue were all.

¹⁰ was.

¹¹ vpon.

¹² and.

¹³ put.

¹⁴ great.

¹⁵ tongue.

¹⁶ deere and.

¹⁷ vnto


fro vs' / then Huon shewyd them all as ye haue harde
 here before, and how he scapyd / when the admyrall
 and other vnderstode Huon they were neuer so¹ abasshyd
 in all theyr lyfe / of that he was so scapyd fro the 4
 handys of the deuyll, and sayd how² he was moche
 bounde to³ god ; they were al glad⁴ of the comynge of
 Huon, and specyally Barnarde / then the capetayne of
 the citey, who had newly receyuyd chrystendome, came 8
 to³ Huon, and sayd / 'syr, I requyre you⁵ desyre the
 admyrall to be my goode lorde⁶ / for I promyse⁷
 faythefully to abyde here in this toun as his good and
 trew seruaunt, kepyng ⁸fermely the chrysten faythe, 12
 the whiche I haue newly receyuyd' / when Huon saw
 the capetayne who had receyuid hym in to his house at
 his fyrste comynge in to the citey, he wente to³ the
 admyrall, and sayd / 'syr, I requyre you to geue the 16
 kepyng of this citey to³ this noble man &⁹ to holde it
 as his owne, and to do homage to³ you for it' / 'syr,'
 quod the admyral, 'al *that* ye wyll I am agreable vnto ;
 I graunt it hym for the loue of you' / Then Huon 20
 thankyd the admyrall / the capetayne, seynge the great
 and ryche gyfte that the admyral had geuen³ hym for
 the loue of Huon, he had great maruayle of y^e great
 larges and courtesy that was done to³ hym by meanes 24
 of Huon / ¹⁰then he knelyd downe before them and
 thankyd them, and dyd homage to³ the admyrall in
 the presence of all the lordys,¹¹ and promysid trewly to
 kype the citey agaynst all men that wold do any 28
 domage therunto, nor neuer to yeld it vp to³ any
 parsonne but alonly to the admyrall or to³ hym *that*
 shall haue his comysseyon / thus¹² y^e citey of Colanders
 was taken.

32

¹ amazed and. ² that. ³ vnto. ⁴ and right ioyfull.⁵ to. ⁶ and Maister. ⁷ promised.⁸ Fol. cxxi. col. 2. ⁹ he. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ and barons.¹² as yee haue heard.

¶ How the admyral of Perce and Huon of
Burdeaux, and all theyr hoste, passyd by
Antyoche and by Damas & came to the
4 citey of Ierusalem to the holy sepulture,
& was nobly receyuid be the kyng of
Ierusalem / and how the Soudans messenger
came and defied the admyrall of perce.

8 Ca. CXXXV.

12  Then the admyrall and Huon sawe this
citey thus² wonne and brought vnder
their obeysaunce, and had stablysshed
there a newe lorde and capetayne, and
set prouostis, and baylyffes, and other

officers / then they toke aduyse together and deter-
mynd, syn they were alonde, to send backe agayne
16 theyr nauey of shyppes into Perce / & they to go by
londe to the citey of Ierusalem / for they had fro
thence as they were but .x. ³iouneys³ vnto antyoche /
and so to pas by that citey, and then to⁴ Damas,

20 & then⁵ to Ierusalem, and there to do theyr offerynge;
and yf by aduenture they founde in theyr waye other
kyngis or admyrallis that wolde let or trouble them in
theyr passyng, they sayd⁶ they were of pusans suffycient

24 to resyste agaynste them / and then they sayde how⁶ fro
Ierusalem the admyrall myght retourne by lond into
Perce / vnto the ryuer Eufates / and there his nauey to
mete hym, & so to conuey hym to⁴ his citey of Thauris /
28 & Huon to retourne to⁴ Iaffe, and fro thence by water
to retourne into fraunce: thus they concludyd to do /
the which aduyce was laudyd⁷ of all the lordys⁸ of the
hoste; af⁹ter this conclusyon thus taken / the admyrall

The admiral and
Huon determine
to send back their
ships to Persia,
and to go by land
to Jerusalem
through Antioch
and Damascus.

They themselves
were of sufficient
might to resist
any kings or
admirals who
should trouble
them in their
way.

From Jerusalem
the admiral could
return by land to
Persia;
his navy could
meet him at the
river Euphrates
and convey him
to Tauris,
and Huon could
return to France
by water from
Jaffa.

¹ Fol. cxxi. back, col. 1.

⁴ vnto. ⁵ so.

⁸ and Barons.

² omitted.

³⁻³ dayes iourney.

⁶ that. ⁷ and praised.

⁹ Fol. cxxi. back, col. 2.

The ships, after
setting ashore the
things necessary
for the journey by
land, are
discharged,

and their masters
commanded to
await the admiral
in the river
Euphrates.

The admiral
ordered that
merchants and
others should
send after his host
supplies of food,
and gave this
charge to the new
admiral of
Colanders.

Every man was
to be ready in the
morning to go
where it pleased
the admiral,

and with great
noise the admiral,
Huon, and all the
host entered the
fields on their way
to Antioch;

they reached the
city on a Monday,

commaundyd his shyppis to be dyschargyd of all
thyngis necessary to be caried by londe / the whiche
was done dylygently¹ / theyr horses were sette a londe,
and theyr tentys and paulyons trussyd vpon mulys, & 4
Camelles, and Dromedaryes / the which caryag semyd
a great host, there were so many together / the noyse
and brute that they made semyd to be a newe worlde /
2 when al the shyppis were dyschargyd, the patrouns 8
and maysters of the shyppis toke theyr leue of the
admyrall, who commaundyd them expresly to abide
for hym in the ryuer of Eufrates / and so they dyd.³
Nowe let vs leue spekyng of them and turne to⁴ ou[r]⁵ 12
fyrst⁶ mater. ¶ when these shyppis were departyd &
euery thyng trussyd / then y^e admyral commaundyd
thrughe⁷ all the countre that all marchantis and other
able to do it shulde sende after his host brede, wyne, 16
and flesshe, and bysket to vytell his host / and the
charge to se this done was geuyn to the newe admyrall
of⁸ Colanders / the whiche he dyd dylygently / when
the admyrall of Perce saw⁹ tyme to departe, he made it 20
to be cryed¹⁰ thrughe⁷ the city by a trompet¹¹ euery
man to¹² make hym redy to depart y^e next mornyng to
go whether it pleasid y^e admyral; this was done, so
that¹³ an owre before the next day there was great 24
brute & noyse made in the remouynge; then y^e admyrall
& Huon made them redy, & mountid on¹⁴ theyr horsis
& issued out of the citey and enterid into the feldis /
then the hole hoste toke y^e way towardis Antioche; 28
of theyr iourneys I make no rehersaille: they¹⁵ did¹⁵
so that they passyd by low Armanye & by the hye
16 ermyne, and so on¹⁴ a mondaye they came before
Antyoche / where as they logyd that nyghte a longe¹⁷ 32

¹ according to his commaundement. ² and.

³ accordingly. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ out in text. ⁶ former.

⁷ out. ⁸ the citey of. ⁹ his. ¹⁰ proclaimed.

¹¹ that. ¹² should. ¹³ at. ¹⁴ vppon.

¹⁵⁻¹⁵ road forth. ¹⁶ Fol. cxxii. col. 1. ¹⁷ by.

the ryuer¹ without that any parsones of the citey made any semblaunt to trouble or to let them / but they brought out of the citey into y^e host brede, flesshe,²
 4 and wyne, and othe[r]³ thyngys necessary for theyr meny⁴ / wherof the admyrall and Huon were ryght ioyous,⁵ and coude⁶ them great thanke / and for that courtoyse the admyral wolde not suffer that any of his
 8 hoste shulde do any hurte or damage to⁷ any parsones of the citey / then the nexte daye when they had dynyd, they toke theyr waye toward the citey of Damas / and as they wente thetherwarde they toke sartayne townes
 12 and castelles, and brought them vnder theyr obeyssaunce / and such as were taken parforce and wolde not byleue in our⁸ lorde god⁸ Iesu chryste incontynent⁹ were¹⁰ slayne.¹¹ Thus wastynge and dystroyenge the
 16 countre in theyr waye, at laste they came before the citey of Damas; when they came thether they logyd about the citey in the gardaines and subbarbes, and constraynyd them within the citey to brynge them
 20 vytayles / y^e whiche they dyd for dought of the dystroyenge of theyr gardayns and frutys there; they laye one nyght, and the nexte daye they toke the way to Ierusalem, and had dyuers batayles by the waye /
 24 but they were of so great a pusaunce that none coude resyst¹² them; so longe rode this chrysten host that they came and logyd before Napelous, and there lefte theyr hoste, then the next mornynge the admyrall and
 28 Huon, and dyuers of the great lordys¹³ of Perce,¹⁴ departyd fro Napelous, to the nombre of foure thousande¹⁵ knyghtis to accompany¹⁶ them into the ci¹⁷tye of Ierusalem / thether they came aboute none, where

and encamped by the river, supplied with food by the men of the city.

In gratitude for this, no man harmed any person of the city.

The next day they went towards Damascus,

and on their way took possession of certain towns and castles.

At Damascus they lodged in the gardens and suburbs, and obliged those within the city to furnish supplies.

The next day they set out for Jerusalem, fighting many battles by the way, but none could resist their power. They next lodged before Nablous, and Huon, the admiral, and about 4000 of the great lords of Persia, reached Jerusalem at noon on the next day.

¹ side. ² flesshe *after* wyne. ³ othem *in text*.

⁴ companie. ⁵ ioyfull. ⁶ gaue. ⁷ vnto.

⁸⁻⁹ Sauour and Redeemer. ⁹ they. ¹⁰ all.

¹¹ and brought to vtter ruine and destroyed. ¹² against.

¹³ and barons. ¹⁴ accompanied with them. ¹⁵ valiant.

¹⁶ guard. ¹⁷ Fol. cxxii. col. 2.

They were
joyfully received
by the king, and
the patriarch, and
the arch-priest.

They made their
offerings to the
Holy Sepulchre,

and when they
had accomplished
their holy pil-
grimage, all were
splendidly feasted
at the palace.

As they sat at
dinner, a Saracen
entered;

he was a
messenger sent
by the sultan
to challenge the
admiral to battle
between Rame
and Jaffa.

as they were receyuyd with great ioy of kyng Thybault
and of the patryarke & arche pryst, who as then were
in¹ Ierusalem / whom y^e emperour Constantyne had
lefte there and orderyd for the kepyng of the citey; 4
when the admyrall of Perce, and duke Huon, &
Barnarde, and other went and offeryd to the holy
sepulture / then they went to the temple of Salamon
and to² the holy temple of Symeon, where as they 8
made theyr offerynges / and the next ³day they dyd
theyr other³ pylgremages to² all the holy plases in the
citey with great deuosyon and reuerence; when they
had acomplysshyd theyr holey pylgremages, they 12
retournyd to the paleyse of the kynge of Ierusalem,
where as they were greatly festyd and honerably
receyuyd, of theyr seruyce I wyll make none acounte /
but one thyng I dare well saye, that there was neuer 16
admyrall⁴ nor kynge better seruyd / and as they sate at
dyner / there enteryd a sarasyn fowle and blacke,
callyd Trampoynngnyfle, the whiche is as moch to say
as Balaach. Then he sayd ahye before the table / 'the 20
same god that made the fyrmament, and that downe to
vs he³ sent his holy profyt Mahomet to teche vs his
holy law / he saue and kepe Saphadin y^e³ sowdan of
Babylon and of Egypte, & may confound them *that* 24
be his enemyes / to the admyrall of Perce & of Mede;
the sowdan sendethe the³ worde by me / that wro[n]g-
fully and without cause *thou* goest & dystroyest his
coun tre & his people without⁵ geuyng hym any 28
knowlege why *thou* dost soo / & therfore by me he
sendeth y^e word ³by me³ *that* am his secrete messenger,
that he wyl assyngne to² y^e day of batayle, that is a⁶
thursday nexte comynge, ⁷betwene Rame and Iaffe / 32
wheras there is a playne coun tre / and he wyll⁸ thou

¹ the Citie of. ² vnto. ³⁻³ omitted.


⁴ Admyrall *after* kynge. ⁵ not. ⁶ vpon.

⁷ Fol. cxxii. back, col. 1. ⁸ that.

knowyst for sartayne that yf he take the, thou shalte
be hangyd & flayne all quyeke,¹ and all other that I
se here settinge at this table.'

4 ¶ Of the answeare that the admyral of Perce
made to² the sowdans messenger / and of
the report that he made to² his mayst[er].

Ca. C.xxxvi.

8  Hen the admyrall had well harde³ the
sowdans messenger, he begane to smyle,
and sayd ⁴to the messenger, 'go and
say to⁴ thy mayster *that* I sette no
12 thyng by his thretenynge nor by no
thyng that he can do, nor I wyll not leue for all his
sayenge to distroye, and to take his townes and castelles,
and to sle all them that wyll not byleue in Iesu Chryst,
16 and saye vnto hym fro me that I am not in mynd to
reuele⁵ backe / but by the ayde of god my creature, I
shall go⁶ and mete with hym so that he shall not need
to tary for me, and I shall fyght *with* hym my pusaunce
20 agaynst his to shewe ⁷hym how they can do *that*
bileneth in Iesu chryst / go thy waye & saye to² thy
mayster that he shall not fynde me fleyng for any fere
that I haue of any man byleuyng in the false &
24 detestable faythe of mahomet.' Then the admyrall
commaundyd to gyue to the messenger mete & drynke,
and .xl. florencis; the messenger refusyd it not, but
toke it, and thankyd the admyrall / & when he had
28 dynyd he taryed not nyght nor day tyll⁸ he came to the
citty of Gasere, where as he founde the soudan & all
his army, the whiche was a great nombre, for they were
⁹mo then ⁹a .C.M. men, and all they thretenyd the

The admiral sets
no value on the
sultan's threats,
and is ready to
fight with him.

The admiral gives
the messenger
food and twelve
florins;

he returned to
Gaza, where was
the sultan with
100,000 men.

¹ and neuer see faire day more. ² vnto.

³ and vnderstood. ⁴⁻⁴ Tell. ⁵ retire. ⁶ come.

⁷ Fol. cxxii. back, col. 2. ⁸ vntill. ⁹⁻⁹ omitted.

The sultan was
astonished at the
admiral's reply,

and swore he
would kill him
quickly.

He orders his
host to march
towards Escalon.

deth of y^e admyral of Perce / but it is a comune sayng
that many thingis lackethe of folysse thoughtis, & so
dyd they / when y^e messenger was ariuyd at Gasere, he
came before the soudan & made his reporte what 4
answere the admyral had made hym / & when the sou-
dan¹ vnderstode the messenger, he had great maruayle
of the great outrage *that* he thought to be in the
admyral of Perce in *that* he durste abyde hym, & 8
sware by his lawe *that* yf he myght haue the vper
hand of the admyral that he wolde flee hym quicke.
Then he commaundyd his hoste to dysloge & to take
the way towardis Escalonne / y^e whiche they dyn. 12

¶ How the admyrall of perce sent his men
that laye at Napelous & causyd them to
drawe² towardes Rames, and how they
departyd fro Ierusalem; and how he wente 16
to fyght with his enemyes.

Capitulum .C.xxxvii.



3 After that Trampounnife, the mes-
sanger, was departyd fro Ierusalem 20
and retournyd to his mayster the
sowdan / then the admyrall of Perce
and Huon of Burdeaux, who were in
the palays with the kynge of Ieru- 24
salem / thether they callyd all theyr counsayle; and
when they were al assemblyd, the admyrall sayd /
'syrs, I pray you counsayle me what maner I shall vse
myselfe to go and mete with the enemyes of the chrysten 28
faythe, the whiche are come agaynst vs, therefore
I desyre eche⁴ of you to shew me your opynyons
what⁵ is best to be done.' Then Thybaulte, kynge of

The admiral asks
the king of
Jerusalem to
counsel him how
best to meet
these enemies of
the Christian
faith.

¹ had well heard and. ² with drawe.

³ Fol. cxxiii. col. 1. ⁴ eueryone. ⁵ in this case.

Ierusalem, arose¹ and sayd, 'syr admyrall of Perce and Mede, we thynke ye shuld not abyde them here / but rather ye ought to departe and to go agaynst your
 4 enemyes / for yf ye abyde for them in this citeye ye shal do great damage to this countre, for we haue truse with the Sowdan for .v. yerys, the which with our honour we can not breke / for yf we wolde haue made
 8 warre agaynst hym, we coude not a² resystid agaynst hym / and also we ar far of fro Fraunce to seke for socoure & ayde there.' Then³ the kyng spake no more. Then duke Huon of Burdeaux sayde / 'syr
 12 admyrall, y^e kyng of Ierusalem hathe shewyd you the trouthe / for yf we shuld abyde here, it shulde be alwayes to our reproche⁴ yf this holy citeye shulde be lost, the which was wonne by two noble emperours
 16 as of Rome and of Grece, for the kyng that is here his honoure sauyd and the suertye of his countre, maye not breke the truse that he hath taken with the Sowdan of Babylon / and therfore myne aduyse it⁵ that as sone as
 20 we may commaunde your men that be at Na⁶pelous hastely to dysloge and to mete with you at Rames / and then when ye haue somewhat refresshyd your hoste, then set forwarde towardys your enemyes / as the
 24 kyng of Ierusalem hathe sayd / for it were folly to gyue them leyser to come to far forward / fyrst let them know how the swordys and sperys of the Percyens and Medyers can stryke / who somtyme dyd maruayles
 28 in armes, wherfore it is reason that they folowe nowe theyr predecessours' / when Huon had fynysshyd his reason / the admyrall and all the⁷ lordys that were there laudyd,⁸ and helde *that* counsaile good that was
 32 purposyd by the kyng of Ierusalem and of Huon / and then they departyd and retournyd to theyr⁹

King Thybault advises them to go and meet the enemy,

since he has a five years' truce with the Sultan, and cannot in honour break it.

Huon advises that the men left at Nablous be commanded to break up their camp and meet them at Rames, and then altogether set forward against the enemy.

¹ vp. ² haue. ³ thus. ⁴ and shame. ⁵ is.

⁶ Fol. cxxiii. col. 2. ⁷ other. ⁸ praised.

⁹ Chambers and.

The admiral
follows this
counsel,

takes leave of
the king of
Jerusalem;
Huon and
Barnard do
likewise.

On arriving at
Rames they found
the host ready
lodged,
and the next day
the host sets out
for Escalon, to
the great joy of
Huon.

The admiral
arranged his
army thus:
the first division
under Huon and
Barnard; the
second led by the
marshal of
Persia; and the
third by the
admiral himself.

He exhorts all
to do their duty
valiantly,
and specially puts
his hope in the
strength and
prowess of Huon.

logynge. Then the admyral commaundyd hastely his
hoste to drawe towardes rames, where as he wolde tary
for them / the whiche thyng was done dylygently /
¹the host restyd not tyll they came to² Ramys, where ⁴
as they founde redy y^e admyralles herbygers, who had
redy³ apoyntyng their logynges. Thus after that y^e
almyrall had wryten to his marshalles of his hoste, he
toke then⁴ his leue of the kynge of Ierusalem, and in ⁸
lyke wyse so dyd Huon and Barnarde his cosyn, with-
out knowlegyng of hymselfe to the kynge of Ierusalem.
Then they departyd fro y^e holy cite, and rode so longe
that they came to the towne of Rames, whereas they ¹²
founde theyr host redy⁵ lodgyd. Then they restyd
them there vnto⁶ the nexte daye / ¹then the admyrall
commaundyd⁷ to dysloge and⁸ thake the waye towardys
Escaloune. A goodlye syght it was to se the hoste ¹⁶
dysloge / Huon had therof great ioie / for he desyryd
rather to slee the paynymes then to be in chaumbres
with ladies & damosellis; ⁹when they were all in the
feldys the admyrall ordayned his batayles / the fyrst ²⁰
gydyd Huon of Burdeaux and Barnard his cosyn, he
had with hym .xx. M. Persyans ferse and hardy / the
seconde batayle led the marshall of Perce with .xx. M.
men⁵ of good men of warre / the thryd batayle led the ²⁴
admyrall of Perse and of Mede, and with him .xxx. M.
men⁵ of the most valyantys men of his hoste / ¹when
euery thyng was ordayned as it aparteyned, he went
and vysyted,⁷ exortynge them to do well theyr ²⁸
deuoyre¹⁰ / then he came to² Huon and sayde. ‘O,
ryght¹¹ vertuous knyght, garnysshed and replete with
all prowes / all my hope I put in your strenthe and
vertue of your armis and body / therefore I desyre you ³²

¹ and. ² vnto. ³ alreadie. ⁴ then *after* haste.

⁵ omitted. ⁶ vntill. ⁷ them.

⁸ to make them ready to. ⁹ Fol. cxxiii. back, col. 1.

¹⁰ and praynge them to quit themselves valiantly.

¹¹ deare and.

this day to shew out your great vertues wherof¹ ye
 be² garnysshed / for specyally for y^e loue of you and
 for your bountye I haue taken & receyuyd the holy
 4 baptym, wherof I laud³ our lord god of his grace *that*
 he hathe done to⁴ me / therfore I desyre you this day
 to shewe to⁴ the sarasyns that your sworde is to be
 feryd' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'god gyue me grace to be
 8 such⁵ one as ye saye, and to parfourme in me that⁶
 lackethe / and, syr, I truste in me it shall not be let but
that this daye our enemyes shall haue no cause to praise
 nor to make⁷ bost; ⁸therfore, syr, let vs ryde forth
 12 suerly / for by the grace of god I haue hope *that* this
 daye we shall gyue⁹ our enemyes so moch a do that
 they shall haue scant¹⁰ ¹¹leyser to graunte⁴ vs the
 vctory' / and¹² as y^e admyrall and Huon was¹³ thus
 16 deusyng together, they sawe before them a fare of the
 ayre waxe thycke, and that the sonne lost his clerenes,
 wherof they had great maruayle, bycause they sawe¹⁴
 the sonne shyne so fayre & clere there; as they were
 20 ¹⁵anone they parseyuid that the darkenes rose by reason
 of the dust rysynge of the horses of theyr enemies, who
 were hastely comynge towardes them to haue taken
 them in theyr logynge, wherby they came all out
 24 of order / trustynge all in theyr great nombre of men,
 for they were mo then a .C.M.; ferfull it was to se
 them comynge / so faste they rode, that the one hoste
 myght well se the other / when Huon had well parseyuyd
 28 them and sawe theyr demenoure and dysorder,¹⁶ sayde
 to⁴ y^e admyrall / 'syr, well ye ought to prayse our
 lord ¹⁷Iesu chryst,¹⁷ for this day he shal brynge your
 enemyes into your handis to sle them at your pleasure;
 32 therfore, syr, I counsaile¹⁸ that incontynente ¹⁹in

Huon trusts the
 enemy shall have
 no cause to boast,
 and is anxious to
 ride forward.

As they talked,
 they saw the sun
 lose his clearness,
 and marvelled
 much;

it was by reason
 of the dust from
 the horses of their
 enemies,

who, trusting
 to their vast
 numbers, were
 advancing with-
 out any order.

¹ wherwith. ² are. ³ and praise. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ a.

⁶ which. ⁷ their. ⁸ and. ⁹ make. ¹⁰ scarce.

¹¹ time and. ¹² now. ¹³ were. ¹⁴ a little before.

¹⁵ Fol. cxxiii. back, col. 2. ¹⁶ hee. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ god.

¹⁸ you. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ we hasten and.

Huon advises
an immediate
attack upon the
enemy;

it is easy to
discomfort them
while they are in
such confusion.

The admiral gives
the word to
advance.

When the sultan
sees the host of
the Persians
advancing,

he desires to set
his armies in
order.

Then steps forth
the admiral of
Dorbrye, great
and horrible to
behold.

He rode a mare
with a horn in
her forehead.

The admiral
seemed rather a
fiend of hell,
and all made way
as he came to the
sultan.

The admiral
advises to meet
the enemy at
once,
he boasts he can
slay them all.

haste¹ sette vpon them to the entente that they shal
haue no¹ leyser to assemble together to brynge themselfe
in good order / yf we do thus it is no dought, but by
the grace of god, we shall shortly dyscomfyte them or² 4
they be assembledid.' 'Syr,' quod the admyrall, 'your
opynyon is good and resonable / let it be done as
ye haue deuysid' / then the admyrall commaundyd y^e
marshalles & capetayns of his hoste to marche forwarde 8
his batayles agaynste his enemyes / ³then trompettys
and tabours⁴ began to sown, that it was maruayle to
here them / ³then they set on towardis theyr enemyes /
when the Sowdan and they of his hoste sawe the 12
Persyans comyng agaynst them redy rengyd in batayle /
then⁵ he callyd to⁶ hym his kyngis and admyrallys,
who were .xv. in nombre, and said to⁶ them / 'syr, it
were good that our men restyd styll a season, that we 16
myght order and renge our batayles / for yonder we
maye se⁷ our enemyes comynge' / Then stepte forthe
the admyral of Dorbrye, who was orryble & great to
behold, ⁸he was .xv. fote of heyghte, and rode on⁹ a 20
goodly splayed mare, the most fayrest and greatest that
euer was sene, she had a great horne in her forhede / yf
she were anythyng chafyd none durste aproche nere⁶
her but alonly her kepar / this admyral was fowle and 24
great, he rather semyd a fende of hell then any humayne
creature / ³when he came to⁶ the Sowdan euery man
made hym way / then he said to⁶ the Soudan, 'syr, I
haue great maruaile of the that thou art so affrayed for 28
a small nombre of men / who are comynge towardys
theyr dethe / syr, knowe for trouth that or² ye can
order your men in ¹⁰to good¹⁰ araye, I shall dyscomfyte
your enemyes and delyuer to⁶ you the admyrall of 32

¹ time nor. ² before. ³ and.

⁴ Drummes. ⁵ omitted. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ well.

⁸ Fol. cxxiii. col. 1. ⁹ vppon.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ battaile.


Perce other quycke or dede' / when the Sowdan¹
 vnderstode the admyrall of Dorbrey, he sayd / 'syr
 admyrall, I put al the conducte of myne hoste into
 4 your handys / I haue great affyaunce in the vertue that
 is in you, and in the strenthe of your armys / the
 whiche ar greatly to be feryd' / then the Sowdan
 commaundyd all his host to set on² theyr enemyes, and
 8 sayd / 'syn³ the admyrall of Dorbrey is *with* me I fere
 no man of Perse nor⁴ Mede,' & so sporyd his horse
 without makyng of any good order.

The sultan
 therefore puts the
 conduct of his
 host into the
 hands of the
 admiral of
 Dorbrey.

¶ Now speke we of the great batayle that
 12 was in the playnes of Raines betwene the
 Sowdon of Babilon and the admyrall of
 Perce / the whiche was discomfited by
 the prowes of Huon of Burdeaux.

16

Ca. C.xxxviii.

5  Hen Huon, who led the fyrst batayle of
 the Perseans, beheld and sawe how
 the Sarasyns came on *without* any
 20 good ordre or conducte, he sownyd his
 trompettes, exortynge his men to do
 well,⁶ and commaunded his constables and marshalles to
 hast⁷ forward, and so dyd the Admyrall; ⁸his company
 24 and they ioyned nere one to a nother to the entente
 eche of *them* to socoure other; when Huon saw his
 enemyes *aproche*, and that it was tyme to set on⁹ / he
 commaundyd his archers and crousbowes to shote, ⁸so
 28 they dyd, that by reasone of y^e shotynge of bothe
 perteyse it semyd lyke a clowde, so¹⁰ that there by and
 with¹¹ duste togyther it darked the lyght of y^e sonne;
⁸then Huon couchyd his spere and ranne at hym that

Seeing the
 Saracens advance
 in disorder,

Huon sounds his
 trumpets, and
 hastens forward,

joined by the
 admiral's
 company.

Huon commands
 the archers and
 crossbowmen to
 shoot,
 and so they do
 till the light of
 the sun was made
 dark by their
 arrows.

¹ had well heard and. ² vpon. ³ seeing. ⁴ of.

⁶ Fel. cxxxiiii. col. 2. ⁶ and valiantly. ⁷ march.

⁸ and. ⁹ vpon them. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ the.

Huon runs at the
sultan's standard-
bearer with his
spear,

throws him,

and kills so many
Saracens that
they doubt if
Huon be mortal.

He slew five kings
and two admirals;
and he and
Barnard are so
greatly feared
that the Saracens
hardly dare
approach him,

and so fierce is
the battle that its
like has not been
seen for 100 years.

When the sultan
saw his men so
slain, he curses
the time that he
put faith in the
admiral of
Dorbrey.

bare the soudans standder, who was comynge before all
the other to cause his compayne to folowe the faster;
Huon gaue hym suche a stroke with his spere that
he persyde hym¹ thorowe the body so that he fell fro
his horse² with y^e standard, wherof the Sarasyns were
abasshyd and sore³ dyspleasyd / then they aprochyd to
reyse vp agayne theyr baner / but Huon and the
Perseans encounteryd them fersly so⁴ that many were
slayne on both parties / he that had sene Huon howe
he slewe and bet downe the Sarasyns and paynymes,⁵
wolde haue sayde that he was no mortall man / but
rather a man of the fayrey, for the great prowes and 12
maruayles that he dyd / for he causyd the paynmys,
whether they wolde or not, to recule backe and to
forsake the baner⁶ lyenge on⁶ the erth / for or⁷ he
departyd⁸ thense he slewe .v. kyngis & .ii. admyrallis / 16
Huon was so feryd that there was none so hardy⁹ durst
aproche nere to hym /¹⁰ also¹¹ Barnarde his cosyn¹¹ was
greatly to be feryd, and he euer folowed Huon as nere
as he coude / then there ioynyd y^e batayles of the 20
marshallys / and the admyrall of Perce set vpon the
sowdans batayle / then¹⁰ the batayle began so orryble
and great¹² that a .C. yerys before was¹³ sene none
suche; ¹⁴ valyantly dyd the admyrall of Perce and 24
suche as were in his company / when the Soudan sawe
his men so slayne, he was¹⁵ sorowfull,¹⁶ & sayd to¹⁷ the
admyrall of Dorbrey, 'I may well curse the daye
& tyme that I beleuyd you / for by you I haue lost my 28
baner, and I se my men slayne / for and¹⁸ I had
orderyd my batayle before / this myschefe had not
happyd / nor that¹⁹ is aparant to fall / ¹⁰ then the

¹ cleane. ² Fol. cxxiii, back, col. 1.

³ sore before abasshed. ⁴ so before fersly.

⁵ Paynymys and Sarasyns. ⁶⁻⁶ that laye vpon. ⁷ before.

⁸ from. ⁹ that. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹⁻¹¹ his Cozen Barnard.

¹² great before horrible. ¹³ were. ¹⁴ so. ¹⁵ right.

¹⁶ and sore displeased. ¹⁷ vnto. ¹⁸ yf. ¹⁹ which.

Soudan couchyd his spere and strake therwith a knyght
 who was great mayster of the howse of Perce, in suche
 wyse that the sowdan ran hym elene thurgh, and so
 4 he seruyd the second, thyrde, and fourth, and when his
 spere was broken, he drewe out his sworde and dyd
 therwith great ¹ damage; great cry and noyse was
 made when the batayles ioynyd / there myght a² bene
 8 sene many horse rynnynge abrode in the felde traylynge
 theyr brydellis after them, and theyr maysters lyeng in
 the felde a monge the horse fete, and³ orryble thyng
 it was to se and to here y^e playntys⁴ and cryes that the
 12 woundyd men made amonge y^e horse fete, hauyng
 no power to releue themselfe, but there dyed and
 fynysshed theyr dayes miserably; great cry made the
 sarasyns and Persyans that fought together, and
 16 speccially where as Huon fought & serchyd the rankes,
 and brake the great presys, he bet downe and con-
 foundyd all that came before hym / so that none
 durste abyde before hym / for by that tym he had
 20 slayne vi of the kyngys and .v. admyrallis, besyde
 many other / so *that* the noyse and crye cam to the
 herynge of the admyrall of Dorbrey, who dyd great
 dystruccyon amonge the Persyans, so that it was an
 24 orryble thyng to se⁵ / and when he harde how that
 there was a knyghte that dyd great damage,⁶ and had
 slayne dyuers kyngis and admyralles / he said to⁷ a
 paynyme who had broughte⁸ those⁹ newes / 'go thy
 28 waye and shewe me¹⁰ hym¹¹ that hathe done vs so great
 damage' / 'syr,' quod the paynym, 'I shall shewe¹² you
 hym¹⁰ / but I wyll aproche to hym no nerer then I am
 now; ye may se hym¹⁰ yonder how he fyghtethe / and
 32 makethe our men to recule¹³ backe,¹⁴ for there is none so

The sultan does
great damage,

and when the
armies are joined,
there is much
noise,

and many perish
under the horses'
feet.

The admiral of
Dorbrey, hearing
of Huon's pro-
gress, desires to
meet him,

and a Saracen
points him out to
the admiral.

¹ Fol. cxxiii. back, col. 2. ² haue. ³ a.

⁴ complaints. ⁵ and behold. ⁶ and hurt among them.

⁷ vnto. ⁸ vnto him. ⁹ tidings and. ¹⁰ omitted.

¹¹ vnto me. ¹² him vnto. ¹³ retire.

¹⁴ from him.

When the admiral
beheld Huon, he
spurs on his mare.

Huon does not
refuse to meet
him.

The admiral kills
Huon's horse,

and lifts Huon
by his armour
on to the neck
of his mare,
and the admiral,
carrying Huon
in one hand,
fights with the
other.

Huon, fearing he
is lost, asks God
to have pity on
his wife.

The admiral
desires to present
Huon to the
sultan,

but the mare,
running among
the spears and
men that lay on
the ground,
stumbles, and the
giant falls.

hardy that dare aproche nere¹ hym' / then the gyaunt
behelde Huon and saw how he made the paynymes to
recule² backe / then he stroke his mare with the³
sporys. ⁴Huon, who well parsayuyd⁵ hym comynge, ⁴
feryd hym; howbeit, he refusyd hym not / but cam
with his sword in his hand⁶ ⁷agaynst ⁸then the paynym,
then ⁸ the sarasyn, who bare a great hache in⁹ his
necke, sawe Huon comynge / ⁴strake at hym, but as ⁸
god wold,¹⁰ he myst hym, for yf the stroke had lyght
vpon hym he had bene slayne / the stroke lyght vpon
the crope of his horse, so that the horse fell downe dede
and Huon on⁹ his backe; and he was not so sone ¹²
releuyd but that the gyant toke hym by the harneys¹¹
& caste hym before his sadell as lyghtly as thoughe
it¹² had bene but a fether, and so he helde and caryed
Huon with y^e one hand and fought with the other ¹⁶
hande / when Huon felte hymselfe so taken he cryed¹³
vpon our lord god & prayed hym to haue petye¹⁴
of Esclaramond his wyfe, for he saw well his lyfe was
determinyd / the gyaunte who was¹⁵ ioyfull in that he ²⁰
had taken Huon who had done the sarasyns so moche
damage / he desyryd to fynde the Sowdan to make
hym a present of Huon / so that with the hast that he
made he strake his mare, and she began to lepe and ²⁴
gaumbaulde, and began to rynne; and, as fortune was,
she ran amonge the broken sperys and dede men that
lay on the ground so that she stombelyd, ¹⁶so that
she¹⁶ knelyd to the erthe / and the gyante thought to ²⁸
haue releuyd her / but he coude not by reason of the
weyghte that laye vpon her necke / ¹⁷so that¹⁷ she was

¹ vnto. ² retire. ³ his. ⁴ and.

⁵ and saw.

⁶ then. ⁷ Fol. cxxv. col. 1. ⁸⁻⁸ the Sarazin, and the.

⁹ vpon. ¹⁰ haue it. ¹¹ armour. ¹² he.

¹³ and called. ¹⁴ and compassion. ¹⁵ right.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ and thereby.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ and by the great swiftnesse of her running.

- fayne to fal downe to the erthe / when Huon saw¹ that,
 he was lyght and quycke, and rose vp on his fete / and
 when he sawe the gyaunte fallen downe & began
 4 to releue / he hastyd hym and lyfte vp his sworde
 with bothe his handys and gaue the gyaunt such a
 stroke on² the helme that he claue his hede to the
 brayne so³ therwith he fel⁴ dede to the erthe / and
 8 then Huon sesyd² the mare by the rayne⁵ and lepte
 vp⁶ vp⁷ on her and had great ioy, and so had the
 Persyans / and the admyrall had great ioye, for it had
 bene shewyd hym how y^e gyaunt had taken Huon / and
 12 was scapyd and had slayne the gyaunte / when Huon
 felt hymselfe on² the stronge mare, he dasshyd in
 among the paynymys⁸ and met with the kyng of
 Olyfarne, whom he gaue suche a stroke that he claue
 16 his hede asender; then he ran at the admyral of
 Oreaney, who was brother germayn to⁹ y^e sowdan, he
 gaue hym suche a stroke on the sholder that he strake
 of his arm, so that it fell⁴ to the erthe shyld and all; ¹⁰
 20 when the admyrall felte hymselfe hurte,¹¹ wolde haue
 fled a waye / but Huon, syttyng on² the mare who
 was the swyftest ¹²horse of ¹²the world, ran after him,
 & when Huon had ouertaken y^e paynym,¹³ he gaue
 24 hym suche a stroke on² the hede that he claue it to his
 tethe, & so¹⁴ fell downe dede to the erthe / wherby the
 paynymys¹⁵ were so afrayed that after that they durst
 not assemble together; this was shewyd to y^e sowdan
 28 how the gyant was slayne and .v. other kyngis and
 admyralles, and his brother also slayne / and all by the
 handis of one knyght / and also he sawe his batayle
 sore broken and how they began to fle, wherfore he
 32 saw well that yf he taryed there longe he shuld be

Huon quickly
rises to his feet,

kills the giant
to the earth with
his sword,

and leaps on his
mare.

Great is the joy of
all the Persians.

On the strong
mare Huon
dashes in among
the paynims,
and meets and
kills the king of
Olyfarne.

He kills the
admiral of
Oreaney to the
ground.

As he tries to flee,
Huon overtakes
and kills him.

When the sultan
saw how many
bold knights were
slain by the hands
of one man, and
how his men
began to flee,
he feared he
would be either
slain or taken.

¹ and well perceived. ² vpon. ³ that. ⁴ downe.

⁵ of the bridle. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ Fol. cxxv. col. 2.

⁸ and Sarazins. ⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ and.

¹¹ and wounded, he. ¹²⁻¹² of pase in all. ¹³ Sarazin.

¹⁴ hee. ¹⁵ and Sarazins.

The king of
Antiopheney, a
near relative,
counsels him to
flee;

and the sultan,
with twenty men,
departs towards
Acre, which
belongs to the
Saracens.
Huon, mounted
on the powerful
mare, beats down
his enemies,
and none can
abide his strokes.

The admiral
wishes that Huon
could always stay
with him.

The admiral and
Barnard follow
Huon,
but by reason of
his good horse, he
outstrips them.
Huon's desire is
to overtake the
sultan.

other slayn or taken / then the kyng of Antiopheney,
who was nere parent to y^e sowdan, came to¹ hym and
sayd / 'syr, thynke² to saue thy lyfe, for yf thou tary
longe here there is none can saue the / for yf the 4
knyght that is with the admyrall of Perce hap to com
hether thy lyfe is lost, therefore I counsayle the to
departe and saue thy selfe / elles thou art but dede.'
then the sowdan ³with a³.xx. with hym departyd and 8
toke the waye by the se syde to go towardys ⁴Acre,
the whiche as then partaynyd to¹ y^e sarasyns, and
Huon, who was mountyd on⁵ the pusaunt mare, betyng
downe his enemyes so that none durste abyde his 12
strokys; and the admyrall of Perce folowyng him,
regardynge that by y^e hye prowes of Huon his enemyes
were confoundyd⁶, and sawe well howe⁷ there was no
humayne body that had any powre to resyst agaynst 16
hym⁸ without deth / then he sayd to¹ his lordys and to
Barnarde / 'syrs,' quod y^e admyral, 'yonder before you
ye may se maruayles and thyngis incredible to be
declaryd / for ye may se there is none so pusaunt⁹ that 20
can resyst agaynst my frende Huon / ¹⁰wolde to god⁷
he were vnmaryed / then he shulde neuer departe fro
me, for I wolde then gyue hym my doughter;¹¹ I shall
be so¹² sore dyspleasyd¹³ when he shall depart frome' / 24
thus as ye haue herd the admyrall of Perce¹⁴ sayd to¹
his company, and so sleyng and betyng downe the¹⁵
sarasyns that fled / the admyrall and Barnard folowyd
Huon, but by reason of his good hors he was so 28
far before them that they coude not ouertake hym, for
he desyryd nothyng so moche as¹⁶ to ouertake the
sowdan, who was fleyng as fast as he myght towardys
the citey of Acre / when the admyral sawe that he 32

¹ vnto. ² how. ³⁻³ and about.

⁴ Fol. cxxv. back, col. 1. ⁵ vpon. ⁶ and discomfited.

⁷ that. ⁸ and escaped. ⁹ and strong. ¹⁰ I.

¹¹ in mariage. ¹² verie. ¹³ and discomfited.

¹⁴ and Media. ¹⁵ Paynims and. ¹⁶ he did.

coude not ouertake Huon, then he and Barnard enteryd
 in amonge the sarasyns who were fleyng away; the
 admyrall and Barnarde slewe & bet them downe that¹
 4 petye it was to se² / for with the blode of y^e dede
³sarasyns theyr swordys were all⁴ tayntyd red; yf I
 shuld skewe all the hye prowes⁵ that was⁵ done there
 that daye, it shuld⁶ be ouer longe to reherse / but
 8 I dare well saye that by the great prowes of Huon the
 batayle was vanquesshyd and clene dyscomfytyd / the
 7 Percyans chasyd the sarasyns and paynymys⁸ and
 slew an[d]⁹ ¹⁰bet them downe, the chase enduryd more
 12 then .iiii. legis / and the admyrall had great maruayle
 that he could not ouertake nor here no¹¹ thyng of Huon /
 who chasyd styll the sowdan & folowid hym so longe
 that Huon found the sowdan¹² alone / for his men could
 16 not folowe hym so fast for¹³ theyr horses wer so wery
 that they coude¹⁴ go no¹⁵ further / y^e sowdan rode on¹⁶
 a pusaunt¹⁷ horse / and Huon, who folowed hym on¹⁶
 the pusaunt mare, anone ouertoke hym / ¹⁸when he came
 20 nere to the sowdan / he sayd, 'O thou¹⁹ sowdan, great
 shame²⁰ thou maiest haue when thou fleest thus²¹ away
 all alone without¹¹ company, tourne thy shyld agaynst
 me or elles I shall sle the fleyng.' when the sowdan²²
 24 harde Huon he had great ²³fere²³ / for he knew well it
 was he by whome he had²⁴ so great losse,²⁵ and by
 whome so¹⁵ many kyngis & admyrallis had bene slayn,
 and thought to hymselfe yf he tournyd²⁶ not²⁷ he
 28 shulde be slayne, wherfore he toke corage to hymselfe,
 seynge *that* Huon was alone as well as he, and also he

The admiral and
 Barnard slay the
 fleeing Saracens,

and, owing to the
 great prowess of
 Huon, the enemy
 is vanquished.

At last Huon
 comes up with the
 sultan;
 he is alone, his
 men being unable
 to keep up with
 him.

Huon challenges
 the sultan to
 fight.

The sultan takes
 courage, seeing
 Huon is alone
 also.

¹ great. ² and behold them. ³ Paynims and.

⁴ all *after* taynted. ⁵⁻⁵ and maruailous deedes that were.

⁶ would. ⁷ Fol. cxxv. back, col. 2.

⁸ Paynims *before* Sarasyns. ⁹ add *in text*. ¹⁰ did.

¹¹ any. ¹² all. ¹³ because. ¹⁴ not. ¹⁵ omitted.

¹⁶ vppon. ¹⁷ and a goodly. ¹⁸ and. ¹⁹ traiterous.

²⁰ and reproach. ²¹ thus *after* away. ²² had well.

²³⁻²³ maruaile and was greatly feared. ²⁴ received.

²⁵ and damage. ²⁶ returned. ²⁷ that.

They ran fiercely together, and had not the sultan been rescued by his men, he would have perished.

Huon, sore abashed, will not flee, and deals his strokes among them;

great slaughter follows.

The sultan tells his men to slay Huon's mare, for then he will be overcome.

If they let Huon escape them, never more ought they to be seen in prince's court.

thought that it shulde not be longe or¹ he were socourid with some of his men that folowyd hym, & therefore, lyke a hardy knyght, he tournyd his horse hede towardis Huon / who fersly ran together² & gaue⁴ eche other great strokys, but it had bene³ but a⁴ small profyght⁵ to the sowdan and⁵ he had not bene rescued by his men, for⁶ Huon had elles⁴ slayne hym / but thether came a⁷ .xl. knyghtys sarasyns, and they al ran⁸ at Huon / who was sore⁸ abasshyd when he saw hym selfe so enclosyd with his enemyes; how beit he myght haue sauyd hymselfe welynowe yf he had lyst to ha[ue] fled awaye / but for any fere of them he wolde¹² not fle, but⁹ he delte suche strokys¹⁰ amonge them *that* there was none so hardy that durste aproche nere¹¹ hym, so sore they feryd hym / for he strake none with a full stroke but that his hede was clouen to the brayne¹² / ¹⁶ when they sawe¹³ they coude not take nor sle hym, they were¹⁴ sorowful¹⁵; then the sowdan cryed and sayd, 'syrs, on⁴ vpon hym, great shame it is to¹¹ you all when by the body of one man ye are so put backe, and ²⁰ ye se wel¹³ he hathe no socoure / go and sle the mare that he rydethe on¹⁶ with sperys and dartis / then he shall be sone ouercome / and ye know well¹³ it is he by⁴ whome I haue sufferyd al my great¹⁷ damage / it is ²⁴ he that hathe slayne my men, and by hym I haue lost the batayle / yf he scape¹⁸ you ye ought neuer to be sene in any prynces court' / when the paynyns¹⁹ vnderstode theyr sowdan, they then²⁰ sore oppressyd Huon, who ²⁸ dyd²¹ merueyles²², but his pusaunce and vertu shulde²³

¹ before. ² one at another. ³ vnto the sowdan.

⁴ omitted. ⁵⁻⁵ if. ⁶ if they had not come when they did.

⁷ about. ⁸ dismayed and. ⁹ and.

¹⁰ Fol. cxxvi. col. 1. ¹¹ vnto.

¹² or to the teeth, so that they needed after no Surgeon.

¹³ that. ¹⁴ right. ¹⁵ and angrie. ¹⁶ vpon.

¹⁷ losse and. ¹⁸ from. ¹⁹ and Sarazins had well.

²⁰ then after they. ²¹ great. ²² in armes.

²³ but.

- lytell auayle¹ hym yf he had not bene shortly² Huon did
 secoryd / and also by reason of the riche stonys and marvels, but his
 perles that were on³ hym / then the⁴ Sarasyns, who of power would have
 4 .xl. were lefte alyue but .xxviii., they saw well⁵ they auailed little, had
 could not haue⁶ Huon without fyrst⁷ they slewe the he not been
 mare that he rode on⁸; therfore they cast at her dartyes succoured by the
 & iauelyns in suche wyse that fynally they slew her precious stones he
 8 vnder hym, wherof Huon was⁸ sorowful⁹, and was had on him.
¹⁰then in¹¹ fere of his lyfe / then he callyd vpon our The Saracens
 lorde Iesu chryst to haue petye¹² of his sowle, for cast their darts at
 he saw that his lyfe was at an ende, & sayd, 'dere Huon's mare,
 12 lord Iesu chryst, I pray the by thy swete marcy to and finally slew
 haue¹³ compassyon of my wyfe¹⁴ who is in great parel her under him.
 and pouertye for the loue of me without any deserte of Huon, in fear of
 her part, and also I recomende into thy sauegarde my his life, calls on
 16 lytell doughter Claryet.' After that Huon had made our Lord Iesus
 his prayer to¹⁵ our lorde¹⁶ god, he toke his shyld and Christ to have
 his sworde in his hande afote, and he saw where there pity on him,
 grewe a busshe, he went thether and set his backe and recommends
 20 therto that the sarasyns¹⁷ shuld not come behynde his wife and
 hym,¹⁸ so he stode at a baye lyke a wylde bore baytyd little daughter
 with houndis, there was not so hardy a paynyme¹⁹ that Claryet into God's
 curst assaile hym / they cast at hym sperys and dartis, safe keeping.
 24 but they coude neuer hurte his flesshe, he coueryd Huon sets his
 hymselfe so well²⁰ with his shyld that nothyng coude back against a
 touche²¹ hym. The sowdan, seyng that no thyng bush, and so
 coude hurte hym / he sayd to his men, 'a, ye false¹⁸ stands at bay,
 28 vntrewe cowardis, of mahomet be ye cursyd, when ye but not a paynim
 can not slee nor take one man alone' / ¹⁸then the can hurt his flesh.
 sowdan approchyd¹⁵ Huon and gaue hym a great stroke

¹ haue auailed.² aided &.³ vpon.⁴ Paynims and.⁶ that.⁶ ouercome.⁷ first after mare.⁸ right.⁹ and sore displeased.¹⁰ as.¹¹ great.¹² and compassion.¹³ pitie and.¹⁴ Escleremond.¹⁵ vnto.¹⁶ Fol. cxxvi. col. 2.¹⁷ and Paynims.¹⁸ and.¹⁹ or Sarazin.²⁰ and so surely.²¹ pierce.

and broke his shield into two pieces.

Looking behind him, the sultan perceives the admiral of Persia with 20,000 men coming to Huon's aid.

The sultan then decides to leave this enemy, who cannot be vanquished by force of arms. Near them was the sea, about a league from Jaffa, towards Surrey, a galley was there, sent from Escalon, and thither rode the sultan. Huon, right weary, could not have borne up so long save for the precious stones about him.

The sultan and his men enter the galley, and leave their horses on the sea shore.

so that he brake his shyld in two peces, wherof Huon then was in¹ fere of dethe / then the sowdan drew backe and lokyd behynde hym into the playnes of Rames wheras the great batayle had bene / and then he⁴ sawe comynge the admyrall of Perce with .xx. thousande men, and they came to seke for Huon / ²when the sowdan sawe that socours were comynge to³ Huon / the whiche he knew by reason of the great baner⁸ of Perce / then the sowdan sayd to³ his men / 'syrs, let vs leue this enemye, who by force of armys can not be⁴ vanquesshid / let vs saue our lyues, for yonder I se comynge the admyral of Perce / for² yf we tary longe¹² here we⁵ are all dede⁵ & dystroyed.' Nere to³ them was y^e see syde about a lege fro Iaffe, the way towardis Surrey / there was redy a galey the which the sowdan had sent thether fro the citey of Escaloun / ¹⁶the sowdan rode thether; and his men lefte and forsoke⁶ Huon, who was ryght wery and coud not longe haue enduryd, nor had not enduryd so longe but for the⁷ vertue that was in the ryche stones⁸ that ²⁰were about hym. The sowdan to saue his lyfe he and his men dyd so moch that they came to the place where as the galey was / and enteryd in to it in² great haste¹⁰ for¹¹ sauegarde of theyr lyues, &¹² forsoke⁶ ²⁴their horses on¹³ the see syde.

¶ How the admyral of Perce¹⁴ found Huon, where as he hadde foughte with .xl. men sarasyns, and howe the sowdan fled to 28 acre / and how the admyral of Perce¹⁴

¹ great. ² and. ³ vnto. ⁴ ouercome nor.

⁶⁻⁵ shalbe all slaine. ⁶ did forsake.

⁷ Fol. cxxvi. back, col. 1. ⁸ and pearles. ⁹ as.

¹⁰ as they could by any meanes. ¹¹ the. ¹² they.

¹³ vppon. ¹⁴ and Media.

besegid hym there; and of the¹ vysyon
that Huon had in a² nyght. Ca. C.xxxix.

4 **A**fter that the Sowdan was thus fled
and departyd, the admyrall of Perce³
came to the place where as Huon
was sore wery of trauayle, and saw⁴
8 aboutt hym ⁵ laye dede⁵ a great
nombre of men slayne, wherof they
had⁶ maruayle; the admyrall, seynge Huon alone,
began⁷ to wepe for petye and for ioy that he had, and
sayd, 'O ryght noble⁸ knyght, moste excellente of all
12 other leuyng in this world, to whome in prowes and
valure none can compare⁹ / ye are the myrour of all
knyghtis / the temple of trouthe / the resort¹⁰ of wedowes
and of⁵ orphelyns / to whome god hathe geuyn so
16 great¹¹ grace that none can saye¹² the bountye *that* is
in you / by whome the honure of the Percyans and
Medyens this day is sauyn and kepte / I desyre
you ryght cordeally,¹³ my dere frynd,¹⁴ shewe me yf ye
20 haue any hurt wherby ye shulde be in any parell'¹⁵ /
'syr,' quod Huon, 'it apartayneth¹⁶ not to¹⁷ me to
haue suche hye wordys or prayes to be geuen / I
oughte to haue none other prayse but as one of your
24 other knyghtis, wherof ye haue so many noble and
valyaunte that they can not be noumberyd / but, syr,
know for trouth, this grace and glory cometh of our
lord god, who hathe aydyd and socoryd you, reportynge
28 how¹⁸ ye haue in hym parfite affyaunce' / ¹⁹ then the
admyrall alyghtyd, and came and embracyd Huon,
and after²⁰ came Barnarde, sore wepyng for petye²¹

The admiral of
Persia comes to
where Huon is,
sore weary;

the admiral
marvels at the
number of men
lying dead
around.

He weeps for joy
at seeing Huon,
and sings his
praises;

then the admiral
asks if Huon has
received any hurt.

Huon disclaims
any merit in
himself;

the success came
from God alone.

¹ strange. ² the. ³ and Media. ⁴ lying.
⁶⁻⁵ omitted. ⁶ great. ⁷ sore. ⁸ and valiant.
⁹ be compared. ¹⁰ comfort. ¹¹ vertue and.
¹² report. ¹³ hartely. ¹⁴ to. ¹⁵ or daunger.
¹⁶ Fol. cxxvi. back. col. 2. ¹⁷ vnto. ¹⁸ that.
¹⁹ and. ²⁰ him. ²¹ compassion.

Barnard, weeping
for joy, kisses his
cousin Huon,
who ought to
thank God and
the Virgin for
having thus saved
him.

Huon is feasted
by all the barons.

A horse is
brought Huon,
who mounts,
and they come to
the place where
the battle had
been fought.

The Persians were
made rich by the
booty.
The admiral and
Huon leave the
plains of Rames
and lodge in the
town, where they
determine to
remain three days
to refresh
themselves.

and¹ ioye that he had founde his cosyn Huon in
sauegarde, and came and kyste hym² .x. tymes, and
sayd / ' my ryght dere lorde,³ well ye⁴ ought to⁴ thanke
⁵god ⁶and the blessyd vyrgyn Mary his mother⁶ who ⁴
hathe sauyd you fro so many parellous⁷ aduentures,
wherof I thanke our lorde Iesu chryst that hathe geuen
you such grace' / ⁸then he was of all the barons greatly
festyd, and they had⁹ maruayle of the paretles and ⁸
aduenture that Huon had scapyd, wherfore they sayd
they ought greatly to lawde¹⁰ god in that Huon was
aryuyd in theyr countre, by whome they were reducyd
¹¹to¹¹ the fayth of Iesu chryst. Thus deuysyd the ¹²
lordis¹² amonge themselfe / and behelde the dede men
that lay abought Huon / ⁸when they had bene there
¹³a season and sawe that y^e sowdan was fled, then a
horse was brought to¹⁴ Huon, and he mountyd¹⁵ / then ¹⁶
they departyd¹⁶ thence and came to¹⁴ y^e place wher
as y^e batayle had bene, wheras they founde .lxxiii.
thousande men dede,¹⁷ besyde them that were slayne in
the fleyng in y^e chase, wheras there were slayne ²⁰
.xii.M.,¹⁸ besyde the presoners great goodes ¹⁹wan ther¹⁹
the Parsyans,²⁰ the whiche was departed²¹ to such as it
apartained, so that they were all made ryche / then the
admyrall ²²and Huon departed fro the playns of Rames, ²⁴
²³then they went and logyd in the towne / and in the
mornynge they determynyd to tary there thre dayes to
refresshe them / and on²⁴ the fourthe daye they
departed bycause it was shewed them how²⁵ y^e sowdan ²⁸
was departed fro Sayre and gone by see with a small

¹ for. ² more then. ³ and Maister. ⁴ may.

⁵ our lord. ⁶⁻⁶ for his goodnesse alwayes towardes you.

⁷ and dangerous. ⁸ and. ⁹ al great. ¹⁰ and praise.

¹¹⁻¹¹ and brought to beleue in. ¹² and Barons. ¹³ for.

¹⁴ vnto. ¹⁵ vppon him and. ¹⁶ from.

¹⁷ vppon the earth. ¹⁸ men.

¹⁹⁻¹⁹ wan ther *after* Medians. ²⁰ and Medians.

²¹ and diuided. ²² Fol. cxxvii. col. 1. ²³ and.

²⁴ vpon. ²⁵ that.

- companye to the cite of Acre. Then the admyrall
and Huon drew theyr host towardis Napelous, and
there taryed two dayes / ¹fro thence they wente to
4 Iene and so to the cite of Nasareth, and visyted that
holy place, whereas the aungell brought the salutacion
angelyke to the vyrgyn mary. Then fro thence they
went to the castell of Iaffet and toke it with assaulte,
8 and slewe all them that were within² excepte suche as
wolde byleue in our lord Iesu chryst. ¹Then fro
thence they went and logyd within halfe a lege of
Acre, & there pyght³ vp theyr tentis and paulyons /
12 and when they were all logyd / ther foragers ran
abrode and brought to the hoste great plente of
vytayles / oftentymys they skyrmysshed before the
cete of acre / But they kowde neuer⁴ fynde man nor
16 woman that durst issu out to do any dede of armes;
there they lay .viii. dayes and no man dyd them any
domag, for the⁵ sarasyns wer so affrayed for the great
los⁶ that they had sufferyde, that they durste not
20 ster⁷ / And the sowdan, who was within, wrote letters
into al his countres, as wel in to Arrabey / Egypt /
and⁸ Barbarye / & Europe, and⁹ to al¹⁰ hys frendys,
that they wolde come and socoure hym in¹¹ his nede;
24 he sent dyuers messengers bothe by londe and by see,
also he sent in to anthyoche & in to Damas, & to
al other places where as he thought to haue any¹²
socoure / and on¹³ a day two foragers of the admirallis
28 ¹⁴went forthe on¹³ the see seid, and they found by the
way trampoigniffe the sowdans messenger / they toke
and brought hym in ⁸to the hoste⁸ to the Admyrals
tent, and ther he was examynyde and hys letters taken
32 fro hym, the which were sene and red befor the

On the fourth day
the admiral and
Huon draw their
host towards
Nablous, where
they tarry two
days.

Thence they go to
Jene and the city
of Nazareth.

They assaulted
and took the
castle of Jaffet.

They put up their
tents and pa-
vilions half a
league from Acre;
foragers brought
food to the host.

They skirmish
before the city,
but the Saracens
are too frightened
to venture out for
deeds of arms.

The sultan wrote
letters to all his
countres, as well
as to Arabia,
Egypt, Barbary
and Europe, for
aid.

Messengers are
sent by land and
sea, even to
Antioch and
Damascus.

Two foragers of
the admiral find
the sultan's
messenger by the
sea-side,
and bring him to
the admiral's
tent.

¹ and. ² it. ³ pitcht. ⁴ neither. ⁵ paynims and.

⁶ and dammage. ⁷ nor make any semblance.

⁸ omitted. ⁹ as. ¹⁰ other. ¹¹ at. ¹² any ayd or.

¹³ vpon.

¹⁴ Fol. cxxvii. col. 2.

His letters are read, and thus the admiral and Huon learn the sultan's plans.

They hang the messenger on a gallows in sight of the sultan.

The admiral summons the barons to his tent, and bid them take counsel together as to the manner of continuing the war.

They are to give their answer on the morrow.

At night all go to rest except those who have charge of the watch.

Huon spent the night in the admiral's tent, and in his sleep a vision came to him. He thought he was at Mayence in person, and saw the Emperor of Germany take Esclaramonde out of prison, and

admyrall and huon / the whiche when they herde yt and the content therof, ther by they knew sumwhat of y^e sowdans counsayle / then they toke the messanger and brought hym before the citey of Acre, and made there 4 a payre of galowes, and hangyd vp the messanger in¹ the syght of the sowdan and of them² within the citey / the same day the admyrall assemblyd his³ barons in his tente, & sayde to⁴ them / 'syrs, all ye that be 8 here assemblyd, knowe that I haue great desyre to knowe what thyng is⁵ to be done, and how we shall vse our selfe in this warre that we haue begonне / ye knowe wel the victory that, by the grace of ⁶god⁶ and 12 by the⁷ prowes of Huon, that⁸ we haue⁹ obtayned and haue here our enemye enclosyd, who can not fle without¹⁰ it be by the see / therfore I desyre you all that eche¹¹ of you wyll shewe your aduyse what is to 16 be done / and that to morowe at¹² this owre¹³ to geue me an answer /, then al the lordis¹⁴ aduysyd together, and so among them was dyuers opinyons and reasons, howbeit they departyd eueryman to his¹⁵ owne logyng^e, 20 bycause they had daye of answer^e; ¹⁶the nexte day folowyng / thus y^e daye passyd without any thyng done, and at nyght euery man wente to reste / excepte suche as had the charge of the wache that nyght / who 24 went not to bed, as is the¹⁷ custume of the warre. Huon taryed all that nyghte in the admyralles tente, and aboughte the owre of mydnyght Huon dremid in his slepe, & thought ¹⁸that he was at Maience in 28 presone, and saw the emperoure of Almayne take Esclaramonde his wyfe out of presone / and she semyd to⁴ hym pale and lene and yl coloryd / and how she was in her kyrtyl, and her heyr hangyng aboute her 32

¹ within.

² there.

³ Lordes and.

⁴ vnto.

⁵ best.

⁶⁻⁶ our Lord Iesus Christ.

⁷ hye.

⁸ omitted.

⁹ now.

¹⁰ except.

¹¹ euerie one.

¹² about.

¹³ time.

¹⁴ and Barons.

¹⁵ their.

¹⁶ and.

¹⁷ order and.

¹⁸ Fol. cxxvii. back, col. 1.

shulders / and .x. men ledynge her out of the towne to
 be brente¹ / and he thought² she made petuous com-
 playntes for Huon her husbaynd and for claryet her
 4 doughter. ³Also he thought he saw passe thurgh y^e
 stretes .ccc. gentyll men who had bene takyn at
 Burdeaux when the cytye was takyn / and he thought²
 he sawe dyuers galowes made, and how the Emperoure
 8 had sworne to hange them all / so that he thought he
 was⁴ sorowful⁵ to se that company ledde to⁶ the⁷
 deth warde⁸ / for in his slepe he thought verely all this
 had bene trewe, and that he coude not helpe it. Thus
 12 as Huon was in this payne slepyng, he gaue an horryble
 crye / so that y^e Admyrall and Barnarde awoke ther-
 with in hast / thynkyng it had bene theyr enemyes²
 had enteryd to haue slayne them / then they herde
 16 Huon say, 'O good lord, I pray the⁹ by thy pyte and
 grace to socoure & comforte my good wyfe / for sertenly
 I can not tell, but my harte Iuggyth¹⁰ / that the false
 emperoure wyll cause her to dye and all y^e other
 20 presoners.' Then the Admyrall and Barnard rose
 vp and came to¹¹ Huon, and had well harde his
 complayntes, and sayd / 'A, syr, dyscomfort not
 your self nor gyue no fayth nor credence to dremes /
 24 for the emperoure wyll neuer do suche a velany as to
 put to deth so noble a lady / it is nothyng but your
 thought and remembrance that ye haue dayly, the
 whiche in the nyght representyth before you slepyng' /
 28 'A, syr,' quod Huon, 'I can not beleue¹² but that my
 wyfe hath sumwhat to do / Alas, to longe¹³ I tary¹³
 here / but yf your warre were at an ende I wolde
 gladly go my way / for I shall neuer haue ioye at my
 32 harte tyll¹⁴ I maye knowe the trought.' Then they

cause ten of his
 men to lead her
 out of the town
 to be burnt;

and a gallows
 prepared on which
 to hang 300
 gentlemen taken
 at Bordeaux.

Huon awoke with
 a great cry;
 the admiral and
 Barnard wake
 hastily, deeming
 the enemy had
 come.

They hear Huon
 pray to the Lord
 to succour his
 wife.

When they hear
 the cause of
 Huon's distress,
 they assure him
 that it is but a
 dream, to which
 no credence must
 be given.

Huon is troubled,
 and were the war
 only at an end
 gladly would he
 go his way.

¹ burnt. ² that. ³ And. ⁴ right.

⁵ and sore greeued in his mind. ⁶ towards. ⁷ their.

⁸ omitted. ⁹ euen for thy Sons sake and. ¹⁰ thinketh.

¹¹ vnto. ¹² Fol. cxxvii, back, col. 2.

¹³⁻¹⁴ haue I taried. ¹⁴ vntill.

The council
assembles in the
admiral's tent.

The marshal
announces they
will say not a
word until Huon
shall have given
his opinion.

The admiral begs
Huon to show
what he thinks
it best to be done.

arose, for it was day,¹ and then eueryman arose / and
the oure come that all the² counseyll assembled³
together in the admyralles tente / And euery man sat
downe on⁴ benches well coueryd with cloth of golde⁴
and other ryche clothes of sylke /⁵ when they were
there assembled / the marshall rose vp,⁶ he was a ryght
sage and a⁷ wyse man, and sayd / 'Syr Admyrall, we
haue comonyd together and debatyde y^e mater at lenth,⁸
and we haue had dyuers opynyones, but we be all
concludyd to say nothyng tyll⁸ that Huon, who is
therby you, hath fyrst⁹ shewyd his opynyon what he
thynkethe¹⁰ to be done / for it is¹¹ resone that he be¹²
harde fyrst¹² to speke' /⁵ then the Admyrall beheld
Huon, and sayd / 'my dere frende, ye here what my
lordes¹³ hath concludyd together / and how they all
resteth vpon you that fyrst ye shall say your aduyce,¹⁶
wherfore I requyre you for the loue of¹⁴ god /¹⁵ shew
me what I ought to do as ye thinke best.'

¶ How Huon of Burdeaux counseyld y^e
admyrall of Perce to reyse vp his sege²⁰
before acre, for dyuers resones, and to
retorne in to Perce. Ca. C.xl.



Huon gives his
advice.

Hen Huon had well vnderstond the
Admyrall, and that he had¹⁶ hard the²⁴
lordes¹³ that theyr opynyons was that
they wolde not speke till⁸ he had
fyrst shewyd his¹⁷ opynyon, then he
sayd¹⁸ to¹⁹ the Admyrall, 'syr, yf it be youre plesure²⁸
I owght not to be gyn fyrst, this reason for ye haue

¹ and the appointed houre was come *before & euerie man.*
² Lords of the. ³ should assemble. ⁴ vpon. ⁵ and.
⁶ for. ⁷ omitted. ⁸ vntill. ⁹ first *after* shewed.
¹⁰ is best. ¹¹ good. ¹² first *after* to speke.
¹³ and Barons. ¹⁴ our Lord. ¹⁵ to. ¹⁶ well.
¹⁷ aduise and. ¹⁸ Fol. cxxviii. col. 1. ¹⁹ vnto.

many lordis can better speke in this matter then I, but
 syue¹ it is youre plesure and theres, I shall shewe²
 yow shortly myn aduys, and as I wold do if I where
 4 as yowe be; ³ then⁴ Huon of Burdeaux sayd / 'syr
 admyrall of perce & of mede, it is a longe season sin ye
 departed fro youre contre londys and syngnoryes, and
 not without great trauaile and great⁵ payne, and that
 8 god haue done you that grace that with⁶ an armeri⁶ al
 ye haue passed, & taken castels, & haue slayne and
 dystroyed the cou[n]treys & men of the sowdans of
 babylone and⁷ egyp / and haue bene at the holy cetye
 12 of Ierusalem, the whiche is in the myddes of his
 countre / and after that the sowdan hath fought with
 you with people innumerable, whom ye haue dys-
 counfyted, and slayn⁸ all they that were with hym.
 16 And also god hath gyuen you grace that ye ar sauely
 skapyd with lytyll losse⁹ / and none ye haue in this
 cytye before vs besegyde and inclosyd in y^e sowdan
 your enmy / who nyght and day doth emagen how he
 20 may recouer his losse, as ye may well knowe by his
 letters sent by his messyngers / y^e whiche ye haue
 sene and red the contynue¹⁰ of y^e same. And, syr, ye
 may well thynke that he hathe sente dyuers other
 24 messengyr as well by londe as by see to his frendys to
 seke for socoure and¹¹ ayeyd, in the entencyon to be
 reuengyde of you, wherfore I counseyll you; syn¹² ye
 be so farre of fro your countre, as shortly as ye can
 28 to departe fro thence¹³ and to reyse your sege and
 retorne in to your owne countre / your men be wery
 and sore trauelyd / ¹⁴ the Sowdan is in his owne countre /
 and¹⁵ he wyll alwayes assemble ¹⁶ great nombre of
 32 peopell / and alwayes he may haue socoure and vyteylles,

Since they have
 been so long away
 from Persia, and

have so far been
 successful, and

have escaped with
 little loss,

they had better
 raise the siege of
 Acre, and return
 into their own
 country as quickly
 as possible.
 The sultan can
 command succour
 both of men and
 food,

¹ seeing that. ² vnto. ³ are. ⁴ Duke. ⁵ much.

⁶⁻⁶ one armie. ⁷ of. ⁸ almost. ⁹ or dammage.

¹⁰ contents. ¹¹ for. ¹² seeing. ¹³ hence.

¹⁴ and. ¹⁵ omitted. ¹⁶ Fol. cxxviii. col. 2.

whereas the
Persians can have
neither.

They can return
in the spring
if they wish.

As long as they
stay in these
parts, Huon will
not forsake them,

though he greatly
desires to return
to France.

the whiche ye can not do nor haue / for here with¹
great payne ye shall ²fynde any² vyteyll / for the
countrie is sore fowlyd and opressyd / & ye can haue no
socoure fro any parte, wherfore of necessitye ye most ⁴
departe / the whiche ye may do without any losse.
For ye may passe y^e ryuer of eufrates or³ his pepill be
assembled to do you any damage / & when the
sprynge⁴ tyme of y^e yere cometh, yf it be your ⁸
plesure, ye may retorne with such nombre of men as ye
shall thynke best / for ye are of pusaunce so to do.
Syr, this that I say is for nothyng that I wold forsak or
leue you as longe as ye be in this parts; I had rather ¹²
dye / thought it be so as ye well knowe / that the
thyng that I ought most to desyre is to departe to go
in to ⁵france,⁵ where as I haue left my wyffe, my
doughter, and my countrie in great pouerte and danger ¹⁶
of deth and dystruccyon.'

¶ How the admyrall of Perce agreed well to
the counseyll of Huon of Burdeaux, and
pryesed his saynge; & of y^e fayr offer that ²⁰
y^e admyrall of Perce mad to⁶ Huon of
Burdeaux. Ca. C.xli.



Hen the Admyrall had⁷ hard⁶ Huon, he
behelde his lordes, and all wepynge, ²⁴
sayd, 'syrs, all ye that be my men, ye
haue⁹ well herd Duke Huon, who hath
shewyd his aduyce,¹⁰ and therefore I
¹¹commaunde and desyre you all to shew me what ye ²⁸
thinke by the sayenge of Huon' / then they all with
one voyce sayd / 'syr, a more noble nor¹² profytable

¹ without. ²⁻² haue no. ³ before. ⁴ spring.

⁵⁻⁵ my owne countrie.

⁶ vnto.

⁷ well.

⁸ and vnderstood.

⁹ all.

¹⁰ and opinion.

¹¹ Fol. cxxviii. back, col. 1.

¹² or.

counsaille can¹ no mortal man geue for your welth and
 suertye of your parsons and of vs all / there was neuer
 man spake better, & therfore all we pray and counsaile
 4 you to vpholde the counsaile that he hathe geuen
 you' / then the admyrall, seynge² al his lordis agreed
 to the counsaile that Huon had geuyn hym / he sayd /
 'syrs, as for me, syn ye are agreed therto, I am redy to
 8 byleue all good counsaile / there was neuer a heygher
 counsaile geuyn to³ any kynge or prynee' / ⁴when the
 admyrall had sayd how² he wolde byleue the counsaile
 that Huon had geuen hym / he callyd then Huon to³
 12 hym, and sayde / 'syr Duke of Burdeaux, the pyller /
 shyld, and sworde of the chrysten faythe, and the
 defender of the Perseans / and Medyens / we⁵ knowe
 well that by ryght I oughte not to kepe you / for⁶
 16 reason is⁷ that ye retourne thether where as ye were
 borne, and to ayde & comforte your trew spowse and
 wyfe / for whom ye be in great anoyaunce,⁸ and not
 without cause / and therfore for y^e goodnes and honoure
 20 that we haue founde in you, we offer to go with you in
 our owne proper parsons with al our armye, and mo to
 the nombre inestymable, and to ayde to reuenge you of
 the false emperoure of almayne who hathe done you so
 24 moche yll and damage, or elles yf ye wyll retourne to³
 vs in to Perce at this nexte spryngynge⁹ tyme we shall
 delyuer³ you suche pusaunce, and my selfe to go with
 them in to almayne, so that y^e valeyes and mountaynes
 28 shall be full of people / and we shall do so moche by
 the grace of our lorde god that we shall de¹⁰liuer the
 emperour in to your handis to do with hym¹¹ your
 pleasure.' when Huon¹² vnderstode the admyrall¹³ who
 32 offeryd him so great an offer,¹⁴ sayde / 'Syr, of the

The lords of
 Persia pray the
 admiral to follow
 Huon's advice;

the admiral
 agrees to do so.

The admiral
 offers, accom-
 panied by his
 whole army, to
 go with Huon,
 and aid him to
 revenge himself
 on the Emperor.

¹ can after man. ² that. ³ vnto. ⁴ and. ⁵ I.

⁶ it is good. ⁷ omitted. ⁸ discomfirt. ⁹ spring.

¹⁰ Fol. cxxviii. back, col. 2. ¹¹ at.

¹² had well heard and. ¹³ Persia and of Media.

¹⁴ hee.

Huon thanks the
admiral for his
great offer,

but first intends
to try peaceful
means with the
Emperor.

If he is un-
successful, then
Huon will ask the
admiral's aid and
that of all his
friends.

curtoyse that ye offer me I thanke you with ¹a good ¹harte: god forbede that I shulde be the causer of dystruccyon of chrysten blode / fyrst I wyll assaye with all swetenes and reasonable offers as moche as in ⁴me is possyble to do to present & offer ²the emperour / to y^e entent that I myght ³ateyne to his loue and to haue pease, the whych thyng I ⁴desyre, and wyll ⁴do with all my harte; And yf it be so that he wyll not ⁸incline nother to ryghte nor resone, then H. ⁵will come to you and to ²all other that I knowe or thynke ⁶to be ⁷my frendis, and then desyre you al of ⁸ayed & comforte. ⁹

12

¶ howe ¹⁰huon ¹¹toke ¹²leue of the admyral and of ¹³the ¹⁴lordys of Perce & wente and toke shyppeinge at the porte of thesayre, and how he ariuyd at marsell without ¹⁶fyndyng of any strange aduenture.

Ca. C.xlii.



If there is need,
the admiral will
stand by the offer
he has made,

¶ Hen the admyrall ¹⁶vnderstode Huon, he sayde, 'my ryght dere ¹⁷friend, I ²⁰can ¹⁸you ¹⁹thanke of that you saye / ye maye be sure ²⁰yf ye haue any nede & that ye can make none apoyntment with y^e emperoure, the offers *that* I haue made ²⁴you, I shall vpholde and socoure you in myne owne parson' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I ²¹thanke you, for I am moche bounde to ²you, wherfore I am yours' / then the admyrall toke Huon by the hande, & sayde, 'syr, ²⁸I se well we two muste departe, the which greuethe me

¹⁻¹ all my. ² vnto. ³ may. ⁴⁻⁴ will and desire to.

⁵ Huon. ⁶ thinke *before* knowe. ⁷ of.

⁸ of your courtesies for. ⁹ succour. ¹⁰ Duke.

¹¹ of Bourdeaux. ¹² his. ¹³ all. ¹⁴ other.

¹⁵ Fol. cxxix. col. 1. ¹⁶ had well. ¹⁷ and wel-beloued.

¹⁸ giue. ¹⁹ good. ²⁰ that. ²¹ most hartely.

- sore / but synne it is thus I must suffer it, ¹I knowe well² ye thynke longe tyll³ ye be gone / the seruys that ye haue done⁴ me, I can not recompence it / for our
 4 two wayes ar contrary, yours is by water and myne is by lond; And, therefore, at y^e porte of the sare⁵ there is a ryche shyp / the whiche was wonne vpon the sowdans men, I gyue her to you, enter into her at your pleasure,
 8 and therewith I gyue you .x. somers chargyd with golde, & other chargyd with clothes of golde and sylke / and ye maye take with you all the Frensshe men that be in this host, such as folowed vs when we
 12 departyd fro Ierusalem / let them go with you in to theyr countre / and after that ye be⁶ departyd I shall rayse my sege and retourne into Perce' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'of your gyfte and of your courtoysy I thanke
 16 you.' Then the admyrall sente these somers to the porte of the sare,⁵ and there al that⁷ rychesse was⁸ put into the shyppe *that* was⁸ geuen⁴ Huon / ¹then he delyueryd vnto Huon to serue hym al the pylgremes
 20 that were there of Fraunce; and the admyrall gaue them ryche gyftys, wherof they were⁹ ioyful¹ of the fayre aduenture that was fallen to⁴ them / for they hadde ¹⁰more moneye at theyr departynge then they
 24 hadde when they came out of theyr ow[n]e countre, wherof they thankyd the admyrall / and promysyd to do trew seruyce to⁴ Huon, and not to leue hym tyll³ he had achewed all his busynes / Then Huon made
 28 hym redy, & toke with hym the great Gryffons fote / ¹the admyrall, & his constables and marshallys, and the other lordis of the hoste, lepte on¹¹ theyr horses and conuaied huon and his companye to the porte of the
 32 sare,⁵ where as his shyppe was redy furnysshyd with vyteyle and other thyngys parteynyng therto / then

Huon will find at the port a rich ship won from the sultan; this the admiral gives to Huon,

and he may take with him all the Frenchemen that are in the host.

Huon thanks the admiral for his gift.

The admiral gives the pilgrims of France rich gifts;

they thank the admiral, and promise not to leave Huon till he has accomplished his desire. Huon makes ready to depart, taking with him the griffin's foot.

All the Persians accompany Huon to the port,

¹ and. ² that. ³ vntill. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ Thesayre.

⁶ are. ⁷ the. ⁸ were. ⁹ right.

¹⁰ Fol. cxxix. col. 2. ¹¹ vppon.

and there he
takes leave of the
admiral and the
other barons.

Huon,¹ wepyng, toke² leue of the admyrall and of the
other³ barouns / for whose departynge they were⁴
sorowfull, and so retournyd to theyr hoste before Acre /
deuysynge of the great valure, prowes, and courtoysye ⁴
that was in Huon. Then the admyrall commaundyd
preuely the nexte mornynge to dysloge and to⁵ departe /
the whiche was done.

The admiral left
Acre, found his
fleet in the river
Euphrates, and
sailed into his
own country.

Huon and
Barnard, when
aboard their ship,
weighed anchor,
and sailed
without danger
to Marseilles.

Then Huon gave
the ship to the
master who had
brought them
thither.

They rest at
Marseilles for
eight days.

¶ Thus the admyrall departid fro the citey of ⁸
Acre and toke his waye towardis Perce / and he founde
on⁶ the ryuer of Eufrates all his shyppis, and so with
them he sayld into his owne countre / And Huon and
barnarde his cosyn, and dyuers⁷ knyghtis and squyers ¹²
of Fraunce, ⁸when they were in theyr shyppe / they
wayed vp theyr ancens and made sayle. Then they
passyd the Goulfe of Sathale / and then passyd by the
rodes and by sardayne / and so longe they saylid ¹⁶
without daunger or let that they came and aryuyd at
the porte of Marseyle / ⁸there they ⁹toke londe⁹ with
great ioye / and dischargyd the shyp, and then he¹⁰
gaue the shyp to the patron *that* had brought them ²⁰
thether, wherby y^e patron was ryche & thankyd Huon /
when they were al a lond, they ¹¹conueyed all theyr
baggage in to theyr lodgyng in the towne, wheras they
restyd an¹² .viii. dayes. Nowe let vs leue to speke of ²⁴
Huon and of them that were *with* hym, and let vs
speke of the abbot of cluney.

¶ How the¹³ abbot of Cluny layde a busshe-
ment of men of armys betwene Mascon ²⁸
and Tournous agaynste the Emperours¹⁴
nephue, who was there slayne, and all his
men / wherof the emperoure was so sore

¹ all. ² his. ³ Lords and. ⁴ right. ⁵ omitted.

⁶ vppon. ⁷ other. ⁸ and. ⁹⁻⁹ went a shoare.

¹⁰ Huon. ¹¹ Fol. cxxix. back, col. 1. ¹² about.

¹³ good. ¹⁴ of Almaines.

¹troubelyd that he toke the duches esclaramond out of prison to haue brent² her, & the .iii.c. prysoners of Burdeaux to haue
4 hangyd them all. Ca. C.xliiii.



8 e haue well harde in this hystory / how Barnarde departyd fro y^e abbey of Cluny to go³ serche for his nephue Huon / and the abbot, seynge that he coude here no newes of Huon nor of Barnarde his cosyn, who was gone to seke for hym / he was⁴ sore⁵ displeasyd that he coude haue none other
12 knowlege; but the thyng that causyd hym to pas y^e mater the more esyer, was by cause of Claryet, Huons doughter, whome he kepthe, and she was all his comforte / she was so fayre and so swete that none was
16 lyke her in beauty nor³ in good vertues, and agayne when he rememberyd the duches her mother, Esclaramond, whome he knewe was in great pouerte and mysery, he was therwith so sore dyspleasyd that al his
20 membres trymbelid. So on⁶ a day it was reportyd to⁷ hym by a notable man that as he cam fro saynt Iames and by Burdeaux, howe that a nephue of the emperours shoulde go fro Burdeaux to the citey of Mayence, to
24 his yncle Tharry the emperoure of Almayne / & howe he shuld haue with hym a great nombre of the burgesses of y^e citey of Burdeaux as presoners, bycause on⁶ a daye they spake of Huon theyr naturall lorde /
28 and also how⁸ he shuld cary with hym the trybute and money of the rentys and reuenewes of the countre of Burdeloys, and suche moneye as euery man was bounde to pay to⁷ the emperour: when the good abbot of
32 Cluney was aduerteydyd of the comynge of the

The abbot of Cluny was sore grieved that he could hear no newes of Huon of Barnard his cousin.

The abbot's grief was easier to bear since he kept with him Huon's daughter Clariet;

none was like her in beauty and virtue.

But the remembrance of the distress in which her mother was troubled the abbot.

It was reported how a nephew of the Emperour was going from Bordeaux to Mayence, with a number of the citizens of Bordeaux as prisoners,

and how he would carry with him certain money's.

¹ vexed and.

² burnt.

³ and.

⁴ right sorowfull and.

⁵ Fol. cxxix. back, col. 2.

⁶ vppon.

⁷ vnto.

⁸ that.

emperours nephue, whom he reputyd as his enemy / he
 Thereupon the abbot assembles a number of men, assemblid a great nombre of noble men, the most part
 parteynyng to¹ the duke of Burgoyne, who as then
 was father to Gyrard of Rousayllon, ²who as then was² 4
 but .iii. yere of age / ³when y^e abbot had assemblyd a
 and chooses the lord of Vergier to be captain. good⁴ nombre of men / he chose the lorde of Vergier to
 be capetayne and leder of that company / & then he
 sent out his spyes to knowe ⁵the sartayne⁵ which waye 8
 He learns through spies which road the Emperor's nephew will take, the emperours nephue shulde come ; ³at⁶ last he had
 sartayne knowlege that he was logid at mas⁷cou, and
 that⁸ the nexte daye he shulde departe to Tournous /
 and commands the lord of Vergier to lie in ambush. ³then the lorde of vergier and dyuers other by the 12
 commaundement of the abbot of Cluny went and layd
 theyr busschement betwene mascou and Tournous, in a
 valey / so *that* by their spye, who laye on⁹ a mountayne,
¹⁰saw the Almayns comynge, abought the nombre of 16
 .ii. M. horses / and the lorde of vergier had in his
 company aboute .iii. M. horses defensably aparayld /
 they were¹¹ ioyfull when they harde by theyr spye
that they enemyes were comynge ; then they aparelyd 20
 themselfe to abyde theyr enemyes / who were come so
 forwarde that they were past theyr fyrst enbusschement
 and were enteryd into the valey / when they of the
 fyrst enbusschement and they of the seconde enbusshe- 24
 ment sawe theyr tyme, they issuyd out & brake vpon
 theyr enemyes, and made a great crye, so that in¹² a
 shorte space theyr enemyes and the most parte of them
 were slayne, not one that scapyd, but other he was 28
 slayne or taken / they coude not saue themselfe by
 cause on⁹ the one syde was the mountayne, & on⁹ the
 other syde the ryuer of some, and before and behynde
 theyr enemyes were they them selfe / the same tyme 32

¹ vnto. ²⁻² being at that time. ³ and. ⁴ great.

⁵⁻⁵ certainly. ⁶ the. ⁷ Fol. cxxx. col. 1.

⁸ omitted. ⁹ vppon. ¹⁰ they. ¹¹ right.

¹² within.

- the emperours nephue was slaine, who was a goodly
 knyghte / and y^e emperour had before sent hym to
 Burdeaux to gouerne the londe and countre of Burdeloys,
 4 and had bene there the space of .iiii. yeris / of whose
 dethe the lorde of Vergier was sory, for he had rather
 1 he had bene taken presoner / then they toke his body
 and buryed hym in the chefe church of Tournous,
 8 where as they lay all nyght with theyr presoners, who
 were to y^e nombre of .viii. c. ; they of Burdeaux *that*
 were taken as presoners were² Ioyfull, when ³they
 were⁴ seapyd the handys of the almayns.
- 12 ¶ After this discomfiture they retournid⁵ Cluny,
 where as they were receyuid with great ioye of the
 abbot and of the couente / then the lorde of Vergier
 shewyd the ⁶maner of the⁶ dyscomfiture / and then
 16 the botye was ⁷departyd to⁷ them *that* had wonne
 it⁸ / then⁹ all the men of warre departyd excepte
 a .M. men whome the abbot retaynyd styll⁸ for the
 sauegarde of the towne of Cluny / who made many
 20 scyrmysshis with the emperours men. ⁹After this
 dyscomfiture the newes therof were¹⁰ broughte to the
 citey of Magence to y^e emperoure Therry, who was
 ryght sorowful for y^e dethe of his nephue, who was his
 24 systers sone / by reason of the sorowe &¹¹ dyspleysure
 that he had,¹² he was thre dayes after or¹³ he wold
 come out¹⁴ of his chambre / and on the fourthe day he
 sent for all his lordys and counsayle / & to the[m]¹⁵
 28 he made his complayntis, how by the occasyon of duke
 Huon of Burdeaux, he had loste .iiii. of his nephues,
 & his bastarde sone / & sayd, 'I ought greatly to be
 anoyed¹⁶ when I can not be reuengyd of Huon / I
 32 thynke he shal neuer retourne agayne / but syn¹⁷ it is

The Emperor's
nephew, a goodly
knight, was
himself slain,

and buried in the
chief church of
Tournois.

The men of
Bordeaux that
were prisoners
were glad to
have escaped the
hands of the
Germans.
They returned to
Cluny,
and were joyfully
received by the
abbot.

All the men of
war departed
except a thousand
retained to guard
the town of
Cluny.

The news of this
defeat was
brought to the
Emperor Thierry
at Mayence;
he was right
sorrowful for his
nephew's death.

¹ that. ² right. ³ Fol. cxxx. col. 2. ⁴ thus.

⁵ to the abbey of. ⁶⁻⁶ whole discourse of their.

⁷⁻⁷ deuided amongst. ⁸ omitted. ⁹ and.

¹⁰ was presently. ¹¹ great. ¹² for. ¹³ before.

¹⁴ forth. ¹⁵ then in text. ¹⁶ greeued. ¹⁷ seeing.

As he could not
be revenged on
Huon himself,

the Emperor
determines to
burn Esclara-
monde and hang
the 300 prisoners
brought from
Bordeaux.

Thorns were
carried out of the
city to burn the
noble lady
Esclaramonde,
and four hangmen
bring her and the
prisoners out of
the city,
and beat them by
the way.

Weeping and
lamenting, the
lady calls on our
Lord Jesus Christ
to bring her soul
into Paradise.

so that I can take of hym¹ no vengauce, I shall take
it vpon his wyfe Esclaramonde and vpon the .CCC.
presoners that I brought out of Burdeaux / but by the
same lorde that made and fourmyd me to his semblaunce, 4
I shall neuer haue ioye in² my harte, nor drynke³ nor
ete tyll⁴ I haue sene Esclaramonde brente⁵ in a fyre,
and y^e.CCC. presoners hangyd and strangelyd, and I
wyll that eche of you knowe that he that speketh 8
to me fyrst to the contrary I shall hate hym euer
after' / when the ⁶lordis⁷ harde the emperoure make
that promyse, there was none so hardy that durst speke
one worde / then the emperoure in hast⁸ commaundid 12
great plentye of thornes to be caryed out of the citey
vnto a lytell mountayne there besyde / and therby
to be rerid vp sartayne galous to hang theron .iiii.
C. presoners; all this was done as he commaundyd / 16
for mo then .x. lode of thornes were caryed out to
brenne⁹ the noble lady Esclaramonde / and she was
sent for out of pryson by .iiii. hangmen, and the
presoners with her were brought into y^e citey, and all 20
to¹⁰ beten by the waye / when the noble lady sawe how
she was delte with all,¹¹ petuously she complaynyd for
her good husbände Huon, and for her doughter claryet,
and sayd / 'a, my ryght swete lorde & husband Huon / 24
at this tyme shal be the departure of vs two'; ¹²then
she callyd vpon our lorde god¹³ Iesu chryst, prayenge
hym by his grace and petye to brynge her sowle into
paradyse / thus cryenge and complaynynge the noble 28
lady was led thurgh the towne / ¹²then ladyes, and
burgesses, and maydens of the citey ran to theyr
wyndowes and dorys / and behelde the dolorous and
petuous¹⁴ company ledyng towards theyr dethes; then 32

¹ of hym *after* vengeance. ² at. ³ drinke *after* ete.

⁴ vntill. ⁵ burnt. ⁶ Fol. cxxx. back, col. 1.

⁷ had well. ⁸ in hast *after* commaundid. ⁹ burne.

¹⁰ bee. ¹¹ shee *before* petuously. ¹² and. ¹³ omitted.

¹⁴ pitiful.

they sayde ahyghe / 'A, ryght noble lady, where is
 become the great beautye that ye were wonte to be of /
 for now your vysage is pale and dyscolouryd that was
 4 wonte to be so fayre, and now so lothely¹ and dis-
 fyguryd / where is become your fayre herys, that nowe
 be so blake and ruggyd for the great pouerty that
 ye haue enduryd / Alas, noble lady, great pety² we
 8 haue to se you in this estate yf we coud a mende it' /
 thus as this lady was led thurgh y^e towne she was
 benomyd³ of them that sawe her / the .iiii. C. ientylmen
 also⁴ were led forthe / and the emperour Thyrry and
 12 his lordis rode after them / for his desyre was to se the
 lady brente⁵ & the⁶ presoners hangid / he made haste
 because of the sorowe that he had for y^e dethe of his
 nephue and of his men, who were newly slayne by the
 16 purches⁷ of the abbot of Cluney / when they were
 issued out of the citeye of Magence / duke Hyldebert, a
 nere kynsman of the emperours, was comynge into the
 citeye the same tyme that the lady was led fourth, and
 20 sawe how rudely they delte with the lady / ⁸when he
 sawe her he knew wel⁹ it was¹⁰ Esclaramond / ¹¹when
 he sawe her at that poynt, the water was in his eyen,
 and¹² sayd to¹³ them that ledde her / 'Syr, go not
 24 so faste tyll¹⁴ I haue spoken with the emperoure' / the
 whiche they dyd gladly; when the noble lady Esclara-
 monde¹⁵ vnderstode the duke / she had a¹⁶ lytell hope,
 she tournid her eyen towardis hym, and sayd / 'A,
 28 ryght noble prynce, haue petye and compassyon of me,
 for I haue done no thyng wherby I shulde deserue to
 dye' / when the duke ¹⁷harde¹⁷ her he had suche petye
 that he coude speke no worde, his harte was so full of
 32 sorowe / ⁸then he rode as fast as he myght to mete with

All who behold
 her ask what has
 become of her
 great beauty.

As the procession
 went out of the
 city. duke
 Hildebert, a
 kinsman of the
 Emperor, was
 coming in, and
 seeing how
 roughly they
 dealt with
 Esclaramonde,

he bid them
 desist till he had
 spoken with the
 Emperor.

Esclaramonde
 begs Hildebert
 have pity on her.

¹ loathed. ² and compassion. ³ Fol. cxxx. back, col. 2.

⁴ were also. ⁵ burnt. ⁶ other. ⁷ meanes.

⁸ and. ⁹ that. ¹⁰ the faire Ladie. ¹¹ but. ¹² he.

¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ vntill. ¹⁵ had well heard and.

¹⁶ some. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ had well vnderstood.

He entreats the
Emperor to
respite their lives
till after Easter.

Surely it is
sufficient to have
chased her from
her country and
signories, and to
have taken her
revenues for
himself;

but if all the men
in his empire
and all the priests
preached to him
for a year, the
Emperor will not
give way, neither
will he eat nor
drink till
Escaramonde be
burnt, and the
other persons
hanged.

y^e emperoure, and passyd by the .CCC. presoners, and
had great pety¹ of them / and so he came to² the
emperour all wepyng, he³ sayd / ‘A, ryght noble
emperoure, I requyre you in the honoure of the passyon ⁴
of our lorde Iesu chryst, haue petye and compassyon of
this dolorous company that ar lykely to dye this daye /
remembre howe⁴ it is nowe in the holy tyme of lente,
wherefore I requyre you⁵ respyght theyr lyues vnto⁶ it ⁸
be past Ester / and, syr, humbely I requyre you for all
the ser^uyce that I and myn haue done² you, grante
me⁸ this request for my rewarde, the whiche is⁹ reson-
able and iust / great wronge ye do to reuenge your ¹²
iyre¹⁰ vpon this noble lady / ye haue chasyd her out of
her countre¹¹ and synynoryes, the whiche you hold in
your handes, and take the reuenys & profyghtes
therof / yf ye be not sufficed with this, I dought me¹² ¹⁶
that our lorde Iesu chryst wyll be sore dysplesyd with
you’ / when the emperoure had¹³ herde the duke his
cosyn, he stode styll and spake hastely, and sayd,
‘fayr cosyn, I haue well herde you, & therefore I ²⁰
answere you in breue wordys / how that yf al the men
that be in myn empere, and all the preestes and freers
were here, and dyd preche to² me an hole yere desy-
rynge me to respyght this ladyes deth and the other ²⁴
that be with hyr, I wolde do nothyng for all them /
and therefore speke to me¹⁴ no more in that mater / for
by the berd that hangeth at¹⁵ my chynne, syn I can not
haue Huon hyr husbande at my wyll, I shal neuer eete ²⁸
nor drynke tyll⁶ I haue seen hyr brente¹⁶ and the other
persones hangyde. For when I remembre the deth of
myn nephues and of my dere sone, the whiche hath
bene slayne by Huon, there is no membre in my body ³²
but that trymbleth for sorowe and dyspleasure.

¹ and compassion. ² vnto. ³ and. ⁴ that.

⁵ to. ⁶ vntill. ⁷ Fol. cxxxi. col. 1. ⁸ but.

⁹ both. ¹⁰ anger. ¹¹ landes. ¹² omitted.

¹³ well. ¹⁴ to me *after* more. ¹⁵ vnder. ¹⁶ burnt.

- ¶ when the good duke hyldeberte vnderstode the
emperoure, he had great sorowe,¹ and departed without
any worde spekyng and without any leue takyng.
4 But retornyd fro thence² he came³ full of iyre and
dyspleasure / then the emperoure thyrry cryed with a
hye voyce, and sayd how⁴ he wolde shortly dispatche
the mater to se the lady brente,⁵ and led to y^e hyll
8 where as the fyre was redy / when the lady perseyued
y^e place where as she⁶ shulde dye in / she cast out a
great crye & made a petuose⁷ complaynte to our
lord Iesu chryst, and sayd / 'A, ryght swete lorde
12 Iesu chryst, thou knouest that for the loue of the
I am chrystened to byleue in thy law, wherin I wyll
lyue and dye / I se well my dayes ar but shorte / and
thou knowest well⁴ there is no cause wherin that
16 I haue deseruyd deth / therfore I requyre the hombly
to haue pyte⁸ of my soule and⁹ to kepe and preserue
my husbnde Huon and my doughter claryet.' Thus
as ye haue herd the noble duches Esclaramonde made
20 hyr complayntes, hyr handes fast¹⁰ bound, and knelyng
on¹¹ hyr kneys before the stakes, abydyng y^e our
of hyr deth / Now¹² leue we¹² to speke of this noble
lady tyll¹³ we retorne agayn, and speke of the noble
24 kyng Oberone and¹⁴ his compayne.

He commands
the despatch of
the business :

when the lady
saw the place
where she should
die, she implored
our Lord Iesus
Christ to have
pity on her soul,

and to keep and
preserve her
husband Huon
and her daughter
Clariet.

With her hands
bound and kneel-
ing before the
stake Esclara-
monde awaits the
hour of her death.

- ¶ How¹⁵ Oberon sent .ii. of his knyghtes
of the fayery, that is to saye, Malabron
and Gloryande, to delyuer the duches
28 Esclaramond, who shulde haue bene brente,⁵
and¹⁶ .ccc. presoners¹⁷ who were¹⁸ delyueryd
by the sayd knyghthes. Ca. C.xliiii.

¹ at his heart. ² and. ³ became. ⁴ that.

⁵ burnt. ⁶ Fol. cxxxi. col. 2. ⁷ pitifull.

⁸ and compassion. ⁹ that thou wilt vouchsafe.

¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ vpon. ¹²⁻¹² let us leaue. ¹³ vntill.

¹⁴ of. ¹⁵ King. ¹⁶ the.

¹⁷ that should haue bene hanged. ¹⁸ all.

On the same day
as Esclaramonde
should have been
burnt, Oberon
was holding a
great court in
his palace.



The noble queen
Morgan was
there, with her
niece and many
other ladies and
knights of fairy-
land, making
great joy.

Oberon began to
weep,

and Gloryand, the
good knight of
Fairyland, asks
him the cause of
his grief.

It is that
Esclaramonde,
wife of Oberon's
friend Huon, is
to be burnt, and
the prisoners
hanged.

Oberon may not
succour them.

Ow seweth the story¹ that y^e same
daye that the duches, y^e fayre
Esclaramonde, shuld haue bene
brent,² kynge Oberone of the fayery ⁴
was in his pales of mummur,
wheras he had holden a great courte and a sumptuous
for his mother ; the lady of the pryue Isle was there /
and also the noble quene Morgan³ le faye / & the 8
dameysell Transcelyne hyr nese, with dyuers other
ladyes of the fayery, and dyuers knyghtes ⁴of the
same, makyng great ioie ; kynge Oberon was syttyng
in a ryche trone garnyshed & borderyd with fyne 12
golde and precyous stones / and as he satte he fell in a
great study / and therwith the dropses of water fell out
of his eyene, &⁵ began to wepe⁶ so sore as though he
shulde haue drowned in⁷ dropses of water / when these 16
quenys, ladyes, and damysels sawe hym make suche
sorowe, they had great merueyll / ⁸there was Gloryande,
the good knyght of the Fayery, and Malabron, who
were ryght preuy and wel-belouyd with kyng Oberon / 20
⁸when they sawe the kynge make such sorowe they
were⁹ abasshed, and syr Gloryand sayd / 'Syr, what
man is lyuynge in this world that hathe dyspleased
you or done any thyng agaynst you?' / 'Gloryand,' 24
quod y^e kyng / 'the dysplesure that I haue is for the
fayre¹⁰ Esclaramonde, wyffe to¹¹ Huon of Burdeaux /
my¹² frende / she is as nowe led out of the cytye of
Maience & brought to¹³ a¹⁴ fyre, wherin y^e Emperoure 28
therry wyll byrne her / & other .CCC. poore presoners
to be hanged / and I maye not¹⁵ socoure them / and I
am sory therof for the loue of Huon / who is as now
passyd the see, and is in the waye retournynge home- 32

¹ Historie. ² burnt. ³ Morgne.

⁴ Fol. cxxxi. back, col. 1. ⁵ he. ⁶ and complaine.

⁷ with. ⁸ and. ⁹ sore dismayed and. ¹⁰ Ladie.

¹¹ vnto Duke. ¹² verie good. ¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ great.

¹⁵ ayd nor.

- warde / and he hath had suche aduenturs that there is
 no humayne body coude suffre nor bere the payns and
 trauelles *that* he hath endeured, nor the meruelous
 4 aduentures that he hath borne; ¹ he hathe had so
 many bateylls that it were ² meruyll ³ to here them
 rehersyd, and nowe where as he thought to haue had
 rest & to haue founde his wyfe, the fayr ⁴ Esclara-
 8 monde a lyue, who shall now be brent ⁵ without ⁶ she
 be shortly ⁷ socoured, ⁸ & then ⁸ I am sure ⁹ he shall ¹⁰
 dye for sorowe. ¹¹ when Gloryand and malabrone ¹²
 herde ¹³ ¹⁴ kynge Oberone / they kneled downe before
 12 this kynge and sayd / 'syr, we desyre you to socoure
 this noble lady for the loue of her good husbond,
 your ¹⁵ frend Huon' / 'Gloryand,' quod the noble kynge
 Oberon / 'that wyll I not do, but I am well contente
 16 that hastely ye go and delyuer the good lady and the
 other presoners that be with her / and saye on ¹⁶ my
 behalfe to the Emperoure therry, that he be not soo
 hardy ¹⁷ to do any yll to the lady or to any of her
 20 compayne / but saye *that* I wyll ¹⁸ *that* he respyght
 theyr lyues tyll ¹⁹ the holy feeste of Eester be passyd /
 and *that* the lady & all ⁸ y^e other presoners he cause to
 be retorned agayne ¹⁶ to the citey of Maience, and *that*
 24 y^e lady be set in a chambre at her lyberte and pleasure,
 & let her be bayngned ²⁰ and wesshyde and new arayed,
 and let her haue .iiii. noble ladyes to serue and
 acompayne her, & that she haue meet and drynk
 28 as good & as plenteous ²¹ as though she were his owne
 propre doughter / in lyke wyse let ²² the other presoners
 be seruyd / & saye that I wyll ²³ he ²⁴ do this vnto ²⁴ the

Huon, after
 enduring many
 pains, is return-
 ing to his own
 land,

and if he
 finds Esclara-
 monde burnt will
 die of sorrow.

Gloryand and
 Malabron ask
 Oberon, for love
 of Huon, to
 succour the noble
 lady.

Oberon desires
 his two knights
 to go and deliver
 her,

to request the
 Emperor to
 respite their lives
 till after Easter,

to place the lady
 in a chamber
 with four noble
 ladies,
 to serve her
 and to treat her
 exactly as if she
 were his own
 daughter.

He is to do
 likewise with the
 other prisoners.

¹ and. ² great. ³ and wonderful. ⁴ Ladie.

⁵ burnt. ⁶ except. ⁷ aided and. ⁸⁻⁸ omitted.

⁹ that. ¹⁰ will.

¹¹ and grieve that he will haue at his heart. ¹² had well.

¹³ and vnderstode. ¹⁴ Fol. cxxxi. back, col. 2. ¹⁵ deare.

¹⁶ in. ¹⁷ as. ¹⁸ and commaund. ¹⁹ vntill.

²⁰ bathed. ²¹ plentiful. ²² all.

²³ and commaund that. ²⁴⁻²⁴ doth thus vntill.

Then Gloryand
and Malabron
wish themselves
in the place where
the lady was,

and they come
through the air
with a noise as of
thunder, but
invisible to all but
the lady,

and cast into the
fire the men who
would have burnt
the lady.

The knights
release the lady,
tell her who they
are, and bid her
be of good
comfort.

It is not the
first time Oberon
has aided
Esclaramonde
and Huon.

In a short time
Esclaramonde
shall see Huon
again.
Esclaramonde
rejoices greatly
at the good
tidings.

tyme that Eester be passyd / and shew him that he be
not soo hardy to breke or trespas¹ my commaunde-
ment' / then Gloryand & Malabron toke leue of the
Kyng and of all other *that* were there / ²then they 4
wysshed them selfe in the place wher as the lady and
the other presoners where; ³the lady as then was on⁴
her kneys before the fyre sore wepynge,⁵ abydyng the
oure of her deth / the which had bene nere to⁶ her yf 8
she had not shortly bene⁷ socouryd for they were
aboute to haue bounde her to the stake / when Gloryand
& Malabron came braynge in the ayre lyke thonther /
and they were not seyne of no person but alonely of the 12
lady / ²when they were come & saw y^e fyre akyndlyng,
⁸they toke y^e .x. rybawdis⁹ that wold haue cast the
lady in¹⁰ y^e fyre, they toke them & dyd¹¹ cast them all
.x. in to y^e flamying fyer, wheras they wher shortly 16
brent;¹² and besyde them there wher dyuers other
brent,¹² whereof suche as were there had¹³ greate feer
that none durst a byd there / then y^e .ii. knyghtis cam
to the lady and lousid hyr, and sayd, 'dame,¹⁴ be 20
of good comfort, we ar .ii. knyghtis sent hether fro
kinge oberon to socour and to bryngye you out of the¹⁵
daunger that ye be in' / 'syr,' quod the lady, 'yt ys
not the fyrste tyme that the noble kynge Oberon hathe 24
socuryd vs, bothe me and my husbonde / god of hys
grace rewarde hym' / 'dame,'¹⁴ quod gloryand, 'be
mery and make ioye, for your good husbonde Huon is
come on this syde the se, whome ye shall see in¹⁶ 28
shorte tyme' / when y^e good lady¹⁷ vnderstode gloriand
she had suche ioye *that* of a great spase she coude
speke no word, she was so rauysshid; ¹⁸at laste she
sayde, 'syr, I ought greatly to loue you ¹⁹to brynge¹⁹ 32

¹ against. ² and. ³ where. ⁴ vpon.

⁵ and complayning and. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ been shortly.

⁸ Fol. cxxxii. col. 1. ⁹ villaines. ¹⁰ to. ¹¹ omitted.

¹² burnt. ¹³ so. ¹⁴ Madame. ¹⁵ perill and.

¹⁶ within. ¹⁷ had well. ¹⁸ but. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ for bringing.

me suche tydynges' / ¹then they sayd to² hyr, 'Dame,³
 rest you here a seson tyll⁴ we haue delyueryd the other
 prysoners, whom we see yonder ledyng to ⁵the dethe
 4 warde,⁵ and shortly we shal retourne to⁶ you.' there
 with they departyd fro the lady, and lefte hyr on⁷
 hyr knees holdyng vp hyr handys ²to the² heuen,
¹deuoutely re[n]dering thankis to our lord Iesu chryste
 8 of⁸ the socoure and ayed *that* he had sent hyr. then
 gloryand and malabron came to y^e galous, & there
 lowsyd y^e CCC. prysoners, and slew dyuers of *them*
that were sent thether to do execucyon, wherof all
 12 they that were ther⁹, had great merueyl¹⁰ when they
 saw there compeny slayn & coude not se them that dyd
 it / but they thought there were a thousande knyghtes
 by reason of y^e¹¹ brute & noyse *that* ¹²y^e.ii. knyghtes
 16 of y^e fayry made / wherof they had suche fere that
 they fled away and ran to the emperoure, who was sore
¹³abasshed of that auenture / for it was also shewyd²
 hym / that the lady was reskewyd, and they coude not
 20 tell by whom; But *that* they sayd they herde¹⁴ great
 brute & tempest¹⁵ / then also the emperoure saw how
 the people came rynnynge toward hym, fleyng fro the
 galous, and they shewyd¹⁶ hym all that they had sene
 24 and hard, wherof y^e emperoure & all his lordes had
 great fere & were sore abasshed. 'A, syr,' *quod* the
 duke of Austrych, 'it had bene better for you to haue
 beleuyd duke Hyldberty, your cosyn / know suerly¹⁷ ye
 28 haue greatly displeased our lord Iesu chryst syn¹⁷ ye
 wolde do suche cruell Iustyce in the holy tyme of
 lente' / thus after these .ii. knyghtes of the fayry had
 reskewyd the good lady and y^e other presoners, he¹⁸
 32 toke them and the lady & brought them to² the

She devoutly
 renders thanks to
 our Lord Iesus
 Christ.

The knights
 deliver the 300
 prisoners,
 and slay their
 executioners.

All the spectators
 marvel greatly,
 thinking there
 must be a
 thousand knights,
 so great is the
 confusion.

They flee to the
 Emperor,
 and describe to
 him what has
 taken place.

It would have
 been better for
 the Emperor to
 have given heed
 to Hildebert's
 request.

¹ and. ² vnto. ³ Madame. ⁴ vntill.

⁵⁻⁶ toward their deaths. ⁶ again vnto. ⁷ vpon.

⁸ for. ⁹ present. ¹⁰ and did woonder thereat.

¹¹ great. ¹² Fol. cxxxii. col. 2. ¹³ dismayed and.

¹⁴ a. ¹⁵ noyse. ¹⁶ to. ¹⁷ that. ¹⁸ they.

Then the two
knights brought
the lady and
prisoners to the
Emperor,
and made them-
selves visible to
all.

The Emperor,
seeing only two
knights armed
on horseback,
sets little account
by them,
and asks what
they mean by
such boldness,

and declares he
will hang them
also.

Gloryand repeats
to the Emperor
the things Oberon
has commanded
him to do.

emperoure, and shewyd them selues openly / ¹when
they were in the presence of the emperoure, and y^e
presoners *with* them / ¹the emperoure saw that there
were but .ii. knyghtes armyd on² horse back, he set ⁴
lytyll by them, and sayd / ‘how are you so bold and so
hardy to delyuer and to take out of my mens handes
they³ that are condemned to dye by Iustyce, and
beseyd, that ye haue slayne⁴ of my men / and⁵ brynge ⁸
them in to my presence whome I haue condemned
to dye / wherfore I wyll⁶ ye⁷ knowe that or⁸ I eete or
drynke you and all they shal be hanged, and the lady
Esclaramonde brente,⁹ nor I shall not departe¹⁰ hence ¹²
tyll¹¹ I haue sene you all dye¹² / then Gloryand and
Malabrone lyft vp theyr wessers and shewyd theyr
faces / and they semyd to¹³ all them that sawe them
that they neuer saw before .ii. so¹⁴ fayre knyghtis in all ¹⁶
theyr lyues. Then Gloryand sayde to¹³ the emperour /
‘syr, of you nor of your thretenynges we make ther of¹⁵
lytell acounte. But, syr, know for trouthe / that the
noble kyng Oberon commaundeth you by vs in as ²⁰
moche as ye fere your lyfe / that ye be not so hardy
any further to do any yl or iniury nor commaunde to be
done to¹³ this noble lady *that* is here present, nor to
these other prysoners / vntyll Eester day be past. ²⁴
And also kyng Oberon commaundeth you that ye¹⁶
kepe this lady in your house clothyd and apareyled
and as well gouernyd, & to be acompanyed with ladyes
and damoselles to serue her honorably as well as¹⁷ she ²⁸
were your owne proper doughter, and that in lyke wyse
these presoners to be newly aparelyd¹⁸ and orderyd as
well as other knyghtis of your house / &, syr, we
warne¹⁹ that in all²⁰ this that we haue sayd that ye do ³²

¹ and. ² vpon. ³ those. ⁴ many. ⁵ nowe.

⁶ that. ⁷ well. ⁸ before. ⁹ burned. ¹⁰ from.

¹¹ vntill. ¹² the death. ¹³ vnto.

¹⁴ Fol. cxxxii, back, col. 1. ¹⁵ but. ¹⁶ doe. ¹⁷ if.

¹⁸ arrayed. ¹⁹ and charge you. ²⁰ omitted.

not the contrary for any thyng that maye fall / for yf
ye do other wyse / there is no mortall man shal saue
your lyfe: thus commaundeth you¹ to do the² noble
4 kynge Oberon, who is souerayne lorde³ of the fayry' /
when the emperour Therry⁴ harde these knyghtes of y^e
fayry thus speke to⁵ hym / and saw how they were
armyd with theyr swordis in theyr handys tayntyd
8 with the blode of his almayns, he had great fere, The Emperor
was sore afraid,
and asks his
barons to counsel
him what to do.
& beheld his barons, and sayde / 'syr, I praye you
gyue me som good counseyle in this⁶ besynes / ye⁷
haue well hard moch spekyng of kynge Oberon and of
12 his great actis and dedys, wherfore I fere hym moche /
ye may se what .ii. of his knyghtis haue done / they
haue rescued them that I had condempnyd to dye /
and slayne dyuers of my men. Also ye here what
16 worde he sendeth me by his two knyghtis, that I
⁸shulde kepe this lady and the other presoners
honorably / and that I shuld not be so hardy to put
them to any daunger tyll⁹ Eester were¹⁰ passyd.' Then
20 an aunsyent knyght sayd / 'syr, knowe for trouthe
that kyng Oberon is pusant and wyse / for there is
nothyng in the world but *that* he knoweth it, and
also as often as he lyst, he can be where as he wyll
24 wysshe hym selfe, ¹¹with as great nombre of people as
he lyst / ¹¹therefore, syr, byleue suerly yf ye do other-
wyse then he hathe commaundyd you to do these two
knyghtis of his that be here present hathe suffycient¹²
28 pusaunce to dystroye you, and kynge Oberon to syt
styl at home / therefore, syr, myn aduyse is that ye
answere these .ii. knyghtes, that all that kynge Oberon
hath commaunded you to do by them, that ye wyll do
32 it suerly' / ¹¹then all the other lordis gaue the emperour

An ancient
knight describes
Oberon's great
power,

and advises the
Emperor to do as
the two fairy
knights
command.

¹ commaundeth you *after* Oberon. ² right.

³ and Gouvernor of all the Realme. ⁴ had well. ⁵ vnto.

⁶ serious. ⁷ we. ⁸ Fol. cxxxii. back, col. 2.

⁹ vntill. ¹⁰ be. ¹¹ and. ¹² *after* puissance.

The other lords
gave the same
counsel.

The Emperor
promises to do
what Oberon
commands.

Gloryand says
Oberon will then
take the Emperor
for his friend,
and to the marvel
of all, the two
knights vanish.

They return to
Oberon, and
relate what they
have done.

Oberon declares
when Easter is
past, the Emperor
will carry out his
intention of
burning Esclara-
monde, and of
hanging the
prisoners.

Gloryand cannot
believe the
Emperor will
dare to do it.

His great hatred
will force him
so to do.

the same counsaile / when the emperour had¹ hard²
his lordys³ he retournyd⁴ hym to⁵ the .ii. knygtys of
the fayry, and sayde / 'syrs, ye shall salute me to
kyng Oberon, and say that as for me I shall do euery ⁴
thyng as he hathe commaunded me to do to the best
of my power' / 'syr Emperour,' quod Gloryand, 'yf
ye⁶ do as ye saye the kyng wyl take you for his
frende / and therupon we commaunde you to god' / ⁸
thus the .ii. knygtis departyd, so that the emperoure
nor none other parson ⁷coude tell⁷ where they were
become, wherof euery man hadde great maruayle and
were sore abasshyd. ⁸ Thus Gloryand and Malabron ¹²
withyn a whyle came to⁹ Mommure, where as they
founde kyng Oberon, to whome they shewed all that
they had done. 'wel,' quod kyng Oberon, 'as now
the lady Esclaramonde and the other presoners ar ¹⁶
at theyr ease and well seruyd / but or¹⁰ a ¹¹moneth
be passyd they shall derely aby the ease that they be
in nowe / for the emperoure hateth them so sore
bycause of the maleys that he berethe to⁵ Huon¹² / he ²⁰
wyll set them all agayne into preson in great¹³ mysery /
and when Eester is past / he wyll brenne¹⁴ the lady¹⁵
and hange vp¹⁶ the presoners without they be rescued¹⁷ /
'syr,' quod Gloryand, 'I can not byleue that the ²⁴
emperour dare do it or thinke to do so.'¹⁸ 'Gloryand,'
quod the¹⁹ kyng, 'know suerly that the great hate that
is rootyd in the hart of the emperoure shal constreyn²⁰
him thus to do.' now let vs leue spekyng of²¹ kyng ²⁸
Oberon, and speke of the Emperoure.²²

¹ well. ² and vnderstood. ³ and Barons.

⁴ turned. ⁵ vnto. ⁶ will. ⁷⁻⁷ knew not. ⁸ and.


⁹ the City of. ¹⁰ before. ¹¹ Fol. cxxxiii. col. 1.

¹² of Bourdeaux that. ¹³ pouertie and. ¹⁴ burne.

¹⁵ Escleremond. ¹⁶ all. ¹⁷ againe. ¹⁸ so to doe.

¹⁹ noble. ²⁰ and vrge. ²¹ the noble. ²² Tirrey.

¶ Howe the emperoure¹ made the² lady
 esclaramonde to be well seruyd and apar-
 ayld, and all the other presoners / but
 4 a³ .iii. wekys after he made the noble lady
 & the sayd presoners to be put agayne in
 to pryson, where as they were in great
 mysery. Ca. C.xlv.

8  Ow sheweth the hystory *that* after
 these⁴ .ii. knyghtis of y^e fayry were
 departid and vanysshid away out of
 the presence of the emperoure, and
 12 that the emperoure was retourned into
 the citey of Magence with the lady
 Esclaramond and with the other presoners, wherof the
 burgesses, ladyes, and damosels of y^e citey ⁵ were
 16 ioyfull⁵ of theyr good aduenture / ⁶the emperoure had
 them into his palays and delyuerid to⁷ them chambers
 well drest and hangyd, as it aparteynyd,⁸ and the ⁹lady⁹
 had .iiii. ladyes to serue her / and she was baynyd¹⁰
 20 and stuyd,¹¹ and new aparayld as wel and¹² rychely
 as thoughe she had bene the empe¹³roures¹⁴ proper
 doughter, so that within a shorte space she came agayne
 to her beautye,¹⁵ and in lyke wyse so dyd all the other
 24 presoners who were kepte ¹⁶in¹⁶ chambers and new
 aparayld, and had theyr ease¹⁷ as other knyghtis of y^e
 emperours courte had / but as sone as thre wekys was
 passyd / the great hate that the emperour had to⁷
 28 the² lady and to the¹⁸ presoners constrayned hym to
 take fro them theyr⁴ ioy and ease that they were in,

The Emperor
 returned to
 Mayence with the
 lady Esclara-
 monde and the
 other prisoners.
 All reioice to see
 them.

The lady is
 treated just as
 though she was
 the Emperor's
 own daughter,

so that she
 regained her
 beauty.

The other
 prisoners were
 treated as knights
 of the court.

At the end of
 three weeks the
 Emperor's hate
 returned,

¹ Tirrey. ² noble. ³ about. ⁴ the.

⁵⁻⁵ had great ioy. ⁶ and. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ thereunto.

²⁻⁹ noble duches Escleremond. ¹⁰ bathed. ¹¹ washed.

¹² as. ¹³ Fol. cxxxiii. col. 2. ¹⁴ owne.

¹⁵ and to be as faire and well fauoured as euer she was.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ also in faire and rich. ¹⁷ and pleasures.

¹⁸ other.

and he swore that
after Easter the
lady should be
burnt, and the
prisoners hanged.

Eslaramonde
and the others
were again
imprisoned.

The lady weeps
for her husband
Huon.

He tarries so
long, and will not
come in time to
save her.

They suffer great
hunger;

and tournyd the same ¹to wepynges and sorowe.¹
And the emperour sware that for all kynge Oberon or
for any thyng that he coude do / he wolde neuer be
in peas in his harte tyll² he had set all that³ company ⁴
agayne into pryson / and besyde *that*, he sware that
Eester shulde no soner be past but *that* y^e lady
Eslaramond shuld be brent⁴ and all the other presoners
hangyd / and on⁵ them to take vengauce in the spyte ⁸
of Huon of Burdeaux, who had done hym so moch
trouble that he could not forget it / then he com-
maundyd to take agayne the duches Eslaramonde and
to put her and all the other presoners in to the preson ¹²
agayne / y^e which was done⁶ / Then the duches
Eslaramonde and al the other presoners were ryghte
sorowful, and were in great fere, and sayd eche to
other, 'Alas, now our dethe aprocheth.' and when⁷ ¹⁶
the lady saw that she was set agayne in pryson, she
began sore to wepe and complayne for the duke Huon
her husband,⁸ and sayd / 'a, dere lorde and husbonde⁸ /
to longe⁹ ye tary, for I se none other owre¹⁰ but that ²⁰
my dethe aprocheth / for ye shall not come in tyme /
well may I curse the owre that¹¹ I was borne / for in all
my lyfe I haue had but sorow, and heuynes, and dolours
¹²in portables¹² / better it had bene for me to haue ²⁴
ben ded then¹³ to vse¹⁴ my lyfe in this derke presone' /
ryght deuoutly she called on⁵ our lord Iesu chryste
to haue pyte¹⁵ of her / thus was this noble duches set
agayn in presone, and also the .CCC. presoners, where ²⁸
as they sufferyd great fayme¹⁶ and pouerte / for other
thyng had they not to lyue by but barly brede &

¹⁻¹ into pitiful weepings and great lamentations.

² vntill. ³ the. ⁴ burnt. ⁵ vpon.

⁶ according to his commandement. ⁷ that.

⁸⁻⁸ omitted. ⁹ quoth she. ¹⁰ way. ¹¹ euer.

¹²⁻¹² insupportable. ¹³ Fol. cxxxiii. back, col. 1.

¹⁴ spend. ¹⁵ and compassion.

¹⁶ famine.

clere water. Now we wyll leue to speke of them and
speke of ¹ Huon, who was aryued at Marcyll.²

their only food is
barley bread and
clear water.

¶ How Huon departed fro Marcyll² and
4 came to his vncl, the³ abbot of cluny, in
habyte dysgysed / & to⁴ hym dyscouered
hymselfe, wherof the abbot had great ioy,
& so had Claryte his doughter. Ca. C.xlvi.

8 **A**S ye haue harde here before, how Huon
was at Marcyll,² and after that he
had soiornd⁵ .iiii. dayes, he made
hym redy to departe, and brought
12 mules and horse for hym⁶ & for
barnard,⁷ and for his company / and

then he chargyd his summers / and vpon one of them
he trussyd the greffons fot, y^e which was great and
16 horryble, & coueryd it bycause euery man shulde not se
it / when he was redy and euery thyng trussyd, he
departed fro Marcyll² / and rode so by his iornyes that
he passyd by Prouence and came to⁴ Masconoy, and

20 on⁸ a thursday at nyght, he aryuyd at the towne of
Tornous. And when they had supplyd, he callyd

Barnard his cosyn, and sayd / 'cosy[n],⁹ I praye you
10 abyde me¹⁰ here / for I wyll go¹¹ se myne vncl the³
24 abbot of Cluny and Claryet my doughter, whome
I sore desyre to se, & shortely I shall retourne agayne
to⁴ you, I wyll go preuely dysgysed to y^e entent that I
wyll not be knowen' / 'syr,' quod Barnard, 'syn¹² it

28 is your plesure we must be content' / then they went
to bed, & in the mornynge Huon rose vp and aparelyd
hymselfe lyke a pylgryme, with a stafe, and a bage
about his necke / ¹³ with great botis on⁸ his legis ;

Huon leaves
Marseilles, passes
by Provence and
Masconoy, and
on a Thursday at
night reaches
Tournai.

After supper,
Huon announces
his intention of
going to see the
Abbot of Cluny
and Clariet his
daughter, in
disguise.

In the morning
Huon dressed
himself as a
pilgrim, with staff
and bag, great

¹ Duke.

² Marsellis.

³ good.

⁴ vnto.

⁶ iournd there.

⁶ selfe.

⁷ Fol. cxxxiii. back, col. 2.

⁸ vppon.

⁹ cosyd in text.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ to stay.

¹¹ to.

¹² seeing that.

¹³ and.

boots, a beard,
and long hair.

Barnard and his
company laugh
at the disguise ;

Huon looks like
a beggar indeed.

He reaches
Cluny,
and demands
entrance.

This being
granted, he asks
to see the abbot.

The porter gives
him leave to go
into the house ;

the abbot is in his
hall, communing
with his brethren.

he had a great berd and long here, wherfore he semyd
well a pylgrime ¹come¹ fro a far countre, & so he had
done in dede / when Barnard & his company saw hym
so aparylyd, they laughed & said / 'syr, it apereth ⁴
well by your maner that ye ar scapyd out of some
good place / it semeth to vs / *that* yf ye wyll shake
your stafe ye wyll make the money to a voyde out of
mens purses, ye ar so bold a begger' / when Huon hard ⁸
hym ² he laughed, & toke leue of them and departid
al alone with his bage aboute his necke / so a fote he
went tyll³ he came to⁴ Cluny / ⁵then he came to⁴ the
abbey gate & callyd y^e porter,⁶ & sayd / 'frend, I pray ¹²
you⁷ let me enter.' ⁸he openyd the weket & beheld
Huon, who semyd to hym to be a tall & a goodly man,
& sayd / 'pylgryme, enter when you plesse' / ⁹Then
Huon enterid in at the weket, and sayd to⁴ y^e porter / ¹⁶
frend, 'I com strayt fro beyonde the great see, and
haue kyssed the holy sepulture, & I¹⁰ haue sufferyd
moche payne and pouerte / and bycause or¹¹ this tyme
I haue bene here *with* y^e abbot of this place, therfore I ²⁰
thought¹² I wolde not pas by without spekyng with
hym ; I pray you⁷ shewe me that courtoyse *that* I may
speke with hym / for he wyll sone know me.' 'Syr,'
quod y^e porter, 'it semeth¹³ by your maner¹² ye seme to ²⁴
be a man of a good plase : therfore I gyue you leue⁷ go
into the house at youre pleasure / and ye shall fynde
our good abbot in his halle, where as he is comonyng
with his bretherne / serteynely I knowe well¹² ye shall ²⁸
be welcome to⁴ hym yf he haue of you any knowlege,
for a more noble man cortoyse and large¹⁴ ye shal not
fynd on¹⁵ this syde¹⁶ the see.' 'Frend,' quod Huon,
'your curtoyse may auayle you.' Then Huon went ³²

¹⁻¹ that came out. ² them. ³ vntill. ⁴ vnto.

⁵ and. ⁶ vnto him. ⁷ to. ⁸ then.

⁹ Fol. cxxxiii. col. 1. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ before.

¹² that. ¹³ vnto me. ¹⁴ liberall. ¹⁵ vppon.

¹⁶ of.

into the hall, wheras he found the abbot with his
 bretherne / ¹then he saluted the abbot and all his
 couente. 'Frende,' quod y^e abbot, 'ye are welcome; I
 4 pray you² shew me fro whence ye come?' / 'Syr,'
 quod Huon, 'I shall shewe you the trouthe / I come
 now fro beyonde the see fro the holy citeye of Ierusalem,
 where as I haue kyssed y^e holy sepulture¹ where as³
 8 our lord⁴ was quycke and dede; I haue bene in those
 partyes more then these³.vii. yerys / and the cause⁵ I
 am com hether to se you is this, I found there a
 yonge knyght of myne age namyd Huon of Burdeaux,
 12 and he⁶ saythe⁶ he is your nephue / and when he saw
 that I wold depart⁷ thence to come into this⁸ countre,
 he humbly prayed me to recommaunde hym to⁹ you /
 and therfore, syr,³ I am com to⁹ you to do this⁸
 16 message / for he and I haue bene together in ¹⁰dyuers
 bataylis / & great amyte¹¹ betwen vs' / when the good
 abbot¹² harde¹³ the pylgryme, ¹⁴great dropis¹⁴ fell fro
 his eyen¹⁵ when he harde his nephue Huon namyd /
 20 and sayd, 'frend, I pray you yf it be trewe as ye saye,
 to shew me the trouth yf ye haue sene my nephue
 Huon / for it is he that I loue best in all this worlde, and
 desyre moste to se hym / ¹I pray you shewe⁹ me what
 24 is his mynd, other to retourne hether or elles to abyde
 styll¹⁶ there; ¹⁷wold to god¹⁸ I were in det to pay a
 .M. marke of golde so *that* he were as nowe here in this
 hall.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'of youre nephue whome ye
 28 desyre so moche to se, ¹⁹or it be past a moneth¹⁹
 he wyll²⁰ be here with you, and, syr, he shewyd me at
 my departyng fro hym that he hath a daughter whom

Huon found the
 abbot,
 saluted him,

and in answer to
 his inquiry Huon
 describes himself
 as a pilgrim from
 Jerusalem,

who had met with
 a young knight
 named Huon of
 Bordeaux.

Huon prayed the
 pilgrim, since he
 was coming into
 this country,
 to deliver a
 message to the
 abbot.

In a month Huon
 will arrive here,

¹ and. ² to. ³ omitted. ⁴ Iesus chryst.
⁵ why. ⁶⁻⁶ said that. ⁷ from. ⁸ his. ⁹ vnto.
¹⁰ Fol. cxxxiii. col. 2. ¹¹ haue bene. ¹² had well.
¹³ and vnderstood. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ many teares.
¹⁵ and trickled downe his cheeks. ¹⁶ there still. ¹⁷ I.
¹⁸ that. ¹⁹⁻¹⁹ before a moneth be past.
²⁰ (by the grace of God).

and also he
charged the
pilgrim to see
Clariet, for Huon
knows not if she
is alive or dead.

The abbot will
summon Clariet
into the hall.

Huon is most
joyful.

The abbot sends a
noble knight, Sir
Emery, to fetch
Clariet.

Sir Emery
salutes her;

she returns his
salutation,
and demands his
news.

A pilgrim has
come from
beyond the sea
with tidings of
Huon, her
father;
the abbot desires
her to come and
speak with him.

Clariet and her
damsels enter the
hall.

ye haue norysshed and brought vp / and he charged me
greatly that I shuld desyre of you to se her or¹ I
departyd fro you, he knoweth not whether she be a
lyue or dede / I wolde gladely se her yf it were your 4
pleasure.' 'Frende,' quod the abbote, 'ryght gladly
ye shall se her. I shal cause her to come hether, and
then ye maye se her at your ease / and I dare well saye
to² you that in all the world ye shall not³ fynd no 8
fayrer nor a sweter creature, nor more wyser of her
age nor better lernyd, & yet she is but .x. yerys
of age.

¶ When Huon vnderstode the abbot, ye maye well 12
know that he had great ioye at his harte peuely,
& thankyd our lord Iesu chryste. Then the abbot
callyd to² hym a ryght notable knyght, namyd syr
Emery, and commaundyd hym to go & feche thether 16
his nece Claryet. y^e knyght went into the chaumbre
wheras the fayre lady was with other .iiii. noble
ladyes, who ⁴ had brought her vp / then Syr Emery
saluted the lady and the other that were with her / 20
when the yonge lady parseyued syr Emery, she rose vp
and renderyd to hym his salutacyon, & ryght humbly
saing, 'syr knyght, I am ioyous⁵ of your comynge, I
pray you⁶ shew⁷ sum³ of your newes'⁸ / 'sertaynly, 24
fayre lady,' quod y^e knyght / 'hether is come a
pylgryme, who is come fro beyond the see / and he
hath shewyd² the abbot your vncle tydynges of your
father, duke Huon, therefore your vncle desyreth you to 28
come and speke with hym.' when the lady harde
spekyng of her father, with all her harte she desyred
to know sum sertayne tydynges / ⁹ she and her damesels
departed out of y^e chambre and came in to the hall to 32
the abbot her vncle, accompanied with .ii. notable

¹ before. ² vnto. ³ omitted.

⁴ Fol. cxxxiii. back. col. 1. ⁵ ioyfull. ⁶ to. ⁷ mee.

⁸ and tidings. ⁹ and then.

- knyghtes; when¹ she enteryd into the hall rychely
 aparayd / no man coud dyscryue her beaute,² she was Her beauty is so
great; nature can
do no more;
 so well formyd *that* ³god and³ nature⁴ coude not
 4 amende her / her skynne was as whyte as y^e floure in
 the mede⁵ / & colouryd lyke the red rose / her hanches
 low and her pappys sumwhat resyng, her throte smoth
 and clere / her chyne vaunted / her mouth as vermayl
 8 as a rose / her tethe small & well rengyde, and whyte /
 her face whyte and well colouryd, meddelyd⁶ whyte &
 red / her eyene smyllynge, her chere amercous to behold,
 her nose strethe / her forched whyte / her here yelow /
 12 her eeres gentyll and close, I can not deuyse the
 .x. parte of her excellent beaute / none coude regarde all who see her
praise and love
her.
 her⁷ but that praysed and louyd her / all her beaute
 and her swete demenor, and great humelyte that was
 16 in her / yf I shulde⁸ dyscryue it / it shulde⁹ be ouer
 long to rehers; when Huon had¹⁰ sene his doughter¹¹,
 who was so fayre / he gladly beheld her with / ¹²out
 makynge of any knowlage / then y^e abbot toke his nese
 20 by the hande & led her to¹³ Huon, and sayd / ‘pylgryme,
 howe say you by ³this damysell / ye maye well parsayue The abbot tells
the pilgrim of
her beauty and
wit,
 by³ her she hathe not bene sore trauelyd nor moche
 come in the sonne / I haue kept her a long space¹⁴ /
 24 and yf she be garnysshed with beaute / in lyke wyse
 so she is withe wytte and bounte / she is daughter to¹³
¹⁵ Huon of Burdeaux / the man in the worlde that I
 moost loue / *that*¹⁶ wold to god¹⁷ I dyd se hym as I do
 28 you¹⁸ / but yf god send me lyf¹⁹, this lady shall be
 rychely maryed, I shall²⁰ gyue her ³of my³ goodes that
 she shall be ryche and pusaunte.’ ‘syr,’ quod Huon,
 ‘I pray to our lorde Iesu chryst to gyue her good

¹ then. ² for. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ herself.
⁵ meadow. ⁶ mingled. ⁷ nor looke vpon her.
⁸ heere. ⁹ would. ¹⁰ well. ¹¹ clariet.
¹² Fol. cxxxiiii. back, col. 2. ¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ time.
¹⁵ Duke. ¹⁶ I. ¹⁷ that. ¹⁸ nowe. ¹⁹ and helth.
²⁰ will.

Clariet asks for tidings of her father.

The pilgrim relates how he and Huon have been companions for a long space,

and the adventures they have had together.

Huon will return before two months are past.

Clariet hopes he will deliver her mother out of prison.

Huon then declares who he really is,

and that he is going to make war on the Emperor Thierry.

fortune / & *that* she may be so maryed that her blod may therby be lyft vp and exalted' / then the fayre lady Claryte sayd to¹ Huon / 'syr pylgryme, I pray you² shew me yf ye know any tydynges of my father, 4 duke Huon of Burdeaux?' / 'fayre lady,' quod Huon, 'he and I togyther haue bene a longe space³ beyonde the see / and companyons togyther / and we fought the sowdan of babylon *that* now is / it is not he that was 8 set there by Huon after *that* he had slayn ye great Admyrall gaudes, it is a nother who syn *that* tyme conqueryd⁴ y^e cytye & y^e countre of Egypt / many aduentures Huon and I⁵ sufferyd, but at the end 12 we dyscumfyted the sowdan and his men⁶ slayne'⁷ / 'pylgrym,' quod⁸ Claryte, 'I requyre you² shewe me yf ye know that⁹ my dere father wyll retorne hether agayn¹⁰ / the whiche is the thyng in the world that I 16 most desyre' / 'fayre lady,' quod he, 'I answeere you or¹¹ .ii. monethes be past ye shall se hym here in good helth' / 'I praye 12 to¹² god 13 it may be so,' quod the lady¹³ / 'that he maye delyuer my mother out of 20 prysone, where as she 14 is in great pouerte and mysery.'

¶ When Huon¹⁵ harde¹⁶ his doughter, he wold no lenger hyde hymselfe / but sayd, 'my ryght dere doughter, or¹⁷ august be past I shall delyuer her or 24 dye in y^e payn, for I shall moue¹⁸ suche warre agaynst y^e emperoure Therry, that yet or¹⁷ I dye I shall stryke of his hede¹⁹ what so euer fall therof' / when the lady harde Huon how he sayd that he was her father, she 28 changed coloure and blussyd as rudy as a rose, and thought to herself by the wordes that he spake *that* he was her father, where of she was²⁰ ioyfull, & sayd /

¹ vnto. ² to. ³ time. ⁴ bothe. ⁵ haue.

⁶ are. ⁷ and destroyed. ⁸ the faire Ladie.

⁹ whether. ¹⁰ or no. ¹¹ that before.

¹²⁻¹³ vnto our lord. ¹³⁻¹³ quoth the Ladie, it may be so.

¹⁴ Fol. cxxxv. col. 1. ¹⁵ had well. ¹⁶ and vnderstood.

¹⁷ before. ¹⁸ make. ¹⁹ from his bodie. ²⁰ right.

'A, syr, I praye you yf ye be duke Huon of Burdeaux,
 my father,¹ shewe me.' / 'my ryght dere doughter,
 hyleue it suerly, for I wyll no lenger hyde it' / when
 4 the lady hard that he was her father she cleppyd hym,
 and .xx. tymes kyssed hym. Then the abbote came
 and embrassed hym, and sayd / 'my ryght dere
 nephew, the ioy that my harte desyreth² your comynge
 8 is to me so agreable³ that I can not tell whether I
 dreme or not *that* I se you'⁴ / then agayn⁵ enbrassed
 hym, makyng the greatest ioy in the worlde. Also
 there was Claryet his doughter, who enbrassed and
 12 kyssed hym / then all that were in y^e howse came
 thether to make⁶ chere and feest⁷ / 'fayre nephew,'
 quod the abbot, 'I am sore abasshed that ye be retourned
 with so small a company.' 'fayr⁸ vncle,' quod Huon /
 16 'it coude be none other wyse; I haue had suche
 fortunes on⁹ the see *that* the moost parte of my men ar
 dede and peryshed, and sum by malady, and sum ar
 retourned to theyr owne countrees / and specyaly they
 20 that went with me ar abydyng at the rocke of the
 Adamant, and there al be dede for¹⁰ fayme, and they
 that were my gydes to haue brought me to¹¹ enphame
 ar in lyke wyse dede there' / then¹² ¹³ Huon began to
 24 shewe¹¹ the abbot all the aduentures that he had syn he
 departed fro the noble cytye of Burdeaux / there were
 sum that hard it *that* toke it for a mock, & al ye he
 shewyd of so many great meruaylles / they thoughe¹⁴ the
 28 moost part of them were lyes / ¹⁵ one sayd to an nother,
 'great auantage hath these vacaboundes to lye, bycause
 they fynde no man to say them naye / & yf any man
 say nay, theyr answeere is rudy to saye go and se' /
 32 then the abbote sayd, 'fayre nephew, yf I were of y^e

Clariet, right
joyful, embraces
her father.

The abbot
expresses his joy
at Huon's return;
he can hardly
believe it true.

All in the house
make a feast.

The abbot can-
not understand
why Huon has
so small a
company;

but he learns that
of his com-
panions, some are
dead, and others
have returned to
their own
country.

Huon relates all
the adventures
he has had since
he left Bordeaux.

Some think he is
mocking.

¹ to. ² hathe of. ³ acceptable. ⁴ heere and.
⁵ hee. ⁶ great. ⁷ feasting. ⁸ good. ⁹ vppon.
¹⁰ by. ¹¹ vnto. ¹² Duke. ¹³ Foi, cxxxv. col. 2.
¹⁴ that. ¹⁵ and.

If the abbot were younger, gladly would he go with Huon to destroy the Emperor, but he will pay with his own treasure a number of men of war who shall aid Huon.

age to bere harneys,¹ gladly I wold go with you² to destroy this Emperoure who hath done you so myche yll; I shall sende for suche a nombre of men of warre and pay them with my tresoure, the whiche I haue ⁴longe tyme gatheryd togyther, and shal ayed you to make such warre *that* it shall ³be euer³ had in remembraunce / or elles I wyll dye in the payne, and all they that shulde go with me / and to cause hym to ⁸make you amendes of al the ylles and damages that he hath done to⁴ you / yet sumwhat I haue done all redy / for it is not long⁵ that one of the Emperours nephewes was slayn by my men, and all they that ¹²were with hym slayn or taken / for, nephew, I haue gatheryd togyther as⁶ great tresoure *that* I may therewith wel⁷ entertayn a .C. M. men for .ii. yere without sellynge or laynge to plegge any fote of londe pertenyng ¹⁶to my churche / but as nowe I am so olde that I can not ryde out, for I am a .C. & xiiii. yere of age / and therefore syn⁸ I can not go with you / I shal abandone to⁴ you all my treasure; ⁹take therof as moche as ²⁰it shall please you' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'ye make me so great an offere that ones or I dye I truste to rendere to⁴ you the doble¹⁰ by the grace of god.'

As the abbot is one hundred and fourteen years old, he will abandon all his treasure to Huon, who can take as much as he pleases.

¶ ¹¹How duke Huon of Burdeaux shewyd to ²⁴his vncle, the abbote of Cluny, all the aduentures that he had syn he departed fro the¹² cytye of Burdeaux / & how he gaue y^e abbot y^e appyll of yought, wherby ²⁸y^e good abbot became agayn to his beaute that he had when he was of .xxx. yere of age.

Ca. C.xlvii.

¹ armour.

² to ayde you.

³⁻³ alwayes be.

⁴ vnto.

⁵ since.

⁶ a.

⁷ omitted.

⁸ seeing that.

⁹ and.

¹⁰ value.

¹¹ Fol. cxxxv. back, col. 1.

¹² noble.



4 **W**hen¹ Huon of Burdeaux² vnderstod
 the³ abbot his vnclē, and sawe the
 fayr offere and seruyce that he had
 offeryd⁴ hym, &⁵ sayd / 'syr, of your
 curtesie and largesse, and all the good
 that ye haue done to⁴ me and to my doughter claryet,
 god rewarde you for it / trewe it is after *that* I had fought
 8 with the gryffons; I came to⁴ a fayr fountayn, & there
 by was a tree growynge charged full of fayr fruyte, the
 tree was called the tre of yought, of y^e which I gaderyd
 .iii. appyls, wherof ye shall haue one and shall eete it,
 12 and as sone as ye haue eten thereof wherby ye shal
 become as yonge, and as stronge and lusty as ye were
 when ye were of the age of .xxx. yere.' Then there
 was a monke in the howse callyd dan Johan salmet,⁶
 16 who began to laugh, and hasted hym to speke, &
 sayd / 'A, syr, what is it that ye saye / thys .ii.M. yere
 there was neuer man at the tree of yought, therfore this
 tale is not to be byleuyd' / ⁷when Huon harde the
 20 monke he waxyde rede for angre, & lyft vp his staffe
 and wolde haue stryken therwith the monke, and⁸
 he had not skept backe, and sayd / 'A, thou false
 monke, *thou* lvest falsly / I haue bene there, and that
 24 *thou* shalt se the profe there⁹ of whether I say trewe or
 not' / then the abbot came bytwene them and stoppyd
 the stroke / and sayd to⁴ Huon / 'A, my ryght dere
 nephew, apayse yourself' / and then he sayd to the
 28 monke / 'A, thou¹⁰ gloutone,¹⁰ by the faythe *that* I owe
 to⁴ my lorde saynt bennet,¹¹ thy wordes¹² shall¹² be
 sore punysshyd' / then he causyd the monke to be set
 in presone / and then the abbote sayd to⁴ Huon / 'syr,
 32 I pray you be no lenger dyspleasyd' / then Huon toke

Huon tells how
 he gathered the
 fruit of the tree of
 youth,
 and offers one of
 the apples to the
 abbot in order
 that he may
 become once
 again a young
 man.

Thereupon a
 monk, Johan
 Salmet, laughs
 and cries that the
 tale is false.

Huon waxes
 furious.

and the abbot
 sends the monk
 to prison.

¹ Duke. ² had well. ³ good. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ he.
⁶ Saliuet. ⁷ and. ⁸ if. ⁹ Fol. cxxxv. back, col. 2.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ rude groome. ¹¹ for.
¹²⁻¹² thou shalt.

Huon tells how the Admiral of Persia ate one of the apples, and straightway became fair and strong as a man of thirty years, and how, on account of this miracle, all the men of his realm became Christians.

Then the abbot, making the sign of the cross, took the apple and ate it,

and at once became as a man of thirty years.

In great joy he embraces Huon.

one of his appyls and toke¹ it to his² vnclē the abbote,
and sayd / ' syr, take this appyll, y^e whiche I gaderyd
of the tree of yought; I gaderyd³ .iii., and one I gaue
to the admyrall of Perce, and a nother I kept for 4
myself, the which I gyue you / ⁴I wolde haue gaderyd
mo but I was defended⁵ by an aungell sent fro our
lorde Iesu chryst / &, syr, knowe for trought that the
admyrall of perce or⁶ I gaue hym y^e appyll he was of 8
the age of .vi. score yere & more / but as soone as he
had eeten therof / he became as fayr and as stronge as
when he was .xxx. yere of age, & he is as nowe one of
the fayrest pryncys of⁷ the worlde; By the whiche 12
myracle he and all his people of his realme forsoke⁸
the⁹ law of macomete and toke on¹⁰ them the byleue of
our lorde Iesu chryst, and were chrystenyd / & they
that wold not were hewen al to peses / and after that for 16
the loue that he bare¹¹ me, he passed the see with me
with great pusaunce, and we enteryd in to y^e sowdāns
land / where as we dyscumfyted hym in playne batayll /
when the² abbote¹² harde¹³ his nephew he had great 20
ioy, and toke the appyll / & made therof¹⁴ the syngē
of y^e crosse, and dyd eete it vp euery dele,¹⁵ wherby
incontynent in¹⁶ syght of all *them* that were there
present, he became in to his fyrst youth as he was 24
when he was¹⁷ but of y^e age of .xxx. yeres, his whyte
berd fell away & a new berd come / his iowes *that*
were lene & pale, y^e flesse grew again new quycke flesse,
so *that* he became a fayre¹⁸ man & wel fornyshyd of 28
body and membres / a farer man can¹⁹ no man se, nor
lyghter, nor lustyer / wherof he had suche ioye at his
harte that he ran and enbrasyd Huon, and kyssed hym

¹ gaue. ² good.

³ therof. ⁴ and. ⁵ forbidden.

⁶ before. ⁷ in. ⁸ did forsake. ⁹ false and detestable.

¹⁰ vpon. ¹¹ vnto mee. ¹² had well.

¹³ and vnderstood. ¹⁴ thereon. ¹⁵ whit. ¹⁶ the.

¹⁷ Fol. cxxxvi. col. 1. ¹⁸ young. ¹⁹ could.

more then x. tymes / when they *that* were¹ present
 saw the² great merueyll, they were greatly abasshed, &
 sayd one to a nother / that Huon was worthy to be
 4 byleued / for out of suche a prynees mouthe³ neuer
 Issuyd a ley / there was moche ioy made / the tabels
 were set & they went to dyner / there sat the abbote
 and Huon, and claryet his doughter / of there seruyce
 8 and meetes I wyll make no rehersall, for they were
 rychely seruyd ; after² they had dynd & grace sayd /
 all y^e monkes of the couent came & knelyd downe
 before Huon, and humbly requyred hym of pardone for
 12 dan Johan salmet,⁴ who was to hasty to speke, & all
 was but⁵ throghe nyclygence of yought and yll
 aduysed / when Huon saw all the monkes before hym
 on⁶ theyr kneys desyryng hym to pardon the monke of
 16 his folly. He sayd to⁷ them, 'syrs, I am content to
 fulfyll your desyers / for I am not come hether to
 troble any man' / when the⁸ abbote⁹ harde Huon¹⁰
 pardon his monke, he thanked hym, and sayd / 'syr,
 20 by saynte bennet, yf ye had not pardonyd hym, he
 shuld not haue come out of presone this yere' / then
 the monkes went to the pryson, and they shewyd¹⁷ the
 monke that was in prysone what meruaylles was done
 24 in his absence / and how theyr abbote, who was a
 .C. and .xiiii. yere of age, was¹¹ become of the age of
 .xxx. yeres / 'syrs,' quod he, 'I am glad of my
 delyuerance, but I can¹² not byleue it be so as ye say,
 28 nor I wyll not byleue it tyll¹³ I se it' / then he went in
 to the hall whereas the abbote and Huon was¹⁴ togyther /
 and when he sawe the abbote yonge agayne / then he
 knelyd downe and cryed Huon mercy / and requyrd
 32 hym of pardon / y^e whiche Huon granted. Then there

They dine, and
 are well feasted.

After dinner, the
 monks of the
 convent humbly
 ask Huon to
 pardon John
 Salmet.

Huon grants their
 request ;

the abbot thanks
 him.

They show the
 monk what
 marvels have
 taken place in his
 absence.

He will not
 believe them until
 he sees them,

but when he saw
 the abbot young
 again, he cries
 Huon mercy, and
 asks his pardon,

¹ there. ² that. ³ (quoth they).

⁴ Saliuet. ⁵ omitted. ⁶ vppon. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ good.

⁹ had well. ¹⁰ his Nephew. ¹¹ now.

¹² Fol. cxxxvi. col. 2. ¹³ vntill. ¹⁴ were.

which Huon grants.

Huon is to send for 20,000 men of war, to fight the Emperor.

Huon desires to lead the Emperor by peaceful means to yield him his lands and seignories,

and Huon would even become his liege man.

That night would Huon study the matter.

was great ioy / then the abbote sayd / 'nephew, send for men of warre on all sydes / & I shall pay theyr wages to the nombre of .xx.M. men / for I haue golde & seluer inought / and let vs send for all our frendes, 4 and we shall be a great nombre of men able to fyght with y^e Emperoure, who hath wrongfully,¹ without cause, dyssheryte you, & kepyth your wyfe in prysone, wherof my hart is so sorowfull that I can no lenger endure it' / 8 'syr,' quod Huon, 'yf I may fynde any other way to come to passe with the Emperoure / then by spere and sheylde and no man slayne / then² I wold thynke³ I had well spede / for yf I myght do so moch with the 12 Emperoure that he wolde render to⁴ me my londes and synnoryes, & my wyf & men / and that therby I myght become his lege man / I⁵ thynge I had made then⁶ an honorable ende / for I haue done him great 16 damage' / 'fayr nephew,' quod the abbote, 'I wolde fayne knowe by what maner ye coude bringe this mater aboute' / 'vncle,' quod Huon, 'this nyght I wyl study on⁷ y^e mater, y^e which I trust to⁸ our lord 20 god⁹ to brynge to a good¹⁰ end.'

¶ How Huon of Burdeaux departed fro Cluny & went to y^e noble cytye of Maience vpon a fryday, & how he came nere to⁴ the 24 Emperoures oratory. Ca. C.xl.viii.

Huon wrote a letter summoning his men lying at Tournous to come to the abbey of Cluny.



fter that Huon and the¹² abbot had deuysed togyther of dyuers thynges / Huon wrote a letter to⁴ his men 28 beyng at tornus, that they shulde come to⁴ hym to the abey of Cluny; he sent a gentylman of the abey to

¹ and. ² then *after* thinke. ³ that. ⁴ vnto.

⁵ would then. ⁶ then *before* thinke. ⁷ vppon.

⁸ in. ⁹ Iesu chryst. ¹⁰ and prosperous.

¹¹ Fol. cxxxvi. back, col. 1. ¹² good.

feche them / ¹when he was come to tornus and had
 delyueryd his letters to ²Barnarde / they made them
 redy, and trussyd theyr sumners and departed ³thence /
⁴and they rode so longe that they came in at the gates
 of the abey of Cluny / y^e same tyme Huon and the
 abbot were lenyng out at a wyndowe / the abbot sawe
 .xv. sumners chargyd, & .vii. mules and mulettes /
⁸wherof he had great merueyll of whence they were,
 and sayd to Huon, 'fayre nephew, can ye tell to ²
 whom parteneth ⁴thes sumners, or what be they *that*
 bryngeth them?' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'know for
¹²trouthe ⁵I haue conqueryd them and they ar myn,
 and yonder is Barnarde that doth conducte them / who
 hathe had moche payne and trouble or ⁶he coude fynde
 me' / 'fayre nephew,' quod y^e abbot, 'great ioy I haue
¹⁶at my harte that he hathe soughe you so longe to fynde
 you at ⁷last / nor I coude not haue sent a more noble
 man / ye ough greatly to loue hym / and also he
 is our kynsman / and alwayes he hath bene to ²you
²⁰good ⁸and trewe' ⁹ / 'syr,' ⁸quod Huon, ⁸'in hym
 I haue founde all that ye say / and, syr, the great
 summer that ye se yonder with the .iii. great coffers
 well bandyd / they be full of presyous stones and
²⁴iowelles, more worthe then .iiii. good cytyes; I wyll
 leue them here with you to kepe for the maryage of my
 doughter,' and with those wordes he kyst her / 'dere
 nephewe,' quod the ¹⁰abbot / 'and besyde that ye wyll
²⁸gyue her I shall departe with her large ¹¹ly of my
 treasure' / therwith ¹²thether came ¹²Barnarde and all
 the other of his company / ¹when ye abbot perseyuyd
 Barnard he came to ²hym ¹³with his armes abrode and
³²cleppyd and kyssed hym / and made ²hym great feest

Led by Barnard,
they reach the
abbey, with all
the sumpter-
horses.

The abbot sees
them from a
window, and
 marvels to whom
they can belong.

Huon has
conquered them;
they are his, and
Barnard is
conducting them.

The biggest
sumpter-horse
bears two coffers
full of precious
stones and jewels.

Huon leaves them
in the abbot's
keeping for his
daughter's dowry.

¹ and.² vnto.³ from.⁴ appertaine.⁶ that.⁶ before.⁷ the.⁸⁻⁸ omitted.⁹ and faithfull.¹⁰ good.¹¹ Fol. cxxxvi. back, col. 2.¹²⁻¹² after Barnarde.¹³ right ioyfully.

The abbot made a great feast in Barnard's honour.

The sumpter-horses are discharged, and all the coffers opened.

The abbot thinks Huon has riches enough to buy the whole realm of France.

Huon gives Claret a rich necklace of gold and precious stones.

She humbly thanks her father.

Huon apparels himself as a prince of high decree, and was fair to look upon.

On the ninth day Huon secretly departs, accompanied by Barnard.

Only the abbot knows of their going.

and chere ¹to hym¹ and to all his company / then duke Huon and y^e ²abbot³ and⁴ Claryte his doughter went in to theyr chambre and dyscharged the summers and openyd euery coffer / when the abbot had sene the ⁴ryches that was in them / he was neuer so abasshed, and sayd / 'A, Huon, fayr nephew, I thynke ye haue broughe hether ryches to bye therwith the hole realme of france / , then⁵ Huon toke a color of golde full of 8 precyous stones, that the clerenes of them illumyned all the howse / ⁶Huon dyd put the coler about his doughters neke, & kyst her ¹in the¹ mouth, & sayd / 'my dere⁷ doughter, I gyue you this ryche¹ coler, ¹²I neuer gaue you any thyng before / it is so rych that the stones therin ar worth a realme or a duchy' / when the lady sawe the rych coler, she was⁸ ioyfull, and knelyd downe before her father and thanked hym ¹⁶humbly⁹ / then Huon shewed all his treasure to¹⁰ his² vncl the abbot / ⁶when all had bene sene and aweuyd, y^e abbot dyd put them in to coffers / then Huon aparalyd hymselfe with a¹ rych aparyll / then⁶ he ²⁰semyd¹¹ to be a prynce of hye degre, he was so fayre to behold that all such as sawe hym had¹² pleasur to behold hym / there he made good chere¹³ the space of .viii. dayes / & on¹⁴ the .ix. daye in the mornyng ²⁴he departed thence pryuely, and toke Barnard *with* hym, *without*¹⁵ knowlage of any parson except the abbot, to¹⁰ whom he sayd / ' ¹⁶vncl, I and Barnarde wyll departe, and I requyre you¹⁷ lat no man lyuynge ²⁸know of my departynge as long as ye can kepe¹⁸ it secrete tyll¹⁹ ye here fro me sum newes' ²⁰/ 'syr, it shall be done,' quod the abbot / 'and I commend you

1-1 omitted. ² good. ³ his vncl. ⁴ the faire Ladie.

⁵ Duke. ⁶ and. ⁷ and louing. ⁸ right.

⁹ humbly *before* thanked. ¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ then.

¹² great. ¹³ and feasting for. ¹⁴ vpon. ¹⁵ the.

¹⁶ Faire. ¹⁷ to. ¹⁸ Fol. cxxxvii. col. 1. ¹⁹ vntill.

²⁰ tidings.

- to the sauegard of our lorde Iesu chryst ¹ / then Huon
 and Barnarde departed or ² any man were resyn / and
 they toke theyr waye ³ to ³ Maience & restyd not tyll ⁴
 4 they came to Coloyne, & the nexte mornynge they
 rode tyll ⁴ they came within a lege of ⁵ Maience / ⁶ then
 they enteryd in to a woode, & there they lyghted / then
 Huon aparaled hym[s]el]fe lyke a pylgrym in habyte,
 8 hose & shoes / and he toke an herbe and rubbed ther-
 with his vysage, so ⁷ that he semyde that he had bene
 in the sonne .x. yere, so that he was vnknowyn, ⁶ so
 that ⁶ Barnard that was with hym coude not knowe
 12 hym by the face / ⁶ then Barnarde lawghyde / then he
 toke hys stafe and skryp, and sayd to ⁸ Barnarde, 'syr,
 go ye ⁹ your waye before in to the cete with our
 horses, and take none aquentance of me thoughe ye se
 16 me, and take vp sum smal loggyng' / so Barnarde
 wente / on before / and Huon fayre & easly went
 after, ¹⁰ and so enteryd in to the cytye; And he had
 with hym the .xxx. ryche stones in his bosume / when
 20 he was enterid in to the cytye, he restyd not tyll ⁴ he
 came to the palyes / and as he went vp the stayres,
 he mette the stewarde of the Emperou[r]s howse, to ⁸
 whom he sayd / 'syr, I praye you in y^e honoure of our
 24 lorde Iesu chryst, ⁹ and of the blessed vyrgyn mary
 his mother, ⁹ to gyue me sum meet, for I am soo hungry
 that I can skant ¹¹ go on ¹² my leges, nor I haue no
 mony to bye me a morsell of brede' / when the
 28 steward ¹³ hard ¹⁴ the pylgryme, he behelde hym well
 and saw how he stafe shakyd in his hande / the which
 he thought had bene for ¹⁵ feblenes and pouerte / and
 had of hym great pyte, ¹⁶ and demaunded ¹⁷ fro whens

Huon and
Barnard take
their way to
Mayence.
and rest not till
they come to
Cologne.

When within
a league of
Mayence, Huon
disguises himself
as a pilgrim,

and stains his
face brown.

Barnard hardly
knew him.

Barnard is to go
and lodge in the
city, but to take
no notice of
Huon.

Huon, with thirty
precious stones in
his bosom, comes
to the Emperor's
palace.

He meets there
the steward,

and asks him for
food.

¹ and I beseech him humbly that you may haue peace with
the Emperour Tirrey.

² before. ³⁻³ towards the Citie of. ⁴ vntill.

⁵ the Citie of. ⁶ and. ⁷ in such sort. ⁸ vnto.

⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ him. ¹¹ scarce. ¹² vpon.

¹³ had well. ¹⁴ and vnderstood. ¹⁵ with.

¹⁶ and compassion. ¹⁷ of him.

The steward bids Huon tarry until he has carried some food to the duchess Esclaramonde and the other prisoners.

They are to be killed five days hence.

Huon sorely weeps at this bad news,

and returns into the town, where he is well lodged by a notable burgess.

To-morrow is Good Friday, and Huon asks his host if the Emperor does not give alms on that day.

he came / 'syr,' ¹quod Huon, 'I come streght fro the holy sepulture, and I haue enduryd moch pouerte'² / 'frende,' quod the stewarde, 'I pray you³ tary⁴ me here a lytell seaseone / tyll⁵ I haue bene in y^e presone⁴ to bere⁶ meet to⁷ y^e duches Esclaramond and to⁸ other presoners, who cryeth out ⁹for fayme⁹ *that* they ben in / for yf they be longe in this cayse *that* they be in,¹⁰ they can not long¹¹ endure¹² / for the Emperoure hath ⁸takyngesuche an inwarde hate to¹³ her and to¹³ them that be¹⁴ in presone with her / that he hathe made promyse that as soone as Ester be¹⁵ past, the lady shall be brente¹⁶ and the other¹⁷ al hangyd / and ¹²this day is sher¹⁸ thursdaye, so¹⁹ they haue to lyue but .v. dayes / and I am ryght sorry for y^e noble lady that our Emperoure wyll put her to dethe without²⁰ cause' / when Huon²¹ hard that / he had no membre²² but that ¹⁶trymbelyd, and he cast downe his vysage and began sore²³ to wepe, & sufferyd the stewarde to passe and spake no worde²⁴ / but retorned in to the towne and went & logyd in y^e towne ryght heuy and sorowfull; ²⁰how be it he was ryght ioyfull / ²⁵that his wyfe was alyue, for he²⁶ feryd¹⁹ she had bene dede; he logyd in a notable burgesse howse, who receyued hym well for the loue of god, but what so euer he had there he coude ²⁴nother eete nor drynke for sorowe²⁷ that he had at his hart / then he sayd to⁷ his host, 'syr, to morowe is good fryday, the which day I thynk the Emperoure wyll gyue great almys' / 'frende,' quod his hoost / ²⁸'ye may suerly hyleue that the Emperoure wyl gyue as to morowe great almes, he wyll gyue of his goodes so

¹ Fol. cxxxviii. col. 2. ² and miserie. ³ to. ⁴ for.
⁵ vntill. ⁶ carie. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ the.
⁹⁻⁹ through famine and rage. ¹⁰ now. ¹¹ omitted.
¹² it. ¹³ against. ¹⁴ are. ¹⁵ is. ¹⁶ burnt.
¹⁷ Prisoners. ¹⁸ Shroue. ¹⁹ that. ²⁰ a iust.
²¹ had well. ²² nor ioynt. ²³ pitifully. ²⁴ vnto him.
²⁵ in. ²⁶ greatly. ²⁷ and greefe.

- largely to¹ al poure men *that* ²commeth to² hym that
 day³ shall be⁴ satysfied / ye shall not fynde a prynce
⁵of⁵ greater almes / & of one thyng I aduertise you /
 4 the Emperoure hathe ⁶one coustume, that the fyrst
 pouer pylgryme that comethe to¹ hym to morowe shall
 be happy / for there is no thyng in y^e world, be
 yt neuer so dere, ⁷yf he demaund it of the emperoure
 8 it shall not be denyed hym: it must be at the same
 owre that the emperour goeth to¹ his chapel to say his
 orysons' / when Huon⁸ vnderstode his hoste / he began
 to reioyce, and thought in⁹ hymselfe¹⁰ yf he coude
 12 in any wyse he wolde be the fyrst that shulde demaund
 almes¹¹ / but that shulde be nother golde nor syluer, it
 shulde be his wyfe and his men that he hathe in
 pryson; and also yf he may he wyll axe therwith
 16 his londe¹² / Then the hoste went to his reste / &
 Huon abode in his chambre alone and slepte not of al
 the nyght, but thought how he myght delyuer his
 wyfe / and the presoners that be¹³ with her; and all
 20 nyghte he was in¹⁴ his prayers¹⁵ desyrynge¹⁶ god to
 cunsayle and ayde hym to recouer his wyfe.¹⁷ Erly
 in the mornynge he rose and made hym redy, and
 toke his scrippe and stafe and wente straye to the
 24 palays, and sat on¹⁸ y^e greses wheras the emperour
 shuld pas / at whiche tyme the emperour was¹⁹ rysen
 vp / ²⁰there were many other pylgrymes that were there
 abydyng for y^e emperours comynge, and euery man
 28 couetyd to haue the fyrste gyfte / but Huon dyd so
 moch by his subtylte that he was the fyrste that
 enteryd into the chapell, and none other parseyuyd
 hym / and he dyd hyde hymselfe²¹ in a corner nere to¹

The Emperour will
give largely,

and to the first
pilgrim that
cometh to him
he will deny
nothing that he
demands.

Huon determines
to be the first,
and demand his
wife and the
prisoners.

Huon passed a
sleepless night
considering how
he might best
deliver his wife.

In the morning
he goes straight
to the Emperour's
palace,

and finds there
many other
pilgrims who
coveted the first
gift.

Huon, by his
subtlety, entered
the chapel first,

¹ vnto. ²⁻² if they come vnto. ³ they. ⁴ all.

⁵⁻⁶ that doth giue. ⁶ Fol. cxxxvii. back, col. 1. ⁷ but.

⁸ had well. ⁹ within. ¹⁰ that. ¹¹ of the Emperour.

¹² and Signiores. ¹³ were. ¹⁴ at. ¹⁵ humbly.

¹⁶ our Lord. ¹⁷ Escleremond. ¹⁸ upon. ¹⁹ newe.

²⁰ and, ²¹ closely.

and in a corner
awaits the
Emperor's
coming.

the emperours oratory, and there he sate styлле without any worde spekyng, abydyng¹ the comynge of the emperour.

²¶ How Huon dyd so moche with the em- 4
perour Therry, that he had peas³ / & his
wyfe renderyd to⁴ hym and all his londys⁵ /
and howe the emperour brought hym to⁴
the Abbey of Cluny, where as they found 8
the good abbotte in harnays,⁶ not know-
ynge⁷ of the peas that was made.

Ca. C.xlix.

The Emperor
came into the
chapel,
and made his
prayers before the
altar.



ow shewethe the story⁸ that anone 12
after that Huon was enteryd into the
chapell / the emperoure came in and
knelyd downe before the aulter and
made his prayers ; ⁹many pouer men 16
were there abydyng y^e ende of his

When he was
ready to go into
the oratory, Huon
drew out a rich
stone of such
virtue, that its
owner could not
be overcome by
his enemy, or
drowned, or
burnt.

prayers, and no man sawe Huon wheras he was hedyn¹⁰
in a corner harde by the emperours oratory / when y^e
emperour had made his prayers, he rose and tornyd him 20
to have gone into his oratory / and Huon who had great
desyre to be the fyrst & ¹¹to haue the fyrst gyfte of the
emperoure ; he drewe out of his bage a rych stone / y^e
whiche was of suche vertue that who so euer dyd bere 24
it hym coude not be ouer come with his enemye, nor
coud not be drownyd nor brent¹² ; the stone ¹³was so
vertuous¹³ that none coud esteme the valure therof. And
besyde that, it cast such a¹⁴ clerenes in the chapell that 28
the emperoure was abashid therof,¹⁵ nor he knew not

The stone cast
such a brightness
in the chapel that

¹ there for. ² Fol. cxxxvii. back, col. 2. ³ with him.
⁴ vnto. ⁵ and Signories. ⁶ armour. ⁷ any thing.
⁸ Historie. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ closely. ¹¹ Fol. cxxxviii. col. 1.
¹² burnt. ¹³⁻¹³ had such great virtue. ¹⁴ omitted.
¹⁵ therat.

- fro whence that lyght shulde come / then he behelde
 Huon and Huon helde¹ the stone in his hande, and
 shewyd it to² the emperour / and when the emperoure
 4 saw the riche stone he greatly³ dyd couet³ it / and
 auaunsyd hymselfe and toke it⁴ of the pylgrymes
 hande / who presentyd it to² hym / when the emperour
 had the stone in his hand, he had great ioy at his hart,
 8 for he was cunnyng in the diseryuyng of stones, and
 sware to hymselfe that the pylgryme shulde neuer haue
 it agayne for any thyng that he coude do / but he
 thought⁵ if he wold sell it, he wolde gyue hym as
 12 moche golde & syluer as he could resonably demaunde /
 or elles he thought to kepe it styll what so euer fell
 therof / ⁶then the emperoure sayd to² Huon, 'pyl-
 gryme, I pray the⁷ shewe² me where ⁸hast thou get⁸
 16 this ryche⁹ stone' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I haue brought
 it fro beyonde y^e see' / 'frend,' quod the emperour,
 'wylt thou sel it, and I shall gyue the for it what so euer
 thou wylt haue; and to be in¹⁰ suertye to bere awaye
 20 my gyfte that I wyll gyue thee for it, I shall cause the
 to be conductyd into thyne owne countre wheresoeuer
 it be' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I wyll gyue it² you with a
 good hart: so it be trew that myne host hathe shewed²
 24 me this daye / for he hathe shewed² me that your
 costume is that y^e fyrst parson pylgryme that comethe
 to² ¹¹you on¹² this day, ¹³good friday, should haue of
 you a gyfte such as he wolde demaund after that ye haue
 28 made your praiers to our lorde god' / 'pylgryme,' quod
 the emperoure, 'he that shewed the that said ¹⁴trouth¹⁴
 and therefore what so euer thou demaundeste other
 boroughe towne or citey, or what thyng so euer it
 32 be / I promyse to gyue the who so euer be dyspleasyd

the Emperor
knew not whence
the light came.

Huon showed the
Emperor the
stone,

and the Emperor,
who was cunning
in precious-
stones, desires to
buy it of the
pilgrim for gold
and silver,

or even to keep it
happen what
might;

he asks Huon
how he came
by it.

Huon will give
the stone to the
Emperor if,
according to his
custom, he will
grant the first
pilgrim any
request he may
prefer.

This the Emperor
agrees to do.

¹ did holde. ² vnto. ³⁻³ desired to haue. ⁴ out.

⁵ within himself that. ⁶ and. ⁷ to.

⁸⁻⁸ thou hast gotten. ⁹ and bountifull. ¹⁰ the more.

¹¹ Fol. cxxxviii. col. 2. ¹² vppon. ¹³ being.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ that which is true.

Huon wants
neither gold nor
silver.

Whatever it be,
the Emperor will
hold by his
promise.

Huon then
demands pardon
for the trespasses
and ill deeds that
he or his men
have done against
the Emperor;
and that all men
and women
belonging to him
shall be delivered
to him;
that all his towns,
boroughs, and
castles shall be
rendered him.

therwith I graunt it¹ the / therfore demaund what²
thou wylt' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'of your grace and
fayre gyfte I³ thanke you / therfore, syr, with a good
hart, I do⁴ gyue you that stone that I delyuerid to⁵ 4
you⁶ right⁶ now in the recompence of the courtoysy and
gyfte that ye haue grauntid⁵ me, the whiche shall be
nother golde nor syluer, and, syr, bycause I know sar-
tayne that the renome is ouer al the world that ye be⁷ 8
a iust and a trewe noble man, and that⁸ ye promyse ye
wyll vpholde and⁹ neuer swarue fro your promys / and
by cause¹⁰ I knowe suerly that the promys that ye haue
made⁵ me, ye wyll vpholde of what so euer gyfte I 12
desyre to have' / 'frende,' quod the emperour, 'I wyll¹⁰
you¹¹ know that yf ye demaund .iiii. of my best cityes,
I shall gyue you them syn¹² I haue made¹⁰ promys, and¹³
god be pleasyd I shal not go fro¹⁴ my promyse / for I 16
had rather¹⁰ one of my handys were cut of then I shulde
be found false of my wordys / & therfore demaunde
and suerly ye shall haue your demaund withe out any
refuse.'¹⁵ 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I¹⁶ thanke you' / and 20
wolde haue kyssyd his feete / but the emperour wolde not
suffer hym, but toke hym vp / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'fyrste,
before all other thynges, I desyre of you pardon / of all
the yll dedis and trespasses *that* I or my men haue 24
done agaynst you; and yf ye haue in your preson other
men or women partaynyng to⁵ me or of¹⁷ my lynage
that ye wyll delyuer them all to⁵ me; and also yf ye
haue any thyng of myne other towne¹⁸ / borowe / or 28
castell / I requyre you by y^e promyse that ye haue
made⁵ me to render them to⁵ me quyte / syr, any
other thyng I demaunde not.' / 'pylgrym,' quod the
emperour, 'make no dought to haue that⁸ I haue 32

¹ to. ² so euer. ³ most hartely. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ vnto. ⁶⁻⁶ but euen. ⁷ are. ⁸ which.

⁹ kepe and. ¹⁰ that. ¹¹ well. ¹² seeing. ¹³ if.

¹⁴ for *in text*. ¹⁵ deniall. ¹⁶ hartely.

¹⁷ Fol. cxxxviii. back, col. 1. ¹⁸ or Citie.

- promysyd¹ / therfore I graunt al your desyre / but I requyre you humbly² shew³ me what man ye be, & of what countre, and of what lynage, syn⁴ ye haue desyred
- 4 of me suche a gyfte / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I am he that sumtyme was duke of Burdeaux, whome ye haue so moche hated, I come nowe fro beyonde the se, wheras I haue endurid moche payne and pouerte. I thanke
- 8 our lorde Iesu Chryst that I haue done so moch that I am nowe agreyd with you, and I shall haue agayne the duches Esclaramonde, my⁵ wyfe and my men and⁶ landes⁷ yf ye wyll⁸ holde⁸ your promyse' / when the
- 12 Emperoure⁹ vnderstode Huon / all his blode began to change and¹⁰ was a great space or¹¹ he spake any worde, he was so¹² abasshed,¹³ at¹⁴ laste he sayde, 'A, Huon, ar you he by whome I haue sufferyd so many yllys and
- 16 domages, and haue slayne so many of my nephues and other of my men / I wolde not haue thought that ye wolde haue ben so hardy to haue shewed your selfe before me, nor to haue com into my presence, ye haue
- 20 well ouercome me and enchaunted me; I had rather haue lost .iiii. of my best cityes, ye and all my countre brent¹⁵ and destroyed / ye¹⁶ and my selfe banysshyd out of myn owne countre for .iii. yere rather than ye shuld
- 24 haue thus come to my presence / but syn⁴ it is thus knowe for trouthe that¹⁷ I haue promysyd³ you I shall vpholde¹⁸ / and fro hence forth in the honoure of the passyon of¹⁹ our lorde Iesu Chryst, and of this good
- 28 daye on the whiche he was crucyfied & put to dethe. I pardon you all myne yll wyll and good wyll, I shall not be pariurid, your wyfe and your londis,⁷ & your men; I shall render them into your handes / speke

The Emperor then asks what man this pilgrim is.

The pilgrim is none other than the Duke of Bordeaux,

who thanks our Lord that he will have again his wife, and his men, and his lands.

The Emperor is abashed, and

wonders at Huon's boldness in thus coming into his presence.

The Emperor must, however, abide by his word,

and will render Huon those who belong to him.

¹ vnto you. ² to. ³ vnto. ⁴ seeing. ⁵ louing.

⁶ my. ⁷ and Signiories.

⁸⁻⁸ be as good as your word and vphold.

⁹ had well heard and. ¹⁰ hee. ¹¹ before. ¹² sore.

¹³ but. ¹⁴ the. ¹⁵ burnt. ¹⁶ omitted. ¹⁷ which.

¹⁸ and keepe. ¹⁹ Fol. cxxxviii. back, col. 2.

Huon thanks
him, and desires
to be forgiven.

The Emperor
kissed Huon
in token of
peace.

The Emperor
shall have a
double reward.

He asks of Huon
his adventures.

Huon will relate
them after the
divine service has
been read.

The Emperor
led Huon with
him into the
oratory,

and all the lords
marvel who the
pilgrim can be
to whom the
Emperor does so
much honour.

The Emperor and
Huon dine
together,

and afterwards
Huon relates his
adventures:

how he had
spoken with
Judas;

therof who lyste / otherwyse shall it not be, nor I wyl
neuer do the contrary' / then Huon knelyd downe
before the emperour and¹ thanked hym, and desyred
hym to forgeue hym all his trespasses / 'Huon,' quod 4
the emperoure, 'god forgeue you,² and as for me, with a
good harte, I do pardon you' / then the emperoure toke
Huon by the hande and toke hym vp and kyste hym
³on the mouth³ in token of good peas and amyte / 'syr,' 8
quod Houn, 'great grace haue I found in you synne⁴
ye kepe⁵ your promyse / but, syr, if it maye please our
lorde god / your guerdon shall be double' / 'Huon,'
quod y^e emperour, 'I requyre you⁶ shewe me of your 12
newes and aduentures that ye haue had'⁷ / 'syr,' quod
Huon with a good wyll, 'after that your deuyne ser-
uyce be⁸ done, and the passyon of our lorde Iesu
Chryste red' / 'Huon,' quod the emperour, 'I⁹ can 16
you thanke⁹ for that you saye' / then the emperour /
toke Huon by the hand and led hym into his oratory
with him / wheras they harde the deuyne seruyce
wherof many lordes and knyghtes¹⁰ were sore abasshed, 20
and hade¹¹ maruayle what pylgreme it was *that* y^e
emperoure dyd so moche honoure vnto. After that the
deuine seruyce was done, the emperour retourned into
his paleis holdynge Huon by the hande / the dyner 24
was made redy,¹² they wasshed theyr handes and sate
downe to dyner / and when dyner was done and the
tables taken up, then in the emperours presence and
in¹³ all the¹⁴ lordes there, Huon shewed all his 28
¹⁵aduentures.

¶ Fyrste he shewed howe he had passed the Goulfe
and spoken with Iudas / and after¹⁶ howe by fortune

¹ right humbly. ² thee. ³⁻³ verie kindly.

⁴ seeing. ⁵ and vpholde. ⁶ to.

⁷ since you departed from the Citie of Bordeaux. ⁸ is.

⁹⁻⁹ giue you good thanks. ¹⁰ and Lordes. ¹¹ great.

¹² and. ¹³ of. ¹⁴ other. ¹⁵ Fol. cxxxix. col. 1.

¹⁶ afterward.

- of the se he aryued at the castell of the Adamante, and howe his company dyed there for¹ famyne: and shewed² of the beaute of that³ castell and of the great
 4 ryches therin / and after⁴ how he was borne⁵ thence by a gryffon to a great rocke, and howe he slewe .v. yonge Gryffons and the olde Gryffon *that* brought hym thether, wherof he hathe left at Cluny the fote of the
 8 same / then he shewed of the fountayne and of the tree of youth, and how he gathered therof three fayre apples, and more he wolde naue gathered but that our lord god commaunded hym by his aungel *that* he shuld
 12 not be so hardy⁶ to gather any more, and after that he shewed how⁷ he had passed the Goulfe of perse in great parell⁸ / and sayd, furthermore, 'syr, when I was passed that Goulfe I gathered many precious stones;
 16 that⁹ I haue geuen you was one of them, the whiche stone is of great vertue / ¹⁰then I came to the great city of Thauris in Perse, whereas I founde a noble admyrall, an olde auneynt knyght; and he shewed¹¹
 20 me great courtoyses, and I gaue him one of myne apples to ete; and as sone as he had eten therof he became¹² as yong as he was when he was but of .xxx. yere of age / and I thynke⁷ fro thens hether can not be founde a
 24 fayrer prynce; and he was before of a¹³ .vi. score and .vii. yeres of age / and, syr, because I desyre withe all my harte to haue youre good grace, and that good peas and ferme maye be had betwene you and me, I wyll
 28 gyue you the thyrde apple y^e which ¹⁴I kepte for my selfe, by the whiche yf ye do ete it ye shall become agayn as yong and as lusty¹⁵ as ye were when ye were¹⁶ of the age of .xxx. yerys.' The emperoure when he harde that the apple that Huon wolde geue hym to eate

how he had
visited the rich
and beautiful
castle of
Adamant;

how he had slain
the griffins,

and brought to
Cluny the foot
of the old griffin;

how he gathered
three apples of
the tree of youth;

how he passed
the Persian Gulf,
and gathered
there many
precious stones;

how the admiral
of Persia became
young again by
eating of one of
the apples.

Huon will give
the third apple
to the Emperor.

¹ by. ² declared. ³ the. ⁴ afterward.
⁵ caried from. ⁶ as. ⁷ that. ⁸ and daunger.
⁹ which. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ to. ¹² to be. ¹³ omitted.
¹⁴ Fol. cxxxix. col. 2. ¹⁵ and as stronge.
¹⁶ but.

The Emperor is
joyful at the
thought he will
be young once
more,

and offers Huon
two good cities
and 60,000 men to
aid him in war.

The Emperor
eats the apple,

and becomes at
once as ruddy and
strong as a man
of thirty years.

All present
marvel greatly,

and tell the
Emperor he
should praise God,
that he ever was
acquainted with
duke Huon.

shulde cause hym to retourne to his yonge age agayne /
he was so ioyful that he neuer made suche chere before
in all his lyfe to any man as he dyd then to¹ Huon /
and sayde howe² he wolde be his frend for euer, and 4
neuer fayle hym, and sayd, 'frend, I abandon my body
and my³ goodes at your pleasure / and I geue you two
good cityes to encrease your synngnorye / and besyde that
I promyse you if ye haue any busynes to do, I shall 8
socoure you with .lx.⁴ thousande men, and shall ayde
you as y^e father shulde do the sone. Therwith Huon
wolde haue kneled downe to haue thanked the emperour,
but he wolde not suffer hym : ⁵then Huon toke the apple 12
out of his bage and delyuered it to¹ the emperoure, the
emperoure who was sore desyrous to knowe yf he shuld
waxe yorg agayne by reason of etinge of the apple ; he
callyd to¹ hym his lordes⁶ to the entent² they shulde 16
se that maruayle / ⁵when the emperour had the apple
in his hand he put it⁷ to his mouthe and dyd eat it
euery dele,⁸ and as he was etynge therof his age
chaunged in to youthe, and by that tyme he had eten 20
all the apple / his whyght berde fell of and the skynne
chaungyd lyke a man of .xxx. yeres of age / and also
his face and all his body that before was all ryuyled⁹
and rugged and pale, became then as whyght and¹⁰ 24
ruddy, and felte hymselfe as lyght and fresshe & as
quycke to do any thyng, and as stronge as he was
when he was of the age of .xxx. yeres / wherof all that
were¹¹ present had ¹²great maruayle and were¹³ ioyful of 28
that aduenture that was fallen to¹ the emperoure whom
they louyd / then they sayd, 'a,³ syr, suche a gyfte was
neuer geuen to any emperoure or kynge / well ye ought
to praise our lord god, what so euer losse y[e]¹⁴ haue 32
had / that euer ye were aquaynted with duke Huon.'

¹ vnto. ² that. ³ omitted. ⁴ fortie. ⁵ and.
⁶ and Barons. ⁷ in. ⁸ whit. ⁹ wrinkled. ¹⁰ as. ¹¹ there.
¹² Fol. cxxxix. back, col. 1. ¹³ right. ¹⁴ yt in text.

¶ How the emperour made good cher to¹
²Huon of Burdeaux. Ca. C.xl[= cl.]



4 When the emperour saw hymselfe waxe
 yonge agayne, he was so ioyfull that he
 wyste not what to do; then he clyppyd
 and kyssed huon more then .x. tymes,
 sayenge, 'my ryghte dere frende, I
 8 praye you³ forgeue me all the ylles⁴ that I haue done¹
 you, and for the sorowe and payne⁵ that I haue caused
 your noble wyfe and men to suffer' / then the emperoure
 called to¹ hym two of his lordes, and sayd / 'syrs, I
 12 wyll that all the pouer people that be in my chapell
 this day be newly aparayled, and to haue mete and
 drynke suffyceyent, for the loue of the passyon of our
 lorde Iesu chryst, who this day hath done me that grace
 16 that I am retourned fro age to youthe.' 'syr,' quod they,
 'your commaundemente shall be done' / ⁶they went
 & executed his pleasure. Then Duke Huon aprochyd
 to¹ the emperoure, and sayd, 'syr, I desyre humbly
 20 your grace to delyuer my wyfe⁷ and my men out of
 preson.' 'syr,' quod the emperoure, 'it is good reason
 that I do it' / then he sente for the gayler who had the
 lady and the other presoners in his kepynge, and com-
 24 maunded hym that the lady Esclaramond & the other
 presoners shuld be brought into the hall / the gayler
 went to the pre⁸son, & Huon with hym / ⁹when they
 came thether / Huon wente to the dore & cryed out
 28 aloude, and sayd, 'A, my ryght swete syster, I byleue
 ye¹⁰ haue bene here¹¹ but yl lodged; I haue great fere that
 by reason of y^e paynes that ye haue endurid ye can not
 long contynue / sartaynely yf ye dye I shal neuer haue

In great joy,
 the Emperor
 embraces Huon,

and asks him to
 forgive the illa
 he has done him.

All the poor are
 to be clothed and
 fed by the
 Emperor's
 bounty.

Two lords
 execute the
 command.

Huon humbly
 desires that his
 wife and men be
 delivered out of
 prison.

Huon goes with
 the gaoler to the
 prison door,

and cries aloud
 his fear that the
 lady cannot
 endure her
 sufferings much
 longer.

¹ vnto. ² Duke. ³ to. ⁴ and dammages.
⁵ paine before sorowe. ⁶ then. ⁷ Escleremond.
⁸ Fol. cxxxix. back, col. 2. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ that.
¹¹ here after lodged.

The lady Esclaramonde thought she had heard that voice before, and when she recognized it as Huon's, she fainted for very joy.

When she revived she cried out that she had been so long left alone in pain and misery.

Huon's sorrow at hearing these words was so great that he could only weep.

The gaoler brought up Esclaramonde.

Huon and she embrace each other, and fall down in a trance;

the lords revive them,

ioy.¹ when the lady² Esclaramond³ hard the voice of hym that spake at the dore / she stode styl and studyed what voyce it myght be: for she thought⁴ she had hard *that* voyce before⁵ / & when she had mused a⁶ lytell,⁶ she thought it shulde be the voyce of Huon her husbond: wherof she had suche ioy & myrth at her hart, *that* of a great season she coude not speke, but fell in a swoune in the preson: & when she reuyued & 8 came agayne to herselfe, she cryed out & said, 'a, my⁷ dere lorde and husband, long haue you lefte me in payne & mysery all a lone in this stynkyng & horrible preson, in the handes of them that loue you nothyng / 12 and haue sufferyd moche payne, colde, and hunger; and⁸ great pouerte and in great fere of dethe.'⁹ ¶ when Huon¹⁰ harde¹¹ his dere wyfe¹² speke¹² so petuously / sorow¹³ so closid his hart that he had no power 16 to speke one word, and the teres fell¹⁴ in his eyen¹⁵ for¹⁶ petye *that* he had of his¹⁷ wyfe¹⁸ / also y^e gayler for very petye¹⁹ was constrayned to wepe / and so went downe into y^e preson & brought the lady vp / and 20 then Huon and she beheld eche other, and coude speke no worde of a great season: 20 but ran and embraced and kyssed eche other / & so fell downe²¹ bothe in a traunce / and so²² laye tyll²³ other knyghtes came thether 24 & 24 ferid²⁴ that they had bene ded; there was none but *that* wepte for petye / then the emperour cam thether hymselfe, and sore wepte and repented hym selfe of the ylles that he had 25 caused²⁶ the lady²⁷ to suffer: 28 then 28 the²⁹ lordes reuyued them / then they clyppyd & kyssyd

¹ at my heart.

² Duchesse.

³ had well.

⁴ within herself that.

⁵ that time.

⁶ while.

⁷ right.

⁸ haue endured.

⁹ and desperation.

¹⁰ had well.

¹¹ and vnderstood.

¹² who spake.

¹³ and greefe.

¹⁴ from.

¹⁵ and trickled downe his cheekes.

¹⁶ the.

¹⁷ louing.

¹⁸ Escleremond and.

¹⁹ that he had.

²⁰ space.

²¹ to the ground.

²² they.

²³ vntill.

²⁴⁻²⁴ fearing.

²⁵ Fol. clx. (xl.) col. 1.

²⁶ done to.

²⁷ and made her.

²⁸ and.

²⁹ knyghtes and.

together / and Huon sayd / 'fayre lady, I requyre you¹
 pardon me² that I haue taryed so longe fro you, &
 haue lefte you in suche pouerte / payne / & parell³ of
 4 deth. I⁴ haue seapyd,⁵ the which I⁶ thanke⁷ god
 of his grace' / 'syr,' quod she, 'we ought greatly to
 thanke⁸ god, when he hathe sente vs that grace to se
 eche other & to come together⁹ / and that y^e haue
 8 peas with y^e emperour' / then the gayler went to all y^e
 presons, and toke out al Huons men, and brought them
 to¹⁰ hym, who had great ioye when they saw theyr
 lorde and mayster in sauegarde, and thankyd our lord
 12 god, and humblye saluted Huon, and sayd / 'a,¹¹ syr,
 blessed be the oure of your comynge, wherby we ar
 delyuered fro the paynes, trauayles / and pouertes /
 that we haue bene in.' 'My ryght dere frendes,' quod
 16 Huon / 'thus goeth the worlde; you and I ar bound to
 thanke⁷ god of that he sendeth to¹⁰ vs' / then the em-
 perour toke Huon by the one hande and Esclaramond
 by the other, and led them into his palays, where as
 20 the tables were sette / and there sate downe to gether
 the emperour and Huon and the duches / and al the
 presoners at another table / and were all rychly seruyd /
 of theyr metys and seruyces & ioye that they made, I
 24 wyll make therof but small rehersayle. And when
 they had al dyned, the emperour ordayned ladyes &
 damoysselles to serue the duches Esclaramond, and
 ordayned chaumbers for y^e duke and for¹¹ her, & for all
 28 the other / they were¹² sarued of all thynges that they
 desyred / and they had newe aparayle acordynge to theyr
 desgres / anone y^e newes¹³ was knowen in the citeye of
 the peas¹⁴ betwene Huon and the emperour, & how¹⁵ he
 32 had his wyfe¹⁶ renderyd to¹⁰ hym, & his men delyuered

and Huon asks
 his wife's pardon
 for having tarried
 so long from her.

The gaoler
 releases all
 Huon's men,
 who rejoice
 greatly to see
 him.

The Emperor sits
 down to table
 with Huon and
 the duchess;
 the prisoners are
 at another table,
 and all are richly
 served.

Chambers are
 prepared for them
 all,

and the news of
 the peace between
 the Emperor and
 Huon is spread
 through the city.

¹ to. ² in. ³ daunger. ⁴ and. ⁵ for.

⁶ humbly. ⁷ our Lord. ⁸ almightie. ⁹ againe.

¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ omitted. ¹² there. ¹³ and tidinges.

¹⁴ made. ¹⁵ Fol. clx. (xl). col. 2.

¹⁶ the Duchess Escleremond.

Barnard hastens
to the palace.

The lady knew
him at once.
She owes him
great love that he
has sought her
lord and brought
him hither.

Barnard tells of
Huon's sufferings.

At the end of
eight days, the
Emperor an-
nounces his
intention of
conducting duke
Huon and the
duchess to
Bordeaux to set
them in posses-
sion of their
lands.
Ten thousand
men are to
accompany him.

They depart from
Mayence, and
reach Cluny.

The abbot, having
heard no news of
Huon, had

out of preson / wherof Barnard, as he was in y^e towne
harkenynge for newes, was ryght ioyfull / & wente in
hast to¹ the palays, wheras he found Huon in his
chambre, with his wyfe y^e fayre Esclaramond / ²as sone 4
as he saw the duches, the water fell fro his eyen for ioy ;
then he saluted Huon and the duches / ²y^e lady knew
hym incontynent, and sayde / 'a, syr Barnard, wel I
ought to loue and to cherysshe you / that ye haue so 8
sought for my lorde and husbonde as ³to bryng³ hym
hether.' 'Madame,' quod he, 'I haue done no thyng
but that⁴ I was bounde⁵ to do / ⁶great payne &
trauayle⁷ my lorde hath suffered' / ²then he shewed 12
suche newes as he knewe, wherof many great lordes
and knyghtes had great ioy to here hym for the mer-
uaylles that he shewed⁸ / Thus,⁹ when they had bene
there the space of .viii. dayes, and that theyr men were 16
well refreshed / then¹⁰ the emperour assembelyd¹¹ his
lordes, and sayd / 'syr, it is my wyll to lede and con-
ducte duke Huon & the duches to Burdeaux, to set
them in possessyon of theyr londes and sygnoryes. ²I 20
wyl haue .x. M. men to go with me and them, and to
brynge me agayne hether to Magence: acordynge to
his commaundement the men were made redy / & when
the emperour had ordeyned for Huons estate as it 24
aparteyned for hym & his wyfe & his men, & when
euery thyng was redy, they¹¹ mounted on¹² theyr horses,
& the duches had a ryche lytter / then¹³ they departed
fro¹⁴ Magence / & secyd not tyll they came within .ii. 28
leges of the abbey of Cluny / the good abbot, who knew
nothyng of the agrement betwene the emperour & Huon,
had gathered together of men of warre a¹⁵ .xx. M., &

¹ vnto. ² and.

³⁻³ that now at last through your tedious trauaile you haue
found him, and brought.

⁴ what. ⁵ in duty. ⁶ I am sorry for the. ⁷ that.

⁸ discoursed vnto them. ⁹ Then. ¹⁰ omitted.

¹¹ all. ¹² vpon. ¹³ so. ¹⁴ the Citie of. ¹⁵ about.

they were logyd in ¹the toune of Cluny; and the abbot
 was aduertysed of the emperours comynge into those
 partyes, and he hard no newes of Huon, wherof he
 4 was ²sorowfull ³/ & thought that the emperoure had
 taken Huon presoner: then he issued out of the towne,
 and renged his men in good order of batayle without
 the town in a fayre playne, there abydyng for y^e
 8 emperoure, whome he sawe comynge.

gathered 20,000
 men of war, who
 are lodged in the
 town of Cluny.

When he saw the
 Emperor coming,
 the abbot ranged
 his men in order
 of battle, and
 awaited the
 Emperor.

¶ How the emperour aryuyde at Cluny, and
 how the abbot set on ⁴hym / and of y^e
 pease that was ther made, and how the
 12 emperour conueyed Huon to Burdeaux, &
 renderyd to hym al his londys, and of the
 partinge of ⁵the emperour, and how Huon
 made his prouysion to go to kyng oberon.

16 Ca. cli.

20 **W**hen the emperour saw the town of
 Cluny, he demaunded of Huon ⁶to
 whome partayned that towne / 'syr,'
 quod he, 'it ⁷is belonginge ⁷to an
 vncle of myne, who is abbot there,⁸

The Emperor
 demands of Huon,
 to whom belongs
 the town of
 Cluny.

It belongs to
 Huon's uncle,
 who is abbot
 there.

& we must pas that waye, and also I must nedes speke
 with hym or ⁹I go to Burdeaux' / the same tyme the
 24 abbot, who was ¹⁰on a pusaunte ¹¹courser well armed at
 all peces,¹² sawe the emperoure comynge towardes
 Cluny / ¹³then he sayd to his men, 'syrs, thynke this
 day to do wel¹⁴ / for yonder before vs we may se y^e
 28 emperoure our enemye comynge, wherfore we cannot
 scape without batayle; I am sure he hath taken Huon

The abbot saw
 the Emperor
 coming,

and exhorts his
 men to do well.

¹ Fol. clx. (xl.) back, col. 1. ² right.

³ and sore displeased. ⁴ vpon. ⁵ them and.

⁶ if he could tell him. ⁷⁻⁷ belongeth. ⁸ of.

⁹ before. ¹⁰ then mounted. ¹¹ and strong.

¹² points. ¹³ and. ¹⁴ and valiantly.

The Emperor
demands what is
the meaning of
the approach of
these men of war.

Huon explains
that the abbot
does not know of
the peace between
the Emperor and
Huon.

The abbot dashes
in among the
Emperor's men,
and slays many
of the Germans.

The Emperor, in
a great rage,
blamed Huon for
these ill deeds.

Huon is sorry,
and ready to
make amends.

Huon rides to the
abbot his uncle in
great displeasure.

my nephue, but by the faythe that I owe to my lord¹
²saynte Benet, my patron / that takynge shalbe derely
 bought.' then they couched theyr speres and sporyd
 theyr horses, & com rynnynge towards the emperour; ⁴
 and when the emperour saw them, he called Huon,
 and sayd / 'syr, yonder ye maye se men of warre
 all armed come rynnynge agaynst vs / I wote not what
 they thynke³ to do / but they seme to be oure enemyes ⁸
 as far as I can parseyue / ⁴they be a great nombre,⁵
 they are to be doughted and feryd' / 'syr,' quod Huon,
 'it is myne vncl the abbot of Cluny, who hath reysed
 vp his men to socoure me / for he is not aduerteysed of ¹²
 the peas made betwene you and me, ⁶he thynkethe⁷
 ye haue taken me presoner.' ⁴therwith the abbot
 dasshed in among the emperours company, and the
 fyrst that he mette he ran hym clene thrughe with his ¹⁶
 spere / and so he seruid the second, thyrde, and
 fourth / and when his spere was broken, he drewe out
 his sworde / wherwith he bet downe the Almaynes,
 that it was maruayle to behold hym / and then came in ²⁰
 his men / and they dyd suche dedys of armes that
 parforce the almayns were fayne to recule,⁸ & many
 were slayne⁹ and cast¹⁰ to the erthe. when y^e emperour
 saw that he was in a¹¹ great rage, and sayd to¹² Huon / ²⁴
 'syr, ye are greatly to blame to suffer your vncl's men
 to sle myne' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I am ryght sory
 of ¹³ that they haue done / I am redy to make you
 amendes in what ¹⁴wyse¹⁴ it shall please you': ther- ²⁸
 with duke Huon rode to¹² the¹⁵ abbot his vncl / and
 in great dyspleasure sayd, 'vncl, ye haue done ¹⁶ryght
 yll.'¹⁶ when the abbot¹⁷ parseyued Huon, he was ryght
 ioyous¹⁸ / and he enbrasid hym and sayd / 'fayre ³²

¹ and to. ² Fol. clx. (xl.) back, col. 2. ³ meane.

⁴ and. ⁵ and therefore. ⁶ surely. ⁷ that.

⁸ retire backe. ⁹ and destroyed. ¹⁰ downe.

¹¹ omitted. ¹² vnto. ¹³ for. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ so euer.

¹⁵ good. ¹⁶⁻¹⁶ great euill and ¹⁷ saw &. ¹⁸ ioyfull.

nephue, I thought¹ the emperour had taken you
 presoner, & wold haue put you to deth / I knew not
that ye had peas with² hym.' then he made his men
 4 to retraye³ backe fro the almayns ; ⁴then he and Huon
 together come to⁵ the emperour ; then⁴ the abbot
 saluted hym, and sayde / ' syr, I pray you⁶ pardon me
 in that I haue thus come agaynst you / for sartylnly I
 8 had thought ye wolde haue hanged & slayne my
 nephue, duke Huon of Burdeaux, nor I knew not that
 there was any peas betwene you / therfore, syr, I
 requyre you pardon me / and I offer myselfe to make
 12 to you a mendes at the deuyce⁷ of your cunsayle' /
 syr,' quod the emperour, ' I pardon you for the loue of⁸
 duke Huon,⁹ whom I take as¹⁰ my¹¹ specyall frende.'
 Thus as ye haue hard the peas was made betwene the
 16 emperoure and the abbot of Cluny / Then they rode
 together tyl¹² they came to⁵ Cluny, where y^e emperour
 was receyuyd with great ioye / when the good abbot
 had receyuyd the emperour and logyd hym in the
 20 abbey, then he came to⁵ y^e duches Esclaramond,
 and enbracid and kyssed her, and sayd, ' my ryght
 dere nese, your comynge¹³ hether is ¹⁴to me greatly
 agreeable,¹⁴ well I am pleasid to se you hole and in good
 24 poynt,¹⁵ & I am sore dyspleased for the great ylles¹⁶ and
 pouertyes *that* ye haue endured, yf I myght a mended
 it / but syn it is the wyll and pleasure of our lorde Iesu
 chryst, bothe you and we all ought to be content,
 28 blessed be his name' / ' fayre¹⁷ vncl,' quod the duches /
 ' greatly we ought to thanke and to cherysshe you / for
 ye haue bene father and refuge of my daughter Claryet,
 whome I desyre greatly to se' / then y^e¹⁷ abbot led the
 32 duches¹⁸ into the chambre wheras her daughter Claryet

The abbot
 thought the
 Emperor had
 taken Huon
 prisoner, and
 seeing him alive
 and safe,
 the abbot with-
 draws his men,
 and he and Huon
 go and salute the
 Emperor.
 The abbot asks
 the Emperor to
 pardon him,

and for love of
 Huon the
 Emperor does so.

The abbot
 received the
 Emperor with
 much joy at
 Cluny,

and welcomes
 most joyfully
 the duchess
 Esclaramonde.

The duchess
 greatly desires to
 see her daughter,

¹ that. ² Fol. clxi. (xli.) col. 1. ³ retire. ⁴ and.
⁵ vnto. ⁶ to. ⁷ aduice. ⁸ that I beare vnto.
⁹ of Bourdeaux. ¹⁰ for. ¹¹ faithfull and. ¹² vntill.
¹³ vnto me. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ greatly acceptable. ¹⁵ health.
¹⁶ euils. ¹⁷ good. ¹⁸ Escleremond.

and is indeed
joyful to find her
so beautiful and
good.

They dine all
together;

the duchess
cannot take her
eyes off Clariet.

Huon tells the
duchess the
Emperor desires
to see Clariet.

The Emperor
embraces her,
and praises her
beauty.

was, who came and knelyd led¹ downe before her
mother / ²when y^e duchess³ saw her / it was no
maruayle thoughe she was ioyfull at her harte, for
when⁴ she sawe her so fayre and so well endroctryned⁵ / ⁴
ye may well thynke that her ioy excedyd all other /
she enbraced and kyssid her more then .xx. tymis, and
said, 'my dere doughter, synne I saw you laste, I haue
endured great⁶ mysery / but thankes be geuen to our ⁸
lorde Iesu chryst and to his swete mother / your father
and I ar come together,⁷ and haue peas withe the
emperour' / then they went into the chambre wheras
there dyner was aparayled⁸ redy for them, and there ¹²
dyned together with great consolacyon, and all that
dyner tyme the duchess coude not cast her eyen fro y^e
regardynge of her doughter Claryet / for the great
beauty that she saw⁹ in her / and when they had ¹⁶
dyned, the lordes and knyghtes and squyers cam to se
the ladyes as they were acustomed to do; and as they
were there deuysynge,¹⁰ Huon enteryd into the chambre,
and ¹¹his vncl the abbot¹¹ with hym, and they said to¹² ²⁰
the duchess, ¹³' lady, ye muste come to¹² the emperoure
and brynge your doughter with you, for he desyrethe
greatly to se her.' then the lady, who was redy to do
her husbondes commaundement, whente into y^e hall, ²⁴
and her doughter with her, where as they founde
the emperour, who receyuyd them with great ioye / and
toke the young lady Claryet in his armes & kyssed her
swetely, and sayd / 'my ryght dere doughter, your ²⁸
comyng hether is to me ryght agreable¹⁴ / god parforme
in you *that* ¹⁵fayleth;¹⁵ as for beaulte ye fayle¹⁶ not' /
'Huon,' quod the emperoure, 'great graces¹⁷ ye ought

¹ so in text. ² and. ³ her mother.

⁴ Fol. clxi. (xli.) col. 2. ⁵ educated. ⁶ pouertie and.

⁷ in sauegard. ⁸ prepared. ⁹ and perceiued.

¹⁰ together. ¹¹⁻¹¹ the good abbot his vncl. ¹² vnto.

¹³ Faire. ¹⁴ acceptable. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ which wanteth.

¹⁶ want. ¹⁷ thanks.

to render to¹ our lorde Iesu chryst, that he is so
 fryndely to¹ you as to sende you such a chyld as
 this lady is here before me, for I thynke that of beauty
 4 this day there is no lady nor damosel² leuing in this
 world that may³ compare with your⁴ doughter' / 'syr,'
 quod Huon, 'I pray to⁵ god to parfourme⁶ that⁷
 she wantethe' / great pleasure had the emperoure to
 8 regarde⁸ the damoyssel, and so had all other⁹ that were
 there present / thus as ye haue hard, the emperoure was
 reseyued at Cluny / & was greatly feasted by y^e abbote
 there, for as sone as the emperoure was come thether,
 12 the¹⁰ abbot sente ouer all the cuntre for ladyes and
 damosels to feste the emperoure / ¹¹there they were a¹²
 .iii. dayes with great iustis and sportes / ¹¹when they
 departed there was nother lady nor damoyssel but that
 16 the emperoure gaue her some gyfte / the fourthe daye
 after that the emperour had hard mas,¹³ and his¹⁴
 caryage redy, then he and duke Huon, and the duches
 Esclaramonde and Claryet her doughter, departed fro
 20 Cluny, & with them the good abbot who brought them
 to¹⁵ Burdeaux / for he louyd so moche¹⁶ Huon and the
 Duches and Claryet whome he had brought vp, that he
 wolde not abandon them so sone; Huon sent barnard
 24 before to¹ ¹⁷Burdeaux, syngnyfyenge¹ them of the city
 of the emperours commyng and his, and of the peas
 made betwene the emperour and hym / Barnard
 departed and was wel receyuyd at Burdeaux; then he
 28 assembelyd together all the burgesses of the citey, and
 shewed¹ them of y^e emperours comynge thether, and
 withe hym duke Huon and the duches Esclaramond
 and claryet theyr doughter, and of the peas that

The Emperor tells
 Huon that he
 ought to render
 great graces to
 our Lord Jesus
 Christ for all his
 goodness to him.

The abbot sends
 all over the
 country for ladies
 and damsels to
 entertain the
 Emperor.
 For three days
 they have iousts
 and sports,
 and when they
 depart the
 Emperor gave
 each lady some
 gift.
 On the fourth day
 the Emperor and
 Huon, Esclara-
 monde and her
 daughter, and the
 good abbot set out
 for Bordeaux.
 Huon sends
 Barnard on first
 to warn the city
 of their coming.

He is well
 received, and
 when he has told
 his news to the
 burgesses,

¹ vnto.² that is.³ is able to.⁴ Fol. cli. (xli.) back, col. 1.⁵ vnto our Lord.⁶ in her.⁷ which.⁸ behold.⁹ Lords, Ladies, and Damsels.¹⁰ good. ¹¹ and.¹² omitted.¹³ Service.¹⁴ baggage and.¹⁵ vnto the Citie of.¹⁶ well.¹⁷ the citie of.

they send
immediately to
Blaye and
Geronell, and over
all the country of
Burdeloys;
all the noblemen
and burgesses
hasten to
Bordeaux to
receive their
Duke.
They ride out on
horseback to meet
him;

they salute the
Emperor,

who delivers to
them their
rightful lord,
quit of fealties
and homages.

They praise the
Emperor for his
justice to them
while they were
under him.

The Emperor is
joyful to be so
praised before
Huon.

They all ride in
state through the
streets to the
palace.

The streets are
well adorned,
and in the
windows are
ladies and
maidens singing
melodiously.

was made betwene the emperour and¹ Huon / thes
newes were sent incontynent to Blaye and Geronyll-
and ouer all the countre of Burdeloys / ²then all noble,
men as well as burgesses came hastily to³ Burdeaux for ⁴
to receyue theyr ryghtfull lorde, duke Huon. ²when
they were there assemblid, they mun⁴ted on⁵ theyr
horses and rode forth to mete the emperour and duke
Huon theyr naturall lorde / they were together a⁶.vi. 8
thousande horses / when they aproched nere to³ the
emperoure, they saluted hym, to³ whome the emperour
sayd openly / 'al ye syrs, noble men & burgesses that
hathe before this time made to³ me feaulte and ¹²
homage / I delyuer you quyte in to the handes of your
ryght naturall lorde, as ye haue bene before tyme /
and I quyte clerely your homages & fealties done to³
me' / then they all thanked the emperour of his good ¹⁶
iustyce and reason that haue alwayes done to³ them in
the seson whyles they were vnder hym / the emperour
was⁷ ioyfull that they so praysed him before duke
Huon; ²then they cam to³ duke Huon and to the ²⁰
duches⁸ and to Claryet,⁹ & dyd to³ them theyr
reuerence acordyng; thus they cam to³ the citey of
Burdeaux, wheras they were ioyfully receyued, & a
clothe of estate was borne ouer¹⁰ the emperour, vnder ²⁴
the which he rode, styl holdyng Huon by the hand,
tyll¹¹ they came to³ the paleys / the stretes were
strawed with grene herbes and russhes, and hangyd
rychely / the wyndowes garnysshed with ladyes and ²⁸
damoysels, burgesses / and maydens, melodyously
syngyng / wherof the emperoure was⁷ ioyfull / the
children rynnyng in the stretes² cryenge nowell¹²
for¹³ ioye¹⁴ that they had of the comynge of theyr ³²

¹ Duke. ² and. ³ vnto.

⁴ Fol. clxi. (xli.) back, col. 2. ⁵ vppon. ⁶ about.

⁷ right. ⁸ Escleremond his wife. ⁹ their Daughter.

¹⁰ before. ¹¹ vntill. ¹² noel, noel. ¹³ the great.

¹⁴ and mirth.

- lordie & lady; when they were come to¹ the palays /
 they alyghted and wente to theyr chaumbers redy
 apoynted for them / yf I wolde reherse y^e ioyes and
 4 sportes and solemnytes that was made at² Burdeaux
 it shulde be noyfull³ and ouer longe to declare it / for
 the feaste⁴ was suche that no man as then leuyng had
 sene any suche, the⁵ which endured⁶ .viii. dayes /
 8 duringe the whiche tyme the emperoure declared to¹
 them of that countre the peas that was made betwene
 hym and duke Huon, and howe he wolde delyuer
 all his londes⁷ in to his handes, and clerely aquyte
 12 euery man of theyr feaulte & hommage to hym made,
 whereof euery man was ioyfull / & on⁸ the .ix. daye
 that the emperour shuld depart, he called duke Huon
 to¹ hym, and sayd, 'my ryght dere frend, he that
 16 I loue best in this worlde, if any warre or busynes
 hap to fal to¹ you / let me haue knowlege therof /
 and I shall send you .xl.M. men of armes and myselfe
 in parson to come and⁹ ayde¹⁰ you' / 'syr,' quod Huon,
 20 'of y^e courtoyse that ye offer me, I¹¹ thanke you, and
 alwayes I shal repute myselfe as your trewe seruant
 & feythfull frend.' Then the emperour went to the
 duches¹² and toke his leue of her, and of¹³ Claryet her
 24 doughter, and¹⁴ kyssed them at his departynge, and so
 he dyd all¹⁵ other ladys and damoyseillis, and gaue
 eche¹⁶ of them some gyfte; he gaue ryche gyftes to¹
 the duches and to her doughter / ¹⁷then he toke his
 28 leue and mounted on⁸ his horse, and so issued out of
 the towne¹⁸ / duke Huon & the¹⁹ abbot of Cluny
 conueyed hym a²⁰ .ii. leges, then they toke ther leue²¹

On reaching the
palace they go to
the chambers
ready for them,

and for eight days
there is such
rejoicing as no
man living had
ever seen before.

On the ninth day
the Emperor
takes leave of
Huon,

and promises to
aid him in person
with men of arms
if ever Huon shall
need him.

Huon thanks
him, and will
ever be his true
servant and
faithful friend.

The Emperor
takes leave of the
duchess and her
daughter, and
gives them rich
gifts;
to each of the
other ladies he
gives some gift.

Duke Huon and
the abbot accom-
pany him for two

¹ vnto. ² the noble Citie of. ³ too tedious.

⁴ and cheere. ⁵ Fol. cxliii. (*should be* cxlii.) col. 1.

⁶ for the space of. ⁷ and Signiories. ⁸ vpon. ⁹ to.

¹⁰ and succour. ¹¹ hartely. ¹² Escleremond.

¹³ the faire Ladie. ¹⁴ embraced and. ¹⁵ the.

¹⁶ euerie one. ¹⁷ and. ¹⁸ citie of Bourdeaux and.

¹⁹ good. ²⁰ about.

²¹ of the Emperour and of his Lords and Knightes.

leagues, and then
return to
Bordeaux.
When he had
sojourned there
eight days, Huon
visite all his
towns and castles;
he returned to
Bordeaux, and
remained there a
month.

Huon reminds his
wife how Oberon
has given him
all the realm of
Fairyland, and
made him promise
after four years
had passed to go
to him, to be put
in possession of
the realm.

If Huon fail to
go Oberon will
utterly destroy
him, and now,
therefore, it is
necessary for
Huon to go.
He leaves his
wife in Barnard's
care,
and his daughter
in that of the
abbot.

Huon leaves with
the abbot his
riches and
precious stones
as dowry for his
daughter.

and retorned to¹ Burdeaux / then after that duke²
Huon had sojourned there an³.viii. dayes, he rode to¹
Geronyl and to Blames, and to¹ all other townes and
castelles, where he was receyuyd with great ioy,⁴ and 4
set offycers in them / then he retourned agayne to⁵
Burdeaux to the duches⁶ his wyfe / & after that he
taryed there³ a monethe / duke Huon deuysed with his
wyfe in the presence of the⁷ abbot his vncle, & of 8
Bernarde,⁸ & sayd, 'my ryght dere wyfe, he that
rememberethe not the goodnes⁹ done to¹ hym, may be
reputed as vncourtoys;¹⁰ I say it bycause ye know well
that kyng Oberon hath done¹ vs great good, & hath 12
delyueryd vs out of many great parelles of deth, and as
ye sawe but late by the .ii. knyghtes that rescued you
fro the dethe and fro the parell¹¹ that ye were in / and
ye knowe well¹² the last tyme that kynge Oberon 16
went¹³ fro Burdeaux, he gaue me all his realme of the
Fayry / & the pusaunce that he hath there / and he
made me to promyse¹⁴ that after that .iiii. yeres were
passed that I shulde come to¹ hym, and *that* he wolde 20
then put me in pocessyon of his realme / and he sayd
that yf I fayled my day he wolde vterly dystroy me /
ye know¹⁵ what hath fallen to¹ me or¹⁶ this by brekyng
of his commaundement / and therfore, dere lady and 24
wyf, it is necessary that I go to¹ hym; ¹⁷ I shall leue
you with Barnarde, who shall haue the kepynge of my
londes & of you / and as for my doughter, I wyl leue
her with the abbot here, myn vncle, / who I desyre 28
here before you / that he wyll kepe & gouerne my
doughter Claryte / and with hym I wyll leue all my
ryches and precyous stones that I brough with me / to
the entent to mary her so¹² it be to a man of great 32

¹ vnto. ² omitted. ³ about. ⁴ and mirth.

⁵ vnto the Citie of. ⁶ Escleremond. ⁷ good.

⁸ his Coozen. ⁹ Fol. cxliii[ii]. col. 2. ¹⁰ vngratefull.

¹¹ daunger. ¹² that. ¹³ departed. ¹⁴ hym.


¹⁵ well. ¹⁶ before. ¹⁷ and.

valure / but I wyll not that she be married to¹ any
 parsons for riches, but a parsons that is worthy² I
 wolde shuld haue her / for she hath and shall haue
 4 ryches ynoughe for her selfe and for a man of great
 auctoryte' / 'fayre nephue,' quod y^e abbot, 'your
 goyng shal be to³ me dysplesant⁴ yf I myght amende
 it / yf god wyll no man leuyng shal haue your
 8 doughter my nece in maryage, without⁵ he be a man of
 hye parentage and garnysshed with vertues and good
 maners; and as for your ryches⁶ she shall not nede to
 haue any therof, for I haue treasure⁸ ynoughe to mary
 12 her noblye.

She is not to
 marry a man for
 his wealth, but for
 his worthiness.

The abbot has
 enough treasure
 himself to dower
 Claret richly,
 and does not
 therefore need
 Huon's riches.

¶ How Duke Huon deused with the duches
 his wyfe of his departyng / and how she
 sayd she wold go with hym, and how he
 16 lefte his doughter and lond⁹ in the kepyng
 of his vncle, the¹⁰ abbot of Cluny, & of
 Barnarde his cosyn. Ca. C. lii.

20  Hen the duches¹¹ hard her husbonde
 the duke make his deuses to go to¹
 kyng Oberon, ye maye well byleue¹²
 she had great dolour¹³ at her hart, and
 then all wepyng she kneled downe
 24 before her husbonde, and sayd, 'my ryght dere lorde,
 and¹⁴ god wyll ye shall not go one fote but that I wyll
 go with you / yf ye take any yll or anoyauce I wyll
 haue¹⁵ my part / ¹⁶yf ye haue any good aduenture I
 28 wyll¹⁷ part with you; ¹⁸for without me ye shall not

The duchess was
 sore grieved to
 think of Huon's
 departure,
 and begs him to
 take her with
 him.

She will share
 with him both
 fair adventure
 and ill fortune.

¹ vnto. ² and valiant. ³ vnto after displeasing.

⁴ displeasing. ⁵ except. ⁶ pearles and Ieweles.

⁷ Fol. cxliii[ii]. back, col. 1. ⁸ and ryches.

⁹ and Signiories. ¹⁰ good. ¹¹ Escleremond had well.

¹² that. ¹³ and greefe. ¹⁴ if.

¹⁵ Fol. cxliii[ii]. back, col. 2. ¹⁶ and. ¹⁷ haue my.

¹⁸⁻¹⁸ omitted.

The voyage will
be a hard one,

but the duchess
would rather
endure anything
than abide with-
out Huon.

As she is so
determined, Huon
allows her to
accompany him.

The abbot and
Barnard are
displeased,
and try to dis-
suade him from
this, but in vain.

Huon recom-
mends his
daughter and
lands into the
keeping of his
uncle and of
Barnard.

departe¹⁸ / for your longe absence hathe ben ryght harde
for me to endure.' 'fayer lady,' quod Huon, 'I pray
you¹ for bere your goynge, and abyde here with your
doughter, for y^e vyage shal be sore for you to do; here⁴
I shal leue Barnard² and myn vncle, the³ abbot, and
they shal be to⁴ you as faders.' 'syr,' quod she, 'I
shall haue meny ylles⁵ to abyde here without you / I
had rather to indure what so euer god do⁶ send vs to 8
gether then to abyde here without you.'⁷ thus, as⁸ ye
haue hard,⁹ for eny excusasyon¹⁰ or shewynge¹¹ that
Huon kowde shew to⁴ the duchess,¹² he kowde not torne
her fro hyr opynyon, But that she wold in eny wyse¹²
go with him. when Huon sawe that, he sayde, 'my
ryghte dere lady, syn it¹³ plesse you¹³ to go with me and
to be contente what so euer god do sende vs, other good
or yll,¹⁴ your companye plesyth¹⁵ me,¹⁵ and I am ryghte¹⁶
ioyous¹⁶ therof' / when the good abbot and Barnard¹⁷
hard¹⁸ the wyll¹⁹ of²⁰ Huon and of the duchess Esclara-
monde his wyfe, they were sore displeasyd therwith, yf
they coude in any wyse haue let it²¹ / but they coude²⁰
not turne hym for any thyng²² they coude do / Then
Huon sayd to⁴ the³ Abbot, 'syr,²³ I leue with you my
londes²⁴ and my doughter tyll²⁵ I retourne agayne /
the which shal be as shortely as I maye / But of force²⁴
nowe I am dreuen to go to²⁶ take possessyon of the
realme that kyng Oberon hathe geuen¹ me / therfore,
fayre vncle & cosyn Barnarde, to⁴ you I recomende
my doughter, whom I loue enterly, and all my londis²⁸
and synnoryes, I leue all in your kepyng²⁵ tyll²⁵ my
retourne / and with you, myne vncle, I leue²⁷ my trea-


1 to. 2 my Coozen. 3 good. 4 vnto.
5 sorowes. 6 shall. 7 your company. 8 omitted.
9 heere before that. 10 excuse. 11 reason.
12 his wyfe. 13-13 your pleasure. 14 euill. 15 well.
16 ioyfull. 17 had well. 18 and vnderstood.
19 and pleasure. 20 Duke. 21 them. 22 that.
23 Faire vncle. 24 Signiories. 25 vntill. 26 and.
27 all.

sure¹ and precious stones for the maryage² of my
 doughter, whome I leue in youre kepyng' / 'fayre
 neplue,' quod the³ abbot, 'syn⁴ it is your pleasure, I
 4 shall kepe her as well as thoughe she were myne owne
 chylde.' 'Fayre³ vncler,' quod Huon, 'I pray you that
 the Gryffons fote that I brought with me, ⁵send it fro
 me to ⁵y^e yonge kyng Loys of Fraunce, and salute
 8 hym fro me and present it to ⁶hym to do therewith his
 pleasure' / 'syr,' quod the³ abbot, 'or⁷ Ester be come
 your message shall be done' / and ⁸y^e whiche was⁸ done,
 and⁹ the yonge kyng was ioyfull therof / and caused
 12 it to be hanged in his paleys: and after¹⁰ by kyng
 Phelyp it was hanged in the holy chappell, where as it
 is ¹¹as yette.¹¹ Now let vs leue spekyng of the Gryffons
 fote and retourne to our¹² mater.

Huon requests
 the abbot to send
 the griffin's foot
 to the young king
 Louis of France
 as a present.

This was done,
 and the young
 king, much
 delighted at the
 gift, hung it up
 in his palace.
 King Philip after
 caused it to be
 hung in the holy
 palace, where it is
 to this day.

16 ¶ How Huon toke leue of his doughter and
 of the³ Abbot his vncler, and of Barnard his
 cosyn, and enteryd into the ryuer of geroune,
 and the duches with hym, and of the strange
 20 fortunes that they hade. Ca. C.liiii.

24  Hen the³ abbot and Barnard had well
 vnderstonde Huon and had hard his
 wyll¹³ / they answered, that as for his
 londres¹⁴ and for his doughter he shulde
 not nede to care / but they sayd it
 greatly dyspleased them, the vyage that they were in
 mynd to do / but syn it was his pleasure so to do it
 28 was reason that they shuld be content / ¹⁵then Huon¹⁶
 ordeyned that Barnarde shulde make redy a lytel
 shyppe, aparayled and garnysshed with vytayles and

The abbot and
 Barnard promise
 to take good care
 of Huon's lands
 and daughter,

but are sorry that
 he must under-
 take this voyage.

Huon ordered
 Barnard to pre-
 pare a little boat
 to take them
 down the river
 Garonne,

¹ treasure *after* precious stones. ² Fol. cxliiii. col. 1.

³ good. ⁴ seeing. ⁵⁻⁵ may be sent vnto. ⁶ vnto.

⁷ before. ⁸ 8 that being. ⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ afterwards.

¹¹⁻¹¹ vntill this day. ¹² former. ¹³ and pleasure.

¹⁴ and Signiories. ¹⁵ and. ¹⁶ he.

and a great ship
to be ready at its
mouth.

Huon takes with
him six knights
and a dozen
servants.

He and Esclara-
monde embrace
Clariet,

and can speak no
word, so great is
their grief at
leaving her.

Clariet herself
makes pitiful
complaint.

The abbot gives
Huon a halloved
stool for a parting
gift.

They sail down
the Garonne in
the little boat,
and at the mouth
embark in the big
ship.

other thynges neces¹sary, and that another great shyp
shuld² be made redy at the mouthe of the see to enter³
it when they were out of the ryuer of Geroune / the
whiche thyng was done / then he toke .vi. knyghtes 4
of his owne⁴ and a dozen saruauntes / and when Huon
sawe euery thyng redy and had shewed his enterpryse
to⁵ his noble⁶ men and to the men of his countre, and
that euery thyng was redy,⁷ then he toke his doughter 8
in his armes and kyssed her more then .x. tymes, and
in lyke wyse so dyd Esclaramond her mother, and her
hart was so closed with sorowe⁸ that she coude speke
no word / for the departyng fro her doughter / ye may 12
well thynke *that* great was the sorowe there at theyr
departyng, for he that had bene there and sene the
doloure and petefull complayntes that the lady Claryet
made for the departyng of her father and mother *with* 16
whome she had not bene no longe season, there is not
so harde a harte but that nedys⁹ must haue taken parte
of her sorowe / for there was neuer sene so heuy a
departyng. Then Huon, all wepyng, enbrased y^e10 20
abbot, his vncle / who gaue Huon at his departyng a
halowed stoole, the which after dyd good saruyce to⁵
Huon and to Esclaramond. Also Huon toke leue of
Barnard¹¹ / then y^e duches sayd to⁵ the abbot & to 24
Barnarde / 'syrs, to⁵ you two I do recomende my
doughter' / thus Huon departed / ¹²they went to the
posterne, and there they founde redy theyr lytell shyp
and entered into it / & so made sayle downe alonge the 28
ryuer of Gerund, and when they came to the mouthe
of y^e see they toke theyr great shyppe and so made
sayle and had good wynd, so that shortely they were
far of fro any lond, & were in the hye se¹³ the space of 32

¹ Fol. cxliii. col. 2. ² to. ³ into.

⁴ of his owne *after* seruauants. ⁵ vnto. ⁶ *omitted*.

⁷ furnished. ⁸ and greefe. ⁹ he. ¹⁰ good.

¹¹ his Coozen. ¹² and. ¹³ for.


.vi. dayes, ¹and on ²the .vii. daye a wynde arose with
 suche an orryble tempest that they were dreuen into
 the great spanysse see, and were so far fro any
 4 londe that they wist not where they were / and euer
 the tempeste increasyd in such wyse that there was
 neuer none suche sene nor hard ³before / the waues
 were lyke mountaynes, and lyke to a swallowed in ⁴the
 8 shyp / so that som tyme there entered into the shyppe
 a tonne of water at ones.

With a fair wind
 they sail for six
 days.

On the seventh
 a great storm
 drives them into
 the Spanish sea;
 they are so far
 from land, they
 know not where
 they are.

¶ How Huon lost all his men, and the shyp
 braste, ⁵and howe he & the duches sauyd
 12 themselfe on ²a borde, and came ⁶and
 aryued at the castel of the monkes.

Ca. Cliiii.

16  Hen ⁷Huon ⁸and the duches ⁹his wyfe
 sawe ¹⁰this tourment so great & so
 horryble, ¹⁰they were in great fere of
 dethe / ¹¹they complayned greatly ¹²
 theyr doughter Claryet whom they
 20 had lefte at Burdeaux. Then Huon, who had with
 hym in his bag .ix. of his good ¹³precyous stones, he
 drewe out two of them, and knewe the vertue and
 bounte of them, ¹⁴he toke ¹⁴his wyfe one of them
 24 and sayde, 'my dere ¹⁵wyfe, holde this stone in your
 hand and haue no fere / for the vertue of the stone wyl
 not let you perysshe, nor me nother' / he that had hard
 the cry and lamentacyons that the maryners made
 28 wolde haue had petye ¹⁶of them, for they sawe well
¹⁷they must be perysshed ¹⁷/ Huon and Esclaramonde

Huon and his wife
 are in great fear
 of death:

but the knight
 remembers that
 the virtue of the
 precious stones in
 his hand will
 preserve them.

¹ Fol. cxliiii. back, col. 1.

² vppon.

³ of. ⁴ vp.

⁵ brake.

⁶ rame in text.

⁷ Duke.

⁸ of Bourdeaux.

⁹ Escleremond.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ these great and suddaine tempests.

¹¹ and.

¹² for.

¹³ deere.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ and gaue.

¹⁵ and louing.

¹⁶ and compassion.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ that they should all perish and.

The ship's sides
burst and the
waves enter.

All are drowned
but Huon and
Esclaramonde.

They float safely
on a table.

Huon grieves for
the loss of his
companions.

were on¹ ther knees sore wepynge, holdyng ech other
²by the hand, humbley prayyng to our lorde Iesu
 cryst to haue pete and compassyon of them, and to
 bryngge them to³ sum port in saue garde of ther lyues. ⁴
 great & horryble was the tempest, & long enduryde /
 so that the helme, mast, and saylles ⁴all to brast⁴ /
 and when the shyp was without a sterne to gyd yt, the
 great vaues enteryd in⁵ so that the shype was full of ⁸
 water, wherby it was constrayned to synke into the
 see, so⁶ that it was all couered with water, & all that
 were within⁷ drowned and perysshed excepte Huon
 and Esclaramonde, who sate together on¹ a table ¹²
 flotyng vpon the see / so that by the grace of⁸ god
 and⁹ bounte¹⁰ of the presyous stones that was⁷ on¹
 them they were saued / and when they sawe theyr
 shyp all to peces and theyr men drowned,¹¹ and them ¹⁶
 selfe flotyng on¹ the see / wherof Huon had suche
 sorowe¹² that¹³ petye it was to se hym, and sayde / 'a,
¹⁴very god,¹⁴ why was I euer borne into this world /
 when I am so enfortunat that I can haue no man ²⁰
 to serue me but at last they ende theyr lyues in my
 seruyce myserably. A, ¹⁵good lorde,¹⁵ why doste thou
 suffer me so longe to leue' / then the duches comforted
 hym as moche as she coude, and sayde / 'a syr, leue ²⁴
 your sorowe / and pray¹⁶ to god and to y^e vyrgyn Mary
 his mother¹⁶ that we myght aryue at some good porte' /
 thus the ¹⁷duches¹⁸ comforted¹⁹ Huon her husbond ;
 how be it she was in as great fere, & not without²⁰ ²⁸
 cause / ²¹thus they floted on¹ y^e see greatly bewaylynge

¹ vpon. ² Fol. cxliii. back, col. 2. ³ vnto.

⁴⁻⁴ burst all to pieces. ⁵ to it. ⁶ in such sort.

⁷ were. ⁸ our Lord. ⁹ by the great. ¹⁰ and vertue.

¹¹ and perished. ¹² and greefe at his heart.

¹³ great. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ good Lord. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ my God.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ vnto our Lord God for his mercie and his grace, and
 to haue pittie and compassion of vs.

¹⁷ noble. ¹⁸ Escleremond. ¹⁹ Duke. ²⁰ a.

²¹ and.

the dethe of theyr men whome they saw perysshe before
 theyr eyen. Then Huon, as fare of as he myght se, he
 sawe a castell stondynge on¹ a rocke, the which semyd
 4 darke & blacke; ²then he lauded³ god, prayenge hym
 deuoutly⁴ to brynge hym⁵ thether in saue⁶ gard.
 then the see was peasyble / and the tempest sessed /
 and the wynd fresshe, the whiche draue them in a
 8 short space to⁷ y^e porte vnder the rocke: and when
 they were nere to the londe Huon and the duches
 waded to⁷ the londe, holdynge eche other by the
 hand: when they were on¹ the drye londe they knelyd
 12 downe and lyfte vp theyr eyen to⁷ the⁸ heuen, and
 made theyr deuout prayers to⁷ our lord Iesu chryst,
 desyrynge hym to haue petye and compassion of the
 sowles of his⁹ men that he¹⁰ sawe drowned¹¹ / then they
 16 rose vp & sawe a lytell pathe¹² to the castell warde¹² /
 they entered into¹³ the waye¹³ / ²when they came nere⁷
 the castell they sawe a great ryuer goynge¹⁴ rounde
 a bought¹³ the castel¹³ / and saw¹⁵ the castel¹⁶ of a⁸
 20 marueylous¹⁷ beautye, thynkynge¹⁵ they neuer sawe no
 suche before / the towres were couered with gleterynge
 golde, shynynge so bryghte as thoughe the sonne¹⁸ had
 shone¹⁸ thereon: also they sawe an auneynt church
 24 ioynnyng to the castell with a goodly steple full of
 belles / the whiche began to sowne, wherof Huon had
 great maruayle / for he saw nother man nor woman
 comynge nor goynge / and when he had well regarded
 28 y^e castell he came to⁷ the gate and saw how¹⁵ there were
 .iiii. breges to pas or¹⁹ he coude enter: when Huon sawe
 that he sayd, ‘ O ²⁰very god,²⁰ in all my lyfe I neuer
 sawe so fayre a castell, he that is lorde therof semeth to

He sees afar off a
 dark and black
 castle on a rock.

He and his wife
 reach land,

and thank Christ
 for their preserva-
 tion.

The castle is very
 beautiful: a great
 river goes round
 about it:

the towers are
 covered with
 glittering gold.

A church is hard
 by, bells ring out
 from the steeple.

Three bridges are
 to be passed
 before the castle
 is entered.

¹ vpon. ² and. ³ and praised our Lord.

⁴ humbly. ⁵ them. ⁶ Fol. cxliiii. col. 1. ⁷ vnto.

⁸ omitted. ⁹ their. ¹⁰ they. ¹¹ and perished.

¹²⁻¹² way lying straight towards the castle and. ¹³⁻¹³ it.

¹⁴ running. ¹⁵ that. ¹⁶ was. ¹⁷ great.

¹⁸⁻¹⁸ did shine. ¹⁹ before. ²⁰⁻²⁰ good Lord.

Huon thinks it
must be the castle
of Momur,
belonging to
Oberon.

Esclaramonde
doubts this.

Three monks in
white apparel
salute Huon by
name.

They own the
castle,

and invite him to
enter.

be a great¹ man / for yf there were within it² .xl. men
to kepe it and garnysshed with vytailes, it wold neuer
be wonne for any man leuyng³ / so long Huon behelde
this castell that he forgate³ his sorow, the castell 4
pleasyd hym so well / and sayd to⁴ the duches⁵ /
'dame,⁶ I byleue suerly this is the castell of Momur
partaynyng⁴ to⁴ kynge Oberon, we maye well⁷ thanke⁸
god that he hath brought vs hether / we shall 8
se hym; ye knowe well⁹ he hathe promysed to geue
me his realme and all his dyngnyte' / 'syr,' quod the
duches, 'I haue hard saye or¹⁰ this that Momure is a
great and¹¹ noble citey, & full of people of all sortes / 12
wherfore ye may well parsayue that this is not that
citey, it may well be that this castell is his' / 'Dame,'¹²
quod Huon, 'the kynge hath that pusaunce that he
may make citey or castell at his pleasure' / 'syr,' quod 16
she, 'I byleue it well' / then Huon toke his way to y^e
gate / and as he wente deuysynge with¹³ Esclaramonde
his wyfe, he sawe before hym .iiii. monkes in whyghte
aparell / & when they came to⁴ hym they sayd / 20
'Syr duke of Burdeaux, of your comynge we are ryght
ioyfull, for a more noble man came not here of a long
season, god bles you and y^e duches your wyfe' / 'syrs,'
quod Huon, 'god saue you; I pray you¹⁴ shewe me 24
what ye be and howe¹⁵ hathe shewed you my name,
and who is lorde and gouernour of this castell' / 'syr,'
quod one of the monkes, 'this castell is ours, and here
is no gouernour but I and my bretherne / we make 28
none answeare to⁴ any lorde leuyng⁴ / therfore, yf it
please you to enter, we shall make you as good¹⁶ chere
as we can, 17 and¹⁷ yf it please you to tary 17 here a¹⁷ viii.
or xv. dayes, ye shalbe welcome, & when ye departe we 32

¹ and a noble. ² but. ³ had forgotten. ⁴ vnto.

⁵ his Wife. ⁶ Madame. ⁷ Fol. cxliiii. col. 2.

⁸ our Lord. ⁹ well. ¹⁰ before. ¹¹ a. ¹² Madame.

¹³ the Duchesse. ¹⁴ to. ¹⁵ who. ¹⁶ feast and.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ omitted.

shal gyue you to cary with you mete and drynke suffy-
 cyent to serue you and your wyfe for xv dayes, & ye
 shall haue nede therof or¹ ye fynd out kynge Oberon' /
 4 'syrs,' quod² Huon, 'of your courtoysy I³ thanke
 you' / then Huon entered into the castell with them,
 and came into a great hall well garnysshed⁴ with ryche
 pyllers of wyghte marble vaulted aboue, and rychly
 8 paynted with⁵ golde and asure, and set full of rych
 precyous stones, y^e which cast a great lyght, for by
 reason of the⁶ stonis at mydnyght it was as bryght as
 at none dayes / Huon and Esclaramond thought⁷ they
 12 neuer sawe so ryche a thyng / 'dame,'⁸ quod Huon,
 'this place is delectable' / then they were brought into
 a rych chaumbre wheras the tables were set,⁹ garnysshed
 wilhe any¹⁰ thyng that a man wold¹¹ wysse for.
 16 Then came in many seruauntes, some brought in the
 basyns of golde garnysshed¹² with precyous stones, and
 some brought in¹³ towell and water / and they gaue the
 water to¹⁴ Huon and to¹⁵ Esclaramonde to wasshe theyr
 20 handes; then they sate downe at the table, and dyd eate
 & drynke at theyr pleasure / for they had there mete
 and drynke at theyr wysse / when they had eten¹⁶ and
 the clothes taken vp, then there was spyces broughte /⁹
 24 Huon dyd eate therof, but Esclaramond wold not¹⁷
 taste therof; then they were brought in to a gardayne
 to sporte them /⁹ when they were there they thoughte⁷
 they had bene in paradyse, for the swetnes of the
 28 flowers and frutes vpon euery tre / and they harde
 dyuers¹⁸ byrdes synge melodyously / 'syrs,' quod Huon
 to¹⁴ the monkys, 'well ye ought to thanke oure lorde
 Iesu chryst that he hathe geuen you suche a place to
 32 serue hym in / and, syrs, I praye you when it is

Huon and his wife
 are led into a hall
 of wondrous
 grandeur.

Servants wait on
 them with basins
 of gold.

A rich banquet is
 served:

afterwards Huon
 and Esclaramonde
 are brought into a
 beautiful garden.

¹ before. ² Duke. ³ most hartely. ⁴ and adorned.

⁵ Fol. cxliiii. back, col. 1. ⁶ precious. ⁷ that.

⁸ Madame. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ euerie. ¹¹ coulde.

¹² adorned. ¹³ the. ¹⁴ vnto. ¹⁵ omitted.

¹⁶ at their pleasure. ¹⁷ so much as. ¹⁸ kind of.

A rich chamber is prepared for them.

All the furniture was adorned with precious stone, shining like the sun.

At midnight Huon and his wife attend matins.

The church is resplendent with marble and amber and crystal.

mydnyght awake me, to the entent that I may ryse to go & here your mataynes¹ when ye synge² it' / 'syr,' quod one of them, 'I shall awake you when³ tyme is that ye may come and here vs.' 'syr,' quod Huon, 4 'therin shall ye do me great pleasure' / then⁴ Huon and Esclaramond were brought⁵ to a ryche chaumbre well aparyled⁶ with clothes of golde & sylke, wherin was a ryche⁷ bed, wherin Huon &⁸ his wyfe laye in¹⁰ 8 together: the chaumbre was¹¹ ryche, for all the nyghte it was as clere as thoughe the chaumbre had ben full of torches, by reason of³ shynynge of the precyous stones / for there was no banke¹² nor poste but that were set ful 12 of ryche stones / the ryches of that chaumbre can¹³ not be dyscryued / and therin was paynted with gold and asure all the batayles of Troye / ¹⁴In this ryche chaumbre and bed they slepte tyll¹⁵ the oure of mydnyght was 16 come, ¹⁴then all the monkes rose, and the bellis¹⁶ range to matens; ¹⁶ then there came a monke to ¹⁷ Huon and waked hym, and said / 'syr, it is¹⁸ tyme that ye ryse, ¹⁹it is past mydnyght, make you redy to come and 20 here ²⁰matens' ²⁰ / then Huon rose and called vp²¹ his wyfe / ²²she arose, & thus they made them redy, and wente to¹⁷ the churche, the whiche was paued with a whight marble powdered with flowre delyses of golde 24 entermedelyd with red roses / and the vault was checkered with Ambre and Chrystall, & at euery poynt a ryche stone / wherby there was such clerenes that there neded no candelight; when⁴ Huon and⁸ Esclara- 28 monde ²³saw the²³ beautye and ryches of the churche they were sore abasshed, and made the syngne of the

¹ Seruice. ² doe. ³ the. ⁴ Duke. ⁵ in.

⁶ furnished. ⁷ and sumptuous. ⁸ the Duchesse.

⁹ Fol. cxliiii. back, col. 2. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ faire and.

¹² bench. ¹³ coulde. ¹⁴ and. ¹⁵ vntill.

¹⁶⁻¹⁶ began to ringe to Seruice. ¹⁷ vnto. ¹⁸ nowe.

¹⁹ for. ²⁰⁻²⁰ our Seruice.

²¹ the Duchesse Escleremond. ²² then.

²³⁻²³ had well seene and beheld the great.

crosse on¹ theyr forhed for the marueyles that they saw
 there / ²they entered into the quere and kneled downe
 before the hye autler and made theyr prayers to³ god,
⁴ desyrynge hym to be theyr sauegarde and to brynge⁴
 them ⁵in suertye to⁵ kyng Oberon / then the abbot
 began ⁶y^e matens,⁶ and red the fyrst lesson; and when
 he was in the halfe therof he helde his peas, and
⁸ departed clene out of the churche / then the pryour
 began another lesson, and in lyke wyse left it in the
 myddes and departed out of y^e churche / thus ⁷dyd⁸
 euery monke one after another, and there were .xxxii.
¹² monkes, and in y^e myddes of euery lesson and salme
 they departed out of the churche one after another.
 when Huon sawe and hard that he was sore⁹ abashed,
 and sware that or¹⁰ the last monke departed he wold
¹⁶ knowe the cause why they dyd so / ¹¹then he went to¹²
 the last monke, who wolde haue gone out of the
 churche / and Huon toke the halowed stole that he
 had in his bosum, & dyd cast it aboute the monkes
²⁰ necke, & helde it fast with bothe his handes / when
 the monke saw how he was holden he was sorowfull
 and angry, and dyd what he coude to haue scaped,
 but he coude not / ¹¹when he saw that he coude not
²⁴ scape, he embraced Huon, and prayed hym humbly
 to let hym go after his bretherne: 'sartaynely,' quod
 Huon, 'out of my handes ye shall not scape tyll¹³
 ye haue shewed me why ye synge your ⁶matens⁶ after
²⁸ the maner that ye do, & euer to leue the one half
 vnsonge, and why the abbot and the other monkes do
 departe one after a nother without any word spekyng
 to¹² me, and without¹⁴ ye shew me the truth, with my
³² sworde I shall stryke your¹⁵ hede to y^e braynes' / then

Huon and Esclaramonde pray to
 God to be their
 safeguard, and
 bring them to
 Oberon.

Thirty-two monkes
 take part in the
 service: each
 reads a lesson,
 and departs with
 the matins half
 unsaid.

Huon stops the
 last monk left in
 the church, and
 demands why all
 the others have
 left.

¹ vpon. ² then. ³ vnto our Lord. ⁴ conduct.

⁵⁻⁶ surely vnto. ⁶⁻⁶ Service. ⁷ Fol. cxlv. col. 1.

⁸ did after monke. ⁹ dismayed and. ¹⁰ before.

¹¹ and. ¹² vnto. ¹³ vntill.

¹⁴ except. ¹⁵ thy.

The monk refuses
to reply, and
Huon threatens
to slay him.

sympely the monke fayned to wepe, and prayed Huon
to suffer hym to departe, and sayde, 'syr, I am he *that*
yesternyght brought you to your chaumbre, and made
your bed' / then Huon, who had his sword in the one ⁴
hande and the stole in the other hande, sayde, 'without
¹y^e show¹ me my demaunde, shortely I shal stryke of
thy hede' / when the monke hard that he was in great
fere / and stode styll as thoughe he wold geue none ⁸
answere; ²when Huon sawe that, he lyfte vp his sword
to haue stryken hym / but then incontynente the
monke ioyned his han³des and cryed for marcy,
and promysed hym to shewe hym the trouthe of his ¹²
demaunde.

In fear, the monk
yields to Huon's
request.

¶ How ⁴ Huon made semblant to haue slayne
the monke, holdynge hym faste with the
stole, to the entente he shulde shewe to ⁵ ¹⁶
hym the trouthe. Ca. C.lv.

All the monks are
evil angels chased
with Lucifer from
paradise.



Hen Huon put vp his sworde, and the
monke began to speke, and sayde /
'syr, know for trouthe that al we that ²⁰
be here ar of the yll⁶ aungelles that
were chasyd out of paradyse with
lucyfer, who by his pryde wolde con-
pare to ⁷ god / he made vs beleue *that* we shuld be as ²⁴
good as god,⁸ & we byleued him / but as for vs that be
here in this howse god was with vs displeasyd, and
therby we were condempned to be conuersante abroad
in the worlde amonge men and women when we lyste / ²⁸
and some be in lykenes of beres:² some lyke ware-
wolves, and thus we shall be vnto⁹ the day of iudg-
ment, and some other ther be that be tempters of men
& women, desyryng to brynge them to dampnacyon / ³²

God has con-
demned them to
various shapes
and hateful
offices.

¹⁻¹ thou shewest vnto. ² and. ³ Fol. cxlv. col. 2.

⁴ Duke.

⁵ vnto.

⁶ euill.

⁷ with.

⁸ himselfe.

⁹ vntill.

& som ther be in the ayre and foloweth the thonder-
ynges and tempestes / and some be on¹ the se and
drowne many a man and perysshe the shyppes wherof,
4 but late ye were in iopardye / for yf it had not bene
for the great vertue² that is in the precyous stones that
ye and your wyfe bereth vpon³ you both ye & your
wyfe had bene perished for euer / and other ther be
8 *that* ar⁴ in the botome of hell, wheras they tourment
the pouer sowles, and there is Lucifer and they that be
most yll⁵ with hym, and thoughe they were ones fayre
now they be fowle and ⁶yll fygured,⁶ and they shall
12 neuer departe⁷ thense / but we that be here yet we hope
to come to⁸ saluacyon. ⁹Thus we shall be as longe as
it please god⁹ / then Huon demaunded the cause why
they began the lessons in theyr matens¹⁰ and to leue it
16 in the myddes, and euery monke to depart¹¹ one after
another. ‘Syr,’ quod y^e monke, ‘our lorde Iesu chryst
hathe not as yet geuen vs that dyngnyte nor power to
make an ende of our deuyne seruyce / but we haue
20 that grace in this world that we haue all our desyres,
and to be conuersant amonge the people, &¹² as well as
they of the fayrey / there is nothyng but by wyssh-
yng we can haue it incontynent / ¹³when we wyll it
24 is in oure power to make towne or castell set vpon hye
rockes cloyd with ryuers berynge shyppes / and we
haue mynsterels, halles, and chaumbers garnysshed and
ordeyned as ye haue sene herewith-in. Also we haue
28 wyne and vytayle, and fysshe and flesshe at our plea-
sure; this castell *that* ye se and church¹⁴ was yester-
nyght made by the fayrey / but one owre before¹⁵ ye
came hether / before¹² here was nother towre nor wall
32 nor water nor rocke, and nothyng but a fayre grene¹⁶

Huon and his wife
were in great
danger from them
lately, but the
precious stones
preserved them.

They still possess
many of the
marvel-working
powers of faunes.

The castle and
church in which
they now stand,
were built in an
hour on the
previous day.

¹ vpon. ² and bounte. ³ about.

⁴ Fol. cxlv. back, col. 1. ⁵ euill. ⁶⁻⁶ misfigured.

⁷ from. ⁸ vnto. ⁹ but. ¹⁰ seruice. ¹¹ so.

¹² omitted. ¹³ and. ¹⁴ and church *after* castell.

¹⁵ that. ¹⁶ great.

The monk fears the abbot will punish him for thus revealing all to Huon.

Huon asks the road to Oberon's land.

When daylight comes, castle and church have vanished, but the monk was still with Huon and Escalaramonde.


The monk will show them the road to Momur, although he longs to escape from them.

medow, the whiche ye shall sone parseyue / and, syr,
 we be tho that hathe the conducte of al the fayrey of¹
 the world. Now, syr, I haue shewed² you that we be
 and all oure secretes the whiche was neuer shewed be- 4
 fore to² any mortall man / wherby I shal suffer of our
 abbot soche ponysshement that there was neuer so yll
 aduenture *that* fell to² me before / therfor, syr, now I
 ha³ue shewed² you euery thyng, suffer me to departe 8
 to² my company.' 'Monke,' quod Huon, 'I wyl not
 let the go tyll⁴ thou hast shewed vnto me by what
 maner of way I may go tyll⁴ I haue founde kynge
 Oberon;' thus Huon and the monke talked together 12
 tyll⁴ it was fayre daylyght / *then* Huon loked about
 hym and sawe nother castell nor churche, rocke nor
 ryuer, but he sawe⁵ they were in a fayre medow,
 wherof Huon and Escalaramonde were sore abashed 16
 and blessed them, hauynge great maruayle of *that*
 they had sene; then the monke desyred Huon to let
 hym go, 'monke,' quod Huon, 'to drawe or to strogell
 can not auayle the / for thou shalte not scape out of 20
 my handes tyll⁴ thou hast shewed me y^e citey of
 Momure, wheras kynge Oberon is' / 'Huon,' quod the
 monke, 'I am content to do it, but fyrst I pray the take
 fro my necke the stole.' 'Monke,' quod Huon, 'thy 24
 resonyng can not awayle the / for thou shalte not
 scape fro me tyll⁴ thou hast set bothe me and my wyfe
 nere to² the citey of Momure, for *thou* shalt go with vs
 fote by fote' / 'well,' quod y^e monke, 'syn it is thus, 28
 I am content to fulfill your pleasure / but one thyng
 I say to² you, ye neuer dyd a wyser dede then that ye
 wolde not let me go awaye / for yf the stole were not
 wherwith ye do holde me and the presious stones that 32
 ye haue on⁶ you / elles⁷ ye shuld neuer haue departed
 fro hence / I thoughte to haue begyled you so *that* ye

¹ in.² vnto.
⁵ that.³ Fol. cxlv. back, col. 2.⁶ about.⁴ vntill.⁷ omitted.

myghte haue let me gone my wayes whether I wolde
go.' 'Monke,' quod Huon, 'yf I can ye shall not
departe fro me tyll¹ ye haue fyrste set me & my wyfe
4 within the citey of Momure' / 'syr,' quod the monke,
'that wyll I not do, nor I can not do it thoughe I
wolde, but I shall set you both on² ye mount of
yrcany,³ and fro thence ye may well se⁵ the citey of
8 Momure and all the countre of the fayrey, and then I
wyll retourne to⁵ my company, who by this tyme are
passe the great see of Tartary' / 'monke,' quod Huon,
'I am contente so⁶ thou⁷ set me⁸ in that plase, wheras
12 I⁹ may se the citey of Momure.

¶ How the monke bare Huon and Esclaramond ouer hylles & valeyes in the ayer
tyl¹ he came in to the countrye of kyng
16 Oberon. Ca. C.lvi

20  Hen the monke toke Huon¹⁰ on his¹⁰ one
arme and Esclaramond on² the other,
but al wayes Huon helde styll the stole
a bought the monkes necke to y^e entente
that the monke shuld not begyle hym,¹¹
thus by the fayrey and enchauntement the monke
bare huon & Esclaramonde to⁵ a hye rocke to rest
24 them, and fro thence he bare them as fast as. y^e byrde
flyethe in the ayre / at last they alighted in a fayre
medowe / then the monke sayd / 'syr, in yll¹² oure I
mette with you, for ye shall cause me to suffer great
28 payne / and now, syr, I can go no further for ye be¹³
nowe in the londe of kynge Oberon, wheras we haue
no pusaunce / but fyrst I wyll brynge you to⁵ your
logyng, wheras ye shall reste' / then before them they

The monk takes
Huon and Escla-
ramonde in his
arms and carries
them to a high
rock through the
air.

They reach the
land of king
Oberon,

¹ vntill. ² vppon. ³ Hircania. ⁴ Fol. cxlvi. col. 1.

⁵ vnto. ⁶ that.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ vppon the.

⁷ wilt.

¹¹ and.

⁸ vs.

¹² euill.

⁹ we.

¹³ are.

and enter a rich
castle.

The monk
vanishes.

No man is in the
castle: after they
have refreshed
themselves in it,
it disappears.

Huon and his wife
wander to the foot
of a mountain,
and ascend it.

A great city lies
on the other side,
and a rich palace.

sawe a castell newly made, the whiche was so fayre
and¹ ryche and stronge that yf I shulde dyscryue it
to the vtter most it were ouer longe to reherse / then
the monke toke² leue of huon³ and lefte hym⁴ in the ⁴
castell that he had made / Huon sufferid hym to go and
thanked hym of his ⁵courtoysye, the monke sodeynely
vanissed awaye they wyst not whether / ⁶then huon
and his⁷ wyfe entered into the castel and came into a ⁸
ryche chaumbre wel apareiled,⁸ and there they founde
a table set with dyuers metes and drynkes, but there
was no man to speke vnto / then they sate downe at
the table and dyd ete and drynke at theyr pleasure / ¹²
⁶then they went⁹ thens, and when they were¹⁰ a lytell
paste¹¹ they loked behynde them and saw nother towne
nor castel, wherof they were¹² abasshed & recommaunded
themselfe to¹³ our lorde ¹⁴Iesu chryste,¹⁴ then they went ¹⁶
forth in¹⁵ y^e medowe and coude se nother towne nor
castell, house nor village / nor man to demaunde the
way of: ⁶they went so longe that they came to the fote
of a mountayne, wheron they mounted with great payn ²⁰
and trauayle; ⁶when they were on¹⁶ y^e heyght¹⁷ of the
hyll they rested them / and then within a lytell season
huon sawe before hym apere a great citey, and on¹⁶ the
one syde thereof a fayre and a¹ ryche palleys / the ²⁴
walles and towers of the citey & paleys were¹⁸ of
whyghte marble polysshed, the whiche stone¹⁹ so bryght
agaynst the sonne as thoughe it had bene al of christall /
then Huon sayde to¹³ his wyfe, ‘dame,²⁰ yonder, before ²⁸
vs, we may se the²¹ citey of Momure, wheras kyng
Oberon is’ / ‘syr,’ quod Esclaramond, ‘our lorde god
hath done¹³ vs a great grace²² that he hathe brought

¹ omitted. ² his.

³ and of the Duchesse Escleremond his wyfe.

⁴ them.

⁵ Fol. cxlvi. col. 2.

⁶ and.

⁷ louing.

⁸ furnished.

⁹ from.

¹⁰ gone.

¹¹ way.

¹² sore.

¹³ vnto.

¹⁴—¹⁵ god.

¹⁵ to.

¹⁶ vppon.

¹⁷ toppe.

¹⁸ all.

¹⁹ did shine.

²⁰ Madame.

²¹ noble

²² in.

vs hether in sauegarde of our parsons / then they went
 forth tyll¹ they cam nere to² the city of Momure / and
 before the citey they sawe a marueylous great ryuer
 4 and³ depe, and two bowe shote in largnes, and⁴ was
 maruaylous plesant to behold / & when they cam to
 thee ryuer syde they founde there a man with a lytell
 wessell awaytynge vpon all them⁵ that wold come to²
 8 the citey to pas them ouer / then Huon and⁶ his wyfe
 entered into the lytel shyppe and saluted the gyder
 therof, but he wold geue⁷ none answeere / but merueyl-
 ously behelde them, & when they wer ouer / the pas-
 12 sanger,⁸ who was named Clarimodes, and he was sone
 to a damoysele of the fayrey / then he demaunded of
 Huon what he and his wyfe were / and sayde, 'Me
 thynke ye be none of the fayrey / wherfore I am not
 16 contente that I haue passed you ouer' / then Huon
 gaue hym none answeere, but went forthe and entered
 into the citey, and as they passid they were greatly
 regardid of them within y^e citey, and sayde one to a
 20 nother it is⁹ maruayle to se these two parsones to¹⁰
 enter into this citey / for kynge Oberon, who lyethe
 seke in his bed, gaue great charge to² Clarimodes that
 no straunger shuld pas the reuer to enter in to this
 24 citey / Huon harde them and was therof ryght sorow-
 full when he harde that the kynge laye syke in his
 bed / so he passed forth and came to² the paleys / euery
 man there beheld hym and his wyfe and had great
 28 marueyle to se any mortal parsons to enter into that
 palays, ¹¹ they were therof abashed & wyste not what to
 thynke, and¹² the same season Malabron and Gloryand
 were walkynge together in y^e hal they behelde¹³ Huon
 32 and Esclaramonde enterynge into the hal and incon-

A marvellous
river runs before
the entrance to
the city;

but a little boat
awaits them and
they cross over.

The boatman was
Clarimodes, son
of a fairy damsel.

He asks Huon
who he is.

The people of the
town wonder to
see Huon and
Esclaramonde
walk through the
streets.

Oberon is sick.

They enter the
royal palace.

¹ vntill.

² vnto.

³ verie.

⁴ it.

⁵ Fol. cxlvi. back, col. 1.

⁶ Escleremond.

⁷ them.

⁸ Marriner.

⁹ great.

¹⁰ omitted.

¹¹ and.

¹² at.

¹³ saw.

Malabron and
Gloriand recog-
nize them.

Oberon hears of
their arrival,

and rises from his
bed.

He welcomes
Huon and Escla-
ramonde warmly.

He will make
Huon king of
fairyland and
Esclaramonde
queen.

Oberon takes his
bow and shoots
an arrow.

At once the
palace is filled
with fairy knights
and ladies.

Oberon is borne
on a couch into
the great hall.

tynent they knew them / and came to¹ them and
embraced them / and sayde, 'A, noble duke Huon and
duches Esclaramonde, ye ar welcome of your comynge,
we are ryght ioyfull' / then Malabron wente fro them ⁴
and wente into the chaumbre, wheras y^e kynge laye
seke and said / 'ryght dere syr, your good frend Huon
& Esclaramond his wyfe are come into your hall' / when
²the kynge harde that Huon and Esclaramonde were ⁸
come, for the great ioye *that* he had, he quykely rose
out of his bed. Therwith Gloryand / Huon and Esclara-
mond entered into the chaumbre where kynge Oberon
was. ³when kynge Oberon saw them he came to¹ ¹²
them, and sayd, 'My ryght dere frend Huon, and you,
my dere loue Esclaramond, of your comyng I am
ryght ioyfull' / then he embraced & kyssed them bothe
more then .x. tymes, and sayd, 'Huon, my⁴ dere frend, ¹⁶
for the great trouthe & noblenes that I fynde in you I
shall make you kyng of all the fayrey, and your wyfe
Esclaramonde shall be lady and quene of the same, and
besyde that I wyll geue¹ you⁵ my dyngnyte.' ²⁰

¶ when the kynge had well saluted them then he
sate downe on⁶ a couche & made huon and Esclaramond
to sytte downe before hym,³ then he commaunded
Gloryand that incontynent he shulde feche to¹ hym ²⁴
his bowe, and when he had it in his hand he toke an
arow and shot therwith / then incontynente it semed
that al the world had aryued in the towne and palays /
ther came thetherward⁷ so many knyghtes and ladies ²⁸
of the fayrey that all the towne and paleys was full /
when they were all assembeled together in the paleys
kynge Oberon commaunded to cary hym into the great
hall in his ryche couche / then he commaunded scylence ³²
to be kepte among them all, and then he sayde / 'lordes
and ladies who be here assembeled all, ye knowe

¹ vnto.

² Fol. cxlvi. back, col. 2.

³ and.

⁴ right.

⁵ all.

⁶ vppon.

⁷ thether.

- that euery mortall thyng cannot alwayes¹ endure / I
 speke it for my owne selfe ²who² am sone to a mortall
 man, and was engendered on³ the ladye of the preuye
 4 Ile who can ⁴neuer dye, bycause she is one of the fairy
 engendered of a man of the fayrey and doughter to a
 woman of the fayrey, and where ⁵it was⁵ so that Iulius
 Sesar was a mortall man, therefore it behouethe me to
 8 pas out of this worlde by the commandement of our
 lorde god, who hathe ordeined that it shulde so be. He announces his
approaching
death;
 And bycause⁶ duryng the tyme that I haue bene here
 conuersaunt with you / therefore I wyll not leue you
 12 without a lorde / but fyrst in my lyfe dayes I wyll puruey
 you of one, who shall be duke Huon, whome I loue
 well and derely, & also I wyll that his wife, the duches
 Esclaramond, shall abyde with hym / for in no wyse I
 16 wyll separate them asonder: therefore I ordeyne that
 Huon who is here presente be your kynge and lorde,
 & Esclaramond⁷ quene and lady / and fro hensforthe I
 put my realme and dyngnyte into his handes / and I
 20 wyll he vse it as I haue done in my lyfe tyme / howe
 be it kynge Arthur hath sore pressed on³ me to haue
 my dignyte⁸ & realme, but I wyll that none shal haue
 it but alonly Huon of Burdeaux, who is here present, King Arthur has
pressed Oberon
in vain to bestow
the kingdom on
him.
 24 whom I wyl crowne kynge in all your presences.

- ¶ How⁹ kynge Oberon crowned Huon and
 Esclaramonde and gaue them his realme
 and dyngnite that he had in the¹⁰ fayrey,
 28 and made the peas betwene Huon & king
 Arthur.
 Ca. Clvi[a].

¹ long.²⁻² because I.³ vpon.⁴ Fol. cxlvii. col. 1.⁵⁻⁵ as it is.⁶ of my loue.⁷ your.⁸ after realme.⁹ the noble.¹⁰ land of the.



The subjects of
Oberon sorrow-
fully assent.

Oberon places
crowns on the
heads of Huon
and Esclara-
monde, and
delivers to Huon
his horn, napkin,
cup, and armours.

On a mountain
hard by a great
number of men
and tents is seen.

King Arthur and
his men are there:
they have come
too late to receive
Oberon's king-
dom.

Hen all¹ the people of the fayrey,
²knyghtes and ladyes, had well harde
 and vnderstonde kyng Oberon, they
 were right syrowfull³ that he ⁴shulde
 leue them, and sayde / 'syr, syn it
 is your pleasure and that it is your wyll / of reason we
 must be content to receyue Huon of Burdeaux for oure
 kynge, and dame⁵ Esclaramonde his wyfe for oure 8
 quene' / when the kynge vnderstode hys lordes and
 people, then he caused to be brought thether .ii.
 crownes / y^e one was set on⁶ Huons hede and the
 other on⁶ Esclaramondes hede / then Oberon sent for 12
 his horne / his¹ napkyn and cup / and the good
 harnays: ⁷ he delyuered them to⁸ Huon to do with
 them his pleasure / great ioye and feast⁹ was made in
 the palays of¹⁰ the knyghtes and ladyes of the fayry; 16
 then kyng Huon loked out at a wyndowe and sawe on⁸
 a mountayne that he past ouer at his comynge thether,
¹¹great nombre of tentes and paulyons. then¹² he sayd
 to⁸ kyng Oberon, 'syr, on⁶ yonder mountayne I se¹¹ 20
 great nombre of men assemblyd, and many tentes and
 paulyons pyghte vp' / 'Huon,' quod kyng Oberon,
 'know for trouthe¹³ it is kyng Arthur, who wenethe to
 haue my realme and dyngnyte, but he comethe to late / 24
 for the promyse that ye made⁸ me ye haue kept,
 therfore he faylethe and comethe to late / for yf ye had
 not com I had geuen hym my realme and dyngnyte /
 I knowe well¹³ he wyll be here sone to se me / ¹²he wyll 28
 be sorowfull and angry of your comynge hether / but
 yf I canne I shall do so moche that ye shall be bothe
 in peas and reste, for¹⁴ reason¹⁵ is that he do obey you.'
 Therwith kynge Arthure and all his cheualrey entered 32

¹ omitted.

² both.

³ in.

⁴ Fol. cxlvii. col. 2.

⁵ Madame.

⁶ vpon.

⁷ Armour and.

⁸ vnto.

⁹ feasting.

¹⁰ by.

¹¹ a.

¹² and.

¹³ that.

¹⁴ good.

¹⁵ it.

- in to¹ Monure, & cam & alyghted at y^e palays, and
 with hym his syster, quene Morgan le feye, and Transelyne
 theyr nese / they came and saluted kynge
 4 Oberon, who receyued them with great Ioye, and
 sayde / 'syr² kynge Arthure ye ³ar welcome, and
 Morgan your syster, and Transelyne your nese / and
 syr, I praye you⁴ shewe me what fayre chylde is that
 8 I se there before your syster Morgan' / 'syr,' quod
 Arthur, 'he is called Marlyn, & is sone to Ogyer
 y^e dane / who hath wedded my syster Morgan, and I
 haue lefte hym in my countre to rule it tyll⁵ I
 12 retourne' / 'syr,' quod kynge Oberon / 'y^e chylde shall
 haue good fortune, he shalbe in his tyme feryd &
 doughted / for Ogyer his father is a good and a
 valyant knyght: And syr⁶ kynge Arthur, ye ar
 16 welcome, & of your comynge I am ⁷ioyous⁷ / I haue
 sent for you to shew you the pleasure of our lorde
⁸Iesu Chryst⁸ that I shall departe out of this worlde,
 and to the entente that ye shulde be contente with⁹
 20 *that* I haue geuen you¹⁰ in the fayry so moche dyngnyte
 and pusaunce, wherwith I desyre you to be content /
 syr¹¹ beholde here duke Huon of Burdeaux and his
 wyte y^e duches Esclaramonde, to¹² whome I haue geuen
 24 my realme and my dingnyte, to vse it as I haue done
¹⁰here before:¹⁰ and therfore I praye and commaunde
 you that ye wyl obey hym as kynge and souerayne of
 al the fayry, and you to loue¹³ together with good loue
 28 and peas' / when kynge Arthur hard kynge Oberon,
 he answered fersly, and sayd / 'syr, I haue well hard
 you; and ye knowe well that your realme & dyngnyte
 ye ¹⁴haue geuen¹⁴ me after your deces, and now I se¹⁵
 32 ye haue geuen it to duke Huon / syr, let hym go into his

King Arthur
comes to Oberon's
palace with all his
company.

Oberon welcomes
them.

Merlin is with
the new-comers:
he is son of Ogier
the Dane, and
Arthur's sister
Morgan.

Oberon tells
Arthur how his
realm has been
bestowed.

Arthur is angry
at Huon's future.

¹ the Citie of. ² great. ³ Fol. cxlvii. back, col. 1.

⁴ to. ⁵ vntill. ⁶ noble. ⁷⁻⁷ right ioyfull.

⁸⁻⁸ God. ⁹ in. ¹⁰ heretofore. ¹¹ for. ¹² vnto.

¹³ liue. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ gaue. ¹⁵ well.

He will not obey
the new fairy
king.

Huon tells Arthur
that he will force
obedience from
him.

Oberon keeps
peace between
them: if Arthur
prove disobe-
dient, he shall be
transformed into
a werwolf.

Arthur yields to
Oberon, and begs
forgiveness.

owne countre and ¹to the¹ citey of Burdeaux wheras
he hathe lefte his doughter Claryet, and let hym go
and marry her, for as here he hath no thyng to do;
I had rather be clene exyled for euer and chased out of ⁴
my realme / then I shulde obeye hym or do² hym³
homage / for he shall haue no ⁴thyng to do ouer me
without he wyn it with the poynte of the sworde' /
when duke⁵ Huon⁶ harde kyng Arthur of Bretayne, ⁸
he answered fersly and said / 'kyng Arthur, knowe for
trouthe for all your wordes and thretenynges, I wyll not
spare to say to² you that whether ye wyl or not
it must behoue you to obey and to be vnder me, syn it ¹²
is the pleasure of my lorde, kynge Oberon, here present,
or elles ye may departe and go and dwell in your
countre of Bretayne' / then kynge Oberon, seynge
appareance of great warre to be moued betwene these ¹⁶
two kynges, he spake and sayd⁷ he wolde haue theyr
yll⁸ wyll layd downe & neuer to haue warre betwene
them; ⁹then he⁹ sayd to² kynge Arthur / 'syr, I wyll⁷
ye holde your peas, for if ye speke one worde more ²⁰
agaynst Huon the souerayne kyng of the fayry, that he
wolde condempne hym parpetually to be a warwolfe in
¹⁰the se,¹⁰ and there to end his dayes in payne and
mysery / but yf he wyll beleue hym he wolde agre ²⁴
them together' / then kynge Arthur stode styll and
wolde speke no word / then Morgan and Transelyne
fell down on theyr knees and desyred kynge Oberon to
haue petye of kynge Arthure, and to pardon hym¹¹ his ²⁸
yll wyll: ⁹after that Morgan had spoken, then kynge
Arthur kneled downe, and sayd, 'ryght dere syr, I pray
you pardon me in that I haue spoken so moche agaynst
your pleasure' / 'Arthur,' quod⁵ Oberon, 'I wyll well ³²

¹⁻¹ vnto his.

² vnto.

³ any.

⁴ Fol. cxlvii. back, col. 2.

⁶ Kinge.

⁶ had well.

⁷ that.

⁸ euill.


⁹⁻⁹ and.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ those parts.

¹¹ of all.

that ye know¹ yf it were not for the loue of your
 syster who hath desyred me to pardon you / elles²
 I wold haue shewed you the power that I haue in the
 4 fayry / the whiche fro hens forthe I do geue to³ duke
 Huon of Burdeaux, & all the dyngnye & pusaunce that
 I haue vsed⁴ all my lyfe.' Then duke Huon ryght
 5 humblye⁶ thankid kynge Oberon of his curtoysye.

8 ¶ Of the ordynaunces that⁷ kyng Oberon
 made before he dyed. Ca. C.lvii.

12  Hen⁸ Oberon had deposed hymselfe of
 his realme and dyngnye, and that he
 had put al his pusaunce into the
 handes of Huon, then he sayde to³
 kynge Arthure / 'syr, bycause I desyre
 with all my heart that after my dysces Huon and you
 16 shulde leue together in good peas and loue, I geue you
 all my realme of Boulquant and all the realme that
 Syble holdethe of me, to do therwith at your pleasure,
 and of all the fayryes that be in the playne of Tartare /
 20 and I wyll⁹ ye haue as moche pusaunce there as Huon
 hath here. Prouyded that here before me ye make
 homage to³ hym & ²to² that good peas and loue maye
 be betwene you' / then Arthur, Morgan, and Tran-
 24 selyne, and all¹⁰ other lordes¹¹ that were there thanked
 kyng Oberon, and sayd how they neuer hard nor saw
 so ryche a gyfte geuen before as that kynge Oberon had
 geuen to¹² Arthur. Then kynge Arthure, in the
 28 presence of⁸ Oberon, came and made homage & kyssed
 duke Huon ²on the mouth / ² then⁸ Oberon and all
 other had therof great ioye bycause of the peas made
 betwene thos two kynges, ¹³great feaste¹⁴ and ioye was

Oberon promises
 to give Arthur
 his land of
 Boulquant,

and all the fairies
 of Tartary are to
 be under his
 control.

Arthur makes
 peace with Huon.

¹ well after ye. ² omitted. ³ vnto. ⁴ in.

⁵ Fol. cxlviii. col. 1. ⁶ ryght humblye after Oberon.

⁷ the noble. ⁸ King. ⁹ that. ¹⁰ the.

¹¹ and Ladies. ¹² vnto kynge. ¹³ and. ¹⁴ feasting.

Oberon's end
approaches.

He calls Huon,
Arthur, Gloryand,
and Malabron
before him.

He tells Huon
how all his
powers devolve
on him,

and bids him
establish a new
abbey where he
himself shall be
buried.

Huon thanks
Oberon humbly.

made in the paleys, for all the moste noble lordes and
ladyes of the fayry were there assembelyd, there was
great solempnyte made / Thus as they were in this
great ioye kynge Oberon, felynge that ¹his last ende ⁴
aproched, ²he knewe y^e oure and day³ / then seyng
that in his lefe dayes⁴ he had prouyded a kyng for his
realme, he⁵ thankyd our lorde ⁶Iesu chryst⁶ of the
graces that he had geuen hym in this worlde / then ⁸
he callid before hym Huon of Burdeaux, and kynge
Arthur, & Gloryand, and Malabron, and sayd / 'syrs, I
aduertyse that longe I shall not abyde among you /
therfore Huon, for your bountye and noblenes wher- ¹²
with alwayes⁷ ye haue bene endowed, I haue chosen
you amonge other to haue the keynge and syngnary /
and the mynystacyon of al y^e fayrey as well of
the countre of the⁸ warwolfes as of other thynges ¹⁶
secrete, reserued⁹ to be shewed to any¹⁰ men / and also
I haue geuen you my dyngnyte and pusaunce to do¹¹
as I haue done in my tyme; & ¹²therfore, syn¹² I haue
thus chosyn you / therfore I wyl that¹³ I depart out of ²⁰
this world / that ye do make a newe abbey of monkes,
the which I wyll be set here in this¹⁴ medow¹⁵ before
this citey, bycause al my dayes I haue loued this citey /
and I wyll that in the church of the same abbey ye do ²⁴
bury my body as rychly as ye shall thynke conuenient /
and I recommaunde to¹⁶ you all suche as hathe well
serued me, and I wyll¹⁷ ye retayne them into your
seruyce' / when¹⁸ Oberon had said as moch as plesed ²⁸
hym, Huon answerid and sayd / 'dere syr, of the great
goodnes and honours that ye haue done to¹⁶ me, I
thanke you / and all that ye haue ordeyned or wyll do
by the grace of ⁶our lorde Iesu chryst⁶ it shal be done ³²

¹ Fol. cxlviii. col. 2.

² for.

³ day *before* houre.

⁴ tyme.

⁵ humbly.

⁶⁻⁶ god.

⁷ always *after* bene.

⁸ omitted.

⁹ and not.

¹⁰ mortall.

¹¹ therewith.

¹²⁻¹² because.

¹³ when.

¹⁴ the.

¹⁵ heere.

¹⁶ vnto.

¹⁷ that.

¹⁸ King.

in suche wyse that my sowle shal bere no charge for it
 at the day of Iugment.' when the lordes and ladyes
 that were there assembeled hard the wordes of kynge
 4 Oberon / and sawe ¹clerely how ¹his last ende aproched
²neere / y^e cryes and clamours *that* was ³there made
 was ⁴maruel to here, and spesyally ther was suche
 wepyng and cryeng⁵ in the cete that ⁴pete it was
 8 to here,⁶ for they wer aduerseysid how⁷ king Oberon
 drewe faste⁸ to his laste end, who lay in a ryche
 cowche in the myddes of his palayes makyng his
 prayers to⁹ our lorde ¹⁰Iesu cryste,¹⁰ and holdyng Huon
 12 by the hande, and at¹¹ laste¹² sayde, 'my¹³ dere frende
 Huon, pray for me' / & then he made the synge of y^e
 cros¹⁴ recommendyng his sowle to⁹ god, the which
 incontynent was borne in to paradyce by a greate
 16 multytude of angelles sent fro ¹⁰our lord Iesu chryst,¹⁰
 who at ther depertyng made such shynyng and
 clerenes in y^e palays that ther was neuer none suche
 sene before / and there with there was so swete a smell
 20 *that* euery man thought⁷ they had bene rauyssed in
 to paradyse, wherby they knewe suerly that kynge
 Oberons sowle was saued / when kynge Huon, & kyng
 Arthur, & quene Esclaramonde / Morgan le faye and
 24 Transelyne / and kynge Carahew / Gloryand and
 Malabron / and all other knyghtes and ladyes, ¹⁵when
 they ¹⁵knewe that kynge Oberon was dede / there is
 no humayne tonge can tell the cryes, wepynges, and
 28 complayntes that was ³made there for the dethe of
 kynge Oberon / then his body was taken and borne to
 the plase where his sepulture was deuysed / the whiche
 kynge Huon caused to be made ryght rychely / &
 32 founde there an abbey as kyng Oberon had deuysed.

Oberon dies.

His soul is borne
 at once to para-
 dise by a great
 multitude of
 angels.

All in the palace
 weep bitterly.

Oberon is buried
 in the new abbey
 as he willed
 before his death.

¹⁻¹ well that. ² Fol. cxlviii. back. col. 1. ³ were.

⁴ great. ⁵ lamentations. ⁶ it. ⁷ that.

⁸ neere vnto. ⁹ vnto. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ god. ¹¹ the. ¹² hee.

¹³ right. ¹⁴ and. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ omitted.

At the funeral
banquet are three
crowned kings,
and two beautiful
queens.

At length kings
Arthur and
Carahew take
their leave,

and king Huon
and queen
Esclaramonde
rule over fairy-
land.

After the buryall / they retourned to y^e palays, wher as
the tables were set, and there sate .iii. crowned kynges
& two excellent quenes ful of great beauty; at the
hede¹ of the table sate kyng Huon, and nexte² hym 4
kyng Arthure, and then ³kyng Carahew and the two
quenes / & the other ladyes departid and went and
dyned in ther chambers / ⁴they were all serued of
euery thyng that was nessessary. And after dyner 8
and grace sayd / kyng Arthure and kyng Carahew
toke theyr leue of kyng Huon and of quene Esclara-
monde / and so departid euery man in to his owne
countre / and Morgan and Transelyne taryed a sertayne 12
space with quene Esclaramond in great ioy and solas.
Now let vs leue spekyng of kyng Huon and of quene
Esclaramonde, who taryed styll in the fayrey, and shal
do vnto⁵ the day of Iugemente / and let vs retourn to 16
our⁶ mater and speke of y^e fayre Claryet, doughter to²
kyng Huon, who was at the⁷ citey of Burdeaux.



¶ Howe the kyng of Hongary & the kyng
of Engelond and Florence, sone to² the 20
kyng of Aragon, desyred to haue in
maryage the fayre lady Claryet / and how
she was betrayed by Broharte / and how
syr Barnarde was drowned, & of the ylles⁸ 24
that the traytoure Brohart dyd to² the⁹
lady Claryet / and how he dyed at the
laste.

Ca. C.lviii.

¹ vpper end. ² vnto. ³ Fol. cxlviii. back, col. 2.
⁴ and. ⁵ vntill. ⁶ former. ⁷ noble. ⁸ euils.
⁹ faire.



4 E haue harde here before how kynge
 Huon & quene Esclaramonde, when
 they departid fro¹ Burdeaux they lefte
 theyr doughter in the kepyng of the
 good abbot of Cluny, her vncl / who
 grew and dayly amended in suche a wyse² that when she
 came to the ³age of .xv. yere, for her excellent beauty
 8 her renome was so great in euery countre that there
 was nother kynge nor duke but ⁴that⁴ desyred to haue
 her in maryage / so that the abbot and Barnard her
 cosyn had great busines to giue eche of them theyr
 12 answeere to be contente / one was the kynge of
 Englonde, another the kynge of Hungarye, and the
 thyrde⁵ was Florence, sone to⁶ the kynge of Aragon /
 But speccially the kynge of Hungarye wold haue had
 16 her / the⁷ abbot answered the kynge of hungaryes
 enbassadours and⁸ to all the other, that vntyll he had
 harde some worde⁹ fro¹⁰ duke huon her father, he coulde
 not agre to no¹¹ mariage for her / but yf they wolde
 20 retourne agayne by the feast of saynt Iohn nexte
 folowinge, then he wolde be contente to holde a daye
 of communycacyon of maryage in the towne of Blaye /
 wherto the kynge of Hungarye was contente, and
 24 so were all the other enbassadours / and when the day
 came the good abbot toke his way to⁶ Blaye to be
 there agaynst the comynge of the kynges of Englonde
⁴and of ⁴hungarye / and Florence, sone to the kynge of
 28 Aragon / the⁷ abbot lefte the lady Claryet in the
 kepyng of Barnarde her cosyn, who enterely¹² loued
 her / ¹³when the abbot was come to⁶ Blaye, ¹⁴the abbot¹⁴
 made the towne to be hanged rychely for the comynge
 32 of the sayd kynges. And y^e .iii. daye after the abbot

Clariet was left at
Bordeaux in the
care of the abbot
of Cluny.

When she was
fifteen years old
she had every
king and duke in
Europe for her
suitor.

There were the
kings of England
and Hungary,
and Florence, son
of the king of
Aragon.
The king of
Hungary was
especially
importunate.
The abbot wants
to consult Huon,
and defers his
answer to the
Hungarian and
other envoys till
St. John's day.

He invites the
suitors to Blaye
to hear his
decision.

¹ the Citie of. ² sort.

³ Fol. cxlviii. col. 1 (*should be* xlix.). ⁴⁻⁴ omitted.

⁵ other. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ good. ⁸ so. ⁹ newes.

¹⁰ for in text. ¹¹ any. ¹² entirely after loued her.

¹³ and. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ hee.

The king of
England comes
first, and goes
away hunting :

next arrives the
king of Hungary :

and lastly
Florence.

A traitor of
Bordeaux, named
Brohart, knew
that the abbot
had decided that
Clariet should
choose a husband
for herself.

Brohart wants
Clariet for
himself,
and returns from
Blaye to
Bordeaux.

came thether / fyrst came to the towne the kynge of
Engelonge, who anone after *that* he was alyghted and
somewhat rested, he lepte on¹ his horse agayne and
wente a huntynge into the laundes / then after came the 4
kyng of hungarye in goodly araye ; he alyghted at the
paleys, whereas the abbot receyued hym with great
ioye / then after² ³entered Florence with a noble
company. The abbot did salute them all one after 8
another, sayenge howe⁴ he and the hole towne were at
theyr commaundemente, & they thanked hym. There
was a false traytoure borne in Burdeaux, who had
harde all the conclusyon that the abbot had taken with 12
these prynces / and that was that they shulde se the
lady / and he that pleased her best shulde haue her in
maryage / this traytoure that harde that conclusyon
thought in⁵ hymselfe that he wolde let that mater yf he 16
coude, and haue her hymselfe / this traytours name was
Brohart / he departed fro Blaye sore desyryng to
atayne to his false enterpryse ; he toke a lytell shyp
and sayled incontynent to⁶ Burdeaux / then in haste 20
he ⁷toke londe⁷ and fayned hymselfe as thoughe he
had great busynes to do ; so he came to the paleys
wheras he founde⁸ Barnarde ⁹and y^e lady⁹ lenynge in
a wyndow deusyng together. Then Broharte saluted 24
the lady¹⁰ and Barnarde al smylyng. ‘Brohart,’ quod
Barnard, ‘the mater must be good that I se you come
smylynge / I praye you¹¹ shewe¹² vs¹³ how dothe the¹⁴
abbot of Cluny, and how hath he receyued the prynces 28
that be come to Blay’ / ‘Barnarde,’ quod the traytour,
‘know for trouthe *that* in all your lyfe ye neuer saw
suche noblenes as is nowe in y^e towne of blay, and
therefore, syr, hastily or¹⁵ the mater goeth any further, 32

¹ vpon. ² afterward. ³ Fol. cxlviii[ix]. col. 2.

⁴ that. ⁵ within. ⁶ vnto. ⁷⁻⁷ went on shoare.

⁸ the faire ladie clariet. ⁹⁻⁹ omitted.

¹⁰ after Barnard. ¹¹ to. ¹² vnto. ¹³ mee.

¹⁴ good. ¹⁵ before.

- the¹ abbot of Cluny, who is vncle to my lady here
 presente / he² sendethe you worde by me that inconty-
 nent as sone as nyght comethe *that* preuely my lady
 4 Claryet be made redy and apareyled and dysgyssed lyke
 a man / and you & I to brynge her to³ bley to her
 vncle the abbot of Cluny / and that tomorowe by⁴
 none ye ordeyne damoysselles to come ⁵after and to
 8 brynge with them all her ryche robes and aparayle
 to aray her therin when tyme shall be, and that we
 take with vs one⁶ of her apareyles to put on her when
 she come there tyll⁷ all her other aparayle comethe /
 12 and the cause why *that* her vncle sendeth for her now
 so preuely is that she shulde se all them that desyreth
 her in maryage, for out of y^e chaumbre wheras she shal
 be in she shal se them all one after another ⁸thrughe a
 16 lateyse⁸ wyndowe / when Barnarde hard the vnhappy
 traytoure / wenyng⁹ he had sayd ¹⁰trouth,¹⁰ bycause he
 was a man of credens, therfore he byleued his wordes.
 Alas, why dyd he so, for a more¹¹ traytoure ther was not
 20 fro thense to Rome, his father and his bretherne were
 so all / but Barnarde byleued hym bycause he wente
 with the abbot / then Barnarde sayde to³ Claryet /
 'lady, ye must make you redy to departe as sone
 24 as nyght comethe / and ye muste be apareyled as
 Broharte hathe shewed, to the entente that ye be not
 parseyued tyll⁷ ye come to Blaye to your vncle the
 abbot / 'Barnarde,' quod the lady, 'syn it is the
 28 pleasure of myne vncle and of you it is reason that I do
 it' / then she went into her chaumbre and aparayled
 her with her preuy demoysselles, & they laughed at her
 when they sawe her in a mans apareyle / and the yl¹²
 32 traytoure dyd so moch that he gote a lytell shyppe and

He tells Barnard,
 who guards
 Clariet, that she
 is to go with him
 to Blaye disguised
 as a man,

and that her
 maids are to
 follow the next
 day with all her
 apparel.

She is secretly to
 see her suitors at
 Blaye.

Barnard believes
 Brohart,

and bids Clariet
 depart.

Clariet is
 disguised.

¹ good. ² omitted. ³ vnto. ⁴ about.

⁵ Fol. cxlviii.[ix.] back, col. 1. ⁶ some. ⁷ vntill.

⁸⁻⁸ out at a secret. ⁹ that all that.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ had been true. ¹¹ vild. ¹² cruell.

With Barnard
and Brohart she
enters a ship.

Brohart deceives
Barnard.

They pass down
the Garonne.

brought it redy to the posterne of y^e paleys, and he had
gote redy a great stone and tyed therto a corde / then
he came to¹ Barnarde and sayd / 'syr, it is² tyme to
departe, that we maye be at blaye or³ it be mydnyght' / 4
then Barnarde came to the lady, whome he founde
redy to departe, and sayd, all smyllynge, 'fayre lady, ye
resemble well to be a gentyll squyre' / bar⁴narde put
his sworde aboute hym, and toke the lady by the arme 8
& sayde / 'come on companyon, it is tyme we go' /
Brohart wente on before, and barnarde and the
damoyzell⁵ went after arme in arme, and so went⁶
to the posterne so preuely *that* no man parseyued them / 12
then Brohart entered in⁷ fyrste and toke Claryet by
the hand and led her to the ende of the shyp, ⁸then
Barnarde entered / broharte softly let the stone slyp
into the water and held the cord styll in his hande, and 16
sayd to¹ Barnard, 'syr, I do this bycause the shyp
shall not go to faste tyll⁹ we be paste the medyll of the
streme' / and sayd to¹ Barnard, 'syr, holde you this
cord in your hande tyll we be paste the heye streme / 20
and then we shall drawe it vp agayne.' Barnarde, who
thought none yll, dyd as the traytour sayd / then they
toke the helme in theyr handes, and so departed along
the ryuer of Gerounde. 24

¶ Howe the traytoure Broharte drowned
Barnarde, and of theyr aduentures / and
howe Broharte was slayne. Ca. C.lix.



Hen Brohart sawe *that* they were fare 28
of fro y^e towne, & that y^e nyght was
darke, he came to¹ Barnarde & sayde,
'syr, quykely drawe vp y^e stone by
the corde out of the water' / then 32

¹ vnto. ² full. ³ before.

⁴ Fol. cxlviii[x]. back, col. 2.

⁵ Ladie.

⁶ on.

⁷ to the shippe.

⁸ and.

⁹ vntill.

- Barnard stowpyd downe lowe to drawe it vp / then
 Brohart toke barnard by ¹the lege or ¹he was ware,
 and with all his strengthe he tombelyd ²Barnarde ³ouer
⁴the ⁴bourde into the water, wheras he was drowned, the
 whiche was great petye / for a more trewer knyght
 coude not be founde / when the ⁵lady Claryet saw that
 Brohart had cast barnarde ouer the ⁵bourde she gaue
⁸a great crye, and she came to ⁶Brohart and drew hym
 by the here / when ⁷the traytour saw that y^e lady tare
 his here, he toke her by the armes so fersly that he
 caste her to y^e ⁸shyp botom, ⁸& dyd ⁹all to ⁹bete her, ¹⁰
¹²& sayde that her cryes and wepynges coude not ayde
 her, for whether she wold or not he wolde haue his
 pleasure of her / when y^e lady harde the false traytour
 she was in great fere, & began sore to trymble, making
¹⁶her praiers to our lord ¹¹Iesu christ ¹¹and to the vyrgyn
 mary ⁹to defende her fro dyshonour and to brynge her
 out of the handes of that false traytour her enemy /
 then the vnhappy traytour came to ⁶her and sayde /
²⁰that it were better for her to fulfyll his pleasure with
 good wyll and loue rather then by force, or elles to ¹²
 caste her into the ryuer of Geroune / 'O false traytour,'
 quod she, 'as longe as thou leueste thou shalte neuer
²⁴haue ioye nor pleasure of my body' / then the false
 morderer dyd bete the lady, that pety it was to se ; ¹³so
 he lefte her lyenge ¹⁴in a maner ded ; when he sawe ⁷it
 wold be no better he was wery, and so fell on ¹⁵slepe /
²⁸the shyp wente forth by force of the streame, and
 by that tyme it was fayre daye / so fare the shyp went
 that nyght that they were nere to the ende of the
 ryuer of Geroune / and y^e lady sore wepynge behelde
³²the traytour how he slepte, and sawe ¹⁶by hym a lofe of

Brohart, by a
 wicked device,
 throws Barnard
 into the river,
 and he is drowned.

Clariet cries out,
 and tears
 Brohart's hair.

Brohart flings
 her to the ship's
 bottom, and beats
 her.

He will by force
 dishonour her,
 or drown her.

Clariet resists,
 and Brohart beats
 her till she is
 nearly dead.

The traitor then
 falls asleep ;

Clariet revives ;

¹⁻¹ one of his legges before. ² Fol. cxlv[1]. col. 1.

³ him. ⁴ ship. ⁵ faire. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ that.

⁸⁻⁸ bottom of the shippe. ⁹⁻⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ cruelly.

¹¹⁻¹¹ god. ¹² he would. ¹³ and.

¹⁴ lying after maner. ¹⁵ a. ¹⁶ lying.

she sees him
sleeping with a
loaf of bread at
his side, of which
she stands in
great need.
She weeps
bitterly,
and prays to God
for aid.

The ship enters
the sea,

and is carried to
a little island.
Brohart awakes,

and entreats
Clariet to yield to
him.

But he curses God
when he perceives
that they have
reached a deserted
island.

Clariet leaves the
boat,
and runs up the
rock.
Six thieves lie hid
there.

brede / the famyne that she was in constrayned her to
take and to eat it, for she had suche famyne that
she coude bere¹ it no lenger / then she made her
prayers al ²wepyng to our lorde god, requyrynge hym ⁴
to kepe and defende her virgynyte and to preserue her
fro that false tyrant who had betrayed her / so fare
wente the shyp *that* it enterid into the see / the wynde
was great, and they had nother helme nor sayle to ayde ⁸
them selues with all / then the wynd toke them and
draue them to a lytell port vnder a hye rocke in a
lytell Isle / then Brohart awoke and was glad when he
saw they were aryued nere to the londe / for he knew ¹²
ryght well the countre ; ³then he sayde to the ladye /
' thou seest well⁴ thou haste no pusaunce to go agaynste
my wyll / the whiche thou must nedes fulfyll / for thou
canste not haue any socoure of any man or woman ¹⁶
leuyng, nor al thy defence cannot auayle the, thou
seest well we be in an Isle wheras the see goeth
rounde about it / wherfore I haue great dought that
we shall neuer depart⁵ hens : therfore dysmay you not, ²⁰
for as nowe I wyll do the no hurte.' This thefe, when
he saw that he was in this Isle, he began to curse god
⁶and his mother,⁶ and the owre that euer he sawe
Claryet / for the false traytour saw well that he muste ²⁴
dye there ⁷for hunger⁷ and rage / for there was no shyp
to enter into the see, therefore he had then no wyl to do
any yll to the lady / the which was by the grace
of god, who wold not that the lady shuld be dys- ²⁸
honored / ³when she sawe that they were so nere the
londe, sore wepyng she issued out of the bote, and ran
vp the rocke. Now god defende her, ⁸the same tyme
there was on⁹ the mountayne .vi. theues who laye ³²
to spy the marchauntes / and they had a lytell galey

¹ forbear.
⁵ from.

² Fol. cxlv[1]. col. 2.
⁶⁻⁶ omitted.

³ and.
⁷⁻⁷ by famine.

⁴ that.
⁸ for.

⁹ vpon.

- lyyng in a lytell corner of the rocke nere to them, and
 had couered it with boues and grene leues; when
 Brohart saw the ¹damoyzell ryu awaye he cryed as
 4 loude as he coude, and said, 'by god, dame,² your
 fleyng shall not awaye,³ for whether *thou* wylte or not
 this nyght I wyll haue my wyll⁴ of the' / the .vi.
 theues who were on⁵ the mountayne etyng of ther
 8 mete, when they harde Broharte cryenge after the
 damoyzell, they were sore abasshed, and were in great
 fere *that* they had bene spied. Then the damoyzell,
 who ran vpon the mountayne, when she sawe them she
 12 sayd, 'A, syrs, I pray you haue petye of me and ayde
 and socoure me agaynst this false traytoure, this nyght
 passyd he stole⁶ me awaye out of the cetye of Burdeaux,
⁷I am doughter to noble duke Huon' / when these
 16 theues harde the damoyzell they rose vp all and thought
⁸it had bene some feyned mater to haue begyled them,
 but when they sawe Broharte folowe after the lady /
 then the mayster of the theues stepte forth and said,
 20 'how is it that thou arte so hardly to come vpon vs /
 thou arte come hether to spye vs, but we shall neuer be
 acused by y^e / *thou* arte but yll come to this brydale' /
 when the traytour broharte sawe the .vi. theues he was
 24 sore abasshed, and sawe well how⁸ he shulde be fayne
 to defend hym selfe / then he drew out his sworde and
 strake the mayster thefe ⁹so on⁹ the hed that he claue
 hym to the tethe / ⁷when the other .v. theues sawe
 28 theyr maister slayne they were¹⁰ sorowful,¹¹ then they
 assembeled¹² Brohart on all sydes / and he defended
 hymselfe so well *that* or¹³ he was stryken to the erthe
 he slewe .iiii. of them, and in the meane tyme whyles
 32 they fought / the lady Claryet came to the place

Brohart threatens
her from the boat,

and his voice
rouses the thieves.

Clariet sees them,
and begs them to
have pity on her.

They stop Brohart
in his pursuit of
Clariet.

Brohart draws his
sword, and kills
the master thief.

The other thieves
attack the traitor,
but before they
struck him down,
he killed four of
them in all.

¹ Fol. cxlv[1]. back, col. 1. ² madame. ³ you.
⁴ pleasure. ⁵ vppon. ⁶ did steale. ⁷ and. ⁸ that.
⁹⁻⁹ such a blow vppon. ¹⁰ right. ¹¹ and angrie.
¹² assailed. ¹³ before.

Clariet finds
food and drink in
the thieves' place,
and eats and
drinks.

The thieves make
Brohart confess
his evil inten-
tions.

Then they bind
his feet, and
hang him by
his feet to a tree:
under his head
they light a fire,
and thus he ends
his life.

The two thieves
who are left alive
learn from Clariet
all her story.

They give Clariet
rich apparel,
and admire her
beauty.

wheras the theues had bene, & there she founde mete
and drynke plente / ¹when she sawe the mete she was²
ioyfull, and thankyd god therof, & dyd eate ³and
drynke at her pleasure / and she saw how the theues ⁴
had cast Brohart to the erth, wherof she was ioyful,
howbeit she knewe not what company she was com⁴ to
no[r]⁵ in whose handes she was aryued in; when the
theues had cast Brohart to the erth / they made hym ⁸
to shew where he had taken y^e damoyzell / and he
shewed them all the mater, and howe he had taken her
to the entente to haue dyshonored her & to haue had
her to his wyfe, and to haue caryed her into some ¹²
straunge place vnknownen / when y^e theues hard what
Brohart had sayde / they sayde, 'O thou vntrewe and
false traytoure, there is no tourmente in the worlde so
crewel but that *thou* haste deserued a worse payne, and ¹⁶
therfore by vs thy deserte shalbe rewarded' / then they
toke and bounde fast his fete, and hanged hym vp by
the fete on⁶ a tre / then they made a fyer, and vnder
his hede they made a great smoke, & so made hym to ²⁰
dye in great doloure⁷ / thus ended the traytoure
Broharte myserably his dayes / then the two theues
came to the place wheras Clariet was, and they de-
maunded of her estate / and she shewed them all the ²⁴
maner, and how she was taken by y^e traytour Broharte,
and she shewed⁸ them what she was / then the theues
caused her to put of her clothes that she was in, and
dyd⁹ on her other ryche aparayle / ¹when they saw her ²⁸
so aparayled they thoughte¹⁰ no lady nor damoyzell in
the worlde coude pas her in beaute, for she was come
agayne to her beaute, for¹ she thoughte herselfe well
assured bycause she was delyuerered fro¹¹ Brohart / ³²
when one of these two theues sawe the great beaute

¹ and. ² right. ³ Fol. cxlv[1]. back, col. 2. ⁴ in.

⁵ not in text. ⁶ vppon. ⁷ and paine. ⁸ vnto.

⁹ to put. ¹⁰ that. ¹¹ the false Traitour.

of this damoyssel, he sayd to¹ his felawe / 'this nyght I
 wyl haue my pleasure of her' / the other sayd² ³he
 wolde not suffer that / and sayd howe he was y^e fyrste
 4 that ouerthruw Brohart who had stollen her awaye;
 then y^e other drewe out his dager and strake his felawe
 into the body to the ha[r]te⁴ / & when he felte
 hymselfe streken to the dethe / he toke corage on hym
 8 and drew his sworde and stroke the other on the hed to
 the braynes, and so he fell downe dede / and the other
 that was wounded to the deth fel downe in lyke wyse
 by his felaw ded, and so therby the ⁵mayde⁵ Claryet was
 12 ⁶there all alone / when she sawe herselfe so all alone in
 the Isle wheras was⁷ non habytacyon / she began then
 petuously to⁸ complayne, sayeng, 'O ⁹very god,⁹ I pray
 the by thy grace to haue of me pety,¹⁰ and I requyre
 16 the humbely where so euer I go to saue and defende my
 vyrgynyte & ayde me ¹¹to¹¹ come to sauegard.' Nowe
 let vs leue spekyng of the fayre Claryet & retourne to
 speke of the kynges & prynces that were at blaye
 20 abydynge the comynge thether of the¹² lady Claryet.

One of them longs
 to have his
 pleasure of her:
 but the other will
 not allow that, as
 he was the first to
 kill Brohart.

They fight, and
 both are slain.

Clariet, finding
 herself all alone,
 prays to God to
 pity her.

¶ Of the great sorowe that was made at
 Blaye by the abbot of Cluny and by the
 prynces of the noble citey of Burdeaux for
 24 the fayre¹³ Claryet that was stollen away,
 & of the sorow that was made when they
 sawe Barnarde brought in dede by .vi.
 men. And of y^e ponysshement that was
 28 done to y^e lynage of¹⁴ Broharte. Ca. C.lx.

¹ vnto. ² that. ³ Fol. cli. col. 1. ⁴ hafte in text.

⁵⁻⁵ faire Ladie. ⁶ left. ⁷ no after habytacyon.

⁸ weepe and. ⁹⁻⁹ good Lord. ¹⁰ of me after pety.

¹¹⁻¹¹ that I may. ¹² faire. ¹³ Ladie.

¹⁴ the Traytour.

The abbot of Cluny and Clariet's royal suitors at Blaye resolve to send for her from Bordeaux.



The abbot admires the kings, and especially Florence.

The maids and knights whom Brohart had bidden follow Clariet to Blaye, arrive there.

The abbot thinks Clariet is with them;

but when he learns their story, how Brohart took Clariet from them, he swoons.

Hen these kynges and prynces were
aryued at Blaye, & had spoken with
the¹ abbot of Cluny / they concludyd
betwene them .iii. *that* the lady should 4
be sent for, & he that she wold frely
chose shulde be her husband / for eche of them thought
themselfe moste fayre / & thought^{2 3} there coude not
be founde .iii. goodlyer yonge princes then they were / 8
but specyally Florence, sone to the kynge of Aragon,
was most fayrest. And y^e same tyme that they were
determinyd to sende to y^e citey of Burdeaux for the
lady Clariet,⁴ came thether the knyghtes, squyers / 12
ladyes and damoysselles apoynted oy Broharte, thynk-
ynge to haue found there y^e fayre Clariet, and they
brought her robes and iowelles to aparaile her withal,
as Brohart had deuysed / they cam and lyghted at the 16
palays. the abbot of Cluny beyng at the gate, &
seyng ladyes and damoysselles comynge, thoughte²
it had bene his nece, the fayre⁵ Clariet; he wente
incontynent to⁶ them / and demaunded where his nece 20
Clariet was / 'syr,' quod the knyghtes / 'we thynke to
fynd her here with you / for yesternyghte late the lady
departed fro the citey of Burdeaux to come to you /
and Brohart came for her, who with syr Barnarde 24
wente with her, and they commaunded vs that we
shulde not fayle to be here with you at this oure' /
then they shewed all the maner how Brohart came
and⁷ had sayde to⁶ them / and when the¹ abbot of 28
Cluny hard them / he fell sodaynely to the erth in a
swounne, so that all that were there present thought² he
had bene dede / then at last he reuyued and cast vp⁸ a
great crye, and sayd, 'A, my ryght dere nese, I ought 32
to be sorowful thus to lese you in suche⁹ maner, *that*¹⁰

¹ good.

² that.

³ Fol. cli. col. 2.

⁴ there.

⁵ Ladie.

⁶ vuto.

⁷ what he.

⁸ out.

⁹ this.

¹⁰ I.

wold to our lorde ¹Iesu chryst¹ that I were vnder the
 erth, for I wolde lyue no lenger in this world / a, thou
 false traytour Brohart, thy kyn² dyd neuer good /
 4 O Barnarde, wher is becom your noblenes, yet I can not
 byleue *that* ye be anything culpable' / anon thes newes
 were knowen i[n]³ the town, so *that* all the kynges &
 princes were aduerteysed of the ⁴mater / ⁵they came
 8 hastily to the paleys wheras they founde the abbot in
 sore wepynges. whome they had slayne & ⁶it had not
 bene for y^e good renowne that they knewe to be in
 hym / therfore they forbare hym / then euery man
 12 mounted on⁷ theyr horses & rode toward⁸ Burdeaux,
 wheras they founde the burgesses and the comon people
 in great cryes and wepynges, bewaylyng for⁹ duke
 Huon & the duches Esclaramonde,¹⁰ and¹¹ Claryet
 16 theyr doughter, who was lost and betraied by Brohart /
 when the abbot of Cluny and all¹² the other prynces
 were entered in to Bordeaux and sawe suche sorowe
 made there that¹³ they all fell to wepynge / & as they
 20 were in this sorow there came thether .vi. men bryng-
 yng with them syr Barnarde dede, whom they had
 found drownid in the ryuer of Geroune / if y^e sorowe
 was great before, then it was renewed when they sawe
 24 Barnarde dede; if I shulde reherse the sorow that was
 made *that* daye in the citey of Burdeaux as well of the
 prynces as of the abbot and comon people, it shuld be
 ouer¹³longe to reherse / then the kynges and prynces,
 28 well aduerteysed of the lynngage and parentes issued of
 y^e blode of Brohart, and how alwayes they haue bene
 full of treason, they were serchid out in euery plase in
 the citey, as well men as women and chyldren there
 32 were found out to the nombre of .lxx. persons / they

The kings are
 wrathful with the
 abbot.

All ride to
 Bordeaux, where
 the people are
 weeping for the
 loss of Huon,
 Esclaramonde,
 and Clariet.

Barnard's dead
 body, found in
 the Garonne,
 is brought into
 the city.

Brohart's kindred
 had always been
 full of treason,
 and they are all
 sought out,
 men, women,
 and children, to
 the number of

¹⁻¹ god. ² kindred. ³ iy in text.

⁴ Fol. cli. back, col. 1. ⁵ and. ⁶ if. ⁷ vppon.

⁸ the Citie. ⁹ the noble. ¹⁰ his wife. ¹¹ for.

¹² omitted. ¹³ too.

70, and cast into
the Garonne.

The suitors then
leave Bordeaux,

and the abbot
causes Barnard
to be buried.

were all taken and caste in to the reuer of Geroune, to the entent *that* none shulde be lefte alyue of the¹ kynrede, and neuer² to be had in remembraunce / after this³ done y^e kynges and prynces departed out of 4 the citey & rode in to theyr⁴ countrees ryght sorowfull and sore dyspleased for the lesynge of the lady Claryet; and the abbot abode styll at Bur⁵deaux and buried Barnarde, who was⁶ sore complayned⁷ of all⁸ the 8 people. Now let vs leue spekyng of them and retourne to y^e⁹ lady Claryet who was all alone on¹⁰ the mountayne.

¶ How the lady Claryet all alone cam to the 12 see syde, wheras aryued the kyng of Granad in a ship, who toke away claryet / and of other maters. Ca. C.lxi.



Ow sheweth the story¹¹ *that* after y^e 16 theues were slayne & Brohart dede, the lady Clariet abode alone vpon the mountayne with the dede men; she wept petyously, & sayd, 'O 20

¹²very god,¹² in what owre was I borne in / alas what¹³ hap & desteny haue I / it had bene better for me neuer to haue bene borne, for I se wel here I must dye / alas, I wote not whether to go, for in this Isle is nother 24 man nor woman to whome I maye go for any refu¹⁴ge.' thus sore complaynyng y^e lady went downe the mountayne, and by that tyme the shyppe that she came in was floted awaye / and as she loked into the see she 28 saw a great shyppe comynge towards that¹⁵ porte for fresshe water and for wode / ¹⁶when she sawe that she was ioyful, & thanked our lorde Iesu chryst; ¹⁶she

Clariet fears she
must die on the
deserted island.

A great ship
approaches her,
and she is joyful.

¹ that. ² more. ³ was. ⁴ owne.

⁵ Fol. cli. back, col. 2. ⁶ were. ⁷ for. ⁸ omitted.

⁹ faire. ¹⁰ vpon. ¹¹ Historie. ¹²⁻¹² good Lord.

¹³ ill. ¹⁴ Fol. clii. col. 1. ¹⁵ the. ¹⁶ and.

thoughte they had bene chrysten men / but they were
 Sarasyns and paynymes / & with them was a kynge
 who was theyr lorde & souerayne, he was kynge of
 4 Granade, and was retournynge into his countre, but he
 had suche fortune on¹ the see that he was constraynid
 to come thether; then they cast theyr ancre and toke
 lond, and the kynge, when he saw the damoyzell² on¹
 8 y^e see syde, he demaunded of her what she was and
 of what countre / 'syr,' quod she, 'syn ye wyll knowe
 of myne estate I shall shew you' / then y^e yonge³ lady
 shewed before all them that were there present how she
 12 was doughter to duke Huon⁴ of Burdeaux, and shewed
 all the aduenture that was fallen to⁵ her / when the
 kynge Sarasyn⁶ harde that he was⁷ ioyfull, and sayd /
 'fayre damoyzell,² it is happy for you that I haue
 16 founde you, for I haue no wyfe, ye shall be my wyfe
 and lye withe me this nyghte / but fyrste ye muste
 renewe⁸ your law and byleue in¹ y^e lawe of Mahomet,
 on¹ whome I do byleue' / when the⁹ lady harde the
 20 paynyme kyng she sayd, 'god forbede that I shuld leue
 the lawe of Iesu Chryste to byleue ¹⁰on¹⁰ Mahomet,
 I had rather haue all my members drawen one pece fro
 another with wylde horses then to be wyfe to suche a
 24 man as ye be' / when the kyng harde y^e damoyssel
 that she set so lytel³ pryce³ by hym he had great
 dyspleasure therat, & lyfte vp his hand and gaue her
 on¹ the cheke ¹¹suche a blowe that y^e blode ran out of
 28 her mouthe & nose, so that she fel to the erth, wherof
 he was sore blamed of his men / and he said to⁵ them,
 'whye, syrs, ¹²hard you not¹² how she dyspyssed our
 lawe and set no more by me then yf I were¹³ a boy';
 32 then he commaunded that they shuld take & cast her

It belongs to the
 saracen king of
 Granade, who is
 on board.

He sees Clariet,
 and asks her her
 name and
 country.

He offers to
 marry her, but
 orders her first
 to become
 Mahomedan.

Clariet declares
 she will never be
 the king's wife.

The king in anger
 strikes her on the
 cheek.

¹ vpon. ² Ladie. ³ omitted. ⁴ Huon, duke.
⁵ vnto. ⁶ Sarazin kinge. ⁷ right. ⁸ deny.
⁹ faire. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ in the law of. ¹¹ Fol. clii. col. 2.
¹²⁻¹² did you not hear. ¹³ had been but.

He bids his men
cast her in the
sea;

but they carry
her on board ship.

When the ship
sails away, the
king sees her on
board, and
threatens to have
his pleasure of
her.

She kneels before
him and begs for
mercy.

She prays to the
Virgin,

and a great storm
rises to aid her.

into the see / and he departed fro her in great dis-
pleasure *that* she answered hym so rudely / then the
sarasyngs came & toke the lady rudely and caried her
into the shyp, and so sauēd her, that¹ the kyng knew 4
not therof / then when the kyng cam agayne to
the shyp they hoysed² in³ theyr ancrs and made⁴
sayle, & had good wynd; then as the kyng walked vp
& downe in the shyp he sawe the damoyzell within the 8
shyp, wherof he was⁵ abashed, for he⁶ had⁶ thought
that his men had drownid her / then he regarded⁷ her
and thoughte that he neuer sawe so fayre a damoyzell,⁸
& so he desired her with all his hart, and sayde to⁹ 12
her, 'fayre damoyzell,⁸ now ye be here your denyall
shall not auayle you, for this nyght ye shall lye with
me⁶ al nakyd¹⁰ / when¹⁰ Claryet harde the paynyme
kyng / deuoutly she called on¹¹ our lorde¹² Iesu chryst,¹² 16
& humbely requyryng hym to preserue her *virgynyte*
& to bryng her out of the handes of y^e sarasyngs /
¹³then she kneled downe before y^e kyng, humbely
desyryng hym to haue marcy¹⁴ of her, & said how she 20
was content to folowe his pleasure as sone as he came
into his owne contre / 'wel,' quod the kyng, 'whether
ye wyl or not ye must suffer my pleasure / for I wyl
not depart fro ye tyl¹⁵ ye¹⁶ haue lyen with me¹⁷ one 24
nyght / and that I may holde you in myne armes' /
¹³when she vnderstoode hym she began sore to wepe,
desyrynge¹² the *virgyn* Mary¹² to socoure and ayde¹⁸ her
at that tyme / for otherwyse she saw¹⁹ well she was but 28
lost / therwith there²⁰ rose vp²⁰ so great a wynde and
so horryble that the see that was calme and peaseable
began to ryse⁶ and swell⁶ so maruaylously that the

1 but. 2 drew. 3 vp. 4 hoysed vp. 5 sore.
6-6 omitted. 7 looked vpon. 8 Ladie. 9 vnto.
10 the faire Ladie. 11 vpon. 12-12 god. 13 and.
14 pittie. 15 vntill. 16 I. 17 you.
18 aide before succour. 19 Fol. clii. back, col. 1.
20-20 arose.

- wawes were as hye as mountaynes, and the wynde¹ so great *that* whether the sarasyns wolde or not it behoued them to abandon theyr shyp to y^e wynde² and
- 4 wether,² wherof they were in suche fere that the kyng and all other had great doute of the³ dethe; ^{The king and all his men think they will die.} theyr sayle was all to torne with y^e wynd, & nere hande the shyp perysshed, they cryed⁵ vp on theyr god
- 8 Mahomet for socour and ayde; the kyng was in such fere that he had⁶ no lyste to desyre the fayre⁷ Claryet of her loue, who was sore afrayde & pale for fere / this tourmente and tempeste endured all the nyghte / & ^{The king is sore afraid.}
- 12 they were dreuen the same nyght be yonde valence y^e great / and in the mornynge they sawe y^e towne of Tours, to the whiche porte the wynde draue them / ^{The next day the wind drives them to the town of Tours,}
- ⁸when the paynyns saw *that* they were aryued there
- 16 they were⁹ sorowfull, for they knew well¹⁰ the towne was christened / they saw no maner how to eschew it, but they had rather to be as selaues all theyr lyues then to be drownyd in the see / the same tyme ther was
- 20 aryued at the same porte a noble knyght namyd syr Peter of Aragon; ^{where a brave knight, Sir Peter of Arragon, had just arrived.} ⁸when he saw the other shyp comynge to the porte by constraynte of the wynde, and sawe well without it were socoured the shyp shuld be
- 24 perysshed agaynst the rocke, wherby they within and all the ryches shulde be perysshed and drowned / then he cryed to the Galeyes that laye in the porte to go and socoure the straung shyp / ^{The Saracens' ship is nearly wrecked, when Sir Peter goes in his galleys to her rescue.} ⁸then the maryners
- 28 wente to the see and came to the shyppe.
- ¹¹¶ when the Sarasyns sawe that they were in fere to be slayne, then there came two paynyns to the damoyzell to haue taken her and to haue cast her into
- 32 the see. Then she toke the mast of the shyppe in her armes and helde it so faste that they coude not drawe ^{The Saracens fear the Christians will slay them, and endeavour to fling Clariet overboard; but she clings to the mast, and cannot be moved.}

¹ was. ²⁻² omitted. ³ their. ⁴ for.
⁵ and called. ⁶ now. ⁷ Ladie. ⁸ and. ⁹ right.
¹⁰ that. ¹¹ Fol. clii. back, col. 2,

The Arragonese
enter the ship
and see her
struggling with
the men.

Peter asks the
Saracens how she
came there.

In anger at their
cruelty, he and
his sailors slay
all the Saracens
except the king.

The king tells
Peter how he
found Clariet.

Peter replies that
he must accept
Christ or die.

The king refuses
to abandon
Mahomet,

her fro it / then the Aragonyse began to aproche to the
shyppe, and cast their hokes to ioynne to gether. The
lady in the shyppe had great fere / the whiche was no
maruayle / howbeit she was ioyfull when she knew¹ 4
they that came were chrystened / then the Aragonys
by the cordes and ropes enterid into the shyppe /
²when Peter of Aragon & his company were entered
into the shyp he sawe the damoyseyl³ sore wepyng / 8
then he demaunded of the Sarasyns where they had
get⁴ that prynces / 'ryghte nowe⁵ I sawe howe ye wold
haue taken & cast her into the see and⁶ I had not
come hastely' / then one of them sayd / 'syr, we be of 12
Granade, and fortune of y^e see hath dreuyn vs hether,
we be redy to be your sclaues or els to pay raunsome
at your pleasure.' 'Paynymys,' quod peter, 'all the
golde in y^e worlde shall not saue your lyues / none of 16
you shal scape' / then he commaunded that they
shulde all be slayne, and that none shulde⁷ scape alyue,
the which was done incontynente / all were slayne
excepte the kyng, of whome Peter of Aragone de- 20
maunded whye he wolde haue drowned that noble
damoyseyl, and where they⁸ founde her / 'syr,' quod
y^e kyng, 'we knowe her not / nor what she is, for we
founde her all alone vpon a rocke in an Isle within the 24
see. And when I sawe the great beaute and bountye
that was in her I couetyd her, and caused her to be put
into my shyppe, thynkyng to ha[ue] hadde my pleasure
of her, but she wolde⁹ in no wyse suffer me / wherfore 28
I was displeasyd withe her' / 'well,' quod Peter, 'ye
shall be slayne and go after your men with out ye wyl
byleue in Iesu chryst and renounce the lawe of
Mahomet' / 'syr,' quod the paynym, 'I had rather¹⁰ be 32
slayne all quycke then to leue my holy law and to take

¹ that. ² and. ³ Ladie. ⁴ gotten
⁵ (quoth hee). ⁶ if. ⁷ shall. ⁸ had.
⁹ Fol. cliii. col. 1. ¹⁰ to.

- that byleue that ye ar of' / when Peter hard hym saye
 so he gaue hym with his sworde suche a stroke on¹ the
 hede *that* he claue it to the tethe, and the kynge
 4 fel downe dede, wherof y^e lady Claryet was² ioyfull.
 Then Peter came to³ her and demaunded what she was
 and where the paynyms⁴ founde her / 'syr,' quod the
 damoyzell,⁵ 'I was borne in a parte of fraunce in a
 8 towne named Nautes, in breтайne. 'My father was of
 Lisbon, and he had great desyre to se his frendes, so he
 entered into a shyp and two of my bretherne and my
 selfe & dyuers other marchautes together, & when we
 12 had thought to haue entered into y^e hauen at Lysbone,
 a great horryble wynde toke vs so that we were fayne
 to abandon our shyp and to let it go by the grace
 of god and at the wyl of the wynde and wether / then
 16 we passed the straytes of Marocke, and then our shyppe
 ran agaynste a rocke & brast⁷ all to peces, so that my
 father and all that were in the shyppe were drowned /
 and by the grace of god I sate on⁸ a sacke of wolle and
 20 helde me faste, & then the waues brought me to the
 lond syde, wherof I thanke god / and within an owre
 after this hethen kynge aryued there *with* his company
 by fortune of the se, and so they toke me into theyr
 24 shyppe / and the kynge sore⁹ enforced hymselfe to
 haue had his pleasure of me / and then by fortune
 of another tempest we aryued here, wheras ye haue
 slayne hym and all his.'¹⁰ ¹¹'fayre damoyzell,' quod
 28 Peter of Aragon, 'ye maye thanke god that ye be come
 into myne handes' / 'syr,' quod she, 'I knowe well¹² yf
 ye had not bene I had bene loste for euer / & therefore,
 syr, as longe as god¹³ hath geuen¹³ me lyfe I wyll be
 32 gladde to serue you as the moste lowest chaumberer¹⁴ in

and Peter kills
him.

Clariet tells Peter
a false story of
her misfortunes.

She offers to
serve Peter, who
has saved her,
as a maid of his
household.

¹ vpon. ² right. ³ vnto. ⁴ had. ⁵ Ladie.
⁶ and. ⁷ burst. ⁸ vppon. ⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ men.
¹¹ Fol. cliii. col. 2. ¹² that. ¹³⁻¹³ shall giue.
¹⁴ Chamberlaine.

Peter promises to protect her.

He sails with her to Tarragona, where the king of Arragon was staying.

The king learns of his cousin Peter's approach, and goes to the shore to meet him.

Peter relates his adventures.

your house, and put my body and honeste into goddes handes and youers' / 'fayre damoyzell,' quod Peter, 'as long as I leue ye shall not lacke / for by the grace of god your body and youre honoure shall be well ⁴saued / and peradventure ¹maye¹ haue such a husband that ye shall thynke your selfe² happy / our lorde³ dyd⁴ you a great grace when ye fell into my handes.' Then Peter of Aragon toke the damoyzell by the ⁸hande and commaundyd to hoyses vp the sayles, and to retourne to ⁴Taragon, a citey betwene Barselone and Valence the great / wheras then was the kyng of Aragon / ⁵so longe they sayled nyghte and daye that at ¹²the laste they sawe the towers of Taragone, wherof they thanked god / and as they aproched ⁶vnto⁶ the citey the kyng of Aragon was in his palais lokinge out at a wyndowe / then he sawe comynge in the see .vi. galeys ¹⁶and a great shyppe, wherof he was abasshed, and maruayled what it myght be / for he knewe them not bycause of the great shyppe / then they *that* knew them came to the kyng and sayde how it was his ²⁰cosyn, Peter of Aragon, ⁷the whiche⁷ is comen home in sauetye, thanked be god. Then the kyng and his lordes with hym wente downe and wente to the see syde, where as they founde the noble man, Peter of ²⁴Aragon his cosyn, and all his companye with hym. Then the kyng enbraced hym and sayd, 'cosyn, ye are ryght hartely welcom, I am ioyfull ⁸of your good aduenture. I pray you, cosynne, shewe me where ²⁸haue ye get this great shyppe that semeth to be so ryche' / then peter shewed⁴ hym all the aduenture, and how he rescued the damoyssel out of the handes of the Sarasyns / and he shewed her to⁴ the kyng, and ³²sayde / 'syr, I byleue in this world there is not a

¹⁻¹ you shall. ² right. ³ god. ⁴ vnto.
⁵ and. ⁶⁻⁶ neere to. ⁷⁻⁷ who.

⁸ Fol. cliii. back, col. 1.

- fayrer, swetter, nor more gracious,¹ nor none that
 semeth more to be extraute of a hye lynage / the
 kyng behelde the damoyzell, and she kneled downe
 4 before hym / 'fayre damoyzell,' quod the kyng, 'I The king asks of
 praye you shewe me what ye be and of what lynage / Clariet her lineage
 and cuntry.
 and fro whence ye come' / the damoyzell,² who was in
 great fere to name herselfe trewly / for fere lest she
 8 shulde be in yll handes / ³then she³ caste downe her
 hede⁴ and began to wepe so that the teres fell fro her
 eyen, and sayde / 'syr, I requyre you desyre no suche Clariet hesitates
 thyng of me at this tyme, for I know not who is my to tell, for she
 does not know
 whether he is
 friend or foe.
 12 parente nor of what lynage I am of' / when the kyng
 vnderstode the damoyssel and sawe how she wepte
 he had great petye of her, and comforted her as moch
 as he myght⁵ / then Peter shewed⁶ the kyng al that Peter tells the
 16 the damoyssel had shewed hym / before, a[n]d⁷ howe³ king all he knows
 of her.
 'she was founde by the sarasyns,⁸ whome I haue slayne,
 she was happy that she fell in⁹ my handes / for by the
 grace of god I shall se her well maryed and set forthe' /
 20 then the kyng and Peter wente fro the shyppes into y^e
 towne, & causid the damoyssel to be brought after She is taken to
 Peter's lodging.
 them with two lentylnen in to Peters logynge, and as
 she passed thughe the towne she was regarded with
 24 ladyes and damoysselles, and they al praysed her All the towns-
 beautye, sayeng one to another that there was neuer a people admire her
 fayrer² borne / nor more lykely to become of a noble beauty,
 blode. ¹⁰Great feast¹¹ was made in the citey for y^e and there is great
 28 comynge home of Peter of Aragon, and of the damoy- feasting made.
 sell that he had brought with hym; the same tyme
 Florence y^e / kynges sone had bene on¹² hontynge, Florence, the
 king's son, re-
 turns from hunt-
 ing, and he
 wonders at the
 merry-making.
 32 the stretes hanged and the ladyes & damoyssels & other
 makynge so great ioye and feast¹¹ / he was abasshed,

¹ creature. ² Ladie. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ presently.⁵ could. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ and in text. ⁸ (quoth he).⁹ to. ¹⁰ Fol. cliii. back, col. 2. ¹¹ feasting. ¹² a.

He is told of
Peter's capture of
the Saracen ship.

He goes to Peter's
lodging and sees
Clariet.

Florence is struck
by her beauty,

and Clariet ad-
mires his beauty.

They fall deeply
in love with one
another.

and demaunded of a burges yf there were any newe
weddyng / and ¹what they were¹ that the people made
so great ioye and feast⁴ / 'syr,' quod the burges, 'the
feast that is made nowe and the ioye is for the comyng 4
home of Peter of Aragon, who hathe bene so longe out,
for that god hath sent hym good aduenture, for he hath
wonne and conquered the great shyppe of Malyke,²
wherin was y^e kyng of Granade, great ryches he hath 8
wonne, and he hath slayne all the sarasyns that were
in the shyppe.' Then Florence restid not tyl he came
to his cosyn, Peter of Aragon's logynge, & made hym
good chere, and said, 'cosyn, ye are welcome home, 12
and I am ryght ioyous³ of youre good aduenture' /
'syr,' quod Peter, 'I thanke god I haue had good
hap⁴ / & syr, I shall shewe you one thyng that I
haue wonne wherof I am moste ioyfull.' then he 16
shewed hym the damoyzell who was sober and sad,
and shewed hym how he wanne her / when Florence
sawe the damoyzell his harte sprange for ioye / and y^e
more he beheld her the more fayrer she semyd. And 20
the damoyzell behelde hym ryght humbely / & she
thoughte⁵ she neuer saw⁶ so fayer a⁶ yonge man before,
nor better made nor formed of all his membres.
Florence that⁷ behelde the damoyssel, by reason wherof 24
the darte of loue strake hym to the harte / wherof the
wounde coude not lyghtely be helyd / I⁸ maye well
saye that in all the worlde in that tyme coude not be
founde agayne such two⁹ parsones, for the great beaute 28
wherwith they were garnyssed coude not be dyscryued /
for god & nature had no thyng¹⁰ for gotten in fourmyng
of them / swetely they regarded ech other / at that
tyme yf Florence had knowen that she had bene the 32
fayre Clariet of Burdeaux he wolde haue maryed her

¹⁻¹ wherefore it was.

² Maliga.

³ ioyfull.

⁴ fortune.

⁵ that.

⁶⁻⁶ a fairer.

⁷ so.

⁸ Fol. cliiii. col. 1.

⁹ such.

¹⁰ nothing *after* forgotten.

incontynent; she was greatly taken in the loue of
 Florence, and so was he with her, then he desyred
 with all his harte to knowe what she was / for his
 4 hart gaue hym that she shulde be come of some noble
 blode, and sayd to¹ hymselfe that he desyred moche to
 know it, and that in all the world ther was no thyng
 he loued so well, & thought that without her loue
 8 he coude not longe endure / thynkyng to desyre her to
 take hym for her louer, and *that* yf she refuse hym
 that shorte shulde be his lyfe / but he² thought to be
 so bold as to speke to her. Thus Florence, taken with
 12 y^e fyre of loue, toke the fayre damoyzell by the lylly
 whyght hande & caused her to sit downe by hym /
 then he drewe her a lytel aparte to the entent *that*
 none shulde here hym / ³then he sayd, 'fayre damoy-
 16 sell, ye be welcome into these partyes / I pray you
 'shewe me what ye be, and of what lynngage' / 'syr,'
 quod the damoyzell, 'lytell shal you wyne when ye
 know the sartayne what I am / but synne it pleaseth
 20 you to knowe it² I shall shewe you / syr, know for
 trouthe I am doughter to a pouer honest man of the
 countre, and in dayes passed was one of the chaumberers
 with the duches Esclaramond of Burdeaux; And, syr,
 24 by great treason I was stollen awaye / wherby syn
 I haue suffered moche pouertye, so that yf god & this
 noble⁵ man, Peter of Aragon, had not rescued me I had
 bene loste for euer / & therefore, syr, synne I am pouer
 28 and desolate / I requyre you in the honoure of our
 lorde⁶ that ye wyll not requyre me of any velany of my
 body and honeste nother in dede nor worde / and, syr,
 I byleue suerly no more ye thynke to do / for I had
 32 rather be hewen al to peeces then any creature shulde
 haue pleasure of my body without I were maryed' /
 'fayre damoyzell,' quod he, 'I swere by god that me

Florence asks of
her her history.

She falsely tells
him she is a poor
man's daughter,
and a servant of
the duchess
Esclaramonde.

¹ vnto. ² omitted. ³ and. ⁴ to.

⁵ Fol. cliiii. col. 2. ⁶ god.

Florence promises
to protect her
from all dis-
honour.

If his father were
dead he would
marry her.

Clariet begs him
to dismiss such a
thought.

She secretly
regrets that
Florence does not
know her true
rank.

Florence begs her
to take him for
her servant, and
confesses his love.

created that of me nor of any other leuyng man ye shal
not be desyred agaynst your honoure / for I knowe no
man leuyng *that* wolde requyre you of any dyshonour
or saye any thyng that shulde not be agreable to you, 4
but I shall make hym to dye of an yll dethe / and I
wyll that ye know¹ fro hensforth I wyll be your trew
louer / and none shall make departure of vs two / and
yf it were so that my father were dede I wold neuer 8
haue other wyfe but you' / 'syr,' quod the damoyzell,²
'I pray you forbere spekyng of any such wordes / for
it were not mete for the sone of a Kyng so to lowe³
hymselfe as to set his loue vpon so pouer a mayd 12
as I am / ⁴ye set your harte ⁵in to lowe a place⁵ / for yf
y^e kyng your father parseyue any thinge *that* ye shuld
set your loue on⁶ me, he wolde sone put me to dethe' /
therwith she caste downe her hede and sayd to her selfe / 16
'O ⁷very God,⁷ yf this yong prynce knew suerly what I
were, yt myght well be that he wolde haue me in
maryage / as yet in all my lyfe I neuer set my loue
vpon any parson but this yonge man whome I neuer 20
saw before, ⁸maketh me to thynke that⁹ I neuer
thought before / so¹⁰ that it maketh my blode and all
my membres to trymble / I am in worse case for his
¹¹loue then he is for me' / therwith she began sore to 24
wepe / when Florence sawe her he was ryght sorowfull,
& sayd, 'fayre damoyzell, I requyre you to take me
for your trewe and faythfull seruaunte / otherwyse
I can not se how I shulde¹² leue longe' / 'syr,' quod 28
she, 'I am wel content to graunt you my loue / for¹³
that your dede and thought be vpon goodnes and
honour / for yf I may parseyue in any maner that your
thoughts be otherwyse ye haue loste my loue for euer.' 32

¹ that.
⁵⁻⁵ to loue.
⁹ which.

² Ladie.
⁶ vpon.
¹⁰ omitted.
¹² shall.

³ debase.
⁷⁻⁷ good Lord.
¹¹ Fol. cliiii. back, col. 1
¹³ so.


⁴ beware how.

⁸ it.

'Fayre louer,' quod Florence, 'haue no doughte therof
that euer I shall haue any thoughte of velany agaynste
you.' Thus as ye haue harde was the fyrste aquaynt-
4 aunce betwene these two louers, that is to saye, the
fayre Claryet doughter to duke Huon of Burdeaux,
& of Florence son to y^e kyng of Aragon.

¶ Howe the kyng defended¹ his sone Flor-
8 ence that he shuld not be so hardy² to
fal aquaynted withe the fayre damoyssel³
Claryet / and how Florence promysed the
kyng, his father, to delyuer into his handes
12 the kyng of Nauerne⁴ presoner, in case⁵ he
wyl⁶ be content at his retourne that he
may⁷ haue the new found damoyssel / the
which thing the kyng promysed / but he
16 dyd it not, for he made the damoyssel to
be taken, and had drowned her if Peter
of Aragon had not bene, who rescued⁸
her.⁹

Ca. C.lxii.

20  Hen Florence had long deuysed with
the damoyssel / he toke¹¹ leue of her
and of Peter of Aragon his cosyn,
and then he retourned to the kyng
24 his father, and the nexte day he wente
agayne to the damoysselles lodgyng / so ofte he
resorted thether that¹² brute ran in the palays and also
in y^e towne how that Florence was amorous of the
28 damoyssel that Peter of Aragon had brought thether /
13 y^e mater at the last was shewed to kyng Garyn his
father / wherwith he was so sorowfull that he was all

The next day
Florence visits
Clariet again,
and so often he
came that all sai
that he was in
love with her.

¹ forbad. ² as. ³ Ladie. ⁴ Nauarre. ⁵ that.
⁶ would. ⁷ might. ⁸ and saued. ⁹ from the death.
¹⁰ Fol. cliiii. back, col. 2. ¹¹ his. ¹² great. ¹³ and.

The king, his
father, learns the
rumour, and
angrily swears to
slay Clariet if it
be true.

Florence confesses
his visits to
Clariet to the
king.

The king warns
the young man to
avoid her.

Florence pleads
that it is the part
of youth to love,

in a rage, and sayde to¹ hymselfe / 'a, good lord, this
new founde damoyzell shall² wynne my sone yf she
can and get hym fro me; I knowe well by reason
of the great beautye that is in her my sone shall² be ⁴
enamoryd of her, but by the lorde³ I beleue on⁴ yf I se
that my son other go or come to⁵ her, as it is sayd he
dothe, that aquayntauns shall be derely solde⁶ / for
with myne owne ⁷handes I shall sle her' / ryght sory ⁸
& angery was kynge Guaryn with his son Florence and
with the damoyzell / ⁹he sente for his sone / & when
he was before hym, the kynge demaunded hym fersly
for whense he came / 'syr,' quod Florence, 'I haue ¹²
bene a sportynge in my cosyn, Peter of Aragons house /
and haue passed the tyme there with the newe come
damoyssel / the moste fayreste that euer was borne,
and⁹ the moste ientylest and best taught, ryghte fayre ¹⁶
and swete ar her deuyses.' 'Florence,' quod the kynge,
'I charge the in as moche as thou fereste my dys-
pleasure, that thou come no more at her, beware that
thou fallest not ¹⁰in amours with ¹⁰her / yf thou do ²⁰
thou werte neuer so yll aquainted with any loue, nor
there neuer came so yll aduenture to the damoyzell
yf she draw the to loue her / for yf I may knowe that
thou goest thether any more I shall set her in suche ²⁴
a pryson wheras I shall cause her to ende her dayes
myserably' / 'father,' quod Florence, 'me thynke ye do
great wronge to let¹¹ vs to playe & ¹²to deuyse¹² together
in all goodnes & honour, god forbede¹³ that I shuld ²⁸
entende any wayes to ¹⁴haue her and¹⁴ disceyue her;
dere father, remember¹⁵ ye haue bene yong, therefore
suffer that youthe may pas the¹⁶ tyme in goodnes and
honoure with vs as it hathe done with you / now ye ³²

¹ within. ² wyll. ³ god that. ⁴ vpon.

⁵ vnto. ⁶ bought. ⁷ Fol. clv. col. 1.

⁹ and and in text. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ enamoured of.

⁸ then. ¹¹ forbid.

¹²⁻¹² sport. ¹³ defend. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ omitted.

¹⁵ that.

¹⁶ their.

are a¹ .iiii. score yere or more ye ought to thinke of no
 thyng but to serue god, and eat, & drinke, and slepe;
 it ought not to trouble you thoughe our youthe pas the
 4 tyme in good warkes / ye ought to be content *that* we
 loue by amours as ye haue done or² this / for to the
 damoyzell I bere all honoure, ³I wyll loue her how so
 euer yt be taken fayre or fowle / ther is no man leuyng
 8 shall let me as longe as lyfe is ⁴in my body / she is
 fayre and ientyll / and it is sayd how⁵ I am fayre, and
⁶how⁶ that it were a mete copyll of ⁷vs twayne⁸ to be
 ioyned together in maryage, ³therefore, father, I praye
 12 you blame no more me nor the damoyssel, for in all
 that I can⁹ I am ¹⁰hers¹⁰ and she is myne.'

as all old men
have done when
young.

He loves Clariet
honourably,

and begs his
father to favour
their union.

¶ when the kynge¹¹ vnderstode his sone, in great
 yre and displeasure he sayd, 'O thou ungareyous lad,¹²
 16 lytell thou praysest or honourest me in that thou wylte
 do thus agaynst my wyll; knowe for sartayne yf I may
 lyue¹³ tyll tomorowe in y^e mornynge I shall make a
 departure of your two loues' / when Florence hard his
 20 father, he sayde / 'my dere lord and father, and¹⁴ god
 wyll ye shall not do as ye haue sayd / for yf ye do
 with myne owne handes I shall slee my selfe, for I
 wyll not lyue one day after' / when the kyng hard
 24 that he was¹⁵ sorowfull for fere of lesyng of his sone /
 & studyed in¹⁶ hymselfe what to do / then he sayde,
 'fayre sone, take thyne armure and go and seke
 aduentures as I haue done in my tyme, then I shall
 28 mary the to some wyfe, suche one as thou canste finde
 in any countre, thoughe she be neuer so great or noble
 I shall cause the to haue her / yf thou wylte leue¹⁷
 & forsake this newe founde damoyssel / for by her no
 32 welthe nor honoure can come to¹⁸ the / it shulde be a

The king is very
angry at his
words.

If aught happen
to Clariet,
Florence will slay
himself.

The king loves
him too well to
put his life in
peril, and bide
him go abroad
and seek adven-
tures.

¹ about. ² before. ³ and.

⁶ that. ⁶⁻⁶ omitted. ⁷ for.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ her Louer. ¹¹ had well.

¹⁴ if. ¹⁵ right. ¹⁶ within.

¹⁸ vnto.

⁴ Fol. clv. col. 2.

⁸ two. ⁹ doe.

¹² Son. ¹³ but.

¹⁷ leue *after* forsake.

The king of
Navarre threat-
ens Arragon;

Florence shall
fight against him.

But Florence will
have no wife but
Clariet.

The king of
Arragon warns
Peter that if
Florence con-
tinue to visit
Clariet at his
lodging, that she
shall surely die.

A messenger
brings news that
the king of
Navarre has
ravaged Arragon,

great yl¹ to² me³ / that after my dayes it shuld be
said that a new found damoyzell shuld be lady &
quene of my realme / thou knoweste well howe thyne
vnclē, the kynge of Nauerne,⁴ maketh me great warre / 4
for a debate that is lately fallen betwene hym and me /
I know wel now at this moneth of Apryl he wyll come
& inuade my realme /⁵ ther⁶fore, fayre⁷ sone, seke for
some other wyfe and let thys foley pas; then I shall 8
make thee a knyght, and then helpe to ayde & defend
my realme agaynst the kynge of Nauerne⁴ thyne vnclē /
thou arte byg and stronge ynoughe to defend my
londe.' 7 'Father,' quod Florence, 'speke no more to² 12
me, for I wyl neuer haue⁸ other wyfe but this fayre
damoyzell, whome I loue enterely' / 'sone,' quod the
kynge / 'thou abaseste thy selfe ouer lowe, nor there is
no frende nor kynne⁹ that thou haste that wyll kepe 16
any company with *thee*, but they wyll clene fle fro the;
therefore, fayre⁷ sone, put away fro the this foly /
beware in as moche as thou thynkest to haue my realme
after my disceas, and on¹⁰ the payne to be banysshed¹¹ 20
take not her agaynst my wyll.'

Then the kyng called to² hym his cosyn, Peter of
Aragon, and charged hym that yf Florence his
sone came any more to his logynge that he shulde 24
incontynent¹² shewe it hym¹² / 'for I promyse¹³ by the
faythe that I owe to² our lorde¹⁴ Iesu chryst,¹⁴ yf he
come thether any more I shal cause the damoyzell that
is in your howse to be slayne.' Florence was ryght 28
sorowfull when he hard the pleasure of the kynge his
father; thus as the kynge rebuked his sone there came
in a knyght and kneled downe and sayd: 'syr, I haue
brought you yl tydinges, for the kynge of Nauerne⁴ 32

¹ euill. ² vnto. ³ thee. ⁴ Nauarre. ⁵ and.
⁶ Fol. clv. back, col. 1. ⁷ good. ⁸ no. ⁹ kindred.
¹⁰ vppon. ¹¹ out of my Countrey. ¹²⁻¹² tell him of it.
¹³ (quoth hee). ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ god.

is entered into your realme, and settethe all your countre
 in flambe and fyre, and nere to your citey they be
 to the nombre mo then .xxx.M. men, besyde the great
 4 batayle *that* cometh after, wherin ther is a¹ .lx.M.
 men / they exyle your countre, ²they sle men, women
 and chylidren; they spare nother yonge ³nor olde, it is
 4 nede that ye make haste & to brynge your men
 8 together to resyste your enemyes' / when kyng Gauryne
 hard the messanger he was⁵ sorowful; then he called
 to⁶ hym his cosyn, Peter of Aragon, who was his chefe
 constable, and sayde, 'syrs, make redy our men to
 12 resyste our enemyes' / then he called to⁶ hym Florence
 his sone, & sayd / 'fayre sone, take thyne harnays⁷ and
 shewe thy vertue agaynst thyne enemyes who wasteth
 my realme. ²Take on⁸ the chefe charg and lede myne
 16 host / for I haue no pusaunce nor strenth to do it, for⁹
 the great age that I am of; I haue leued so longe *that*
 I can no more ryde / therfore defende thou the londe
that thou shalte holde after me, and then doest thou
 20 ¹⁰wysely' ¹⁰/ 'father,' quod Florence, ¹¹'not and god
 wyll I shall put my harnayes¹¹ on my backe to defende
 your lond without¹² ye wyll geue me in maryage
 y^e fayre damoyssel¹³ in my cosyn, Peter of Aragons
 24 house / yf ye wyll do me that courtoysye and promyse
 me to do it / I shall delyuer into your handes your
 enemye as presoner to do *with* hym your pleasure,
 otherwyse loke not that I shall do anythyng.' when
 28 the kynge saw that his sone wold none otherwyse do¹⁴ /
 then he commaunded all his other men, euery man, to
 arme him¹⁵ & go and resyste his enemyes / the which
 they dyd incontynent; ²they issued out into the feldes
 32 mo then .x.M. men, & ¹⁶Peter of Aragon had the ledyng

and is slaying
 with 30,000 men
 all the
 Arragones.

Florence is
 ordered by his
 father to lead the
 host against the
 enemy;

but he will not go
 unless he is per-
 mitted to marry
 Clariet.

The king orders
 his men to set out
 under Peter of
 Arragon.

¹ about. ² and. ³ Fol. clv. back, col. 2. ⁴ great.

⁵ right. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ armour. ⁸ vppon.

⁹ because of. ^{10—10} as a wise man should doe.

^{11—11} by the grace of god I will put no armour. ¹² except.

¹³ that is. ¹⁴ do *after* wold. ¹⁵ self. ¹⁶ Sir.

They meet the
army of Navarre,

and although they
fight bravely are
forced to retire.

The men of
Navarre pitch
their tents outside
Tarragona.

Florence is ad-
vised again to lead
the army: and on
his refusing,
unless his request
be granted, the
king falsely yields
to him.

The king intends
to drown Clariet
while Florence is
fighting.

of them, and they were not out of the towne two leges
but they encountered theyr enemyes / there were many
speres broken and many a knyght beten to the erth
& slayne, ¹theyr bodyes lyenge without sowles amonge 4
the horse fete / ryght valyauntly ²bare hymselfe that
day ²Peter of Aragon. ³ But he [h]ad ⁴not strenthe ⁵
suffycient, but ⁶his enemyes encreasid, wherfore he
was constrayned to recule ⁸backe towards y^e city / 8
howbeit or ⁹he entered he dyd great ¹⁰damage to ¹¹his
enemyes / when the Nauernoys saw the Aragonoys
reculed ⁸into the citey, then they pyght vp theyr tentes
and paulyons aboute the towne / ¹when kynge Gauryn 12
sawe his men retournyd, then he called his sone Flor-
ence and sayde / 'sone, take thyne harnays ¹²& go ayde
and ¹³defend the londe, the which partayneth to the after
my dysses' / 'syr,' *quod* Florence, 'that shall ¹⁴I neuer 16
do without fyrst ye promyse me to geue me the fayre
damoyssel in maryage, by that couenant that I shall
delyuer into youre handes as presoner myne vncl
the kyng of Nauerne' / when the kynge ¹⁵hard hym he 20
mused a lytell, and sayd / ¹⁶'sone, I graunt the thyne
desyre so that thou wylte delyuer me thyne vncl
the kyng of Nauerne to do with hym at my pleasure /
therfore take thyne armure & make the redy, thyne 24
armure is good and thy sworde is with the best, and yf
thou canst do as thou sayste thou shalt haue y^e fayre
damoyssell' / howbeit he sayd to hymselfe preuely that
he had rather ¹³lese one of his handes / then a straunger 28
shuld be quene after hym, for as sone as my son ¹⁷shall
be issued out of the citey I shall cause the damoyssell
to be drowned in the see / for I wyll not suffer her to
lyue though I shuld be disherited for it. Then Flor- 32

¹ and. ²⁻² did Sir. ³ behaue himselfe that day.

⁴ gad in text. ⁵ ynough. ⁶ for.

⁷ Fol. cli. [lvi.] col. 1. ⁸ retire. ⁹ before.

¹⁰ losse and. ¹¹ vnto. ¹² Armour. ¹³ to. ¹⁴ will.

¹⁵ his father. ¹⁶ My. ¹⁷ (quoth hee).

ence, herynge his father promysynge hym to haue the damoyzell, he was ryght ioyfull. But he knew not the inward yll wyll of his father, then he sayd / 'syr, then

4 I requyre you¹ sende for my loue hether / to the entent *that* she may gyrde about me² my sworde, wherby I shall be the more bolde & hardy when I come into the batayle' / y^e kyng³ dyd as his sone

8 requyred, but the sone knewe not the fathers thought; y^e kyng sente two knyghtes for the damoyzell /

⁴when she came there she was greatly regarded of all them that were there / for they had neuer sene a fayrer,

12 nor one *that* semed to be extraucte of a hye generacyon / when Florence saw her in the palays his harte rose vp,

and⁵ ran⁶ and clypped⁷ and kyssed her, and the damoyzell⁸ suffered hym with⁹ good wyll / wherwith

16 the kyng had at his hart suche sorow that he had nere¹⁰ ronne vpon them, but he forbare it bycause he sawe his sone redy to go agaynst his enemyes /

¹¹he then ayded¹¹ to arme his sone rychely, and in

20 lykewyse so dyd the¹² damoyssel / when kyng gauryn had made his sone redy the damoyzell¹³ gyrte¹⁴ aboute hym¹⁴ his sworde / then the kyng drewe it out of the shethe and therwith made hym knyght / ⁴then his hors

24 was brought to¹⁵ hym / and he lepte lightly vpon hym / ¹⁶his spere in his hand and helme on¹⁷ his hede, and shyld aboute his necke. Then Florence sayd to¹⁵ the kyng his father / 'syr, I leue with you my loue¹⁸

28 whome I loue best in all this worlde. I leue her in your kepynge, for if our lord god geue me that¹⁹

grace that I maye retourne, I shall brynge to¹⁵ you myne vncke, the kyng of Nauerne, as a presoner.' The

32 kyng gaunted to¹⁵ his sone all that he wolde desyre /

But for the present Clariet is summoned to gird on her lover's sword.

The beauty of the lovers excites general admiration, but the king sees with sorrow Florence and Clariet embrace.

The king knights Florence with the sword that Clariet had girded on.

Florence promises to capture the king of Navarre.

¹ to. ² about me *after* sword. ³ Fol. cli. [lvi.] col. 2.

⁴ and. ⁵ he. ⁶ vnto her. ⁷ embraced. ⁸ Ladi

⁹ a. ¹⁰ hand. ¹¹⁻¹¹ then he helped. ¹² faire.

¹³ did. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ *after* sworde. ¹⁵ vnto. ¹⁶ with.

¹⁷ vppon. ¹⁸ Loue. ¹⁹ the.

His father orders
his men to do
Clariet all honour
until Florence be
out of the city,
when they are to
drown her.

but he shewed¹ not the inwarde intencyon that he was purposed to do. Then the kyng commaunded .x. of his knyghtes to se the gydyng of the damoyzell and to honoure her as moche as they myghte / tyll² his sone ⁴ were out of the cetye / and then to drowne her in the see, to the entente that neuermore tydynges shulde be harde of her.

¶ How florence wente to fyghte with his ⁸ enemyes / and howe⁴ Peter of Aragon retourned towardes the towne to bryng thether presoners, and how he rescued the ⁵damoyzell Claryet fro drownynge, and how ¹² after⁶ kyng gauryn made⁷ the damoyzell to be closed up in⁸ prison. Ca. C.lxiii.



When Florence was armed and mounted he toke vp his horse fresly before y^e ¹⁶ damoyzell and blessed hym and toke⁹ leue of the kyng and of his louer¹⁰ / and so departed and rode to the gate, and all that euer¹¹ saw hym sayd how they neuer sawe ²⁰ so goodly a knyghte, nor more semyng to be fered / then he issued out of the gate and yode¹² towardes the tentes of his enemyes with .x.M. good knyghtes and hardy: the ladyes and damoysselles went to the walles ²⁴ of the citey to beholde the newe¹³ knyghte / when the Nauernoys sawe hym comynge / ther cam agaynst hym mo then .xv.M. men: & they came downe in a valey by couerte: to haue cut hym the waye betwene the ²⁸ hoste and the towne / but the valyaunt knyght,⁴ Peter of Aragon, who was with Florence / spyed them / and so made haste to be afore them: and when he sawe⁹

Florence leaves
the city with more
than 10,000
knights.

Fifteen thousand
men of Navarre
soon set upon
them.

¹ knewe.

² vntill.

³ Fol. cli. [lvi.] back, col. 1.

⁴ Sir.

⁵ faire.

⁶ afterward.

⁷ caused.

⁸ a.

⁹ his.

¹⁰ Loue.

¹¹ omitted.

¹² roade.

¹³ young.

- tyme to set on¹ his enemyes. Florence, who was sore desyrous to fulfyll his promyse to the kynge his father, toke his spere and incounteryd with a knyght with
 4 suchē vertue that he ran hym clene thurghē, and
 2 with drawynge out of his spere the Nauernous fell downe dede / then Florence sayd / ‘god hath geuen me a good begynnyngē’ / then he drewe³ his sworde and
 8 strake another on¹ y^e helme that he claue his hede to the tethe / and the thyrd & fourth he made doulourously to dye,⁴ he neuer sessed tyll⁵ he had slayne .x. of his enemyes / thus under y^e medowes of Courtoys
 12 was on⁶ horyble batayle betwene y^e Nauernois & Arragonoys / where there was on¹ both partyes suchē slauter that it was⁷ marueyle to behold it / anone Florence sworde was well knownen, for by the forse of his armes
 16 he brake the great presses, for on¹ whome so euer his stroke light he was other slayne or cast to the erth, euery man fered hym so⁸ that none dyrst abyde nor aproche⁹ to¹⁰ hym / the same tyme *that* Florence was
 20 in the batayle doyng of marueyls the fayre damoyzell Claryet was on¹ the walles of the citey with other ladies and damoysselles / regardynge the hye prowes that Florence dyd in the felde, & the ioye that she
 24 had therof was sone retourned¹¹ vnto sorowe a[n]d¹² wepynges / for kynge Gauryn who coude not for gette the mortall hate that he had to the damoyzell. ¹³he¹³ called to¹⁰ hym .x. knyghtes of them that were secrete
 28 with hym, and sayd, ‘syrs, this new founde damoyzell withe whome my sone Florence is in hote amours / she dyspleaseth me so moche *that* I can not fynde in my harte to loke on¹ her. My sone thynkethe to haue
 32 her in maryage at his retourne / but as long as he leueth he shall neuer se her more what soeuer fal

Florence fights valiantly.

He kills ten of the enemy.

None whom he meets escapes his sword.

Clariet watches him from the walls of the city.

The king of Arragon calls ten knights to him,

¹ vpon. ² Fol. cli. [lvi.] back, col. 2. ³ out. ⁴ and.

⁵ untill.

⁶ a.

⁷ great.

⁸ much.

⁹ neere.

¹⁰ vnto.

¹¹ turned.

¹² ayd in text.

¹³⁻¹³ omitted.

and bids them
cast her in the
sea.

The knights, with
heavy heart, visit
Clariet.

She demands
their will.

They tell her she
must die, and
bind her hands.

She begs them to
have mercy on
her, but they are
deaf to her
entreaty.

She is taken to
the seaside by
four men.

therof / therfore go your waye and take and cast her
into the see amonge the greatest wawes that ye can
fynde' / when these knyghtes vnderstode the kyng, who
commaunded them to do ¹this murder, they were ryght 4
sorowfull at theyr hertes / but they durste not saye naye,
nor do agaynst his wyl, for yf they had they knew
well² they shulde dye, for³ they knewe well² there
was nother marcy nor pytye in hym / therfore they 8
durste make no semblant to the contrary / they fered
so sore⁴ to dysplese hym / then they wente and toke
the damoyzell wheras she was / 'syrs,' quod she,
'what wyll ye⁵ with me, wherfore ⁶take ye⁶ me, let 12
me go; yf ye wyll⁷ any thyng with me, shew me' /
they sayd, 'damoyzell, speke no more / for your ende
is come, ye shall neuer se fayre day more:' ⁸when she
saw that she was so taken with .x. men, who went 16
thretenyng to sle her, she then cast out a great crye,
& desired god ⁸and our lady⁸ to ayde and socoure her /
then they bounde the damoysselles handes with a cord,
in suche wyse⁹ that her whyght tender skynne braste¹⁰ 20
& they bounde her so sore *that* the blode droppyd out
at her nayles / 'syrs,' quod she, 'I crye you marcy /
lytell shall ye wyne to sle me, ye shall do great synne,
syn¹¹ I haue not deserued it:' 'dame,'¹² quod they, 24
'your wordes can not auayle you / the kyng wyll not
that ye shall make anaunte to haue his sone in maryage /
for ye shal be drowned in y^e see whether ye wyll or
not, your wepyng shall not ayde you' / then .iiii. 28
rebaudes toke and bounde her, and drewe her by the
fayre⁸ here of her hede, & led her towardes y^e see syde
to haue drowned her / but often tymes it is sayde that¹³
god wyll haue sauyd can not be perysshed. This¹⁴ same 32

¹ Fol. clvii. col 1. ² that. ³ and. ⁴ much.

⁵ doe. ⁶⁻⁶ doe you take. ⁷ haue. ⁸⁻⁸ omitted

⁹ manner. ¹⁰ burst. ¹¹ seeing. ¹² Madame.

¹³ which. ¹⁴ The.

season Florence was in the batayle, wheras he fought
 with his enemyes, and¹ Peter of Aragon had take[n]²
 many presoners, and he came to³ Florence and sayde /
 4 'a, syr, I requyre you let vs retourne to the citey /
 and be content⁴ with that ye haue done this day: for
 yonder ye may se comynge all the hole hoste of the
 Nauernoise agaynste whome it is not possible for vs to
 8 endure / for they are mo then .lx. thousand men, and
 they all hateth vs to the dethe / ye haue done ynoughe,
 ye⁵ ought to be content / yf they take you none can
 saue your lyfe' / 'cosyn,' quod Florence, 'I pray you
 12 or⁶ I departe, let me iuste ones with myne vncle the
 kyng of Nauerne, whome I haue promysed to yelde as
 presoner to³ the kyng my father / & therby I shal
 haue in maryage the fayre damoyssel, my loue,⁷ and
 16 for the loue of that fayre damoyzell I shall make many
 a Nauernoys to lese theyr lyues.' 'Syr,' quod Peter,
 'syn ye desyre your owne dethe / so moche I am sory
 therof / but I wyl no longer tary here, for it is not
 20 possyble for vs to tary here without we wyl be slayne
 wyllfully / & I haue here many presoners, I will go
 lede them in to the citey and then I shall retourne
 agayne to³ you / to the entente that yf other you or I
 24 be taken presoner by them we maye be redemed agayne.'
 Then Peter wente to the citey with all his presoners;⁵
 when he was come into the citey / he hard a great
 noyse abought the market place, wherof he had great
 28 maruayle, and wente thether / and then he sawe there
 .iiii. fowle glotons⁸ drawynge the fayre damoyzell
 Claryet towards the see syde to drowne her / when
 he saw that he was neuer so sorowful in all his lyfe
 32 before / and incontynente⁹ let go his presoners and
 drew out his sword and cryed to³ them that led the

Meanwhile, Peter of Arragon urges Florence to return to the city, since they have done sufficient injury to the enemy for the day: and reinforcements are coming to aid Navarre.

Florence begs for one ioust with his uncle, the king of Navarre.

Peter will not tary, and resolves to lead his prisoners back to the city.

He meets Clariet being dragged to the sea side.

He lets go his prisoners, attacking those who had Clariet;

¹ Sir. ² takey in text. ³ vnto.

⁴ Fol. cvlii. col. 2. ⁵ and. ⁶ before. ⁷ Loue.

⁸ villaines. ⁹ did.

he kills all the
four.

Clariet begs his
protection.

He cuts the cords
about her.

Clariet weeps bit-
terly in fear.

Peter leads her
to his lodging,
and visits the
king.

He asks him why
he would slay
Clariet, and bids
him lay no hand
on her, for she
is his.

damoyzell: 'a, ye ¹fowle horson¹ theues, let *that*
damoyssel go whom I brought for beyond y^e se: ye
dyd neuer such foly in² your lyues,' and therwith he
strak so³ y^e fyrst with his sword⁴ *that* his hede flew ⁴
⁵fro the body, and the seconde he claue to the teth /
and the .iii. and .iiii. he slew / when the ⁶damoyzell⁶
saw the erle Peter, ryght petuously⁷ she began to crye,
and sayd / 'syr, I requyre you haue petye of me, & ⁸
helpe & ayde me as ye haue done or⁸ this tyme, other⁹
lord nor mayster I haue none but you / syr, for god
sake vnbynde me and put me out of this payne that I
am in' / then Peter wente to the damoyzell and cut ¹²
y^e cordes a sonder, wherwith she was bounde: and for
the sorow that she was in she fell downe in a swoune:
then Peter toke her vp and sayde / 'fayre damoysselle,
¹⁰take comforte in you,¹⁰ I shal ayde¹¹ to saue you;' ¹⁶
the damoyzell¹² wept petuously and sayde to herselfe /
'a, Huon of Burdeaux, my dere father, the great paines
and pouertes that ye were wonte to suffer ye haue left
me, now enheryter to the same / alas, I knowe not ²⁰
where you nor my mother is, I byleue I shall neuer se
you more' / then Peter of Aragon toke the damoyzell
by the hande and led her to his logynge in the towne /
then he wente to the palays, wheras he found kyng ²⁴
Guaryn, to¹³ whom he sayd / 'o, thou olde dotynge
fole, wherfore or for what cause wolde you haue slayne
the damoyzell, and she is none of yours / she is myne,
I wan her vpon the see and saued her lyfe, ye can ²⁸
make no clayme to her.' Thus as Peter spake to the
kyнге there entered into the palais two knyghtes, and
they sayde to the kyнге / 'syr, before you is the erle
Peter, your cosyn, who hathe delyuered and rescued y^e ³²

1-1 false. 2 all. 3 omitted. 4 in such sort.
⁵ Fol. clvii. back, col. 1. ⁶⁻⁶ faire Ladie. ⁷ pitifully.
⁸ before. ⁹ neither. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ be of good cheere, for.
¹¹ helpe. ¹² faire Ladie. ¹³ vnto.

newe founde damoyzell, & hathe slayne the .iiii. men
 that shulde haue drowned her in the see' / when kyng
 Guaryn saw the erle before hym / ¹sayd, ²'how arte²
⁴ thou so hardy³ to ⁴haue slayne⁴ my men for doynge of
 my commaundemente' / then he ⁵cryed to his men and
 sayd / 'syrs, I charge you take this velayne here who
 hath done me this offence, for I shall neuer haue ioye
⁸ at my harte tyll⁶ I see hym hanged a hye on⁷ yonder⁸
 rocke' / then⁹ men stepte forth to haue taken the erle
 Peter / & when he saw that they aproched nere to¹⁰
 hym, he drewe his sworde and claue the hede of the
¹² fyrst to the tethe, and he slew the seconde, thyrd,
 and fourthe / he bette downe¹¹ to the erthe / then the
 other fled awaye so that there was none that durst
 aproche nere to¹⁰ hym / for they were vnarmed and he
¹⁶ clene¹² armed / then he cam to the kyng and sayde /
 'a¹³ false olde dottarde, full of syn and outrage / how
 dare ye thynke to do such an outrage, ye are not
 worthy to bere a crowne; your sone Florence ought to
²⁰ haue it / for a traytour ought to holde no realme; full
 derely ye shall aby the yll wyll of the damoyzell' /
 and the more to make hym abashed he made sem-
 blaunte to ryn vpon the kyng with his sworde / who
²⁴ for fere of hym ran into his chaumbre and shote fast
 the dore after hym / and the erle Peter stondynge
 without, sore thretened the kyng / then the kyng
 sayde, 'cosyn Peter, I crye you marcy, yf I haue done
²⁸ yll¹⁴ / I am redy to make a mendes at your pleasure, I
 was sore dyspleasyd with my sone, and therfore I
 thought to be reuenged on⁷ her *that* hathe caused all
 this / I shal make amendes / but by the grace of ¹⁵ our
³² lorde Iesu chryst¹⁵ my son shal neuer haue her in

The king orders
Peter to be
arrested and slain.

But the knight
draws his sword,
and slays all who
would lay hands
on him.

He bitterly re-
proaches the king,

and pretends as if
he would kill him.

The king rushes
from Peter to his
chamber, and
shuts the door.
Peter threatens
the old man from
without, and the
king promises to
do his will,

¹ he. ²⁻² why wert. ³ as. ⁴⁻⁴ slay.
⁵ Fol. clvii. back, col. 2. ⁶ vntill. ⁷ vppon. ⁸ a.
⁹ his. ¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ more. ¹² well. ¹³ thou.
¹⁴ euill. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ god.

although he will
not consent to
Clariet's union
with his son.

He pardons Peter
the murder of his
men.

He will keep
Clariet in prison,
and tell Florence
she is drowned;
as soon as Flor-
ence has forgotten
her or married
another she shall
be sent in safety
to a foreign
country.

Peter agrees to
the king's plan.

Clariet is im-
prisoned, but well
cared for.

Florence is to
know nothing of
her whereabouts.

maryage to dye, therefore I wyll neuer consent that a
newe found damoyzell should be herytes of suche a
realme¹ as is² the realme of Aragon.' Then syr Peter
answered and sayde / 'syr, beware, blame her no more, 4
be contente with that ye haue done all redy / it may
be *that* this³ damoyzell ⁴is of as hye a lynngage as is⁵
your sone, wherfore such tyme myght⁶ come that ye
shulde⁶ derely be rewardyd / paraduenture, the damoy- 8
sell was stollen away by some yll tyraunte / she hathe
bene yll loged⁷ with you, when ye wolde so crewelly
haue slayne her' / 'cosyn,' quod the kyng, 'the mater
is yl come to pas, for her sake ye haue slayne⁸ of my 12
men / the whiche I pardon you / but as for the damoy-
sell I wyll set her in pryson in a towre / out of the
whiche she shall not departe, and I wyll shewe my sone
that she is drowned in the see / and I wyll kepe her in 16
pryson tyll my sone haue forgotten her, or elles haue⁹
taken a nother wyfe / then I wyll delyuer her & sende
her into some other countre, where as she shall be
better entreated'⁷ / when the erle Peter harde the 20
kyng saye so, he agreed to his sayenge, and thoughte
that aduyse to be good / & was content with that he
had sauyd her lyfe / then the kyng opened his³ chaum-
bre dore & so came into the palays / then he sente for 24
the damoyzell / and then she was set in pryson in a
towre / and y^e kyng commaundid to a secrete saruaunt
that he shuld se that the damoyzel shuld lacke¹⁰ no
thyng for her leuyng, and charged hym on¹¹ payne of 28
his lyfe to kepe the mater secrete / and he charged all
tho *that* knewe therof in any wyse to shewe Florence,
his sone, no thyng of her / then he closed vp the dore
with stone to the entent that she shulde not issue out, 32
& lefte no thyng open / but a lytell wyndow towards

¹ Kingdome.

² is *after* Aragon.

³ the.

⁴ Fol. clviii. col. 1.

⁵ omitted.

⁶ may.

⁷ entertained.

⁸ many.


⁹ hath.

¹⁰ want.

¹¹ vpon.

the towne of courtoys, wherein her mete was put in¹ /
 other wyndowes there were openyng vpon the feldis,
 the whiche gaue great lyght into the house. Thus the
 4 fayre² Claryet was closed vp in to the towre / where as
 she had good³ leysur to wepe and wayle. Now let vs
 leue spekyng of the damoyzell and speke of Florence,
 who was in the batayle.

8 ¶ How Florence dyscomfyted his enemyes, &
 toke the kynge of Nauerne & led hym into
 the towne, & delyuered hym to the kyng
 his father / and how florence delyuered
 12 hym agane quyte bycause⁴ his father
 shewed⁵ hym that the⁶ damoyssel was
 drowned. Ca. C.lxiiii.

16  E haue well harde here before how the
 erle, Peter of Aragon, departed fro
 Florence and retourned into the citey,
 for he coude not cause Florence to
 leue the batayle, wheras he dyd mar-
 20 uayles for the loue of the fayre² Claryet, whome he
 trusted to wed: he slew so many of his enemyes that
 the feldes were couered with the dede bodyes / when
 the kynge of Nauerne, his vncler, ⁷[s]awe that, he was⁸
 24 sorowfull to se his men so slayne / then he came
 agaynste Florence his nephue, and sayd / 'a, thou
 vnkynd nephue, cursed be thou,⁹ I shall neuer haue
 ioye at my harte as longe as I se the alyue / thou hast
 28 done me this day great damage, I had rather dye an yll
 deth¹⁰ with out I were¹⁰ reuenged vpon¹¹ the / wherfore
 I requyre the to iuste with me / I chalenge thy londe,
 the whiche shall be myne / thou shalte neuer be lorde

Florence does
 marvels on the
 battle-field.

The king of
 Navarre chal-
 lenges him to
 combat.

¹ omitted. ² Ladie. ³ Fol. clviii. col. 2. ⁴ that.
⁵ vnto. ⁶ faire. ⁷ Fol. clviii. back, col. 1. ⁸ right.
⁹ you. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ then not to be. ¹¹ of.

Florence soon
strikes the king to
earth, where he
lies in a trance.

The youth tells
his foe that he
will give him as
prisoner to a fair
damsel.

The king yields,
and rides before
Florence into the
town.

The men of
Navarre do not
rise up in time to
rescue their king.

therof.' Florence answered and sayd, 'I shall not
refuse the Iustes' / then he put vp his sworde, & toke
a great spere / and so ran agaynste the kynge his
vnclē / and y^e kynge came agaynst hym / ¹they met ⁴
together so rudely that the kynges spere brake all to
pees / but Florence spere was byge, wherwith he
strake the kynge so rudely that he fell to the erthe
with his fete vpward, & he fell so rudely² that he laye ⁸
in a traunce, ³so that or he coude releue³ Florence toke
hym by y^e ventayle of his helme, and sayd, 'Nauer-
noyse, or I slepe I shall render⁴ you presoner into the
handes of a fayre damoyzell, whome I loue enterely / ⁵ ¹²
in all the worlde there is none lyke her in beautye,
yf ye refuse thus to do, with my sword I shall inconty-
nent stryke of your hede fro the shulders' / the kynge
sayd he was content to fulfyll his pleasure, & to yelde ¹⁶
hymselfe prysoner / then Florence toke his sworde fro
hym, and made hym to mounte on⁶ his horse / and
made hym to [r]yde⁷ before hym towards the towne,
and delyuered hym to the kepyng of .x. knyghtes / ²⁰
and Florence rode after with his sworde in his hande al
bloody / y^e crye and noyse began to be great among the
Nauernoys / they enforsyd them on all partyes to haue
rescued theyr kyng, but they could not come in tyme / ²⁴
for by that ⁸tyme Florence was within the gates of the
citty, wheras he was well⁹ receyued.

¶ when the Nauernoys saw how they loste theyr
payne,¹⁰ and how theyr kynge was entered into the ²⁸
citty they were¹¹ sorowfull, and came before the barryers
& skyrmysshed, and wan but lytell, and so retourned
with small profyghte and sorowfull for the losse¹² they
had receyued that daye, for the feldes were couered ³²

¹ and. ² sodenly.

³⁻³ and before he could be recovered.

⁴ deliuer. ⁵ for.

⁶ vpon. ⁷ dyde *in text*. ⁸ Fol. clviii. back, col. 2.

⁹ right ioyfully. ¹⁰ labour. ¹¹ right. ¹² that.

- with dede men / thus they retourned to theyr tentes
 and paulyons, and the Aragonoys entered into the
 citey of courtoys with great ioye / ¹when they were in
 4 the citey, then Florence toke the kyng of Nauerne, his
 vncl, by the hande, and ledde hym to the palays, and ²
 alyghted & wente into the hall, wheras he founde kyng
 Guaryn his father, who had great ioye of his comynge /
 8 when he sawe his sone Florence bryngynge his enemye
 presoner / he enbrased his sone, and sayd, 'My ryght
 dere sone, I am ryght ioyous³ of your comynge' /
 'father,' quod Florence, 'I haue done so moch by the
 12 ayde of our lord Iesu chryst that I haue taken your
 enemye prysoner, whome I render into your handis to
 do with hym at your pleasure. Now I wyll ye kepe
 your promyse with me syn I haue quyt myne / nowe it
 16 is tyme that ye delyuer to⁴ me the damoyzell, whome
 I shall make quene and lady after your dysces' / when
 the kynge vnderstode his sone he was al in a rage, and
 sayd / 'fayre son, leue thy folly & take suche a wyfe
 20 acording to thyne estate, & thynke no more of *that*
 new foundelyng, for knowe for trouthe I haue caused
 her to be caste in⁵ y^e see, wheras she is drowned /
 Thou arte a fole to thynke that I wyll ⁶suffer after my
 24 dysses that a poore caytyfe, newe founde, shulde be
 lady and quene crowned of such a realme / beware in
 as moche as thou thynkest to dysplease me / *that* tho'
 be not so hardy⁷ to speke or to⁸ remembre ny mor
 28 the newe founde damoyssel' / when Florence harde y
 kyng his father saye how the damoyzell was drowned
 in the see, his blod mounted into his face / and
 his harte was so opressed and so heuy that he had no
 32 power to speke / & suche a marueylous colde swete
 toke hym that there was no vayne nor membre in

The army of
Navarre retires to
its tents, and the
army of Arragon
enters the city.

The king of
Arragon warmly
welcomes Flor-
ence, who enters
the palace with
his prisoners.

Florence demands
Clariet.

His father bids
him have done
with such folly,
and tells him that
Clariet is
drowned.

Florence is over-
come at the
words.

¹ and. ² there. ³ ioyfull. ⁴ vnto.
⁵ to. ⁶ Fol. clix. col. 1. ⁷ as.
⁸ omitted.

He falls to the
ground in a
trance.

He revives, and
curses his father.

He will go to the
place where she
was drowned,
and share her
sepulture.

He invites the
king of Navarre
and his prisoners
to aid him to
revenge himself
on his father.

his body but trymbelyd for sorowe¹ and anger that was
in hym / so that he had no power to sustayne hymselfe,
but fell downe to y^e erthe in a great traunce / ²so²
that euery man there wente³ he had bene dede, and ⁴
euery man complayned for hym / ⁴specyally y^e kynge
his father was⁵ sorowfull, and wold as then that he had
neuer begonne that mater / when Florence cam agayne
to hymselfe, he sayd / 'O ⁶very god,⁶ the erthe ought ⁸
to be cursed when it sustayneth such a ⁷kyng ⁸tray-
toure⁸ that hathe done suche a case⁹ / great pareyle it
is to be conuersaunt with hym' / then Florence loked
vpon the knyghtes aboute hym, and sayde / 'syr, ¹²
I requyre you for all the loue that⁸ ye ought of reason
to bere me / bryng me to y^e sam place where as she
whome I loue perfectly was perysshed and drowned /
for other sepulture I desyre none / but the same that ¹⁶
she hathe: for the loue of her it shall please me well
to be vnder couerte vnder the wawes of the se where as
my louer¹⁰ is, to the entente that of me there be harde
neuer more remembraunce' / Then he behelde the kynge ²⁰
of Nauerne his vncle, whom he had taken presoner, &
sayd, 'syr kynge of Nauerne, thou arte ¹¹my presoner /
but yf thou wylte ayde me to be reuenged of this
treason that my father hathe done, I shall ¹²let the ²⁴
go agayne franke¹³ and quyte' / 'fayre nephue,' quod
he, 'leue that foly and speke no more therof / for
it touchethe moche your honoure / and ye shall be
blamed of all them that here spekyng therof.' 'Syr,' ²⁸
quod Florence / 'what is that ye saye, ye know wel ye
are my presoner, and that it lyethe in me whether
ye shall lyue or dye.' 'Fayre nephue,' quod the
kynge, 'I wyll well agree to your wordes / but yf ye ³²

¹ sorow *after* anger.

²⁻² in such sort.

³ thought.

⁴ and.

⁵ right.

⁶⁻⁶ good Lord.

⁷ trayterous.

⁸⁻⁸ omitted.

⁹ deede.

¹⁰ Loue.

¹¹ Fol. cliv. col. 2.

¹² then.

¹³ free.

wyll beleue me / byleue the kyng youre father, & leue
 to do after your owne wyll / 'what,' quod Florence,
 'ye know wel that in me it lyethe to stryke of your
 4 hede without ye wyll agre vnto my wyl and pleasure,
 the whiche thyng I wyll do without¹ incontynente ye
 swere the dethe of kyng Guaryn my father / and *that*
 neuer to take peas *with* hym tyll² ye haue brought hym
 8 to the dethe / on³ this condycyon I shall set you
 in sauegarde / for the traytoure hathe dysceued me of
 the thyng that I loue best in this world.' Then y^e
 kyng of Nauerne sayd / 'fayre⁴ nephue, ye ar as yet
 12 yonge, I can not tell whether youre wordis and promyses
 are stable and ferme or not / for the youth that I se in
 you and also for the great dyspleasure that ye be in⁵ as⁵
 nowe / ⁶therfore, fayre nephue, I haue great fere that
 16 ye shulde begyle me.' 'Syr,' quod Florence, 'god
 forbode that I shulde be so dysceyuable of my promyse
 to promyse you any thyng and fulfyll it not, what so
 euer shulde fall therof.' At this tyme there were but
 20 fewe parsons in the palays with the kyng / for all the
 lordes and knyghtes were gone in to the towne to theyr
 logynges to refresshe⁵ & to rest⁵ them of theyr trauayle
 & ⁷werynes / therfore the kyng was in his palays with
 24 a small company / y^e which Florence had well espyed /
⁶there⁸ were a⁸ sartyne of Florence knyghtes aboute
 hym, to⁹ whom he sayd, all wepyng / 'syrs, inconty-
 nent go and get me my horse, and also the kyng
 28 of Nauerne his hors redy at the gate' / the which was
 done; when they were come then Florence sayde to⁹
 the kyng of Nauerne his vncl /¹⁰ 'if ther be eny
 corage in you to be saue and out of damage¹¹ take this
 32 sword in your hande, and let vs leue this vnhappy
 kyng to vse his dayes in sorowe / and come on and

The king, his
uncle, counsels
him to obey his
father's will.

Florence threat-
ens his life:
unless he swears
the death of the
king of Arragon
in his behalf, he
must die.

The royal prisoner
fears that Florence
will deceive him.

There were few
people about the
palace.

Florence orders
horses for himself
and the king of
Navarre.

He gives a sword
to his prisoner,
and bids him
follow him.

¹ except. ² vntill. ³ vpon. ⁴ Deere.
⁵⁻⁵ omitted. ⁶ and. ⁷ Fol. elix. back. col. l.
⁸⁻⁸ was. ⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ good vncl. ¹¹ seruage.

Outside the town,
Florence again
exacta a promise
from the king of
Navarre to slay
his father.

Then the king
joins his army,

and summons all
the men of his
realm to attack
the king of
Arragon.

folowe me' / 'fayre nephue,' quod the kyng of
Nauerne / 'I haue great fere *that* ye wyll begyle me' /
'syr,' quod Florence, 'thynke it not, but come on¹ after
me & ye shall se what I wyll do' / then Florence 4
departed and the kyng of nauerne with hym; they
lepte on² theyr horses / when they were on² theyr
good horses ther was no man at that tyme in the towne
abrode to let Florence of his enterpryse / but thus they 8
passed bothe tyll³ they were without the towne / then
Florence sayd to the kyng his vncler / 'syr, nowe ye
knowe well that I haue broughte you out of this
towne, and therfore I requyre you agayn that ye neuer 12
take peas with the kyng my father, tyll³ ye haue
slayne him' / 'fayre nephue,' quod the kyng, 'that⁴ ye
requyre me to do I shall fulfyll it, and thus I recom-
mende you to god:' when the kyng saw hym selfe 16
so well deliyuered he was ioyfull / & so rode tyll³ he
came to his hoste, wheras his men receiued hym with
great ioy, & they demaunded how he was scaped out of
the handes of Florence / then the kyng shewed all the 20
maner howe Florence deliuered hym, wherof they had
great maruayle, and had great ioy of his comyng; ⁵and
to acomplysse his promyse to Florence his nephue / he
sente to all his realme of Nauerne, to all his frendes 24
and alyes⁶ to come and ayde hym. Now we shall leue
spekyng of the kyng of Nauerne, and speke of Florence
his nephue.

¶ How kyng Guaryn put Floren[ce] his sone 28
in⁷ a towre in preson / and howe the da-
moysel scapyd out of the towre and spake
with Florence, her loue, at an arche vpon
the gardayne syde, and how they were 32

¹ omitted. ² vpon. ³ vntill. ⁴ which.
⁵ Fol. clix. back, col. 2. ⁶ other. ⁷ to.

His armour is removed, and his father takes him roughly by the hand.

He leads his son to the great tower.

Florence complains of his hard fortune, and Clariet overhears him, for she was shut up in the same tower.

She scrapes away the bricks in the wall with her fingers and a little knife, and enters the garden that is round about the tower.

father, for I wyll not that any of you shuld haue any displeasure for my sake / lette me bere the blame my selfe syn¹ I haue lost the thyng that I loue best' / then the knyghtes came to² Florence and vnarmed hym ⁴ and delyuered hym to y^e kyng his father / then the kyng toke hym by the hand and led hym forth rudely, and sayd howe he wolde set hym in suche a place out of the which he shuld not com of a longe space. The ⁸ erle Peter of Ara³gon had great sorow, but he durst speke no word / the kyng hymselfe led hym to the great towre, and there lefte hym sore wepyng and makyng great sorow for his louer⁴ that⁵ he had lost / ¹² he made such sorowe that petye it was to here / & when the nyghte came and that he remembered the damoyzell his sorowes began to renewe. And as wel as he made sorow for his louer⁴ / y^{e6} damoyssel Claryet, ¹⁶ who was in the same towre muryed⁷ vp in pryson, she harde the complayntes that Florence made / and so long she herkenid that at the last she thought⁸ she knew y^e voyce, and sayd / 'O, ⁹very god,⁹ what may ²⁰ this be, who is this that I here thus complayne; me thynke I haue hard or¹⁰ this tyme ¹¹that voice,¹¹ ¹²me thynke it shuld be he that loued me so wel: I wyll not leue serching tyll¹³ I maye knowe the trouthe.' ²⁴ Then y^e noble¹⁴ damoyssel came to the dore *that was* newly muryd⁷ vp / wherby the mortar was not fully drye, and she scraped with her fyngers and with a lytell knyfe that she had, so *that* at¹⁵ laste she scraped ²⁸ out a stone. Then she assayed to pull out mo / so moche she dyd with her fyngers and ¹⁵ knyfe that she made a great hole in the newe wall / so that she creped out and went in to the gardayne, the which isyued to ³²

¹ seeing. ² vnto. ³ Fol. clx. col. 2. ⁴ Loue.

⁵ whom. ⁶ faire. ⁷ immured. ⁸ that.

⁹ ⁹ good Lord. ¹⁰ before. ¹¹⁻¹¹ before this tyme.

¹² and. ¹³ vntill. ¹⁴ omitted. ¹⁵ the.

the towre / and then she felte by her a rosyer, vnder
the which she sate her downe / the mone shone bryght,
wherby the gardayne was as lyght as thoughe it had
4 bene clere daye. Then she toke a fayre rose in her
hande, the which smelled swetely, & sayd / ¹O, very
God,¹ I wolde² it were your³ pleasure that my louer
were here by⁴ me, I thynke he be not far⁵ hence / I
8 wysshe with hym this swete rose, so *that* he knewe² it
came fro me / I wyll not leue serchynge tyll⁶ I naue
found hym / yf I can not ⁷fynde hym in doloure &
mysery I must ende my dayes' / the same tyme that the
12 damoyzell complayned thus in the gardayne, Florence
who was in the towre / and harde the⁸ damoyzell in
the gardayne, he knew her well by the voyce, and sayd,
'O, very⁹ god, what is it that I here, yonder in the
16 gardayne: 'dere louer,' quod the damoyzell,¹⁰ 'it is she
whome ye do loue so well / I am issued out of the
towre, wher in I haue bene in great mysery / ¹¹I can
not tell what wyll fall therof / comforte me or elles I
20 shall dye here in great sorowe:' when Florence harde
the voyce of his louer¹² / he had suche ioye at his harte
that he forgate all his dolour / when he saw that she
was not dede / then he sayd to¹³ her: 'a, my ryght
24 swete louer¹² whether wyll ye go / for yf the kynge, my
father, know that ye be scaped out of the towre incon-
tynent, he wyll sle you, he wyl haue no petye of you,
and I can not ayde¹⁴ you. ¹⁵Fayre louer,¹⁵ I praye
28 you gather me some flowers, and caste them in at this
wyndowe / I shall pas my dolours the better when I
haue in my handes any thyng that comethe out of
yours' / then the damoyzell gathered roses and Flowers,
32 & dyd cast them into her louer: wher of Florence had

She takes a rose
in her hand, and
declares that she
will find her lover,
whose voyce she
has heard.

Florence recog-
nizes her.

He fears that his
father will slay
her when he finds
that she has
escaped.

He begs her to
gather flowers for
him.

1-1 Ah, good Lord. 2 that. 3 thy. 4 with.
5 from. 6 untill. 7 Fol. clx. back, col. l. 8 faire.
9 good. 10 faire Ladies. 11 and. 12 Loue.
13 vnto. 14 succour. 15-15 Sweet loue.

The wall of his prison is too thick to allow him to take Clariet by the hand.

One of the watchmen discovers them talking to each other, and warns them to be silent.

More watchmen follow and find the hole in the wall, through which Clariet made her way,

and declare that she has fled away.

In despair Clariet leaves the garden of the tower and climbs a rock by the sea, thinking to drown herself.

great ioye / when he had receyued them fro her, and
 kyst them often tymes : then he came to the wyndowe
 thynkyng to haue taken his louer¹ by the hande, but
 he coude not, ²for² the wall was to thycke, wherof they ⁴
 were bothe sory / the same tyme whyles they were
 thus deuysynge together, the wache men came abought,
 whome the kyng had sent thether to spye and knowe
 if Peter of Aragon dyd sende to³ those prisoners any ⁸
 comferte or ayde / ⁴when he came thether he⁵ harkened
 and harde the voyces of thos ⁶two persons, and harde
 well theyr wordes, and wepte for⁷ petye of them : then
 swetely the wache man called to³ them, & sayd, 'hold ¹²
 your peas, for yf ye be spyed ye can not scape the
 dethe ; I haue great petye of you both : I pray to⁸ god
 preserue you, for I canne not ²ayde nor² comferte
 you' / Then they held theyr peas and so wente a ¹⁶
 sonder to the entent⁹ they shuld not be harde nor
 sene / then¹⁰ thether came two other wache men, sente
 thether by y^e kyng to se yf any body came to the towre
 to ayde or comfort the two presoners / when they were ²⁰
 come nere to y^e towre they saw the newe made wall
 broken / then they sayde eche to other, suerly the
 damoyzell is fled and hathe broken¹¹ pryson / then
 they cryed out and made a ¹²serye,¹² and said the ²⁴
 damoyssel is fled out of the towre / when the damoyssel,
 beyng in the gardayne, harde the noyse that the spyes
 made she was in great fere and doubte, the which was
 no maruayle, then incontynent as preuely as she coude ²⁸
 she wente fro the towre and wente to the ende of the
 gardayne / wheras there was a hye rocke, & vnder the
 rocke a great water and depe, she clame¹³ vp² vpon the
 rocke and sayde : ' A, Florence, my dere louer, this day ³²
 shall be the departynge of vs two / it must behoue me

¹ Loue. ²⁻² omitted. ³ vnto. ⁴ and. ⁵ they.

⁶ Fol. clx. back, col. 2. ⁷ meere. ⁸ to after god.

⁹ that. ¹⁰ ther came. ¹¹ out of. ¹²⁻¹² great crye.

¹³ did cline.

- to dye for your sake' / she saw in the gardaine a great
 nombre of torches lyght and men sekynge all about
 for her, wherof she was afayed and not without a
 4 cause / for she knew wel¹ yf she were taken she were
 lost for euer / ryght swetely she called on² our lord god
 and on the³ vyrgyn Mary³ for ayde and comforte, &
 sayd: 'alas, yf I be taken I can not scape fro the
 8 marterdome of dethe, but synne it is thus that we must
 nedis depart for euer, I had rather be drowned then be
 ta⁴ken;' therwith she made the syngne of y^e crosse,
 recommendynge herselfe to oure lorde⁵ Iesu chryst,⁵
 12 and therwith tombeled downe the rocke to haue fallen
 down into the water / but as she fell she fell⁶ in a
 great busshe by the waye / wherby she was prycked in
 dyuers places on her face and handis so that the blode
 16 folowed, wherby she felte such payne *that* she swouned /
 then the noyse ran thughe⁷ the paleys how¹ the
 damoyzell was scapyd out of the towre / so⁸ that the
 kynge was aduertised therof,⁹ wherof he⁹ was sorowful,
 20 & made promyse that erle Peter of Aragon shulde lese
 all his londes & goodes, as he thoughte that by his
 meanes she¹⁰ scaped the pryson.

She sees men
with torches seek-
ing her below,

and prays to the
Virgin for aid.

She throws herself
from the rock,
but falls upon
bushes, and her
life is saved,
although she
swoons.

The king learns
news of her
escape, and blames
Sir Peter.

- ¶ How the fyrst wacheman found out the
 24 damoyssel, and led her into a great wode
 therby / and after¹¹ the same wacheman
 delyuered out of pryson Florence,¹² and
 shewed hym the place wher the damoyssel
 28 was, and howe florence and claryet entered
 into the see / & how the kyng went after
 his sone, & the wacheman taken. Ca. clxvi.

¹ that. ² vpon. ³⁻³ holy Ghost.

⁴ Fol. clxi. col. 1. ⁵⁻⁵ god. ⁶ lighted. ⁷ out.

⁸ in such sort. ⁹⁻⁹ who. ¹⁰ was. ¹¹ afterward.

¹² Florence *after* deliuered.

The first watchman who had spied Florence and Clariet talking, finds Clariet.



Hus as the brute was in y^e palays for¹ scapyng of the damoyzell / the fyrst wache man that fyrst had spyed y^e.ii. louers together / he² went all aboute⁴ 4 in the gardayne to seke³ yf he coude fynde the damoyzell: he sought so moche that he founde the damoyzell, where as she laye in the busshe in great parayle to be drowned / this wacheman⁴ was a 8 wyse man, and as preuely as he coude he issued out of the gardayne and went downe to the water syde, and there he founde a lytell bote & entered into it / and so passed the vyne gardayne as preuely as he coude, so 12 that none harde nor sawe hym: and when he was agaynst the busshe wheras the damoyzell was / then² he spoke to her softly, and sayd, ⁵ ‘damoyzell, be not abashed, for yf I may in any maner of wyse, I shall⁶ 16 ayde you / come downe and enter into this bote, and I shall set you in the foreste, and tary there tyll⁷ I brynge to you Florence, your louer / the whiche I shall do by the grace of Iesu, for yf I can by any maner of 20 menes / I shall brynge hym out of¹ daunger that he is in / bycause I haue alwayes loued hym, and for the goodnes that he hathe done to me I shall nowe rewarde it’ / when the damoyzell harde the wacheman / for 24 ioye therof she forgate all her sorowe, and incontynente as well as she myght she issued out of the busshe and went downe the ryuer syde. Then she entered into the bote, & the wacheman set her ouer & lefte her in y^e 28 forest, y^e which ioyned to the water syde / then he toke his leue of her, and sayd / ⁵ ‘damoyzell, tary here tyll⁷ I retourne agayne to you.’ ‘Frend,’ quod the damoyzell, ‘I praye to ⁸our lord⁸ ye may so spede as 32 to brynge hether my louer, and to set hym out of Jaunger;’ and so he departed and entered agayne into

He promises to take her to a forest, and there bring Florence to her.

She enters the boat in which the watchman has come to her, and disembarks at the forest by the waterside.

¹ the.

² omitted.

³ see.

⁴ Fol. clxi. col. 2.

⁶ Faire.

⁶ will.

⁷ vntill.

⁸⁻⁸ god that.

the gardayne, harkenynge towardes the palays, where as there was great brute made for the scapyng of the damoyzell; but there was no dought made of Florence,
 4 bycause the tower that he was in was ¹so¹ stronge and thycke. Also the chambre that he was in was not towardes the palays, but it laye open agaynst the gar-
 2 den; then the sayd wacheman came to y^e wall syde,
 8 where as there was a straye lope³ into Florence chaum- bre, and he had two gotes fete in his handes / then he callyd Florence, and sayd / 'syr, yf ye wyll be with your louer⁴ who taryeth for you in the forest, wheras I
 12 haue lefte her in sa[ue]garde / helpe yourselfe that ye were out of this towre / take here this gotes fote and do you so moche there within to enlarge the lope that ye myghte⁵ issue out / and here without I shall make
 16 the hole wyder' / when Florence vnderstode y^e wache- man he was neuer so ioyful in al his lyfe / when he hard the man say that his louer⁴ was in sauegarde / then they laborid so sore that they made the lope so
 20 large that Florence issued out / ⁶then the wacheman brought Florence to the stable, wheras some of the kynges horses stode / speecially there was one ⁷there⁷ coude⁸ be founde ¹no suche¹ / this wacheman, who had
 24 great affeeyon and desyre to do seruyse to this yonge lorde, dyd so moche *that* he brought to⁹ Florence his harnais,¹⁰ his shyld and his helme, and his sworde and a good spere / and so Florence armyd hym and lepte vpon the good horse / then the wacheman shewed hym the place in the forest, wheras he had left the damoy- sell / and then he toke his leue of Florence, who sayde, 'frynde, the seruyce that ye haue done me shall
 32 be well rewarded in tyme to come:' then he rode forth and lefte not tyll¹¹ he came there,¹² as his louer⁴

The same watchman shows Florence how he may escape.

Florence issues forth from the tower: he is brought by the watchman to the king's stables,

is armed and mounted on the best horse.

He reaches the forest, and finds Clariet.

1-1 omitted.

² Fol. clxi. back, col. 1.

³ hole.

⁴ Loue.

⁶ may.

⁶ and.

⁷⁻⁷ whose lyke.

⁸ not.

⁹ vnto.

¹⁰ armour.

¹¹ vntill.

¹² where.

She mounts the horse beside her lover, and they ride away.

Men are seen in pursuit.

They coast along the seaside of the forest,

and come to a little port, where a ship is ready to set sail.

The master takes them on board.

The watchman arrives on the shore when they have left, and sorrows much, for he is in fear of his life.

was; ¹when he saw her his ioye was renewed, then he alyghted and kyssed his loue,² & when he sawe that she was so blody he had great petye of her, and sayd / 'dere loue,² it is nedefull that we departe or³ the 4 daye come / therfore make you redy and lepe vp behynie me' / ¹then Florence moun⁴ted and she lepte up behynde hym and so departed as sone as they myght / when they were in the feldes the damoyzell 8 lokyd backe to⁵ the citey ⁶ward⁶ / and she saw⁷ great number of men issued⁸ out / then she said to⁹ Florence / 'syr, I se wel¹⁰ we be loste, for I se moche people issued⁸ out of the citey, it is not possyble for us to be sauid, ¹²but that we shall be taken, and specially I can not scape; I se well *that* nowe our loue shall depart / your father is fell and crewell, I knowe well¹⁰ he wyll sle me:' then the wacheman came rynnynge after Florence 16 for fere that he had of the kynge / but he coude not ouertake Florence / who fled with his loue² behynde hym as fast as he myghte costynge¹¹ the see syde / for Florence knew well the preuy wayes, for¹² he had often 20 tymes vsed the wayes when he was wonte to go a hawkyng or huntyng, so long he rode that he came to a lytel porte, where ther was a shyppe redy to depart / then Florence alyghted and his loue² with 24 hym, & tyed his hors to a tree, ¹then he toke the damoyzell by y^e hand and came to the mayster of y^e shyp and agreed so with hym that he and his loue² entered into the shyppe / then they hoysed vp theyr 28 sayles and so went¹³ fro the lond / the wacheman came to the see syde trustynge to haue founde Florence there / ¹he was ryght sorowfull when he saw them so far in¹⁴ y^e see: he was in great fere of¹⁵ his lyfe. Then 32

¹ and. ² Loue. ³ before. ⁴ Fol. clxi. back, col. 2.

⁵ towards. ⁶⁻⁶ omitted. ⁷ a. ⁸ issuing.

⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ that. ¹¹ toward. ¹² because.

¹³ sayled. ¹⁴ on. ¹⁵ loosng.


kyng Guaryn came thether with a great nomber, and
 when he sawe the shyp so farre in the see, he sayde /
 'a, good lorde, now haue I loste my sone / for I knowe
 4 well he is gone in yonder shyp and the damoyseil with
 hym / by the faythe that I owe to¹ our lorde Iesu
 Chryste the² wacheman shall lese his hede' / then the
 wache³ man was taken and fast bounde, so that the
 8 blode came out at his fyngers endes, and sayd all
 wepyng, 'a, ⁴very god,⁴ in an yll oure I was ac-
 quaynted with Florence and his loue⁵: also for the
 goodnes that I haue done I shall haue a small rewarde,
 12 this day I am lyke to lese my lyfe for loue of my lorde.'

The king of
 Arragon sees the
 ship, and learns
 that his son with
 Clariet is on
 board.

He orders the
 watchman to lose
 his head.

¶ Of the great debate that was in the palays
 for the wachemans sake, whomme the kyng
 wolde haue had to be hanged / and how
 16 the kyng of Nauerne took the citey of
 courtoyse / and how he departed⁶ thence.

Ca. C.lxvii.

20  Hen the erle, Peter of Aragon, sawe the
 wache man taken by whome Florence
 and his loue⁵ wer saued / he was
 sory to se the man so sore be⁷ten and
 entreated⁸ / then he wente in hast to

Sir Peter pities
 the watchman.

24 the kyng, and sayd / 'syr, ye shewe well by your
 workys that ye haue but small reason to suffer thus
 this poore man to be beten, and that ye wolde put hym
 to deth / for the goodnes that he hath done to your
 28 sone therin⁹ he hath done but as he shulde do, and
 lyke a trewe seruante; ye ought the better to loue
 hym, ye shall do yll to put hym to deth / I wyl¹⁰ ye
 knowe¹⁰ yf ye put hym to dethe I wyll neuer¹¹ serue

He pleads for him
 with the king.

¹ vnto.² this.³ Fol. clxii. col. 1.⁴ ⁴ good Lord.⁵ Loue.⁶ from.⁷ Fol. clxii. col. 2.⁸ threatened.⁹ therein *after* done.¹⁰ that.¹¹ not.

If he is slain, Sir
Peter will join
the king of
Navarre.

The king of
Arragon is
obdurate.

The watchman's
kindred kneel
before the king,
and implore him
to have mercy.

Sr Peter declares
the man shall not
die unless by
judgment of the
lords and council.

The watchman is
sent to prison,
and the king goes
to his palace,
followed by Sir
Peter and the
knights, who
loved him.

The king orders a
scaffold to be
erected.

Sir Peter orders
the watchman's
friends to go to a
tower and arm
themselves with
the armour they
shall find there.

you one daye lenger; But I wyll rather go to the
kyng of Nauerne, and¹ to mayntayne his warre
agaynste you' / when the kyng hard hym so to threte
hym, he sware by god he shulde repent it, and how 4
there shuld no man saue the wachemans lyfe: then the
poore man enbrased the kynges leg & cryed for marcy /
but the kyng sware and made promyse howe he shuld
be hanged without marcy / when the erle Peter harde 8
that he was² sorowfull / the poore man wepte &
behelde the people that were there assembled / and
desyred them to praye for his sowle / sayenge howe he
shuld dye for sauynge of his lorde / there were many 12
of y^e pore mans kyn,³ they knelyd all downe before the
kyng desyrynge hym to pardon hym / the kyng
answered *that* he wold not / when the erle Peter harde
that he sayd to the kyng, 'syr, suerly he shall not dye 16
without it be by iugemente as your lordes and coun-
sayle shal ordayne:' when the kyng hard that he was
sore dysplesyd, and so entered in to the citeye and set
the wacheman in pryson / then he wente to his palays, 20
and Peter folowed hym, & acompanied with many
other knyghtes such as loued hym, and in lyke wyse so
dyd the poore mannes kyn³ / when the kyng was in his
palays he commaunded⁴ a scaffold to be made, wheron 24
he wolde haue the wacheman to lese his bedde / when
his kynsmen harde that they cryed for marcy / but the
kyng wold do no thynge at theyr desyre / when⁵ erle
Peter sawe the yll wyll of the kyng he made a token 28
to the wachemannes frendes, who were in nombre⁶ a
.C. and .l., *that* they shuld go to such a towre, where⁷
was great plente of harnays,⁸ and to breke it vp and to
arme them, and so they dyd, and came agayne to the 32
palais; and when the kyng sawe them comynge

¹ helpe.

² verie.

³ kindred.

⁴ Fol. clxii. back, col. 1.

⁵ the.

⁶ about a.

⁷ there.

⁸ Armour.

armyd / he cryed to his men that they shuld arme
 them and to take them that were so bolde to come in¹
 his presence all armed; and when euery man was
 4 armed they came agayne to the palays to haue taken
 the wachman and all his kynred / but then² the wache-
 man and his frendes, who were redy in armure, set
 vpon the kyngis men: & also Peter of Aragon and his
 8 company ayded them / so *that* there was great, so great
 a skyrmysshe in the palays that it was petye to se it,
 they cut of armes, legges & hedis, eche of other /
 fynally the kyng and his men were so sore constrayned
 12 *that* of force they abandoned the palays and fled awaye /
 and the kyng fled into his chaumbre for sauegarde.
 Anone the newes ran in the towne that the kyng was
 sore assembelyd³ in the palays and⁴ iopardy of his
 16 lyfe / then all the comunalte wente & armed them /
 and sowned the larom bell, there was suche a noyse and
 brute as thoughe all the world had bene lost / then a
 spye went out and shewed the kyng of Nauerne howe
 20 kyng Guaryn was assembeled in his palays within the
 citee bycause of a wacheman whome⁵ y^e kyng wolde
 put to dethe bycause⁶ he had delyuered out of preson
 Florence and the da^mmoysell his loue:⁸ then the kyng
 24 of Nauerne, ryght ioyous⁹ of those newes, commaunded
 hastily his men to be redy in harnays¹⁰ / for he sayde⁵
 it was tyme then or elles neuer to assayle the citee /
 'great desyre I haue¹¹ to be reuenged of this kyng who
 28 had wedded my syster / whome he hathe slayne, I shall
 neuer haue ioye at my harte / tyll¹² I be reuenged' /
 then euery man armed them / and so assembelyd
 together with baners dysplayed, and so came in good
 32 order towards the citee to assayle it / but when they
 within the towne hard the crye and noyse without,

They return to
 the palace and set
 upon the king's
 men.

Sir Peter aids the
 former.

The king is driven
 from his palace.

All the city is in
 commotion.

News of the riot
 is taken to the
 king of Navarre.

He orders his
 men to assail the
 city.

¹ to. ² omitted. ³ assaulted. ⁴ in. ⁵ that.

⁶ in that. ⁷ Fol. clxii. back. col. 2. ⁸ Loue.

⁹ ioyfull. ¹⁰ armour. ¹¹ (quoth he). ¹² vntill.

At the approach
of the men of
Navarre the strife
in the palace
ceases.

The king of
Arragon and his
lords came forth
to give battle to
Navarre.

But the men of
Navarre defeat
the men of
Arragon, and
enter the city.

The king of
Arragon takes
refuge in a church,
but he is never-
theless taken
prisoner.

He reproaches his
enemy with sacrilege
in seizing him
in the church.

The king of
Navarre admits
the sin, and pro-
mises to release
him if he will
pardon the watch-
man.

& sawe theyr enemyes comynge towards them / they
wente and shewed it at y^e palays, wherby the stryfe
there seased / & then the kynge and all his lordes, with
all his people, issued out in batayle / then there began 4
a sore batayle, and many a man slayne and maynid /
but there were so many Nauernoys, that whether kyng
Guaryn wold or not, parforce they were fayne to
abandon the vycitory to theyr enemyes / and were fayne 8
to flee into the towne: but theyr enemyes folowed
them so nere that the kynge of Nauerne and his men
entered in with them / then the kynge of Nauerne
commaunded¹ none to² be slayne without they were 12
found in defence / for he sayd he caryd not so he
myght be reuenged of the kynge. Then the Nauernoys
spred abroad in the citey takynge presoners / then kyng
Gauryn fled to the mynster church / then he stode in 16
the church dore to make defence / but it coude not
auayle hym, there was so many of his enemyes that he
fled to the hye autler for sauegard / but y^e kyng of
Nauerne, who was entered into the church, com- 20
maunded his men to take Guaryn / y^e whiche they
dyd / 'syrs,' ³quod kyng Guaryn, 'ye do me great
wronge to take me in this holy place, whereas euery
man shulde be sauyn / aboue all thynges y^e house of 24
god ought to be refuge for euery man' / then y^e kyng
of Nauerne, who was holden for a good holy man /
heryng what kyng Guaryn sayd, he knew well¹ he
sayd⁴ trouthe, and repentyd hymselfe, and sayd / 28
'fayre brother,⁵ for the offence that I haue committed
agaynst our lorde god ⁶Iesu chryste,⁶ I shall amend it
to the doble / so that ye do pardon the wacheman that
hathe delyuered my nephue Florence out of your 32
preson / I shall then shew you this courtoysye; for the
offence that I haue made I and all my men shall issue

¹ that.

² should.

³ Fol. clxiii. col. 1.

⁴ the.

⁵ Nephewe.

⁶⁻⁶ omitted.

- out of this cite without takynge of any presoner or
any maner of goodes / for the loue of my nephue
Florence, whome I loue enterely, and for the goodnes
4 of the people I shall go to my tentes without, and
I wyll graunte you a truse to endure for a moneth / and
I promyse you the monethe ones expyryd / I shall
aproche agayne so nere to this cite / that as long as
8 lyfe is in my body I shall not departe tyll¹ I haue
taken this cite and you, whome I take for myne
enemye / to haue you as my presoner / for I shall neuer
haue ioye at my harte tyll¹ I haue reuengyd the deth
12 of my syster, your wyfe / then kynge Guaryn sayde /
‘ syr² kynge of Nauerne / of the courtoysye and bountye
that ye shewe³ me I thanke you / and as for the wache
man, I do pardon hym all myne yll wyll / and wheras
16 ye saye *that* ye wyll come so nere my cite to wyn it /
when *that* cometh, by the grace of god & by the helpe
of my trew subiectes I shall do y^e best I can to defende
my selfe and my cite / then the kyng of Nauerne
20 issued out of ⁴the church, & lepte on⁵ his horse and
rode to the gate and taryed there tyll¹ all his men were
clene auoyded out of the cite, to y^e entent *that* none
presoners nor goodes shulde not² be had⁶ out of the
24 cite, wherof his men were angry, & specially they
that were poore / the other caryd not greatly bycause
y^e .ii. kynges had bene so long frendes together / wher-
fore y^e warre dyspleasid them, and⁷ were sory that it
28 enduryd so longe / when the kynge of Nauerne saw
that all his men were issued out of the cite / then he
withdrew hym into his tent / then he closyd in the
cite with a sege abydynge tyl¹ the truse were⁸ ex-
32 pyryd. Nowe let vs leue to speke of this warre
betwene these two kynges, & speke of Florence, who
sayled vpon the see with his louer Claryet.

There shall then
be a month's
truce, after which
the war shall
begin again.

The king of
Arragon pardons
the watchman.

The men of
Navarre depart
from the city,

and close the city
in a siege till the
truce should be
expired.

¹ vntill. ² omitted. ³ vnto. ⁴ Fol. clxiii. col. 2.

⁵ vppon. ⁶ caried. ⁷ they. ⁸ was.

¶ How the shyp wherin Florence ¹and his
louer was in¹ was taken by the sarasyns,
and all theyr company taken and slayne,
and led to the castel of Anfalerne. 4

Ca. C.lxviii.



The master of the
ship in which
Florence had
taken refuge
learns his
history;

he puts himself
and his ship
under Florence's
orders, so that he
may go where his
father may not
find him.

The master offers
to take him to
Marseilles.

He story² sheweth that after *that* Flor-
ence was departed out of his countre
with his loue³ Claryet; how be it he 8
knew not what she was / so it was
that the mayster of the shyp that he
was in was of Marcyl⁴ / when he
knew that Florence was sone to kynge Guaryn of 12
Aragon, & that he had put his truste in hym, then he
came to⁵ Florence & sayd / 'syr, the goodnes and
honoure *that* I se in you causeth me to say to⁵ you
that⁶ I wolde not do to another; I wel perseyue by 16
you *that* ye are in great dought of y^e kynge your father,
leste he shulde folowe you to get you agayne / ⁷syr, to
the entente that ye ⁸shall be well assured of me and of
my maryners, I put in to your handes my selfe, my 20
shyppe, and all my maryners / and I wyl⁹ they obeye
you as they haue done me, and that ye be maister ouer
vs al. And, syr, neuer thynke that the kynge of
Aragon, your father, shall trouble you / we be¹⁰ farre 24
ynoughe fro hym: by y^e grace of god we shall so
conducte you that we shall brynge you to the holy
sepulture, & after brynge you¹¹ to marcyl⁴ / and then
fro thence ye maye go whether as it plesse you' / 'syr,' 28
quod Florence, 'of the honour and great courtoysye
that ye offer me, I thanke you' / then all they that were
within the shyppe sayde, 'syr, refuse not to be oure
mayster / for yf the wynde had not bene agaynst vs we 32

¹—¹ was and his Loue. ² History. ³ Loue.

⁴ Marsellis. ⁵ vnto. ⁶ which. ⁷ but.

⁸ Fol. clxiii. back. col. 1. ⁹ that. ¹⁰ are. ¹¹ bothe.

had bene farre of by thys tyme / syr, haue no doubte
 we shall all obeye you and do as ye commaunde vs, syn
 it is our maysters pleasure' / 'syrs,' quod Florence, 'I
 4 thanke you of your offer, god suffer me to deserue it' /
 Florence was ioyfull of the good aduenture that god had
 sent hym. ¹Thus he and his louer² sayled ioyfully in
 the see of Aufrike. So longe they sayled *that they*
 8 paste the Isles of Corse, and Sarlayne, & Cesyll, and
 on a wednysdaye betymes they aryued nere to y^e Isle of
 Candy / there ther³ arose vpon them a maruaylous
 great wynd and tempest, so that parforce they were
 12 dreuen to the coste of Barbary; the tempeste was
 so great that euery man was in fere of drownynge / the
 wawes were great & ferfull / the damoyzell was in
 great doubte when she saw the maryners in suche fere :
 16 ¹she called deuoutly vpon our lorde Iesu chryste, desyr-
 ynge hym to haue petye of her and to brynge them to
 a good porte / when Florence perseyued his louer² and
 all his⁴ maryners ⁵in suche fere as they were ³in ³
 20 he comforted them the best he myght⁶ / but it auayled
 not, for the wynde draue them whether they wold
 or not towards Bongy, nere to a citey namyd as then
 Aufalerne, where as they were fayne to caste theyr
 24 ancre in great fere of lesynge of theyr lyues / then ther
 fel on them a galey wherein were a .C. sarasyns / & another
 great shyp wherein were mo then .iiii. C. men, & they
 all fell vpon Florence shyp / when Florence sawe bothe
 28 the shyppe and galey to set vpon his shyp / the
 mayster of the shyp and the maryners began to wepe,
 and sayd to⁷ Florence, ⁸'syr, you & we all ar lost, we
 shall be all sclaues with y^e sarasyns : yonder galey and
 32 shyp ar full of sarasyns, and they are redy comynge to
 set vpon vs' / when Florence hard that, he sayd, 'syr,

They sail in the
 sea of Africa,

and arrive there
 on the island of
 Candia.

Then a storm
 drives them to
 the coast of
 Barbary.

The wind alarms
 all the sailors and
 Clariet.

A large galley and
 a ship come
 towards them.

They are Saracen
 vessels.

¹ and. ² Loue. ³ omitted. ⁴ the.

⁵ Fol. clxiii. back. col. 2. ⁶ could.

⁷ vnto. ⁸ Ah.

Florence implores
all to place their
trust in God.

He bids them
fight vigorously
for their lives.

The battle begins
sharply.

Florence works
marvels.

But many of his
men, with the
master of his
ship, are slain.

Bombs are hurled
on Florence's ship
from the shore.

be not abasshed / ¹whom god wyll ayde² can not be
perysshed / no mortal man can hurt hym, let vs put our
trust in hym, and take suche grace as he wyll sende
vs / the great nombre of people can not hurt vs yf god **4**
wyll ayde vs / let vs shewe our selfe lyke men, they be
without lawe and without fayth / and we byleue in
god ;³ let vs arme our selues and shew our selues lyke
men to defende our lyues' / when the mayster and the **8**
maryners harde Florence, they sayd / 'syr, ⁴in the
sauegard of our lorde Iesu chryst, and vnto⁴ you we
commyt our selues' / then they all armed them / and
euery man stode at theyr defence / then Florence sayde / **12**
'syr, let vs all thynke that ve nowe do fyght for our
lyues, and therfore let vs not be abasshed, euery man
thynke to do his beste that he can / I loue by amours /
beholde her here ⁵by me⁵ by whome I am so moued to **16**
do well / and to defende bothe her & me' / 'syr,' quod
they, 'shame haue he *that* ⁶fayntethe' / then the shyp
and the galey came nere to Florence shyppe ; then the
shotte of both partyes flewe so thyeke as though it had **20**
bene snow : there was a great bataile betwene them,
great hurte was done with castynge downe⁷ of barres
⁸out of⁸ the toppes / two tymes Floren[ce] entered into
the shyppe of his enemyes, wheras he dyd maruellous, **24**
and slewe so many sarasyns that the water was red with
the blode of them that were slayne of bothe partyes /
there was an orryble batayle / many of Florence men
were slayne / the good maister was slayne and the **28**
most parte of his men. Also fro the lond there were
shot bombardis and gones at Florence shyppe, so that
therby, and with the great barres of Iron the shyp was
sore enpayryd, for it was stryken thrughe in a .C. **32**
places, so⁹ that the see enteryd with great abundaunce /

¹ hee. ² saue. ³ by whome we trust to be saued.
⁴⁻⁴ to. ⁵⁻⁵ omitted. ⁶ Fol. clxiii. col. 1. ⁷ out.
 ⁸⁻⁸ from. ⁹ in such sort.

- when the damoyzell sawe that mortall dyscomfytare,
 how there company were slayne and theyr shyp nye full
 of water, & sawe no mo parsones lefte alyue with
 4 Florence but .vi. parsons,¹ she was then in great fere /
 and she thought she had rather enter into the sarasyns
 shyppe then to be drowned in the see / she sawe the
 galeye, the whiche laye ioynynge to the shyppe, she
 8 lepte into the shyppe to saue her lyfe ; when Florence
 sawe his louer² in the galeye he was nere out of his
 mynde³ for sorowe, and he sawe well⁴ yf he taryed styl
 in his owne shyppe he shulde be drowned / then he
 12 lepte in to the galeye whereas his louer² was / and there
 he slewe many a sarasyn, but there were so moche
 people that with force of dartes and speres he was
 borne downe / then they toke and bounde his handes
 16 so sore that the blode ran out at his nayles. Thus
 Flo⁵rence was taken and all his men slayne and
 drowned excepte some that were taken / then Florence
 wept for petye of them, and sayd / 'a, my father, how
 20 falsely haue you wrought agaynst me / thus by your
 foly I am in great daunger / I shall neuer retourne in
 to my cowntre without god helpe me' / often tymes he
 beheld his louer² / whome the sarasyns dyd sore bet
 24 and yll entrete⁶ / wherof Florence had suche dys-
 pleasure that he was nere hande out of his wyttes.
 'Alas,' quod Florence,⁷ 'I oughte greatly¹ to be sorow-
 full to se her that I loue best so sore beten and
 28 tormented before my face / O cursed dethe, why
 sufferest thou me to lyue to see this⁸ that my louer²
 shulde be thus delte with, and yet I can not helpe nor
 socoure her,' therwith he wepte, and sodaynely fell in
 32 a swoone amonge the handes of the sarasyns / when the
 damoyzell sawe her louer fallen in a trauunce, and sawe

The ship is nearly
shattered : only
six with Florence
are left alive.

Clariet is very
fearful, and think-
ing the ship she
is in will sink,

leaps into the
Saracen's galley.

Florence follows
her in great
alarm, and he is
taken prisoner.

Clariet is beaten
and maltreated.

Florence prays
for death,

and falls down in
a swoon.

¹ omitted. ² Loue. ³ wits. ⁴ that.

⁵ Fol. clxiii. col. 2. ⁶ threaten.

⁷ he. ⁸ day.

Clariet comes to
him, and thinks
him dead.

She laments her
cruel fate,

and falls down
in a trance beside
her lover.

Sorbare, the cap-
tain of the town
and castle on the
shore, enters the
galley, and pities
the lovers, for he
was a secret Chris-
tian.

Florence and
Clariet are de-
livered into his
hands, and he
takes them to the
castle.

The other prison-
ers are sent to
various towns,
and cruelly ill-
used.

hym so pale of colour / she came to¹ hym / and she
wente² suerly that he had bene dede, and also the
sarasyns sayde the same. Then she cryed out, and
said, 'O³ very god,³ why do you consente the dethe of⁴
my loue, seynge that we must thus depart for euer, it
is no thyng the payne and yll that I suffer / but my
sorowe is for the dethe of my loue here before me /
I ought to be sorowfull when the moste fayrest,⁴ &⁵ 8
swetest⁶ / & most⁵ ientylest creature of all y^e worlde
is thus dede and loste for euer, and the most valyauntest
knyght that euer was borne,⁷ therwith she fell downe
in a traunce by her loue /⁷ All that sawe them thought¹²
suerly that they had bene both dede without any
recouer, and had great petye and compassyon of them /
then he that was the capetayne of the towne & castall,
who was named Sorbare, cam⁸ into the shyp, and sawe¹⁶
where Florence & his loue⁹ laye one by another as
dede, he had great petye of them, for he was a good
chrysten man / but he durste not be¹⁰ knowed¹⁰ therof
for fere of sleyng / he loued well god, and dyd after¹¹
good seruyce in chrystendome / for by hym the sayd
two louers were saued fro the dethe, as ye shall here
after¹² / when these .ii. louers were come agayne to
themselues / the sarasyns then delyuered them bothe²⁴
into the capetayns handes /⁷ when Florence saw his
swete loue⁹ by hym, he enbracid and kyssed her
swetely / the capetayne sorbare, when he sawe the
youth of these two louers, he had great petye of them /²⁸
but he made therof no semblaunt¹³ / he toke them
bothe into the castell with hym, and the other presoners
suche as had taken them, brought them into dyuers
towers, wheras they were kepte in great mysery / for³²

¹ unto. ² thought. ³⁻³ good Lord. ⁴ faire.

⁵ omitted. ⁶ sweet. ⁷ and.


⁸ Fol. clxiii. back, col. 1. ⁹ Loue. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ to knowe.

¹¹ afterward. ¹² hereafter. ¹³ semblance.

the sarasyns had no pety of them bycause they were chrystened.

¶ Howe Sorbare the capetayne comforted

4 Florence and Claryet / and howe there
aryued .iiii. shyppes with chrysten men by
fortune of the sec, and how Florence was
known by them. Ca. clxix.

8  Hen the capetaine of the castell was
within the castell, and Florence and
his louer¹ with hym / he sayde to
them / 'frendes, I haue great petye of
12 you. shewe me what ye be and what

The captain in-
quires of the
condition of the
fugitives,

fortune hath brought you hether, syn² ye be³ yonge;
'howe is it that ye wolde aduenture vpon the see wherin
are so many perelles / yf ye shewe me the trouthe ye
16 shall lese nothyng therby / for yf I canne I shall set
you in suche a pla[c]e⁵ wheras ye shall be in sauegarde' /
'syr,' quod Florence, 'I shall shewe you all myne
aduenture what so euer fall therof. Syr, knowe for

and promises
them all assist-
ance.

20 trouth⁶ I am sone to kynge Guaryn kynge of Aragon,
and I am departed fro hym in dyspleasure.' Thus
Florence shewed Sorbare all his hole aduenture / and
how he was taken by his father, and howe he scaped
24 and his louer¹ also / then he sayd, 'syr, I haue shewed
you the trouthe, I commyt my body and my louers⁷
here into your handes / ⁸In you lyethe our lyfe and
dethe; ye maye do with vs at your pleasure' / and
28 therwith he kneled downe / then Sorbare toke hem vp
and sayd / 'fayre sone, be not abasshed, for I haue bene
or⁹ this tyme in as great aduenture / haue no doubte I
shall so order the matter that ye shall be out of all

Florence tells his
history.

¹ Loue.

² seeing.

³ so.

⁴ Fol. clxiii. back, col. 2.

⁵ plate in text.

⁶ that.

⁷ Loues.

⁸ for.

⁹ before.

The captain bids
his servants offer
no hurt to the
damsel,

and tells Florence
how he once
visited Duke
Huon, and saw
his fair daughter.

Florence and
Clariet are placed
in separate
chambers.

Clariet laments
her loneliness,
and complains of
Oberon for having
given his realm to
her father.

parayle / but kepe euery thyng secret to your selfe¹ /
then Sorbare called to² him .iiii. of his seruantes and
sayde / 'I commaunde you to³ do no rudenes to³ this
presoner⁴ nor to⁴ this damoyssel / but⁴ lette them haue⁴
brede, fleshe & wyne at theyr pleasure / as I had when
I was presoner at Terascon / fayre sone,' quod Sorbare
to Florence, 'knowe for trouthe⁵ I was ones kynge of
Belmaryn / & ones I fought with Aymery of Narbone, 8
and I was taken by the handes of Reynalt of Beau-
lande / then I was brought to⁶ the citey of Burdeaux,
wheras I sawe a noble prynce namyd duke Huon, who
had wedded a noble lady called Esclaramonde, doughter 12
to the admyrall Gaudes / ⁴they had a doughter wel-
beloued with⁷ them / she was the fayreste damoyssell⁹
that euer I sawe,¹⁰ she passed¹¹ not¹² at that tyme vi.
yere of age / and as I harde say syn there came to 16
Burdeaux dyuers kynges and great prynces for to haue
had her in maryage / then I cam preuely to myne
vncler who gaue me this castell to kepe when he sawe
that I had loste all myne owne realme / and bycause 20
I was well entretyd¹³ amonge y^e chrysten men I wyll
that these presoners be well delte withal' / 'syr,' quod
his seruantes, 'syn¹⁴ it is your pleasure we shall ac-
complysshe the same.' then they toke Florence and the 24
damoyssell and dyd set them in a towre eche of them
in a chaumbre apart, wherof they were¹⁵ sorowfull /
when the fayre damoyssell sawe that she was put fro
her louer she was ryght sory / she began then¹⁶ to com- 28
playne and said / 'a, my ryght dere father¹⁷ and dere
mother Esclaramonde, I maye well hate the acquaynt-
aunce that ye haue had with kynge Oberon / for by
hym I haue lost you both. ye haue forgotten me in this 32

¹ selues. ² vnto. ³⁻³ vse well. ⁴⁻⁴ and.

⁵ that. ⁶ to to *in text*. ⁷ of.

⁸ Fol. clvii [clxv]. col. 1. ⁹ Ladie. ¹⁰ did see

¹¹ was. ¹² aboue. ¹³ entertained. ¹⁴ seeing.

¹⁵ right. ¹⁶ then *after* sory. ¹⁷ Duke Huon.

- worlde when ye leue me in this pryson / a, kynge
 Oberon, thou hast done me great yll & damage when
 thou dydest geue ¹to¹ my father thy realme, whereas is
 4 the citey of Momure,² wheras nowe is the duke my
 father and y^c duches my mother: I haue lost the
 flowre of all my kyn,³ I am sure⁴ I muste⁵ dye in this
 towre for⁶ sorowe. A, false deth, thou dydest me great
 8 yll that thou tokest not me when I was yonge and
 lytell. I yeld myselfe to god ¹and to his dere mother¹
 whom I requyre to haue petye of me / and wolde to
 god that I were in company with my louer Florence /
 12 the capetayne hathe done yll thus to separte vs a
 sonder, for yf I were with hym I shuld the better pas
 the tyme / yf ⁷this father knewe of what lynage I am
 of and whose doughter I am he wolde not haue refused
 16 to haue geuen me his sone in maryage / but he shall
 not know it¹ for me what so euer payne I suffer.
 Florence, who was⁸ in the chaumbre nexte aboue⁹ the
 chaumbre where as the fayre damoyzell Claryet was /
 20 who had well harde the complayntes that she had made
 before, and vnderstode euery worde that she had
 spoken, wherof he was the ioyfullest man at his hart
 lyuyng / for yf he loued her wel before then he loued
 24 her moche better / ²then he loked out at a wyndow
 wheras he saw Sorbare walkyng vp and downe in the
 courte of the castell. Then Florence requyred hym to
 haue petye and compassyon of the damoyzell beyng
 28 in the towre alone / 'frend,' quod Sorbare, 'suffer a
 season.¹⁰ I shall sette you bothe in suche a place or¹¹
 it be nyght that ye shall be bothe ioyfull / be not
 abasshed / for the loue of you I shall leue the lawe of
 32 Mahomet, and byleue on¹² our lord Iesu chryst / ¹³when
 it is nyght and euery man a¹² bed / we shall enter into

Florence over-
hears her com-
plaint,

and appeals to
Sorbare to permit
him to rejoin her.

Sorbare renews
his promise to
save them both,
and offers to turn
Christian.

¹⁻¹ omitted. ² and. ³ kindred and. ⁴ that.
⁵ shall. ⁶ with. ⁷ Fol. clvii [clxv]. col. 2. ⁸ aboue.
⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ for a time. ¹¹ before. ¹² in. ¹³ for.

a galeye that lyeth here by : but as for your other men that be presoners abrode in the towne / it wolde be hard for me to get them out of preson.' 'Then I pray to ¹our lorde Iesu chryste,'¹ quod Florence, 'to ayd & 4 socoure them in theyr great nede.' Great pitye had Sorbare when he harde Florence so peteously pray for the sauegarde of his men whome he muste leue behind him yf god socour hym not : then Sorbare sawe com- 8 ynge to² the port warde³ .iiii. great shyppes wherein there were a⁴ two thousande pylgremes who were com- ynge⁵ fro Ierusalem⁵ warde³ fro the holy sepulture / but by fortune of the see & force of y^e wynd they were 12 constrayned⁶ to aryue there / then the capetayne wente vp into the towre to se Florence whome he toke by the hande and sayd / 'frend, yonder ye maye se .iiii. great shyppes full of people comynge hether by force of the 16 wynde / let vs go downe and se what they be and who is theyr capetayne' / 'syr,' quod Florence, 'I am redy to folowe your pleasure / my body & my loue⁷ I com- myt to your sauegarde' / then the capetayne sente for 20 the damoyzell, & when Florence sawe her he was ryghte ioyfull and sayd, 'dere loue,⁸ be no thyng afayed / the capetayne and I wyll go downe to the see syde to knowe what people be yonder that comethe in 24 yonder shyppes / and anone we wyll retourne agayne to⁹ .you' / 'syr,' quod the damoyzell, 'god be youre gyde' / Sorbare and Florence went downe to the hauen syde / ¹⁰when the shyppes aryued they saw wel¹¹ there 28 was moche¹² people, and parseyued well howe¹¹ they were chrysten men. Then Sorbare saluted them and sayde / 'syrs, ye be wellcome. I praye you¹³ shewe me fro whence ye come, & what ye seke for in these 32

Four great ships conveying 2000 pilgrims to Jerusalem come in sight.

Florence and Sorbare go down to make inquiries of them.

¹⁻¹ god. ² towards. ³ omitted. ⁴ more then.

⁵⁻⁵ at Ierusalem after sepulture.

⁶ Fol. clvii [clxv]. back, col. 1. ⁷ Loues. ⁸ Loue.

⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ that. ¹² many.

¹³ to.

- partyes, & what ye be.' Then the chefe mayster of them answered and sayde / 'syr, we be of the realme of fraunce, and we come nowe fro Ierusalem fro the
- 4 pylgrymage of the holy sepulture : and the force of the wynd hathe caused vs to aryue here. ¹ yf we ought to paye anythyng for comynge hether we are redy to pay it : ' syrs,' quod Sorbare, ' syn ² this is your aduenture
- 8 ye ar hether³ welcome to me / syn ye be here aryued it is reason that I be comfortid and ayded by you. ¹ I say vnto you that I byleue vpon ⁴our lorde god⁴ Iesu chryst / but as yet I was neuer chrystened / I shall
- 12 shew you, syrs, what ye shall do. yf ye wyl byleue me ye neuer came to ⁵so fayre aduenture / ye shall go with me into the castell here aboue / in which place I shall fornysshe you all with horse & harnays⁶ / then¹ ye
- 16 shall abyde in the castell and make no noyse nor shewe youre selfe⁷ / then¹ I wyll go to the hauen and garnysshe a galey with all thynges necessary / in this towre there are many presoners⁸ of⁴ frensshe men who
- 20 were taken but late in this hauen, and many were slayn, & such as be taken as⁹ presoners in this towne / and erly in the mornyng we wyl issue out of the castell into the towne and set fyre in dyuers places / then the
- 24 sarasyns wyll haue great busynes to rescue and stanche the fyre / ¹ then we wyll enter into theyr howses & take all theyr gooddes and all the presoners and all the ryches that we can fynde in the towne we shal put it in to our
- 28 shyp : and yf the sarasyns come to asayle our shyppe with botes and barges / then lette vs defende our selfe⁷ as well as we can / and fyrst of all let vs go and take all the shyppes *that* be in the hauen' / when the cape-
- 32 tayne of y^e .iiii. shyppes hard Sorbare they prayded his aduyse and good counsaile : and they all with one

The captain tells
Sorbare they come
from France.

Sorbare bids them
welcome.

He tells them of
the French prison-
ers in the town,

and how they may
help him to set
them free.

¹ and. ² seeing that. ³ after welcome.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted. ⁵ Fol. clvii [clxv]. back, col. 2.

⁶ armour. ⁷ selues. ⁸ presoners after men. ⁹ are.

The captain of the
pilgrims inquires
who Florence is.

Sorbare tells him.

The captain
replies that they
are come from the
king of Arragon
to search for him.

acord concluded to do his pleasure / 'syr,' quod Sorbare, 'to y^e entent that ye shall byleue me and to haue of me no maner of suspecte / yf ye wyl haue knowlege what I am this yong man that ye se here be me can ⁴ enforme you' / 'syr, quod the patron, 'by your vysage it apereth well that all trouthe is in you, & how¹ that ye be² a noble man. therefore, syr, ³all we put our selfe in³ your conducte and grace / but, syr, yf it ⁸ maye be your pleasure to shew vs what yonge Ientylman is that we se there by you. ⁴syr, ye shulde do me a great pleasure, for me thynke I shulde haue sene hym or⁵ this' / 'patron,' quod ⁶Sorbare, 'syn ye wyll knowe ¹² it gladly I shall shewe you / syn⁷ he hath dyscouered hym selfe to me / knowe for trouthe⁸ he is sone to kynge Guaryn of Aragon / who by fortune of the see aryued here ¹there as ye be¹ / and here parforce he was ¹⁶ taken and his men most parte slayn / and with hym was taken a noble damoyzell who is aboue in my castell' / when the patron and they that were with hym vnderstode that it was Florence sone to⁹ kynge Guarin¹ ²⁰ of Aragon they were therof ryght ioyfull, for they were all of the realme of Aragon, and sent forthe by the kynge to serche for Florence / they thanked ¹⁰our lorde Iesu chryst¹⁰ of the¹¹ aduenture that he had sent them ²⁴ to fynde Florence there: whome they were sente to serche for / then they came to Florence and knelyd downe before them¹² and sayd / 'a, syr, ye ought to thanke god that we haue founde you. we haue mar- ²⁸ uayle why ye hyde your name fro vs / for we be all sente fro kynge Guaryn youre father to serche for you / for yf god had not sente you this good fortune we shulde neuer haue hard any tydynges of you / nor haue ³²

¹ omitted.

² are.

³⁻³ we all commit ourselues to.

⁴ truely.

⁵ ere.

⁶ Fol. clxvi. col. 1.

⁷ seeing.

⁸ that.

⁹ the.


¹⁰⁻¹⁰ god.

¹¹ their good.

¹² him.

shewed the kynge your father any thyng to his pleasure.'

¶ Howe Sorbare and Florence & theyr com-
 4 pany went in¹ the towne and robbed and
 spoyled it / and so toke the se with great
 ioy² and the damoyzell³ Claryet with them,
 and toke theyr cource to sayle to⁴ the
 8 realme of Aragon. Ca. C.lxx.

⁵  Hen the patron & his company knewe
 and sawe Florence the ioy *that* they
 made can not be recounted, nor the
 12 chere that they made to Florence when
 they were entered into the castell /
 wherof sorbare had great ioy : the same season whyles
 they made this great ioye and feste⁶ there was in Sor-
 16 bare's company a sarasyn who vnderstode the language
 of frenche⁷ / and had well hard the enterpryse that
 the chrysten men were determynd to do / and also he
 saw well how sorbare was ioyned to theyr company /
 20 then he preuely departed, and hastely he went into the
 towne and shewed the burgesses and comons of the
 enterpryse that the chrysten men had concluded to do,
 & how that Sorbare was become chrysten / when the
 24 paynyns⁸ vnderstode that / incontynent they went and
 armyd them and came to the castell thynkyng to haue
 wonne it / but they founde there suche defence and
 resystence that⁹ they dyd there lytell¹⁰ to theyr pro-
 28 fyght / yet the assaulte endu¹¹ryd tyll¹² the nexte daye /
 and at last¹³ were constrayned to withdrawe fro the
 castel a great space. Florence, who was within, cryed

A Saracen in Sor-
 bare's company
 overhears the plan
 to rescue the
 French prisoners.

The townsmen
 rise up and attack
 Sorbare's castle,
 but to no purpose.

¹ to. ² and triumph. ³ faire Ladie. ⁴ towards.

⁶ Fol. clxvi. col. 2. ⁶ feasting. ⁷ French language.

⁸ Sarasyns. ⁹ that which. ¹⁰ was small.

¹¹ Fol. clxvi. back, col. 1. ¹² vntill. ¹³ they.

As soon as the Saracens retire, Sorbare advises Florence and the men with him to issue out and attack them.

The town is fired, and many Saracens slain in the streets.

The prisoners are rescued.

to them and sayd / 'a, ye false velaynes, ye haue slayne my men / but yf god suffer me to lyue theyr deth shal be derely sold¹ / when the paynymys saw that they coude not atayne to the castel / then they blew the 4 retrayte; and euery man retourned to theyr owne house. Then Sorbare sayde to Florence and his company / 'syrs, I aduysye you all to lepe on youre horses / for now the paynymys are returned to theyr logynye wery of 8 theyr trawayle, and many of them sore hurte, and they are in great fere; I knowe theyr condycyons well ynoughe / and bycause that after trauayle and laboure a man is febelyd & full of fere / and now euey man 12 is in his owne house and vnarmed to be at theyr ease / therfore I counsaile that incontynent² Issue out and set vpon the towne.' Then Florence and all the other seyde / 'syr, as ye haue deuysed we ar redy to do it / 16 for a more noble counsaile was neuer geuen' / then euery man made hym redy and ³so³ issued out of the castell, and Florence and Sorbare went before them and sessyd⁴ not tyll⁵ they were entered into the towne, 20 for ther enter⁶ coude not be defended, for⁷ the castell ioyned to a corner of the towne: then they made a great crye and spred abrode in the towne and put in fyre in dyuers places / and slewe downe the paynymys 24 in the stretes and market places / fynally, they dyd so moche by force of armes that they brought the towne vnder theyr subieccyon / and the enhabytauntes therof⁸ slayne, ³none spared,³ and all the chrysten presoners 28 rescued, who had great ioy when they saw Florence, theyr lord, whom they thought ⁹had bene dede / great ryches that day was wonne in that towne, the which was geuen and departed to¹⁰ them that had deserued it / 32 & Florence gaue to the chrysten presoners great ryches /

¹ bought. ² we. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ rested.

⁵ vntill. ⁶ entring. ⁷ because. ⁸ all.

⁹ Fol. clxvi. back, col 2. ¹⁰ vnto.

- thus when the towne was wonne and the ryches there
of put into theyr shyppes / then¹ they all departed and
set fyre on al the citey / then they went into the castel,
4 wheras the damoyssel Claryet was, who had great ioy
when she sawe Florence her louer / <sup>Florence at length
rejoins Clariet,</sup> ²then Sorbare, who
had great desyre to departe³ thence, toke all the treasure
and ryches & had it into theyr shyppes, and vytayled
8 them with all thynges necessary / then when it was
daye in the mornynge they departed fro the castell &
wente to theyr shyppes with great ioye / Florence
holdynge his louer⁴ by the hande / sayde vnto her /
12 'dere louer,⁴ kynge Guaryn, my father, hath sente to
seke for me all aboute bothe by londe and by water /
and these *that* be come here with these shyppes were
sent forthe by the kynge, my father, to serche for me' /
16 when the damoyzell hard how Florence wold brynge
her agayne to his father she had great fere, and said,
'syr, ye knowe ryghte well the great hate and dys-
pleasure that your father hathe to you and to¹ me / for
20 god sake, syr, let vs go some other waye : ' 'dere
louer,'⁴ quod florence, 'haue no fere of my father ; for
yf ye ⁵wolde haue⁵ shewed youre name & what ye be
or⁶ this tyme / it had easid vs of moche payne.' 'A,
24 syr,' quod she, 'it is not as ye wene it were' / 'well,'
quod Florence, 'it is suffycient to me as it is' / then
they hoysed vp theyr sayles & so sayled tyll⁷ they were
fare of fro that londe. ²Sorbare was ryght ioyful in
28 *that* he had saued y^e chrysten men / and for the loue
of Florence he forsoke his owne lawe and his countre /
then ⁸he sayde to⁹ Florence / 'syr, my body and
goodes I abandon to you in suche wyse *that* I shall
32 neuer leue you for lyfe nor deth' / 'syr,' quod Florence,
'of the goodnes and trouthe that ye haue shewed me,
- <sup>Florence at length
rejoins Clariet,</sup>
- <sup>and preparations
for their return
to Arragon are
made.</sup>
- <sup>Clariet fears the
king of Arragon.</sup>
- <sup>Sorbare promises
never to abandon
Florence.</sup>

¹ omitted. ² and. ³ from. ⁴ Loue.
5-6 had. ⁶ before. ⁷ vntill. ⁸ Fol. clxvii. col. 1.
⁹ vnto.

I thanke you, and I shall neuer haue peny worthe, but the halfe shalbe yours.'

Nowe let vs leue spekyng of them saylynge ioyfully on the see towards Aragon / and let vs speke 4 of kyng Guaryn, who was besegid within y^e citey of Courtoys by his brother in lawe, the kyng of Nauerne.

¶ How kyng Huon, kyng of the fayrey, sente two of his knyghtes to the two kynges / and 8 howe he apered betwene them with a great nombre / and of the peas that he made betwene them. Ca. C.lxxi.



The truce between the king of Navarre and King Guaryn is within two days of ending.

A mysterious voice rises from the earth and addresses the combatants.

Ell haue ye harde before howe that after 12 the kyng of Nauerne had taken kyng Guaryn presoner, and that truse was taken for a sartayne space / and then eche of them to shewe theyr powers / 16 so it fell that two dayes before the brekyng vp of y^e trewe, and that theyr aydes and pursaunces were assembeld together: the one partye within the citey and the other without with the kyng of Nauerne, who sore 20 thretened kyng Guaryn / bycause he had banysshed awaye his sone Florence, his nephue / and sayd he had rather dye then such an yll kyng ¹shulde not be punysshed / this kyng of Nauerne had assembeld 24 suche a nombre of people that the valayes and hylees were couered with men of warre / & y^e nyght before the truse brake vp there was hard in the ayre a ferfull voyse / the whiche when it began to speke / the erth 28 trymbeld and thondered and lyghtened so that all they that were there assembeld / as well they within as without had suche fere that they were lykely to haue ryn awaye / then the voyse began to speke / 32

¹ Fol. clxvii. col. 2.

and sayde / 'syr, ye that be here in the felde redy to
 fyght of bothe partyes make no haste to ioyne together
 in batayle, for suche ayde and socoure shall be sent to
 4 you bothe that ye shall be all ioyfull' / therwith the
 voyce passed awaye & was hard no more, wherby both
 partyes wer abasshed, and all the nyght they were in¹
 theyr prayers / besechyng ²our lord Iesu chryste² to
 8 ayde and socoure them / kyng Guaryn was sore abasshid
 when he hard the voyce, and sayde / 'O, ³very god,³
 if this⁴ people that is⁵ assembelyd be slayne by my
 meanes and for me / my sowle shall be lost for euer /
 12 Alas, my sone Florence, I was yll counsailed when I
 chasyd you awaye fro me, I dyd great syn when I
 dyd⁶ put you in pryson, I am very⁷ of my lyfe / it
⁸skyllethe not of my dethe⁸ / I am more sory for you,
 16 my dere sone, whome I haue betrayed and dreuyn away
 with out⁹ cause / Alas, by my meanes this realme shall
 be wasted & dystroyed, y^e whiche ye ought to haue
 after me' / therwith he swouned amonge his lordes, so¹⁰
 20 they all thoughte he had bene dede, wherof they sore
 complayned / ¹¹at last the kyng came agayne to hym-
 selfe / then his lordes comforted hym / and so had¹² hym
 to here mas,¹³ and after mas¹³ there apered sodaynely
 24 ¹⁴before hym two goodly yonge knyghtes / the one was
 Gloryand and the other Malabron / they were two
 knyghtes of the fayrey / then they all smyllynge saluted
 the kyng, and sayde / 'syr,¹⁵ kyng Huon of Burdeaux
 28 salutethe the by vs, he is kyng of all the fayrey, ¹¹he
 wyll come to ayd the and to defende thy lond : and ¹⁶he
 wyll that thou knowest / how¹⁰ he is father to y^e fayre
 damoyssel Claryet, whom thou namest the newe founde
 32 damoyssel, and bycause thou hast banished fro the

It promises a
 speedy and a
 peaceful settle-
 ment of the dis-
 pute between
 them.

King Guaryn
 feels remorse for
 having banished
 his son.

Two goodly young
 knights suddenly
 approach him.
 They are the
 fairies Gloriand
 and Malabron,
 and promise the
 King Huon's aid.

¹ at. ²⁻² God. ³⁻³ good Lord. ⁴ these. ⁵ are.

⁶ omitted. ⁷ wearie.

⁸⁻⁸ is no matter though I die, and. ⁹ a. ¹⁰ that.

¹¹ and. ¹² bad. ¹³ Service.

¹⁴ Fol. clxvii. back, col. 1. ¹⁵ Royall. ¹⁶ also.

They tell of the
marriage he will
make between
Florence and
Clariet.

The two fairies
return to Huon

and remind him
of the peril of
Florence and
Clariet on the sea.
Huon promises to
go to Courtois
with a mighty
army.

Huon tells
Esclaramonde

thy sone Florence / he wyl come to the to make the
peas betwene the and thy brother in lawe the kynge of
nauerne / & he wyl make the maryage betwene thy
sone Florence and Claryet his doughter' / when kynge 4
Guaryn harde the knyght of the fayrey he had such
ioy at his hart that his wyl not what to do nor¹
saye /² he came to the knyght and enbraced hym, all
wepyng, and sayde / 'syrs, knowe for trouthe, my 8
body, my lyfe, and all that I haue I submytte it into
the handes of y^e good kynge Huon to do therewith at
his pleasure' / with those wordes the .ii. knyghtes
vanysshed awaye, no man wylt how nor whether, so³ 12
euery man had great maruayle / kynge Guaryn and his
lordes lyfte vp theyr handes to the heuen, makynge
the syngne of the crosse, recommaundyng themselfe to
our lorde⁴ Iesu chryste / and y^e two knyghtes restyd 16
not tyll⁵ they cam to the citey of Momure to kynge
Huon, and shewed hym what they had done & sayd to
kyng Guaryn / and shewed Huon of the daye of batayle
that was taken betwene the two kynges, and sayde / 20
'syr, haue petye of Florence and of Claryet, your
doughter, who are as nowe on the see in a great tem-
pest' / then Huon sayd / 'surely they and I shal be
shortely before⁶ the citey of Courtoys with suche⁴ a 24
nombre of people that the erthe shall be coueryd with
them / to the entent that yf any⁷ of these⁸ kynges
wyl⁴ do contrary to my wyl I shall dystroye hym for
euer / for shortely I wyl that my doughter Claryet 28
shal be duches of Burdeloys / ²she is so fayre that
there is none lyke her, & I shall⁹ shew the great loue
that I haue¹⁰ to her' / then Huon called to hym Esclara-
monde, and sayde: 'lady, ye shall se this daye the 32
thyng that ye¹¹ desyre⁴ sore⁴ to se, that is your

¹ or. ² and. ³ that. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted. ⁵ vntill.

⁶ Fol. clxvii. back, col. 2. ⁷ either. ⁸ those two.

⁹ wil. ¹⁰ beare. ¹¹ much.

- doughter Claryet / to whome I gyue her in¹ gyfte, that she shall be byloued of euery man, and I wyll that fro hense forth she shall gyue largely gyftes & rewardes
 4 to ladyes, damoysselles, knyghtes, and squyers; for I wyll that fro henseforth she haue her pleasure with out sufferynge of any more yll or parell, for she hath suffered ynoughe / this daye was fayre and clere, and
 8 with in y^e citey of courtoyse there was moche² people assemblyd / and they were in great deuocyon / some made masses³ to be song, and some were confessed and ordered them selues towards the batayle. Then kyng
 12 Guaryn commaunded euery man to lepe on⁴ theyr horses redy armyd / then⁵ the kynge hym selfe mounted⁶ and so⁶ issued out of the citey / and commaunded his constable and marshalles to ordayne .iiii. batayles in the
 16 name of god⁷ and saynt Gorge.⁷ Kynge Guaryn had assemblyd a great nombre of men, he had mo then .l.M. men / there ye myght haue sene ladyes & damoysselles and burgesses / that wepte for fere of theyr
 20 frendes, ⁷husbondes / fathers, and bretherne,⁷ whome they sawe goynge to⁸ the batayle warde⁷ / ⁵they went all to y^e walles / ⁷and the⁷ colleges & churches⁹ with theyr crosses and baners went¹⁰ on processyon praying⁹
 24 for the good spede of theyr kynge and of theyr frendes. Now let vs leue spekyng of these two kynges, who were redy in the felde rengyd in order of batayle, the one agaynste the other / and let vs speke of kynge
 28 Huon / who called before hym all his lordes of the fayrey / there was the fayre esclaramonde, and Gloryand, and Malabron, and many other knyghtes of the fayrey / then kyng Huon sayde / 'syrs, ye all know well that
 32 by the wyll of god / kynge Oberon whyles he leued gaue me all his realme / and syngnory and pusanee

how she shall
soon see their
daughter Clariet.

King Guaryn with
his army issues
forth from the
town of Courtois.

Huon calls all his
fairy lords about
him.

1 the. 2 many. 3 Service. 4 vpon. 5 and.

6-6 then they. 7-7 omitted. 8 towards.

9-9 to pray to God. 10 Fol. clxviii. col. 1.

He bids them
prepare for war.

He orders a won-
drous tent for
himself.

Suddenly the
fairy band, with
Huon at its
head, is trans-
ported to the
scene of the war-
fare between King
Guaryn and the
king of Navarre.

that he had ouer all the fayrey of the worlde / therby
then I may haue all my commaundementes fulfyllid /
then syn god hath geuen me this gyfte / I wyll not
suffer the manslauter and murder *that* is lyke to be 4
betwene the two kynges of Aragon and Nauerne /
therfore I wysshe myselfe with two .C.M. men wel
armyd and rychely besene¹ and all mounted on good
horses / and also I wysshe to haue as many on fote² / 8
furnysshed with bowes and crosbowes. Also I wysshe
a .C.M. to be aparayled in gownes of cloth of gold and
sylke / and also I wysshe for my doughter Claryet,
whome I haue lefte a longe tyme in payne and mysery, 12
wherof I repente me / for myne entencyon is to mary
her to Florence, son to kynge Guaryn of Aragon, the
whiche Florence is so fayre: so hardy and so humble
and curtoyse that in all the worlde there is none lyke 16
hym / I wysshe hym & al his company and Sorbare
with him to be at the hauen of courtoyse. Also I
wysshe my tente in the medow betwene the hostes of
the two kynges, and I wyl that my tent be suche that 20
there be none lyke it in all the worlde, and on³ the top
⁴therof I wyll there be pyght a dragon of fyne golde' /
kynge Huon had no soner made his wysshe but he and
all his company were there as he had deuysed. when 24
the kynge of Nauerne sawe so moch⁵ people and so
many tentes and paulyons so nere hym / and that he
sawe the ryche and pusaunt paulyon of kynge Huons
with the flambynge dragon / he was greatly maruayled.⁶ 28
Then he called his lordes and knyghtes and sayd / 'syrs,
behold what people are yonder before us logyng, me
thynke I neuer sawe so many together in all my lyfe /
I wote not what it maye⁷ be, I am in doubte' / then he 32
called to⁸ hym two knyghtes, and said / 'syrs, go

¹ by seeming. ² on fote *after* crosbowes. ³ vppon.

⁴ Fol. clxviii. col. 2. ⁵ many. ⁶ dismayed.

⁷ should. ⁸ vnto.

- thether and knowe what people they be & what they
meane: or¹ whether they be frendes or enemyes, and
who is chefe ouer them.' 'Syr,' quod y^e two knyghtes,
4 'we wyll not go thether, for we knowe not whether
they be oure enemyes or not' / when the kynge of
Nauerne vnderstode *that* those knyghtes nor none other
wolde go thether he was sorowful / as the kyng was
8 thus deuysynge / thether came the two knyghtes of the
fayrey, Gloryand and Malabron / then Gloryand sayd /
'syr,² kyng of Nauerne, kynge Huon of Burdeaux hath
sent vs to you, and commaundeth you that ye make peas
12 betwene you & kynge Guaryn, for he wyll gyue his
doughter Claryet to your nephue Florence, who is the
fayrest lady of y^e world' / when the kynge of Nauerne
vnderstode the³ two messangers sente fro kynge Huon,
16 he was ryght ioyful / and commaunded all his lordes to
go with hym to kynge Huon / they obeyed his com-
maundement and rode with hym tyll⁴ he came before
the ryche paulyon of kynges Huons / wheras they
20 alyghted and were wel re⁵ceyued; then the kynge of
Nauerne saluted kynge Huon / who sayde, 'syr, ye be
welcome' / ¹then y^e kynge of Nauerne knelyd downe
before kynge Huon & sayde, 'syr, I am redy to ful-
24 fyll your pleasure:' then Gloryand toke the kyng of
Nauerne by the arme and reysyd hym vp / and set hym
downe by kynge Huon and Esclaramonde: then kynge
Huon sente for kynge Guaryn / who incontynent came
28 to hym accompanied with a .M. knyghtes / ¹when he
was come he saluted kyng Huon and sayde, 'syr, ye
be⁶ welcome into my countre of Aragon, the whiche I
offer to you to do therwith at your pleasure / and, syr,
32 all that ye haue commaunded me to do by your two
knyghtes I am redy to acomplysshe,' and there he
shewed ⁷all wepyng⁷ to kynge Huon / the occasyon

The king of
Navarre's knights
fear to approach
the new-comers.

Gloryand and
Malabron come
to him,
and bring com-
mands from Huon
to make peace
with King
Guaryn.

With all his lords
he goes to Huon's
tent,

and offers to do
his pleasure.

Huon sends for
King Guaryn.

Guaryn also pro-
mises to submit
to Huon, and
rehearses the
causes of the war.

¹ and.

² omitted.

³ these.

⁴ vntill.

⁵ Fol. clxviii. back, col. 1.

⁶ are.

⁷⁻⁷ after Huon.

Huon tells him
how Clariet is
his daughter,
and will marry
Florence.

Guaryn expresses
his great joy.

Queen Esclara-
monde longs to
see her daughter.

of the warre, and of his sone Florence, who for the loue
of a new found damoyzell was put in pryson, wherof
he repented him, for he said¹ 'there was not a fayrer
damoyzell in the worlde, & for the loue of her 4
Florence, my son, is departed fro me, & I thynke
I shall neuer se hym more.' 'Syr² kyng Guaryn,'
quod Huon, 'know for trouthe¹ shortely ye shall se
them both come hether to me / for I wyll mary them 8
together: the damoyzell is my doughter, and ³hathe
to ³ name⁴ Claryet / and I wyll ye knowe she is
noble and issued of a royall lynage / ⁵none more noble
in this countre / she hathe bought her desteny ryght 12
derely' / when kyng Guaryn knew that the noble
damoyzel was doughter to kyng Huon, and *that* he
wolde make a maryage betwene her and his sone
Florence, and that they shulde come thether shortely / 16
he was neuer so ioyfull in all his lyfe before: then he
knelyd downe before kyng Huon, and cryed hym
marcy, ⁶and sayde / 'a, syr, howe maye it be that in
myne old dayes suche a grace may come to me, as to 20
haue againe my dere sone / & that the noble damoyzel
whome I haue done so moche yll vnto shall be his
wyfe.' Then kyng Huon rose vp and sayd / 'syr⁷
kyng, haue no doubte but that ye shall haue your sone / 24
for I canne not so sone wysshe for hym / but they shall
be ⁸with me⁸ where soeuer they be in the world' / wher
of all they that were presente had great maruayle /
'syr,' quod the quene Esclaramonde, 'when shal the 28
owre come that I myght⁹ se my dere² doughter
Claryet / ¹⁰syr, ye knowe well¹ I ¹¹am come¹¹ hether
with you for none other cause:' 'dame,' ¹²quod Huon,
'ye shall se her shortely.' 32

¹ that.

² omitted.

³⁻³ her.

⁴ is.

⁵ there is.

⁶ Fol. clxviii. back, col. 2.

⁷ noble.

⁸⁻⁸ both here.

⁹ may.

¹⁰ and.

¹¹⁻¹¹ came.

¹² madame.

¶ How Florence and Claryet aryued &¹ their
company, and came to kynge Huon, and of
the great ioye that was made at theyr com-
4 ynge / and there² they were wedded together
and the peas confermyd betwene y^e two
kynges. Ca. C.lxxii.



8 Hen kynge Huon sawe the q[ue]ene
his wyfe wepe his harte tendered and
sayde / 'a, my dere doughter Claryet,
great petye I haue of you and of
Florence the hardy. I wysshe you
12 bothe and all your company here at the porte on the
see-syde / as rychely aparayled as euer was quene or
prynces departynge out of theyr house to be maryed /
& that with you there be ladyes and damoysselles
16 rychely aparayled: and of the fayrest *that* be in my
realme of the fayrey': he had no soner made his wysshe
but that shyppes and galeys aryued at the porte: &
anone Florence and Claryet were in the medow rychely
20 acompanyed with trompettys: tabours:⁴ harpes:
vyalles: and lutes and all other instrumentes, the
which sowned so melodyously that it semyd to all the
herers that they were rauysshed into paradyse, & also
24 there were ladyes and damoysselles & knyghtes of the
fayrey syngynge ryght swetely / the herers semyd⁵ to
be aungelles of paradyse / and they were aparayled
richely,⁶ garnished with precyous stones, so that with
28 y^e sonne strykyng⁷ on⁸ them: they shynyd⁹ in such
wyse that who souer had sene them wold haue thought
that god and all the court of paradyse had bene there
assembelyd / thus Florence came with .iii. M. men
32 makynge great ioye. After¹⁰ came rydynge y^e fayre

Huon is touched
at Esclaramonde's
grief for the ab-
sence of Clariet,

and expresses his
wish to see her
and Florence
richly apparelled
in his presence.

Straightway they
arrive in ships,
amid melodious
music.

3000 men bear
Florence com-
pany, and Clariet

¹ there with. ² how. ³ Fol. clxix. col. 1.

⁴ omitted. ⁵ thought them. ⁶ and. ⁷ shining.

⁸ vpon. ⁹ glittered. ¹⁰ him.

follows riding on
a rich palfrey,

with two fairy
ladies, Morgan
and Oriand.

After these come
Transelyne and
many damsels of
fairy-land.

Huon and Esclara-
monde go to meet
Florence and
Clariet.

Huon and his
wife kiss their
daughter.

Claryet on¹ a ryche palfrey ambelynge, so fresshely
harnaysyd² and rychely aparayled that in all the worlde
there was none suche: the harnays³ hangynge full of
⁴belles of syluer⁴ / makynge so swete a noyse that ⁴
maruayle it was to here them: yf I shulde dyscryue
the beautye & ryches *that* was on her palfrey, it shulde
be to longe to reherse / this lady Claryet ⁵was acom-
panied with .ii. notable ladyes of the fayrey / the one was ⁸
Morgan, and the other Oryand⁶ / who came syngynge
after Claryet. Then after came the lady Transelyne
with many damoysels of ye fayrey / great ioie there
was made: ⁷then kynge Huon sayd to Esclaramonde ¹²
his wyfe / 'dame,⁸ it is tyme that ye depart, for I se
yonder comynge to⁹ vs ¹⁰warde¹⁰ my doughter Claryet
and Florence' / when Esclaramonde harde *that* she was
ryghte ioifull for the great desyre that she had to se ¹⁶
her doughter: the quene went forth hyely¹¹ acom-
panied / then kynge Huon & the other .ii. kynges with
all theyr companyes, with baners dysplayed with great
ioie & treumphe wente to mete Florence and Claryet: ²⁰
ye may well thynke that kynge Guaryn had great ioie
of the comynge of his sone, and sawe suche an assemble
mete there together to receiue him. he deuoutly thanked
our lord ¹²Iesu christ.¹² Thus these kynges & prynces ²⁴
wente to mete these .ii. yonge parsons rychely acom-
panied / so⁷ great ioie had Claryet when she saw the
quene her mother before her *that*⁷ she wepte for in-
warde ioie that she had / & when the quene sawe her ²⁸
doughter she enbrased and kissed her often tymes, and
of a great season none of them coud speke to other,
¹⁰theyr hartes were so ouer come¹⁰ for ioie / then kynge
Huon came & toke his doughter out of the quenes ³²
armes / and kyssed her mo then .xx. tymes / Then

¹ vpon.

² garnished.

³ armour.

⁴⁻⁴ siluer bells.

⁵ Fol. clxix. col. 2.

⁶ Glorianda.

⁷ and.

⁸ Madame.

⁹ towarde.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ omitted.

¹¹ nobly.

¹²⁻¹² god.

- kyng Guaryn came to¹ Florence & sayd, 'dere sone, I haue sore² trespassed agaynst you / in that wrongfully I put you into my presone / ³I complayne greatly to
 4 you of your vnclre the kyng of Nauerne who hath wasted your cowntre' / 'syr,' quod Florence, 'I requyre you⁴ pardon my vnclre / ⁵reason is⁶ that I shulde be content that peas⁷ be made betwen you / and, syr, I
 8 requyre⁸ you⁴ gyue me this damoyssel in maryage.' 'son,' quod kyng⁶ Guaryn: be in suerte⁹ ye shall haue her & none other / for a more noble lady can not be founde in this⁶ .x. realmes' / 'syr,' quod Florence,
 12 'I thanke you' / ³thus these .ii. companyes ioyned together / and the kyng of Nauerne came to his nephue Florence, and enbrasyd hym and sayd / 'fayre nephue, of your retourne I am ryghte ioyous'¹⁰ / 'syr,' quod he,
 16 'I am well plesed with the peas that is made betwene my father and you' / Thus they rode tyll¹¹ they came to the tentes & there alyghtyd / then kyng Huon called the other two kynges and sayde / 'syrs, howe
 20 saye you, wyll ye abyde by myne aduyce and put into myne handes the dyscorde that hathe bene betwene you?' / they answeyrd⁹ they were content to do as he wold haue them. Then kyng Huon sayd / 'syrs, then
 24 my wyll is that peas and acorde be betwene you and all yours' / and they lyberally agreed therto, wherof kyng Huon was ioyfull. Then kyng Huon desyred Florence to shewe his aduenture, and how he was rescued by
 28 sorbare. Then Florence shewed al his aduentures: ³ye other kynges were ryght ioyfull to here it, and all other that harde it, and¹² greatly prayسد¹³ Sorbare for his dede: and¹⁴ honorid hym greatly⁶ and made hym great
 32 feaste¹⁵ and chere / and caused hym to be chrystened.

King Guaryn asks
pardon of his son
Florence.

Guaryn promises
that he shall
marry Clariet.

The king of
Navarre also
comes up and em-
braces Florence,
his nephew.

The two kings
make peace.

Florence recites
his adventures.

Sorbare is greatly
honoured and is
baptized.

¹ vnto. ² much. ³ and. ⁴ to. ⁵ it is.
⁶ omitted. ⁷ Fol. clxix. back, col. 1. ⁸ desire.
⁹ that. ¹⁰ ioyfull. ¹¹ vntill. ¹² dyd. ¹³ praise.
¹⁴ moch. ¹⁵ feasting.

Huon gives
Florence and
Clariet three
cities.

The marriage is
solemnized with
much festivity.

Then kyng Huon sayd to the .iii. kynges, 'Syr, I wyll that presently eche of you do pardon other¹ all yll wyll.' 'Syr,' quod they, 'we are redy to do it,' & so eche of them enbrasyd other / wherof kyng Huon had 4 great ioye, and so had all other lordys and knyghtes that were there assembelyd / ²'syr² kyng Guaryn,' quod Huon / 'incontynent I wyll *that* your sone Florence haue ³my doughter in maryage / and I geue 8 them the citeye of Burdeaux / Blames / & Geronyl, and all the apendantes therto belongynge' / when kinge Guaryn hard the offer that kyng Huon⁴ made to his sone Florence he thankyd hym ⁵with good harte,⁵ and 12 so dyd all the other lordes / who alowed greatly that maryage. ⁶Kyng Guaryn, ²when he² saw the honour, loue, and courtoysye that⁷ Huon dyd to Florence his sone, he knelyd downe and sayde / 'syr, my chylde 16 and yours I comytte into your handes / vse *them* at your pleasure' / then by consente of bothe fathers they were fyaunsed⁸ and spoused together all in one daye / the fest and solempnyte of this maryage endured 20 .viii. dayes / the kyng of Nauerne gaue to⁹ Florence his realme of Nauerne to possede¹⁰ and enioye after his disease : of the festes and iustes and tournays that was made that .viii. dayes I make no mencyon therof, for it 24 were ouer longe to reherse / then kyng Huon gaue his doughter ²Claryet² .xxx. somers charged *with* gold & great ryches / wherby the ioye encressyd of all partyes / then the lordes and the other people of Aragon came to 28 kyng Huon, and all wepyng they desyryd hym to haue petye and compassyon of them / and *that* he myght fynd some meanes *that* they myght haue some re- 32 compense for y^e great hurtes & damages *that* they had receyuyd by reason of the warre betwene these .iii.

¹ of. ²⁻² omitted. ³ Fol. clxix. back, col. 2. ⁴ had.
⁵⁻⁵ hartely. ⁶ When. ⁷ Kinge. ⁸ wedded.
⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ possess.

kynges, wherby they were nere dystroyed by the
 Nauerpoyes / when quene Esclaramond hard y^e people
 complayn / she enbrased her husband and sayd / ' syr,
 4 I requyre¹ you for y^e loue of our² chyldren / to haue
 petye of this people who requyrethe for ayde / for in
 you is all theyr trust' / 'dame,'³ quod Huon, 'I shall
 incontynent shew what grace⁴ I shal⁵ do for the loue of
 8 you.' then kyng Huon commaunded all the peopel to
 knele downe,⁶ then he sayd / ' syrs, all ye *that* be here
 assemblyd, to y^e entent *that* ye shall not thinke *that*
 the thyng that I wyll do shuld be any wychecrafte or
 12 yllusyon / but that it is by y^e wyll of our lorde Iesu
 chryst / the gyfte that kyng Oberon gaue me or⁷ he
 dyed, the which was all the pusaunce & dyngnyte that
 he had in all the fayrey of the worlde / therfore knowe
 16 that by the pusaunce and dyngnyte that our lorde⁸ Iesu
 chryst⁸ made kyng Oberon my predyscessor to gyue
 me / I will that this realme of Aragon, wheras it hath
 had damage by reason of the warre, so that the realme
 20 is sore brent⁹ and wastyd, ⁶I wyll that it be agayne in
 the same case as it was before any warre began, and
 that all castelles and houses brente⁹ or beten donne be
 better .iii. tymes then they were before / and I wyll
 24 that fro hensforthe euery man serue god & thanke hym
 of this grace that he hathe sente you' / then he lyfte
 vp his hande and blessyd all the people with the syngne
 of the crosse / ⁶as sone as he had done his .blessyng
 28 euery thyng was as he had deuysed thrughe¹⁰ all the
 realme. Thus was y^e wyll of ¹¹our lorde¹¹ Iesu chryste
 at the instaunce and prayer of¹² noble kyng Huon.

Huon miracu-
lously restores all
the damage that
the war has
wrought in
Aragon.

He blesses all the
people.

¶ Howe kyng Huon and quene Esclaramond
 32 departed, and howe he gaue great¹³ gyftes

¹ desire. ² your. ³ Madame. ⁴ Fol. clxx. col. 1.

⁶ will. ⁶ and. ⁷ before. ⁸⁻⁸ god. ⁹ burnt.

¹⁰ out. ¹¹⁻¹¹ omitted. ¹² the. ¹³ rich.

to¹ the two kynges, and to al other lordis
and ladyes, & damoysselles / and of the
sorowe that was betwene the mother and
the doughter at theyr departynge. 4

Ca. C.lxxiii.



2 Hen kenge Huon had made his prayers
to our lorde ³Iesu chryst,³ and that his
bone⁴ was graunted, he thankyd god / 8
suche festes, iustys and tournays as
was made there duryenge the fest /
was neuer sene nor harde of in no⁵ cronycle here
before / then kynge Huon made hym redy to departe / 12
⁶he gaue gyftes or⁷ he departed to them that were
there, & specyally to Sorbare, to whome he recom-
maunded his doughter Claryet, and desyred hym not to
leue her / 'syr,' quod Sorbare, 'the great loue that I 16
haue to you constrayneth me neuer to forsake her nor
them that shall come of her, as long as lyfe is in my
body' / when que[ne] Esclaramond vnderstode the
departynge of her lorde Huon / & sawe that she must 20
leue her doughter, she had great sorowe at her harte,
and so all wepyng she came to her doughter, and
sayde / 'ryghte dere doughter, ye ought greatly to
thanke our lorde god ³Iesu chryst³ in *that* he hathe 24
cast you out of so many parayles, & nowe to haue great
honoure, & to be exalted lyke a rych & a⁸ pusant lady /
therfore, always set your harte on god, & serue⁹ & loue
him ; be lyberall to them *that* be poore / nor mocke no 28
parson¹⁰ / nor be no iangler agaynst your husbond /
nor harken to non yl sayers,¹¹ fle fro flaterers / loue
your husbond, kepe youreselfe alwayes trewe / to the
entente *that* none yll reporte be made of you. Marke 32

Huon prepares to
return to fairy-
land.

Esclaramonde
weeps at leaving
her daughter.

She gives Clariet
good advice.

¹ vnto. ² Fol. clxx. col. 2. ³⁻³ god. ⁴ request.
⁵ any. ⁶ and. ⁷ before. ⁸ omitted.
⁹ feare. ¹⁰ body. ¹¹ lyers.

wel this doctryne / for I can not tell yf euer I shall se
 you agayne or not.' when the fayre Claryet hard her
 mother, sodaynely she began to wepe, and sayd /
 4 'O my ryght dere lady and mother, y^e departyng
 of you & of the kyng my father fro me oughte sore to
 greue me, syn we haue ben together so lytel¹ a seson² /
 for your³ departyng is to me so greuable that yt
 8 ys great payne to me to bere it' / then the mother and
 the doughter clyppyde and kyssyd ech other mo then
 .xx. tymes, and oftener wold haue don &⁴ kyng Huon
 had not bene / for then he toke his doughter Claryet
 12 in his armes and kyssyd her often tymes, tenderly
 wepyng, By cause he knewe well he shulde neuer
 se her after⁵; then he lyfte vp his hande and gaue her
 and her husbonde his blyssyng, and shewyd them
 16 many fayre ensamples and doctrynes. Then the noble
 quene Esclaramonde knelyd downe & prayed kyng
 Huon, hyr husband, that he wold counsell and aduer-
 tyse them what they shuld do. 'dam,'⁶ quod Huon,
 20 'ryse vp, for suche petye I haue of them and of you
 that nere hand my harte faylethe me / ⁷I tary here
 ouer⁸ longe / ⁹I muste nedys departe; come hether my¹⁰
 doughter and kysse me / and sone Florence, with you I
 24 leue my doughter / kepe her well as longe as god wyll
 suffer her to be with you' / then kyng Huon toke leue
 of the two kynges, who were ryght sorowfull of his
 departyng / and he desyeryd then alwayes to be good
 28 louers together / and so toke his leue, and sayde, 'I
 wysse myselfe and¹¹ my quene, and all my company,
 to be in my palays of Momure' / he had no soner
 spoken the word but that he was there / and sodaynly
 32 he¹¹ vanysshed fro the two kynges, wherof they and all
 other were greatly abasshyd, so that they wyst not

Huon tenderly
 takes leave of his
 daughter.

He wishes himself
 and his company
 in his palace of
 Momur, and they
 suddenly vanish
 away.

¹ small.² time.³ Fol. clxx. back, col. 1.⁴ if.⁶ againe.⁶ Madame.⁷ and.⁸ too.⁹ for.¹⁰ deere.¹¹ omitted.

The King of
Navarre takes
leave of King
Guaryn.

Soon afterwards
Guaryn dies,

and Florence is
crowned king.

Claryet becomes
the mother of a
fair daughter.

what to saye, ¹they had thought it had bene but a dreme, but by the ²reason of the great giftes and riches that he had lefte behynd him amonge them. Then after al these thynges done the kynge of Nauerne toke ⁴leue of kynge Guaryn, and departed; and his nephue Florence rode with hym .iiii. ³leges, and then retourned to courtoyse, to Claryet his wyfe, and there they taryed two monethes in great ioy and solas. Then after ⁸a sartayne space kyng Guaryn, who was ⁴sore agyd⁴ and auneyente, toke a sykenes, wherby he passyd out of this world / for whose dethe Florence his sone, and Claryet, wept many a salt tere. Then he was buried ¹²with great solemnyte / ¹then by all the lordes and peers of the realme Florence was chosen & crowned kynge, and Claryet quene / great solempnyte and ioy was made at theyr coronacyon. Thus with great ioye ¹⁶& gladnes Florence and Claryet were together, so that at the laste Claryet was great with chylde / wherof Florence and all the noblemen and comons of the realme were ioyfull, & thankyd our lord ⁵Iesu chryste.⁵ ²⁰and when the tyme came the quene was brought a bedde of a fayre doughter, wherof bothe father and mother were⁶ ioyfull / the whiche ioye within a whyle after tornyd to sore wepyng & great heuynes, as ye ²⁴shall here after.⁷

¶ How quene Claryet was brought a bed of a doughter / at which delyueraunce the quene dyed / and howe when the yonge ²⁸damoyzell cam to the age of .xv. yere, the king her father wolde haue had her in maryage, wher with al his lordes were sore trowbelyd. Ca. C.lxxiiii. ³²

¹ and. ² omitted. ³ Fol. clxx, back, col. 2.
⁴⁻⁴ verie old. ⁵⁻⁵ god. ⁶ right. ⁷ hereafter.

¹ **W**hen kyng Florence was aduertysyd *that*
his quene was delyuered of a doughter,
he thankyd god / the chyld was borne
⁴ to the christenyng in to the chefe
church, and was namyd yde; the ioy
of the comyng of this chyld cost derely to the quene
her mother, for by reason of the payne that she enduryd
⁸ she departed out of this lyfe, and so dyed / y^e chylde
was brought to kyng Florence; ²when he sawe her he
was ioyfull, and demaundyd how her mother dyd / and
they thought that the mater coude not be hyden
¹² nor kepte secrete, they sayd / 'syr, your quene is
departed to god' / when the kyng harde that he
fell downe in a swoone, so that euery man fered he had
bene dede / ²when he came to hymselfe he sayd / 'a,
¹⁶ my ryghte dere loue,³ in an yll oure ye were borne;
for your sake I had forgotten all payne, and thought to
haue liued in rest with you / me thynke ye be rauysshed
& stollen awaye fro me / a, false deth, *thou* arte hardy
²⁰ to take fro me that thyng that⁴ I ⁵louyd best / the
most fayrest, most trewest, and most⁶ swetest creature
leuyng' / then his lordes came and comforted hym;
the cryes, complayntes, and wepynges rose thrughe⁷
²⁴ the citey, all ladyes, and damoysselles, &⁶ burgesses, and
maydens, and all the comons made great lamentacyons;
that nyght the quene was wachyd, & the nexte morn-
yng, with great cryes & wepynges, the quene was
²⁸ borne into y^e chefe churche; her obsequy was done
notably, and so layd in a rych sepulture / y^e sorow *that*
the kyng made was neuer none such sene / the kyng
was vysyted by y^e lordes of his realme, but they coude
³² not cause hym to take any solas, but alonly to go now
and then to se his dere doughter, y^e lady yde / and
euer when he sawe her his sorowe renewyd / ²she was

The child is
named Ide.

Clariet dies at her
birth.

Florence grieues
much for her.

Clariet is buried.

¹ Fol. clxxi. col. 1.

² and.

³ Loue.

⁴ which.

⁵ Fol. clxxi. col. 2.

⁶ omitted.

⁷ throughout.

Ide is brought up
in much luxury.

At fifteen years of
age her beauty
surpassed that of
all other women.

Her father falls in
love with her.

He proposes to
his lords that he
should marry
again.

He calls all his
lords to him in
council.

wel norysshed and broughte vp, and when she came to
the age of .xv. yere she was beautyfull / wyse, and
sage, for she was brought vp with .iiii. noble ladyes,
and ordered as it apartayned to a kynges chylde / ¹her 4
father, kyng Florence, louyd her so well *that* he could
neuer be satysfied with lokyng vpon her / oftentymes
he kyssed her holdyng her in his armes, he wolde
neuer mary agayne for loue of her / so moche grew and 8
encreased this noble lady² yde, that she came to the age
of .xv. yere complete / the fresshe beauty & bounte
that was in her, yf I shulde dyscryue it, it shuld³ be
ouer long to reherse, but I dare wel say *that* in beauty 12
as then she passyd all other women of y^e worlde / for
god & nature had employed al theyr study to forme
her / ther was neuer⁴ man *that* saw her but *that*²
louyd her, & so dyd her father; so *that* on a day the 16
kyng had his lordes aboute hym / ⁵the one of them
was Sorbare,⁵ whome the kyng louyd derely / ¹the
kyng, seying his ⁶doughter yde growe and encrese
in all vertues / he sayde to his lordes / 'syrs, it were 20
good *that* there were some wyfe found out for me /
whome I wyll mary yf any suche can be found in all
condycyons lyke to her that I had before' / when
his lordes harde the kyng they were ioyful in that the 24
kyng wolde mary agayne / Alas, they knewe not the
kynges inward entencyon / but shortely after they⁷
knew it, wherby moche yll and myschefe came after,⁸
and many a man slaine, and many a church brente,⁹ 28
as ye shall here after¹⁰ / Then the kyng wrote and
sente to all hys lordys and knyghtes of his realme
to com to his court at a daye assyngnyd; ¹when they
were al com to the palays ther they founde the kyng, 32

¹ and. ² omitted. ³ would. ⁴ any.

⁵⁻⁶ and Sorbare was amonge them.

⁶ Fol. clxxi. back, col. 1.

⁷ the kyng.

⁸ afterward.

⁹ burnt.

¹⁰ hereafter.

who humbly reseyuid them, and made them great
 fest,¹ & had them to dyner withe hym / when the
 dyner was done / the kyng and all his lordys went
 4 in to a gardeyne, were as y^e kyng wolde kepe hys
 counseyll; ²when they were all there and the kyng
 set in his sete, he sayde / 'syr, ye know well I haue
 no mo children but a doughter, who hathe bene desyred
 8 in maryage by dyuers kynges and prynces / but I
 wolde not consent to mary her / nor I thought not to
 mary myselfe for³ loue of her mother, whome I so
 derely lounyd / but now I am ⁴in wyl to be maryed⁴
 12 and to take a wyfe / so⁵ she be semblable to her that is
 departed / and therfore I haue sente for you to shewe
 you my wyl and pleasure.' when his lordes hard hym
 they wer ioyfull, & sayd / 'syr, knowe for trouthe
 16 there is no woman leuyng in chrystendome that⁶ yf ye
 wyl haue her, ye shal, yf she be neuer so fayre or so
 hye ⁷a parage⁷ / & therfore, syr, thynke in your selfe
 whether ye wyl that we shall go to get you a wyfe.'
 20 ⁸'Syr,' quod the kyng, 'in this matere ye shall
 not nede to take ⁹great payne⁹ / for y^e wyfe that I wyl
 haue is not far¹⁰ hence; it lyethe in me to haue her yf
 I lyst' / 'syr,' quod the lordes, 'wyl it please you
 24 to name her that shal be so happy' / 'syr,' quod
 y^e kyng, 'it is my doughter yde whome I wyl take to
 my wyfe, for the great loue that I had to her mother' /
 when the lordes hard that they regardyd¹¹ eche other /
 28 blessing them selues of the orryble and detestable
 wordes of the kyng, and beheld¹² him maruaylously.
 Then Sorbare, who was of the kynges preuy counsaile,
 began to speke, and sayde / 'a, syr, god forbede that
 32 suche a shame shulde come to you / for it is worse then

The lords approve
 his proposal to
 marry a second
 time.

He announces his
 intention of
 wedding Ide.

The lords are
 horror-stricken,

and Sorbare
 reproaches him
 for meditating so
 unnatural a crime.

¹ feasting. ² and. ³ the. ⁴⁻⁴ minded to marie.

⁶ that. ⁶ but. ⁷⁻⁷ of Lyneage.

⁸ Fol. clxxi. back, col. 2. ⁹⁻⁹ any paines. ¹⁰ from.

¹¹ beheld. ¹² looked on.

Florence grows
wrathful.

He is summoned
by her father.

bogery¹ to hym that wyll polute his owne proper
blode² by hymselfe engendered / ye shulde not be
worthy to syt in a chayre royall / ³ye ought to be the
myrrour & ensample to other men how they shulde ⁴
lyue / wyll you then breke the law that god hath geuen
vs / put fro you that crewelte, ye shall fynde no man
wyll prayse you in your so doynge or thynkyng⁵ /
when the kyng hard sorbare he beheld hym sore,⁶ and ⁸
sayd / 'sorbare, knowe for trouthe but that I fynde⁵
myselfe moche bounde to⁶ you, I wolde stryke of thy⁷
hede / and there is no man that speketh to the con-
trary / but I shal put hym to dethe.' Then all the ¹²
lordes together sayde to the kyng / 'syr, do as ye
lyst⁸ / Sorbare hathe sayd as a noble man ought to do,
for yf ye do otherwyse ye ar not worthy to bere a
crowne' / & so helde theyr peas; they durst speke no ¹⁶
more for fere of him, & also bycause they thought
suerly⁹ the deuyll was within hym to mosyon¹⁰ such
a¹¹ mater / when y^e kyng hard the wyl of his lordes /
hastely¹² he sent for his doughter / who came with ²⁰
a smy¹³lynge countenaunce, not knowynge¹⁴ the vn-
reasonable wyll of the kyng her father / ³when she
came before hym she knelyd downe / the kyng toke
her vp & set her bytwene his armes, and kyssed her ²⁴
more then .xx. tymes / the lady knewe no thyng
¹⁵y^e kynges¹⁵ entencyon none other wyse but that she
thought he dyd it but as a father ought to do with his
chylde. the lordes then¹⁶ sayd softly one to another / ²⁸
'A, vnhappy kyng, his thoughtes be farre vnylike to
his doughters / for yf she were here alone he wolde dys-
honest¹⁷ her, althoughe he¹⁸ be her¹⁹ owne father²⁰ /

¹ heathen. ² Daughter. ³ and. ⁴ angrily.
⁵ hold. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ your. ⁸ please. ⁹ that.
¹⁰ any. ¹¹ omitted. ¹² hastily after Daughter.
¹³ Fol. clxxii. col. 1. ¹⁴ of. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ her father's.
¹⁶ then after chylde. ¹⁷ dishonour. ¹⁸ she.
¹⁹ his. ²⁰ doughter.

y^e kyng, seyng his doughter yde so excellent fayre, he
sayde to hymselfe¹ without he hadde his doughter in
maryage he shulde dye for² rage / ³the kyng behelde
4 her, and made her to syt downe by hym, and sayde.
'my dere doughter, ye are as an orpheline on the
mothers syde / wherfore I haue great petye of you that
ye haue lost her / and ye resemble so moche your
8 mother / that I thynke when I se you in the face that
I se her before me, wherfore⁴ I loue you the better,
and therefore⁵ it is my wyll to take you to my wyfe,
⁶for other then you I wyll none wed.'⁶

He tells her his
wicked desire.

12 ¶ Of the great sorow that the damoyse⁷ yde
made when she harde her father how he
wolde haue her in maryage / and howe by
the meanes of a noble lady and Sorbare,
16 she departed at midnyght, & went at the
aduenture that god wolde sende her.

Ca. C.lxxv.

8 **W**hen y^e damoyse⁷ hard her father her
20 fresshe red couloure ⁹in her face⁹
became pale & wan, ³she cast downe
her loke to the erthe, & sayd, 'a, my
ryght dere fader, take hede what ye
24 say, for yf ye be hard of them *that* be here presente /
ye shall be greatly blamed.' Then the damoyse⁷ wold
haue resen vp to haue gone fro her father, but the
kyng toke her by the hand, and sayd, 'My doughter,
28 make no daunger nor refuse to folowe my wyll / for ye
sle me for the loue that I bere you' / then all the
lordys knelyd downe before the kyng, and helde vp

Ide grows pale at
the words.

The lords kneel
before Florence,

¹ that. ² with. ³ and. ⁴ and therefore.

⁶ for this cause.

⁶⁻⁶ for I will haue none other in mariage. ⁷ Damsell.

⁸ Fol. clxxii. col. 2. ⁹⁻⁹ omitted.

and implore him
to have pity on
himself and on
his daughter.

But Florence is
obdurate.

Ide resolves to
escape from her
father.

theyr handes / and desyred the kynge for his owne
welthe and honour that he wolde haue petye of hym-
selfe & of his doughter, and that he wold neuer thynke
to do suche a dede / for yf he dyd he shulde neuer be 4
set by after: when the kynge harde his lordes how
they resoned with hym to haue tourned his mynde / he
answered as a man full of felony¹ 2 and Ire, and sayd,
that in the dyspyte of them all, whether they wolde or 8
not, he wolde haue her to his wyfe / and that yf there
were any so hardy³ to speke to hym to the contrary, he
wolde cause them to dye a shamefull dethe / and he
sore rebukyd them / when the damoyzell hard her 12
father so speke to⁴ his lordes and knyghtes / then she
saw well y^e dysordynate⁵ loue of her father / then⁶ she
began to wepe, and sayde, 'O very⁷ god, I shall be
shamyd & lost for euer yf he take me to his wyfe / for 16
both of vs cannot scape without dampnacyon' / then
she thought in⁸ herselfe that yf she coude in any wyse
scape she wyll⁹ fle a waye so farre of that there shuld
neuer¹⁰ tydynges be harde of her. Then the kynge 20
sente her into her chambre with her maydens, who
were sorowfull and dyscomforted when they harde of
that mater / for the kynge had commaunded them to
kepe her well / and to ordayne a bayenge¹¹ for her, 24
bycause y^e next day he wold mary her / when the
damoyssel yde was in her chaumbre she callyd to her
an aunceyent lady, who had bene her mastres,¹² then she
voyded all other out of her chaumbre, and made 28
semblaunte to slepe / and when she sawe that all other
were gone she knelyd downe and held vp both her
handys before the lady, and all wepynge sayd / 'a, my
ryght dere lady and mastres,¹³ I com to you as a poore 32

¹ villany.

² Fol. clxxii, back, col. 1.

³ as.

⁴ vnto.

⁵ inordinate.

⁶ and.

⁷ good.

⁸ within.

⁹ would.

¹⁰ any.

¹¹ rich bed.

¹² mistresse and.

¹³ Mistresse.

orphelyn without father or mother / my mother is ded
 as ye knowe well / but he that shulde be my father
 wold be my husbond / y^e whiche is a thyng that the
 4 erthe oughte not to bere nor sustayne them that wolde
 lyue in suche maner, and therefore, dere mastres,¹ coun-
 sayle and ayde this poore dyscomforted orphelyne, and
 helpe me that I myghte be out of y^e syghte of hym
 8 that ²ought to be my father / for I had rather go into
 a³ farre countre and⁴ to lyue in pouerte / then to ende
 my dayes withe hym in doynge of such a dede, and at
 the end to be dampnyd and loste.' when the olde
 12 lady, who was ryght noble & sage, harde the petuous⁵
 complaint of the damoyssel yde, whom she had norysshed
 & brought vp, she answeyrd and sayde / 'my ryghte
 dere doughter, for the great loue that I bere you I
 16 shall ayde and counsayle you and brynge you out of
 this doughte / as somtyme dyd my brother, Peter
 of Aragon, to the lady Claryet your mother / he rescued
 her out of the handes of the sarasyns wheras⁶ she was
 20 in ioperdy of her lyfe / for all your father I shal not let
 to ayde you.' when the damoyssell yde hard the good
 wyll of the lady how she wold ayde her / all wepyng she
 kyst her ⁷mouth and eyen,⁷ and sayde / 'a, my ryght
 24 dere mother / y^e goodnes that ye do to me god rewarde
 you⁸ / for it lyeth not in me' / then the old lady
 issued out of her chaumbre and lefte the lady yde sore⁹
 pensyue, and went into Sorbares chaumbre / who was
 28 as then in the palays, for he was of the kynges preuy
 counsayle / ¹⁰when he came to his chaumbre & found
 the lady there, he demaundyd what aduenture had
 brought her thether / y^e lady drew hym apart and
 32 shewyd hym the request and prayer of the damoyssell
 yde / wherof Sorbare, for the great petye ⁷that⁷ he had

She takes counsel
 with the old
 mistress of her
 chamber.

The old dame
 goes to Sorbare's
 chamber,

and tells him of
 Ide's desire of
 escape.

¹ Mistresse.

² Fol. clxxii. back, col. 2.

³ some.

⁴ there.

⁵ pitifull.

⁶ when.

⁷⁻⁷ omitted.

⁸ for it.

⁹ verie.

¹⁰ and.

He offers her
man's apparel, so
that Ide may
disguise herself
therewith and
run away.

of her he¹ began to wepe, and auoyded his chaumbre /
the better to speke with the lady at his ease / then²
they deuysed together of dyuers thynges, and at last³
concludyd / for the saluacyon⁴ of the damoysselles⁴
body, that this auneyente lady shulde bere to her the
aparaile of a man, and that at the oure of mydnyght
she shulde araye⁵ her therewith / and then shew her² let
her go out of the palays and come to the stable, were⁸
as she shall fynd me redy with the best horse that her
father hath redy for her to lepe on.⁶

The old dame
makes all arrange-
ments, and shows
them to Ide.

¶ when the aunsyent lady vnderstode Sorbare, she
was ryght ioyfull, and thought his counsayle good / 12
then she departyd and made redy al the aparayll
belongynge to a man / then she came to the damoyssell
ydes chambre, and shewed her the conclusyon that was
taken betwene her and Sorbare / when the damoyssell 16
harde that she had great ioy at her hart, she clypped
and kyssed her / y^e lady was glad when she sawe her
somewhat recomforted,⁷ and sayd / 'fayre lady, y^e
kynge your father hathe ordayned for you⁸ a bayne,⁹ 20
therefore go thether & bayne⁹ with other damoysselles,
to the entent that the kyng do not suspecte any thyng /
and when ye haue bayned¹⁰ you a sartayne space lette
your bed be made redy / and when ye are in your 24
chaumbre go to youre bed / and then commaund me
and all the damoysselles to go and bayne⁹ vs / and I
shall kepe them there so longe a space that they shall
haue good lyst to slepe / and I shall leue here by youre 28
beddes syde all your mannes aparayle / aray you
therin, and then gyrt this sworde about you / & put
on your sporres / & when ye are out of the palays go to
the stables, where ye shall fynd a hors redy for you.' 32
Then they went in to the bayenge¹¹ chaumbre¹² in her

¹ omitted. ² and. ³ they. ⁴ sauegard.

⁵ Fol. clxxiii. col. 1. ⁶ vpon. ⁷ comforted.

⁸ for y^eu after bath. ⁹ bath. ¹⁰ bathed. ¹¹ bathing.

¹² and she.

smoke redy to go into the bayenge¹ / ²all the other
 damoysselles were ioyfull when they sawe her come
 thether / for they went³ she had been gone to slepe
 4 for⁴ the dyspleasure that she had at her hart; then
 they ⁵sayd one to another / 'it semethe that our lady
 is well apaysed of her sorowe, me thynke to morowe
 she shall be lady and quene; ²she shal be wyfe and
 8 doughter to y^e kynge her father, the which is a thyng
 vuresonable' / then they came to her and bayned⁶ her,
 and festyd her as moche as they myght / when the
 lady yde thought it was tyme to departe, she sayde to
 12 her mastres⁷ and to the other damoysselles / howe she
 had bayned⁶ her ynouge, and that she wolde go into
 her chaumbre to slepe / and bad all the other to go &
 bayne⁸ them / and that there shulde no mo go with her
 16 but two of them to bryng⁹ her to bed, & she sayd
 to her mastres⁷ that she shuld go and brynge her with
 the other¹⁰ damoysselles / the whiche thyng they dyd
 gladly¹¹ / the damoyssell departed and went into her
 20 chaumbre wrapped in a mantell of scarlet / when
 y^e two damoysselles had brought her a¹² bed they toke
 leue of her, & departed and closed the dore after them,
 and then they went and bayned⁶ them with other /
 24 and when the damoyssell yde felte herselfe all drye /
 she rose and arayed her in the mannes aparayle as well
 as she coude / and toke the sworde and gyрте it
 about her / & dyd on her sporres / ²then she wente
 28 to a great lowe wyndowe on y^e gardayne syde, and
 there she lepte out into y^e gardayne as preuely as she
 coud, and so wente ¹³all alone¹³ by the wall syde tyll¹⁴
 she came to the posterne / then she wente out towardes
 32 the stabyl / ²when she came there she founde redy¹⁵

Her maddens
attend Ide while
bathing.

But she soon
leaves them for
her chamber.

Ide when left
alone dons man's
apparel, and girts
a sword at her
side.

She leaps from the
window into the
garden, and goes
to the stable,

¹ bathing. ² and. ³ thought. ⁴ because of.

⁵ Fol. clxxiii. col. 2. ⁶ bathed. ⁷ Mistresse. ⁸ bath.

⁹ haue. ¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ joyfully. ¹² to.

¹³⁻¹³ along. ¹⁴ vntill. ¹⁵ redy after horse.

where a horse is
made ready for
her by Sorbare.

there¹ a hors in Sorbares hande / and at the arson² of
the sadyll a bag full of brede and flesshe, and two
botelles of good wyne / then the damoyzell toke the
horse, & without any worde spekyng she lepte vp ⁴
quykely; then Sorbare, all wepyng, sayde, 'My
³dere doughter, god be thy gyde and bryng the to
sauegarde / go thy waye and kepe the way on⁴ thy
lyfte hande / ⁵folowe the see syde' / 'Syr,' quod she, ⁸
'the goodnes that¹ ye haue shewed me god rewarde
you, in to whose sauegarde I commende you' / thus
departed this noble lady yde to eschewe and flee fro the
yll dyshordenate⁶ wyll of her fater / ⁵she entered in ¹²
to the forest, kepyng no hie waye / and so she rode
.iii. dayes alonge the wode tyll⁷ she thought well that
she was farre fro her countre. Nowe let vs leue
spekyng of her tyll⁷ ⁸tyme be⁸ to retourne to her ¹⁶
agayne, and let vs speke of kyng florence her fater.

She makes for the
forest.

¶ How kyng Florence was sorowfull when he
was aduerteysed of his doughters depart-
yng, who was aparayled lyke a man, and ²⁰
how shee came into almayne, and how she
found sartayne theues in a forest, and how
she came to Rome to the emperour lyke a
squire. Ca. Clxxvi. 24



E haue harde here before in this hystory
howe kyng florence of Aragon wold
haue his owne doughter, the damoy-
zell yde in maryage agaynst the wyll ²⁸
of all his lordes and people; after that
he had spoken with her and commaundyd the bayne¹⁰

¹ omitted.

⁴ vpon.

² pommell.

⁵ and.

³ Fol. clxxiii. back, col. 1.

⁶ dishonorable.

⁷ vntill.

⁸⁻⁸ we haue occasion.

⁹ Fol. clxxiii. back, col. 2.

¹⁰ bath.

to be orderyd for her to the entente¹ the nexte daye to
 take² her in maryage / the nyght aprochyd, and after
 supper the kyng wente to his bed / ³then the nexte
 4 mornynge betimes tidynge was brought to y^e kyng
 how the kyng of Nauerne was come to se hym / the
 kyng wente to mete with⁴ him, and made hym great
 chere, and so came together to the palays / and then
 8 incontynent it was shewed the kyng how his daughter
 was fled away, wherof y^e kyng was so sorowfull and
 angry *that* no man durste speke a worde to hym, ⁵he
 went in to his daughters chaumbre: there he found the
 12 ladyes and damoysselles that had y^e kepyng of her;
 y^e kyng wolde haue ryn vpon them and⁵ the kyng of
 Nauerne had not bene, who letted hym and blamed hym
 moche when he knewe the cause of her departynge /
 16 and what y^e kyng wolde haue done / then came the
 horse keper to the kyng, and sayde / how his good
 horse was stollen awaye the same nyght. Then the
 kyng as a man desperate commaunded on all sydes
 20 men to ryde after,⁶ and who soeuer coude brynge his
 daughter agayne or elles sure tydynge of her he
 promysed to gyue hym a .M. florences of gold / there
 were many that for loue of that mony rode forthe, to
 24 the nombre of .iiii.C. ; they rode dyuers wayes, but
 there was none of them that coude brynge any newes⁷
 of her / and so retourned to y^e kyng, who was sorowfull
 when ⁸he coude here no thyng of her / great wepynges⁹
 28 there was¹⁰ in y^e city for¹¹ goynge awaye of the damoy-
 sel / for¹² fere that she had of her father, & rode vpon
 the good horse / in the daytyme she wolde rest her in
 the wodes, and in the nyght she wold ryde forthe.
 32 Thus she passyd all the prouynces of Aragon / ³then

The king of
Navarre comes to
visit Florence.

Florence is told of
his daughter's
sight.

In his wrath he
would have slain
her maidens, had
not the king of
Navarre pre-
vented him.

He sends messen-
gers after Ide.

¹ that. ² haue. ³ and. ⁴ omitted. ⁵ if.

⁶ her. ⁷ tidings. ⁸ Fol. clxxiii. col. 1.

⁹ lamentations. ¹⁰ made. ¹¹ the.

¹² because of the.

From Arragon
Ide goes into
Lombardy, and
thence to Ger-
many.

She tarries at
Basle.

Men are going to
Rome to aid the
emperour against
the king of
Castille.

Ide offers her
service to a
German soldier.

she passed into Lombardy. of her iorneyes and ad-
ventures I wyll make no mencyon, because she founde
no thyng by the waye to let her; she rode so longe
that she aprochyd to y^e countre of almayne / ¹when 4
she came there her mony fayled her, wherby she was
constrayned to selle her hors for money to lyue with
all, and so wente afote / and at y^e last came to the
citye of Basyle, and ther she taryed a season, and ther 8
dyspendyd her money / so longe she laye there that she
harde howe the emperour of Rome sent for men all
about to ayde and socoure hym agaynst the kynge of
castell, who made him great warre / when she sawe 12
that many noble men were goynge to Rome to socour
the emperour she was ioyfull, and sayd to her host that
yf she had horse and harnays² she wolde go with
other into the warre / and thought in³ her selfe that 16
she wold gladly be aquaynted with the emperoure
of Rome, who was named Othon / ¹she thought yf she
myght she wolde take counsaile of hym / ¹she dyd so
moche that she fell in a quayntaunce *with* some of the 20
almayns / so that they were glad to se her / she semid
to them to be so fayre¹ a yonge squyre / then an
Almayne *that* was there sayd to⁴ her / 'frende, come
hether to me and shewe me what thou art' / 'syr,' 24
quod she, 'I am to hym that my seruyce may please /
for I desyre nothyng but to serue some noble man /
but⁵ late I was in Aragon, and there I seruyd ⁶a lord
that is dede / wherfore I am come hether for the 28
dyspleasure that I haue of his dethe / ¹I can well
serue a genttelman / and kepe his horse, and yf nede
be to dryue his sompterhors / & if I come in batayle or
in scyrmysshe *with* my mayster, I thynke he shall 32
haue worse then I in his company' / the Almayne,
herynge her so⁷ speke, sayde, 'fayre sone, that thou

¹ and.

² armour.

³ within.

⁴ vnto.

⁵ of.

⁶ Fol. clxxiii. col. 2.

⁷ to.

sayst procedethe of a good corage / therfore good must
 come to the yet, I pray the shewe me thy name' / 'syr,'
 quod she, 'I am called yde' / 'brother,' quod the
 4 Almayne, 'I retayne¹ y^e to² my seruyse, take hede of
 my horse' / 'syr,' quod she, 'I am redy to do you the
 best seruyce that I can' / ³y^e Almayne had her to his
 logging. Thus she then serued ⁴and she⁴ was wonte to
 8 be serued, for she fered yf it shulde be parseyued that
 she were a woman it shulde⁵ be to her trobyl / therfore
 she kepte herselfe close and secrete: ⁶she was⁷ .iii.
 dayes with her mayster after that the other company
 12 were gone ⁸to romeward,⁸ ⁹her mayster myght not
 departe so sone as the other dyd, for his busynes was
 not redy / ⁶then thre days after they departed to go to
 Rome / and she was harnaysed¹⁰ after the coustume
 16 of the countre. she serued so wel her mayster that he
 praysed her, and¹¹ so long they rode that they came and
 aproched nere to the countre of rome, so that on a daye
 they entered into a great darke forest / wherin laye in
 20 a bussument a¹² .vii. score spaynardys, lyenge there to
 abyde theyr aduventure; they lay in a darke valey, and
 when they saw the Almaynes ¹³them escryed¹³ them to
 the dethe, and ran vpon they. Then yde, who rode
 24 before her mayster, couchyd her spere and strake a
 spanyarde there¹⁴ clene thrughe the body, and with the
 drawynge out of ¹⁵her spere the spanyarde fell downe
 dede, of the whiche course her mayster praysed her /
 28 then y^e spanyardes ran in amonge the almayns, who
 ryght valyantly defended them,¹⁶ but theyr defence
 coud not auayle them / for fynally¹⁷ they were all
 slayne, so that none scapyd alyue / but alonly yde,
 32 who dyd bere her so valyauntly that she slewe .iiii. of

Her master is
 bound for Rome,
 and Ide goes with
 him.

On the journey
 Spaniards in
 ambush attack
 them.

Ide and her com-
 panions defend
 themselves vali-
 antly, but all the
 Germans but her-
 self are slain.

¹ entertain. ² into. ³ so. ⁴⁻⁴ that. ⁵ wold.

⁶ and. ⁷ continued. ⁸⁻⁸ towards Rome. ⁹ but.

¹⁰ armed. ¹¹ omitted. ¹² about. ¹³⁻¹³ they despised.

¹⁴ therwith. ¹⁵ Fol. clxxiii. back, col. 1. ¹⁶ selues,

¹⁷ at the end.

She rides on
alone, and falls in
with a gang of
thieves.

She begs meat and
drink of them.

They attack her.

the spanyardes, but when she sawe that her mayster
and all his company were slayne / with her sworde
in her hande all bloody she fled awaye, and rode out of
the way and toke a lytell pathe, the whiche brought 4
her to a rocke, and there she alyghted, and taryed in
the wode all¹ nyghte tyll² the nexte mornynge / she
had so great hunger and thyrste,³ for she had rydden
all⁴ day without mete or drynke / then⁵ in the mornynge 8
she loked all about⁶ and saw in an herber⁷ a⁸ .xxx.
theues syttyng at a table etynge and drynkyng at
theyr pleasure; ⁵when the damoyseil sawe them, for
the great rage of hunger that she suffered constrayned 12
her in such wyse that she forgate all fere and went to⁹
them / when the theues sawe her one of them sayd to
his felaws, 'I se yonder comynge a ¹⁰yonge¹⁰ squyre
mounted on¹¹ a good horse / the which shal be ours' / 16
⁵when yde aprochyd to them she humbely saluted the
company, and sayd, 'Syr, yf it may please you to let
me eat and drynke with you I wyll pay for my scot'¹² /
'frende,' quod one of them, 'is there any man that 20
hath bene your gyde in this forest?' 'syr,' quod yde,
'god hathe bene my conduct, and none other' / then
one of the theues stepte forthe and toke her horse by
the brydell, and sayd to his company, 'syr, laye on, 24
stryke hym downe, he shall neuer eate nor drynke
more; ¹⁰as for¹⁰ his horse shall not scape me' / when
she¹³ sawe ¹⁴that she was so¹⁰ taken she was in great
fere, ⁵she durst make no countenaunce to defende her 28
selfe / there were so manye theues vpon her / she
thought to humble herselfe, which should be more
profyt, & sayd, 'Syr, why make ye that haste to sle
me / lytel shal ye wyne therby nor lese,¹⁵ hold here 32

¹ that. ² vntill. ³ that she was neere hand famished.

⁴ the. ⁵ and. ⁶ her. ⁷ arbour. ⁸ about.

⁹ vnto. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ vpon. ¹² shotte.

¹³ the Damsell. ¹⁴ Fol. clxxiii. back, col. 2. ¹⁵ looze.

- my sword, I yelde me¹ into your handes, and I praye
 you in the honoure of ²our lorde² Iesu chryst³ gyue me
 some mete and drynke / for I ⁴haue suche hunger⁴ that
 4 I am ⁵ nere dede for famyne ⁵ / then the mayster thefe
 sayde, 'squyre, haue no fere to be stryken, thou shalte
 haue no more hurte then myselfe, but thou shalt haue
 all that thou lackest; go thy waye & sytte downe
 8 and eat and drynke at thy pleasure' / 'syr,' quod
 yde, 'I thanke you' / then the damoyzell sate downe
 with them, & dyd eate and drynke at her⁶ pleasure /
 7 when they had all eten and were resyn vp, then the
 12 theues began to stryue amonge themselfe, sayenge to
 theyr chefe mayster how he had done yll, that he
 wolde not suffer them to sle the squyre / then another
 answered, & sayd how there shuld no hurte be done to⁸
 16 hym, bycause he was so fayre a yonge man and so
 courtoys / and sayd⁹ it shuld be great damage to
 sle hym / ¹⁰better it were¹⁰ to kepe hym styll with
 them, and to lerne hym to stele and to mourder men /
 20 and yf he wyll not do so¹¹ it were¹² reason to sle hym.
- ¶ when yde vnderstode the theues she was in great
 fere, and callyd vpon oure lorde ¹³Iesu chryste,¹³ pray-
 enge hym humbly in her great nede to succour and
 24 aide¹⁴ her / then the chefe mayster demaunded what
 was her name / then she answered in great fere to be
 slayne, and sayd, 'syr, my ¹⁵name is yde, & I am of the
 realme of Fraunce; and we were in company whan we
 28 departed out of our countre a¹⁶ forty gentyl men / we
 were goinge to haue serued the emperour of Rome, who
 hath now warre with the kynge of spayne / and we
 found in our way a¹⁶ seuen score spayniardes in a

She yields to
them,

and they offer her
meat and drink.

Many of the
thieves wish to
make Ide a mem-
ber of their band.

The chief of them
asks her name
and history.

She tells how she
is on her way to
serve the emperor
of Rome.

¹ myselfe. ²⁻² omitted. ³ to. ⁴⁻⁴ am so hungry.

⁶⁻⁶ almost famished. ⁶ their. ⁷ and. ⁸ vnto.

⁹ that. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ and that it were better. ¹¹ then.

¹² good. ¹³⁻¹³ god. ¹⁴ aide before succour.

¹⁵ Fol. clxxv. col. 1. ¹⁶ about.

The chief bids her
join them.

She refuses
stoutly.

The chief insists
on wrestling with
her; if he throws
her, he will seize
her horse and all
her clothes.

He demands that
her horse shall be
set beside her,
and that the
thieves should
draw aside.

busschement lyeng in ¹the botom of ¹a valey / ²they
set on ³vs and slewe all my company, none scaped but
myselfe / and therefore, syrs, I pray you let me haue
agayne my horse and my sworde, and shew me y^e way ⁴
to Rome / it shall ⁴be a great almes dede to shewe me
that courtoyse.' 'Nay,' quod the mayster thefe, 'that
wyll we not do / but thou shalte tary with vs, and
lerne to be a thefe and a murdrer; ⁵yf thou wylte not ⁸
thus do / with my swerde I shall stryke of thy heed.'
'Syr,' quod yde / 'ye wolde haue me to a thyng that
I was neuer accustomed to do, nor none of my lynage /
nor I haue none intencyon to do any suche workes / ¹²
therefore I pray you let me haue my horse and my
swerde, than ye do me great curtoyse / and whan I am
mounted on ³my horse / yf one of you wyll defye me,
and yf I defende not my selfe from hym / than stryke ¹⁶
of my heed / I haue boughte my mete and drinke very
dere if I shuld lose my horse' / than the mayster thefe
said, 'bycause I se thou arte so hardy I wyll wrastell
with the / on ³the ⁶couenaunt that yf thou cast me ²⁰
thou shalt be one of vs ⁷ / & yf thou be cast to the
erthe / than I wyll haue thy horse and thy swerde /
and dyspoyle the of all thy clothes' / Than yde sayd,
'I am content thus to do / so that ye withdrawe ¹backe ¹ ²⁴
your men fro me / and set my horse by me, and
my swerde tyed to my saddle bowe / for it is ¹sayd in ¹
a comen prouerbe / that a man is taken for a foole that
putteth his trust in a thefe' / whan the ⁸theues herd ²⁸
that they coulde not forbare laughynge / and they had
great desyre to se this wrastelynge betwyxt them /
than they withdrewe abacke / and set his hors ther by
hym / than the noble damsell yde quykely toke the ³²
thefe / who thoughte to haue borne her to the erth /
but she drewe hym so sore to her *that* he coulde scant

¹⁻¹ omitted. ² so. ³ vpon. ⁴ would. ⁵ and.

⁶ this. ⁷ our companie. ⁸ Fol. clxxv. col. 2.

haue any breth / and therwith she cast hym soo rudely
to the erth against a stone that he was therwith in
a swone / and with the fall all his teth brast¹ in his
4 mouth.

*Ide throws the
thief in the tussle,
and he falls so
heavily on a stone
that he swoons.*

¶ Whan yde sawe the thefe in that daunger quickly
she wente to her horse and mounted vp / than she
drew out her swerde, and said, 'A, ye horson² thefes /
8 youre treason shall not auayle you / for ye haue
all thought vyolence and treason agaynst me / go &
helpe your maister who lyeth yonder / I thinke he
shall euer remembre this wrastlynge bytwene vs. ³I
12 haue now no dout of you all / tho ye were a hondred
mo / for yf I may⁴ I shall make you all be hanged
& strangled' / than the quickest and⁵ lyghtest thefe
amonge them stept forth and toke hym by the brydell
16 of his hors / ³whan she saw that / she lyfte vp her
swerde & strake the thefe on⁶ the hande / so that the
hande flew fro his body and hanged styll vpon her
brydle / than he ranne awaye thinkynge to dye for⁷
20 payne of his hande / ³than she dasht in amonge the
thefes / they had no wepen aboute them to defende
them withal / but they were there to their foly,
nor they had no fere of that / that⁸ fell / nor they
24 byleued not *that* suche a yonge squier shulde haue
had suche hardinesse⁹ & force; ¹⁰she fought fyersly
amonge them, and cut of armes and shulders, & claue
some to the brayne / she dyd so¹¹ that she slew fyue ¹²of
28 the thefes or¹³ she departed / and whan she sawe time
to departe / she sporred her hors / for by that tyme the
resydue of the theues had gette¹⁴ weapons / and they
folowed her to haue slayn her or her hors / than
32 she departed with the sporres / her hors was good /

*Ide mounts her
horse, and bids
the thieves look
to their chief.*

*A thief seizes her
bridle, but she
strikes off his
hand with her
sword.*

*She drives her
horse among
them,*

*and uses her
sword vigorously
upon them.*

After slaying five

*she spurs on her
horse and escapes.*

¹ burst.

² vilde.

³ and.

⁴ can.

⁵ the.

⁶ vpon.

⁷ with the.

⁸ which.

⁹ hardness.

¹⁰ then.

¹¹ much.

¹² Fol. clxxv. back, col. l.

¹³ before.

¹⁴ gotten.

Ide arrives at
Rome, and salutes
the emperor.

He asks her
history.

She tell of her
recent exploits.

therefore anone she was ferre fro them / than the theues
saw they lost but there payn¹ to folow any further,
therefore they let her goo / whan yde sawe that she was
scaped their handes / humbly she thanked our lorde 4
²Iesu chryst,² desyrynge him to ayde and conducte her
into some sauegarde / ³she rode so long that she issued
out of the great forest / of her iourneys and lodgyng I⁴
make no mencyon / but she spedde so in her Iourney 8
that she ariued at the noble cite of Rome, and she toke
vp her lodgyng nere to the palayes / wheare as the
emperour was deuysynge with his lordes of the feates
of the⁵ warre / than yde wente thyther / & kneled 12
downe and saluted themperoure and all his lordes.
When the emperoure and the Romaynes that were
there saw the goodly yonge man who so humbly
had⁵ saluted them / they gretly⁵ regarded him⁶ for the 16
beaute that they saw in him. Than the emperour said
to⁷ hym / 'fayre son, shewe me what ye be and
fro whense ye come, *that* thus cometh hyther to me.'
'Syr,' quod yde / 'I am a squier that came now straye 20
fro Almayne / wheare as I haue serued a certayne
tyme / and lytell there I haue wonne, whear of I am
sory / and but late⁸ I was in a⁵ place / wheare diuers
Spanyardes and other were in company, and they al⁵ 24
had great desyre to make warre / and they wente to the
kyng of Spayne, your enemy / but or⁹ they hadde
ferre gone / they that were in my company met with
them / and there we foughte ¹⁰togyther and slewe 28
y^e moost parte of them, and there I was a lytell hurte /
and now, syr, I am come to you to serue your grace / if
my small seruyce may please you / & in the best wyse
that I can I shall serue you trewly.' 32

¹ labours. ²⁻² god. ³ and. ⁴ wyll. ⁵ omitted.
⁶ much. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ lately. ⁹ before.

¹⁰ Fol. clxxv. back, col. 2.

¶ How the damsell yde was retained¹ with
 the emperour of rome / and how the lady
 Oliue, his doughter, was in ²amours with²
 4 yde, wenyng she had ben a man / & how
 the kyng of Spaine came before the cite
 of Rome, and how the noble damsell yde
 tooke the kyng of Spaine in batayle and
 8 dyscomfyted him. Ca. C.lxxvii.



12 Han themperour herde yde speake / he
 well³ behelde her, and saw how she
 was byg and great / and thought *that*
 he neuer saw⁴ in⁵ his lyfe before
 so fayre a yonge man / and as the
 emperoure was talkyng with yde / theare came to
 them Olyue the emperours doughter. Than all the
 16 lordes rose vp at her comyng / than⁶ she sate downe
 by her father / & beheld greatly the yonge squier / and
 greatly⁷ she praised her⁸ in her corage, bycause of the
 meruaylous great beaute that was in her / wenyng
 20 ⁹to her⁹ that ¹⁰she had bene a man / this Olyue was so
 fayre, so swete, and so meke, that for her bounte and
 humylyte she was ⁹wel⁹ hyloued of euery man / then
 the emperour demaundyd of yde what was her name &
 24 fro whence she came. 'Syr,' quod she, 'my name is
 yde, and¹¹ was borne at Terascon, ⁶I am kyn to duke
 Nayms of Bauyer, & to Aymery of Narbon, and to
 Gyllerme the scotte / but by the kynsmen of Ganelon
 28 I was chasyd and banysshed out of my countre, and syn
 I haue endured moche payne and pouerte.' Then the
 emperour sayd / 'frend, thou art of a good kynryd / I
 retayne¹² the in my courte / for the bounte *that* I

The emperor
 admires her
 fairness.

Oliue his daugh-
 ter beholds Ide,
 and praises her
 prowess.

Oliue, like all who
 see Ide, never
 doubts that she is
 a man.

Ide feigns her
 early history.

The emperor
 takes her into his
 service,

¹ entertained. ²⁻² enamoured of.

³ were *after* beheld her. ⁴ he neuer saw *after* lyfe.

⁶ all. ⁶ and. ⁷ much. ⁸ him. ⁹⁻⁹ omitted.

¹⁰ Fol. clxxvi. col. 1. ¹¹ I. ¹² entertaine.

and bids her
attend his daugh-
ter Olive.

All at the court of
the emperor
praise and love
Ide.

thynke¹ be in the, and also for thy good lynage.' 'Syr,' quod yde, 'god geue me grace that I maye do you suche seruyce that it maye be to youre pleasure' / 'doughter Olyue,' quod the emperour, 'for y^e ⁴ loue of you I haue reteyned² this squyer to serue you' / 'father,' quod Olyue, 'I thanke you / for he³ semethe *that* he is come out of a good house⁴ / and I had no seruau⁵nt of ⁵ a longe⁶ season, that better contentethe ⁸ me' / then the emperour sayd to⁷ yde / 'my frend, serue me well, behold here my doughter, whome I loue enterely, ⁸to whome I delyuer you to serue her; I haue no mo chyl¹²dr^{en} but she, & therfore serue her ¹² trewly as a man ought to do that is come of suche a lynage as ye ⁹be come of⁹ / yf ye serue her wel and trewly, ye had neuer in all your lyfe before so good aduenture' / 'syr,' quod yde, 'I shall do so moche that ¹⁶ by the grace of Iesu¹⁰ that⁵ you & she shal be wel content / and, syr, there is no thyng^e but¹¹ lyghtly I can do it to serue a noble man, and in the warre I shal defende my selfe I trust as well a nother, and ²⁰ also I can serue at a table before a kynge or a⁵ quene.' 'frende,' quod the empe¹²rou^r, 'yf ye can do thus as ye saye ye are well come hether, and ye shall fayre y^e better / and I am ioyfull of youre comynge to serue me, ²⁴ ye shall neuer haue nede to go out of my seruyce' / when yde harde y^e emperoure humbly¹³ she thankyd hym / ⁸thus was yde retaynyd² with the emperour / whereas she dyd so moche by her good seruice that the ²⁸ emperour and his doughter, & all they of the courte louyd and praysed her, and the damoyse^{ll} Olyue oftⁿ tymes gladly regardyd yde, and began in her harte sore to loue her / and yde, who parseiued her, prayed ³²

¹ to. ² entertained. ³ it. ⁴ stocke.
⁵ omitted. ⁶ great. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ and. ⁹⁻⁹ are.
¹⁰ god. ¹¹ but *after* lightly. ¹² Fol. clxxvi. col. 2.
¹³ humbly *after* she.

to¹ our lorde ²Iesu chryste² that he myght³ so dele *that*
 she be not acused nother of man or⁴ woman / she gaue
 almes often tymes to pore men, and she visyted gladly⁵
 4 holy churche ; she demenyd herselfe in suche wyse that
 of euery man she was byloued and praysed / often
 tymes she prayed to ²our lord Iesu chryst² for kynge
 Florence her father, for all that she was chasyd & fled
 8 out of her countre by his occasyon and cause / yette she⁶
 prayed euer¹ to god that she myght be agreed with
 hym. Thus this damoyssel yde was in this daunger
 seruyng the emperour and his doughter Olyue the
 12 space of two monethes / & on a day she was in
 the palays with the emperoure / and thether came
 in great hast a messenger, and came and saluted the
 emperour, and sayde / 'syr, knowe for trouth / ⁷y^e
 16 kynge of Spayne, with great pusaunce, is entered into
 youre empyre of Rome, and wasteth all before hym
 with fyre and sworde / ⁸many a Romaine he hathe
 slayne / and he hath sworne by his lawe that or⁹
 20 a moneth be passed he wyll be with in your citey
 of Rome with all his pusaunce, and he saythe that he
 wyl haue his pleasure of your doughter, & to make you
 to ¹⁰dye of ¹a shameful deth by cause ye haue refused
 24 to gyue¹¹ your doughter in maryage / syr, it were¹²
 better for you that he had wedded¹³ youre doughter,
 then so many men shulde haue been slayne, and so
 many townes brente¹⁴ & destroyed / & castelles beten
 28 downe / syr, go quykly agaynst hym and defende
 youre countre, or elles ye shall se hym shortely pyght
 vp his tentes & paulyons before this citey' / when the
 emperour hard the messenger he studied a great
 32 season, and loked vpon yde, and sayde / 'frende,

She prays for her
wicked father.

News is brought
the emperor of
the approach of
the king of Spain
with a great and
victorious army.

The invader
declares he will
have his pleasure
of Olive, and will
slay her father.

¹ omitted. ²⁻² god. ³ would. ⁴ nor. ⁵ the.

⁶ alwayes. ⁷ that. ⁸ and. ⁹ before.

¹⁰ Fol. clxxvi. back, col. 1.

¹¹ him.

¹² had been.

¹³ married.

¹⁴ burnt.

The emperor
takes counsel
with Ide.

Ide asks for fight-
ing men, and
promises to lead
them against the
enemy.

The emperor con-
fers knighthood
on Ide.

counsaille me, for I thought ful lytell that these men
of war wold haue come vpon me, and nowe they waste
and dystroye my lond.' 'Syr,' quod yde, 'trowble not
your selfe for it; comferte youre selfe and reioyse your 4
lordes & saruauntes, and let me haue men to fyght with
them, and I wyll loke vpon them or¹ they come any
nerer / and by the grace of god I shall cause them to
bye derely the dystruccyon that they haue made in 8
yours countre yf god saue my lyfe and my ²good²
sword'³ / when y^e emperour hard the valyant corage of
yde, he praysed hyr moche in his harte, and sayd /
'frend, your reason pleaseth me well / and therefore I 12
shal do you that honour as to make you a knyght,
wherby your prowes and hardynes shall encreas' /
'syr,' quod yde, 'of the honour *that* ye wyll do to me
I am ryght ioyful / and thanke you therof' / then the 16
emperoure came to⁴ yde and gyrte aboute hym a good
sworde & a ryche / it was so good that there was none
lyke it in goodnes, nor⁵ sharper, nor harder / ⁶then y^e
emperoure gaue her the necke stroke of knyghthood, 20
and sayde / 'yde, remembre this order, the whiche ye
haue receyued this daye / and I praye ²to² god⁷ it
maybe to the encreas of your honour, and euer ⁸beware
that your thoughtes be not lyght nor vauerynge, but 24
be⁹ sage and dyscrete, and atemperate, and be hardy in
baytell, and cast away fro you all fere² and drede² / and
when ye haue wonne any goodes or ryches / kepe them
not locked in your cofers / but ¹⁰depart with¹⁰ them to 28
poore knyghtes, the whiche shall encrease and exalte
your honoure / and alwayes loue¹¹ holy church; yf ye
do thus ye can not fayle to come to great honour, &
euer shew youre vertue ageynst your enemyes' / 'syr,' 32
quod yde, 'by the grace of ¹²our lord Iesu chryst¹²

¹ before. ² omitted. ³ hold. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ neither.

⁶ and. ⁷ that. ⁸ Fol. clxxvi. back, col. 2.

⁹ rather. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ distribute. ¹¹ the. ¹²⁻¹² god.

I shall so do that ther is no spaynyarde But that shall
 wysse themselfe¹ to be on the other syde of the see' /
 then eueryman arayed them in the paleys & in the
 4 citey / ²then trompettes and tabors and hornes began
 to sowne in the citey, so that all the cheualry and
 comunalte of the citey were redy armyd / then they
 came all before the palays and presentyd themselfe
 8 to the emperour / who dyd commaunde them that daye
 to folowe & obeye the commaundement of yde, whom
 he commytted that day to³ be as chefe capetayne, and
 sayde, 'syrs, loke ye do as moche for hym as ye wolde
 12 do for me, ²ye knowe well⁴ I am old and feble, and can
 bere armure no lenger / nor I am not able to ryde as I
 myghte haue done or⁵ this tyme / wherfore I desyre
 you, & also commaunde you all on payne of youre
 16 lyues to do euery thyng⁶ that he commaundethe in the
 stede of me as well as thoughe I dyd commaunde you⁷
 myne own parsone, for he that dothe the contrary,
 he shall lose his hede without any other redempeyon.'
 20 Then they all sayde they wold so do syn it was
 his pleasure. Then the noble emperoure causyd yde to
 be rychely armyde, and then delyueryd ⁸hym his owne
 hors, who was so good *that* his lyke coude not be
 24 founde in no⁹ cowntre / ¹⁰yde mounted vp quykely
 with helme and shyld and a great spere / then² yde
 toke leue of the emperour and of the lady Olyue, and
 so rode thrughe the citey of Rome with all his host ;
 28 and when they were without the citey yde ordeyned
 .iii. batayles / y^e two fyrst batayles were led by two
 great lordes / and the thyrde yde dyd gyde it,¹¹ and thus
 with baners dysplayed¹² auaunsed forthe towards theyr
 32 enemyes / y^e spanyardes thought suerly all had bene
 theyrs / bycause they sawe of all the waye that they

He bids his
 soldiers obey all
 Ide's commands.

He gives Ide his
 own horse.

Ide takes leave of
 the emperor and
 of Olive.

She puts the men
 in battle array,

¹ himself.

² and.

³ doe and.

⁴ that.

⁵ before.

⁶ as.

⁷ in.

⁸ Fol. clxxvii. col. l.

⁹ any.

¹⁰ then.

¹¹ omitted.

¹² they.

and they meet the
Spaniards.

Ide kills the
nephew of the
king of Spain.

She wields her
sword in the
thickest parts of
the fight with
deadly force.

had come no maner of defence made agaynst them / but
it is an olde sayenge / *that* many thynges remayneth of
such folysshe thoughtes / as it dyd with the span-
yardes / for they thought suerly ¹the citey of Rome was 4
won; but yf god ayde and socoure the damoyzell yde
and her cheualry, she shuld take fro them or it were
nyght theyr hope to haue any vycory / she rode by her
bataylles and encoraged her men, and mouyd them to 8
do valyauntly, ²thus they aprochyd towards theyr
enemyes: great crye³ and noyse there was when the
batayles encounteryd together / the shot flewe so
thyeke of both partyes that it semed to be snowe and 12
hayle / yde encountered with a knyght, nephue to the
kyng of Spayne / he receyued suche a stroke, that for
all his armure ydes spere wente clene thrughe his body /
so that the knyght fell to the erthe with his fete 16
vpwarde, and so dyed myserably amonge the horse fete /
then yde sayde, 'of god be thou cursyd; in an yll owre
thou camste hether to recey[ue] suche an offerynge. I
challenge fro you all the empyre of Rome' / then she 20
sayde to herselfe, 'good lord god, humbly⁴ I re⁵quyre
the this day⁶ ayde and socoure me this⁷ poore fugy-
tyue' / therwith she spurred her horse ⁸with the
spores⁸ / and with the same spere she slewe another 24
great baron of Spayne, and so slewe with the same
spere dyuers other / and when the spere was broken /
⁸then⁸ she drew out her ⁸good⁸ sworde, the whiche the
emperoure had geuen her / then she came to a notable 28
duke of Spayne, vnclie to the kyng, to whome she gaue
suche a stroke with her good sworde that she claue his
hede to the tethe, and so⁹ fell downe dede / then she
dashed into the thyckest presse / and euer dyd chese 32
out of the greatest parsonages, and slew many of them,

¹ that.

² and.

³ ioy.

⁴ humbly *after* require.

⁵ Fol. clxxvii. col. 2.

⁶ to.

⁷ a.

⁸⁻⁸ omitted.

⁹ he.

- for she thought the mo that were slayne of the great men, the more shulde her enemyes be afrayed, therfore she chese out suche one after another / and also the
- 4 Romaynes fought valiantly / so that by the hyge prowes of yde and of the good cheualry Romayne¹ that was with her / made the Spanyardes abasshed, and caused them to fle awaye / and had neuer retourned
- 8 agayne and² the duke of Argonne, with .thre.M. knyghtes in his company, had not bene, who made them that fled to retourne agayne / then there began agayne a ferse batayle, and many a man slayne /
- 12 the Romayns dyd valyauntly by the ayde and comforte of theyr capytayne; she rode into the thyckeste of the prese & bet downe the Spanyardes on al sydes, that petye it was to se / Great was the noyse, petuously
- 16 cryed out the hurt men lyeng among the horse fete, which were beten downe to the erthe / then the kyng of Spayne came in to the batayle with his sworde in his hande, and encounteryd with a great lorde
- 20 of Rome, whiche was cosyn to y^e emperour / y^e kynge gaue³ hym suche a stroke on⁴ the helme that he claue his hede in to y^e braynes / and then the kynge slewe another / then yde, who saw that, was sorowful, and
- 24 sayd, 'I ought lytell to be prayسد / without I reuenge the deth of this .ii. lordes slayne by y^e kynge of Spayne' / ⁵she rode to the kynge and gaue hym suche a stroke on⁴ the helme / that all the sercles with stones
- 28 and perlys flew downe to the erth, and strok a waye a part of his coyfe and⁶ here and skynne, and yf the kyng had not tornid his hede ⁷elles his hed⁷ had bene clouen to the tethe, and the sworde glente⁸ & lyght on⁴
- 32 the horse necke and strake it clene asonder, and so the hors fell downe dede, & the kynge to the erthe, wherof

The Spaniards
begin to flee
before her;

but the king of
Spain comes into
the battle

and slays the
emperor's cousin.

Ide rides up to
him, slays his
horse, and fells
him to the
ground.

¹ of the Romanes.

² if.

³ Fol. clxxvii. back, col. 1.

⁴ vpon.

⁵ then.

⁶ omitted. ⁷⁻⁷ it.


⁸ glaunced.

the spanyarden where sore afrayed,¹ thynkyng theyr
 His guards flee, kyng had bene ded² / so they fled awaye & lefte him
 there lyeng on the erth in a traunce, so³ that he coude
 and Ide makes him prisoner while he lies in a trance. nother se, nor⁴ here, nor speke one word; then the 4
 damoyzell yde toke hym and delyuered him to two
 noble lordes of the emperours courte, and when he
 reuyued he was made to swere and promise to be a trew
 The king is taken before the emperor by two lords. presoner / those two lordes wente with the kyng 8
 of spayne into the citey of Rome, and presentyd hym
 to⁵ the emperour fro yde / wherof the emperour thankyd
 god *that* he sente yde thether to serue hym / then
 the kyng was set in a strong towre, and yde was 12
 without⁶ doynge maruayles in armes, so that euery man
 was abasshed therof / ⁷so that⁷ y^e spanyarden made
 Ide's prowess wins the battle. hym⁸ way / fynally, by y^e hye prowes of the damoyzell
 yde, the kyng of Spayne was taken, and all his 16
 men dyscomfyted; happy was he that myght scape to
 saue his lyfe / long endured y^e chase,⁹ wherin many
 were slayne and taken / then yde and her company
 retorned to the¹⁰ tentis and pa¹¹ulyons, and there they 20
 founde great ryches, the whiche was broughte out
 of Spayne / ⁷the whiche⁷ was geuen and departed¹²
 to them *that* had deserued it / great ioye was made in
 the¹³ citey of Rome / for the batayle was well sene 24
 ouer the walles, and specyally the lady Olyue had well
 Olive loves Ide for her courage. regarded the hye prowessse of yde / wherby she louyd
 her so in her hart that she smyled for ioye, and sayde
 to herselfe, ¹⁴'yonder yonge knyght I do gyue my 28
 loue / the whiche I neuer before grauntyd to any man
 leuyng / but it is good ryght and reason that I graunt
 my loue to yde' / suche¹⁵ wordes Olyue sayde to
 herself. 32

¹ abasshed. ² slaine. ³ in such sort. ⁴ omitted.⁵ vnto. ⁶ still. ⁷⁻⁷ and. ⁸ her.⁹ the chase *after* endured. ¹⁰ their.¹¹ Fol. clxxvii. back, col. 2. ¹² distributed. ¹³ noble.¹⁴ to. ¹⁵ like.

¶ How y^e emperoure of Rome receyuid hyely
the noble damoyzell yde, and of y^e honour
that was made to¹ her / & how the em-
perour made her constable of his empyre /
and how the kyng of Spayne was delyuered
out of pryson, and made homage to¹ the
emperour.

Ca. C.lxxviii.

8 fter *that* the bataile was done and
fynysshed, and the botye departed³ /
yde with great triumphe, acompanyed
with lordes and knyghtes, enteryd
12 into y^e citey of Rome / ⁴the emperour
was enformed of the comyng of yde

and of her valyaunt dedis, by whom the batayle was
wonne,⁵ and hōwe that none coude endure agaynst her,
16 wherof y^e emperour had suche ioye at his harte that he
wyst not what to do; ⁴he thanked our lorde ⁶Iesu
chryst⁶ that the mater wente so to hys honoure and
glory / therwith yde came to the palays, wheras she

20 was receyued with great ioye with all the coleges of y^e
citey / and when the emperoure sawe her he rose and
enbrasyd her, and sayde / ‘my trewe frende yde /
of your comyng I am ryght ioyous,⁷ for this day ye
24 haue done suche honoure to our empyre *that* y^e ought
to be honoured for euer, and bycause ye haue done vs
suche seruyce we wyll⁸ ye shall be the myrour for
al other knyghtes to encorage them to do wel / we

28 therefore make you our fyrst chaumberlayne and hie
constable of all our empyre Romaine, and all my
londes and syngnoryes I abandon to be at your com-
maundement in all thynges that ye thynke resonable to
32 be done / for I wyll and commaund that all my lordes

The emperor
receives Ide with
great joy.

He makes Ide his
first chamberlain
and high
constable.

¹ vnto.² Fol. clxxviii. col. 1.³ distributed.⁴ and.⁵ obtained.⁶⁻⁶ god.⁷ ioyfull.⁸ that.

The king of
Spain is brought
before the
emperor.

The emperor
sentences him
to death.

The king in
alarm offers to
make abject
submission,
and implores
mercy.

do obeye you.' 'Syr,' quod yde, 'of this honour
I thanke you / god gyue me the grace that I may
all wayes parseuer to do that thyng that shall be to
you agreable and profytable to your countres and 4
syngnoryes' / then the emperour sente for the kyng of
spayne out of pryson / ¹when he was come he knelyd
downe and sayde / 'syr, I requyre you haue petye of
me' / the emperour answered fersly, and sayd / 'kyng 8
of Spay²ne / for what cause are you come out of your
countrie of spayne thus to dystroy and waste myne
empyre; ye haue slayne many of my lordes and
knyghtes, who neuer dyd you any dyspleasure; and 12
besyde *that*, ye haue brente³ many of my townes, and
beten downe my castelles, wherof I am sory, seying
that nother I nor none of myne dyd you neuer⁴ dys-
pleasure / and bycause that all yll⁵ oughte to be 16
punysshed, and all good dedys rewarded / or⁶ euer I
drynke any wyne I shall cause your hede to be streken
of, for any mans spekyng to the contrary I shall not
fayle to do it' / when the kyng harde that he was in 20
great fere / & prayed humbly ⁷that he wold⁷ haue
petye of hym, and sayde how he was redy to make
amendys of all his trespasses / and to repayre agayne
al the yll damages done by hym and⁸ caused to be 24
done within the empyre, and therwith to do homage
and feaulte to⁹ hym, and to holde the realme of spayne
of hym, promysynge also yf any war were made
agaynst the emperour / he to¹⁰ come and socoure hym 28
with .xx.M. men at his owne proper costys and dys-
pence,¹¹ and to be with hym agaynst all men *that* wolde
trouble hym / then the emperoure sayde / 'syr¹² kyng of
Spayne, knowe for trouthe that for all youre promyse 32
and wordes I wyll do but lytell for it, for ye shall not

¹ and.² Fol. clxxviii. col. 2.³ burnt.⁴ any.⁵ euill.⁶ before.⁷⁻⁷ him to.⁸ or.⁹ vnto.¹⁰ would.¹¹ charges.¹² omitted.

scape¹ me' / then the damoyzell yde stept forth and
sayde to the emperoure / 'syr, I haue often tymes hard
say that he that humbleth hymselfe and cryethe for
4 marcy / reason then² requereth *that* he shulde haue
marcy graunted hym, and therfore, syr, I requyre you
to receyue this kynge to your grace, and pardon his
trespas, seyng the offers that he hathe offeryd to do /
8 ³he shal⁴ become your lego⁵ man, and holde his lond
of you / and amende the damages that ye haue suffered /
he that reason offereth ought to haue reason / well⁶ ye
ought to thanke god syn suche a man as he is puttethe
12 hymselfe into your handes' / when the emperoure
vnderstode yde, he sayde / 'frende yde, your wytte
and courtoysye is to be alowed / and by cause I knowe
that the counseall that ye gyue me is resonable, I wyl
16 do as ye wyl haue me / take⁷ him, and by you he shall
be delyuered' / 'syr,' quod yde, 'I thank you' / when
the kyng of spayn sawe that he shuld haue grace, and
that with a mendis makynge he shuld be quyte de-
20 lyuered, he thankyd god / & dyd homage to the
Emperoure, and delyuered hym⁸ plegys suffycient⁹ to
make restytucion as he had promysyd / then the
emperour gaue hym a sauecoundyte tyl¹⁰ he¹¹ was re-
24 tourned¹¹ into his owne countre, & all the other presoners
were delyuered, such as were taken in the batayle by
the Romainys / then the kynge of Spayne was ioyfull,
and oftentymes thankyd the damoyzell yde by whose
28 meanes *that*¹² bounte and courtoysye was shewed hym /
then he toke¹³ leue of the emperour and of yde, and of
all other lordes and knyghtes *that* were there present /
and so he retourned into his countre of Spayne / where
32 as he was receyued with sore wepynges for y^e great

Idc pleads for
his life with the
emperor.

The emperor
agrees to spare
the king's life.

He does homage
to the emperor,

and is liberated.

He thanks Idc
many times.

¹ from. ² then *before* reason. ³ that. ⁴ will.

⁵ Fol. clxxviii. back, col. 1. ⁶ and. ⁷ you.

⁸ omitted. ⁹ sufficient *before* pledges. ¹⁰ vntill.

¹¹⁻¹¹ came. ¹² this. ¹³ his.

losse that they¹ had receyued. Now we shall leue
spékynge of hym and retourne to our mater.

¶ Howe the emperoure gaue his doughter
Olyue in maryage to the damoyssel yde / 4
knowynge none other but that she had
bene a man, ²and howe she was apeched
by a verlette, that harde theyr deuyses
whyles they were a³bed together, wherby 8
the emperour wold haue brent⁴ the damoy-
ssel yde. Ca. C.lxxix.



Ido does the
emperor much
service;

she settles all the
disputes of his
lords.

Olive falls more
deeply in love
with her.

After that the kynge of Spayne was
departed fro Rome, the emperour 12
honoryd and prayسد moch yde for
y^e good seruyce *that* she had done /
who euer better & better parseuered
in good seruyce doynge, for she dyd 16
so moche by her wyt that all dyscordes and debates
that were in the empyre betwene lordes or neybouris,
she set them in peas and acorde, wherfore the emperour
louyd her in such wyse that without her he dyd 20
nothyng / and the emperours doughter Olyue loued
her in suche wyse that she coude not lyue one day
without y^e syght of her, she was so taken with loue,
thynkyng that she neuer sawe so goodlye a ⁵yonge 24
man / and so on a day the emperour assembelyd his
lordes and his preuy counsaile / to whome he shewed
and sayde that he had but one doughter, the which as
then was of lawful age / wherfore he wolde that she 28
shulde be maryed, to the entente *that* she myght haue
hayes to enioye his londes after his dyscese / & sayd,
'syrs, I thynke yf all y^e world shuld be serchyd there

¹ he.

² Fol. clxxviii. back, col. 2.

³ in.

⁴ burnt.

⁵ Fol. clxxix, col. 1.

coude not be founde a man so worthy to haue my
doughter Olyue in maryage as our welbeloued constable,
the valyaunt yde, by whom so noble seruyce hath bene
4 done to vs and to our hole empyre / for I wolde or¹ I
dye that she shulde be maryed / and I thynke I can
not better bestow her / for in al the worlde there is not
a more valyaunt knyght then yde is, nor that is better²
8 worthy to gouerne an empyre or a great realme / when
the lordes vnderstode y^e emperoure / they al alowed his
mynde, and counsailed hym to do the same; then the
good emperoure called to hym yde, and sayd, 'My dere
12 ³and cordyall³ frende, for y^e great seruyce that ye haue
done / I wyll rewarde you as by reason I am bound to
do, and I can not gyue you a more rycher thinge, nor
that I loue better, then Olyue my dere doughter /
16 whom I wyll gyue you in maryage, and I wyll that ye
take her to your wyfe, to the entente that after my
dayes ye maye gouerne myne empyre / for nowe I fele
my selfe agyd and feble / wherfore I shal be content
20 that fro hensforthe ye haue the gouernynge therof / and
now I delyuer to you my londe in kepynge to gouerne
it as your owne / 'A, sir,' quod yde, 'what is that
ye saye / ye knowe well I am but a poore gentylman
24 banysshed out of my countre / and⁴ am worthe noth-
ynge / great ⁵damage it shulde be so noble a damoyzell
to be assygned to ⁶so poore a⁶ man as I am / syr, I cry
you marcy, humbly requyrynge you to take aduyce that
28 your doughter, who is so fayre, maye be maryed to
some hye prynce and pusaunte, to the entent that yf ye
shulde haue any busynes that he myght be of power to
ayd and to socour you / ⁷I am poore, & ought alwayes
32 to trauayle and to take payne to get honour for me, and
to encrease my lynage / 'what,' quod y^e emperour, 'are
you so hardy⁸ to refuse my doughter, by whom great

The emperor
declares that he
can bestow her
nowhere so well
as on Ide,
his valiant
constable.

The emperor
informs Ide of
his purpose.

Ide deprecates
the notion of
marriage with
Olive;
she is a poor
gentleman
banished out of
her own country,
unworthy of
such honour.

The emperor is
wrathful at his
officer's rejection

¹ before.² more.³⁻³ omitted.⁴ I.⁶ Fol. clxxix. col. 2.⁶⁻⁶ such a poore.⁷ for.⁸ as.

of his daughter's
hand;

and Ide in fear
yields to his will.

The emperor
reveals the matter
to Olive.

She is very
joyful;

she desires to be
married quickly.

welth and goodnes maye come to you' / 'syr,' quod
yde, 'syn it is so that it plese you to shewe me this
honoure I wyll not refuse it / but, syr, I saye it to the
entente *that* ye shulde take good aduyce therin / & syn¹ 4
ye be² content that I shulde thus do, and that it is your
pleasure, I am content, and³ humbly thanke your grace
of the honour that ye bere me' / then the emperour
sente for his doughter, who cam to⁴ hym with a glad 8
hart, for she had ben aduerteysed of the mater why that
her father sent for her / ⁵then the emperoure sayd,
'doughter, ye muste promyse me to do as I shall shewe
you' / 'syr,'⁶ quod she, 'it is not in me, nor I wyll 12
not refuse any thyng that is your pleasure' / 'doughter,'
quod the emperoure, 'ye do well so to answeere me / &
bycause I haue no mo but you that ought to haue my
realme after me, therfore I wyll ye take a husbonde, to 16
the entent that your londes and syngnoryes maye
be defended by hym, & therfore I wyl⁷ ye take to your
husband our capetayne, the valyaunte yde, whome
I loue enterely / this is my pleasure and agremente of 20
all my lordes / yf it be your pleasure to haue hym, he
shall be kyng and you quene after my disces.' 'syr,'
quod ⁸the lady, 'I am redy to fulfyll your wyll,⁹ and
to obeye your commaundementes, and I thanke god of 24
this fayre aduenture that is fallen to me this day / for
I shall haue hym that I ¹⁰haue loued¹⁰ beste; I haue
not now lost my tyme, when I shall haue at my wyl
hym whom I ¹¹most desyre in¹¹ the worlde' / ¹²she 28
knelyd downe before her father & thankyd hym of his
gyfte / ⁵then she rose and kyste her father, and sayde,
'ryght dere father, I requyre you haste¹³ that this be
done; let us go to the churche to be wedded, for me 32

¹ seeing.

² are.

³ I.

⁴ vnto.

⁵ and.

⁶ Deere father.

⁷ that.

⁸ Fol. clxxix. back, col. 1.

⁹ pleasure.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ loue.

¹¹⁻¹¹ loue best in all.

¹² then.

¹³ to hasten.

thynke we ought so to do ;' when the lordes hard the
 lady they laughed at her haste / ¹ then the emperour
 said, 'doughter, come forth and fyaunee your hus-
 4 bond, and you, yde, aproche nere ; and nowe, after my
 dethe, I gyue you all ² my realme, ² and I gyue you my
 dere doughter in recompence of the good seruyce that
 ye haue done me' / when yde vnderstode the emperour /
 8 all her blode chaunged, she wyste not what to do, all
 her body trymbelid ; for fere she callyd vpon our lorde
 god ryght petuously to herselfe, and prayed god ³ to
 haue petye of her, and to counsayle her what was best
 12 for her to do / for she sawe that parforce the emperoure
 wold mary her to his doughter, and sayde, 'a, my
 father Florence, by you and by your dyshordynat
 rage I am nowe brought to this case, when ye made me
 16 to departe by case ye wolde haue had me to your wyfe,
 but or ⁴ I wold haue consentyd therto I had rather ⁵
 haue bene brent ⁶ / therfore I fled awaye to eschewe that
 shame, wherby I haue bene syn in many parelles / for ⁷
 20 the which, by the wyll of god, I haue scapyd, wherof I
 ought to thanke hym / and I thought to kepe my selfe
 with in Rome secrete, and that no man shulde know
 that ⁸ I am a woman, but I shall be acusyd by the
 24 emperours doughter, whose loue is so sore ⁹ set on me
 that I haue no powre to escape without I stele preuely
 away fro them all ; and yf I shewe them what I am, I
 maye then sone haue some velany and ¹⁰ accuse me and
 28 send me to ¹⁰ y^e kyng my father, or els to send hym
 word where I am, and then in great haste he shall ¹¹
 sende for me / or elles, yf I wyll scape, I must fle awaye
 ouer the see / howbeit, I speke but lyke a fole / syn ¹²
 32 this fortune is fallen to ¹³ me to haue y^e emperours

The emperor
 promises to
 bequeath his
 kingdom to his
 daughter and son-
 in-law.

Ide is sorely
 troubled,
 and prays to
 heaven for aid.

She curses her
 father's wicked-
 ness.

She fears that
 when her disguise
 is discovered she
 will be sent back
 to Florence her
 father.

¹ and. ²⁻² mine Empire. ³ him. ⁴ before.
⁵ to. ⁶ burnt. ⁷ from. ⁸ Fol. clxxix. back, col. 2.
⁹ much. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ bee accused and sent vnto. ¹¹ will.
¹² seeing. ¹³ vnto.

Ide and Olive
are formally
affianced.

They are soon
afterwards
married.

A great feast
follows.

Olive and Ide go
to the wedding
chamber;

but Ide main-
tains her disguise.

doughter in maryage and his realme¹ / I shall wed
her & do as god wyl gyue me grace to do' / All this the
damoyseill yde spoke to herselfe. Then she sayde to
the emperour / 'syr, syn it is your pleasure to geue me ⁴
your doughter in maryage, I am redy to take her.'
Then they were led to the mynster church / and there
they were fyaunced, wherof great ioye was made in
rome / then the day of maryage came / then² the fayre 8
Olyue was led to the church betwene .ii. kynges / and
yde went afore all³ sadly / and so ⁴they⁴ cam to the
church, and there⁵ were wedded. Then great was the
triumphe and ioye ⁴that was⁴ in the citey of Rome; 12
many a ryche garment of golde and sylke was worne
that daye / ²euery man ran to se the new brydes / then
they went to the palays, and so to dyner. Of the
festes and⁴ sportes and ryche metys that was⁶ there 16
that day, yf I shulde shew it the tyme shulde be ouer
longe to reherse yt / but syn Rome was fyrste founded
yt was not knowen that ther had ben such a fest as this
maryage⁷ / for no man⁸ thought but that yde had ben 20
a man / and after supper, ⁹and that⁹ it was tyme to go
to rest / the brydes were brought in to ther chaumber /
then the lady ¹⁰Olyue went to her bedde / than came
yde and the chambre auoyded / ¹¹than yde¹¹ locked fast 24
the dore, to the entent that none shulde here them /
than he¹² cam to the⁴ bed, and layde hym¹³ downe on
the bed syde / & said to Olyue / 'my ryght swete loue,
god gyue you good nyght / for as for me, I can gyue 28
you no good / for¹⁴ I fele suche a dissease, the which
greueth me sore' / and therwith she kyst Olyue, who
answered and said / 'my swete loue, ye ar the thing
in the worlde that I moost desyre / for the bounte and 32

¹ Empire. ² and. ³ verie. ⁴ omitted. ⁵ they.

⁶ were. ⁷ wedding. ⁸ bodie. ⁹⁻⁹ when.

¹⁰ Fol. clxxx. col. 1. ¹¹⁻¹¹ and shee. ¹² shee.

¹³ her. ¹⁴ because.

swetnes that I know in you, ye¹ do with me as it shall
 please you / & to the entent that ye shall not thynke
 that I haue so great desyre that ye shulde do y^e thynge,
 4 the whiche of right ought to be done bytwene man and
 woman² / I am content to forbere it this³ .xv. daies /
 & bycause that dyuers folkes are here aboute to herken⁴
 vs / I am contente to gyue you trewes / for we shall
 8 haue space ynoughe hereafter to sporte vs / for⁵ I
 knowe such noblenes in you that I am sure ye wyll
 take none other wyfe / nor touche none other / but that
 ye wyll kepe your fayth & trouth to me / for I am
 2 chast, & so ye shall fynde me / it suffyseth me to
³ clyppe and³ kysse you / and as for y^e preuy loue, I am
 content for this tyme, syn it is your pleasure, to forbere
 it.' Than yde answered / 'fayre lady, I wyll not refuse
 16 youre wyll.' thus they passed that nyght with clyp-
 pyng and kyssynge. Than in the mornynge they
 arose and made them redy, & cam in to the palais /
 themperour beheld Oliue his doughter / to se if she
 20 were any thing chaunged³ or altered³ / and said,
 'doughter / how is it with your husbond?' 'Syr,'
 quod she, 'euy n as I desyre / for I loue yde my hus-
 bonde better than I doo⁶ you / all though ye be⁷ my
 24 father' / at that⁸ worde the emperoure and all his
 lordes laughed / so great ioy and feast⁹ was ther made,
 10 the whiche¹⁰ endured eyght dayes. Than euery man
 toke leaue and wente whyther as they list / than⁵ after
 28 the fyftene daies were past¹¹ that yde had lyen with
 Oliue / yde touched her not but with³ clippyng and³
 kyssyng / whearof Oliue was sorowfull, and said to
 herselfe, 'O, good lorde, I was engendred in an euyl
 32 hour whan I haue maried the goodlyest person of the
 worlde / and the moost worthyest and hardiest that

The wedding
 festivities
 continue for
 eight days.

¹ then. ² wife. ³ omitted. ⁴ heare. ⁵ and.

⁶ loue. ⁷ are. ⁸ Fol. clxxx. col. 2. ⁹ feasting.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ that it. ¹¹ expired.

He is forced to
reveal the truth
to Olive,

who declares that
she will keep the
secret.

A page overhears
Ide's confession,

and bears news
of it to the
emperor.

euer was gyrde with¹ swerde and² rode on hors /
 he maketh noo ³maner of³ semblaunce to do that
 thyng that⁴ I so sore haue desyred' / than she drew
 nere to yde and touched him⁵ / than yde, who knewe ⁴
³ryght³ well what her desyre was / he³ turned ⁶to
 herward⁶ and wolde hyde himselfe no lenger fro her /
 but all wepyng cryed her mercy, and shewed her fro
 the begynnyng to the endyng the maner of all her ⁸
 aduenture / and how that she was a woman and was
 fledde awaye bycause her father wolde haue married her
 himselfe. And whan Oliue vnderstode yde / she was
 right sorowfull / howbeit, she comforted yde, and said / ¹²
 'my right swete loue, discomforte not yourselfe / for ye
 shall not be ⁷bewrayed for⁷ me nother to no man nor
 woman lyuynge / we are wedded togyther, ⁸I wyl
 be good and trewe to you syn ye haue kept youre selfe ¹⁶
 so trewly / with you I wyll vse my tyme and passe my
 destany syn it is thus, for I se wel it is the pleasure of
 our lord godde.' Thus as Olyue and yde were deuy-
 synge togyther of their secretes / a page, beyng in a ²⁰
 chaumbre that ioyned ⁹fast vnto⁹ their chaumbre,
 herde well all their secrete wordes and communycacion
 what eche of them had sayd vnto¹⁰ y^e other, ¹¹than he in
 all hast went to the emperour and shewed hym all that ²⁴
 he had herde betwene y^e two louers / whan themperour
 herde that he was ryght sorowfull, and saide, 'felowe,
 beware what thou sayest / looke that thy reporte be
 trewe / for yf I fynde it contrary thou shalt dye of³ ²⁸
 an yll deth' / 'syr,' ³quod he³ / 'if it be not as I haue
 sayd, and that yde be not a woman, whom ye take for
 a man, stryke of my head.' Than themperour made
 hym to be taken & kept, to the entent to proue the ³²
 trouthe / for he thought the matter straunge to byleue /

¹ a. ² or. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ which. ⁵ her.
 ⁶⁻⁶ toward her. ⁷⁻⁷ accused by. ⁸ and.
 ⁹⁻⁹ close to. ¹⁰ to. ¹¹ Fol. clxxx, back, col. 1.

- than he called to hym the lordes of his preuy counsell /
 and he shewed them the mater / whearof they had
 great¹ marueyle, seyng the great vertue / and hye
 4 prowes that was in yde / ²they greatly complayned³ the
 mater, and were sorowfull / than the emperour, who was
 right pensyfe, sware and made promyse / that if he
 found the mater in *that* case / he wolde cause both his
 8 doughter and yde to be brent,⁴ bycause of hydyng
 of that straunge cas, and sayd, 'if yde had dyscouered
 the matter to me be tymes / my doughter sholde neuer
 haue wedded⁵ her, and the matter⁶ kepte close fro me /
 12 I shal neuer haue ioy at my herte tyll⁷ I knowe the
 trouth' / than he commaunded a bayne⁸ to be made
 redy in his owne chambre, whearin he wolde haue yde
 to be bayned,⁹ to the entent that he myght know the
 16 trouth or¹⁰ she scaped away, for he sayd he wold not
 suffre suche boggerie¹¹ to be vsed / the baynge¹² was
 made redy, and yde was sent for / who knewe no-
 thyng of that matter / than themperour sayd to him,¹³
 20 'yde, do of your clothes, for ye shal bayne⁸ you with
 me' / whan yde herd the emperour, she was sore
 abashed, and sayd, 'Syr, I pray you forbere it for this
 time, for¹⁴ I haue not ben accustomed to be ¹⁵bayned.'⁹
 24 Than the emperoure sayde / 'I wyll not bere¹⁶ it / for I
 wyll se you naked / for yf I fynde it trewe that¹⁷ hathe
 ben shewed me / bothe you and my doughter shall be
 brent.'⁴ Whan yde herd that she sawe well she was
 28 betrayed and loste / than she kneled downe before the
 emperour and cryed hym mercy / and requyred hym to
 haue pyte of her / than² the emperour in great hast
 sent for his lordes, who were in the hall / talkynge
 32 togyther, & were sorowfull for yde, whom they loued

The emperor
calls his lords
together,
and asks their
advice.

He swears that if
Ide be a woman,
she and Olive
shall be burnt.

A bath is set out
in his own
chamber,

and the emperor
bids Ide enter it
in his presence.

Ide protests,
and falls weeping
at his knees.

¹ much. ² and. ³ of. ⁴ burnt. ⁵ married.

⁶ now. ⁷ vntill. ⁸ bath. ⁹ bathed. ¹⁰ before.

¹¹ falsehood. ¹² bathing. ¹³ her. ¹⁴ because.

¹⁵ Fol. clxxx. back. col. 2. ¹⁶ forbere.

¹⁷ which.

The Emperor
will have no
mercy on her,

and the fire is
prepared to burn
her.

Ide prays to the
Virgin.

entyrely / so they cam to y^e emperour, and founde yde
before hym on her knees sore wepyng / so¹ that for pety
of her they wept all / than themperour shewed them
all the dede / whearfore he² must nedes se Iustyce to 4
be done vpon yde / who than by the peers & lordes
of Rome was iudged to be brent.³ Than it was
commaunded the fyre to be made redy to bryn⁴ her, the
whiche was done / and yde before the emperour abyd- 8
ynge her iudgment, with her handes ioyned lyft vp
towards the heuen / makynge pyteous⁵ praiers to our
lorde god and to the⁶ vyrgyn Mary his moder,⁶ praienge
them to haue pety of her soule, and to receyue it in to 12
the holy paradyse / for she saw wel y^e ende⁷ was come⁷
of her lyfe.

¶ Howe oure lorde god made great myracles
for yde / for god made hym⁸ to chaunge 16
from the nature of a woman and to become
a parfite man / whearof the emperour & his
doughter Oline⁹ had great ioy / and so yde
and olyue lay togyther and engendered a 20
fayre sonne named after Croysant. And of
the deth of the emperoure. Ca. C[1].xxx.

A marvellous
voice from heuen
is heard while Ide
is praying.

It bids the
emperor do Ide
no hurt.

The same houre that yde was in her prayers /
sodenly there appered in the chambre a great clere 24
light / and therwith a meruelous swete odoure / that it
semed all y^e chambre to be full of ensence and spyces
aromatyke / then anone¹⁰ after they herd an angelyke
voyce sent from oure lorde god & sayd / 'thou em- 28
perour of Rome, oure lorde god commaundeth the by
me / that thou be not so hardye¹¹ to touche yde to
do her any hurte / for oure lorde god hath done her y^e

¹ in such sort. ² ye. ³ burnt. ⁴ burn.
⁵ pitifull. ⁶⁻⁶ hooly ghost. ⁷⁻⁷ after lyfe. ⁸ her.
⁹ Fol. clxxxi. col. 1. ¹⁰ presently. ¹¹ as.

- grace for the goodnes *that* is in her / he doth consent
 and wyll by his dyuyne puyssaunce / that she be
 chaunged in nature, and¹ become a parfeyght man as all
 4 other be with out any difference / & also god com-
 maundeth that the page whom thou hast in pryson that
 thou² let hym go quyt² / for that³ he sheweth the was
 of trougħ / this mornynge yde was a woman, and⁴ now
 8 he⁵ is a man / Also god commaundeth the to make
 thyself redye, for *thou* shalt lyue here in this world but
 .viii. dayes longer / therfor fro henceforth let yde and
 Olyue thy doughter haue gouernynge of thy realme,⁶
 12 who or⁷ this yere be passed shall haue betwene them a
 sonne who shal be named Croisant, who shall do mer-
 uelles whax he cometh to age. many aduentures and
 pouertyes he shall suffer in his youth, but afterward he
 16 shall haue ioy and welth ynough' / & with those
 wordes the angell wanysshed away / and left them-
 perour and his lordes and al the people of Rome in
 great ioy for y^e euident⁸ myracle that our lord god had
 20 sent by the prayer of yde / who and⁹ Olyue his wyfe
 had great ioy and thanked our lord¹⁰ Iesu Chryst¹⁰ /
 than the feest and tryumphe began agayne at Rome.
 the¹¹ day past and the nyght came, and yde and Olyue
 24 went to bed togyther, and toke there sport in suche
 wyse that the same nyght was gotten & engenderyd
 the fayre Croysant, whearby y^e ioy dobled in the cite of
 Rome / the next daye yde came to the palayes with
 28 other lordes. And themperour was in his chambre
 makynge of his testament / for he had not forgotten the
 wordes of the aungell. so he lyued .viii. dayes longer,
 and on the .ix. day he dyed / and he was borne into
 32 the great church of saynt Peter, wheare his absequy
 was done solemnly, and layde in his tombe, the whiche

Her sex is to be
changed.

The emperor will
die within eight
days.

All the words
come true.

The emperor dies,
and is buried in
St. Peter's
church.

¹ to. ²⁻² settest him at libertie.

⁵ she.

⁶ Empire.

⁹ with.

⁷ before.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ god.

³ which.

⁴ but.

⁸ Fol. clxxxi. col. 2.

¹¹ that.

Olive is delivered
of a fair son,

who is named
Croissant.

He is carefully
trained in youth.

He is kept at
school till he is
fifteen.

was ordeyned for hym as it apartayned. his sone in
law and his doughter morned accordynge to the custome
than vsed / and¹ after .viii. dayes was² passed all the
noble lordes of the countrye came to the courte and 4
crowned yde emperoure & Olyue his wyfe empresse /
greate ³feest and ioy³ was made at theyr coronacion.
And whan Olyue thempresse approched her time / she
was delyuered of a fayre sonne / and whan he was 8
cristened he was named Croysant / that is to say, grow-
yng, because the mone the same tyme was Increasyng /
of the chere that yde and his lordes made at the byrth
of this chyde nede not to be rehersed / for ye may well 12
thynke it was as great as euer was any done before /
than the tyme came that thempresse was chyrched,
wherof gret ioy was made. this chylde was well
norysshed,⁴ two notable ladyes had the kepyng of hym 16
⁵tyll⁵ .vii. yeres ⁶were past⁶ / then a noble knyght and
an aunseant was set aboute hym, and a wyse and a
great clerke to teche hym co⁷nyng, for comonly it is
said that a kyng without letter⁸ or conyng is compared 20
to an asse crowned / often tymes the father & the
mother wolde visytte theyr chylde / he was kept to
scole tyll⁹ he was .xv. yeres of age, and he was so good
a clerke that ther was none in the cite of Rome / but 24
that he coude well dispute with hym and assayle his
questions / yf his beawte / greatnes / force / humylyte /
and good vertues whearwith he was indewed / yf I
shulde discriue / ¹⁰or report¹⁰ them it shulde¹¹ be ouer 28
longe to rehearse / whearof yde and his mother olyue
hadde such ioye that they wyst not what to do, but
alonly to thanke god of his grace / for this¹² chylde
grew so in bygnes and strength that euery man was 32
therof abasshed in such wyse that at that tyme there

¹ then. ² were. ³⁻³ ioy and feasting. ⁴ and.

⁵⁻⁵ vntill he was. ⁶⁻⁶ of age.

⁷ Fol. clxxxi. back, col. 1. ⁸ learning. ⁹ vntill.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ would. ¹² their.

coude not be founde in y^e cite of Rome of his age none
 so great / nor so ¹ bygge of strength ¹ / whearof his father
 & his mother and all the noble lordes & knyghtes were
 4 ryght ioyfull.

His strength
 excels that of
 other men.

¶ Howe Kyng Florence sent two knyghtes to
 Rome to the^mperour his sonne, desiringe
 hym to come and se him, & to leue thempyre
 8 of Rome to his son croisant / & to set noble
 men aboute him to gyde him / and also²
 bringe with him thempresse / the faire
 Oliue.

Capitulo .Clxxxi.

12 He emperour and thempresse, seynge
 theyr sonne to growe & amende euery
 day in all good warkes, they thanked
 god, prayenge hym to gyue hym the
 16 grace from bet³ter to better to par-
 seyuer / so it fell that on a witsonday



themperour and thempresse helde estate royall at there
 palayes for y^e solemnyte of that day⁴ / there was many
 20 diuers⁵ kynges / barons / dukes / erles / duchesses and
 ladyes / & whyles they were in the myddes of theyr
 dyner / there arryued two notable aunciaunt knyghtes /
 4 whan they were entered into the palayes they came

Messengers from
 King Florence
 come to Ide.

24 before themperour & kneled downe and sayd / 'god
 that hath vs created saue & kepe the noble kyng
 Florence of Aragon and of Nauerne and duke of Bur-
 deaux / and the same god saue y^e ryght noble and ryght
 28 excellent emperour ⁶Romayne, her⁶ dere sonne, and his
 fayre doughter thempresse Olyue' / whan themperour
 yde herd spekyng of his father / he was feerfull in his
 hert bycause of y^e shamfull thyng not faysable⁷ the
 32 whiche he wolde haue done agaynst hym / ryght in-

¹⁻¹ hye of stature. ² to. ³ Fol. clxxxi. back, col. 2.

⁴ and. ⁵ omitted. ⁶⁻⁶ of Rome his. ⁷ faileable.

Ide inquires after
his father.

The messengers
tell of Florence's
wrath because of
Ide's flight,

as d how he fell
ill,

tentiuely he behelde the two knyghtes, and demaunded
howe the kynge his father dyd / euer syn he departed
from hym / than one of the knyghtes answered and
sayd / 'ryght dere syr, yf the doloure / the¹ displeasure / 4
& the great rage whearin your father was for your de-
partynge / if I shulde shewe it / ouer² longe it shulde
be to reherse / but shortely I shall shew you the sub-
staunce of the matter / the same mornynge after your 8
departure³ tydynges was brought to the kyng your
father how that the kynge of Nauern, your vnclē, was
come to se hym. than your father went and met hym,
and brought hym in to the cite of courtoyse with great 12
ioye & myrth / than⁴ they alyghted at y^e palayes, and
there tydynges was brought to the kinge your father
how ye were fled away, whearby suche sorow and
doloure & displeasure toke hym at the herte / that there 16
was none that durst loke hym in the face / ⁵for he
loked lyke a speryt for⁶ the folysse loue that he had
on you / he ranne about in the palayes as a disparate
man / so that for fere of hym there was nother ladye 20
nor damesell that durst abyde hym for the great furour⁷
and displeasure that he was in / so that by reason
of his great yre he fell in a greuowse malady, whearin
he thought ⁸to⁸ haue dyed / and so was confessed 24
& made hym redy to receyue the holy ⁹sacrament⁹ /
than the kynge of Nauerne, & Sorbare, and dyuers other
prynces came too vysyt hym, and desyred hym to put
that folye out of his mynde and to crey¹⁰ god¹¹ mercy / 28
many notable clerkes¹² were there / and they shewed
hym many good reasons and ensamples, and sayde
without he wolde leue and forsake his folye he shulde
be dampned¹³ bodye and soule / ⁴when the king your 32

¹ omitted.

² too.

³ departing.

⁴ and.

⁵ Fol. clxxxii. col. 1.

⁶ because.

⁷ furie.

⁸⁻⁸ that he should.

⁹⁻⁹ ghost.

¹⁰ to.

¹¹ for.

¹² doctors.

¹³ condemned.

father saw hym selfe in that doubte, knowynge that he
 had done yll to cause you to fle awaye / and that no
 tydynge coude be herde of you / suche a contrisyon
 4 and a repentaunce toke hym that greate haboundaunce
 of droppes fell frome his eyen / so¹ that all his face was
 wet / and he had ²so great² doloure and contrysyon³ in
 hymselfe that euery man that sawe hym wepte for
 8 petye / and the kynge of Nauern had so great petye of
 hym that he was so sorowfull that a greuous syknes
 toke him, so that the fourth daye he dyed, wherof y^e
 kynge your father was ryght sorowfull / at last his
 12 syknes determynd, and⁴ was recoured and in good
 helth a certeyne space / but by reason of the dolour
 that he had for you he coude not be ceased / ⁵he fel
 agayne sore syke, and so he contynueth, and hathe no
 16 power to ayde nor⁶ releue hymselfe / but he eteth and
 drynketh ynough. And after nowe of late it hathe ben
 shewed hym / all your lyfe, and how by y^e grace of
 7 our lord⁷ ⁸god it is fallen to you / whearby suche ioye
 20 is come to his herte that there was neuer suche ioye
 before⁷ in no mans herte, and yet he sayth that he shall
 neuer haue parfeyght ioye at his herte tyll⁹ he may se
 you / and therefore he hath sent vs heder to you / and
 24 he desyreth and commaundethe as moche as the father
 can commaund his chylde / that both you and them-
 presse your wyfe leue this your countrie in y^e gydynge
 of your sonne, and to leue notable persons aboute hym
 28 to kepe and to conducte hym ; for it shalbe to you more
 profeyghtable & better to vse your lyfe in pease in the
 realmes of Aragon and Nauerne with the duchye of
 Burdeaux / the whiche to you parteyneth by iust en-
 32 heritaunce / and he hathe gyuen vs in charge not too
 departe hense tyll⁹ y^e haue shewed me your wyll, to the
 entent that we may brynge hym sum good newes.


and was induced
to repent of the
sin he had
meditated.

For love of Ide,
Florence is still
sore sick.

The messengers
entreat Ide and
Olive to visit
him,
and to leave
Croissant regent.

¹ in such sort. ²⁻² such. ³ greefe. ⁴ he. ⁵ but.
⁶ and. ⁷⁻⁷ omitted. ⁸ Fol. clxxxii. col. 2. ⁹ vntill.

¶ Howe the emperoure yde and thempresse
Olyue gaue good instructions to there sonne
whan they departed from Rome, and how
they arryued at Courtoyse and cam to 4
Florence, who with great ioy receyued them
as his chydren. Capitulo .clxxxii.

¹  Han themperour yde had herde this
knyght reporte these newes of the 8
kyng his father / the water fell frome
his eyen for petye and ioy *that* he had,
and answered and sayd. 'Syr, I wyll
that ye knowe well that of your comynge and good 12
newes I am ryght ioyfull / but I am sory for the² sik-
nes that my father is in / whearfor to recomfort hym
and³ make hym ioyfull, I wyll⁴ ye retourne to hym
and say howe that humblye I recommaunde me to his 16
good grace, and that at mydsomer nexte I and my wyfe
shal⁵be with hym.' the messengers, herynge that
answere, were ryght ioyfull. Than after dyner they
toke theyr leue of themperour and of thempresse / who 20
gaue them many ryche gyftes for the honour of kyng
Florence theyr father / and so the messengers departed /
Whan thempresse Olyue vnderstode the wyll of her
lorde / she was ryght sorowfull for to leue her countree 24
wheareas she was borne and norryshed, and specially to
leue her sonne Croisant whom she loued. But syn it
was the pleasure of her lorde so to do she contented
herselfe / for she loued her husbonde so well that she 28
wolde in no wyse saye agaynst his pleasure nor lette
hym to do his wyll / ryght sorowfull were the prynces
and lordes of that countree and all the people of Rome.
But the best wyse they coude they comforted them- 32

Ide is sorry
for his father's
sickness,

and promises to
visit him.

Olyue does not
wish to leave her
country and her
son.

¹ Fol. clxxxii. back, col. 1. ² great. ³ to,
⁴ that. ⁵ will.

selues by cause of the yonge prynce Croysant, who
 shulde tary and abyde with them,¹ whom themperour
 delyuered to² them to be kept / and than he spake to
 4 his son, and shewed him many³ fayre and³ notable⁴ reasons³ and doctrynes;³ he commaunde hym to be
 swete⁵ and courtoyse to his⁶ people³ and to his lordes,³
 and that he shulde not be lyght of credence / and that
 8 in any wyse he⁷ shulde not⁸ leen⁸ his eares to here
 flatterers, nor the venym⁹ that cometh from them that
 wyll lye and flatter to please hym with al to the entent
 to come to theyr entensyon / whearby many a prynce
 12 hath ben destroyed / and brought into¹⁰ hell, whearas¹¹
 they and theyr londe also for beleuyng of them haue
 ben dampned perpetually / 'son, loke thou be serued
 with gentylmen, suche as are come of them that hathe
 16 been of good renome / loue¹² holy churche / gyue almes
 to the poore for loue of³ our lorde³ Iesu cryst / let thy
 cofers¹³ be open to thy good knyghtes, beware¹⁴ bee noo
 nygarde, and beware¹⁴ be not ouercome with wyne / lede
 20 an honest lyfe / haunt and kepe companye with the
 aunsyent sages,¹⁵ and laude and prayse them yf they be
 worthy / flee flatterers and mockers, and beware therof
 thy selfe / for thou canst not do worse / for¹⁶ it shall¹⁷
 24 abate thyne honour.' Thus themperour yde sayd¹⁸ to
 his sonne Croysant, and shewed hym manye notable
 saynges and goodly¹⁸ instructions. than he called¹⁹ his
 lordes and sayd. 'Syr, the moost parte of you know-
 28 eth my wyll, the whiche is that I and my wyfe wyll go
 into Aragone to the kyng my father / therfore I desire
 you all and commaunde you / that ye wyll haue²⁰ my
 sonne as recommended¹⁹ / I haue left hym great trea-
 32 to the entent that yf any warre or any other be-
 sines

Ido instructs
Croissant in all
the duties of
emperor,

and gives him
good advice.

Ido takes leave
of his lords.

¹ and. ² vnto. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ examples any d.
⁵ gentle. ⁶ Lordes and. ⁷ Fol. clxxxii. back, co. 1. 2.
⁸⁻⁸ listen with. ⁹ filth. ¹⁰ to. ¹¹ whereby.
¹² the. ¹³ chests. ¹⁴ thou. ¹⁵ noblemen. be
¹⁶ because. ¹⁷ will. ¹⁸ fayre. ¹⁹ to you. if

fall to hym / that he shall haue rychesse sufficyent to
withstonde them that wolde do hym ¹any damage¹ or
his countree / and also the realme of Aragone is not so
farre² hence / but³ anone I may haue newes from hym.' ⁴

They promise to
serve his son
Croissant.

¶ Whan the lordes vnderstode themperoure, and
how he had taken on hym this vyage, they knew well
they coude not let nor stope hym of his pleasure.
Than they all answered in generall / and said that as ⁸
⁴nere as they coude they wolde acomplyssh his com-
maundement, and so⁵ serue trewly his sonne Croysant,
and to ayde / kepe, and defende his countre agaynst all
men that wolde anoye hym. 'Syr, quod themperoure, ¹²
'I thanke you.' Thus after that the emperour had
spoken with his sonne and with his lordes, and shewed
them his wyl and pleasure / than⁶ he made redye for
his iorney, and toke with hym a certeyne ⁷of notable⁷ ¹⁶
knyghtes to accompanye hym & Olyue thempresse his
wyfe. ⁸he apareled⁸ two great shyppes, and caused
them to be charged with vytayles and artelrye, as it
apartayned for y^e defence of theyr bodyes and lyues, ²⁰
& toke with hym great richesse and⁶ aparell & iewelles /
than he toke his leue of the pope and of all his lordes,
and of all them of the cite, who made great sorow for
the²²yr departynge / than they entred in to the ryuer of ²⁴
Tybre, accompayned with a⁹ .v. C. knyghtes / at theyr
departynge they toke leue of theyr sonne Croysaunt,
and¹ kyssed hym often tymes / whan thempresse sawe
her sonne whome she must departe fro she began to ²⁸
wepe^{te} / but themperoure comforted her as moche as he
myght¹⁰ / than they toke theyr shyppes, & so departed
and³ sayled so longe in the streme¹¹ of Tybre that they
cam^{te} in to the hye see, wheare as they sayled nyght ³²
and⁰ day with good wynde, that without daunger they
t¹

He and his
company go by
way of the Tiber,

1-1 after country. 2 from. 3 that.
4 Fol. clxxxiii, col. 1. 5 to. 6 omitted.
7-7 number of. 8-8 and he fournysshed. 9 about.
10 could. 11 Riuer.

arryued at the cite of Courtoyse, wheare as they were
 receyued with great ioy.¹ so they came to y^e palayes
 2 and there² founde kynge Florence lyenge on a couche,
 4 who whan he was aduertesed of there comynge he had
 greate ioy / than themperour and thempresse entered
 in to the palayes and came wheare as the kynge laye /
 than they both kneled downe before hym / and whan
 8 the kynge sawe them he had suche ioy that he coude
 3 speke no worde / but made a token *that* they shulde
 aproche nere to hym, and so they dyd / he enbrased &
 kyssed them often tymes / and whan he myght speke
 12 he sayd, 'my ryght dere chyldren, of your comynge I
 am ryght ioyous,⁴ and of the grace that god hath sent
 to you' / then agayne he kyssed often tymes thempresse
 Olyue, & sayd howe she was welcome in to the realme
 16 of Aragone / of⁵ great ioy ⁶and feest and⁶ gyftes &
 presentes that were gyuen and done at theyr welcom-
 ynge, yf I shulde shew it at lenght it shulde be ouer
 longe to reherce / and therfore I passe it ouer. Nowe
 20 let vs leue spekyng of the kynge and of the emperour
 and empresse his wyfe, who toke suche pleasure to
 abyde with kynge Florence that neuer after they re-
 toured too Rome / but they reigned together al theyr
 24 lyues in peace and good⁷ loue / & they had no ⁸mo
 chyldren⁸ / but Croisant whom they had left at Rome,⁹
 of whom we shall speke now after.¹⁰

and arrive at
Courtois.

Florence warmly
welcomes Ide and
Olive.

They remain
henceforth in his
kingdom,
and share his
rule.

Croissant alone
rules at Rome.

¶ Howe Croysant was so large¹¹ and so
 28 liberall that he gaue away all the treasure
 that hys father had left hym / so that at last
 he had no more to gyue / and so was con-
 strained to go seke his aduenture, he & a
 32 verlot alonely.

Ca. c.lxxxiii.

¹ and.

²⁻² whereas they.

³ Fol. clxxxiii. col. 2.

⁴ ioyfull.

⁵ the.

⁶⁻⁶ feasting.

⁷ good before peace.

⁸⁻⁸ child but.

⁹ and.

¹⁰ heereafter.

¹¹ bountifull.

Croissant delights
in sports,



and in giving rich
gifts.

He enriched the
poor,

and gave away
all his father's
treasure.

But when he
grew poor all
former friends
avoided him,

and refused him
loans of money.

Fter¹ themperour yde and y^e empresse
Olyue were departed from² Rome,
Croysant theyr son grew and amend-
ed in all thynges. he delyghted to ⁴
take his pleasure in all sportes³ / he
made to be cryed⁴ Iustes⁵ and
tourneyse, and gaue large gyftes to ladyes and to
knyghtes. none went from hym without sum gyft. ⁸
he toke great pleasure to gyue gyftes / so that he was
praysed of euery man / howbeit dyuers aunsyent and
wyse men sayd, 'yf Croysant, oure yonge prynce, dele
thus longe⁶ with y^e treasure that his father left hym / ¹²
it wyll be sore⁷ wasted, and suche as now foloweth
hym wyll forsake hym whan they se that he hath no
more to gyue' / as they dyd in dede / as ye shall here
after / for he gaue to them that were pore, whearby ¹⁶
they were made rych, who after wolde not gyue hym
one morsell of breade / he was so lyberall & so great a
dispender⁸ that all the treasure that his father had left
hym he gaue it awaye / so *that* many compleyned ²⁰
greatly⁹ his bountye & larges,¹⁰ he gaue awaye so moche
that he was forsed to mynyshe¹¹ his estate, and was
forsaken of all them that were wont to serue hym, by-
cause he had no more to gyue them, so *that* whan they ²⁴
met hym they wolde tourn to another way / & whan he
knew *that* he had so great shame that he determyned
to departe pryuely out of the countre, and¹² goo seke
his aduentures / for he sawe well¹ he had gyuen awaye ²⁸
¹³so moche¹³ and lent that he coude not than fynde one
man *that* wolde lene¹⁴ hym a¹⁵ peny / than with that
that¹⁶ was left he bought two good horses, and monted
on the one and¹⁷ the other a verlet, and a male behynde ³²

¹ that. ² the Citie of. ³ and. ⁴ proclaimed.

⁵ Fol. clxxxiii. back, col. 1. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ much.

⁸ spender. ⁹ of. ¹⁰ for. ¹¹ diminish. ¹² to.

¹³⁻¹³ after lent. ¹⁴ lend. ¹⁵ one. ¹⁶ which.

¹⁷ vppon.

hym, and therin a gowne and his shertes and¹ hose and shoes, and he had in his purse no more but one c. fl. for his dispenche.² Than³ in a mornynge he departed
 4 from Rome, to thentent he shulde not be perseyued, and rode so long by his iorneyes that he was far of from the cyte of Rome more than .iiii. dayes iornay. Now let vs leue spekyng of hym tyll tyme shal be to retourne
 8 to hym agayne.

He flees from Rome.

¶ How they of Rome sent to the kinge
 Guymart of Puylle, to the entent that he shulde come and gouerne that countre, and
 12 to be theyr lorde, bicause that Croisant was a chylde, and had gyuen and wasted all that he had, and howe Guymart came theder and was receyued as lorde.

16

Ca. Clxxxiiii.

After that the barons and senatours of Rome were aduertesede that theyr yonge lorde Croysaunt was departed
 20 from the cite, and that he had all wasted and spended the treasure that he had / than they assembled at the capetale / than⁵ ther was one sayd / 'cursed is that
 24 londe whearof y^e lorde is a chyde, as ye may well parseyue by our yonge lorde Croysant, who hathe all dispended⁶ and gyuen all⁷ y^e great treasure that his father had left hym / yll⁸ shulde he gouerne his londe
 28 and countre whan he can not kepe it¹ that⁹ is closed fast in his cofers / and therfore, myne aduyse is that we sende to kynge Guymart of Puylle / who is all redye of the mynde to come and besege vs, bycause he knoweth

The lords, finding themselves without a ruler,

resolve to invite King Guymart of Puylle to take the throne.

¹ omitted. ² expenses. ³ and.

⁴ Fol. clxxxiii. back, col. 2. ⁵ and. ⁶ spent all.

⁷ away. ⁸ verie badly. ⁹ which.

Guyart accepts
the invitation,
and becomes
emperor.

well that we be without a lorde / and therfore myne
aduyse is that we sende to¹ hym a notable enbassed²
desyrynge hym to come to this cite of Rome / and how³
that this cite shall do to hym obeysaunce / better it is 4
to sende by tymes than to late / to thentent that⁴
he nor none of his do no⁵ damage to the londes of
Rome' / all they that were there agreed to his sayenge /
& so they sent to hym, who⁶ receyued the enbassetours⁷ 8
ryght honorably / and so he came to Rome, wheare as
he was receyued for theyr lorde peacesablye. But or⁸
he entred in to Rome they went and met hym, and
with great tryumphe⁹ brought hym in to the cite with 12
trompettes and tabours¹⁰ blowynge before hym tyll¹¹ he
cam to the churche of saynt Peter, and there he offered
and kyst the relykes / whearof he made his oth, suche
as emperours¹² accustomed to make / he to defend 16
& kepe Rome & y^e empyre. Than he went to the
palayes, wheare as he was receyued of the noble men
and of the people / ¹³he gouerned Rome in peace and
good¹⁴ Iustice. Nowe let vs leaue spekyng of hym 20
and retourne to Croysant.

¶ Howe Croysaunt arryued at Nyse in pro-
uaunce, and came to the erle Remon, who
was beseged by the sarazyns / & of the 24
honour that the erle Remon dyd to Croi-
sant / and how he gaue hym his baner
to bere, & made him knyght / and of the
great enmye that the erles son had at 28
Croysant. Ca. Clxxxv.

¹ vnto. ² Ambassage. ³ say. ⁴ neither. ⁵ any.
⁶ Fol. clxxxiii. col. 1. ⁷ Ambassadors. ⁸ before.
⁹ ioy. ¹⁰ Drummes. ¹¹ vntill. ¹² are. ¹³ then.
¹⁴ good *before* peace.



1 Fter that Croysant was departed from
 Rome he² and his verlet,³ and had
 well sene how⁴ in all Rome they set
 4 no thyng by hym bycause he hadde
 no more good⁵ to gyue.⁶ Than he
 rode throw Romaine and Lombardye / and passed Pyemont / and than he² came in to
 8 Daulpheney; and when he came in to the towne
 of Grenoble it was shewed hym that in Prouaunce
 there was a notable⁷ prynce named erle Remon, of
 saynt Giles, who was beseged by londe and by water in
 12 y^e towne of Nyse by the kynge Grenade and the kyng
 of Belmaryne / who day and nyght made great assautes
 to the cite / and they had sworne and made promyse
 that they wyll⁸ neuer departe⁹ thense tyll¹⁰ they haue¹¹
 16 wonne the towne / and slayne the erle Remon / whan
 Croysant herde those newes, the hardye prowes wheare
 with he was garnysshed and replete set him in to
 so hye a wyll / that he thought the sarazyns flewe in¹²
 20 the Eyer, and that he wolde reyse theyr sege or¹³ it be
 nyght / and for the bryngynge¹⁴ desyre that he had he
 thought to goo theder to proue his vertue agaynst the
 paynymys / so whan he had rested his horse he and his
 24 squyer monted and rested not tyll he came to Nyse;
 in an eynnyng late he¹⁵ aryued without perseyuynge
 of them of the sege / for as then they were all in theyr
 tentes / for¹⁶ a lytell before there had bene at the gate
 28 a great skyrmysh / wherfor the sarazyns were very of
 theyr trauayle / & also on that parte that Croysant
 aryued there were no sarazins lodged / than he came to
 y^e gate and prayed y^e porter to let hym enter / & whan
 32 the porter saw there were no mo but .ii. persons, & that

Croissant rides
into Provence.

Earl Remon of
Saint Giles is
besieged in Nice
by the kings of
Grenade and of
Belmaryne.

Croissant arrives
at Nice,

1 Fol. clxxxiiii. col. 2. 2 omitted. 3 with him.
 4 that. 5 guifts. 6 them. 7 noble. 8 would.
 9 from. 10 vatill. 11 had. 12 to. 13 before.
 14 burning. 15 there. 16 because.

and enters it.

Next day he goes
to the palace of
the Earl Remon.

The earl welcomes
him kindly.

A battle will take
place on the
morrow.
The earl's
brother, the
duke of Calaber,
is expected with a
large army.

he was crystened,¹ he suffred him to enter *without* any
refuse / & whan Croysant sawe *that* he was in *without*²
daunger he was ioyfull,³ ⁴he came to one of the best
lodgynges in the towne, and there he alyghted and 4
souped with his host / Bycause it was late to go that
nyght to the court; there he taryed all that nyght tyll⁵
y^e next mornynge / than he went to the palayes,
wheare as he found the erle Remon deuysynge with his 8
lordes and knyghtes of the dedes of y^e⁶ warre; than
Croysant saluted the erle and all his lordes. whan the
erle sawe the yonge man he greatly behelde hym / and
thought that in all his lyfe he had neuer sene so 12
goodlye a person, and thought that he was com of sum
noble lynage. Than he toke Croysant by the hande
and demaunded what was⁷ his name. 'Syr,' quod he,
'my name is Croysant' / 'Croysant,' quod the erle, 'ye 16
are welcome / ye are come well at a point both for you
and for me / for I haue great nede to haue men with
me to ayde me / and me thynke by your personage
that ye shulde acheue a great interpryses / for of your 20
age I haue not sene in my dayes a yong man more
lykely to be fered of his enemyes / & bycause I se by
your apparell that ye be⁸ no knyght, I shall make you
a knyght to thentent *that* to morow your prowes 24
& hardynes may be proued / for ye maye se here
without this towne two kynges, enemyes to oure
crysten fayth, and by the ⁹pleasure of our lorde Iesu
cryst I haue intensyon⁹ to morow to gyue them batayle, 28
I loke this nyght for my brother, the duke of Calaber,
who bryngeth with hym a⁶ .xxx.M. men of warre /
and a⁶ .xx.M. I haue all redye with in the towne / and
considerynge your hye corage to come hether to serue 32
me, I shall do you more honour; after I haue made you

¹ a Christian. ² any. ³ then.

⁴ Fol. clxxxiii. back, col. 1.

⁵ vntill. ⁶ omitted.

⁷ was *after* name.

⁸ are.

⁹⁻⁹ grace of god I intend.

knyght I shall gyue you my baner to bere / and yf ye
do as me thynke ye shulde do your payne shal not be
lost.' 'Syr,' quod Croysant, 'god gyue me the grace
4 that to ¹morowe to hym and to you I may do such
seruices that it may be welth to all crystendome, and
that god may perfourme in me that ²wanteth / for yf
ye make me knyght al the dayes of my lyfe after
8 I shalbe yours' / than the erle incontynent sent for a
son of his, who as than was no knyght, and dyuers
other, whom he made knyghtes with Croysant / than
he sayde to Croysant, 'frend, I pray to our lord ³Iesu
12 cryst³ to gyue you suche fortune to-morow that ye may
wanquysshe the batayle.' 'Syr,' quod he, 'god gyue
me the grace to render to you thankes for the honour
that nowe ye do to me / for as for me, by the grace of
16 god that⁴ to morowe I shall so do that your enemyes
shall curse the hour that they are come hether to
assayle you' / whyles *that* Croysant was thus made
knyght with the erles son and other, the same tyme
20 thether came y^e duke of Calaber, and he came to
the palayes / of the great⁴ chere that he had made hym
by his brother, the erle Remon, I wyll make no
mensyon / therof / but he came at y^e same poynt⁵ that
24 these new knyghtes were made, and that⁶ quyntheyne
was set vp to proue them selfe. Than y^e duke of
Calaber and the erle Remon his brother went theder⁷
desyreous to se who dyd best / than y^e duke demaunded
28 of the erle what yong knyght it was that rode by his
neuue, for he thought⁸ he neuer saw ⁹a goodlyer⁹
person nor more puyssant of his age. Than the erle
sayd how he was come thether to seke for honour.
32 But what he was nor of what lynage he knew not.
Thus they talked togyther of this yonge knyght Croy-

The earl knyghte
Croissant with
other young men.

The duke of
Calaber arrives.

The quintain is
set up.

¹ Fol. clxxxiiii. back, col. 2. ² which. ³⁻³ god.

⁴ omitted. ⁵ season. ⁶ a. ⁷ verie. ⁸ that.

⁹⁻⁹ so goodly a yong.

sant / ¹whan they came to y^e place wheareas the
 quyntayne was dressed vp / the erles son ranne and
 bracke his spere all to peces, and than other assayed
 themselfe / sum bracke theyr speres, and sum fell too ⁴
 the erthe parforce ^{2 3}of there stroke / but there was none
 that coude remoue the quyntayne / whan Croissant sawe
 that all had assayed themselues to throw ⁴ the quyn-
 teyne, he had a greate spere, and ran so fyersly that he ⁸
 strake the quyntayne and ouerthrew it to the ground,
 whearof euery man had great meruayle; the duke sayd
 to y^e erle that he neuer sawe so goodlye a stroke,
 and sayd howe he is greatly to be doubted that gyue ¹²
 such strokes; he was greatly prayسد of the ladyes and
 dameselles that were there present, & specially of the
 erles doughter, who was a fayre damesel. But who
 soeuer was ioyfull, y^e erles sonne was displeased / ¹⁶
 he toke agaynst hym a mortall hate and an yll enuye,
 so that yf he had durst he wolde haue ryn vpon
 Croissant to haue distroyed him, and concluded in his
 corage that yf he myght lyue longe he wolde make ²⁰
 Croysantes lyfe to departe from his bodye / and so he
 had done and ⁵ god had not ayded Croysant / whan
 Croysant had ryn his course he rode to the erle, who
 sayd to hym ryght swetly / ‘Croysant, god encrease ²⁴
 your bountye ⁶ and ⁷ gyue you grace to perceyuer ⁸ your
 goodnes / and I pray you humblye to shewe me the
 trouthe what ye be and of what lynage, for I am sure ⁹
 ye ¹⁰ be come ¹⁰ of sum hye lynage.’ ‘Syr,’ quod Croy- ²⁸
 sant, ‘syn ye wold know it I shall shew you y^e trouthe.
 Syr, knowe for trouthe I am sonne to the noble
 emperour of Rome, and I am departed out of ¹¹ countre
 for certen causes, the ¹² whiche I coude ¹³ not suffer / ³²
 and therfore I went too serche myne aduentures such as

Croissant alone is
 able to strike it
 and throw it
 down.

The ladies praise
 Croissant.

The earl's son is
 jealous of
 Croissant.

The earl asks of
 what family
 Croissant is.

He tells of his
 father.

¹ and. ² by force. ³ Fol. clxxxv. col. 1.
⁴ ouerthrow. ⁵ if. ⁶ honour. ⁷ god. ⁸ in.
⁹ that. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ are. ¹¹ the. ¹² omitted. ¹³ would.

god wold sende me' / whan the erle herde hym speke
 he was ryght ioyouse,¹ and thanked god, & sayd, 'fayre
 sonne, ye be welcom, I am ioyfull of your cominge, for
 4 the goodnes that I see in you apparent; I haue a
 doughter ryght fayre, whome I wyll gyue you in
 2 maryage, and as moche of my goodes and of my londes
 and seynoryes that ye shal neuer be pore.' 'Syr,'
 8 quod Croysant, 'your fayre offer that ye make me
 I wyll not refuse, and I thanke you. But or³ ⁴euer⁴
 I take a wyfe my wyll is to do so moche *that* myne
 honour may be exalted, and that renowne maye ryne
 12 vpon me as it hathe done of my predecessours, and that
 I may conquyre londes and seynoryes.' Than the
 erles sonne, herynge his father make Croysant suche an
 offer as to gyue him his sister in maryage and a great
 16 parte of his londe / he was therewith sore troubled in his
 hert; ⁵he toke agaynst hym a cordyall hate, and made
 promyse in hym selfe that if he may⁶ retourne from the
 batayle he wyll⁷ cause Croysant to dye an yll deth /
 20 thynkyng not to be disenheryt by hym / after those
 wordes the duke of Calaber and the erle Remon toke
 betwene them y^e yonge knyght Croysant & led him by
 the hande to the palayes, wheare as he was receyued
 24 with great ioye / and after dyner they came in to the
 hall wheare as all the lordes were. Than Croysant,
 who greatly desyred⁸ to be in suche a place wheare as
 he myght shew his prowes, spake on hye, and sayd to⁹
 28 erle Remon, 'Syr, ye knowe well *that* y^e enemyes
 of oure lorde god & yours hath beseged you in your
 towne / the whiche is a thyng not to be suffred, ⁴and
 vnreasonable,⁴ so long without doynge¹⁰ them any
 32 anoyauce / and therfore, syr, I counsell¹¹ that or³ they
 knowe moche of your estate or ⁴of your⁴ puyssaunce,

The earl offers
Croissant his
daughter in
marriage.

Croissant will
accept the offer
after he has
proved his
prowess.

The earl's son
hears of the
offer, and

growing more
envious, resolves
on the death of
the new-comer.

¹ ioyfull. ² Fol. clxxxv. col. 2. ³ before.
⁴⁻⁴ omitted. ⁵ as. ⁶ myght. ⁷ would. ⁸ delighted.
⁹ the. ¹⁰ of. ¹¹ you.

Croissant advises
an immediate
sortie.

or what people ye haue, it were best ye went to assayle them¹ without any lenger taryenge / orden your hedes² and your capeteysn to gyde your people, to the entent that whan ye were³ issued out of the towne⁴ and than⁴ that⁴ euery man may knowe what ye are purposed to do / ⁵and than sende to your enemyes a messenger and gyue your enemyes knowledge of your comynge, and we shall folowe so fast that they shall haue no 8 leaser to arme them' / whan the duke of Calaber & y^e erle Remon vnderstode the noble Croysant they praysed moche his counsell and aduyse. Than they ordeyned theyr batayles and theyr capeteysn / and than they 12 issued out of the towne with all theyr companye.

The earl's forces
prepare to march
against the
enemy,
who is besieging
them in Nice.

¶ Howe Croisant dyd meruayles in the batayle,
by whose prowes the sarazins were discom-
fited and slayne, whearof the erle Remon 16
and the duke of Calaber were ryght ioyfull.
Ca. clxxxvi.

Croissant leads
one detachment.



Han the erle Remone was without the
towne / he ordeyned thre batayles. 20
The fyrst Croysant had the leadynge
therof, & the erle sayd to him,
'frende, I praye you this day shew
from whence ye come, and how that ye be of the lynage 24
imperryall, and of the good lyne of the duke of Bur-
deaux / for I haue suche trust in god and in the vertue
of your armes / that me thynke now⁶ myne enemyes do
flee awaye before me.' 'Syr,' quod Croisant, 'I shall 28
do so much by y^e grace of god that our enemyes shall
haue no leaser to graunt vs the victorie. The seconde
batayle led⁷ the erle Remons sonne, and his father sayd

The earl's son
leads a second.

¹ therefore. ² Battailles. ³ are. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted.

⁵ Fol. clxxxv. back, col. 1. ⁶ now after do.

⁷ led after sonne.

to hym that he shulde that day ¹shew forth his vertue
 and prowes. The thyerde batayle the erle Remone and
 the duke of Calaber had the gydyng the of, ²they set
 4 in euery batayle .xv. M. men / than the erle Remon
 went before euery bataile sterynge and mouyng them
 to do well / ²than the erle sent a messenger to the host
 of the sarazyns to shew them of the coming of the
 8 crysten men / ²they were before theyr tentes in .v.
 batayles / they were in nombre a ³.C. M. sarazyns,
 whearof there were .ii. kinges and foure Admyralles.
 This messenger dyd his message / and whan he had
 12 done / he retourned to the erle Remon & shewed
 hym all that he had herde & sene. Than Croysant
 sayd to the erle. 'Syr, I requyre⁴ you⁵ shew me what
 armes the .ii. sarazyn kynges doth beare, to the entent
 16 that I maye knowe them / for the sonner that the great
 men be slayne the sonner y^e other wyll fle / for⁶ that
 shall⁷ abasshe them and the sooner to be discomfyted,
 for men without a lorde are / as shepe without a
 20 sheparde.' Then y^e erle shewed hym theyr armes and
 bages. 'Syr,' quod Croysant, 'syn I am hereof aduer-
 tesed I shall neuer rest tyll⁸ I have incountred them yf
 god wyll saue myne armes and good sworde' / than the
 24 paynyns who saw well y^e crysten men comyng / they⁹
 cast vp a great cry & so meruelous that there was none
 so hardy / but that⁹ was abasshed therof / for it semed
 that all y^e worlde there aryued / whan Croysant sawe
 28 the sarazyns approche he auaunsed his batayle / and
 whan they ioyned / he couched his spere and strake
 therewith the sonne¹⁰ of¹¹ kyng of Belmaryne / so that
 the spere hede passed thorowe his bodye more than a
 32 good⁹ fote / and so with drawyng out of his spere the
 sarazyn fell downe deed amonge the horse feet, ¹²whearof

The earl himself
 and the duke of
 Calaber lead the
 third.

The Christians
 announce their
 approach to the
 Saracen enemy.

Croissant longs to
 attack the two
 Saracen kings.

Croissant
 advances,
 and kills the
 son of the king of
 Belmaryne,
 and many others.

¹ Fol. clxxxv. back, col. 2. ² and. ³ about. ⁴ pray.

⁵ to. ⁶ because. ⁷ will. ⁸ untill. ⁹ omitted.

¹⁰ sonne after Belamyne. ¹¹ the. ¹² Fol. clxxxvi. col. 1.

The Saracens flee
before him.

The king of
Belmaryne is
made desperate
by the loss of
his son.

The Earl Remon
fights valiantly,

and nearly kills
the king of
Grenade.

the paynymys had great dolour whan Croysant had
slayne the sonne¹ of y^e kyng of Belmaryn / there cam
before hym the neuwe of the kynge of Grenade /
²Croysaunt bare hym to the erthe so rudelye so³ that ⁴
in the fallynge he brocke his necke / than he ranne at
the thyrd and at³ y^e.iiii. and slew them / and as longe
as his spere helde⁴ ceased not to sle and to bet downe y^e
sarazyns / and whan his spere was broken he tooke his ⁸
sworde, whearwith he claue the sarazyns to the brayne,
and cut of armes and handes / he made amonge them
such slawghter that there was not so hardye a sarazyn
that durst abyde his full strok, but they fled from hym ¹²
as the shepe doth before the wolfe / anone the tydinges
was brought to the kynge of Belmaryn howe his sonne
was slayne by a yonge knyght who dyd meruaylles in
the batayle / ²whan the kynge knew that his sonne was ¹⁶
slayn he wepte for sorow, and made promyse that he
had rather dye than the deth of his son shulde be
vnreuenged / and therewith he preased into the batayle,
and met at his comynge the dukes seneschall ⁵of Ca- ²⁰
laber,⁵ and strake hym with his spere in suche wyse
that he ranne hym clene thorow, and so he fell downe
deed / than y^e batayle began fyersly, and they of Pro-
uauance and of Calaber dyd valyauntly / than y^e erle ²⁴
Remon came in to the batayle, and met with the Ad-
myrall of Cordes and gaue hym with his sworde ⁶suche
a stroke⁶ on y^e helme that he claue his hede to the
brayne, and so he fell downe deed / than he sawe the ²⁸
kynge of Grenade, who slew many a crystenman ; than
the erle Remon toke a spere & ranne at the kynge, and
strake hym so on y^e vyser of his helme that he fell to
y^e erth with his fete vpwarde amonge his owne men, ³²
and had ben there slayne and his men had not ⁷socoured

¹ sonne *after* Belamyne.

⁵⁻⁵ *before* seneschall.

² and.

³ *omitted*.

⁴ he.

⁶⁻⁶ *before* with his sworde.

⁷ Fol. clxxxvi. col. 2.

hym / in another place was Croisant, and he saw before
 hym the kynge of Belmaryn, who rode aboute sekyng
 for Croysant to be reuenged vpon¹ hym for y^e deth of
 4 his sonne / ²whan the kynge sawe Croysant betyng
 downe horse and men, and that none coude resyst
 agaynst hym / he had greate desyre to be reuenged, and
 sayd to Croysant. 'O thou false traytour that hath
 8 slayne my sonne, I ought greatly to laude and prayse
 Mahounde yf I may be reuenged vpon the' / than he
 couched his spere and strake Croysaunt in the myddes
 of his shyld, so that his spere flew all to peces / but for
 12 all y^e stroke Croysant remoued no more / than tho he
 had stryken a stone walle / & Croysant, sore displeased
 that the kynge had gyuen hym suche a stroke / lete go
 the brydell of his horse, & lyft vp his sworde with
 16 bothe his handes / and strake the kynge as he past by
 on the corner of his helme in suche wyse that he strake
 it clene asondre. ²yf the stroke had not gleynted³ he
 had clouen his hede to the gyrdell / but the sworde
 20 tourned & alyght on⁴ the hors necke, so that he strake
 y^e necke clene asondre / so⁵ that of force y^e kynge
 tombled to the erth⁶ astoned of the stroke that he had
 receyued / and if he hadde not ben quykely rescowed
 24 Croysant had striken of his hede / than the sarazyns
 remounted agayne theyr kynge, & ran at Croysant, and
 cast at hym dartes⁷ and iaelyns to haue slayne hym /
 but they durst not aproche nere hym so moche they
 28 fered hym / howbeit they hurte hym in dyuers places.
 he helde his sworde in his handes, whearwith he strake
 no man with a full stroke / but that he claued his hede
 to the brayne / than he saw y^e great admyrall of Spayn,
 32 & he gaue hym suche a stroke *that* his hed was clouen
 to y^e chyn, & so fell down deed. great ⁸sorow made

The king of
 Belmaryne
 challenges
 Croissant,

and is stricken to
 the earth by the
 youth.

Croissant is hard
 pressed by the
 Saracens,

but kills many
 of them.

including the
 great admiral
 of Spain

¹ of. ² and. ³ glaunced. ⁴ vpon.
⁶ in such sort. ⁵ sore. ⁷ dartes *after* cast.
⁸ Fol. clxxxvi. back, col. 1.

and the king of
Grenade.

the sarasyns, and specially y^e kyng of Grenade / ¹whan
Croysant sawe hym he knew hym well by his armes,
wherof he was ioyfull / ¹Croysant aproched to hym and
gaue hym on the helme suche a stroke that his hede ⁴
was clouen to y^e brain, and so the kyng fell down deed /
than Croysant ranne at hym that bare the sarazyns
baner, whearin² was paynted the Image of Mahounde³ /
he strake hym that bare it with a reuerse stroke betwene ⁸
the necke and the shulders / that the hede with the
helme flew in the felde / and he⁴ layd⁵ so in y^e thycke
prease that anone he made way / the sarazyns wolde⁶
haue reased vp agayne theyr baner / but they ¹²
coude not.

Croissant also
slays the king of
Belmaryne.

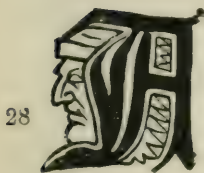
¶ Whan the sarazyns saw theyr kinge deed and
theyr banner lyenge on y^e ground, theyr corage began to
fayle them / than they brayled and opened theyr array ¹⁶
and began to lese⁷ place / and Croysant, who toke hede
of nothyng / but to sley the great capeteyns, at last
he⁴ saw before hym the kyng of Belmarne, who had
slayne many a cristenman that daye / Croysant strake⁸ ²⁰
hym suche a stroke on the ryght shulder that arme and
shylde fell to the erth,⁹ and by reason of the great
doloure that the kinge felt / he fell in sowne amonge
the hors fete, wheareas he dyed myserable / the duke ²⁴
of Calaber & the erle Remon regardinge the hye dedes
of armes done and acheued by Croysant had great
meruayle of his force and puissaunce / ¹they blyssed
the houre that he was borne in / thankynge god of his ²⁸
comynge theder / they rested and behelde hym howe
he made theyr enemyes to fle awaye, for none was so
hardy to abyde hym / fynally if I shulde reherse y^e hye
dedes *that* Croysant dyd that day it shulde be ouer ³²
longe to declare / for by hym & by his great hardines

¹ and. ² wheron. ³ Mahomet. ⁴ omitted.
⁵ on. ⁶ fayne. ⁷ loose. ⁸ gaue.
⁹ etrth in text.

the paynyns and sarazyns were vt^lterly discomfyted / He utterly
defeats the
Saracens.
for he was happye that coude saue hymselfe / thus they
fled on all sydes² towards y^e see syde, ³there were mo
4 slayne in the fleyng than were in y^e playn batayle /
for from thense to the see syde the wayes were couered
with deed men / such as myght saue them selues in y^e
shyppes were happy, but there were but⁴ few that
8 scaped / after y^e chace⁵ done they of Prouaunce and of⁶
Calaber came to the boutey, y^e whiche was⁷ great / ³the
whiche³ the erle Remon ⁸departed and gaue in suche
wyse⁸ that euery man was ⁹content with him : ⁹for there
12 was suche rychesse in the tentes of the sarazyns that it
coude not be estemyd¹⁰ / wherby all suche as ¹¹had
ben¹¹ at y^e batayle were riche euer after, both they &
theyr frendes.

16 ¶ Of the great honour that erle Remon dyd
to Croisant, & howe he wolde haue gyuen
hym hys doughter in mariage / whearof the
erles sonne was sore enuyous, and thought
20 the same nyght to haue mordered ¹²in his
bed ¹²the noble Croisant / but he failed, for
the noble Croisant slew hym & after fled
awaye as fast as he myght.

24 Capitulo. C:lxviii.



28 After that the batayle was fynnysshed,
and that the sarazyns were deed, the
erle Remon with great reuerence
came to¹³ Croysant, and toke hym by
the hande, and ledde hym in to the
towne betwene the duke of Calaber

Earl Remon
does Croissant
great honour.

¹ Fol. clxxxvi. back. col. 2. ² partes. ³ and.

⁴ verie. ⁵ was. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ exceeding.

⁸⁻⁹ distributed so liberally therof. ⁹⁻⁹ wel contented.

¹⁰ valued. ¹¹⁻¹¹ were. ¹²⁻¹² after Croisant. ¹³ vnto.

and hym selfe / and they dyd hym as greate honour as
they coude deuysel, & so entered in to the towne, and
with great ¹Ioy & solempnite thei were receyued /
²they came to the palaies & dysarmed³ them / & whan ⁴
they were refresshed / than⁴ y^e duke of Calabre & y^e
erle Remon came to Croysant / than² the erle said. 'O
right noble knight, replete with all vertues and hyghe
prowes, to whom no man is comperable / y^e stronge ⁸
arme / shelde / and resorte⁵ of the countree of Prouence
and Languedoc / by thy hye vertu⁶ this day⁷ hast saued
one of the quarters of cristendone, whearby the fayth
of Iesu⁴ chryst is exalted / the whiche yf thou haddest ¹²
no ben / had ben abated and staunched / it is not in
me to say nor recompt the goodes⁸ that ye haue done
vs this day / nor it lyeth not in me to rewarde it / but
if it were thy pleasure to abase thy selfe so lowe / as ¹⁶
to take my doughter in mariage / y^e whiche I wold
gladly se / ²I wyll gyue the / the one halfe of all that
euer I haue / for a fayrer iewel nor a richer I can not
giue than my dere doughter whome I loue entyrlly. ²⁰
She is the fayrest⁹ / the swetest¹⁰ / and the ¹¹moost
humble¹¹ damsell that is now lyuynge.' Whan Croysant
had well vnderstande the erle Remon he said. 'Syr,
of your curtoyse and ryche gyfte that ye offre me / I ²⁴
wyll not refuse it / but thanke you hertly therfore¹² / &
as for your doughter whome ye offre to gyue to⁴ me /
I trust¹³ I shall do her that honour that on¹⁴ her heed
I shall set a crowne of golde and make her Empresse ²⁸
of Rome / wheare she shall be serued and honoured / as
lady of¹⁵ all the countree.' Whan the erle herde the
answere of Croysant / he was right¹⁶ ioyfull / but his
sone who was there present / ¹⁷had nye raged for¹⁷ dys- ³²

The earl again
offers Croissant
his daughter in
marriage,
and one half of
his property.

Croissant accepts
the offer.

¹ Fol. clxxxvii. col. 1.

² and. ³ vnarmed.

⁴ omitted.

⁵ refuge.

⁶ prowess.

⁷ thou.

⁸ goodnesse.

⁹ most faire.

¹⁰ sweet

¹¹⁻¹¹ humblest.

¹² therof.

¹³ that.

¹⁴ vpon.

¹⁵ ouer.

¹⁶ verie.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ was nere hand in a rage with the.

- pleasure,¹ and sayd² to hym. 'By god, Croysant / syn
thus by you I shalbe disherited / and that my father
wyll giue you that³ of right apartayneth to me / or⁴ ⁵I
4 graunt therto, I shall make you to dye of an euil⁶ deth /
though I do it by treason / nor thou shalte neuer haue
my syster in maryage' / thus thought the erles sone to
worke against Croysant, who knewe nothyng of therof /
8 ⁷thus without god helpe him / he was lykely to ⁸be⁸
slayne petyously. Than there began great Ioye in the
palaies / the erle Remon wente to se his doughter, and
sayd to her / 'my dere doughter / knowe for trouth I
12 haue gyuen you in mariage / to the moost fayre / and
hardiest knight *that* euer was gyrded with⁹ swerde:
that is Croysant whom ye se here, by whom we¹⁰ all
delyuered and brought out of seruage into fredom / for
16 we had ben all lost if his hye prowes had not ben, by
whom all the paynims are discomfyted' / whan the
damsell herde her father she was right ioyous¹¹ / and
thanked god and said. 'Syr, syn it is your pleasure to
20 gyue me to this noble knight / I shall not refuse hym /
but I am agreed¹² to fulfyl your pleasure,' whearof
Croysant was ioyful, for she was so fayre that euery
man had meruayle therof. Than the damsell saluted
24 Croysant and said. 'Syr, of your comynge and socours
we ought to be ioyous¹¹ / for by you we are restored to
ioye: y^e which was lost' / 'lady, quod Croysant / so
goeth the workes of our lorde god / ¹³men maketh
28 batayles / and god gyueth y^e victory' / thus deusynge
they entred into y^e chambre wheare as the bourdes
were redy sprede / but Iacars the erles sonne wolde
not come there / but he wente into the towne in to a
32 secrete place / and thither he sent for ten of his affinite /

The earl's son
grows more
wrathful with
Croissant.

The earl informs
his daughter of
Croissant's
promise to marry
her.

She willingly
assents.

Iacars, the
earl's son,
summons ten of
his relatives,

¹ that he had. ² intragedly. ³ which. ⁴ before.

⁵ Fol. clxxxvii. col 2. ⁶ euill. ⁷ and.

⁸⁻⁸ haue bene. ⁹ a. ¹⁰ were. ¹¹ ioyfull.

¹² content. ¹³ for.

and plots to
murder Croissant
while asleep.

A young squire
overhears the
traitors,

and reveals the
plot to Croissant.

Croissant will not
believe such
treachery.

Croissant sups
with Earl Remon,

in whom he had parfite affiaunce / than he shewed to
them all his intencion, and determined that whan Croy-
sant was a¹ bedde and a slepe / than thei to murdre
him in his bed ²and his squier also. Whan these .x. 4
traytours vnderstode their maister / they answered and
said how they were all redy to do his commaundement
what soeuer com therof / thus they taried y^e houre to
accomplysshe their vngracious enterpryse / as they were 8
in their communicacion / there was in a chambre there
besyde / a yonge squier who had wel herde their enter-
pryce & what thei were determined to doo / than he
said to himselfe *that* surely he wold aduertysse Croysant 12
of their malicious enterprice / to the entent *that* he
shuld not be surprised / ³he departed as preuely as he
coud & ⁴cam to Croisant / & shewed him how the
erles sone with .x. men were determined to murdre him 16
the⁵ same night in his bed slepyng / & how *that* eche
of them had a sharpe knyfe / & ⁶said, 'syr, be ⁷gar-
nysshed⁷ to defende your lyfe / for thei all haue sworne
your deth' / Whan Croysant vnderstode y^e squier he 20
waxed as reed as a brenninge coole / & sayd, 'I can
not byleue *that* suche a treason shuld be in the corage
of a noble man / as to murdre hym *that* neuer dyd him
trespas' / 'sir, *quod* the squier / 'ye may do as ye 24
please / but without ye fynde remedy / ye are but lost.'
Whan Croysant herde *that* he trembled for⁸ displeure
that he was in / & he thought in⁹ him selfe *that* he
wold not shew the matter to no¹⁰ person lyuyng / but 28
he sware *that* if any came to do him displeaser *that*¹¹
with his swerd he wold cleue his heed to y^e brayne /
thus the matter rested tyl¹² it was night / & so he went
in to y^e hal amonge⁸ other lordes, & there he founde y^e 32
erle / who made hym great chere / the¹³ souper was redy,

¹ in. ² Fol. clxxxvii. back, col. 1. ³ then. ⁴ so.
⁵ very. ⁶ he. ⁷⁻⁷ readie armed. ⁸ the. ⁹ within.
¹⁰ any. ¹¹ omitted. ¹² untill. ¹³ and.

and¹ than they sate downe: of their seruyce I make
 no rehersall / after they had souped diuers sportes were
 shewed in y^e hall, & whan² houre requisyt came enery
 4 man went to bed / ³y^e erle Remon had pre⁴pared for
 Croysant a fayre chambre with a riche bed for him / &
 a couche bed for his squier / than Croisant toke leue of
 y^e erle & of the damsell with whom he was ⁵in
 8 amours⁵ / than he went to his chambre wel accompanied
 with knightes and squiers / than³ with in a seson⁶ thei
 toke leue of him / & than he was alone ⁷saue with⁷
 his squier / whom he made to lye in the couch bed¹ /
 12 & shewed him nothyng of *that* he thought to do /
 than Croysant armed him at all pees / his helme on
 his heed / his shelde about his necke & his swerde
 about him / and so layde him downe in his bed &
 16 hyd him with clothes that his armure shuld not be sene
 by them that shuld⁸ come thyder / ⁹there he lay as
 preuely as he coude / & than about mydnight the erles
 son entred in to the chambre all vnarmed with his
 20 swerde in his hande & his .x. companions with him /
 eche of them with a sharpe weapon in their handes /
 than thei approched to Croysantes bed, than³ the erles
 sone lyfte vp his swerde & strake Croysant on the
 24 helme suche a stroke *that* the swerde swerued in his
 hande, whearby he parceyued *that* he was armed &
 that he had warnyng of their comyng, whearof he was
 right serowfull / than he recouered againe another
 28 stroke, thynkyng to haue slaine Croysant / but he
 coulede not / his helme was so good / than the other .x.
 strake at Croysant / but they coulede do hym no hurt,
 his harneys¹⁰ was so good / than Croisant ¹¹as a hardi
 32 knight¹¹ rose vp quickly with his swerde in his hande /
 whan the erles sone sawe that / he was neuer so

and afterwards
 withdraws with
 his squire to a
 rich chamber.

Croissant puts on
 strong armour.

The earl's son
 enters,

and strikes
 Croissant on the
 helm, but does
 him no hurt.

The other traitors
 strike him also.

Croissant rises,

¹ omitted. ² the. ³ and.

⁴ Fol. clxxxvii. back. col. 2. ⁵⁻⁵ enamoured and.

⁶ while. ⁷⁻⁷ sauing onely. ⁸ would.

⁹ so.

¹⁰ armour.

¹¹⁻¹¹ after quickly.

and strikes the
earl's son dead.

But the others
kill Croissant's
squire.

Croissant slays
five of them.

afrayde in all his lyfe / & thought to haue fled away /
but Croysant was before him / & gaue him suche a
stroke on y^e heed with his swerde that he claue ¹his
heed¹ to y^e chyn, & so he fel downe deed / & the other ⁴
had slayne Croysantes ²squier, whearof he was sory /
than he ran at them lyke a man dysperate, and dyd
so moche that within a shorte space he had slayne fyue
of them / & the other fled away into a nother chambre ⁸
and durste³ speake no⁴ worde.

¶ Howe Croysant departed from Nyse with
his swerde in his hande, and howe the erle
Remon was sorowful for the deth of his ¹²
sone, and chased after Croisant, but he
could not be found. Ca. C.lxxxviii.

Croissant is in
tear because he
has slain the
earl's son,



and determines to
flee.

He finds the
stables barred.

Han Croysant saw himsele so enter- ¹⁶
priced, and that he had slayne the
erles sone, he was in great feare / for
he knew well⁵ yf he were taken he
shulde be in daunger of his lyfe / ²⁰
therefore hastily he departed out of the palais, and whan
he came to the stable wheare his hors stode / he founde
a greate yron chayne before the dore, to the entent that
y^e hors shulde not be taken out in the nyght tyme / ²⁴
⁶whan he saw that he was sore discomforted, and said,
'O very god, now by thy grace ayde me, I ought well
to be sory whan I must leue my hors. Alas, now
I can not tell how to beare myn armure / certaynely ²⁸
without⁷ god ayde⁸ me now I se no way how I may⁹
scape alieue. Alas, I thought to haue ben married to y^e
erles doughter / but now I am ferre fro it syn I haue
slayne her brother / I was ¹⁰not in mynde so soone¹⁰ ³²

¹⁻¹ it. ² Fol. clxxxviii. col. l. ³ not. ⁴ one.

⁵ that. ⁶ and. ⁷ except. ⁸ succour.

⁹ can. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ minded.

to haue retourned into my countre / tyl¹ I hadde conquered some honoure and londes, whearby I might haue ben receyued honourably of them that dyd set
 4 nothyng by me / than he began sore to wepe / ²he went through ³the towne ⁴as preuely ⁴as he mighte / He goes all armed through the town, and enters an empty house.
 he coulede not trauayle longe in his armure / ⁵he behelde in a corner of a strete ⁶a voyde house, ⁶thyder he
 8 went⁷ & vnarmed him of all his armure except his swerde, and so he was in a wyght iacked, and than he rested not tyll¹ he came to the gate, and called the porter and desyred him to open the gate, saynge howe⁸ and goes to the gate of the city.
 12 he had busynes to do a lytell without the towne / the porter answered chorlysshely,⁹ and sayd / 'there requyreth no hast, he might well abyde' / for he sayd he wolde not open no gate tyll¹ it was fayre day. 'Frende,'
 16 quod Croysant, 'I praye the shewe me this curtoyse' / the porter answered fyersly, & said / 'thou doest but lose thy payne¹⁰ for the gate shall not be opened the⁴ tyll¹ the sonne ryse.' Whan Croysant sawe that ⁴for no
 20 fayre wordes⁴ y^e porter wolde¹¹ open the gate¹² / he set his hande vpon¹³ his swerd, and sayd / 'thou false traytour, without¹⁴ incontynent¹⁵ thou¹⁶ open the gate with my swerde I shal slee the.' whan the porter sawe
 24 that Croysant held a naked swerde in his hande to ¹⁷haue stryken¹⁷ him, he had great feare / ¹⁸he came forth in hast with the keyes in his hande, and said, 'syr, I shall open y^e gate with a good wyl; ¹how be it
 28 he was so afayde that all his body trembled for feare / and the porter yields.
 than he came to the gate & opened the wycket / ¹⁸than Croisant issued out vnarmed, and had on but a cloke ouer his doubled,¹⁹ and his swerde about him, and

¹ vntill. ² so. ³ Fol. clxxxviii. col. 2. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted.⁵ but. ⁶⁻⁶ before of. ⁷ and he went before thyder.⁸ that. ⁹ stubbornly. ¹⁰ labour. ¹¹ not.¹² by fayre meanes. ¹³ to. ¹⁴ except.¹⁵ incontynent after gate. ¹⁶ dost. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ strike.¹⁸ and. ¹⁹ cloake.

Croissant escapes
to Rome.

The traitorous
companions of
the earl's son
who had escaped
alive tell the
earl of Crois-
sant's deed.

The earl swoons
on seeing his dead
son.

a lytell purse by¹ his gyrdell, and therin twenty shyl-
lynges in money, and no more / thus as ye haue herde
Croissant issued out of y^e towne of Nyse in Prouance,
and he² toke the way to³ Rome, but or⁴ he had gone 4
two leeges / the fyue traytours that fledde fro him and
were hydden in a chambre / whan they thought *that*
Croissant was departed, for thei thought ⁵he wolde not
tary bycause he had slayne the erles sone / than they 8
went out of the chambre makynge great bruyt and
great² noyse / soo that euery man rose in the palayes /
and the erle him selfe rose and came in to y^e hall with
his swerde in his hande, & there he founde the fyue 12
traytours / who shewed hym that for certayne wordes
betwene Croysant and his sone there was a fray be-
twene them / whearby your sone is slayne by the
handes of Croissant / the whiche he dyde wylfully, to 16
the entent to haue all youre londes after youre dyssease,
bycause ye haue gyuen him youre doughter in mariage /
and or⁴ we coulede come he was fledde / but or⁴ he
departed out of the chambre he slewe fyue men besyde 20
your sone, for they were not armed / &⁶ Croysant was
armed / ⁷he semed rather a spirite than any⁸ mortall
man / and whan we sawe that we coulede not approche
to him bycause he was armed / we slew his squier. 24
Whan the erle herde them it was no meruayle thought
he was sorowfull; ⁷than he went in to the chambre
wheare as his sone lay dede / whan he came thyder⁹ for
great distres that he had at his herte he fell downe 28
vpon his sone in a swone / ⁷whan he came to himselfe
he cryed, and sayd, 'A, Croysant, your acqueyntaunce
is to me very herde / than he commaunded his men to
arme them and incontynent to go after Croysant, who 32
so petyously hath slayne his sone / and said, 'if I maye

¹ at. ² omitted. ³ towards. ⁴ before.


⁵ Fol. clxxxviii. back, col. 1. ⁶ but. ⁷ and. ⁸ a.

⁹ there.

take him he shall neuer scape my handes without
 deth' / than in the palais and in the towne euery
 ma[n]¹ armed them, and the erle himsele armed him
 4 & mounted on his hors and issued out at² y^e gate with
 moche³ people / and than thei rode abroad in the
 countree serchyng / and demaundyng if any man met
 with Croi'sant, but he coude here no certayn newes of
 8 him except of one man, that said howe he met hym a
 fyue leeges fro thens / and how⁵ that he went a great
 pace.

He vows Croi-
 sant's death,
 and orders his
 arrest.

He with many
 armed men
 pursue Croissant,
 but to no purpose.

12  Han the erle herde that / he saw wel it
 was but a payn⁶ lost to folowe any
 farther / than he returned to y^e towne
 right sorowful and sore displeased for
 the deth of his sone / and yet againe
 16 he greatly complained for Croisant for⁷ that ad-
 uenture, and said⁸ a more valiaunt knight can⁹ not be
 founde / nor¹⁰ more curtoyse / nor more ¹¹sage¹¹, wold
 to god that bytwene him and me ¹²there were¹² a good
 20 accorde,¹³ so that he hadde my doughter in mariage /
 so¹⁴ that after my dissease he might haue my londe /
 than diuers of his men said / Sir, lete him go, he seme¹⁵
 rather a dyuell than a man / he is fiers and cruell / he
 24 setteth¹⁶ no more to slee men¹⁷ than some do to drinke
 the⁵ good wine / let him goo / he was borne⁷ an
 yll houre / than the erle entred in to the towne right
 sorowfull and sore displeased for the deth of his sone /
 28 & also for Croisantes aduenture / ¹⁴than he caused
 his sone to be buried as it apartained / ¹⁴great sorowe
 was made by the erle, and by y^e duke of Calabre and
 other knightes that were there / but thei knew not the

The pursuers
 return home,

¹ may in text. ² of. ³ many.

⁴ Fol. clxxxviii. back, col. 2. ⁵ omitted. ⁶ labour.

⁷ in. ⁸ that. ⁹ could. ¹⁰ neither.

¹¹⁻¹¹ wise, &. ¹²⁻¹² before bytwene. ¹³ amitie.

¹⁴ and. ¹⁵ semeth to be. ¹⁶ makes. ¹⁷ a man.

and none of them
knows the truth.

trouth of the matter / who so euer made sorow /
the erles doughter was sorowfull / both for her brother
and also for y^e noble Croisant whom she had thought
to mary. Now let vs leaue spekyng of them, and 4
returne to Croisant.

¹¶ Howe Croisant ariued in the suburbes of a
lytel towne called Florencolle, and lodged
amonge ruffians and vyleyns / and howe 8
thei fell at stryfe / and how Croisant slewe
them and fledde, and was in great daunger.
And howe he came in to the cyte of Rome,
whereas there was noo man that wolde 12
gyue hym one morsel of brede / and how
he wente and lay in an olde palayes on²
a burden of strawe. Capitulo .Clxxxix.



Croissant
journeys on,
but finds little to
eat or drink.

He approaches
Florencolle.

Han Croissant saw that he was departed 16
fro y^e towne of Nyse, and that he was
alone afote / he made his complayntes
to our lord god, requyeynge him
humbly to haue pety on³ him / than 20
he went forth, and so trauailed thre dayes & thre
nightes without mete or drinke / but a lytel brede and
water / he had such hungre and thurst that he coulde
scant⁴ susteyne himselfe on his fete / so at last a lytell 24
before the sonne was sette he came to a lytel towne
called Florencolle, whearof the gates were shytted whan⁵
he came thyder / than in y^e suburbes he saw a house
lyke a tauerne, & he sware though he shulde be slayne 28
he wolde go to that house to ete & drinke / and to pay
well for his scot⁶ / it had ben better for him to haue
passed by / for there he was in great peryll of his lyfe,

¹ Fol. clxxxix. col. 1. ² vpon. ³ of. ⁴ scarce.
⁵ before. ⁶ shot.

as ye shall here / thus he approched to y^e house and
herde how the cokes were busy in the kytchyn / than
he sawe a great fyre in a chambre / & wheare there was
4 ¹the greatest ruffyans / & plaies at dyse in all y^e towne /
& they had prepared flesshe and fysshe for their
souper. Whan Croysant saw y^e preperacion *that* was
made there for the syxe ruffians / he entred in to the
8 house and saluted the hoost, & demaunded if he might
be lodged there / y^e hoost said y^e / & how he shulde
be there well serued bothe of wyne and of meate / suche
as he wolde demaunde / than Croisant entred² in /
12 ³the ruffians met with⁴ him and said how he was
welcome, and eche of them pynched other & wynked
with y^e one eye, and said softly to the maister of
them / this great stradiot⁵ is come well at a poynte /
16 for or⁶ he departe he shall pay for our scot⁷ & expence /
and anone we shal⁸ put y^e dyse in to his handes /
whearly he shall leaue gowne / cap / and money if he
haue any. Croysant dyd not vnderstande them by
20 cause they spake Iaragon⁹ / than Croisant said / 'syrs,
if I eate with you, paynge my scot,⁷ shall it turne you
to any displeasure.' 'frende,' quod the maister of
them / 'it pleaseth me well that ye eate with vs' / than
24 they wasshed¹⁰ and sate downe at the table nere by¹¹
the fyre, ³thei were wel serue of euery thyng. Whan
Croisant was set he began sore⁴ to fede / ¹²for the
hunger that he had¹² / for in thre dayes before he hadde
28 eaten nothyng but brede & water / whearfore¹³ he
had the better appetyte, and also he founde there good
wyne and fresshe, & he drank therof at his pleasure.
whan thei had wel eaten & dronken, & were wel chafed
32 by reason of the good wyne / the hoost rose vp and

He enters a
tavern,
where cooks are
busy,
and ruffians
playing with dice.

Croissant asks the
host for lodging,
and is wel
received.

He asks permis-
sion to eat with
the ruffians,
paying his own
scot.

He makes a good
meal.

¹ Fol. clxxxix. col. 2. ² went. ³ and. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ Trauailer. ⁶ before. ⁷ shot. ⁸ wil.

⁹ whisperingly. ¹⁰ all together. ¹¹ to.

¹²⁻¹² well, (his hunger was so great).

¹³ & therefore.

The host brings
the reckoning,

but the chief of
the ruffians
insists that they
should all play
with dice,
and that the loser
should pay all.

Croissant offers to
pay the whole
bill.

One of the
ruffians calls for
a new bottle of
wine,

and the chief of
them again pro-
poses to cast with
the dice to decide
who should pay
for it.
Croissant refuses
to play with dice,
and declares that
he has already
paid enough.

said, 'syrs / it is tyme to make rekenynge, and *that*
euery man paye his parte' / than the maister ruffian
said, 'syr, make ye y^e accompt / ¹ye can better do it /
than we / ²shewe vs what we shall pay euery man ⁴
lyke' / 'syrs,' quod the hoost, 'as nere ³as I can
reken ye must paye in all .xii. sh., & loke euery man
pay his parte' / than the maister ruffian began to
swere bloode & woundes that thei shulde plei at the 8
dyse to se who shulde pay for all / than he said to
Croissant / 'frende, ye must come playe with vs;
beholde here .iii. dyse, good and square, we must do so
that ¹one shall ⁴pay the hole expence whan ⁵we ¹²
departe' / 'Syrs,' quod Croissant, 'we shall not nede to
play at dyse to know who shall pay for the scot, ⁶I
wyl paye it all togyder without ony stryfe' / than thei
said thei were well content ther with, & thanked him / ¹⁶
than one of them, the falsest vyleyne amonge them,
wylfully caste downe a potte of wyne vpon y^e table,
wherof his felowes blamed him; than he answer[ed] &
said / 'syrs, ye nede not to be angry therwith / for ²⁰
there is none of you wyl drynke therof / it is better to
haue a fresshe potte of wyne of a new vessel' / thei
said, well that is trew, so be it / than their hoost
brought them a new pot ful of wyne, & said, 'syrs, this ²⁴
pot of wyne is not of the fyrst rekenynge, this is
a potte of a newe accompt' / than the maister ruffian
said to Croissant / 'Syr, take and cast the dyse, for the
first cast shal be yours.' Croissant beheld them fiersly, ²⁸
& said / 'nay, syrs, I shall kepe me therfro ⁷ / for
I neuer played at y^e ⁸dyse in al my lyfe / be content
with the .xii. s. *that* I shall pay for our scot ⁶ / for by
reason of the longe vyage *that* I haue made I am not ³²
wel furnysshed of money / for I haue but xiii. s. in my
purse' / than y^e maister said / 'thou art better arayed

¹ for. ² and. ³ Fol. clxxxix back. col. 1. ⁴ must.
⁵ before. ⁶ shot. ⁷ from that. ⁸ omitted.

- than we / ¹thou must vse thy wordes² other wyse / for
 thou shalt not thus scape / thou shalt leue thy gowne
 to pay for our scot³ to morow in y^e morning.' than
 4 another ruffian said / ' & I wyll haue his hose & his
 shoes³ to bye fyssh for our dyner' / whan Croysant
 herde the ⁴vylayne he began to chaunge colour, & was
 sore displeased, and said right fyersly / ' Syrs, leue your
 8 clatterynge, yet I haue .xiii. s. in my purse, the whiche
 I wyl gyue you rather than ye shuld be displeased / me
 thynke this ought to suffyee you / for,¹ syrs, I am
 a noble man, & lately I was made knight, for if I were
 12 ones agayne in my countree I wold neuer come⁵ thens
 to seke for such aduentures / ye ought to beare me⁶
 honor syn I ⁷say to⁷ you *that* I am a knight' / y^e
 ruffian said / howe his wordes nor his prechyng shuld
 16 not anayle him / but *that* he must leue his gowne /
 iacked / hosen & shoes / than Croisant, replete with yre,
 dyd of his surcot, the whiche was furred with armyns,
 & cast it to them / & said, ' syrs, nowe ye ought to be
 20 content with me / & I ought to be quyt' / whan
 y^e ruffians vnderstode him thei cried all at ones that he
 shulde put of his hosen & his shoen / & his gyrdle / &
 purse / & gowne / & bad him quickly delyuer it to
 24 them / and than to auoyde y^e house / for thei said there
 was no lodgyng for him / ¹the hoost to plesse the
 vylaynes said howe thei said trouth / than Croisant, ful
 of yre & dyspleasure, turned his visage to y^e benche
 28 where as⁸ his good swerd lay / wherof he was ioyous⁹
that thei had not taken it away / than he stept thyder
 & toke it in his handes & drewe it out, & came to the
 vylaynes, & thei arose against him with their swerdes
 32 in their handes / & he strake y^e maister ruffian so
 meruaylous a stroke / *that* he claue his hed to y^e teth /

But one of the
 ruffians insists
 that he is
 wealthier than
 they, and must
 pay their scot
 again.

Croissant grows
 angry,
 but offers to give
 them all the
 money he has
 left ;

he says he is a
 knight.

The ruffians
 demand all his
 clothes.

Croissant in
 wrath gives them
 his surcoat,

but they demand
 his hose, shoes,
 girdle, purse, and
 gown, and bid
 him, after he has
 given them these,
 leave the house.

Croissant draws
 his sword,

and strikes the
 chief of the
 ruffians dead.

¹ and. ² tongue. ³ tomorrow.

⁴ Fol. clxxxix. back. col. 2. ⁵ from. ⁶ my.

⁷⁻⁷ shew. ⁸ omitted. ⁹ ioyfull.

Three others he
kills.

The host raises
the cry of murder,

but Croissant
rushes from the
house and from
the town.

The rulers of the
town come to the
tavern,

and order the
men to pursue
Croissant.

so he fell downe deed before y^e chymney / & fro
another he strake *his* heed / & than he slewe y^e thirde /
& the¹ fourth / & the other two had so great feare *that*
thei fled away / than the hoost began to crye / a thefe / 4
a murdrer; but Croissant wold do him no hurt, he
issued out of y^e house with² his swerd in his hande,
& ran as fast as ³he coulede tyll⁴ he was without y^e
subburbes / than he ran in the feld ouer hedges & 8
dykes,⁵ to thentent *that* none shuld folow him; than
he herkened towardes y^e towne, where he herd great
crynge / & noyse of y^e hoost of the house *that* he cam
fro / wherby all his neyghbours / tailers / cordiners⁶ / 12
drapers / & men of all craftes / came to y^e house, and
there was such⁷ noyse made in y^e subburbes / *that* the
towne gates were opened, & y^e burgesses issued out &
came to the house where as the noyse was / & whan y^e 16
rulers⁸ of y^e towne came thyder & sawe the men lye
deed / they demaunded of y^e hoost who had done *that*
murdre / 'Syr,' quod y^e hoost / ¹*that* hath done¹
a great¹ vacabond⁹ / who is bygge & mighty / for 20
I neuer sawe with myn eyen a man better made ne¹⁰
fourmed / & he is fled away with his swerde in his
handes¹¹ yonder hie way / but, syr, for goddes sake
com not to nere him / for he semeth no man whan he 24
is angry / but he is lyke a man out of his wytte with-
out¹² feare or¹³ doubte' / than y^e ruler⁸ commaunded
to folowe him bothe on horsbacke & a fote, & they ran
al to harnes,¹⁴ though y^e captayne were not greatly 28
afrayde / yet he wolde not be y^e first shulde go forth /
he loued better *that* another shuld take that aduauntage /
thus on all sydes a¹¹ horsbacke & a fote / they folowed
Croissant, who helde¹⁵ not y^e hie way / & it was farre in 32
the night, & also there were many that wolde not chafe

¹ omitted.

² in *in text*.

³ Fol. clxxxx. col. 1.

⁴ vntill.

⁵ diches.

⁶ Shoemakers.

⁷ a.

⁸ Magistrates.

⁹ hath done it.

¹⁰ nor.

¹¹ on.

¹² all.

¹³ and.

¹⁴ armour.

¹⁵ kept.

- themselfe ouer sore to seke for him / for thei wolde
 make no prease to receyue his offryng / for¹ they fered
 to fynde him / ²whan thei had sought a longe space in
 4 y^e felde & in the³ wayes, & coude not fynde him /
⁴than⁴ thei all returned to their towne / & Croisant went
 euer fro y^e towne warde with his swerde⁵ in his hande
⁴all naked⁴ / ²whan he saw that he was wel two leeges
 8 of them,⁴ he entred into y^e hye waye, & praysed god
 that he was so seaped with ⁶out daunger / but he was
 sore displeased in that he had neuer a peny in his purse,
 & nothyng but his swerde &⁴ his cote / & a rich purse
 12 at his gyrdle, & also he sawe⁷ it was wynter, & frost &
 snowe / also he felt y^e cold wynde, y^e whiche dyd him
 moch yll / thus he went forth al night / & the next
 day tyll⁸ it was nere night / than he ariued at a
 16 vyllage / ²ther he was fayne to sel his swerd for lacke
 of money to pay for his scot⁹ / he came to a lodge
 where he was well serued of euerythyng that he wolde
 haue, than in the mornyng whan he departed he solde
 20 his purs for as moch as he coude gete / than² he
 trauayled forth so long that he approached to Rome /
 & than⁴ he cam to a lodgyng without the gate, & there
 he lodged that night / than² in the mornyng he de-
 24 maunded of his hoost to whome the towne pertained,
 & who was lord therof, & what is⁴ his name¹⁰ that
 gouerneth the towne / the hoost said, 'frend, he that
 now is lord here is named Guimart of Puile, but or¹¹ he
 28 came hider we had a yong lord, the most⁴ fayrest yong
 gentylman that euer was sene / & he was sone to y^e
 noble emperour yde / ye somewhat resemble him / but
 he was of so yll rule & so ful of folies ⁴and youth⁴ /
 32 that all the riches that his father had left him / he
 dispended,¹² & gaue away ⁴his riches⁴ to euery man

Croissant escapes
them,

but he has no
money, and the
weather is very
cold.

He comes to a
village, and sells
his sword and
purse.

He reaches Rome,

and learns how
Guymart of Puile
rules there.

¹ because. ² and. ³ high. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted.

⁵ naked. ⁶ Fol. clxxx. col. 2. ⁷ that. ⁸ vntill.

⁹ shot. ¹⁰ was. ¹¹ before. ¹² spent.

that wold ¹haue it, & so he gaue so moche to euery man *that*¹ he left himself nothyng to lyue by. And after I herde say that he had in himselfe suche shame *that* he departed priuely with a squier & went to seke ⁴his aduentures / but no man knoweth where he is / nor whyder ²that euer² he wyll³ come agayne or not / and y^e comoners⁴ of the cyte made lytell therof / for after he was departed they sente for Guymart of Puile, ⁸whom they haue made emperour.⁵ Whan Croysant vnderstode his hoost / ⁶right pytuously⁶ he complayned ⁷to him selfe, & said, ‘Alas, caytiue that I am, what shall I do that thus hath loste all myn enherit- ¹²auce without recouer / & besyde that, I haue nothyng to spende / nor I haue no crafte⁸ to lyue by / it muste behoue me to dye for⁹ hungre & colde, I haue no more but .xxv. s., for the which I solde my purse.’ Thus as ¹⁶wel as he coud he contynued tyll lent / than the season began to waxe somewhat hotter / ¹⁰euery day in the mornynge he wolde here masse¹¹ / euery man that sawe him / behelde him sore¹² for the great beaute that he ²⁰was of / ¹⁰there were dyuers that knewe him / but they wolde make no semblaunt¹³ therof / to the entente that they wolde gyue to him nothyng / ¹⁰whan they sawe him thei wolde eschewe¹⁴ the way, bycause he shuld not ²⁴knowe them / there were many of them that he had done them moche good,¹⁵ and gyuen them in suche wyse that they were become riche & he pore / & ther was none of them that wolde offre him one morsel of brede / ²⁸wherof he was sorowfull / for than he sawe wel his money was gone, so that he had neuer a peny¹⁶ / than he thought to sel his gowne rather than to dye for

He lives at Rome
in retirement,

and none of his
old friends will
have aught to do
with him.

¹⁻¹ craue anything of him so that in the end. ²⁻² omitted.

³ euer. ⁴ communalte. ⁵ of this Empire.

⁶⁻⁶ after compleyned. ⁷ Fol, clxxx. back, col. 1.

⁸ trade. ⁹ through. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ seruice and.

¹² greatly. ¹³ semblaunce. ¹⁴ shun.

¹⁵ vnto. ¹⁶ left.

hungre, & so he dyd / he solde it for xxviii s., & than
 he taryed in his lodgyng as long as his money endured /
 so¹ he contynued² tyll³ Easter / by that tyme all his
 4 money was done.⁴ Than he thought⁵ he wold go in⁶
 the stretes to se yf he myght spye any burgesses to
 whom he had done in tymes past some good vnto / &
 to demaunde of him some courtoyse / & so he issued out
 8 of his lodgyng & walked into the stretes & parceyued⁷
 a ryche burges / who was lenyng out at a wyndowe in
 his house / Croysant knewe him well / for it was
 he that made him ryche / ⁸for afore⁸ he was but pore /
 12 than he thought to knowlege him self to that burges /
 than Croysant came⁹ and saluted¹⁰ him right humbly,
 and sayd / 'syr,¹¹ remembraunce of a pore caytyue to
 whom fortune is contrary / who in tyme past dyd you
 16 moche good whan ye serued him / yf ye be a good man,
 as I byleue ye be¹² / of that goodnes¹³ ye haue¹³
 remembraunce / & it may so be / yf ye do so ye shall
 fare the better' / whan the burges herde Croysant
 20 he behelde him fyersly / ¹⁴he knew him anone¹⁴ / &
 without makyng¹⁵ any maner of answeere, he called his
 page, and commaunded him to brynge him a pan full
 of water to y^e wyndowe / and he dyd as his maister had
 24 commaunded him / than y^e burges toke y^e panne full of
 water / than¹ he behelde Croisant who stode vnder the
 wyndow / and dyd cast the water vpon his heed / soo
 that his fayre heere, cote & shyрте, were all wete /
 28 Croisant without any worde spekyng made him selfe
 clene / and after¹⁶ sayd to y^e burges that yf he lyued
 longe the offence that he hadde done him¹⁷ shulde
 derely¹⁸ be bought / ¹⁸the burges, who was proud &
 32 disdaynfull, set but lytell by his wordes / Croisant,

He has to sell his gown,

but at last all his money is spent.

Croissant appeals for aid to a burgess whom he himself in past time had made rich.

But the burgess only throws a pan of water at him.

¹ and. ² there. ³ vntill. ⁴ gone. ⁵ that.

⁶ to. ⁷ saw. ⁸⁻⁹ and before. ⁹ went.

¹⁰ Fol. clxxx. back, col. 2. ¹¹ haue. ¹² are.

¹³⁻¹³ haue you. ¹⁴ presently. ¹⁵ of. ¹⁶ afterward.

¹⁷ he. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ buy it but.

who was right sorowfull, toke his way towardes the
 palayes, before y^e whiche there was an olde palais,
 where as no man had dwelled in of a long space,
 Croissant goes to ¹he entred in at the gate, the whiche was great, and 4
 an old palace, stode open / and there he sawe a great pyller, where as
 there laye two bundles² of strawe / than he layd him
 and sleeps there downe & slept right sore,³ angry with the burges *that*
 on straw. had so wete him with water / y^e whiche burges, after 8
 The burgess goes ⁴that⁴ he had cast this water vpon Croysant, he went
 to Guymart, to the palayes to the emperour Guymart to flatter and
 to please him / ¹he founde the emperoure lenyng in a
 wyndowe, and he saluted him, and said / 'syr, I bryng 12
 certayne tydynges of Croisant / sone to themperour
 who of right ought to be enheritour of this empyre,
 and warns him wherof ye be⁵ as now em⁶perour; he is come into this⁷
 of Croissant's return. towne in his double without hose or shoes / he is 16
 arayed lyke a vacabande / or a ruffian comyng fro the
 tauerne, ¹he is so great and so wel made in all his
 membres that he semeth more lyke a champyon redy to
 fyght than euer I sawe man in⁸ my lyfe / yf ye wyll 20
 byleue⁹ my counsell, stryke of his heed or cast him in¹⁰
 a pytte, ⁴to thentent⁴ that of him there be neuer had¹¹
 memory / for if he lyue longe he may do you damage
 & put you out of this empyre, the⁴ whiche ye holde / 24
 the whiche shulde partayne to him.' whan themperour
 Guymart vnderstode the burges, he behelde hym fyersly,
 & said / 'speke no more to me of this matter / for thou
 Guymart reproves the burgess for his ingratitude, doest lyke a traytoure; thou knowest well that by him 28
 and by⁴ his dede thou and dyuers⁴ other are¹² made
 riche / ¹thou arte lyke him *that* betrayed our lorde
 Iesu chryste / therefore I commaunde the fro hensforth
 come not in my syght / for I wyll haue none acqueynt- 32
 aunce nor conuersacyon with a traytour; if it be so that

¹ and. ² burdens. ³ sorowfull &. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted.⁵ are. ⁶ Fol. clxxxix. col. 1. ⁷ the. ⁸ all.⁹ follow. ¹⁰ to. ¹¹ any more. ¹² bee.

Croisant be pore, it is pety & damage¹ and great syn to
 doo him any yll / ²I haue done him great yll whan his
 londes and sygnoryes ³I kepe³ wrongfully and without⁴
⁴ cause, wherof I thinke my selfe gretly culpable against⁵
 god for the syn that I haue done ⁶whan⁶ I holde the
 honour & sygnory that of reason ought to partayne to
 him / this daye is Easter day, on⁷ y^e whiche day euery
⁸ good crysten man ought to humble himselfe to ⁸our
 lorde⁸ / cryinge him mercy and pardon of² all their
 synnes / it is reason that I make pease with god, and
 do so that he may be with me content.⁹

and declares that
 he himself has
 done the youth
 much wrong.

¹² ¶ Howe themperour Guymart spake & re-
 buked the burges that spake yll of Croy-
 sant, and howe ¹⁰themperour bare meate
 & drinke to the place where as Croisant
¹⁶ slept / and of the meruaylous tresure that
 he founde in a chambre in the sayd olde
 palayes / and of that¹¹ was shewed him
 by two knyghtes whom he founde there.

20

Capitulo .C.lxxxx.

24



Han the burges vnderstode themperour
 he was in great feare, & soo departed
 ryght sore abashed / & thought he
 had ben to hasty to reporte suche
 newes / & so right sorowfull departed
 and lefte themperour alone in a wyndowe right sore
 pensyue, and said to himselfe, 'O very god, the
²⁸ pouerte that Croysant is in is by my cause / for I haue
 all that ought to be his / ¹²I kepe it from him perforce;
 yf I kepe it styll I may wel say that my soule shal

¹ lamentable. ² for. ³⁻³ after whan. ⁴ a.

⁵ the almighty. ⁶⁻⁶ him, in that. ⁷ vpon.

⁸⁻⁸ god. ⁹ before with me. ¹⁰ Fol. clxxxxi. col. 2.

¹¹ which. ¹² and.

Guymart walks
down to the old
palace full of
remorse,

and sees Croissant
sleeping on the
straw,

He fetches wine
and meat,

and sets them
down by Crois-
sant, who still
sleeps.

He sees an iron
door standing
open,

and looking
beyond it per-
ceives all manner
of treasure.

neuer come in¹ paradyse, but shal be dampned for
euer.' Thus themperour Guymart compleyned to him
self, and so went downe in to his palaies / and so
walked vp and downe by him selfe before y^e olde 4
palayes, the whiche was nere to his palays / ²he loked
in at a gate and sawe a man lye slepyng on a burden
of strawe, ²he thought incontynent³ it shulde be Croy-
sant by the reporte of the burges. Whan the emperour 8
saw him / he had so⁴ great pety of him that he wepte /
²than he wente in to his palayes and commaunded one
to bryng to⁵ him a towell with brede and flesshe / &
a bottel of wyne / y^e which thyng was done; than 12
themperour toke a mantel furred with gryse, & dyd it
about him selfe, & toke the wyne & mete, & com-
maunded his men³ ⁶none to⁷ folow him / ⁸he went
downe y^e greses & came to the palais where as Croissant 16
slept, ²themperour set the mete and wyne nere by
Croissant, and a woke him not, than he couered him
with the mantell and than⁹ departed / & as y^e emperour
was departyng he loked on his right hande & sawe 20
a dore open all of yren, ¹⁰sore bonded with barres of
yren,¹⁰ & he sawe a clerenes within / in such wyse as
though there had ben within .C. torches brennyng¹¹ /
he went thyder & entred into the chambre / y^e which 24
was great & large, & he sawe all about y^e chambre
great coffers, y^e which stode open, & thei were full of
golde / & other coffers full of Iewelless & riche stones /
y^e whiche shone¹² with suche lyght that themperour 28
was¹³ maruayled / also he sawe great peces of plate &
money lyinge on y^e erth, & besyde he sawe¹⁴ vessel /
¹⁵cuppes / & pottes of golde & syluer, & great peces of
golde bordred with precious stones. Also he sawe 32

¹ to. ² and. ³ that. ⁴ such. ⁵ vnto.
⁶ Fol. clxxxix. back, col. 1. ⁷ should. ⁸ then. ⁹ he.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ & banded verie strongly with yron barres.
¹¹ burning and. ¹² did shine. ¹³ greatly.
¹⁴ a great. ¹⁵ of.

riche gownes hangynge on perches of clothe of golde &
 syluer,¹ in so great nombre *that* the emperour was sore
 abasshed / & said who so euer left this treasure here /
 4 might wel be called a great lord / for he thought² al y^e
 golde in y^e worlde / & all the riche iewelles were
 brought togyder³ might not be compared to y^e treasure
that he saw there / & said he was happy to come
 8 thyder / *than* he passed forth where he saw an ymage
 of fyne golde, & it was as byg as a chylde of two yere
 of age / & wheare as the eyen shulde stonde there were
 two gret carbuckles / y^e whiche cast so great clerenes
 12 *that* all y^e chambre was lyght therwith / whan them-
 perour sawe *that* ymage he thought to haue taken it &
 to haue borne it into his palais / but he had moche ado
 to lyfte it / *than* he loked towardes a lytell dore, out of
 16 y^e whiche he saw comynge two knyghtes well armed at
 al peeces with their swerdes in ⁴their handes,⁵ they came
 to themperour & said / 'beware, frende / be not so
 hardi to bere any thyng fro hens / for y^e treser *that* is
 20 here is not yours / nor it belongeth you⁶ not to haue
 it / therfore set downe agayne that ymage / without ye
 do it shortly / ye shall by it derely⁷ / y^e emperour,
 seynge the two knyghtes thretenyng him / he was in
 24 great feare / ⁵he set downe the ymage & beheld y^e
 knyghtes, & said / 'Syr, ye speke fyersly to me / for
 the treasure / the which ye warne me *that* I shulde not
 take any parte therof, by all right ought to be myn,
 28 and none others / syn I haue founde it / ⁵therfor
 I coniure you by y^e puyssaunce of god / & of his
 aungelles & archangelles, & all saintes / that y^e shewe
 me y^e trouth to whom this treasure ⁸do parteyne⁸ / ye
 32 ought to knowe it / syn ye haue y^e kepyng therof /
than y^e .ii. knyghtes answered & said / 'syr, this

He passes through
 it, and finds an
 image of fine gold,
 which he tries to
 lift.

But two knyghtes
 approach him,
 and bid him lay
 it down, for none
 of the treasure is
 his.

The emperor asks
 to whom it
 belongs.

¹ sylke. ² if. ³ they. ⁴ Fol. clxxxxi. back, col. 2.

⁵ and. ⁶ you *after* to. ⁷ derely *before* by it.

⁸⁻⁸ doth belong.

They tell him it
is Croissant's
property,

and bid him take
three besants of
gold and proclaim
through the city
that he will give
every poor man a
florin.

Croissant, they
say, will then
come to the palace,

and he will learn
by a sign that all
belongs to the
valiant knight.

treasure *that* ye here se / ought to partayne to Croissant,
sone to yde themperour, who alone lyeth on a burden
of strawe here by not ferre fro this chambre / he lyeth
right porely & naked / the which treasure was iudged ⁴
to him .v.C. yere past / ¹neuer syn ²there hath ben
taken fro it y^e value of a ³peny / nor neuer syn it was
layde here there neuer entred any erthely man but
only you ; Croysant who slepeth without is a valiaunt 8
knight, & ful of ⁴all ⁴trouth / wherfore, yf ye wyll know
to whom this treasure parteyneth / I shall shewe you
y^e maner how ye may know it / beholde yonder hepe of
golde / go & take therof .iii. besantes / & put them in ¹²
to your purse / than returne into your palais & ⁵make
a crye through ⁵rome *that* al pore men com to your
court, & *that* to ech of them ye shall ⁶gyue a floryn ⁷of
golde. Whan Croissant shall here that he shal ⁶not be ¹⁶
behynde / but he wyl come amonge other to take that
almes / & than y^e thre besantes *that* shal be in your
purse, take & cast ⁸them on the erth / one in one
place / & a[no]⁹ther in another place / wheare as y^e ²⁰
pe[ople] must pas to com to receyue your [almes], than
Croissant shall come the same [way] & fynde the thre
besantes, the whic[h by] reason of his noblenes &
bounte he will come & brynge them to you a[gain], ²⁴
therby ye shall know *that* y^e treasu[re that] is here
assembled ¹⁰parteyneth to hi[m, and] ought to be his /
than gyue him your [faire] doughter in mariage / &
than ⁴bryn[ge him] hyther / & than ⁴ye shal se that he ²⁸
ma[y take] of this treasure at his pleasure / fo[r it is]
all his / no man shall say the contra[rie, and] doynge
thus as we haue sayd / ye s[hall] haue parte of this
treasure.'


¹ and. ² that time. ³ one. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted.

⁵⁻⁵ cause to be proclaimed throughout. ⁶ will.

⁷ Florent. ⁸ Fol. clxxxii. col. 1.

⁹ leaf torn [] from 1601 ed. ¹⁰ before you.

¶ Howe the two knightes th[at] kept this
treasure spake with the emperour Guymart,
& shewed him the maner howe he shulde
4 know Croisant. And of the meruaile that
Croisant had whan he awoke & sawe the
mete & drinke by him. Capitulo .C.lxxxxi.

8  Han the emperour had wel herde the
two knightes he went to the hepe of
golde & toke the thre besantes, &
[dyd]¹ put them in² his purs / ³than
he toke⁴ leaue of the two knyghtes &

The emperor
takes the three
besants and
returns to the
palace.

12 departed, ⁵whan he was issued out / he loked behynd
him / than³ he saw the dore fast closed / wherof he
had great meruayle / & founde Croysant styll slepyng /
& so he past by, & wold not a wake him / & than he
16 went to his palaies; & then his lordes demaunded
of him where he had ben that he taried so longe, but
he wolde not shew them any thyng of y^e matter /
than he⁵ went to dyner, & was ⁶[richly serued; and
20 then Croissant / who lay and slept in the old Pallaice /
suddenly awoake, and had great maruaille of the furred
Mantle that he found vppon him / and he saw also
lying by him a Napkin, and therin wrapped good
24 white bread, Capon, rosted Fesant, & Partridge, and
therby he saw lying a great bottel full of wine, and
when he saw this good cheere, he thanked god of that
adventure. Then he did eate of the meate, and dranke
28 of the wine at his pleasure; and when he had well
eaten and drunke, he departed from thence, and left the
rest behind him, and tooke nothing with him: and
also he left the furred Mantlo, for he durst not weare
32 it, but sayd to himselfe, that he had no right thereto,

Croissant awakes
and marvels at
the wine and meat
at his side.

¹ All in [] from 1601 ed. omitted.

² to.

³ and.

⁴ his.

⁵ the emperour.

⁶ Fol. clxxxii. col. 2.

because it was a thing that was none of his, and so he went downe through the streets of the Towne.

¶ The prooffe that the emperour Guymart made to know Croissant, vnto whome he gaue his Doughter in mariage, and deliuered] h[im all his Signiorie and Inheritance,] whe[reof great ioye was made at] Rom[c]. Ch. CLXXXII. [C.lxxxxii.] 8



The emperor proclaims that he will give every poor man in the city a florin of gold.

Croissant resolves to take his share of the alms.

The king throws the three besants in three different places about the road by which the poor men come to the palace, but they pass them by.

[Hen the emperor was risen from dinner, he called to him Foure of his seruants, to whome he gaue in charge that they should cause to be proclaimed in 12 euerie Streete] of the towne [that all pore men that would] come to themp[erour, should haue in almes] eueryman a Fl[orent of gold of the value] of .x. sous / the w[hich crie was made] in euery 16 strete & ma[rket place in Rome, where]by ¹all the¹ pore m[en drew to wardes the Pallaice.] Whan this crye wa[s made Croissant heard] it, whearof he was [ioyfull, and said howe] hee would goe thider [among 20 others to ha]ue the emperours almes, ²wherewith hee thought hee would pay his host, and then in haste he went thether. The Emperour, who was there readie / thought to see & prooue whether the two Knights 24 sayings were true or not, & so drew out of his purse the Three Besans of gould, the which he did cast in diuers places, in the way as the pore men shuld come to the Pallaice, but many poore men passed ouer them, and 28 perceiued them not: & then Croissant came amonge others, & he saw among the mens feet one Besan of gould faire and bright, and he stouped downe and tooke it vp, and then he went forth, & within a little 32

- while after he found the second Besan, the which also
 he tooke vp, and a little further among the mens feete he
 espyed the Third Besan, the which also hee tooke vp ;
 4 then hee thought within himselfe, and sayd, ‘Alas,
 what a Caitiffe am I? if these had beene siluer, they
 had been mine, but they are fine gould, wherfore I am
 beguiled, for they appertaine to the Emperour Guymart,
 8 who holdeth this Empire ; [I] haue no right to kepe
 them, because they belong not to mee, therefore I wyll
 [render them to the emperour, vnto w]home [they
 doe appertaine.’ then hee came to] the Em[perour,
 12 & sayd, ‘Sir, I haue fou]nde by y^e [way as I came to
 your Pallaice] .iii. besans [of gould, the which here I]
 delyuer to [you, for of right and reason they apper-
 ta]yne vnto you, [bicause of the right and title that you]
 16 haue to the [Empire, but if the hadde beene] syluer I
 mi[g]ht haue kept them as mi]ne owne without blame.’
 [When the right noble Em]perour vnder[stood him, he
 beheld hi]m, & syghynge he [sayd, ‘Freend, you are
 20 wel]come / the bounte, [noblenesse, and wisdom]e
 that is in you / [shall ayd you to com]e to y^e place
 wheare[of in reason you ought to] be / for the goodnes
 [and troth that I h]aue sene in you I wyl [giue you my]
 24 doughter in mariage, ¹[wh]om² ye shall take³ to your
 wyfe, & ther [with] I shall yeld you the crowne imperial
 [of the noble] empyre of Rome / y^e which of right
⁴you parteyneth.’⁴ When⁵ Croisant⁶ vnder[stood] the
 28 emperour he was right ioyfull, [and kne]led downe to
 the erth in the presence [of all] the lordes that were
 there present, [thank]ynge him of y^e honoure *that* he
 offred [him. The] emperour, who was a noble⁷ wyse
 32 [Prince,] toke him vp by the hande and led [him in]
 to a chambre, whearin he caused a [bathi]nge to be

Croissant comes
and picks up the
three besants.

He brings them
to the emperor.

The emperor
receives him
kindly, and offers

him his daughter
in marriage.

¹ Fol. clxxxxii. back, col. 2. ² I loue entirely and.

³ her. ⁴⁻⁴ appertaineth to you. ⁵ the noble.

⁶ had well heard and. ⁷ and a.


He gives Crois-
sant rich apparel.

His fair daught-
er is brought to
Croissant.

prepared, whearin Crois[ant was] bayned.¹ Than the
emperour [brou]ght him such apparel as was met for
[him] to haue. Whan he² was thus richely [app]arelled /
a fayrer nor a better made³ [ma]n coude not be founde ⁴
in a⁴ xviij real[mes] crystened / whearof kyng⁵ Guymart
[had] great ioye, and said⁶ that in all his lyfe he neuer
saw a more goodlyer prince / ⁷he was great amonge
other men, & wel furnysshed of al his membres; he ⁸
was byg & large in his shulders / ⁸the skyn whyte
enewed⁹ with reed / his heere lyke gold wyre, ⁸his face
streyt with a large forheed / ⁸his eyen gray, ⁸his nose
well made / longe armes / & byg / handes, fayre & ¹²
streyt legges¹⁰ / ⁸his fete well proporcioned and made /
kyng⁵ Guymart coude not be satysfied with¹¹ regardyng
of him / ¹²he lede him into the palais wheare as his
lordes were, who greatly¹³ praysed him, and said eche to ¹⁶
other / ⁶that they had neuer sene¹⁴ so goodly a prynce /
nor better¹⁵ fourmed of his membres / than the kynge⁵
sent for his doughter by two great lordes / ⁸they wente
to her chambre for her / ¹⁶she came into y^e palais to y^e ²⁰
kyng⁵ her father, richely accompanied with ladyes
& damselles / of their apparel I wyl make no longe
rehersall / for it was as riche as might be, & she was so
fayre / that god and nature coude not amende her / ²⁴
nor¹⁷ no Painter in the world, though he were neuer so
skilfull, could not paint y^e fashion nor proportion of
her beautifull bodie, and all that were there present,
both young and old, sayd that they neuer sawe nor ²⁸
heard report of so faire a copple of Creatures as the
noble Croissant and this Ladie were, for euerie man
thought that they were made for nothing else but
to cause men to behould them and their beautie. ³²

¹ bathed and. ² Croissant. ³ fourmed. ⁴ omitted.
⁵ the Emperor. ⁶ how. ⁷ for. ⁸ and. ⁹ mingled.
¹⁰ his Legs *before* fayre. ¹¹ the. ¹² and then.
¹³ lauded and. ¹⁴ before. ¹⁵ made nor. ¹⁶ then.
¹⁷ from 1601 ed. The page in the earlier ed. is torn away.

¶ Howe the Emperour Guymart promised
Croissant that within three days he should
haue his Daughter in mariage; And how
4 the Emperour Guymart led Croissant to
the olde Pallaice, and shewed him the great
Treasure that the two Knightes kept for
him. Ch. clxxx[x]iii.

8  Hen the Emperour Guymart sawe his
Daughter come, hee toke her by the
hand, and sayd, 'My right deere
Daughter, I haue found for you a
12 Husband, to whome I haue giuen you,
and you may well say that a fairer man nor a hardyer
Knight you neuer sawe before, and that is the noble
Croissant, vnto whom this Empire appertaineth by
16 rightfull enheritance, and he is Son to the noble
Emperour Ide, who hath giuen this Empire to his son
Croissant, but when he was of no great age he departed
from this Cittie with a small companie, and went
20 to serue in strang countreys, and when the Lords
of this countrey saw that they were without a Lord,
they sent for me into Puille, and so they made mee
heere Emperour wrongfully and without reason; but
24 nowe since that Croissant the rightfull Inheritour is
returned; for to discharge my soule towards God,
I shall put into his hands al his Empire, without
keeping from him any part thereof, for as for me I am
28 rich and puissant ynough; and therefore, Croissant, if
it be your pleasure, you shall haue my Daughter in
mariage.' 'Sir,' (quoth Croissant) 'if it be her plea-
sure I will not refuse her, for I neuer sawe a fairer nor
32 none that I had rather to haue.' When the faire
Damsell vnderstood Croissant shee was right ioyfull,
and she beheld Croissant, who seemed to her so faire

The emperor in-
forms his daugh-
ter of Croissant's
return, and how
he intends to
restore to him his
empire.

The daughter
loves Croissant.

that her loue was enflamed vpon him, for the more she beheld him, the more she loued him / and she thought it long vntill the matter was made perfect; then she sayd to the Kinge her Father, ‘Sir, then it is your will 4 and pleasure that I shall haue Croissant in marriage, you may commaund mee as it please you, it were a folly for mee to make refuse; and, Sir, I require you to let vs be married shortly, for if I haue not him I 8 renounce all marriage for euer, for there is none other that euer shall set the Ring on my finger, but onely Croissant.’ When the King vnderstoode his Daughter hee laughed hartely, and sayd, ‘Deere Daughter, thinke 12 not the contrarie, but that you shall haue him to your Husband.’ then the King sent for a Bishoppe, who assured them together, whereof the Damsell was so ioyful that she wist not what to doo, and priuely she 16 thanked our Lorde god: and if she loued him well, Croissant loued her as well, and both of them desired for the day that they might come together in wedlocke.

Three days later
the wedding takes
place.

When Three dayes were passed, and that the 20 prouission was made readie for the wedding, then King Guymart made them to sweare each to other, and especially he made Croissant to promise that on the Third day hee should take his Daughter in marriage, 24 the which Croissant promised, and sware so to doe: then the King tooke Croissant by the hand, and ledde him to the old Pallaice, to prooue if the Treasure that was there might be had away by Croissant, as the two 28 Knightes had shewed him; and then they two alone came to the ould Pallaice; when they were come thether the King sayd, ‘Faire Sonne, I loue you well, and also you ought to beare me your loue, since 32 you shall haue my Daughter in marriage, and because I haue great affiance in you, I shall shew you what I thinke to say, and that which lyeth in my heart; it is of troth, that about foure dayes passed, as I came from 36

seruice, I stooode and leaned out at a window in my
Pallaice, and I beheld this same place where as we be
now, and where I saw you lye asleepe, repleat with
4 famine and pouertie, I tooke of you great pitie, and I
brought to you bread and drinke, and did sette it by
you, and I couered you with a furred mantle, and so I
let you lye still, for I would not awake you, and as I
8 returned from you, I sawe a dore open of this Chamber,
the which you see now closed, out of the which I sawe
a great light yssue; then I went thether and entred
into the Chamber, and there I sawe so great Treasure,
12 *that* I neuer saw none such in all my life: there was a
rich Image of gould, the which I thought to haue taken
and borne with me, and as I had it in my handes, two
knightes well armed came foorth, whereof I was
16 afraide; then they sayd vnto me, that I should not be
so hardy as to touch the Image nor no part of the
Treasure that I saw there, for they sayd that it did not
appertaine to me, and if I did the contrarie I should
20 repent it, and they sayd incontinent they would slay
me: then I demaunded to whome that Treasure did
belong. Then they sayd that it did belong vnto
Croissant, who lay heere without a sleepe, and they
24 commaunded me to take three Besans of gould to
prooue thereby to whome the Treasure should apper-
taine, and then they aduised me to make a Dole
to poore men / and that I shold cast down the Besans
28 vppon the earth whereas the poore men shoulde passe
by, and he that found them and brought them to me,
this Treasure should appertaine to him, wherefore,
I pray you, let vs go thether to know the troth.' 'Sir,'
32 (quoth Croissant) 'I pray you let vs goe thether.'

The emperor tells
Croissant of the
treasure in the
old palace.

When they came there they found the dore closed,
and then Croissant knocked thereat, and sayd, 'Ye
Sirs, that be within, I pray you in the name of Go! to
36 open this dore.' incontinent the dore opened, and

They enter the treasure-chamber, and find the two knights guarding it.

They tell Croissant that Oberon placed the treasure here for him 500 years since.

He thanks the knights,

who bid him be liberal and pitiful to the poor.

They vanish suddenly.

there they found the two Knightes with their swords in their hands. Then Guymart and Croissant entred into the Chamber, and the two Knightes came to Croissant, & made him great cheere, and sayd, 'Croissant, your great Prowesse and Noblenes is greatly to be praised, we haue been a longe time heere sette to kepe for you this Treasure that you see heere, for it is Five Hundred yeeres since that we were set heere by King 8 Oberon to keepe this Treasure for you, and hee shewed vs that it appertained to you, and neuer since it was touched by any man, but onely by King Guymart, whome / to the intent to ayd and succour you / wee 12 had him take three Besans of gould, and shewed him that this Treasure appertained neither to King nor Emperour, but alonely to you, which is so great that no man liuing can esteeme it / you may take it & beare 16 it away, or giue it whereas it shall please you, and whatsoever you take from it, all your life it shall not diminish nor decrease.' When Croissant vnderstood them, hee was ioyfull, and thanked the Knightes in 20 that they hadde so longe kept his Treasure ; then they tooke leaue of Croissant, and embraced him, and sayd, 'Sir, we require you to bee courteous and liberall, and pitifull to the poore, and loue well all noble and wise 24 men, and giue to them largely, and be good and true to your Father in law, King Guymart, for he is a noble and a wise Prince ; you ought to thanke him, & to loue him aboute all other men liuing.' Then Croissant thanked 28 them of their good aduertisement, and then they tooke their leaue, and so departed sodenly, that neither Croissant nor Guymart wist not where they were become, whereof they were abasshed, and made on 32 them the signe of the crosse ; then they looked about the Chamber and saw the Treasure that was there, whereof Croissant was so abasshed that he wist not what to say, for there was a great light in the Chamber 36

as though there had been Thirtie Torches lighted, by reason of the bright stones that were there. to speake of the Treasure that was in that Chamber,

The brilliance of the treasure gives a great light in the room.

4 I cannot shewe it, for ther was so much that they were thereof abashed to behold it.

When Croissant sawe this Treasure, it was no maruaile though he was ioyfull, and thought to himselfe 8 that he would not spare to giue to them that were worthy, & such as did serue him truly, and so hee did, for he gaue so largely that all the Citie praised him; and when they had beene there a certaine space,

Croissant gives generously of the treasure.

12 Croissant sayd to King Guymart, 'Sir, of this treasure I will that you haue the one halfe, & you shall haue the keys of that, and giue thereof at your pleasure.'

'Faire Sonne,' (quoth the King) 'I thanke you, all that 16 I haue is yours, and all that you haue is mine, wee will part nothing betweene vs as longe as we liue.' Then they departed from thence, and Croissant tooke certaine of the iewels to giue to his Spouse; and then they 20 departed out of the Chamber, & locked the dore, & tooke the key with them, and so they returned to the Pallaice right ioyfull. Then Croissant gaue to the Lady the rich iewels, who then humbly thanked 24 him therefore.

1¶ Of the great Treasure that they had, and how Croissant wedded the noble damsell, daughter to King Guymart, and of the 28 feaste there made. Ch. clxxx[x]iiii.



32 After that King *Guymart* and *Croissant* were returned to the Pallaice, the Ladie was readye apparelled, and then the two Louers were wedded together in the Chappell of the Pallaice. The great ioye and myrth

Croissant and the emperor's daughter are married.

¹ added leaf.

that was made in the Citie I omyte, they dyned, and
 after dynner the yong Knyghts justed, and the joye
 and sporte cannot be expressed, and after supper, and
 the dauncing was done, *Croissant* and his Ladie went 4
 to bed in a riche Chamber; so faire a coupelle was
 neuer seene, and on the morowe the feasteinge was
 renewed, and continuede fifteene dayes. And longe
 tyme thei lyued together. So that at laste King 8
Guymarte lay sicke in bed, and on the fourthe daye
 he dyede, to the great sorowe of Ladie *Katherine* his
 daughter, and of *Croissant*, who dearelye loude him.
 And after his deathe, by the consente of all the Lordes 12
 of the empire, *Croissant* was crowned *Emperour*. And
 the Ladie *Katherine Empress*, at whos coronation was
 made greate feasting and ioye. *Croissant* amended
 and encreased the signiorie of Rome, & conquered 16
 diuers Realms, as Ierusalem, And all Surrey, as more
 plainlye you may knowe by the Cronicle that is made
 of him and his.

King Guymart
 dies,

and Croissant is
 crowned his suc-
 cessor.

Here ends the
 history of Huon
 of Bourdeaux.

Thus endethe the auncient, honourable, famouse, 20
 and delightfulle hystorie of *Huon of Bourdeaux*, one of
 the Peers of Fraunce, and Duke of Guyenne, and
 of dyuers Princes liuing in hys tyme. Translated out
 of frenche into English by Syr Iohn *Bourchire*, Knight, 24
 Lord *Berniers*, at the requeste of the Lord *Hastings*,
Earl of Huntinton, in the yeare of our Lorde God, one
 thousande fwe hendrede and three score and Ten, and
 now newlie reuised and corrected thys present yeare, 28
 1601.

FINIS.

PREFATORY NOTE.

APOLOGY for my unconscionable delay in completing this edition of Lord Berners' *Huon of Burdeux* may be misconstrued as an impertinence. I will therefore only venture to say, that since I undertook the work and produced the first part early in 1883, my time has been more fully occupied than I could have then anticipated, and that my leisure has of late years grown very limited. I trust, however, that this concluding portion of my labour will not seem unsatisfactory to those who were good enough to express approval of my earlier efforts.

My best thanks are due to Mr. W. A. Clouston for the interesting and valuable notes which he has supplied on the magical episodes in the Romance.

SIDNEY L. LEE.

APPENDIX.

- I. *Lord Berners and Euphuism*, p. 785.
- II. *Lord Berners' work on Calais*, p. 789.
- III. *The Hamilton MS. of Huon*, p. 789.
- IV. *Contemporary Criticism of Huon*, p. 790.
- V. *The Bibliography of Lord Berners' Huon*, p. 791.
- VI. *The 1601 Revision of Lord Berners' English*, p. 791.
- VII. *A table of the magical incidents in the romance, with notes*, p. 798.
- VIII. *Index Locorum, with a note on the romance's geography*, p. 811.
- IX. *Index Nominum*,¹ p. 815.
- X. *Glossary*, p. 839.

I. LORD BERNERS AND EUPHUISM.²

IT has been recently proved that English Euphuism is a Spanish product,—an imitation of the style of Antonio de Guevara, a Spanish writer of the early part of the sixteenth century. John Lyly, the author of *Euphues*, has been deprived of the honour, long assigned him, of having invented ‘a new English.’³ The leading characteristics of his manner of writing are undoubtedly borrowed from Sir Thomas North’s translation of Guevara’s popular book, *Libro del Emperador Marco Aurelio con el Relox de Principes*.⁴ North’s version appeared under the title of the *Dial of Princes*, in 1557, with a dedication to Queen Mary: it was republished in 1568, ‘newly reuised and corrected, and reformed of faultes escaped in the first edition.’ Lyly’s indebtedness to North has been fully illustrated elsewhere,⁵ but it is important to note here that North himself was anticipated by Lord Berners in his endeavour to introduce Guevara’s style and

¹ The editorial matter is fully indexed here.

² See Introduction, p. xlv.

³ In 1632 Edward Blount, when issuing Lyly’s *Six Court Comedies*, writes of the author in an address ‘to the Reader’:—‘Our Nation are in his debt, for a new English which hee taught them. *Euphues* and his England [i. e. Lyly’s book] began first that language.’

⁴ It is worth noting that all the English translations from Guevara were made through the French.

⁵ See *Euphuismus*, by Dr. Landmann. Giessen, 1881; *Shakspeare and Euphuism*, by Dr. Landmann, in New Shakspeare Soc.’s Transactions, 1884.

his best known work to English readers. Doubts were fully expressed at the time of the first publication of North's translation, as to his right to claim the glory of having discovered Guevara, or even of having done any part of the work of translation himself. The charges were in part justified.¹ Lord Berners and Lord Berners' nephew, Sir Francis Bryan,—the first Englishmen to present their countrymen with Guevara's writings in English versions,—did more for Guevara's fame and influence in England than Sir Thomas North. And their labours were at the service of the public many years before North attempted authorship.

'At Calais ye tenth daie of Marche in the yere of the reigne of our soueraygne lorde King Henry the .VIII. xxliii' (*i. e.* 1533), Lord Berners completed, according to the colophon of the first published edition of 1534, his translation of Guevara's *Marke Aurelie Emperour*, otherwise called the *Golden Boke*. The Spanish original bore the title *Libro Aurco de Marco Aurelio Emperador y Eloquentissimo Orador*, and it was an expanded version of the same work that Sir Thomas North anglicized three-and-twenty years later. Both versions are identical in style and almost identical in subject matter; and a comparison of the two translations shows that Lord Berners writing in 1533 (and not North writing in 1557) is the true parent of Euphuism or Guevarism in England.

I print side by side Berners' and North's versions of the prologue of the *Golden Boke*. Lord Berners' sentences are Euphuistic beyond all question; they are characterized by the forced antitheses, the alliteration, and the far-fetched illustrations from natural phenomena, characteristic of Lyly and his successors.² The subject is the destructive and productive powers of Time:—

¹ To the second edition of the *Dial of Princes* North added a fourth book, which he had previously omitted, and 'certain letters [of Guevara] written by Marcus Aurelius, selected out of the Spanishe copie, not wrytten in the Frenche tongue.' In '*the Epistle to the Reader*,' which prefaces these appendices, North writes under date 10th May, 1568: 'What detracting tongues report of mee & my first trauell in the translation of this *Dyall*, enlarging them at pleasure to woork my defame, disabling my dooing heerein, by brute yt was no woork of myne, but the fruit of others labor: I neede not much force. since by dayly proof wee see that yll disposed mynds can neuer frame an honest tongue in head.'

² These results have been previously made public in a letter contributed to

BERNERS.

'There is nothyng so entier, but it deminisheth; nor nothyng so hole, but that is wery; nor nothyng so strong, but that it breaketh; nor nothyng so well kept, but that it corrupteth. . . . The fruites in the spryngyng tyme haue not the vertue to gyue sustenavnce, nor perfyte swetenesse to satisfie the taste of them that eateth thereof: but thanne passeth the season of sommer and haruest cometh, whiche tyme doth better rype them, and thanne that that we do eate, dothe *profyte* us, the *profe* thereof is ryghte sauerynesse, and *gyueth* the more force and vertue, and the greater is the taste.'

NORTH.

'There is nothing so entyer but may be diminished: nothyng so healthful but may be diseased: nothing so strong, but may be broken: neyther anything so wel kept, but may be corrupted. . . . The fruits of the spring time haue no force to giue sustenance, nor perfait swetenes to giue any sauour, but after that the sommer is past and haruest commeth, they rype and then all that we eate nourisheth more and gyueth a better tast.'

The popularity of Lord Berners' translation, of which nine editions are known to have been published between 1534 and 1560, and five between 1560 and 1588, is a remarkable indication of the favour bestowed on Euphuistic style in England before the time of North or Lyly.

But more can be proved in the same direction. The translator's prologue to Lord Berners' *Froissart*, written in 1524, and that to be found in other of his works, show him to have come under Guevara's or a similar influence before he translated the *Golden Boke*. In the following abbreviated extracts from the prologue to *Froissart* the parallelism of the sentences, the repetition of the same thought differently expressed, the rhetorical question, the accumulation of synonyms, the classical references are irrefutable witnesses to the presence of well-developed Euphuism. Berners is writing of the advantages of history:—

the *Athenæum*, for 18th August, 1883. To make the parallel more effective, the following extracts from Lyly's *Euphues*, in which the form of the sentences is almost identical with those in the two passages printed above, should be read with them:—'There is nothing lyghter than a feather, yet is it sette a loft in a woemann's hatte: nothing slighter then haire, yet is it most frised in a Ladies head, so that I am in good hope, though there be nothing of lesse accounte then *Euphues*, yet he shal be marked with Ladies eyes, & lyked sometimes in their eares' (p. 221); or, 'There is nothing more swifter than time, nothing more sweeter: wee haue not as *Seneca* saith little time to liue but we leese muche, neither haue we a short life by Nature, but we make it shorter by naughtynesse' (p. 152).

'Ones the continuall redyng thereof maketh yonge men equal in prudence to olde men; and to olde fathers stryken in age, it mynystreth experience of thinges. More it yeldeth priuate persons worthy of dignyte, rule and gouernaunce: it compelleth the emperours, hygh rulers, and gouernours to do noble dedes, to thende they may optayne immortall glory: it exciteth, moueth and stereth the strong, hardy warriours for the great laude that they haue after they ben deed promptly to go in hande with great and harde pannels in defence of their countre: it prohybyteth reprouable persons to do mischeuous dedes. . . . What moued the strong and ferse Hercules to enterpryse in his lyfe so many great incomparable labours and parylls? . . . In semblable wyse dyd his imitator, noble dyke Theseus and many other. . . . What knowledge should we haue of auneynt thinges past, and historie were not, whiche is the testymony thereof, the lyght of trouthe, the maystres of the lyfe humayne, the presydent of remembraunce and the messenger of antiquite? Why moued and stered Phaleryus, the kynge of Phtholome oft and delygntly to rede bokes? Forsothe for none other cause but that . . .'

Nor was Lord Berners the only author who fell under Euphuistic influences at this early date. His sister Margaret was the mother of Sir Francis Bryan, one of Henry VIII's favourites, and a lover of literature, who was influenced by his uncle's literary tastes.¹ The first edition of Berners' *Golden Boke of Marcus Aurelius* was published posthumously. The colophon states the translation to have been undertaken 'at the instaunt desire of his [Berners'] neuewe Sir Frauncis Bryan knyghte,' and to Sir Francis its posthumous publication was avowedly due. At the close of Berners' *Golden Boke* is a passage applauding the 'swete style' of 'the sentences of this booke,' which is an 'envoy' in praise of Guevarism almost certainly from Sir Francis' pen. Bryan's admiration of Guevara is further shown by his own translation of another of Guevara's works in 1548. The English title runs:—*A Dispraise of the Life of a Courtier in Commendacion of the Life of a Labouryng Man*. London (by T. Berthelet), August 1548. Bryan must therefore be placed beside his uncle as one of the progenitors of English Euphuism. And Lord Berners must be held responsible for the direction of his nephew's literary tastes.²

¹ See the article on Bryan in the *Dictionary of National Biog.*

² It may, perhaps, be not deemed altogether impertinent if I note here the chief editions of English translations of Guevara's works published before the issue of Lyly's *Euphuæ* in 1579:—

II. LORD BERNERS' WORK ON CALAIS.

On p. xlv of the Introduction I state, on the authority of Anthony à Wood, that Lord Berners was the author of a tract on *The duties of the inhabitants of Calais*. At the time of writing I was not aware that this work was still extant, but I now find that Mr. J. G. Nichols, in his edition of *The Chronicle of Calais*, published by the Camden Society in 1846, had identified it with a copy of *Ordenances for Watch and Ward of Calais*, printed by him from the British Museum (MS. Cotton. Faust. E. vii, 89—102*b*). The tract is of no literary interest, but it gives a valuable account of the police regulations enforced in Calais while under English rule.

III. THE HAMILTON MS. OF *HUON*.

On p. xxxv I state, on the authority of the *Athenæum*, that the Hamilton collection of MSS. included an illuminated copy of the French poetical romance of *Huon of Burdeaux*.

-
- | | | |
|------|---|--|
| 1534 | } | <i>The Golden Boke of Mark Aurelie</i> , by Lord Berners. |
| 1535 | | |
| 1537 | | |
| 1542 | | |
| 1546 | | |
| 1548 | | <i>The Dispraise of the Life of a Courtier</i> , by Sir Francis Bryan. |
| 1554 | | <i>The Golden Boke of Mark Aurelie</i> , by Lord Berners. |
| 1557 | | <i>The Dial of Princes</i> , by Sir Thomas North. |
| 1560 | | <i>The Golden Boke</i> , by Lord Berners. |
| 1568 | | <i>The Dial of Princes</i> , 2nd edit., by Sir Thomas North. |
| 1574 | | <i>The Familiar Epistles of Sir Anthony of Guevara</i> , by Edward Hellowes. |
| 1575 | | <i>A Looking Glasse for the Courte</i> , composed in the Castillian tongue, by the Lorde Anthony of Guevarra, Bishop of Mondiment out of Castilion drawne into French by Anthony Alaygre, and out of the Frenche tongue into English, by Sir Frauncis Bryan, Knight . . .—a second edition of <i>The Dispraise of the Life of a Courtier</i> , edited by T. Tymme, minister. |
| 1577 | | <i>The Familiar Epistles of Sir Anthony of Guevara</i> , by Edward Hellowes (2nd edit.). |
| 1577 | | <i>A Chronicle conteynyng the Lives of tenne Emperours of Rome</i> , compiled by the most famous Syr Anthonie of Guevara, by Edward Hellowes. Dedicated to Queen Elizabeth. |
| 1577 | | <i>Golden Epistles</i> : gathered as well out of the remaynder of Guevara's works as other Authours. Latin, French, and Italian, by Geoffrey Fenton. |
| 1578 | | <i>A booke of the Invention of the Art of Navigation</i> . . compiled by the famous Sir Anthonie of Guevara, by Edward Hellowes. Dedicated to Lord Howard of Effingham. |

At the time of writing, the sale of these MSS. to the German Government had just been completed ; but although they had arrived in Berlin, the authorities there had not had time to examine them. Herr Tobler has since examined the romances included in the MSS. ; and has published an account of the Huon MS. in the transactions of the Akademie der Wissenschaften zu Berlin. It there appears that the MS. is a version of the *chanson de geste* of Huon d'Auvergne, and has no concern whatever with *Huon of Bordeaux*.

IV. CONTEMPORARY CRITICISM OF HUON.

To the instances given above on pp. xlviii and xlix should be added the very uncomplimentary notice of 'Huon' in 'The Epistle to the Reader,' prefixed by Thomas Bowes to the second of his 'French Academie' (1594)—a translation from the French of Pri-maudaye. After denouncing dramatists as atheists, Bowes proceeds :—

'It were too long to set downe the Catalogue of those lewde and lascivious bookes which haue mustered themselves of late yeeres in Pauls Churchyard, as chosen souldiers ready to fight vnder the diuels banner, of which it may bee truely said, that they prevaile no lesse (if not more) to the vpholding of Atheisme in this light of the Gospel, then the Legend of Lies, *Huon of Burdeaux*, King Arthur, with the rest of that rabble, were of force to maintaine Popery in the dayes of ignorance.'

The passage from Gervase Markham's *Health to the Gentlemanly Profession of Serving Men* (1578), in which reference is made to *Huon of Burdeaux*, may be worth giving in full (cf. p. xlix and p. 370). Markham is referring to the baneful attractions which gold has for mankind. He adds :—

'But the Deuill (in my iudgement), the authour, roote, and originall of all mischiefe and miserie hath infused into this mettall some peece of Adamant, and into man's desire and affection some lump of Iron ; which Adamant, according to his nature, drawing the Iron vnto it, linketh them selues togeather in undesolveable bondes, not much vnlyke the Castle of Adamant, feigned in the historie of *Hughon of Burdeaux*, which Castle having drawne the sayd Hughon vnto it, all hope of departure thence was quite extinguished, onely except he coulde escape and be thence delyuered by an extraordinarie and imminent danger : which was to be carried ouer the sea in the clawes of a Grifine, whose desire was to deuoure

him, and that was one danger ; and in great hazard in regarde of his wayghte to fall from the sayd Griffine into the ocean and so be drowned, and that was another danger ; which dangers as they were great and perilous, so I holde them perils no lesse dangerous and as hard for them to be separated and deliuered from this pernicious Adamant Castle that hath linked and chained them selues unto it by their extraordinarie couetowse desire of this worldly Mammon.'

V. THE BIBLIOGRAPHY OF LORD BERNERS' *HUON*.¹

On 1 Feb. 1638-9 Master Purfoot assigned to Master Thomas Wright all his interest in *Huon of Burdeauc*, and in *The History of Valentine and Orson* (Arber's Transcript of the Stationers' Registers, iv. 45).

VI. THE 1601 REVISION OF LORD BERNERS' ENGLISH.

Nearly seventy years after the romance of *Huon* was translated by Lord Berners into the English of his generation, the publisher of a third edition (1601) entered on his title-page that 'the rude English' was 'corrected and amended.'² The first paragraph is completely recast in the Elizabethan version, and shows that the reviser at first contemplated rewriting the romance in a pompous Euphuistic style. 'In the tyme accountyde the yere of grace' becomes 'In the time by computation called ye yeere of grace;' 'Charles the Grete, namyd Charlemayn' becomes 'Charles the Great, more vulgarly knowen by the name of Charlemaine;' and the last sentence of the paragraph is transformed thus:—

c. 1533.

'The renoume of hym & of hys noble valiaunt chivalry strechyd out of ye eest into the west in such wyse that for euer there shalbe made of hym perpetuall memory, as here after ye shall here.'

1601.

'But let it suffice, God was their guide, Religion the cause, Honour the obiect, & perpetuall Fame the reward, which both led him & his traine to these worthy attempts, & still brought them backe with the due to theyr valorous enterprises; extending both his & their renowne to all parts of the world, & registering their names in the kalender of reuer dying memorie.'

¹ See page lvii.

² See p. lvi, *sup*.

On pp. 6-7 another long passage is completely transformed, but, unlike the opening paragraph, the revised language is studiously made simple and straightforward.

This sweeping style of revision was, however, rapidly abandoned. In the rest of the book the revision affected every page, but the method proved that it was merely undertaken by a rapid reader—probably a printer's reader—mainly with a view to removing the obvious archaisms. Old words, liable to puzzle the pleasure-seeking public, to whom romances appealed, were replaced by modern words; the Gallicized English, in which Lord Berners, an accomplished French scholar, not infrequently indulged, was completely anglicized; the punctuation and spelling were occasionally made to conform to more modern rules; now and then an old-fashioned construction was altogether reformed; in very rare cases the sentence was rewritten. The alterations were not made with sufficient system to satisfy all the requirements of scientific philology, but they exhibit in a practical fashion the notions of an every-day Elizabethan as to the characteristic differences between his own written language and that of his grandfather.

Of purely grammatical changes made on archaic grounds, those affecting inflections are not very numerous. The plural forms *eyen* (p. 13) and *yere* (p. 29) are replaced by *eyes* and *yeares*. The pronoun *ye* disappears in favour of *you*, and the forms *tho* (p. 193) and *moo* (p. 36) become *those* and *more*. In the case of verbs, such strong forms of the past tense as *bet* (p. 86) and *clame* (p. 683) are softened into *did beat* and *did cline* (climb). The old ending of past tenses and participles in *-yde* or *-yd* (apealyde, baynyd, deuysyd, etc.) is modernized into *-ed*. *Quod* (p. 21) becomes *quoth*, and the participial termination of *-en* in *bresten* (p. 69) is abandoned. The termination *-eth* or *-yth* in third person plural of present tenses is not uncommon in Lord Berners. Thus he writes, '*These thynges hath*' (p. 9), and '*I se them aproche that desyryth my deth*' (p. 26). In the Elizabethan version these phrases become '*These thynges have,*' and '*I se them aproche that desire my death.*'

Changes of construction are rarely made in the 1601 revision. But the double negative did not approve itself to the reviser, and he

usually removes one of the negative particles. Thus 'none other shall have *no* profyght' (p. 13) becomes 'none other shall have *any* honour;' and '*nor neuer none* of hys lynage gaue as yette very good counsell' (p. 12) becomes '*nor euer any* of his lynage,' etc. A few of Lord Berners' favourite constructions are loose adaptations from the French, and these are as a rule removed. In Lord Berners' phrase '[they] *coude* them great thanke' (p. 499) the reviser reads *gave* for *coude*, thus conforming to modern usage. This is a favourite phrase with Lord Berners (cp. 'I *can* you grete thanke,' p. 5). The French original has '[*Je*] *bon gré vous scay*,' and Lord Berners slavishly reproduces the phrase, translating *savoir* by *can* [O.E. *can*, *cunnan* = *ken*, *know*]. In Berners' *Froissart* the expression is more frequently employed. Cotgrave, like the reviser, does not recognize it. Under *sçavoir* he translates '*savoir bon gré à . . .*' by 'to *give* thanks unto . . .'

The rejection of archaic words is the most valuable part of the reviser's labour. So far as connecting particles and non-substantive words are concerned, the enumeration is necessarily brief, but each of them is important. Thus *or* in the sense of *before* is invariably rejected for *ere* or *before*. The enclitic *as*, which Lord Berners was in the habit of occasionally adding to *there* and *then*, and almost invariably to *where*, is always dropped. *Than* for *then* is never accepted, and the forms *syn* (p. 199), *seen*, or *sin* are not allowed to do duty for *since*. *Towards* or *toward* is in Lord Berners' language used as two separate words, and the word governed by it is very often inserted after *to*. Thus we meet with *to her warde* (p. 254), *to us warde* (p. 295), *to the host warde* (p. 328), *to ye galowes warde* (p. 328), *to the tre warde*; but all these in the Elizabethan version are transformed into *toward her*, *toward us*, *towards the Hooste*, *toward the gallows*, and *towards the tre*. *Clene* for *wholly*, as in *clene armyd* (p. 197), is replaced by *all*. The *which* figures perpetually in the old version, and the article is rejected in the new (cp. p. 16). *What* is not allowed to stand for *why* (p. 33), and the excessive employment of *that* to the exclusion of *which*, and with vague reference not to the preceding word, but to long clauses, is avoided by the Elizabethan. The awkwardness of the repetition of *then*,

used merely as a connecting particle—a common feature of all early English prose—is met by its omission or by the substitution of *and*. With regard to auxiliary verbs, it should be noted that *a*, the attenuated form of *have* (p. 149), and *woll*, a common variant of *will* (p. 87), either of which is frequent in Lord Berners' prose, are not found in the revised version. The verb *do* is used far more loosely by Lord Berners than his successor allowed to be correct. Thus Berners writes 'They *dyd* to have Huon jugyd' (p. 22), where the reviser substitutes *laboured* for *dyd*; '[He] *dyd of* his brothers gowne' (p. 28) becomes 'he *did take off*'; in the sentence 'ye that . . . haue well herde the grete vnresonablenes that the kynge *do* too one of oure peeres,' *do* is replaced in the Elizabethan version by *offers*. Another very common verb used by Lord Berners is *ween* or *went* for *think* or *thought*. The latter in the 1601 version invariably takes the former's place. It is clear that such a phrase as 'it skeeleth not of my dethe' (p. 677) had an archaic sound to the reader of 1601, for he refashions it as 'It is no matter though I die.'

The following list contains most of the substantive words, which the Elizabethan appears to have rejected on the sole ground that they had fallen or were falling out of common use. Many of them still figured in the poetry of the day, and Shakespeare pressed some of them into his service. But the fact that the reviser of Lord Berners' text put himself to the pains of substituting for them more familiar expressions, is positive proof that they sounded in his ear rude or old-fashioned. The reader will hardly need to be warned that the substituted word is not always the best or even a correct representative of the original. A reference to the Glossary will sufficiently remove difficulties on this score.

<i>c.</i> 1533.				1601.
apayred	...	p. 240	replaced by	grieved
apealyde	...	p. 22		
appellyd	...	p. 31		appeached
arson	...	p. 700		pommell (of a saddle)
beseen	...	p. 119	"	adorned
brast	...	p. 103	"	brake
breſt	...	p. 117	"	burst
carnall	...	p. 33	"	louing
chere	...	p. 57	"	countenance
clypped	...	p. 635	"	embraced
crope	...	p. 169	"	back

c. 1533.				1601.	
dele	...	...	p. 554	replaced by	whit
departed	...	...	p. 336	"	parted
fell	...	...	p. 120	"	bolde
fellest	...	...	p. 210	"	cruellest
fordo	...	...	p. 487	"	undoe
gader [<i>i. e.</i> gather]	...	...	p. 305	"	call
grees	...	...	p. 373	"	degrees
grese	...	...	p. 119	"	degrees
hore	...	...	p. 224	"	hoarie
imagenyd	...	...	p. 221	"	practised
impe	...	...	p. 12	"	tree
japery	...	...	p. 85	"	jest
lesynge	...	...	p. 37	"	loosing
leuer	...	...	p. 349	"	rather
meny	...	...	p. 499	"	companie
pylhyng	...	...	p. 401	"	killinge
refuse	...	...	p. 70	"	refusal
scot	...	...	p. 704	"	shotte
sore abashed	...	...	p. 359	"	greatly afraid
soppe	...	...	p. 38	"	drought
sparhawke	...	...	p. 7	"	sparrow-hawke
swounyd	...	...	p. 24	"	I wounded
trough	...	...	p. 31	"	certainte
yode	...	...	p. 636	"	rode
wanhope	...	...	p. 364	"	false hope
went	...	...	pp. 200, 233	"	thought
wente	...	...	p. 334	"	hoped

The following Gallicized words, used by Lord Berners as well as by Caxton and a few other early translators from the French, were never fairly naturalized in England. How literal Lord Berners could be on occasion, our comment on his use of 'can grete thanke' has already shown. With it may be compared such a phrase as 'escryed a hye,' by which Berners renders '*escria en haut.*' Several of those words which were ejected by the Elizabethan reviser (cp. *parents*, *denise*) had not, however, entirely dropped out of the language, but they were quickly disappearing, and clearly were not quite familiar in 1601. As in the case of the merely archaic words, the reviser's rendering is not always correct (cp. *entreated*). Reference should be made to the Glossary when the sense is not obvious.

c. 1533.				1601.	
in amours with	...	...	p. 630	replaced by	enamoured of
assembled	...	...	p. 613	"	assailed
assembled	...	...	p. 659	"	assaulted
bayngned	...	...	p. 537	}	bathed
baynyd	...	...	p. 427		
bountye	...	...	p. 146	"	goodness

c. 1533.			1601.
brochyd (<i>broche</i>)	p. 22	replaced by	spurred
chatelyne ...	p. 493	"	captain
condute ...	p. 18	"	conducte
consent any ...	p. 27	"	give consent to
cordiner ...	p. 764	"	shoemakers
couetys ...	p. 251	}	couetousness
couytes ...	p. 320		
defend ...	p. 46	"	forbid
deuysyd ...	p. 7	"	advised
deuysinge ...	p. 13	"	communuing
deuyses ...	p. 58	"	conferences
to deuysen ...	p. 630	"	to sport
dispende ...	p. 738	"	spender
dyspence ...	p. 718	"	charges
dolent ...	p. 356	"	sorrowfull
dolour ...	p. 32	"	ill hap
doloure ...	p. 3	"	greefe
domage ...	p. 146	"	wrong
dystroyed ...	p. 46	"	weore impouerished
enbassed ...	p. 740	"	ambassage
enbassetours ...	p. 740	"	ambassadors
endoctryned ...	p. 576	"	educated
ensample ...	p. 12	"	example
entreated ...	p. 642	"	entertained
entreated ...	p. 657	"	threatened
escryed a hye ...	p. 185	"	cryed on hye
extorsyon ...	p. 47	"	crueltie
feloney ...	p. 696	"	villany
felony ...	p. 4	"	rashness
fersly ...	p. 23	"	boldly
fyaunsed ...	p. 686	"	wedded
glotons ...	p. 639	"	villaines
a high ...	p. 197	"	aloud
inportable ...	p. 544	"	insupportable
mastres ...	p. 696	"	mistress
messe ...	p. 216	"	service
mossell ...	p. 140	"	nostril
muryed ...	p. 650	"	immured
Noyfull ...	p. 440	"	Yrkesome
Noyfull ...	p. 579	"	too tedious
occysyon ...	p. 320	"	slaughter
oreson ...	p. 146	"	prayer
par[ent]age ...	p. 693	"	lyneage
parent ...	p. 9	"	kinsman
parentes ...	p. 2, 12	"	kindred
pastauunce ...	p. 46	"	pastime
payne ...	p. 644	"	labour
prefessyd ...	p. 34	"	pretended
purchase ...	p. 12	"	provide
purchaseth for ...	p. 13	"	seeks
purchasyd for ...	p. 216	"	practised against
rased ...	p. 145	"	torne
reculyd ...	p. 42	"	stagged

c. 1533.				1601.
releue	...	p. 198	replaced by	recover
releuyd	...	p. 147	"	recovered
renyed	...	p. 89	"	denyed
requere	...	p. 21	"	desire
require	...	p. 264	"	request
rybandis	...	p. 538	"	villaines
semylytude	...	pp. 41, 138	"	likelihood
stradiot	...	p. 761	"	trauailer
Vaylable	...	p. 12	"	available
Vileny	...	p. 20	"	shame

Several misprints and puzzling misspellings were justifiably corrected by the Elizabethan, of which the following are the most notable:—

*Misprints.**Misspellings.*

c. 1533.		1601.	c. 1533.		1601.
above	p. 160	alone	besynes	p. 14	busnesse
aperuelyd	p. 74	appointed	herber	p. 704	arbour
aryued	p. 181	armyd	impossessyons	p. 210	impositions
commonynge	p. 392	coming	leauē thystorys	p. 166	leaueth the Historie
exensyd	p. 26	accused	lybardes	p. 16	leopardes
folye	p. 302	foyled	portruyd	p. 412	portraiture
frusshe	p. 474	russhe	seasyd, <i>i. e.</i> ceased	p. 14	stayed
inbushyd	p. 25	ambushed	sirode	p. 359	sea roode

Not infrequently when attempting to remove a difficulty caused by misspelling he comes to grief. Thus, 'If any *plee* come therby,' which means 'if any plea or charge be brought,' the reviser reads, 'If any *hurt* come.' The French original reads *plait*. 'He shal derely abyē (*i. e.* abide) it' (p. 305) is rendered 'He shall dearly *buy* it.' 'To ordayne a bayenge,' *i. e.* a 'bayninge,' or 'bathing,' is changed into 'To ordaine a rich bed.'

A large number of changes were made like the last out of pure lightness of heart, and no philological deduction can be drawn from them. They were doubtless prompted in the first instance by the awkward spelling of the old text. Most of these changes are just such as a printer's reader might be expected to make if left to his own devices, and prove how permanent are the characteristics of these invaluable men, to whom no author ought to omit an opportunity of expressing his frequent indebtedness.

c. 1533.		1601.	c. 1533.		1601.
force	p. 152	violence	dysordynate	p. 696	inordinate
chorlysshely	p. 757	stubbornly	fell after	p. 4	afterwards en-
clerely	p. 363	evidently			sued
clerkes	p. 732	doctors	fortunyð	p. 21	happened
drams, <i>i. e.</i>			praysyd	p. 39	regarded
drachms	p. 142	ducates	rengyd, <i>i. e.</i>		
dyschordeate	p. 700	dishonorable	ranged	p. 494	arriued

It is not safe to draw any very large conclusion from the revision. But a comparison of the two versions shows that while the structure of the language had changed very slightly, about five per cent. of Lord Berners' vocabulary was judged to be out of date, nearly seventy years after his death, by a reader who made his standard of intelligibility the ordinary speech of his well-to-do contemporaries. At the same time it is noticeable, although not surprising, that the great literature of the end of the sixteenth century excluded a far smaller percentage of Lord Berners' vocabulary. Poets always have a predilection for the archaisms of language. Many words ejected by the Elizabethan reviser from Lord Berners' text are employed by Shakespeare in plays that were written about the date of the revision. The fact proves, if proof were needed, that Shakespeare freely indulged a taste for archaic expressions, and was exceptionally well read in the works of his predecessors.

VII. A TABLE OF THE MAGICAL EPISODES IN THE ROMANCE.

* * It is worth noting that the most striking of Huon's magical adventures—his shipwreck on the adamant rock, his fight with the griffin, and his journey down the subterranean river—consecutively recorded on pp. 354—386 and pp. 407—444,¹ are related in the same order, and with little difference in detail, in the popular Bavarian story of *Herzog Ernst von Baiern* (see Karl Bartsch's scholarly edition issued at Vienna in 1869, and Simrock's *Die Deutschen Volksbücher*, iii. 305—15). The prose version of the folk-tale about Duke Ernest is still well known throughout Germany. It appears in its earliest known shape in a poem (of the Lower Rhine), of which a twelfth

¹ On pp. 387—407 the story of Esclaramonde's sufferings at the siege of Bordeaux is inserted.

century MS. is extant. Arranged somewhat differently, each of Huon's magical adventures appears in one or other of the seven journeys of Sindbad the Sailor in the *Arabian Nights*. That the whole episode is of Oriental origin admits of no doubt. But two interesting questions suggest themselves. By what channel did the story reach the authors of *Huon* and of *Herzog Ernst*? Which of the two authors may claim the credit of first presenting it to European readers? Probably the Crusades produced sufficient intercourse between Europe and Asia to supply an answer to the first question. The second might be the subject of prolonged investigation, but a first survey of the evidence can point only to one result. The earliest extant manuscript of *Huon* which includes these adventures is of the fourteenth century (see p. xxxiii, *supra*). The date of the earliest *extant* manuscript of this portion of *Huon* is not, however, in itself conclusive as to the date of its composition. Nevertheless there are indications that historical events of the late thirteenth and early fourteenth centuries were known to the romancer, and we are not inclined to accept a date earlier than the fourteenth century for the later sections of the romance. The earliest version of *Herzog Ernst* has been dated two centuries earlier. Hence a strong presumption is created in favour of the theory that the author of *Huon* borrowed from the author of *Herzog Ernst*.

THE ADAMANT ROCK.

This magnetic rock, which appears in the story of *Herzog Ernst*, and in the story of Sindbad in the *Arabian Nights*, draws towards it all ships (with iron nails in them), and on Huon reaching it (p. 370) the masts of vessels which have been wrecked on it are so massed together as to present the appearance of a forest. Sir John Mandeville describes it in almost identical terms (ed. 1839, pp. 161, 163, 271). He localizes it in a Chinese sea; other writers, like the author of the *Arabian Nights*, place it somewhere between Tonquin and Cochin China.¹

The myth of the existence of a magnetic rock that drew the iron nails out of passing ships, thus causing them to go to pieces, or that bodily attracted them to it (for it is told both ways), is one of the numerous marvels of the

¹ The small-type notes are by Mr. W. A. Clouston.

'hollow-sounding and mysterious main' so universally credited in mediæval times. It had doubtless been orally current in Europe long before the date of either *Duke Ernst* or *Huon*: and while it may have been brought from the East through the Crusades, it is perhaps as likely to have been introduced through the Moors of Spain. Be this as it may, the incidents of Duke Huon's first journey to the East have an unquestionable resemblance to some of the adventures of the renowned Sindbád.

In the old French romance of the *Chevalier Berinus* there is a very curious account of the Rock of Adamant, which drew the ex-king of Blandie's five ships to it. The crews were in despair, for well they knew that when their food was all consumed a terrible, lingering death was in store for them. Presently an extremely attenuated man is observed to creep on board one of the ships, in quest of food, as it turns out, and he informs them that there is an inscription on the rock, but he had not read it. Aigres, the brave son of Berinus, goes on to the rock with the lean man, who shows him the inscription, which was to this effect: 'Whoever may touch this rock can only be freed by depositing on it all his wealth, save what may be necessary to enable him to complete his voyage: one of the crew, chosen by lot, must then go to the top of the rock and cast into the sea the ring which he will find there, when the vessel shall instantly be freed, but he must remain on the rock.' Aigres returns and acquaints them of the purport of the inscription: lots are drawn, and Aigres is the victim. After bidding his family adieu, he goes to the top of the rock, throws the ring in the sea, and all the five ships are at once set free and sail away, taking the remarkably lean man with them. The rock is infested by enchanters, but the gallant Aigres contrives to avoid their snares, until another ship is drawn to the rock, when he informs the mariners of the only means by which they can escape (for it would appear the ring returned to the top of the rock each time it was thrown into the sea). Lots are drawn, and so on, as before—an inconsistent story, if ever there was one!

The Rock of Adamant also figures in the Legend of St. Brandanus.—Is it possible that the myth had its origin in some old-world sailor's 'yarn' of an actual rock, now submerged, to which vessels were driven by a very strong current, a mishap which the unskillful navigators might ascribe to the attracting force of the rock itself? There is always a substratum of fact in legends of this kind, could it be discovered—they were not wholly invented.

THE APPLES OF YOUTH.

At the bidding of an angel Huon gathers three of these apples, each of which, when eaten by a man of eighty or a hundred years old, transforms him to a young man of thirty (p. 436). Huon bestows one of these apples on the Admiral of Tauris (p. 465), and his white hair and beard grow yellow as he eats it, and he suddenly becomes a youth of strength and beauty. The second is eaten by the abbot of Cluny, who is 114 years old, with similar results (pp. 552—5). The third rejuvenates Thierry, Emperor of Germany (p. 568).

This is essentially an Oriental idea—the counterpart of that of the Water of Immortality. In Indian story-books fruits—generally mangoes, the favourite fruit of high and low throughout Hindústán—are frequently represented as

possessing magical properties, such as curing barrenness in women, and conferring perennial youth upon whoever ate of them. We are told in the Persian Parrot-Book (*Tutī Nāma*),¹ for instance, that a Prince having obtained some fruit of the Tree of Life, which grew in a far distant land, in order to test its virtue, gave part to a decrepit old woman ('experimentum in corpore vili'), who no sooner tasted it than she became a blooming damsel of 'sweet eighteen.' With variations, the same story is found in several Indian collections, such as the *Kathā Manjarī*, and there is also a version of it in the Tamil romance entitled *Alakēsa Kathā*; in both it is a mango fruit that has this quality, and the king causes some of it to be given to an aged goldsmith who was in prison for fraud, and it turned him into a youth of sixteen years—let us trust he was then released, that he might begin life over again!

There is a rather curious story about this kind of fruit in the Indian romance entitled *Sinhasana Dwatrinśati*, or Thirty-two Tales of a Throne (and it occurs also in other collections), where a Brāhman having received from his favourite deity, as a reward for his devotional austerities, the fruit of immortality, joyfully proceeds home and shows it to his wife, who advises him to give it to Rājā Bhartrihari, as the wealth he was sure to present him with in return were preferable to an endless life of poverty. He goes to the palace, and presenting the fruit to the good rājā, acquaints him of its nature, and is rewarded with a lakh of rupis. The rājā gives the fruit to his wife, telling her that if she ate it her beauty should increase day by day, and she should be immortal. The rānī gives it to her paramour, the chief of the police, who, in his turn, presents it as the choicest of gifts to a favourite courtesan, who, after reflecting that it would only enable her to commit innumerable sins, resolves to offer it to the rājā, hoping to be rewarded in a future life. When Rājā Bhartrihari again received the fruit he was astonished, and on learning from the courtesan from whom she had obtained it, he saw that his wife was unfaithful, so, abandoning throne and kingdom, he departed into the jungle, where he became an ascetic. But we are not told what became of the fruit—perhaps the good rājā destroyed it, fully convinced that immortality on this earth would not be altogether a blessing!

ARMOUR THAT RENDERS THE WEARER INVULNERABLE.

See the account of giant Galaffer (p. 103).

CAIN.

On a plain near the Caspian Sea, from which there appears to be no exit, Huon finds a 'tun made of the heart of oak bound all about with bands of iron,' which rolls round and round 'in the circuit of the plain.' Beside it lies a great iron mallet. Within Cain, the murderer of his brother Abel, is confined, with serpents and toads devouring him; but he is unable to die. He implores Huon to break the tun with the mallet, and thus release him. A fiend of hell is waiting with a boat to bear Cain from the accursed

¹ C mposed by Ziyā-ed-Dīn Nakhshabī about A.D. 1306, but representing a much older work no longer extant.

p'ace, and Cain suggests that after Huon has broken the tun, he shall tie the mallet round his neck, represent himself as Cain to the fiend, and effect his escape. Huon declines to touch the tun, but takes advantage of Cain's advice (pp. 484—492). He is ferried by the fiend to the city of Collanders, continues to call himself Cain, and is enthusiastically received by the pagans, who do not discover the deceit.

THE CUP OF OBERON.

This cup, which Oberon presents to Huon, fills with wine in the hands of any man who, being 'out of deadly sin,' attempts to drink out of it, but is always empty when a sinful man touches it (pp. 76, 77). The Emperor Charlemagne is proved sinful by this test, while Huon, his wife, and Gerames are all shown to be innocent of sin (p. 260).

Magical tests of chastity occur in many Asiatic as well as mediæval European romances and tales. In the *Kathā Sarit Sāgara*,¹ a merchant named Guhasena is about to depart on a long trading journey, and both he and his wife have misgivings as to each other's fidelity during their separation, when the deity Siva appears before them, and puts in the hand of each a red lotus, which should fade if either proved unfaithful.—In the Persian *Tūtī Nāma* (or Parrot-Book) the wife of a soldier, on his leaving her to enter a great man's service, gives him a nosegay, which should betoken her chastity while it bloomed. And in the charming Arabian tale of Prince Zayn al-Asnām the King of the Genii gives him a magic mirror, in which if he see the reflection of any damsel undimmed, he may be sure that she is 'a clean maid, without aught of defect or default, and endowed with every praiseworthy quality; but if, on the contrary, the figure be found obscured, then know that she is sullied by the soil of sex;'—and the story of how the Prince at length found the required pure and spotless damsel is 'familiar to every schoolboy.'

From the East the idea of such magical tests was, no doubt, brought to Europe during the crusading times, when many a brave and worthy knight, as he lay sleepless in his tent on the plains of Syria, must have often thought of his dame at home, and wondered whether she had not found a substitute for him in the person of the 'lordly abbot, or perchance some meaner priest'! In *Amadis de Gaul* the test is a garland, in *Perce Forest* a rose, which remained fresh so long as its wearer continued chaste; while in *Tristan*, *Perceval*, *Morte d'Arthur*, *Orlando Furioso*, and *Le Lay du Corn*, a cup of wine if spilled in the hand of either male or female indicated the unfaithful lover. In the old metrical romance of the *Wright's Chaste Wife* (edited for the E. E. T. S. by Dr. Furnivall) a poor widow gives the wright, when about to espouse her daughter, a garland of roses which would keep their colour while

¹ Signifying, "Ocean of the Streams of Story," a great Sanskrit collection, of the 11th century, slightly abridged from a work apparently now lost, entitled *Vrihat Kathā*, or Great Story, written five hundred years earlier.

his wife was true to him, but not otherwise. In like circumstances, a carpenter, according to the *Gesta Romanorum*, received from his mother-in-law a shirt which would not be soiled or torn so long as his wife was chaste; and this also occurs in the North German tale of 'The King and Queen of Spain' (Thorpe's *Tale-Tide Stories*).¹ In Bandello, Part I., Nov. 21, a Bohemian nobleman has a magic picture of his wife, which would betoken her infidelity by turning yellow (or *green*, the colour supposed to be appropriate to jealousy!); and this novel it was, doubtless—not some oral version of the *Wright's Wife*, as I once thought—that suggested to Massinger the plot of his play of *The Picture*. Everybody knows the old English ballad of the *Boy and the Mantle*, derived from a *fabliau*, where a mantle will fit only a woman who is perfectly chaste. In the *Gesta Romanorum* a wild elephant can only be lulled asleep by two pure virgins; and in an Indian story a white elephant falls down dead, and a devotee informs the king that it will be restored to life by the presence of a chaste woman: surely no one could be so infatuated as to believe it likely—even possible—that these two stories were independently invented!

The ancient Hebrews had a water-ordeal to test a woman suspected of infidelity by her husband, which may have been derived from the Egyptians—see the Book of Numbers, ch. i. vv. 5—21, from which it is very evident that no woman conscious of guilt would risk such a punishment, threatened by one of the sacred order of the priesthood, and so she would stand self-convicted—truly, a shrewd device! The Hindús seem also to have had a water-ordeal, though of a different kind, for similar cases: in the *Rámáyana* it is related that Sita, the wife of Rámá, in order to prove her chastity, which the reverend hermits strongly suspected, boldly leaped into the "tank of trial," and—more fortunate than many of her equally innocent European sisters in modern times who were "ducked" for witchcraft—she escaped being drowned, and thus satisfied the suspicious ascetics.

DREAMS AND ANGEL'S VISIONS.

Gerard learns approaching events in a dream (p. 16). An angelical voice, heralded by a shining light, addresses Huon (p. 435).

FAIRIES.

At Oberon's birth (p. 73) a discontented fairy caused him to cease growing when three years old, but afterwards regretting this act, made him the fairest creature that ever nature formed. Translyne gave him the power of seeing through all men's minds, and another fairy that of going whither he would by merely wishing himself there. Gerames tells Huon (p. 63) that any one speaking to Oberon is lost for ever, a common popular notion. Oberon can raise up tempests (p. 67), place rushing rivers in the paths of his enemies, or

¹ It is curious to find this idea in a popular Bengali story, where a girl tells her companions that he who gets her for his wife will be a happy man, for the cloth she wears will never be soiled or torn.—See Rev. Lal Behari Day's *Folk-Tales of Bengal*, p. 236.

suddenly call into being palaces for his friends, and by a touch of his rod make roads for them through stormy rivers. For further accounts of Oberon; the dwarf king of the fairies, and his attendants Gloriadas, Gloriande, Lempatrix, Margale, Oryane, Translyne, see under these names in the Index Nominum.

FIENDS AND EVIL ANGELS.

The devil of hell, who is in league with Cain (p. 489), has a head as big as an ox's head, his eyes are redder than two burning coals, his teeth great and long, and as rough as a bear, and he casts fire and smoke out of his gorge like a furnace (p. 489). Huon, when wrecked on a rock in the Spanish sea, finds a castle there inhabited by monks, who are evil angels, chased out of Paradise with Lucifer (p. 592). When they please they come among living men in the likeness of bears or wer-wolves. Others tempt men and women to their damnation; others follow the thunder and tempest in the air, and some destroy ships and men on the seas. They still have most of the powers of the fairies, and create, by merely wishing, towns and castles on high rocks, with minstrels and all that appertains to rich living, but Christ compels them to conduct daily divine service (p. 593).

THE FOUNTAIN OF YOUTH.

This fountain cures those who bathe in its stream of all infirmities (p. 434). It is apparently situated on Alexander's Rock.

The virtues of this Fountain are thus described in Way's rendering of the *fabliau* of "The Land of Cockaigne"—that is, Kitchenland, where all sorts of sensual delights abound—

"But the chiefest, choicest treasure,
In this land of peerless pleasure,
Was a well, to say the sooth,
Cleped the Living Well of Youth.
There, had numb and feeble Age
Crossed you in your pilgrimage,
In those wondrous waters pure,
Laved a while, you had a cure:
Lustibed and youth appears
Numbering now but twenty years."

The circumstance that, according to *Huon*, the Fountain was on Alexander's Rock clearly indicates that the idea was, directly or indirectly, derived from Eastern sources, since the universal Muslim legend tells how Alexander despatched the (mythical) prophet El-Khizr to fetch him some of the Water

of Immortality, and when, after much painful toil and long and weary journeying, the prophet reached the fountain, he had no sooner drank a little of its waters than they disappeared; and since then no man has been able to discover the Fountain.—But long before the days of Alexander, if we may credit the Rabbinical tradition, Solomon, the son of David, sent a messenger to procure him some of the Water of Immortality;—meanwhile the sage monarch would have ample time to reflect upon this delusive world: for was it not he who, having seen everything under the sun, declared that ‘all is vanity and vexation of spirit?’ We might therefore well expect that, on this account, when his messenger returned with the Water of Immortality, the ‘wisest of men’ would decline the potation: and decline it he did; but not because ‘all is vanity’ (the Rev. Mr. Stiggins, by the way, was of the same opinion—always excepting a little pine-apple rum), but because he could not endure the thought of surviving his female favourites!

The assertion that since El-Khizr took his draught of immortality no one has been able to find the Fountain can’t be true—if *all* stories be true—for have we not in the oral and written (popular) histories of many lands most circumstantial accounts of successful expeditions to the Fountain of Life? What, for instance, was the water which the beautiful and brave young princess, in the Arabian tale of the ‘Envious Sisters,’ sprinkled on the stones, as she went down the hill (after securing the Bird that spoke and the Tree that sang), thereby changing them back into their original forms of princes and nobles—what, but this same Water of Life? And again, in another Arabian tale, when Prince Ahmad is required by his silly father, the king—prompted by an envious, malignant vazir—to get him some of the water that could cure all ailments, and the Prince’s bewitching bride, the Perí Bánú, obtains it for him, spite of the lions and serpents which guarded the fountain—what was this but the identical water of which old El-Khizr drank—unless, indeed, there existed more than one fountain of the same kind in those far-off days? Then there is the delightful German tale, ‘Das Wasser im Leben,’ to which Grimm has appended a note, stating that in Conrad of Wurtzburg’s *Trojan War*, written in the 13th century, Medea gets water from Paradise to renew the youth of Jason’s father.—There’s no end, in sooth, to the number of stories of magical fountains of all sorts—fountains of immortality, of youth, of oblivion, of love, of dislaim; and fountains, eke, that changed a man into a woman, and a woman into a man!

GIANTS.

The first giant Huon meets is Angolaffer or Galafer, who is seventeen feet high (p. 103). He has robbed Oberon of the tower of Dunother, and of a suit of armour which renders invulnerable any man who, wearing it, is ‘without spot of deadly sin’ and the son of a virtuous mother (p. 105). Huon puts it on, and strikes off the giant’s head. Angolaffer’s brother Agrapart is of the same height, and has two teeth protruding from his mouth, each a foot long: his eyes are like two burning torches, and ‘he was a foot between the brows’ (p. 140). Huon worsts him in a duel (p. 148).

THE GRIFFIN OR GRYPHON.

Huon sees this monster while in the castle of the Adamant, carrying off in its talons the corpses of sailors shipwrecked on that fatal rock (p. 426). Lying down among the dead men, Huon is himself carried by it through the air to its nest on Alexander's Rock (p. 429). It is a female bird with eyes like basins of fire, and of enormous size ; but Huon succeeds in slaying it, as well as its young. He preserves a foot of the monster as a curiosity, and presents it on his return to King Louis of France (p. 583), and 'by King Philip it was hanged in the holy chapel, whereas it is as yet' (p. 583).

Accounts of this bird figure in *Marco Polo's Travels*, where it is called Gryphon ; in the story of Sindbad in the 77th Arabian Night (under the name of Rukh), and in the travels of Rabbi Benjamin of Tudela. "Its story is identical," writes Colonel Yule, "with that of the Garuda of the Hindoos, the Simurgh of the old Persians, the 'Angka of the Arabs, the Bar Yachre of the Rabbinical legends, the Gryps of the Greeks" (Yule's *Marco Polo*, ii. 349, 350). Its habitat has been referred to the China seas by early Eastern writers ; Marco Polo heard of it at Madagascar ; the legends of Northern Siberia tell how it has visited their climes. Marco Polo describes it as an enormous eagle. Rabbi Benjamin of Tudela writes that when sailors were in danger of being lost at sea near China, they sewed themselves up in hides and awaited the griffin, who carried them to land, believing them to be natural prey. According to the story of Duke Ernest of Bavaria the duke was wrecked like Huon, on the rock of Adamant, but escaped with his life ; the dead bodies of most of his companions were carried off by the griffin ; and they themselves were whisked alive through the air by the bird to a rock, whence like Huon they travel down a river in the heart of a mountain. There is a Persian drawing engraved in Lane's *Arabian Nights*, of the Rukh or Gryphon carrying through the air three elephants, one in its beak, and two in its claws. Naturalists believe the bird to be an antediluvian member of the ostrich family, identical with the fossil bird *Æpyrorius*. A fossil egg of the species, capable of holding nearly 2½ gallons of water, is in the British Museum.

To Colonel Yule's list of *wundertricks* may be added the Eorosh of the Zend; the Kargas of the Turks; the Kirni of the Japanese; and the sacred Dragon of the Chinese.—The device which Benjamin of Tudela describes sailors as adopting when in danger of being shipwrecked—sewing themselves in skins and awaiting the Griffin, who carried them to land, believing them to be his natural prey—occurs in several Arabian tales, where it is generally practised by magicians on young lads whom they have seduced from home; the object being to obtain precious stones from the top of the mountain where the Rukh carries them, after which the magicians leave their victims to their fate, which however always proves a happy one.

THE HORN OF OBERON.

This horn was made by four fairies in the isle of Cephallonia; one (Gloriaude) endowed it with the power of curing by its blast all manner of sickness; a second (Translyne) with the power of satisfying hunger and thirst; a third (Margale) with the power 'that whosoever heard this horn, though he were never so poor and feeble by sickness, he should have such joy in his heart that he should sing and dance'; a fourth fairy (Lempatrix) gave the horn the gift of forcing him who heard it to come at the pleasure of him who blew it (p. 66). When this 'rich horn of ivory' is bestowed by Oberon on Huon, its only virtue mentioned is that it brings a hundred thousand men to the aid of him who blows it, if—and the condition is all-important—there is genuine need of help (pp. 77, 78).

Musical instruments having the same property as that with which the third fairy endowed the horn of Oberon, viz. of making every one who heard it to dance, *volens volens*, are common to the folk-tales of all Europe. For examples, the magic pipe in our old English tale of *The Friar and the Boy*, and the violin in its German counterpart (in Grimm), *Das Jule im Dorn*, and the harp in the Icelandic *Herlands ok Bosi Saga*; and akin to these is the pipe of the Piper of Hamelin, which not only drew all the rats into the Weser but drew all the children into a mountain. In the Icelandic saga, which, according to Mr. Baring-Gould, rests on a mythological foundation, a harp occurs which belongs to one Sigurd. 'Bosi slays Sigurd, puts on his skin and clothes, and taking the harp goes in this disguise to the banquet-hall of King Godmund, where his true love is about to be married to another man. He plays the harp, and the knives and plates, the tables and stools, then the guests, and lastly the monarch himself are set to dancing. He keeps them capering till they are too exhausted to move a limb, then he casts the bride over his shoulder and makes off.'¹ In Croker's collection of Irish Fairy Legends one Maurice Connor is said to have been able by playing a certain tune on his bagpipes, to make old and young, lame and lazy, "up and fat it," till they fell down from sheer exhaustion.—The fourth virtue of Oberon's horn, that of bringing a hundred thousand men to the aid of him who blows

¹ *Curious Myths of the Middle Ages*, ed. 1869, p. 431.

it, is also found in the horn that drew crowds which was presented by the little man in red to one of three soldiers journeying together, according to the German story of 'The Nose' (in Grimm); and also in the bagpipe of the young hero of a Slav tale in M. Dozon's French collection (No. 2), which when played upon calls up any number of armed soldiers

JUDAS ISCARIOT.

In the perilous gulf or whirlpool near hell, Huon finds Judas floating about on a piece of canvas. This canvas (Judas says) he once gave away to a poor man for God's sake, a gift of charity unique in his career; and God afterwards restored it to him as a reward for his virtuous act, to protect him from the wind on his right side. Tormented to death, he cannot die (pp. 363, 369). The story finds a parallel in the Irish legend of St. Brendan, who met Judas on an iceberg in the Northern Sea, and learnt that he was allowed to leave the sinner's burning lake every Christmas night to cool himself in the snow, because he had once given his cloak to a leper. This story is the subject of one of Mr. Matthew Arnold's best known poems (see Mr. Thomas Olden's notice of St. Brendan in the *Dict. Nat. Biog.*).

A MAN TRANSFORMED INTO A SEA BEAST.

Oberon's messenger Malabron, who carries Huon on his back through the sea (p. 111), and resembles a bear, was a handsome man, whom Oberon punished for disobedience by transforming him into a beast of the sea for thirty years. When Huon makes the sign of the Cross, the skin of the beast temporarily falls off, and reveals as fair a man as could be seen.

MECHANICAL CONTRIVANCES.

Two men of brass 'without ceasing beat with their flails' before the gate of Dunother, the residence of the giant Angolaffer, so that none can enter it alive. On opening a wicket, however, from within, a wind rushes forth and sets the men at rest (pp. 98, 99).

PRECIOUS STONES.

Of the stones gathered by Huon in the underground river, one preserves its bearer from poison or treason, another from fire and

sword, a third from all discomfort and old age, a fourth cures blindness, and a fifth renders its owner invisible (pp. 454—7).

Magic gems play important parts in innumerable tales. They are frequently obtained from grateful serpents. Thus, in an Albanian tale (No. 9 of M. Dozon's French collection), a youth having saved the life of a serpent receives as a reward from its father a wishing-stone, by means of which, *à la* Aladdin, he has a magnificent palace erected and gets a beautiful princess for his bride.—In the *Jātakas*, or Buddhist Birth-Stories, we read of a gem which, when put in the mouth, enabled one to rise into the air and go wherever he wished.—In the Persian romance which recounts the imaginary adventures of Hatim Tai, the hero slays a dragon and takes out of the monster's head a pearl which restored sight to the blind; cured the bite of a snake; endeared its possessor alike to friend and foe; secured victory in battle; conferred profound wisdom and boundless wealth; and rendered all creatures obedient to his commands. — The notion of dragons or serpents having gems in their heads (as well as being guardians of hidden treasure), still prevalent in the East, seems to be a relic of serpent-worship, and recalls Shakspeare's 'toad, ugly and venomous,' &c. A Kashmīri folk-tale relates how a 'snake-woman' was burnt for twenty-four hours in a furnace, and among her ashes was found a small round stone—the real essence of the 'snake-woman,' and whatever one touched with it was turned to gold. The alchemists of old times were not aware of this ready process of obtaining the long-sought Philosopher's Stone: but, then, you must first catch your 'snake-woman'!

In the *Gesta Romanorum* (ed. E. E. T. S., story of Guido) we read of a stone of three colours, obtained from a thankful serpent, 'possessed of three virtues: bestowing evermore joy without heaviness; abundance without fail; and light without darkness.' The same story is told in Gower's *Confessio Amantis*, B. v., but the stone which the grateful reptile gives the hero had the useful—but, from a moral point of view, rather questionable—property of always returning to his purse after having sold it—there, sure enough, was the stone again, along with the gold paid for it by the unlucky jeweller!—Needless it were to multiply examples.

THE SERPENT.

This animal guards the castle of the Adamant (p. 374). It is 'higher than a great horse, with eyes redder than fire, with marvellous great talons and tail.' Sir Arnold, Huon's knight, flees on catching sight of it; but Huon kills it after making the sign of the Cross, by thrusting a broad-headed spear down its throat when it opened its mouth to swallow him. Huon's own sword could not pierce its skin, which is harder than iron or steel (p. 381).

SUBTERRANEAN RIVER.

When leaving Alexander's Rock, Huon is wafted in a richly-jewelled boat down the rock-confined river of Dyplayre (pp. 431—440). After three days' journeying the rocks close above him and

form a dark passage, down which his ship is hurried at a great pace; the air is bitterly cold, voices are heard cursing their ill-fortune in diverse languages. There is also thunderous noise of falling water. A tempest arises, and great bars of red-hot iron fall hissing in front of the ship. After three days the vessel runs aground on a gravel bank of precious stones. Launching his vessel once again he travels on in mid stream still underground, and on the eleventh day passes out of the darkness, and finds himself in the Sea of Persia. This underground river or perilous gulf, as it is also called, is stated to lie "between the Sea of Persia and the Great Sea-ocean." A similar journey is made by Sindbad and by Herzog Ernst (cp. Tasso's *Gerusalemme liberata*, xiv. 32 ff.).

SWORDS.

Galans forged three invincible swords, of which one called Durandel was owned by Roland; the second was named Courtain; and the third, rusty and old to outward appearance, was given Huon by Ivoryn (p. 182).

The hero of chivalric romance is usually provided with a most trenchant blade, which he only can wield, and a steed, like himself, high-spirited and of extraordinary endurance, that carries him through all dangers. In the Edda of Sæmund we are told that Wieland (or Velent) the Smith forged a sword of such sharpness that when he cleft his rival Emilius with it the blade seemed to the latter only like cold water running down his body: 'Shake thyself,' said Wieland; he did so, and fell in two halves, one on each side of the chair. And in the Gíslí Saga it is related that the sword Gray-steel, which was forged by the Dwarfs, could bite whatever its blow fell upon—be it steel, or iron, or anything else. So, too, Arthur's famous blade, 'y-hote' Excaliber, could 'kerve steel, yren, and al-thing.'

In the Bedouin romance of *Antar* the poet-hero has an all-powerful sword called Dhamí, which was made out of a thunderbolt, and the skill and labour of the smith who forged it were but ill-requited; for when he took it to his employer—not Antar, but an Arab chief—with just pride but little prudence, he exclaimed, 'Sharp is the sword, O chief, but where is the smiter?' to which the chief replied, flourishing Dhamí, 'As for the smiter—I am the smiter,' and, suiting the action to the word, he smote off the head of the unlucky artisan. When Dhamí came, by mere accident, as it did, into the possession of the hero Antar, he plied it on the heads of his foes with such effect that many a time and oft he cleft a doughty knight and his horse each in two halves!

But the swords of romance had sometimes other wonderful qualities than that of carving steel and iron, or of cleaving man and horse. For instance, in the *Kathā Sarit Sāgara* the hero Indīvarasena receives from the goddess Durga a sword by the power of which he should not only conquer his enemies, but it would obtain for him whatever he desired; and in another story (but

this often occurs in Indian fictions) the hero, in like manner, obtains a sword by means of which he could fly through the air. We must not forget the sword which 'the king of Araby and Inde' sent, according to Chaucer's *Squire's Tale*, to the King of Tartary, that, like the spear of Telephus, could cure the wound it gave—a quality which seems to be amusingly distorted in a modern popular Norse story, in Sir George W. Dasent's *Tales from the Efteld*, where Master Tobacco receives from an old witch a sword, one edge of which was black, the other white; and 'if he smote with the black edge, everything fell dead, and if with the white edge, everything came to life again.' This sword, moreover, could become a knife and be carried in the pocket, and when drawn out it was a sword again.

ADDITIONAL NOTE.

Florence's incestuous love for his daughter Ide is utterly inconsistent with his previous manly character, and a very clumsy interpolation by one of the continuators of the Romance. Nevertheless it has parallels both in Asiatic and in several European fictions. In No. xiii. of Pandit Natésa Sastrí's *Folk-Lore in Southern India* (London: Trübner) a king wishes to marry his four daughters after the death of his wife, their mother, but by a clever device they not only save themselves from such an unnatural union, but bring their father to a due sense of the enormous crime he purposed committing. And in the German tale entitled, in Grimm, 'Allerleirauh,' and in one of our English translations, 'Cat-skin'; in Perrault's 'Peau d'Ane'; in the modern Greek story entitled, 'Xylomarie' (M. Legrand's French collection), and in other popular European tales, the heroine has also to flee from the incestuous love of her father.—W. A. C.

VIII. INDEX LOCORUM.

* * * Mediæval romances show as little regard for geography as for history, and Huon's travels in the East baffle all detailed description. The names of the places visited, although often hopelessly disguised by misspellings, are, however, rarely quite fictitious. The compiler of the romance obviously had access to some early book of Oriental travel, and thence derived his geographical nomenclature. I have tried to identify a few of the names below. If we take Huon's journeys seriously, the FIRST JOURNEY to the East may be described as taking him to Jerusalem: thence from Southern Syria he crosses the sea to the mouth of the Nile, whence he is carried to Cairo. On leaving Egypt he appears to visit some island of the Greek Archipelago, and thence to pass to the mainland of Asia Minor (Turkey in Asia), whence he returns to Brindisi. On his SECOND JOURNEY to the East he finds himself near the Caspian Sea, whence he makes his way to Tabriz in Persia, and to Angora in Turkey in Asia. After a voyage in the Persian Gulf, he arrives at Antioch and

Damascus, and visits most of the known towns in Palestine. His THIRD JOURNEY to Momur, Oberon's realm in India, is not described after he suffers shipwreck off an unnamed rock in the Mediterranean near Spain. Thence he is carried through the air by fairies to Momur, a shadowy kingdom of India.

Abylante, desert of, 478. [A lake in Anatolia, Turkey in Asia, is now named Abullionte or Abullonia, and is similarly situated in relation to Angora (*q. v.*) as the Abylante of the romance.]

Acre, 62, 519 (besieged by Persians), 522.

Adamant, castle of, 370.

Affryke, Aufrike, 2; sea of, 663.

Albaney, 72.

Alexander's rock, 427.

Almayn, Almayne, 279, Germany.

Anfalerne, a seaport, 161.

Anfamie, a Saracen kingdom, 357.

Angore, 472, Angora (Enguri) in Anatolia, Turkey in Asia.

Antioch, 497.

Antiopheney, a Saracen kingdom, 512.

Aquytanie, 18, Aquitaine.

Armanye, Ermyne, 489, 498, Armenia: part is called 'low,' and part 'high,' 498.

Arogone, 313, Aragon.

Arrabey, 519, Arabia.

Austryh, 277, Austria.

Babylon, city of, 49, 50, 61, 83, 113, 130, Cairo. [All mediæval

travellers speak of Cairo as 'Babylon in Egypt' (*Babellonia d'Egitto*, Marco Polo). Cairo is mentioned under this name by Diodorus, quoting Ctesias, by Strabo and by Ptolemy. Babul, close to Old Cairo, still preserves the old name of the city; cp. Yule's *Marco Polo*, i. 23.]

Barbarye, 310, 519, 663, Barbary.

Barselone, 624, Barcelona.

Basyle, 702, Basle.

Bauier, 2, Bavaria.

Beauland, 668, perh. Beaulieu.

Belmaryn, 741.

Berry, 281.

Blay, Blaye, castle of, 275; town of, 578.

Borgoyn, 316, 399, Bourgogne.

Bougye, 310, a town in Barbary.

Bouillon, 59, Boulogne.

Boulgnant, 603, a realm of Oberon handed to King Arthur: probably identical with Bolgara or Bolghar on the Wolga, a town of Upper Bulgaria, which Arab writers regarded as the northernmost limit of the habitable world; cp. Yule's *Marco Polo*, i. 4—6.

- Brandys, a sea-port, 54, 55, 233,
 Brindisi.
 Burdeaux, 5, 7, *et pass.* Bordeaux.
 Calaber, 743, Calabria.
 Caluery, 59, Mount Calvary.
 Candy island, 663, Candia.
 Caspys, sea of, 472, the Caspian.
 Cecyll, Cesyll, 663, Sicily.
 Chafalene, an island, 66; 'the
 princey isle,' 72—3, Cephalonia.
 Chalons, 252.
 Champagne, 52.
 Cluny, 52; battle near, 531.
 Colanders, a city of Armenia,
 489—496.
 Coleyn, 284, Cologne.
 Constantyne the noble, 466, Con-
 stantinople.
 Corse, isle, 663, Corsica.
 Courtois, 676.
 Cret, isle of, 213, Crete.
 Damas, 497, Damascus.
 Damiet, Damyet, 130, 155, 161,
 Damietta.
 Dolphenny [Dolphinne, 1601 ed.],
 316; Daupheney, 741, Dau-
 phiné.
 Dorbrey, 507.
 Dunother, tower of, 96.
 Dyplayre, river, 439 [brings Huon
 to Tauris in Persia].
 Egypt, 73, etc.
 Englund, 607, England.
 Ermyne, *see* Armanyne.
 Escalence, 100, 501, Escalon.
 Eufrates, flood of, 478, Euphrates.
 Flanders, 252.
 Florencoll, 760.
 France, 3, *et pass.*
 Gasero, 445, 501, Gaza.
 Geanes, 445, prob. Geaune in
 Landes, France.
 Gerone, a town near Bordeaux,
 15.
 Geronmill, 62; Geronell, 578.
 Gerounde, province, 406, Gironde.
 Gerounde river, 356, Garonne.
 Grenade, 741, Granada.
 Hell, gulf of, 362.
 Hungary, 607.
 Jaffe, 58, 497, 500, Jaffa or Joppe,
 Palestine.
 Jaffet, castle of, 519. [There is
 an island Jaffatine in Red Sea.]
 Jene, 519.
 Jerusalem, 59, 500.
 Lombardy, 702.
 Luysarne, city in Spain, 415;
 ? Luserna, Italy.
 Lyon 'on the river Rone,' 403,
 Lyons.
 Lysbone, 416, Lisbon.
 Magence, Maience, 278, 531, May-
 ence.
 Marrocke 'stratis,' 415.
 Marseyle, Marsile, seaport, 528,
 Marseilles.
 Mascon, 403, 500.
 Mauryse, abbey at, 219.
 Mede, 457, Media.
 Mesque, 129.
 Mombraunte, 131.

- Momur, capital of fairyland, a realm of India, 74, 604.
 Monglew, 'the which is called Lyon,' 403.
 Montleberry, 14, 18.
 Mountaubon, 472, Montauban.
 Myllayne, 420, Milan.
 Napelous, 499, Nablous.
 Naplese, 61, Naples.
 Nasareth, 519, Nazareth.
 Navarre, 633.
 Nile, river, 112, 116, 130, 155.
 Noisaunt, Noysaunt, an island near the gulf of hell, 168.
 Noremberge, 294, Nüremberg.
 Nyse, 741, Nice.
 Olyfame, 511.
 Oreaney, 511.
 Orleance, 14, Orleans.
 Paris, 2, *et pass.*
 Pauey, 33, Pavia.
 Perce, Perse, 443, 451, 497; gulf of, 449, Persia.
 Portyngale, 415, Portugal.
 Puyllle, 740, Apulia.
 Pyemont, 741, Piedmont.
 Raines, plains of, 507.
 Rame, Ranes, a city in Palestine, 500, 507, Ramah.
 Red Sea, 111.
 Roddes, the coast of, 213, Rhodes.
 Romaine, 741, Romagna.
 Rome, 2, *et pass.*
 Rone, river, 316, Rhone.
 Rousillon, 530.
 Rownceuall, 2, Roncesvalles.
 St. Giles, 741.
 St. Omer, 209.
 Sathab, gulfe of, 528. [In Sir John Mandeville's Travels (ed. 1839, p. 26), a city of this name (otherwise Catala, Sotatia, Cataillie, etc.) is described as lying somewhere between Rhodes and Cyprus.]
 Saxoney, 2.
 Sayre, 518, prob. Tyre (Soor).
 Selauoney, 1, Slavonia.
 Spayne, 1, *et pass.*
 Strabourge, 278, Strasburg.
 Surrey, 100, Syria.
 Taragon, 624, Tarragona.
 Tarascon, 668.
 Thauris in Perce, 443. [In mediæval books of travels this is the name given to Tabriz, the chief city of Adherbaijaz, a Persian province on the Caspian. Marco Polo gives a full description of it, i. 70—4.]
 Thesalye, 265, Thessaly.
 Tortouse, 313, prob. Tortosa [in *Roland*, 916, 'Turteluse'.]
 Tournous, 530.
 Tours, a seaport, 611.
 Troye, siege of, 412.
 Troyes, 52.
 Trypoley, 310, Tripoli.
 Valence the great, 624.
 Vergier, 530.
 Vyene, Viene, 276, Vienna.
 Ynde, 489, India.

IX. INDEX NOMINUM.

* * * The editorial introduction and appendix are indexed here as well as the text of the romance. A few notes are inserted on one or two characters ; see, for example, **NAIMES**.

ABBOT OF CLUNY, v. CLUNY.

ABBOT OF MAURYSE, v. MAURYSE.

ACLIS, Duchess of Burdeux, and Huon's mother, 56 ; sister of the Pope, 54, and of Garyn, 56 ; receives Charlemagne's messengers, 7 ; sends her sons to Paris, 11 ; learns Huon's ill-fortune, 52 ; dies, 53, 210.

AGRAPART, a giant, laments the death of his brother Angolafer, 140 ; insults Gaudys at Babylon, 141 ; is challenged by Huon, 147, and defeated, 148 ; becomes Gaudys's man, 150.

ALBANEY, duke of, 265.

ALBERIC, a German fairy, xxx.

ALEAUME or **ALELMUS**, xxxiv, another name for Gerames (*q. v.*).

ALEXANDER THE GREAT, vii ; son of Neptanabus, 73 ; his picture in castle of Adamant, 412 ; a rock called after him, 427 ; spoke with trees of the sun and moon, 427.

ALMAYNE, Emperor of, *v. THIERRY*.

AMAURY, Earl, longs for Huon's land, 5 ; proposes to take it for Charlot, *ib.* ; reproved by Charlemagne, 12 ; plots against Huon, 13 ; in ambush, 19 ; bears Charlot's body to Charlemagne, 18, 31 ; charges Huon with Charlot's murder, 33 ; lies to the Emperor, 35 ; challenges Huon, 35 ; swears that Huon lies, 40 ; fights, 42, and is slain, 44.

AMPHAGE, a horse, saves Barnard in battle, 396.

AMPHAMIE, king of, Esclaramonde's brother, 403.

ANGELARS, Huon's vassal, slain, 275.

ANGOLAFFER, **GALAFFER**, **GALAFRE**, giant of Dunother, 96 ; of terrible aspect, 102-3 ; threatens Huon, 103 ; his magic armour, 105 ; fights, and is slain by Huon, 108-9 ; pagans pay him tribute, 129.

ANGORE, admiral of, 472 ; visits Huon, 473, and is slain, 476.

ANTONIUS, **MARCUS**, husband of Cleopatre, 411.

ARAGON, king of, *v. GARYN*.

- ARNOLD, Sir, climbs the Adamant rock, 373; rouses the serpent, 374; killed by Saracens, 377.
- ARTHUR, King (of Brittany), vii; Sir Thomas Malory's *Morte d'Arthur*, xlviii; wants to succeed Oberon in throne of fairyland, 599; comes to Oberon's palace, 601; refuses for a time to acknowledge Huon as king of fairyland, 602; is given by Huon Boulgnant and sway over fairies of Tartary, 603; attends Oberon's funeral, 606.
- ARTHUR OF LITTLE BRITAIN, Lord Berners' romance of, xlvii.
- ASCHAM, ROGER, quoted, xlviii.
- ASPREMONT, a chanson de geste, xiii.
- AUBERON, *v.* OBERON.
- AUDE, LA BELLE, sister of Oliver, xii.
- AYMON, *FOUR SONS OF*, a romance, xix, xx, xxiii, xlvii.
- BALAAACH, 500, *v.* TRAMPOYNGNYFLE.
- BALAN, a chanson de geste, xiii.
- BARNARD, Huon's faithful knight, 338; receives a horse from Huon, 356; supports Gerames in a night-sortie at siege of Bordeaux, 393; alone survives, 396; entrusted by Esclaramonde with care of Clariet, 399; rides to Cluny, 402; announces fall of Bordeaux to abbot of Cluny, 404; seeks Huon, 445; at Tauris, 446; meets Huon without recognizing him for a time, 447-50; sees the value of Huon's precious stones, 453; finds a stone that makes its holder invisible, 454; with Huon against Angore, 475, and Colanders, 489, and the Saracens, 504; at Marseilles, 545, and Cluny, 557, and Mayence, 558; guards Clariet at Cluny, 607; is drowned by traitor Brohart, 611; his body found in Garonne, 617; is buried at Cluny, 618.
- BAUDOUYN (Baldwin), son of Ogier, slain by Charlot, 4. [This story is told at length in the *chanson* of *Ogier le Danois*, and in some detail in the original poem of *Huon*, 98—193.]
- BAUDOYN, brother of Godfrey of Bouillon, buried at Calvary, 59.
- BELMARYN, king of, besieges Nice, 741; killed by Croissant, 750.
- BENET, St., patron of Cluny, 574.
- BERNERS, Lord, translates *Huon*, xxxix; his history, xl; his

translations, xlii ; end of life, xlv ; undertakes *Huon*, liv ; his Euphuism and knowledge of Guevara, 785 ; his work on Calais, 789.

BERTE AU GRAND PIED, a chanson de geste, xiii.

BERTRAND, son of Naymes, slain by Ogier, 33. [The story is in *Ogier le Danois*.]

BLANCHARDIN, Sorbryn's horse, 184 ; seized by Huon, 187.

BOURGOYNE, king of, aids abbot of Cluny, 530.

BOWES, THOMAS, quoted, 790.

BROHART, a traitor, seeks to marry Clariet, 608 ; gets her and Barnard into a boat, 610 ; kills Barnard, 611 ; is wrecked and killed by thieves, 614 ; his kindred flung into Garonne, 618.

BRYAN, Sir Francis, and Berners' literary work, 788.

BURDELOYS, people of Burdeux, fight valiantly, 319.

BURDEUX, bishop of, 419, *v.* LISBON, bishop of.

CÆSAR, JULIUS, Oberon's father, 72, 265, 411 ; builds tower of Dunother, 96, and castle of Adamant, 411 ; vanquishes Pompey and Ptolemy of Egypt, *ib.* ; attacked at Adamont by three Egyptian kings, *ib.* ; slain at Rome, 412.

CAIN, CAYME, confined in oaken tun, 484 ; begs Huon to release him, 485 ; tries to trick Huon, 486 ; is abandoned, 487.

CALABER, king of, visits Nice, 743 ; fights at siege, 747.

CARAHAW, King, at Oberon's death and funeral, 605-6.

CHALONS, earl of, 252.

CHARLEMAGNE, romances about him, viii ; their growth in France, ix ; in Iceland, xi ; head of a family of romance heroes, xiv ; English romance about, xviii, xix ; English play about, xxiii ; reigns in France, 1, 756 ; defeated at Roncesvalles, 2 ; desires lords to choose successor, 3 ; sends for Huon and Gerard, 7 ; hears Huon's complaint and promises redress, 27 ; grieves over Charlot's corpse, 32 ; rages at Huon, 33 ; proclaims duel between Huon and Amaury, 40 ; banishes Huon, 48 ; sends him on mission to Babylon, 49 ; receives Gerard and Gybouars, traitors, 235 ; accepts Huon's treasure from their hands, *ib.* ; deceived as to Huon's mission and return by Gerard, 237 ; resolves to examine Huon at Bordeaux, 241 ; makes good cheer at Bordeaux, 242 ; threatens

Huon, 249 ; orders peers to try Huon, 250 ; condemns him, 255 ; reproaches Naymes, *ib.* ; suddenly sees Oberon approach, 259 ; is charged by Oberon with terrible sin, 260 ; receives from Huon relics of mission, 266 ; pardons Huon, *ib.* ; leaves Bordeaux, 268 ; dies, 388.

CHARLES THE BALD, xxviii, xxix.

CHARLOT, his historical prototype Charles the Bald's son, xxix ; in *Ogier le Danois*, xxix ; Charlemagne's elder son, 4 ; plots against Huon with Amaury, 13 ; advances against Huon and Gerard, 19 ; attacks Gerard, 20 ; challenged by Huon, 23 ; slain, 24, 388 ; brought before Charlemagne, 32.

CLARE, St., 313.

CLARIET, CLARYET, Huon's and Esclaramonde's daughter, born, 313 ; christened, 314 ; entrusted to Barnard's care, 399 ; taken to abbot of Cluny, 403 ; visited by Huon disguised, 548 ; is richly dowered by Huon, 581 ; has kings for suitors, 607 ; is kidnapped by traitor Brohart, 608 ; resists him, 610 ; on a desert island and with thieves, 613-14 ; rescued by Saracen king of Grenade, 619 ; declines to marry him, 620 ; saved by Sir Peter of Aragon, and taken to Tarragona, 624 ; meets Florence, who loves her, 625 ; disguises her history, 626 ; is hated by Florence's father, king of Aragon, 630 ; is to be drowned by his orders, 631 ; saved by Sir Peter, 640 ; imprisoned in same tower as Florence, 652 ; escapes, 653 ; joins Florence in forest, *ib.* ; flies with Florence, and taken by Sorbare, 666 ; brought back to Courtois by Huon, 685 ; marries Florence, 686 ; has a child Ide, 690, and dies, 691.

CLARIMODES, fairy boatman, 597.

CLARISSE, another name of Clariet (*q. v.*), xxxiv ; *chanson* about, *ib.*

CLEOPATRE, sister of Julius Cæsar, married Marcus Antonius, 411.

CLUNY, abbot of, accompanies Huon to Paris, 18—26 ; charges Amaury with lying, 36 ; bids Huon accept Amaury's challenge, 37 ; goes with Huon to Cluny, 51-2 ; receives infant Clariet, 403 ; prepares attack on messenger of German Emperor, 530 ; welcomes Huon's return, 549 ; is one hundred and fourteen years old, 552 ; eats Huon's apple of youth and becomes a man of thirty, 554 ; attacks German Emperor in error with 20,000 men,

576 ; entertains Emperor, 577 ; guardian of Clariet, 607 ; calls her suitors together at Blaye, 316.

COLOGNE, provost of, leads burghers to battle for Emperor, 299 ; attacks Huon after truce, 804 ; begs pardon of Huon, 306.

CONSTANTYNE, Emperor, nominated the patriarch of Jerusalem, 500.

COURTAYN, a sword, 182.

CRASSYN POLYNGER, bearer of German Emperor's banner, killed by Huon, 297.

CROISSANT, son of Olive and Ide, born, 730 ; regent of Emperor Ide, 733 ; reigns alone, 737 ; charitable, 738 ; flees from Rome, 739 ; at Nice, 741 ; welcomed by Earl Remon, 742 ; excels at the quintain, 744 ; attacks Saracen besiegers of Nice, 746-8 ; is to marry Remon's daughter, 745, 753 ; is attacked by Remon's son, 754 ; kills the son, 755 ; flees from Nice, 758 ; reaches Florence, 760 ; falls among thieves, 761 ; kills them, 763 ; at Rome, 765 ; lives in retirement there, 766 ; no one aids him, 767 ; sees miraculous treasure in old palace, 771 ; picks up three besants and gives them to Emperor Guymart, 775 ; marries Guymart's daughter, 778 ; seizes Oberon's treasure in old palace, 780.

DENIS, St., 27, 28.

DOON DE MAIENCE, the head of a family of romance heroes, *xiv n.*

DORBRYE, DORBREY, a giant, admiral of, fights against Huon, 507 ; is slain, 510-11.

DURENDAL, Roland's sword, *xii*, 182. [*See Chanson de Roland*, l. 926, and M. Leon Gautier's note in his edition, pp. 90-1.]

ELINAS, a Saracen captain, converted, 422.

EMERY, Sir, knight of abbot of Cluny, 545.

EMPEROR. See CHARLEMAGNE, OTHO, and THIERRY.

ENGLAND, king of, Clariet's suitor, 607 ; *chanson* about, *xxxiv*.

ERNST VON BAIERN, romance of, 797.

ESCLARAMONDE (Huon's wife), daughter of Gaudys of Babylon, 50, 119 ; thrice kissed by Huon, 120 ; grieves for Huon in prison, 125 ; visits him and confesses her love, *ib.* ; grows angry on being told she is a Saracen, 126 ; keeps Huon without food, *ib.* ; consents to turn Christian, 127 ; plans Huon's escape, 128 ; tells Gerames all, 133 ; plots her father's death, 139 ; arranges for

Huon to fight Agrapart, 143 ; is converted, 154 ; goes with Huon to Rome, 155 ; yields to temptation, 156 ; shipwrecked, 157 ; threatened by pirates in her father's service, 158 ; pleads for Huon, 159 ; is carried off to sea, 161 ; freed by Galaffer, 162 ; is loved by him, *ib.* ; begs to be delivered to Ivoryn, 183 ; visited by Gerames, 193 ; swears loyalty to Huon, whom she thinks dead, 194 ; desires to enter a convent, 195 ; meets Huon at Anfalerne, 200 ; leaves for France, 213 ; comforts Garryn's widow, 215 ; baptized by Pope at Rome, 217 ; married to Huon, *ib.* ; fears for Huon, 227 ; her horse stumbles, *ib.* ; bound to a horse by Gerard, 231 ; in prison at Bordeaux, 232 ; before Charlemagne, 243 ; bewails Huon's fate, 253 ; visited by three pilgrims at Bordeaux, 275 ; entreats Huon to stay, 280 ; with child, 281 ; loved by Ravall, 283 ; hears from Huon of his adventures, 307 ; bids Huon get aid from her brother Salybraunt, 310, 324, 349 ; gives birth to Clariet, 312 ; urges Huon to go to the East, 353 ; grieves for Huon, 387, and for Gerames' death, 397 ; is afraid, 399 ; bids Barnard take Clariet to Cluny, *ib.* ; begs mercy of Thierry, 400 ; is promised life, 401 ; imprisoned at Mayence, 406 ; appears in vision to Huon, 520 ; led to stake, 532 ; saved by Oberon, 538 ; treated well by Emperor, 543 ; meets Huon, 570 ; goes with him to Cluny and Bordeaux, 572 ; in fairyland, 597 ; crowned queen there, 601 ; with Huon at Courtois, 682.

FERUMBRAS (SIR), an English romance, xviii *n.*

FIERABRAS, a romance, xiii, xviii *n.*, xix.

FLANDERS, earl of, 252.

FLORENCE or FLORENT, *chanson* about, xxxiv ; son of king of Aragon, Clariet's suitor, 607, 616 ; meets Clariet at Tarragon, 626 ; does not know who she is, 627 ; wants to marry her, 628 ; offends his father, 630 ; will not fight Navarre unless he marry Clariet, 633 ; leaves for battle on receiving promise, 636 ; captures king of Navarre, 644 ; is told by his father that Clariet is drowned, 645 ; invites his prisoners to avenge Clariet and kill his father, 647 ; is imprisoned by his father, 650 ; meets Clariet in prison, 652 ; escapes with her, 656 ; to Africa, 663 ; attacked by Saracens, 665 ; delivered to Sorbare, a secret Christian, 666 ; at Courtois

with Clariet, 684 ; marries Clariet, 686 ; becomes king of Aragon, 690 ; loses wife, 691 ; loves his own daughter Ide, 692 ; angry at her escape, 701 ; sends for Ide, 731 ; resigns his rule, 737.

FLORIMONT OF ALBANY, 72 ; son of duke of Albany, 265.

FROISSART, translated by Lord Berners, xliii.

GALAFFER, admiral of Anfalerne, 161 ; frees Esclaramonde from pirates, 162 ; loves her, *ib.* ; will not deliver her to Ivoryn, 164 ; threatens Ivoryn, 165 ; sees Ivoryn's army upon him, 183 ; deplores death of his nephew Sorbryn, 187 ; retires before Ivoryn and Huon, 188 ; receives Gerames kindly, 192 ; tells them of Esclaramonde, *ib.*, and of Ivoryn, 193 ; learns history of Huon, 201 ; submits to Ivoryn, 202 ; aided by Ivoryn against Huon, 203 ; encourages Ivoryn, 207 ; angry at Huon's flight, 213 ; enters Anfalerne, 214.

GALANS, forger of swords, 182.

GALERAN, cousin of Duke Raoull, slain by Huon, 290.

GALLERANCE, a knight of Huon, 323.

GANELON, traitor of Roncesvalles, xxii, 3.

GAREYN, 217 ; the baptismal name of Mouflet (*q. v.*).

GARIN DE MONGLAINE, the head of a family of romance heroes, xiv *n.*

GARYN, Guaryn of St. Omer, brother of the Pope, 54, 55 ; receives Huon, 56 ; accompanies him, 58-9 ; killed in fight with Saracens at Anfalerne, 206 ; his wife told by Huon of his death, 214.

GARYN, GUARYN, king of Aragon, 666 ; will not consent to marriage of Florence and Clariet, 630 ; orders her to be drowned, 631 ; deceives Florence, *ib.* ; imprisons Clariet, 640, and Florence, 650 ; will not pardon the watchman who releases them, 658 ; attacked by king of Navarre, 661 ; besieged by Navarre at Courtois, 676 ; accepts Huon's intervention, 682 ; makes peace with Navarre, 685 ; dies, 690.

GAUDYS, admiral of Babylon, 50, 64, 71, 668 ; gave ring to Angolaffer, 106 ; hears Huon's horn, 118 ; orders his arrest, 120 ; sees ring and welcomes Huon, 120 ; refuses to turn Christian, 121 ; sends Huon to prison, 124 ; receives Gerames disguised, 131 ; insulted by giant Agrapart, 141 ; promises his daughter's hand to

any one who fights giant, 142 ; invites Huon, 144 ; receives Agravart's homage, 150 ; will not turn Christian, 152 ; is delivered to Huon by Oberon, 153, and is slain by Huon, *ib.*

GEFFREY, a French knight in Macaire's service, 90 ; protects Huon, 91 ; drives Macaire from his castle, 92 ; is given Tormont by Huon, 97.

GERAMES meets Huon, 60 ; his history, 61 ; directs Huon to Babylon, 63-4 ; accompanies Huon, 65 ; warns Huon of Oberon, 67-9 ; fears Oberon's banquet, 75 ; buys food for Huon's supper at tournament, 86 ; warns Huon of Macaire, 89 ; dissuades Huon from going to Dunotter, 97 ; remains with Huon's company at Dunotter after Huon leaves it, 110 ; waits for Huon's return, 129 ; sees a ship approach the shore, 129 ; kills the pagan sailors, 129 ; embarks with his companions in the ship to seek Huon, 130 ; arrives at Babylon, 130 ; enters the admiral's palace, 131 ; gives the name of Jeracle, Ivoryn's son, 132 ; pretends that his companions are his prisoners, 132 ; is told that Huon is dead, *ib.* ; learns the truth from Esclaramonde, 133 ; suspects her, *ib.* ; sends her companions to Huon's prison, 134 ; takes food to them, 136 ; allows Esclaramonde to visit Huon, 137 ; sees Huon daily, 138-9 ; keeps Huon's trophies in his side, 153 ; bids Huon obey Oberon, 155 ; is defied by Huon, 156 ; enters a little boat with his company and leaves Huon, *ib.* ; reaches Anfalerne, 191 ; is well received by Galaffer, 192 ; offers to aid him against Ivoryn, 193 ; visits Esclaramonde, *ib.* ; arms for the fight, 197 ; is attacked by Huon, 198 ; throws him to the ground and recognizes him, 199 ; pretends to take Huon prisoner, in order to bring him to Esclaramonde, 199 ; brings Huon and his company to Anfalerne, 200 ; shuts out the admiral and all his men, and kills all in the town, 200 ; fights with Huon before the castle against the Saracens, 206 ; recognizes his brother in Guyer of Bordeaux, 211 ; has been sixty years away from France, 212 ; leaves for France with Huon, 213 ; at Brandys, 214 ; at Rome, 215 ; warns Huon against journeying too early, 228 ; advises Huon to conciliate Gerard, 229 ; is robbed of the objects of Huon's mission by Gerard, 230 ; is allowed to live, 231 ; is brought into Bordeaux tied to a horse, *ib.* ; cast into prison,

232 ; before the Emperor at Bordeaux, 243 ; shows the wound made in his side by Gerard, 248 ; with Huon at Coleyn, 295 ; fights with vigour against the Germans, 299 ; promises to aid Huon against the German Emperor, 317 ; is taken prisoner, 321 ; is condemned to be hanged, 326 ; mounts the scaffold, but is released, 331 ; promises to protect Esclaramonde in Huon's absence, 355 ; consoles Esclaramonde, 387 ; fights bravely, 389 ; advises a night attack, 392 ; leads the force, 394 ; is attacked fiercely by Savary, 395 ; is slain by the Emperor, 396.

GERARD, Thierry's bastard son, slain by Huon, 347.

GERARD, GERARDE, GERARDYN, Huon's brother, 5, 118 ; goes with Huon to Paris, 15 ; has an evil dream, 16 ; is attacked by Charlot, 20 ; is wounded, 21 ; at Paris, 26 ; entrusted with Huon's lands in his absence, 51 ; gives Huon a Judas kiss, 52 ; petitions to be a peer of France, 52 ; at Bordeaux, *ib.* ; marries a daughter of Gilbert of Cceyll, 53 ; grows wicked, 210 ; learns of Huon's return, 220 ; takes counsel with his father-in-law, 221 ; treacherously visits Huon at the abbey of Mauryse, 223 ; desires Guyer's death, 226 ; urges Huon to set out for Bordeaux at cock-crow, 227 ; complains that Huon's return makes him penniless, 228 ; asks for some land, 229 ; seizes the objects of Huon's mission, 230 ; kills the abbot of Mauryse and seizes Huon's treasure, 233 ; sends a third part to Paris, 235 ; gives some of it to Charlemagne at Paris, and declares that he has imprisoned Huon because the mission has failed, 237 ; goes with Charlemagne to Bordeaux, 241 ; challenged by Huon, 248 ; forced by Oberon to confess all, 261-2 ; charges Gybouars with suggesting the plot, 263 ; is hanged, 265.

GERARD OF ROUSILLON, son of duke of Bourgogne, 530. [Hero of a popular chanson, *Gerart de Rousillon*, one of the peers of France. See Gaston Paris' translation of poem, 1884.]

GILBERT, *v.* GYBOUARS.

GIRARDE DE VIANE, a chanson quoted, *xiv n.*

GLORIADAS, a fairy living in Adamant castle, 412.

GLORIANDE, GLORIENT, GLORYAUNT, a fairy, 65, 267, 278 ; intercedes for Huon with Oberon, 70, 167 ; sent to save Esclaramonde, 537 ; delivers Oberon's message to Emperor of Germany, 540 ; receives

- Huon at Momur, 598 ; sent by Huon to make peace between kings of Aragon and Navarre, 677.
- GODFREY OF BOUILLON, buried at Calvary, 59.
- GODIN, chanson about (a son of Huon), xxxv.
- GODUN, a German knight, proposes to slay Huon in an ambush, 294.
- GONDER, Christian provost of Tormont, 83 ; receives Huon, 84 ; tries to make peace between Huon and Macaire, 93 ; restores Huon's horn, 94.
- GRENADE, Saracen king of, I., rescues Clariet and offers her marriage, 619 ; ill-treats her, 620 ; is killed at Tours by Sir Peter of Aragon, 623.
- GRENADE, Saracen king of, II., besieges Nice, 740 ; killed by Croissant, 749.
- GUALTER, a peer of France, urges Huon's death, 251.
- GUARYN. See GARYN.
- GUEVARA, ANTONIO DE, the Spanish author, 786, 788.
- GUITALIN, a chanson de geste, xiii.
- GUY DE BOURGOGNE, a chanson de geste, xiii.
- GUY OF WARWICKE, a romance, xlvii.
- GUYCHARD, Huon's companion, 54, 55 ; refuses to leave him, 59.
- GUYER, GUYRE, provost of Bordeaux, 15, 62 ; pilgrim to Holy Sepulchre, 209 ; a hundred years old, 209 ; tells Huon of his family, 210 ; Gerames' brother, 211 ; with Huon at Rome, 215 ; at Bordeaux, 218 ; hated by Gerard, 226.
- GUYMART OF PUYLLE (Apulia), becomes Emperor of Rome in Croissant's absence, 740 ; learns of Croissant's return, 768 ; takes food to Croissant, 770 ; sees treasure at the old palace, 771 ; is bidden to distribute three besants to poor, 772-3 ; restores crown to Croissant and dies, 775, 782.
- GUYNEMER, earl of St. Omer, 100.
- GWYN-ARAUN, a Welsh fairy, xxx.
- GYBOUARS, 219 ; Gylberde, duke of Cecyll [Sicily], a traitor, 53 ; promises to outwit Huon, 221 ; lays ambush for Huon, 223 ; binds Huon, 229 ; kills abbot of Mauryse, 233 ; seizes Huon's treasure, 234 ; makes his cousin abbot of Mauryse, *ib.* ; with Gerard at

Paris, 235 ; confirms Gerard's lies, 239 ; proved guilty by Gerard's confession, 263 ; is hanged, 265.

GYRARD. See GERARD.

HABOUREY, Huon's messenger, 342-3.

HARRY OF ST. OMER, a peer of France, 251.

HASTINGS, Lord George, earl of Huntingdon, encourages Lord Berners to translate *Huon*, liv.

HELYE. See SEBYLLE.

HENRY VIII., patron of Lord Berners, xli, xlii.

HILDEBERT, a German duke, protects Esclaramonde, 533.

HUNGARY, king of, Clariet's suitor, 607.

HUON OF BORDEAUX, son of Sevin and Aclis (*q. v.*), *chanson de geste* about, xxiv ; historical foundation for his story, xxviii ; growth of romance, xxxii ; its supplements, xxxiii ; printed in French prose, xxxvii ; French play about, xxxviii ; first English translation, xxxix ; its popularity, xlviii, xlix ; English play of, xlix ; bibliography of Lord Berners' romance about, liii, 791 ;—owns Bordeaux, but does no homage to the Emperor, 5 ; summoned to Paris, 5 ; starts for Paris, 15 ; comes upon Charlot, 19 ; sees Gerard fall, 20 ; challenges Charlot, 23 ; kills Charlot, 24 ; sets Gerard on Charlot's horse, 24 ; goes to the Emperor's court, 25 ; tells of Charlot's treachery, 26—30 ; defends himself from Amaury's charge of murder, 34 ; accepts Amaury's challenge, 37 ; swears on relics before fighting, 39 ; fights and slays Amaury, 42-4 ; is sentenced to banishment by Charlemagne, 45 ; complains of this injustice, 46 ; is ordered to go on a perilous mission to Babylon, 49 ; sets out on his journey, 51 ; arrives at Rome, 54 ; at Brandys, 56 ; is joined there by Garyn, 58 ; visits Jerusalem and Calvary, 59 ; meets Gerames, 60 ; sees Oberon, 65 ; refuses to speak to him, 67 ; runs from him, 69 ; marvels at his beauty, 71 ; speaks to him, 72 ; receives of Oberon a rich banquet, 74-5 ; drinks of Oberon's magic cup, 77 ; is given the cup and the ivory horn, 77 ; mistrusts their magic power, 79 ; blows the horn recklessly, 80 ; is cursed and forgiven by Oberon, 81 ; at Tormont, 82 ; lodges with the provost, 84 ; gives a great supper to 4000 poor men, 84-6 ; his cup works a miracle, 86 ; invites Macaire to supper, 88 ; goes with Macaire to

his castle, 90 ; is saved from Macaire's murderous plot, 90-1 ; is besieged by Macaire, 92-3 ; sounds his horn, 94 ; kills Macaire, 95 ; is aided by Oberon, 95 ; leaves Tormont, 97 ; approaches the tower of Dunother, 98 ; rouses the giant, 103 ; tells him his history, 104 ; dons the giant's magic armour, 106 ; fights with the giant, 108 ; kills him and takes his tower, 109 ; leaves his company there, 110 ; carried by Malabron up the Nile, 112 ; reaches Babylon, 113 ; tells a lie, 114 ; reaches the admiral's garden, 116 ; blows his horn, 118 ; kills a paynim king, 120 ; shows Gaudys a ring, *ib.* ; is well received and thrice kisses Esclaramonde, *ib.* ; informs Gaudys of his mission, 122 ; fights with his men, *ib.* ; kills his nephew, 123 ; is seized, *ib.* ; is sent to prison, 124 ; is visited by Esclaramonde, 126 ; reproaches her with being a Saracen, *ib.* ; is kept without food, *ib.* ; is reconciled to Esclaramonde, 127 ; is reported to be dead, 128 ; overhears his companions talk in the prison, 134 ; reveals himself to them, 135 ; sees Gerames daily, 138-9 ; is invited to fight the giant Agrapart, 144 ; agrees to do so, 145 ; defies Agrapart, 147 ; conquers him, 148 ; invites Gaudys to become a Christian, 151 ; summons Oberon, 152 ; kills Gaudys, 153 ; obtains trophies from Gaudys, *ib.* ; is warned by Oberon against intercourse with Esclaramonde before marriage at Rome, 154 ; sets out with Esclaramonde for Rome, 155 ; cannot resist temptation, *ib.* ; is wrecked alone with Esclaramonde on an island, 157 ; begs bread of pirates, 158 ; is threatened by them, 159 ; is left alone by them, bound hand and foot, 160 ; is on the isle of Noisant, 166 ; is helped by Malabron, 168 ; is carried by him to the mainland, 169 ; meets Mouflet, a minstrel, who gives him food and clothes, 170 ; gives a lying account of himself, 171 ; calls himself Salater, 172 ; becomes servant of Mouflet, 173 ; goes to Mombraunt, 174 ; is asked by Ivoryn what he can do, 177, 178 ; is challenged to play chess with Ivoryn's daughter, 178 ; is loved by her, 179 ; wins the game, 180 ; refuses the advantage of his victory, *ib.* ; begs for horse and armour to fight for Ivoryn, 181 ; obtains a magic sword and a poor horse, 182 ; accepts Sorbryn's challenge, 185 ; kills Sorbryn and seizes his horse Blanch-

ardin, 187; helps Ivoryn to defeat Galaffer, 188; is feasted by Ivoryn, 189; leads a second attack on Galaffer, 196; attacks Gerames fighting on the other side, 198; is forced to the ground, 199; recognizes Gerames, *ib.*; meets Esclaramonde, 200; is attacked by Ivoryn and Galaffer in concert, 203; hears Mouflet call on his aid from the gallows, 205; with his companions dashes out of the castle and kills the hangman, 205; fights valiantly against the Saracen, 206; receives French pilgrims at Anfalerne, 208; learns from Guyer of his family, 210; purposes to return to France in the pilgrims' ship, 212; with all his company sets sail for France and arrives at Brendys, 213; goes to church, 214; tells the wife of Garyn of St. Omers of her husband's death, 214; at Rome, 215; welcomed by the Pope, 216; is married to Esclaramonde, 217; leaves Rome for Bordeaux, 218; sees Gerard, his brother, 223; tells him of his trophies and treasures, 224; regrets that his brother should have Gybouars for father-in-law, 225; sleeps with Gerard, 226; is roused by Gerard at cock-crow to go on to Bordeaux, 227; resolves to visit the Emperor, 228; promises Gerard half of his treasure, 229; is wrathful with his brother because he wants more, *ib.*; conciliates Gerard, 230; is attacked by Gybouars in ambush, *ib.*; is bound, *ib.*; is brought to Bordeaux, 231; cast into prison, 232; is brought before the Emperor, who visits Bordeaux, 243; accuses his brother of treachery, 244; tells the story of his journey, 244-5; and of his return, 246-8; challenges Gerard and Gybouars, 248; learns of Oberon's intervention, 258; drinks from Oberon's enchanted cup, 260; pleads for his brother's life, 264; is promised by Oberon the kingdom of the fairies, 266; receives his lords' homage, 274; hangs Angelars, who defies him, 275; is envied by Raoul of Austrich, 279; learns of Raoul's plots against his life from an old servant, 279; sets out to Mayence to slay the traitor, 280; receives Raoul in disguise, 282; comes to Coleyn for a tournament, 284; leaves his escort behind and rides to Mayence, 285; visits the Emperor and Raoul in the palace, 286; puts his case without mentioning names to the Emperor, 287; kills Raoul in the Emperor's presence, 288; resists the attempt of the

Germans to arrest him, 289-90; strikes down the Emperor, 292; escapes, 293; meets his company at Coleyn, 295; has 13,000 men with him, 296; prepares for battle in a wood near Coleyn, 297; fights valiantly, *ib.*; meets the Emperor, and reproaches him, 299; overcomes the Emperor in a duel, 300-1; grants six months' truce, 303; is attacked in mistake by the burghers of Coleyn, 304; pardons the provost of Coleyn, 307; returns to Bordeaux, *ib.*; relates his adventures to his wife, 307-9; declines to seek aid of Salybraunt, 311; complains of Oberon's neglect, 313; summons his men, 316; begs Gerames' aid, 317; prepares a sortie, 319; fights valiantly, 320; attacks the Emperor, 323; retires to Bordeaux, 323; sees the gallows set up for Gerames, 327; prepares a rescue, 328; sees Gerames on the scaffold, 331; slays the hangman, 332; rescues Gerames, 333; spares Sir Otho, 334; repulses the Germans, 334, 338-9; pursued by Germans, who enter Bordeaux, 335; spares the lives of 500 prisoners, 336; finds his force dwindles, 341; sues for peace in vain, 342; makes sudden sortie, 344; strikes the Emperor, 346; loses more men, 348; despairs, 349; resolves to seek aid in the East, 350; seizes the German herds, 351; will slay Esclaramonde's brother if he will not be christened, 353; is confessed by the bishop of Bordeaux, and receives a hallowed stool, 355; takes his knights with him, *ib.*; sails down the Garonne, 356; takes ship for Anfamie, 358; encounters storms, 359; approaches the gulf of hell, 361; prepares for death, 362; speaks with Judas, 364-7; hurries from the gulf of hell, 367; approaches the rock Adamant, 368; longs to attack the castle, 371; is warned of its dangers, 372; desires to fight with the serpent in the castle, 375; attacked by Saracens, 376; loses many knights, 378; slays many Saracens, 378; alone of his company survives famine, 379; visits the Adamant castle, 380; slays the serpent, 382; marvels at the castle's splendour, 383; and eats fruit in the garden, 385; finds feeble sustenance there, 407; discovers a marvellous cellar, 408; sees four fairies, 409; obtains from them meat and drink, 410; enjoys every luxury, 412; sees Moorish ship on Adamant rock, 414; promises Moors safety, if converted to Christianity, 417; receives

the bishop of Lisbon, an old friend, 419 ; grows weary of inactivity, 425 ; perceives the griffin, 426 ; confessed by the bishop of Lisbon, 428 ; is carried off by the griffin, pretending to be dead, 429 ; at the white rock, 430 ; attacks and slays the griffin and her young, 431-3 ; bathes in the fountain of youth, 434 ; eats of the apples of youth, *ib.* ; is bidden by an angel to gather these apples, 436 ; learns of the fate of Bordeaux from the angel, 436-7 ; leaves the rock, 439 ; finds a rich ship, *ib.* ; passes through a dark passage in the rocks, 441 ; lands at Tauris in Persia, 443 ; meets Barnard, 447 ; finds the ballast of his ship to be precious stones, 448 ; well received by the admiral of Tauris, 456 ; gives the admiral an apple of youth, 465 ; is promised the aid of the admiral of Tauris, 470 ; leaves Tauris with the admiral, 471 ; at Angore, 472 ; fights against the men of the city, 475 ; kills the admiral, 476 ; conquers the city, 477 ; coasts by Abylaunte, 478 ; reaches an evil port, 480 ; ascends a mountain above, 483 ; meets Cain, 484 ; learns Cain's history, and abandons him, 487 ; meets an awful fiend, 489 ; pretends to be Cain, 491 ; is treated well by the fiend, *ib.* ; at Colanders, 492 ; meets the admiral of Tauris and Barnard again, 495 ; travels to Antioch, 498 ; and Damascus, 499 ; and goes on to Jerusalem, 500 ; advises a forward attack on the Saracens at Rames, 503 ; kills five kings and two admirals, 508 ; kills the admiral of Dorbrys, 511 ; attacks the sultan Saphadim, 514 ; is hard beset, and is rescued, 516 ; returns to Acre, 519 ; has a vision of trouble at Mayence, 520 ; anxious to go to Esclaramonde, 522 ; advises a return of the admiral of Tauris' troops, 523 ; resolves to return to Europe, 525 ; at Marseilles, 528 ; visits Cluny disguised as a pilgrim from Jerusalem, 547 ; sees Chariet, 548 ; reveals himself, to the joy of all, and tells his adventures, 551 ; offers the abbot an apple of youth, 553 ; brings his men and wealth from Tournois to Cluny, 557 ; goes with Barnard to Mayence, 559 ; is the first pilgrim to approach the Emperor on Good Friday, 560 ; gives him a precious stone, 561 ; is promised the release of Esclaramonde, 565 ; tells his adventures, 566 ; gives the Emperor an apple of youth, 568 ; and meets Esclaramonde, 570 ; with his wife and Emperor goes to Cluny,

572; beats back abbot's men, 576; and enters Bordeaux, 578; sends the griffin's foot to King Louis, 583; sets out for fairyland, 583; driven into Spanish Sea, 585; shipwrecked near a beautiful castle, where monks live who are evil angels, 588; is preserved by magic stones, 593; carried by a monk to a high rock, 595; reaches Oberon's city of Momur, 597; is crowned king of fairyland by Oberon, 600; threatens to enforce obedience on King Arthur, 602; gives Arthur parts of his realm, 603; attends Oberon's funeral, 606; comes with fairy army to Courtois to arrange dispute between the kings of Navarre and Arragon, and to marry Florence to his daughter Clariet, 676-82; meets Clariet, 684; makes good all damage done by war, 687; returns to Momur, 689.

IDE, daughter of Florence and Clariet, born, 690; of great beauty, 692; sought in marriage by Florence, her own father, 694; escapes in man's apparel, 697; helped by Sorbare, 700; goes to Germany, 702; attacked by thieves, 705; at Rome salutes Emperor, 708; mistaken for a man, 709; attends Emperor's daughter Olive, 710; is knighted, 712; leads Emperor's army against Spaniards, 714; does deadly slaughter, 716; takes king of Spain prisoner, 718; pleads for his life, 719; declines to marry Olive, 721; yields to threats, 722; married to Olive, 724; sex discovered, and sent to stake, 728; sex miraculously changed, 729; crowned Emperor, 730; visits Florence at Courtois, 737; helps Florence to rule, 737.

ISOUE, xxvii, loved by Tristram, 157.

IVORYN OF MOMBRAUNTE, 131; uncle of Esclaramonde, 161; learns of her and of her father's fortune, 163; sends to take Esclaramonde from Galaffer, 164; is defied, and prepares for war upon Galaffer, 165; summons his men of war, 174; swears vengeance, 175; receives Mouflet the minstrel, and Huon his servant, 176; asks Huon what is his capacity, 177; makes trial of his knowledge of chess by bidding him play with his daughter, 178; leads his troops to Anfalerne, 183; applauds Huon for slaying Sorbryn, 187; defeats Galaffer, 188; honours and feasts Huon, 189; leads second attack on Anfalerne, 197; sees Huon follow Gerames into Anfalerne, 199; urges his men to rescue Huon, 200; receives

- Galaffer's submission, 201; fights with Galaffer against Huon, 203; condemns Mouflet to death, 204; learns of Huon's flight, 213; enters the castle of Anfalerne, 214.
- IVORYN's daughter loves Huon, 179; plays chess with him, 180; watches the fight, 196.
- IVACARS, son of Earl Remon of St. Giles, plots to murder Croissant, 745, 754; is killed, 756.
- JAMES, St., 28.
- JERACLE, son of Ivoryn, 132.
- JOHN, St., feast of, 124, 132.
- JOYEUSE, Charlemagne's sword, xii.
- JOZERANE, German knight killed by Huon, 322.
- JUDAS ISCARIOT, 459; kisses Jesus, 52, 223; floats on canvas by gulf of hell, 363; recounts his history, 364-5; cannot die, 366; once gave away piece of canvas in charity, *ib.*; warns Huon of peril, 367.
- JULIUS CÆSAR. *See* CÆSAR.
- KATHARINE, Guymart's daughter, marries Croissant, 782.
- LEMPATRIX, a fairy, 66.
- LEWIS, LOYS, LOWIS, Charlemagne's younger son, 4; succeeds as Emperor, 388; receives griffin's foot from Huon, 583.
- LISBON, bishop of, wrecked on Adamant rock, 416; recognizes Huon, 419; is free from sin, 421; eats at pleasure in Adamant castle, 422; baptizes Saracens, *ib.*; warns Huon of griffin, 428.
- LOHERAINS, *LES*, a romance where Huon mentioned, xxviii.
- LYLY, JOHN, and Euphuism, 785.
- MACAIRE, MACAYR, Huon's uncle, brother of Sevin, tyrant of Tormont, 81; is a pagan, 83; longs for Huon's magic cup, 87; threatens Huon, *ib.*; recognizes him as his nephew, 89; invites him to his castle, *ib.*; plots to murder Huon, 90-1; is driven from castle, and besieges Huon there, 92. [There is a *chanson* named *Macaire* (twelfth cent.), whose hero charges Charlemagne's queen Blanche fleur with adultery.]
- MAHOUNDE, 133, *et passim*; Macomyte, 477; Mahomet, 500.
- MALABRON, MALLABRON, a man transformed by Oberon into a sea beast, 111; bears Huon up the Nile, 112; begs Oberon to let him

aid Huon, 167; condemned to be sea monster twenty-eight years longer, 167-8; swims to Huon at Noisaunt, and brings him to mainland, 169; at Bordeaux, 267; accompanies fairy Gloriande, 598, 677.

MARCUS AURELIUS, *Book of*, translated by Lord Berners, xlv, 784.

MARGALE, a fairy, 65.

MARKHAM, GERVASE, quoted, xlix, 790.

MAURYSE, abbot of, welcomes Huon, 219; invites Huon and Gerard to supper, 225; keeps Huon's treasure, *ib.*; is killed by Gerard and Gybouars while guarding the treasure, 233.

MERES, FRANCIS, quoted, xlviii.

MERLIN, MARLYN, son of Ogier the Dane, accompanies King Arthur to Oberon's court, 601.

MORGAN LE FAY at Oberon's court, 536; sister of King Arthur, 601, 684.

MOUFLET, a minstrel, 170; helps Huon, 171; served Gaudys, 172; takes Huon as his servant, 173; at Mombraunt, 174; tells Ivoryn of Gaudys' death, 175; plays the viol before Ivoryn, *ib.*; is well rewarded, 176; celebrates Huon's victories, 190; is condemned to be hanged for befriending Huon, 204; is saved by Huon, 205; plays before Huon, 207; in France, 213; baptized by Pope, 217; is called Garyn, *ib.*

NAIMES, NAYMES, Duke of Bavaria. [A character invariably introduced into Charlemagne romances. According to *Aubri le Bourgoing*, he is son of Gasselin, king of Bavaria; is protected from an usurper, Cassile or Tassillon, by Charlemagne; in *Roland*, *Aspremont*, and *Acquin* he plays great part as friend of the Emperor; in the *Voyage à Jerusalem* he first appears as one of 'les douze pairs'; in the *Anseis de Carthage* (late poem) his death is recounted. He is the Nestor of the Charlemagne cycle; cp. *Aspremont*, 'Tel conseil lier n'orent ongues li Franc.'] Survivor of Roncesvalles, 2; chief of Charlemagne's council, 3; complains of Amaury's guile, 6, 12; seeks to comfort Charlemagne, 32; prepares duel between Huon and Amaury, 38; reproaches Emperor, 41; intercedes for Huon, 47; with Huon at Troyes, 52; declines Gerard's offer of treasure, 235; suspects Gerard, 238; denounces him, 239;

urges Emperor to send for Huon, 249; declares Huon cannot be tried at Bordeaux, 255; drinks from Oberon's enchanted cup, 261. NAVARRE, king of, fights against king of Aragon, 633; taken by Florence, 644; released, 647; enters Tarragon, 660; besieges king of Arragon at Courtois, 676; accepts Huon's intervention, 681; makes peace, 685; visits Florence, 701.

NEPTANABUS, father of Alexander the Great, 73.

NORTH, *Sir Thomas, and Euphuism*, 785-8.

OBERON, king of fairyland, his literary history traced, xxix; compared with Welsh Gwyn and German Alberich, xxx; his genealogy criticized, xxxi; *Le Roman d'Auberon*, xxxiii; Wieland's poem of, xxxviii; in *Midsummer Night's Dream*, 1; Weber's opera about, li;—besets the road to Babylon, 63; the dwarf king of fairyland, *ib.*; is seen by Huon, 65; blows his magic horn, 66, 70; speaks to Huon, 67; raises a storm, 67, 69; attacks him, 70; recites Huon's adventures, 71; tells his history, 72-3; king of Momur, 74; gives Huon a magic banquet, 74-5; his magic cup, 76; gives Huon the cup and horn, 77-8; makes a path through water for Huon, 78; is recklessly summoned by Huon, 80; curses him, *ib.*; forgives him, 81; foretells peril for Huon, and bids him farewell, 82, 96, 154, 267; comes to Tormont, to protect Huon, 94; is angry with Huon, 118; comes to Huon's aid in killing the Admiral Gaudys, 152; places Huon's trophies gained from Gaudys in Gerames' side, 153; warns Huon against having intercourse with Esclaramonde till their marriage at Rome, 154; gives him a ship, *ib.*; laments Huon's misfortunes, 166; bids Malabron fetch him Huon's horn, cup, and harness, 169; pities Huon's misfortunes in France, 257; appears before Charlemagne with 100,000 men, 258-9; wills the fetters to fall from Huon, 259; offers the king his enchanted cup, 260; charges Charlemagne with crime, *ib.*; rebukes the Emperor, 261; bids Gerard appear, *ib.*; orders the objects of Huon's mission to appear before Charlemagne, 264; is mistaken by Charlemagne for God, 265; recites his history, *ib.*; bids Huon come to Momur in four years' time, 266; promises him the kingdom of fairyland, *ib.*; tells of his going to Paradise, 267; laments over Huon, 273-4;

- grieves for his father Julius Caesar's death, 412; will never come to castle of Adamant afterwards, *ib.*; sends Gloriande and Malabron to save Esclaramonde, 536-8; sick at Momur, 597; receives Huon as his successor, 598; crowns Huon king and Esclaramonde queen of fairyland, 600; welcomes King Arthur, 601; makes peace between Huon and Arthur, 602; dies, 605; is carried to Paradise, is buried in a new abbey, 606; sets treasure in old palace at Rome for Croissant, 780.
- OGIER THE DANE, subject of *chanson de geste*, xiii *n.*, xv *n.*; father of Baudouyn, 4; kills Bertrand, Naymes' son, 33; destroyed city of Colanders, 489; father of Merlin, 601.
- OLIVE, Roman Emperor's daughter, falls in love with Ide, 709; is betrothed to Ide, 721; married, 724; discovers Ide's sex, 726; is delivered of son, Croissant, 730.
- OLIVER, xii; death of, 2.
- OLYFARNE, king of, killed by Huon, 511.
- ORCANAY, admiral of, brother of the Sowdone, killed by Huon, 511.
- ORTNIT, a German Emperor, xxx, xxxi.
- ORYANE, a fairy, 684.
- OTHO, Emperor of Germany at Rome, 702; accepts Ide's service, 709; knights Ide, 712; applauds Ide's prowess, 717; spares king of Spain, 718; insists on Ide's marriage to Olive, 721; learns Ide's sex, 727; orders Ide to be burned, 728; dies, 729.
- OTHON, a German knight, ordered to hang Gerames and French prisoners, and pleads for delay, 329; rebukes the hangman for insulting Gerames, 331; is spared by Huon, 333; agrees to serve Huon, *ib.*; fights well, 334; supports Gerames, 393.
- OTINEL, or OTUEL, a *chanson de geste*, xviii *n.*, xix, xx.
- PETER, St., church of, at Rome, 54.
- PETER (Sir) of Aragon, 621; rescues Clariet at Tours, 622; kills king of Grenade, 623; brings Clariet to Tarragona, 624; leads men against king of Navarre, 634; rescues Clariet from drowning, 640; threatens king of Aragon, 642; pleads for watchman who released Clariet and Florence, 655.
- PHILIP, king of France, hangs up Huon's griffin's foot in a chapel, 583.

POMPEY, fights with Cæsar, 73, 265 ; vanquished by Cæsar, 411.

POPE OF ROME, Huon's uncle, receives Huon, 54, 216 ; baptizes Esclaramonde and Mouflet, 216 ; marries Huon and Esclaramonde, 217.

PTOLEMY kings of Egypt attack Cæsar at Adamant : their treasure, 411.

RAOUL, duke of Austria, hears of Esclaramonde's beauty, 276-7 ; nephew of German Emperor, 278 ; begs his uncle to announce tournament, 278 ; plots Huon's death, 279 ; visits Bordeaux disguised as pilgrim, 281 ; lies to Huon, 282 ; deeply in love with Esclaramonde, 283 ; at Mayence, *ib.* ; is abused by Huon of coveting his wife, 288 ; is slain by Huon, 289.

RAUF COLLEGEAR, an English poem, xix, xx.

REMON, Earl of St. Giles, besieged at Nice by kings of Grenade and Belmaryne, 741 ; accepts Croissant's help, 742 ; offers his daughter to Croissant, 745, 753 ; threatens to murder Croissant, 759.

RENAUD DE MONTAUBAN, a chanson de geste, xiii, xix n., xx.

REYNAULTE OF BEAULAND takes Sorbare, 668.

REYNGAULTE OF MOUNTABAN wins and loses Angore, 472-3.

RICHAR, a knight of Huon, 341.

ROLAND, *chanson of*, x ; its authorship, xvii, xxi ; death of, 2.

ROLAND AND VERNAGU, xviii, xx.

ROUSILLON, GERARD of. *See* GERARD.

ROWLANDE'S SONG, an English poem, xix.

SALAMON, temple of, 500.

SALATER, false name assumed by Huon, 172.

SALMET, JOHAN, an incredulous monk, 553 ; sent to prison, and is pardoned, 555.

SALYBRAUNT, king of Bougye, brother of Esclaramonde, offers Huon aid, 310.

SAPHADIN, Sowdan of Babylon and Egypt, 500.

SAVARY, Earl, killed by Huon, 298.

SAVARY or SAVORY, duke, father of Raoull, 315 ; brother of Emperor of Germany weeps over his son's death, 315 ; before Bordeaux, 319 ; fights with Huon, 321 ; is defeated, 322 ; retreats from an

ttack, 339; believes Bordeaux impregnable, 340; urges Thierry o persist with siege, 390; falls on Gerames, 395.

SEBYLLE meets Huon at Dunother, 98; daughter of Guynemer of St. Omer, and niece of Duke Sevin, 100; her history, *ib.*; directs Huon to the giant's chamber, 102; is married to a converted admiral of Babylon, 154.

SEGE OF MELAYNE, an English romance, xviii.

SEVIN or SÉGUIN, duke, his historical origin, xxviii, xxix; in romance, xxxvii; Huon's father, 5, 12, 13, 17, 23, 59, 61.

SEYNE, Earl of, slain by Huon, 291.

SEZAR, 73. *See* CÆSAR, JULIUS.

SORBARE, Saracen ruler and reputed Christian, takes care of Florence and Clariet, 666; once king of Belmaryn, 668; offers to become Christian, 669; welcomes French pilgrims, 670; attacked by Saracens, 673; overcomes them, 674; advises Florence, 693; helps Ide to escape, 700.

SORBRYN, nephew of Angolaffer, 184; challenges Ivoryn's bravest soldier, 185; is defied by Huon, 186; and killed, 187.

SOWDONE, *i. e.* Sultan. *See* GAUDYS and SAPHADIN.

SOWDONE OF BABYLON, an English romance, xviii *n.*

SPAIN, king of, fights against Emperor of Rome, 714; is captured by Ide, 718; his life spared, 719.

SPERGUER, Sir Hans, a German knight, 291.

SYMCAN, temple of, 500.

TAURIS, admiral of, welcomes Huon, 456; has served Charlemagne, 459; consents to turn Christian, 463; eats apple of youth, and grows young, 465; hallowed by bishop of Greece, 466; offers Huon his daughters in marriage, 467; promises to help in rescue of Esclaramonde, 469; with Huon against the admiral of Angore, 475; gets the admiral's horse, 477; is left by Huon, 480; at Colanders, 489; besieges the city, 493; conquers it, and finds Huon, 495; at Antioch, 498; marches to Jerusalem, 499; defeats Saracens there, 505-18; raises siege of Acre, 525; offers army to Huon against German Emperor, 525.

THIERRY, Duke, 23.

THIERRY, TYRREY, Emperor of Germany, declares tournaments at

Mayence, 278, 284 ; appealed to by Huon, 287 ; sees Huon murder Raoull, 288 ; pursues him, 291 ; is struck by him, 292 ; swears to take Bordeaux, 293 ; leads his army against Huon, 297 ; challenges Huon, 300 ; is defeated and rescued, 301 ; begs six months' truce, 302 ; at Cologne, 303 ; censures the provost for ignoring truce, 305 ; collects army at Mayence, 314 ; ravages land about Bordeaux, 317 ; before the city, 318 ; promises Esclaramonde to the slayer of Huon, 320 ; wounded by Huon, 323 ; orders Gerames to be hanged, 326 ; orders another attack on city, 338 ; declines peace, 343 ; attacks Bordeaux, 389 ; runs Gerames through the body, 396 ; enters Bordeaux, 398 ; forbids outrage, *ib.* ; speaks with Esclaramonde, 400 ; imprisons her at Mayence, 406 ; grieves for his nephew, 532 ; prepares to burn Esclaramonde, *ib.* ; spares her by Oberon's order, 542 ; treats her well, 543 ; receives precious stone from Huon, 561 ; releases Esclaramonde, 565 ; eats Huon's apple and becomes young, 568 ; at Cluny met Huon, 572 ; entertained at Bordeaux, 578.

THOLOMEUS, 411. *See* PTOLEMY.

THYBAULT, THYBAULTE, king of Jerusalem, 500, 502.

TRAMPOYNGFLE, TRAMPONGNIFLE, TRAMPOIGNIFLE ['the which is as moch to say as Balaach Balak'], messenger from the Sowdan at Jerusalem, 500 ; is hanged, 520.

TRANSLYNE, TRANSELYNE, a fairy, 66, 601, 602, 603, 606, 684 ; her gift to Oberon, 73 ; niece of Morgan le Fay, 536.

TROYES, CHRETIEN DE, poet, xiv.

TRYSTRAM, xxvii ; died of love, 157.

TURPIN, his *Latin chronicle*, viii n., xx.

VERGIER, lord of, 530 ; kills the German Emperor's nephew, 531.

X. GLOSSARY.¹

THE following words occurring in the text are clearly typographical errors:—

- p. 28, l. 13, *puysson read punysyon, i. e. punishment.*
 p. 81, l. 16, *reuynsyd read renynsyd, i. e. renounced.*
 p. 223, l. 7, *euunyd read eniunyd, i. e. enjoined.*
 p. 305, l. 4, *asyse read aryse.*
 p. 430, l. 30, *repenissshed read replenissshed.*
 p. 596, l. 26, *stone read shone.*

- A bought, *adv.* about, 372.
 A bowndance, *sb.* abundance, 367.
 A brode, *adv.* abroad, sprede abroad
 = spread out, 170.
 A hye, *adv.* aloud, 197.
 A pon, *prep.* upon, 5.
 A tournyd, *perf.* have turned, 149.
 Aboue, *adv.* on shore, 160. Cf. *Tor.*
of Portugal: 'Ffast from the land
 row they began, *Above* they left
 that gentilman, With wild bestis
 to have byde.'
 Abussheiment, *sb.* ambush, 225.
 Abye, *vb.* [buy], atone for, suffer for,
 542. [O.E. *a*, out, *byegan*, to buy.]
 Aduertysyd, *pp.* informed, 71. [Fr.
avertir.]
 Affectuosly, *adv.* earnestly, 9. [O.
 Fr. *affectueux*.]
 Afrayed, *ppl.* alarmed, 40.
 Al to brast, burst utterly asunder,
 300; al = utterly, entirely to
 brast, *pt. ppl.* = burst asunder,
 from *tobresten* [A.S. *toberstan*];
to is a prefix signifying 'in pieces'
 or 'asunder.' Cf. *Judges* ix. 53:
 'all to brake' = utterly brake in
 pieces.
 All wheres, *adv.* everywhere, 136. | Almayne, *sb.* Germany, 296. [O.Fr.
alemaigne.]
 Almayns, *sb. pl.* Germans.
 Alonely, *adj.* solitary, single, 46.
 Alonlye, *adv.* solely, entirely;
 emph. for *only*, 9.
 Alow, *vb.* commend, approve of, 337.
 [O.Fr. *alouer*, from Lat. *allau-*
dare.]
 Alowed, *pt.* commended, praised,
 686.
 Amoures, *sb.* love, 155; in amoures
 = in love. [Fr. *amour*.]
 Amyte, *sb.* friendship, 8. [Fr. *amitié*.]
 Apareyled, *ppl.* attired, apparelled,
 15.
 Apayred, *ppl.* injured, weakened,
 340. [O.Fr. *empeirer*, from Lat.
em + *pejorare*, to worsen, make
 worse.]
 Apeace, *vb.* appease, allay, 14.
 Apealyde, *pt.* accused, impeached,
 22; v. APELE.
 Apeasyd, *ppl.* appeased, allayed, 16.
 Apeched, *ppl.* betrayed, informed
 against, 720. [O.F. *empechier*.]
 Apelo, *vb.* accuse, impeach, 25. [O.
 Fr. *appeler*.] 'appeler, . . . to
 accuse, appeach.'—*Cotgrave*.

¹ This part of the work is largely due to Mr. W. H. Utley of Owen's College, Manchester. Mr. Henry Bradley, co-editor of the *Oxford New Dictionary*, has kindly supplied a few notes.

- Aperelyd, *ppl.* apparelled, 3.
 Aperteynynd, *vb.* belonged, 4.
 Apeychyd, *pt.* accused, impeached, 27.
 Apon, *prep.* upon, 169.
 Appellyd, *pp.* 44; v. APEALYDE.
 Arson, *sb.* pommell, saddle-bow, 700. [O.Fr. *arzon*.]
 Assaye, *vb.* try, test, 178.
 Assembeled, *pt.* attacked, assailed, 613. [O.Fr. *assembler*.] This meaning is very rare, and Murray's New English Dictionary cites this passage only in support of it. It occurs also on p. 659, l. 20.
 Assoylled, *pt.* absolved, 217. [O. Fr. *a(s)soillir*, *a(s)soldre*.]
 Asspyall, *sb.* [espial], a waylaying, 26. [O.Fr. *espier*.] 'espier, . . . to dog, lie for, waylay.'—*Cotgr.*
 Astonnyd, *pp.* stunned, 42. [O.Fr. *estoner*, to stun.] 'He fell to the grounde *astonyed*.'—*Merlin*, x. 164.
 Astaynst, *prep.* against, 108.
 Atemperate, *adj.* temperate, 712. [O.Fr. *atempéré*.]
 Atons, *adv.* at once, 431.
 Auaunsyd, *pt.* advanced, 308.
 Auaunt, *sb.* boast, 308; he made his avaunt = he boasted. [O.Fr. *avaunter*, to boast.]
 Auayle, *vb.* lower, 359. [O.Fr. *avaler*, from *phr. à val*, Lat. *ad vallem*.] 'Drawe vp your ankers and *auayle* your sayles.'—*Lord Berners*, *Froiss*, I. ccclxxiv., 619.
 Auctoryte, *sb.* authority, power, 581. [O.Fr. *auctorité*.]
 Auow, *sb.* vow, 183.
 Auoyd, *vb.* depart, 48. ' . . . he commanded them to *auoid*.'—G. Sandys, *Trav.*, 72.
 Avoydyd, *pp.* emptied, cleared, 40. ' . . . commanded the chambre to be *avoided*.'—*Elyot*, *Gov.*, II. vii. 105.
 Balays, *vb.* balance, steady, 460; *i. e.* ballast. [*Balays* is an intermediate form between *balance*, Fr. *balancer* and *ballast*, O.Sw. *barlast*, due to confusion between the two.]
 Baptyme, *sb.* baptism, 95. [Fr. *baptême*.]
 Bassade, *sb.* embassy, 466. [O.Fr. *embassade*.]
 Bayne, *sb.* bath, 698. [O.Fr. *baigne*.]
 Baynyd, *pt.* bathed, 427.
 Beofes, *sb.* beesves, cattle, 183. [O. Fr. *boef*.]
 Besant, *sb.* 772. 'A gold coin, first struck at *Byzantium*, and seemingly equivalent to the Roman *solidus* or *aureus*, but afterwards varying in value between the English sovereign and half-sovereign. It was current in Europe from the 9th cent., and in England till superseded by the noble, *temp.* Edw. III. Used by Wyc. if to translate both *talentum* and *drachma*.'—Murray.
 Besene, *adj.* clad, furnished, 119, 680.
 Bet, *pt.* beat, hammered, 86.
 Borow, *sb.* town, borough, 336. [A.S. *burh*.]
 Bountye, *sb.* goodness, generosity, 146. [Fr. *bonté*.]
 Brast, *pt.* broke, burst, 103. [A.S. *brestan*.]
 Brent, *pp.* burnt, 192. [brennen, Chaucer, C. T., 2333. A.S. *byrnan*.]
 Brest, *vb.* burst, 117. [A.S. *berstan*.] 'So wolde God myn herte wolde brest.'—*Chaucer*, C. T., 6685.
 Bresten, *pp.* burst, bursten, 69.
 Bretherne, *sb. pl.* brethren, 56.
 Brochyd, *pt.* spurred, 22. [O.F. *brocher*, to spur.] 'Ther lances alle forth laid and ilk man *broched* his stede.'—*Robert of Brunne*, p. 305.
 Brother-germayn, a full brother; *i. e.* with same father and mother, 511. [O.Fr. *germaine*.]
 Brunt, *sb.* attack, onset, 305. [Icel. *bruna*.]
 Brute, *sb.* tumult, noise, 181. [Fr. *bruit*.]
 Brydale, *sb.* bridal, wedding, 613. [M.E. *bride ale*, bride feast.]
 Brydes, *sb. pl.* newly married couple, 217. [Here bryde = spouse.]

Brynyng, *pp.* burning, 103.
 Burden, *sb.* bundle, 760. [*I. e.* as much as can be borne.]
 Bushment, *sb.* ambuscade, ambush, 14.
 By cause, *conj.* because, 19.
 Camesyd, *adj.* flattened, 103; came-syd nose = a pug-nose. [*Fr.* *canus*. *Ital.* *canoso*.] 'And though my nose be *canused*, my lips thick.' — *Ben Jonson, Sad Shep.*, ii. 1. 'Round was his face & *canous* was his nose.' — *Chaucer, C. T.*, 3932.
 Carnall, *adj.* pertaining to the flesh, hence related, connected by birth, 333. 'Thei were noble knyghtes . . . and many of hem *carrell* frendes.' — *Merlin*, I. ii. 117.
 Caryag, *sb.* [carriage], things carried, baggage, accoutrements, 498. [*O. Fr.* *cariage*.] '*cariage* . . . all the necessary provision of an army, baggage.' — *Cotgrave*.
 Cassydony, *sb.* chalcidony, 440. [*Low Lat.* *cacelonius*.]
 Caytyfe, *sb.* [caitiff], prisoner, mean person, 645. [*O. Fr.* *caitif*.]
 Chameney, *sb.* [chimney], fire-place, 383. [*O. Fr.* *cheminée*.]
 Chatelyne, *sb.* castellan, governor of a castle or town, 493. [*Fr.* *châtelain*.]
 Chaumberer, *sb.* maid-servant, 623. [*O. Fr.* *chambrière*.]
 Chere, *sb.* face, countenance, 57. [*O. Fr.* *chere*.] 'The lady is rody in the *chere*.' — *Alisaunder*.
 Chorlysshely, *adv.* churlishly, 757.
 Chyualrey, *sb.* collective for a body or number of knights, 2.
 Claime, *pt.* of climb, 652.
 Clees, *sb.* *pl.* claws, 430. [*A. S.* *clá*.]
 Clene, *adv.* completely, 197.
 Clerke, *sb.* scholar, man of letters, 274.
 Clocher, *sb.* belfry, 68. [*Fr.* *clocher*.]
 Clypped, *pt.* embraced, 635. [*A. S.* *clyppen*.] '... then again worries he his daughter, with *clipping* her.' — *Shakspeare, Winter's T.*, V. ii.

Colyke, *sb.* colic, 194.
 Comoned, *pt.* [communed], conversed, 195. [*O. Fr.* *communier*.]
 Companye, *vb.* associate, consort, 17. [*O. Fr.* *compaigner*.]
 Commalte, *sb.* common people, 401. [*O. Fr.* *communauté*.]
 Condempne, *pr.* condemn, 167.
 Conduite, *vb.* conduct, 18.
 Connyng, *adj.* skilful, 172. [*A. S.* *cunnan*.]
 Contynew, *sb.* contents, 57. [*Fr.* *contenu*.]
 Conuersante, *adj.* resident, having one's abode, 592.
 Conyng, *sb.* skill, dexterity, 730.
 Corante, *adj.* current, in circulation, 364. [*O. Fr.* *curant*.]
 Coraunt, 52; *v.* CORANTE.
 Cordiners, *sb.* *pl.* shoemakers [= cordwainers, from *cordwain*, a kind of Spanish leather made at Cordova], 764.
 Cordyall, *adj.* affectionate, cordial, 721.
 Cosyn, *sb.* kinsman, cousin, 52.
 Coude, *vb.* could, 499.
 Couerte, *sb.* a covered place, hiding place, 636; by couerte = under cover, hiding. [*O. Fr.* *covert*.]
 Couetys, *sb.* covetousness, 251. [*O. Fr.* *coveitise*.]
 Counsell, *vb.* to take counsel, consult, 3.
 Courteys, *adj.* courteous, 171. [*O. Fr.* *curteis*.]
 Couyn, *sb.* trick, artifice, 50. [*O. Fr.* *covine*.] 'They ne knewe his sleight and his *coveyne*.' — *Chaucer, C. T.*, 605.
 Couytys, 320; *v.* COUETYS.
 Coyle, *sb.* [coif], a cap worn under the helmet, 715; a close fitting helmet, 24. [*O. Fr.* *coiffe*.]
 Creature, *sb.* creator, 436.
 Credens, *sb.* credit, 609. Cf. 'letters of credence.' [*O. Fr.* *credence*.]
 Crops, *sb.* [crop], back, *lit.* top, or that which sticks out, 169. [*A. S.* *cropp*. Cf. *Ice.* *kroppr*, a hump. *Dan.* *krop*, the trunk of the body.]
 Crye, *sb.* proclamation, 296.
 Crysten, *adj.* Christian, 83.

- Damoselles, *sb. pl.* maids, 540. [O. Fr. *damoisele*.]
 Dampned, *pp.* damned, 283; v. CONDEMPNED.
 Decessyd, *pp.* [deceased], dead, 54. [O. Fr. *deccs*.]
 Dedes, *sb. pl.* deeds, 171.
 Defende, *vb.* forbid, 46. [Fr. *dé-fendre*.]
 Defowlyd, *pt.* [defiled], trod under foot, trampled on, 433. [O. Fr. *defouler*, to trample under foot.]
 '... defouled hym under hym myd honde and myd fote.'—*Rob. of Glouc.*
 Dele, *sb.* part, portion, 554. [A. S. *dæl*.]
 Denyd, *pp.* dined, 190. [Fr. *diner*.]
 Departed, *pp.* separated, 336. [O. Fr. *departir*, to distribute, separate.]
 Deuore, *sb.* duty, 46. [Fr. *devoir*.]
 Deuyses, *sb. pl.* conversation, 58. [Fr. *deviser*, to converse, chat.]
 Deuysyd, *pp.* proposed, planned, 7; conversed, 273.
 Deuysynge, *prp.* conversing, communing, 13; v. DEUYSES.
 Devours, *sb. pl.* duties, 300. [Fr. *devoirs*.]
 Dismay, *vb. reflex.* to be dismayed, 17; dismay you not = be not dismayed.
 Dolent, *adj.* sorrowful, 356. [Fr. *dolent*, doleful.]
 Dolour, *sb.* pain, suffering, 23. [O. Fr. *doleur*.]
 Damage, *sb.* misfortune, injury, 146. [Fr. *dommage*.]
 Doubled, *sb.* doublet, 757.
 Dought, *sb.* [doubt], fear, 9; v. DOUGHTED.
 Doughted, *sb.* [doubted], feared, 197. [In M. E. usually spelt *douted*, from Lat. *dubitare*. Not connected with *doughty*, which is from A. S. *dyhtig*, valiant.]
 Douted, 335; v. DOUGHTED.
 Drams, *sb. pl.* drachmæ, 142.
 Dressed up, erected, set up, 744. [Fr. *dresser*, to erect, set up.]
 Durynge, *prp.* [during], enduring, 232. [Fr. *durer*, to endure, suffer.]
 Dymes, *sb. pl.* [dimes], tithes, *i. e.* offerings, 485. [O. Fr. *disme*; Lat. *decimus*.] 'He gaue hym dymes of alle thingis.'—*Wycliffe, Gen. xiv.* 20.
 Dyn, *pp.* [done], used for, 502; past tense, = did.
 Dysces, *sb.* decease, death, 603.
 Dysconfyt, *vb.* [discomfit], vanquish, 47. [O. Fr. *desconfire*.]
 Dyscounfyture, *sb.* discomfiture, defeat, 2. [O. Fr. *desconfiture*.]
 Dyscryue, *vb.* [describe], describe, 140. [O. Fr. *descrire*.]
 Dyshordenate, *adj.* [disordinate], unlawful, intemperate, 700. [Fr. *désordonné*.]
 Dysordynate, 696; v. DYSHORDE-NATE.
 Dysparasyon, *sb.* desperation, despair, 364.
 Dyspence, *sb.* expense, 718. [O. Fr. *despence*.]
 Dyssayue, *vb.* deceive, 69. [O. Fr. *decever*.]
 Dysspyse, *vb.* [despise], to make despicable, *i. e.* to curse, 42.
 Dyssymell, *vb.* [dissimule], to disguise, conceal, 254. [Fr. *dis-simuler*.]
 Dystroyed, *pp.* killed, 46.
 Enbassed, *sb.* [embassade], embassy, 740.
 Enbassetours, *sb. pl.* ambassadors, 740.
 Enbusshid, *pp.* ambushed, 222.
 Endroctryned, *pp.* [endocrined], educated, taught, 576.
 Enherytor, *sb.* [enheritor], heir, 4. [Fr. *héritier*.]
 Ensampl, *sb.* example, 12. [O. Fr. *ensample*.]
 Entarmeded, *pt.* mingled, 337. [O. Fr. *entremedler*.] 'Entremedled with tydynges.'—*Chaucer, House of Fame*, iii. 1031.
 Entraylyd, *pp.* interwoven, variegated, 384. [O. Fr. *entreiller*.]
 Entreated, *pp.* used, treated, 642. [O. Fr. *entraiter*.]
 Erytage, *sb.* heritage, inheritance, 143.
 Escryed, *pt.* cried out, called, 185. [O. F. *escrier*, to exclaim, call out.]
 Excusyd, *pp.* accused, 26.

Extorsyon, *sb.* [extortion], forcible exaction, 47.

Eyen, *sb. pl.* eyes, 13.

Fal, *vb.* [fall], to become, to happen; fal aquaynted = become acquainted, 629.

Falshede, *sb.* falsehood, 253. [O.Fr. *fals.*]

Fardell, *sb.* bundle, 172. [O.Fr. *fardel*; Low Lat. *fardellus*.] '... sittynge with hise fardels in the street.'—*Wycliffe, Judges* xix. 17.

Fause, *adj.* forced [of a gallop], 335.

Faye, *sb.* fairy, 536; the Fr. *le* is here used for *the*. [O.Fr. *fae*.]

Fayrre, *sb.* the nation of Fairies; Fairyland, also magic, enchantment, 305. [O.Fr. *faerie*.] 'The contree of *Faerie*.'—*Chaucer, C. T.*, 13731.

Faysable, *adj.* feasible, possible, 731. [O.Fr. *faisable*.]

Feactes, *sb. pl.* [feats], deeds, actions, 15. [O.Fr. *faictes*.]

Fell, *adj.* fierce, 120. [A.S. *fel*.]

Fellest, *adj. superl.* cruellest, 210. [A.S. *fel*, fierce.]

Felon, *adj.* malicious, wicked, 5. [O.Fr. *felon*; Low Lat. *felo*, a traitor.]

Felony, *sb.* treachery, perfidy, 4; v. FELON.

Fersly, *adv.* fiercely, 23. [O.Fr. *fers*.]

Fleynge, *pp.* fleeing, 181.

Florence, *sb.* a gold coin, value 6s., 276.

Folye, *pp.* foiled, defeated, 302. [O.Fr. *fouler*, to trample on.]

Fordo, *vb.* undo, 487. [A.S. *fordon*.]

Fournyshe, *vb.* [furnish], perform, 51. [Fr. *fournir*; O.H.G. *frumjan*, to perform.]

Fre, *adj.* [free], noble, 273.

Frendis, *sb. pl.* friends, 37.

Fresshyng, *sb.* relief, 488.

Fret, *adj.* adorned, ornamented, 259. [A.S. *frætwan*, to adorn.] 'Alle hir fyue fynghes were fretted with rynges.'—*P. Plowman*, A. ii. 11.

Frusshe, *sb.* encounter, 474. [O.Fr.

fruisse.] 'Felle was the *frusshe*, fey were there mony.'—*Destr. of Troy*, 5931.

Funt, *sb.* font, 216.

Fyaunce, *vb.* [fiance], betrothe, alliance, 50. [O.Fr. *fiuancer*.]

Gables, *sb. pl.* imposts, customs, 210. [O.Fr. *gabelle*.] 'gabelle, (any kind of) impost, imposition, custom.'—*Cotgrave*.

Gader, *vb.* gather, 305. [A.S. *gaderian*.]

Gambaud, *vb.* gambol, 187. [Fr. *gambaud*.]

Goodes, *sb. pl.* services, good deeds, 752.

Goth, *vb.* goeth, 83. [3rd sing. prec. of *go*.]

Grees, *sb. pl.* [degrees], steps, stairs, 373. [O.Fr. *gré*; Lat. *gradus*.]

Grese, *sb. pl.* 119; v. GREES.

Graged, *pt.* [grudged], angered, 374. [O.Fr. *gruger*, to murmur.]

Habandon, *vb.* abandon, give up, 190.

Hache, *sb.* axe, 510. [Fr. *hache*.]

Hast, *vb.* ask, 222.

Haunt, *vb.* frequent, 10. [O.Fr. *hauter*.]

Hayers, *sb. pl.* heirs, 720.

Herber, *sb.* an arbour, a retreat formed by the branches of trees, 704. [There is some doubt whether this word is a corruption of *harbour*, O.E. *herberȝe*, O.Fr. *herberge*, a lodging (Skeat), or of M.E. *herbere*, O.Fr. *herbier*, a garden of herbs (Stratman).]

Herbyger, *sb.* [harbinger], one who looks out for a lodging for another, 504. [O.Fr. *herberge*, a lodging.]

Herytes, *sb.* heiress, 642.

Heuynes, *sb.* heaviness, 544.

Hole, *adj.* [whole], healthy, well, 28. [A.S. *hœlan*.]

Honeste, *sb.* chastity, 624. [O.Fr. *honestet*.]

Hore, *adj.* [hoar], white, 224. [A.S. *hár*.]

Hostrye, *sb.* hostelry, 235.

Howdeous, *adj.* hideous, 489.

Hyely, *adv.* nobly, 684.

- Hyssed, *pt.* hoisted, 478. [Fr. *hausser*.]
- Ianglers, *sb. pl.* quarrelsome fellows, 10. [O.F. *jangler*, to talk loudly, to quarrel.]
- Iapery, *sb.* jesting, 85; in iapery = in jest. [Fr. *gaber*.]
- Ientylmen, *sb. pl.* gentlemen, 247.
- Ill, *adj.* evil, wicked, 4.
- Imagenyd, *pt.* devised, 221.
- Inpe, *sb.* a graft or shoot, 12. [Low Lat. *impotus*, a graft.] 'Of feeble trees their comen wretched *imps*.' *Chaucer, C. T.*, 13962.
- Inbushyd, *pp.* ambushed, 25.
- Incombraunce, *sb.* trouble, 23.
- Incontynent, *adv.* immediately, forthwith, 7. [Fr. *incontinent*.]
- In portables, *adj. pl.* intolerable, 544. [O.Fr. *importable*.] '*importable*, intolerable, insupportable, not to be borne.'—*Cotgrave*. The *s* is added by anal. with *tr. pl.*
- Inposessyons, *sb. pl.* impositions, taxes, 210.
- Intreated, *pp.* treated, used, 365; yll intreated = ill used. [O.Fr. *entraite*.]
- Jurnay, *sb.* journey, 275. [Fr. *journée*.]
- Justed, *pp.* jousted, fought, 186. [O.Fr. *jouster*.]
- Knowlege, *vb.* confess, acknowledge, 44.
- Knowlegyng, *prp.* 504; v. KNOWLEGE.
- Kyne, *sb.* king, 692.
- Kyrtyl, *sb.* kirtle, 520. [A.S. *cyrstel*.]
- Langusshe, *vb.* linger in pain, languish, 408. [O.Fr. *languir*.]
- Large, *adj.* liberal, generous, 546. [Fr. *large*; Lat. *largus*, liberal.]
- Larges, *sb.* [largess], liberality, 496. [Fr. *largesse*.]
- Larum, *sb.* noise, abbrev. for alarum, 472. [Fr. *alarme*, to call to arms.]
- Lenger, *adv.* longer, 48.
- Lesyng, *sb.* [loosing], forfeit, 37.
- Let, *vb.* to delay, be slow, also to hinder, 37. [A.S. *læt*, slow, whence *late* is also derived.]
- Leuys, *sb. pl.* levers, bars, 380. [O. Fr. *levier*.]
- Loge, *sb.* lodge, 56. [Fr. *loge*; It. *loggia*.]
- Logyng, *sb.* [lodging], dwelling-place, 31.
- Longed, *vb.* belonged, 155. [A.S. *lengian*.] 'That aȝperteineth and longeth all only to the judges.'—*Chaucer, Tale of Melibeus*.
- Lothely, *adj.* loathsome, 533. [A.S. *lath*.]
- Lowe, *vb.* lower, abase, 628.
- Lybardes, *sb. pl.* [libbards], leopards, 16.
- Lyege, *adj.* bound by feudal tenure, 236. [Etym. doubtful] *lyege man*, [liegeman] = subject, vassal. '... *liegemen* to the Dane.'—*Shaks., Hamlet*.
- Lyger, *adj.* nimble, 382. [O.Fr. *legier*.] '*legier*, quick, nimble, active.'—*Cotgrave*.
- Male, *sb.* bag, wallet, 170. [O.Fr. *male*; mod. Fr. *malle*.] This word still survives in the word *mail*, in the sense of letters, &c., carried by post, from the bag (*mail-bag*) in which they are carried.
- Malle, *sb.* mallet, hammer, 484. [O.Fr. *mail*; Lat. *malleus*.]
- Mantell tree, *sb.* the shelf over a fire-place, 383. [O.Fr. *mantel*, and *tree*, prob. in sense of a piece of wood, a beam.] 'Upon the *mantle tree* . . . stood a pot of lambative electuary.'—*Tatler*, No. 266.
- Mastres, *sb.* mistress, governess, 696. [O.Fr. *maistresse*.]
- Medelyd, *pp.* [meddled], mixed, mingled, 442. [O.Fr. *medler*, to mix, jumble.]
- Meny, *sb.* retinue, company, 499. [O.Fr. *mesnie*.] 'The kyng and his *meyne* went to burgh Konan.'—*Robert of Brunne*, p. 15.
- Meruayll, *sb.* wonder, astonishment, 321. [O.Fr. *merveille*.]
- Mew, a sparrowhawk, 177. (1) moult

- a sparrowhawk, (2) cage a sparrowhawk.
- Mew, *vb.* to confine, to keep in a cage, a term in falconry, 177. Cf. Baret's *Alvearie*: 'A mue for haukes, cauea vel cauceola accipitrum; to muen a hauke, in caueam, &c., compingere accipitrem.' — Baret.
- Minysshed, *vb.* diminished, 341. [O. Fr. *menuisier*, to lessen.]
- Mo, *adj.* and *adv.* more, 64. [A.S. *mā*.]
- Monyssyons, *sb. pl.* munitions, 58.
- Moo, *adv.* [mo], more, 36.
- Mossell, *sb.* muzzle, snout, 140. [O. Fr. *musel*.]
- Motons, *sb. pl.* sheep. [Fr. *moutons*.]
- Moyte, *sb.* half, 467. [Fr. *moitié*.]
- Mulet, *sb.* mule, 52.
- Muryed, *pp.* immured, 650. [Fr. *murer*.]
- Mygh, *vb.* [might], could, 67. [A.S. *mugan*, to be able.]
- Nerehand, *adv.* nearly, almost, 40.
- Noblesse, *sb.* nobles collectively, company of lords and ladies, 314. [Fr. *noblesse*.]
- Nones, [nonce], for the nones, 133; [= orig. *for then anes*] = for the once, for the occasion or purpose.
- Nother, *conj.* neither, 5.
- Nowell, *sb.* [noel], a cry of joy, orig. a Christmas carol, 578. [Fr. *noël*, Christmas.]
- Noyfull, *adj.* irksome, painful, 440. [O.Fr. *ausi*, mod. Fr. *ennui*, annoyance.]
- Oboute, *prep.* about, 13.
- Or, *adv.* ere, before, 11. [A.S. *ær*.]
- Or it be longe, before long, 273.
- Orpheline, *sb.* orphan, 695. [Fr. *orpheline*.]
- Orphelyns, *sb. pl.* orphans, 210.
- Orroure, *sb.* horror, 122.
- Orryble, *adj.* horrible, 101.
- Oueragis, *sb. pl.* works, ornaments, 380. [Fr. *ouvrage*.]
- Pagany, *sb.* heathendom, country of the pagans, 170.
- Parage, *sb.* lineage, birth, 693. [Fr. *parage*.] 'Ye are a man in this town of grete *parage*.' — Berners, *Froiss.*, ii. 52.
- Parelles, *sb. pl.* perils, 56.
- Parentes, *sb. pl.* cousins, kindred, 2. [Fr. *parent*, a cousin or kinsman.]
- Parfayte, *adj.* complete, 66. [O.Fr. *parfaite*.]
- Parforce, *adv.* by force, 275. [Fr. *par- and force*.]
- Parfyte, *adj.* perfect, complete, 294.
- Pariuryd, *pp.* perjured, 487.
- Parteynynge, *pr. p.* belonging, 8. [O.Fr. *partenir*.]
- Pastours = pastures, 477.
- Patrone, *sb.* captain, 212. 'Patrone of a galley, *patro de galee*.' — *Palsgrave*.
- Paynyns, *sb. pl.* pagans, heathens, 81. [Fr. *païenisme*.]
- Pelot, *sb.* pilot, 358. [O.Fr. *pilot*.]
- Persuaunt, *vb.* pursue, 81.
- Perteyse, *sb. pl.* parties, 507.
- Petuously, *adv.* piteously, 35, 715. [O.Fr. *piteus*.]
- Playse, *vb.* please, 36. [O.Fr. *plaisir*, to please.]
- Plee, *sb.* a suit, trial, 26. [O.Fr. *plai*.]
- Portables; v. IN PORTABLES.
- Porte, *sb.* gate, 56. [Fr. *porte*.]
- Poynt, *sb.* condition in good point = in good condition, trans. of Fr. *embonpoint* [*en bon point*], 307.
- Praysyd, *vb.* esteemed, valued, 39. [O.Fr. *preiser*.] 'She praiseth not his playing worth a bene.' — Chaucer, *C. T.*, 9728.
- Proues, *sb.* prowess, valour, 1. [O. Fr. *prouesse*.]
- Pryce, to 'blow the pryce' means to 'blow a blast to celebrate the capture of an animal.' The phrase occurs several times in Middle English; v. *Sir Gawayn*, 1362, also *Bk. of St. Albans*, and *MS. Cotton Vesp. B. xii.*, quoted by the editors of *Sir Tristrem*. 'The pryce' was blown when the hunting party arrived at the door of the hall on their return. In *Sir Tristrem* the same thing is called the 'tokening' in l. 518, but in

- 2749/50 we have, 'He blew priis as he can þre mot oþer mare.' The word is probably to be identified with Fr. *prise*.
- Pryuey, *adj.* privy, intimately conversant with, 13. [O.Fr. *prive*.]
- Purchase, *vb.* procure, 12. [O.Fr. *purchacer*.]
- Parcoloys, *sb.* porteullis, 335. [O.Fr. *porte coulisse*.]
- Puruey, *vb.* provide, 599. [O.Fr. *porvoir*.]
- Pusant, *adj.* puissant, powerful, 47. [Fr. *puissant*.]
- Puyssance, *sb.* puissance, might, 39.
- Pyght, *pp.* pitched, 285. 'the kyng then pyght his paulyons.' —*Sabyan*, ii. ann. 1272.
- Pylled, *pp.* hairless, bald. [Lat. *pilo*, to make bald.] Cf. pill-pate, a shaven head.
- Pyllynge, [pillling], pillaging, 401. [Fr. *piller*, to pillage.]
- Pyraottes, *sb. pl.* pirates, 375.
- Quarter, *sb.* portion, 13.
- Queyntance, *sb.* acquaintance, 92. [O.Fr. *coint*.]
- Rased, *pp.* torn, lit. scraped, 145. [Fr. *raser*, to scrape.]
- Recountre, blow, attack, 431. [Fr. *rencontre*.]
- Reculyd, *pt.* recoiled, 42. [Fr. *reculer*.]
- Reculynge, *pr. p.* recoiling, retreating, 317.
- Regardyd, *pp.* looked, 17. [Fr. *regarder*, to look.]
- Releue, *vb.* a feudal term, signifying to recognise with the usual formalities that a fief is held from the feudal lord, 5. [Fr. *relever*.] In 511/4, releue = to rise up again.
- Releyd, *pt.* rose up, 147. [Fr. *relever*.]
- Rengyd, *pp.* ranged, 494. [O.Fr. *renger*.]
- Renoume, *sb.* renown, fame, 2. [Fr. *renom*, *renommée*.] '... O thou far renowned sonne.' —*Spenser*, *F. Q.*, i. 6.
- Renyed, *pp.* denied, 89. [Fr. *renier*, to deny.]
- Renynsyd, *pt.* renounced, 81. [Fr. *renoncer*.]
- Repenissed, for replenissed = filled again, 430.
- Requere, *vb.* require, ask, 3. [O.Fr. *requerir*.]
- Requyre, *vb.* require, ask, 264; requyre me of = ask me for, prob. for Fr. *requerir de*.
- Resorte, *sb.* refuge, resource, 752. [Fr. *ressort*.]
- Retourned, turned, 637.
- Rude, *adj.* coarse, rough, 300. [Fr. *rude*.]
- Rybault, *sb.* [ribald], a low fellow, 85. [O.Fr. *ribaud*.]
- Rybawdis, *sb. pl.* [ribalds], brutal wretches, 538. [O.Fr. *ribaud*, *ribaud*.]
- Ryghtwysly, *adv.* righteously, 251. [A.S. *rihtwis*, wise as to what is right.]
- Ryuyled, riveled, *pp.* wrinkled, shrunk, 568. 'I'll give thee tackling made of riveld gold, Wound on the barks of odoriferous trees.' —*Marlowe's Dido*, 1594.
- Sage, *adj.* wise, discerning, 214. [Fr. *sage*.]
- Saruage, *sb.* [serfage], slavery, servitude, 468. '... Doth in lordship and servage.' —*Chaucer*, *C. T.*, 11106.
- Saue coundyte, *sb.* safe conduct, 719.
- Sawyde, *pp.* saved, 477. [M.E. *sawuen* for *sauwen*, Fr. *sauver*.]
- Sclaue, *sb.* slave, 161. [Fr. *esclave*.]
- Scole, *sb.* school, 419. [A.S. *scōlu*.]
- Scot, *sb.* share, a contribution towards the general fund, 704. [O.Fr. *escot*.] This is the original meaning, but here it seems to mean rather that for which the share is paid, not the share itself. Cf. '... we may fortune to mete with suche that shall pay for our scotte.' —*Berners*, *Froiss.*, i. 207.
- Sease, *vb.* cease, 14.
- Seen, *conj.* since, 26.
- Semblant, *sb.* [semblance], appearance, 26. [O.Fr. *semblance*.]
- Semblaunt, made semblaunt = pretended, 205; v. SEMBLANT.

- Semylytude, *sb.* [similitude], likelihood, 41.
- Sennys, *conj.* since, 71.
- Sercles, *sb. pl.* [circles], 715; v. SERKELL.
- Serkell, *sb.* [circle], a band worn round the helmet, 24. [O.Fr. *sercle*.]
- Sertes, *sb. pl.* servants, 138.
- Set, *pp.* put, placed, 189.
- Sew, *conj.* since, 49.
- Seignoryes, *sb. pl.* [seignories], domains, 140. [O.F. *seigneurie*.]
- Slier thursdaye, Shrove thursday, 560.
- Sirode, *sb.* sea-road, 359.
- Skapyd, *pt.* escaped, 16.
- Skaut, *adv.* [scaut], scarcely, 559. [Icel. *skampt*.]
- Sle, *vb.* slew, 40.
- Slee, *vb.* slay, 43.
- Sleuers, *sb. pl.* slivers, fragments, 42. [A.S. *sligan*, to cleave.]
- Smoke, *sb.* smock, 699. [A.S. *smoc*.]
- Solas, *sb.* [solace], comfort, 606. [O.Fr. *solaz*.]
- Solempne, *adj.* solemn, 36.
- Somer, *sb.* pack-horse, sumpter horse, 144. [O.Fr. *somier*, a pack-horse.] v. SUMPTERHS.
- Sommer, *sb.* 52; v. SOMER.
- Sompterhors, *sb.* [sumpterhorse], pack-horse, 702. [O.Fr. *sommetier*, from O.Fr. *somme*, a pack, burden.]
- Soort, *sb.* [sort], lot, company, 38. [Fr. *sorte*.]
- Soppe, *sb.* sup, drink, 38. [Fr. *souper*; A.S. *siþan*.]
- Sot, *sb.* fool, 47. [Fr. *sot*, a fool.]
- Sowdeours, *sb. pl.* soldiers, 314. '... he had of suche *sowdyours* to defende hym.'—*Fabyan, Chron.* c. 82.
- Sowned, *pt.* [sound], swooned, 300. 'Sound' is common in Shakspeare in this sense.
- Sparhawke, *sb.* sparrowhawk, 7.
- Sperclyd, *pt.* spread, scattered, 476.
- Sporres, *sb. pl.* spurs, 291; on the spores = in great haste; equiv. to modern phr. 'with whip and spur.'
- Sprynge tyme, spring time, 525.
- Stalle, *pt.* stole, 310.
- Stethy, *sb.* anvil, 380. [Icel. *steði*, an anvil.]
- Stradiot, *sb.* a kind of soldier, 761. [O.Fr. *estradiot*.] 'Among the Frenchmen were certaine light horsmen called *stradiotes*.'—*Hall, Henry VIII.*, f. 28.
- Stuyd, *pp.* [stewed], bathed, washed, 543. [O.Fr. *estuer*, to bathe.] 'estuer, to stue, soake, bathe.'—*Cotgrave*.
- Swerde, *sb.* sword, 182. [A.S. *sweord*.]
- Swounyd, *pt.* swooned, fainted, 24.
- Sygned, *pp.* assigned, appointed, 473. [O.Fr. *signer*.] *Chaucer, Ct. of Love*, l. 642.
- Syn, *conj.* since, 5. [A.S. *sithen*.]
- Syngnory, *sb.* seignory, kingdom, dominion, 4. [Fr. *seigneurie*.]
- Synse, *conj.* since, as, 36.
- Syt, *vb.* to lean on, rest on, 43.
- Tale, *sb.* number, 328. [A.S. *talū*.]
- Taylles, *sb. pl.* tolls, taxes, 210. [O.Fr. *tailles*.]
- Temperours, for themperours, the emperor's, 13.
- Than, then, 15. [A.S. *thænne*.]
- Thedyr, *adv.* thither, 60. [A.S. *ðider*.]
- Thentent, for 'the entent' = the intent, 'for thentent' = with the intention, 60.
- Thought, *sb.* [thought], care, trouble, 3. '... the old man for very thought and grief of heart pined away.'—*Holland*.
- Thrusty, *adj.* thirsty, 66. [A.S. *thurst*.]
- Tonne, *sb.* tun, barrel, 484. [A.S. *tunne*, a barrel.]
- Tornoys, *sb. pl.* tourneys, tournaments, 62. [O.Fr. *tournei*.]
- Tournyd, *pt.* returned, 210. 'Ere from this war thou turn a conqueror.'—*Shakspeare*.
- Traytour, *adj.* faithless, traitourous, 41. [O.Fr. *traiteur*.]
- Treason, *sb.* treachery, 44.
- Trepasyd, *pt.* [trespassed], departed, 17. [O.Fr. *trespasser*, to go beyond, depart.] 'Robert de Bruce

- ... *trespassed* out of this uncertain world.'—*Berners, Froiss.*
- Trewes, *sb.* truce, 304. [O.Fr. *truez*.]
- Trone, *sb.* throne, 216. [O.Fr. *throne*.]
- Trought, *pt.* believed, 44. [From M.E. *trowen*, mod. E. *trou*, A.S. *tréowian*.]
- Truage, *sb.* orig. meaning is homage, fealty, 334. Here it seems to be collective for those who do homage, *i. e.* prisoners.
- Truss, *vb.* to pack, bind up, 173. [O.Fr. *trusser*.]
- Trybutayr, *adj.* tributary, subject, 105. [O.Fr. *tributaire*.]
- Tryumphe, *sb.* glory, 41.
- Tuo, *num.* two, 252.
- Vance, a *vance* for *avaunt*, *q. v.*, 69.
- Vauerynge, *sb.* wavering, 712.
- Vaylable, *adj.* [valuable], profitable, 12. [O.Fr. *valer*, to be of use.]
- Vayleth, *vb.* availeth, 254.
- Veleny, *sb.* villainy, 20.
- Vertu, *sb.* strength, 24. [Fr. *vertu*; Lat. *virtus*.]
- Very, *adj.* true, 168. [O.Fr. *verai*.]
- Ungarcyous, *adj.* ungracious, 631.
- Vttranse, *sb.* [utterance], extremity, 47. [O.Fr. *outrance*; mod. Fr. *outrance*: in phrase *à outrance*.] 'to the utterance.'—*Macb.*, III. i. 72.
- Vttraunce, 196; *v.* VTTRANSE.
- Wan, *vb.* won, 184.
- Wanhope, *sb.* delusion, false hope, 364. [A.S. *wan*, deficient.] 'The foolish *wanhope* of some usurer.'—*Chaloner*.
- Warde, to her warde = toward her, 254. Cf. 'to you *ward*.'—2 *Cor.* xiii. 12.
- Wassale, *sb.* [vassal], wretch, villain, 23. 'O, *vassal*! miscreant!'—*K. Lear*, I. i.
- Wayter, *sb.* boarhound, 50. [Fr. *vautre*. Ital. *veltro*.]
- Went, *pp.* thought, 233. [*pt.* of *wenen*, to suppose, ween. A.S. *wénen*.] 'She had *went* it had bene hir husbände.'—*Chaucer, The Mylner of Abingdon*.
- Wenyng, *pr. p.* [weening], thinking, 21; *v.* WENT.
- Wesshyde, *pp.* washed, 537. [M.E. *weschen*.]
- Wheareas, *adv.* where, 744.
- Whereas, *adv.* where.
- Wight, *adj.* [wight], stout, strong, 96. [Icel. *vigr*, serviceable for war.]
- Witsonday, *sb.* Whit-Sunday, 731. [White Sunday, perhaps from white garments worn on that day. *Vigfusson*.]
- Wode, *adj.* violent, raging, 479. [A.S. *wōd*, mad, raging.] 'What shulde he studie and make himselven *wode*.'—*Chaucer, C.T.*, 184. '... *wode* within this wood.'—*Shakspere, Mid. N. Dr.*, II. i. 192.
- Wold, *pp.* willed, wished, 304. [A.S. *willen*, *pt.* l. *wolde*.]
- Woll, *vb.* wishes to, would, 87.
- Wyage, *sb.* voyage, 16. [O.Fr. *veiage*.]
- Wynnyng, *sb.* [winning], gain, 13. [A.S. *winnan*.]
- Yentyll, *adj.* [gentle], noble, gallant, 20. [O.Fr. *gentil*.] '*gentil*, ... gallant, noble.'—*Cotgrave*.
- Yll, *adj.* [ill], wicked, 37.
- Ylnes, *sb.* [illness], wickedness, 43. 'She that is *vnchaste* is a sea and treasure of all *ilnesse*.'—*Vives*.
- Ymagenyde, *pp.* imagined, planned, 2.
- Ynow, *adj. pl.* enough, 84. [A.S. *genoh*.]
- Yode, *pt.* rode, 636.
- Yought, *sb.* youth, 65. [A.S. *geōguð*.]

PR
1119
E5
no.41,
etc.

Early English Text
Society
[Publications]
Extra series. no.41,43,50

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH

UTL AT DOWNSVIEW



D RANGE BAY SHLF POS ITEM C
39 15 14 14 05 004 3